



Wheelock's Latin, 6e, Revised

韦洛克拉丁语教程

(插图修订第6版)

(美) F. M. 韦洛克 (Frederic M. Wheelock) 著

(美) R. A. 拉弗勒 (Richard A. LaFleur) 修订

张卜天 译 (奥) 雷立柏 (Leopold Leeb) 审阅

世界图书出版公司

作者简介

F. M. 韦洛克(Frederic M. Wheelock, 1902—1987) 是美国著名的古典学家,拉丁语教学权威。他在哈佛大学获得博士学位,先后任教于哈佛大学、纽约市立大学、布鲁克林学院等名校,并以其在文本批评、古文书学和拉丁语等领域的研究而蜚声古典学界。韦洛克教授是美国古典学联盟、美国语言学会和大西洋国家古典学会的成员。本书是他毕生最具代表性的杰作。

R. A. 拉弗勒(Richard A. LaFleur) 曾任美国古典学联盟主席(1984—1986)。他在杜克大学获得古典学博士学位,从1972年起任教于佐治亚大学,并在那里担任北美洲最大的古典学项目之一的负责人长达21年。拉弗勒教授著有《21世纪拉丁语:从概念到课堂》等多部著作,并于1984年获得美国语言学会“古典学杰出教育奖”。

译者简介

张卜天,北京大学哲学系科技哲学博士。现为中科院自然科学史研究所助理研究员。有《大问题——简明哲学导论》等十余部译作。

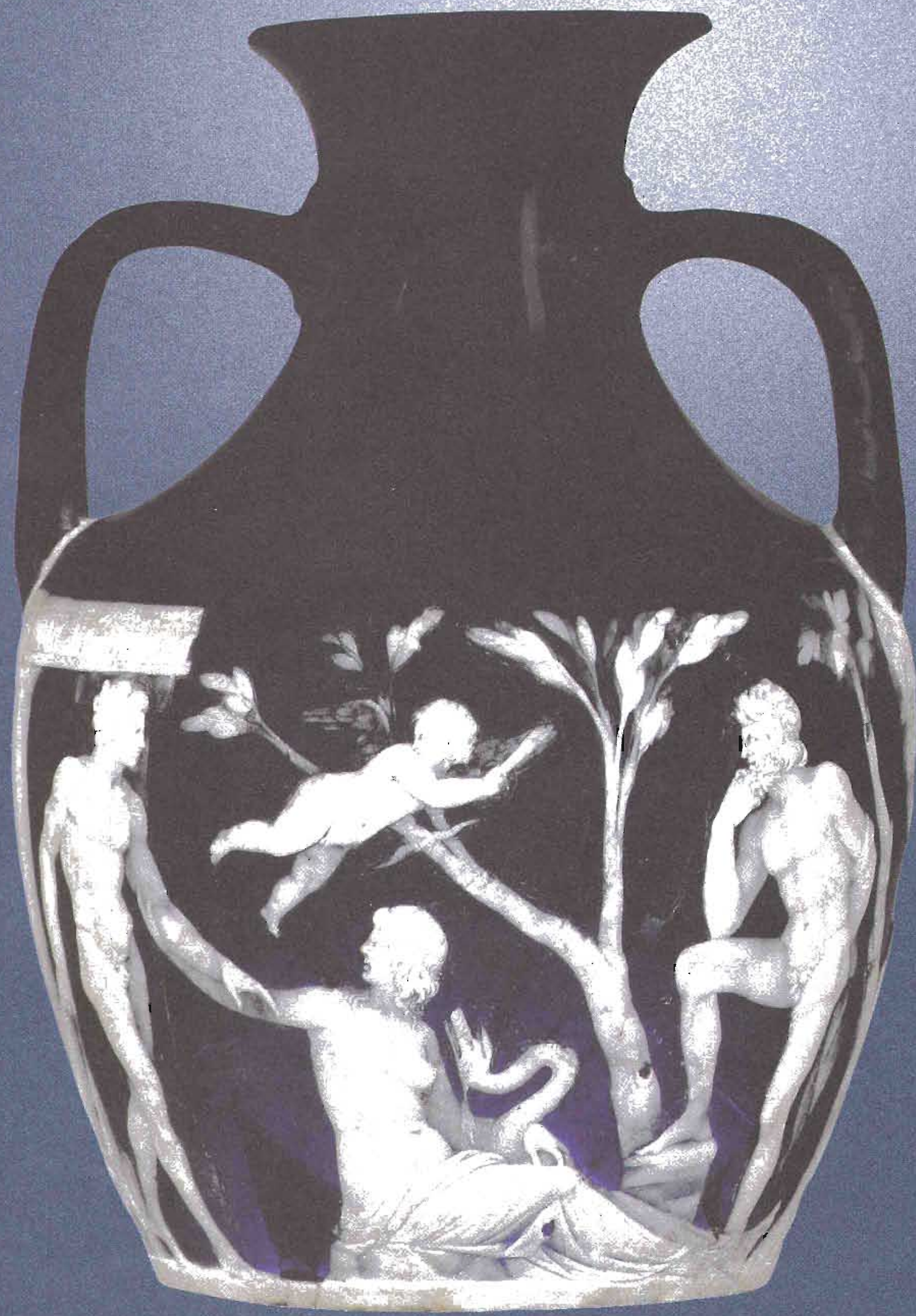
审阅者简介

雷立柏(Leopold Leeb, 1967—),奥地利古典学家。现任教于中国人民大学文学院。中文著作有《张衡、科学与宗教》、《古希腊罗马与基督宗教》等,编著有《拉丁成语辞典》。

内容简介

《韦洛克拉丁语教程》是20世纪后半期以来英语世界最受欢迎的拉丁语教材,初版于1956年,很快就因其严密的组织结构、清晰的叙述讲解、循序渐进的设计安排、适中的难易程度以及其中收录的丰富的古代文献而被誉为“拉丁语学习的标准著作”,其“拉丁语学习首选教材”的地位无可撼动。

全书共分四十课,以简洁而不学究气的语言,系统讲解了拉丁语的基本词形、句法,并通过丰富的词汇学习、众多的英语词源研究、英拉句子互译和古典拉丁语作家原文赏读,来锻炼拉丁语学习者使用单词的灵活性和精确性,培养其观察、分析、判断和评价的能力,加强对语言形式、清晰性和美的感受;并通过探讨战争、友谊、未来、生老病死等发人深省的主题来学习古典作家的思想和技艺,分享他们的人文主义传统。第6版更是增补了课后的词汇表,修订了拉丁语的背景介绍、语言演变和一些词源学知识,从而使自学拉丁语变得更加容易。





“**大学堂**”开放给所有向往知识、崇尚科学，对宇宙和人生有所追问的人。

“**大学堂**”中展开一本本书，阐明各种传统和新兴的学科，导向真理和智慧。既有接引之台阶，又具深化之门径。无论何时，无论何地，请你把它翻开……





大学堂012

主编：李峰

副主编：张跃明 郭力 执行主编：吴兴元

Wheelock's Latin, 6e, Revised

韦洛克拉丁语教程

(插图修订第6版)

(美) F. M. 韦洛克 (Frederic M. Wheelock) 著

(美) R. A. 拉弗勒 (Richard A. LaFleur) 修订

张卜天 译 (奥) 雷立柏 (Leopold Leeb) 审阅

世界图书出版公司

北京·广州·上海·西安



I love the language, that soft bastard Latin, Which melts like kisses
from a female mouth.

George Noel Gordon, Lord Byron

Beppo

I would make them all learn English: and then I would let the
clever ones learn Latin as an honor, and Greek as a treat.

Sir Winston Churchill

Roving Commission: My Early Life

He studied Latin like the violin, because he liked it.

Robert Frost

The Death of the Hired Man

简 目

作者简介	4
序 一 拉丁语在中国	雷立柏 5
序 二 我们的父亲韦洛克	玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒 9
前 言	11
第六版修订前言	16
目 录	20
导 言	39
地 图	56
第一课 动词;第一和第二变位法动词:现在时主动态的不定式、直陈式和命令式; 翻译	001
第二课 名词和格;第一变格法;形容词的一致;句法	008
第三课 第二变格法:阳性名词与形容词;同位语;词序	016
第四课 第二变格法中性词;形容词;Sum 的现在时直陈式;谓语性名词和 谓语形容词;形容词作名词	022
第五课 第一和第二变位法动词:将来时和未完成时;以-er 结尾的形容词	029
第六课 Sum 的将来时和未完成时直陈式;Possum 的现在时、将来时和 未完成时直陈式;补充不定式	035
第七课 第三变格法名词	041
第八课 第三变位法动词:现在时不定式,现在时、将来时和未完成时的直陈式, 命令式	047
第九课 指示词 Hic, Ille, Iste;特殊的-ius 形容词	053
第十课 第四变位法动词和第三变位法的-iō 动词	060
第十一课 人称代词 Ego, Tū 和 Is;指示词 Is 和 Īdem	065
第十二课 动词完成时系统的主动态	073
第十三课 反身代词和反身物主代词;强势代词	080
第十四课 第三变格法的 i-词干名词;手段夺格,伴随夺格,方式夺格	087
第十五课 数词;整体属格;带有基数词的属格和夺格;时间夺格	095
第十六课 第三变格法形容词	102
第十七课 关系代词	108
第十八课 第一和第二变位法动词:现在时系统的被动态;施事夺格	114

第十九课	动词完成时系统的被动态;疑问代词和疑问形容词	120
第二十课	第四变格法;地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格	127
第二十一课	第三和第四变位法动词:现在时系统的被动态	133
第二十二课	第五变格法;地点夺格(在何处);夺格用法总结	139
第二十三课	分词	145
第二十四课	独立夺格;被动迂说法;施事与格	153
第二十五课	不定式;间接陈述	160
第二十六课	形容词的比较;比较级的变格;比较夺格	169
第二十七课	具有特殊形式和不规则形式的形容词比较等级	177
第二十八课	虚拟式;现在时虚拟式;祈愿句和目的从句	184
第二十九课	未完成时虚拟式;Sum 和 Possum 的现在时和未完成时虚拟式;结果从句	192
第三十课	完成时和过去完成时虚拟式;间接问句;时态序列	200
第三十一课	Cum 从句;Ferō	209
第三十二课	副词的结构与比较等级;Volō, Mālō, Nōlō;附带条件从句	217
第三十三课	条件从句	226
第三十四课	异态动词;特殊异态动词加夺格	232
第三十五课	形容词加与格;特殊动词加与格;复合动词加与格	243
第三十六课	间接命令句;Fīō	251
第三十七课	Eō 的变位;地点和时间的结构	258
第三十八课	特征关系从句;关系与格;目的动名词	267
第三十九课	动名词和动形词	274
第四十课	直接问句中的-Ne、Num 和 Nōnne;疑虑从句;描述属格和描述夺格	282
古文选编	.....	290
古代文选	.....	301
自测练习及答案	.....	349
附 录	.....	425
英拉词汇表	.....	453
拉英词汇表	.....	462
缩 写	.....	483
古代名言出处	.....	486
汉英术语对照表	.....	489
译后记	.....	493
出版后记	.....	498

作者简介

弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克(Frederic M. Wheelock, 1902—1987年)在哈佛大学获得了文学士、文科硕士和博士学位。他的教学生涯漫长而成绩斐然,包括在 Haverford College, Harvard University, the College of the City of New York, Brooklyn College, Cazenovia Junior College(担任院长), the Darrow School for Boys (New Lebanon, NY), the University of Toledo(1968年作为正教授退休)任教,以及在 Florida Presbyterian(现在是 Eckerd)College 做访问教授。他在文本批评、古文书学和拉丁语研究领域发表了多篇论文和评论;除了《韦洛克拉丁语教程》(*Wheelock's Latin*, 以前名为《拉丁语教程:基于古代作家的导论课》[*Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors*]),他的著作还有《韦洛克拉丁语教程读本》(*Wheelock's Latin Reader*, 以前名为《拉丁语文学读本》[*Latin Literature: A Book of Readings*])和《教育家昆体良》(*Quintilian as Educator*, H. E. Butler 译,韦洛克教授导读并注释)。韦洛克教授是美国古典学联盟、美国语言学会和大西洋国家古典学会的成员。布里格斯(Ward Briggs)教授撰写的韦洛克教授传记参见他的《美国古典学家传记辞典》(*A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists*, Westport, CT: Greenwood Press, 1994)以及《古典学展望》(*Classical Outlook*)2003年冬季号。

理查德·A·拉弗勒(Richard A. LaFleur)在弗吉尼亚大学获得拉丁语文学士和文科硕士学位,在杜克大学获得古典学博士学位。从1972年起,他一直在佐治亚大学教书,在那里担任北美洲最大的古典学项目之一的负责人长达21年,从1998年起担任古典学富兰克林教授主席。他有诸多关于拉丁语、文学和教育学的著作出版,比如《美国学校的拉丁语教学:一个危机中的职业》(*The Teaching of Latin in American Schools: A Profession in Crisis*)、《拉丁语诗歌入门》(*Latin Poetry for the Beginning Student*)、《爱与变形:奥维德读本》(*Love and Transformation: An Ovid Reader*)、《21世纪拉丁语:从概念到课堂》(*Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom*)、《战争之歌:维吉尔<埃涅伊德>选读》(*A Song of War: Readings from Vergil's Aeneid*, 与 Alexander G. McKay 合著)、《韦洛克拉丁语教程》(修订第五版、第六版)、《韦洛克拉丁语教程读本》(修订第二版)以及《韦洛克拉丁语教程学习手册》(*Workbook for Wheelock's Latin*, 与 Paul Comeau 合著,修订第三版)等等。拉弗勒教授担任过《古典学展望》的编委(1979—2003年)以及美国古典学联盟的前任主席(1984—1986年)。他曾获得“人文学科国家基金”等机构提供的逾一百万美元的奖金,因教学和专业研究获得过州、地区和国家的各种奖励,其中包括1984年获得的美国语言学会的古典学杰出教育奖。

序一：拉丁语在中国

听说 Wheelock(韦洛克)的著名拉丁语教程将要在中国出版,我感到非常兴奋与欣慰。2002 年以来,我在北京教授拉丁语和古希腊语,但始终没有找到令我满意的拉丁语语法教材、文选和拉汉词典。《韦洛克拉丁语教程》终于能满足这个迫切的需要。对学习西方哲学、文学、法律、历史或宗教的大学生和学者来说,这部教科书的出版是一件重大的事,因为拉丁语是一切西方知识的“大门”,而韦洛克也算是自学拉丁语的最好的资料之一,它具备很多语法表格,并附有一部小的拉丁—英语词典。它使用很多古代作者的名言警句来全面地说明和解释拉丁语的种种语法形式,这样在讲解语法的同时,也可以使学生品尝古人思想的滋味。另外,作者也经常指出某个拉丁语词和英语、西班牙语、法语、意大利语的关系,即拉丁语的“现代性”——很多西方语言的共同“母语”就是拉丁语。一句话:韦洛克不仅介绍拉丁语法,而且介绍拉丁文化,我很高兴可以推荐它,希望它能成为大学生们所喜爱的读物。

拉丁语是了解欧洲文化的“大门”。无论是在文学、历史学、哲学、法学、宗教学、伦理学,还是在心理学、医学、自然科学或教育学的领域中,西方古代、中世纪和近代的经典著作都是用拉丁文写成,或是从古希腊语译成拉丁语的,所以这些知识领域的术语和研究方法都和拉丁语有关系。如果不能阅读这些知识体系的原文著作,就无法在研究和理解上“更上一层楼”,并且还会错过很多重要的因素。比如,14 世纪的 Boccaccio(薄伽丘)的意大利语名著《十日谈》就是在模仿古罗马 Apuleius(阿普雷乌斯,公元 2 世纪)的拉丁语著作《变形记》——这种关系有谁去分析呢?薄伽丘的晚期著作都不是用意大利文而是用拉丁文写的——谁去把它们引入中国学术界的视野呢?欧洲的科学史和思想史具有连续性,如果不研究 11 到 13 世纪,也就无法了解后来的文艺复兴时代及近代的发展,但在中国很少有人深入地研究中世纪,因为欧洲中世纪的文献 99%都是用拉丁文写成的。作为学术语言的英语、法语和德语在 17 和 18 世纪才开始逐渐取代拉丁语。康德、叔本华和马克思都曾经写过一些拉丁语著作或文章。今天许多欧洲的大学和高中要求学生学习拉丁语,由此可见这个语言的影响力不会消失,它贯彻古今,沟通中外,所以中国的学者也应该“借拉丁文以沟通泰西学术

之源流”(马相伯语,参见方豪“拉丁传入中国考”,《方豪六十自定稿》,台北,1969年,24页)。

欧洲各国的语言——尤其是所谓的“罗曼语系”的语言(即意大利语、西班牙语、葡萄牙语、法语、罗马尼亚语等)——都受了拉丁语的深刻影响。在“牛年”我们自然想到这样的例子:拉丁语的 *taurus*(牛)成了西班牙语的 *toro* 和法语的 *taureau*,而意大利北部 Turino(都灵)城的名字也同样来自“牛”。英语的 *bull*(公牛)和意大利语的 *bue*(公牛)都来自拉丁语的 *bos*(牛)。因为希腊语和拉丁语都属于印欧语系,这两个语言有很多共同的词根:拉丁语的 *taurus* 和 *bos* 就是希腊语的 *tauros* 和 *bous*,差别不大;但如果和第三个重要的古代语言(古希伯来语)比起来,差距就大多了,因为希伯来语属于闪族语系(*semitic language*)。古希伯来语中的“牛”被称为 *par*、*shor*、*alaphim*,与 *taurus* 和 *bos* 没有关系。这三种古代语言(拉丁语、古希腊语和古希伯来语)在一个漫长的历史过程中共同塑造了所谓的“欧洲文化”,进而影响着全世界。实际上,许多西方“人文主义者”——从 Jerome(哲罗姆)开始——注意到了这三种语言的重要性,并且愿意同时学习这三门语言。在文艺复兴的时代,比利时人就曾于 1517 年在 Louvain(鲁汶)城建立了一所“三语学院”(Collegium Trilingue),以培养这方面的人才,使尽可能多的学生有能力阅读古代经典的原文。这些经典就是犹太人的《旧约》、希腊人的哲学著作和拉丁语的经典,从 Cicero(西塞罗)到 Augustinus(奥古斯丁)和 Thomas(托马斯)。我想国内青年学者对这些语言的兴趣也越来越大,因为大家都想知道“德先生”和“赛先生”到底为什么叫“德”和“赛”,这两个概念建立在什么思想传统之上,又是从什么文化母体中生长出来的。

在很多方面,古希腊语和拉丁语是现代思想概念的基础,所以任何想深入了解西方语言和西方文化的人都必须关注拉丁语。比如英语的 *culture*(文化)来自拉丁语的 *cultura*(原义是“培养”、“耕种”等),英语的 *science*(科学)来自拉丁语的 *scientia*(知识)和希腊语的 *episteme*(知识)及 *mathesis*(学科),而英语的 *religion*(宗教)来自拉丁语的 *religio*(曾被解释为“再理解”或“再约束”)。当然,一代一代的拉丁语作家在使用这些概念时逐渐澄清、加深和丰富了它们的内涵,使它们一步一步演变成近代和现代的含义,比如 Cicero 曾经说明 *religio*(宗教)和 *superstitio*(迷信)的差别,而 Augustinus 写过关于“真正的宗教”(vera religio,即基督信仰)的著作,从一个新的角度去理解传统的概念。因此,学习拉丁语会有这样的功能:它让我们这些现代的人意识到,我们每天用的基本概念或术语似乎都有 2000 年甚至 2500 年的文学传统和思想传统。在我们之前已经有无数的伟大学者、思想家、文学家、历史学家和哲学家使用过同样的概念和术语。根据 20 世纪文学理论的 *intertextuality*(跨文本性)观点来说,当我们用“文化”、“科学”和“宗教”等概念时,我们就已经和 Aristoteles(亚里士多德)、Cicero、Augustinus 等人有了关系,因为他们的话语潜移默化地影响着我们今天的语境和思想。

学习拉丁语应该让我们意识到这些潜在的、无意识的关系。实际上,拉丁语的影响是无所不在的。为了说明这一点,我曾改写了陈子昂的诗:“前不见古语,后不见来者,念拉丁之悠悠,独欣然乐无涯。”在奥古斯丁那里我们能找到类似的感叹:“O aeterna veritas, et cara aeternitas! (永恒的真理啊,心爱的永恒!)”从这个角度来看,学习拉丁语简直是追求永恒,是参与一个不朽的语境!

一般人也许会认为,拉丁语离中国很遥远,但只要意识到 50%到 80%的英语单词来自拉丁语,情况就不同了(越是学术性的文献,其拉丁语成分越高)。

有的汉语名词是比较明显的外来语,比如每当我坐公交车刷卡时,我就想到“卡”(英语的 card)来自拉丁语的 charta(最早来自希腊语)，“charta”是一张纸,也代表一个文献。最有名的“卡”也许是 *Magna Charta Libertatum*(《英国大宪章》,1215 年),这个“卡”令所有的英国人感到自豪,因为它第一次保障平民的人权。我用“卡”坐上“巴士”(bus),而这个称呼来自 19 世纪的法国,他们称公交车为 omnibus(拉丁语:“给一切人的”、“公用的”)。

另一些现代汉语中的说法虽然没有明显的“外国味”,但实际上也离不开拉丁语。比如说“我热爱中国的首都北京”：“热爱”来自英文的 ardently love(来自拉丁语的 ardentem amare),在古代汉语中这样的词是找不到的。另外,“首都”(英语的 capital)来自拉丁语的 caput(头),在古人那里,“头”也有“领导”和“最重要的城市”的意思,所以汉语的“首脑”、“首领”和“首都”也与拉丁语共享同一个隐喻(metaphor)。韦洛克在本书的开头引用了哥德的名言:“不懂外语的人也不会了解母语”。我想学习拉丁语肯定能使中国人更深入地了解自己的母语汉语。

第一位从一个新的角度来观察汉语的华人也许是马相伯(1840—1939 年)和他的弟弟马建忠——他们于 1897 年撰写了第一部由中国人编写的汉语语法书,即《马氏文通》。他们能够完成这部伟大著作是因为两个人都精通拉丁语语法(以及法语、古希腊语等西方语言)。然而,拉丁语和汉语之间的对话并不是从 1897 年开始的。比马氏兄弟早 100 年,有一位曾在意大利留学的华人也非常精通拉丁语,他就是甘肃武威人李自标(Jacobus Li, 1760—1828 年)。他于 1773 年到意大利,成功地学习了拉丁语和意大利语,因此他被邀请于 1792—1794 年间陪同英国大使 Macartney(马嘎尔尼,1737—1806 年)到中国当译员。李自标曾经在英国使者与乾隆皇帝进行谈判时起了重要的作用。在 17 世纪有相当多的华人学习拉丁语,其中包括康熙皇帝与中国第一位天主教主教罗文藻(1615—1691 年),后者曾经于 1638—1654 年在澳门和菲律宾学习拉丁语和神学。同时,17 世纪也是拉汉互译的高峰时期。意大利人 Buglio(利类思,1606—1682 年)将许多拉丁语的著作译成汉语,其中包括托马斯·阿奎那的《神学大全》,这就意味着他介绍了无数的西方哲学、神学、法学和伦理学观念以及创造了很多新的名词(比如“人类”、“行为”等,参见拙作“清初汉语神学术语辞典”,见《汉语神学术语辞典》,北京,2007 年)。另一些外国传教士也首次将中国的经典译成西方语言

(当然是拉丁语),比如意大利学者 Intorcetta(殷铎泽,1625—1696年)曾经将《中庸》译成拉丁语(参见北京外国语大学的罗莹于2008年5月提交的硕士论文《殷铎泽之〈中国政治道德学说〉初探》)。

上海人徐光启(1562—1638年)对于拉丁语也曾经有热切的兴趣,并在他的著作中谈论“亚尼玛”(即 anima,“心灵”)的概念。他的老师 Matteo Ricci(利玛窦,1552—1610年)曾经于1579—1581年在印度教授拉丁语和古希腊语,并且首次用拉丁文拼写汉字(参见他的《西字奇迹》,1606年),因此,重视汉语拼音的人(比如中国人民大学原校长吴玉章)视他为汉语拼音的“鼻祖”。1951年在江苏扬州出土了一座元代拉丁墓碑,来自拉丁语的碑文说某个 Antonius(安托尼)安眠在此,而这位来自欧洲的基督徒于1344年在扬州去世(碑文使用了拉丁文的年代记法:“MCCCXXXIII”=1344年)。

我在2000年以后开始在北京教古代语言,但最早在北京当过拉丁语老师的人大概是 Giovanni de Montecorvino(孟高维诺,1247—1328年),他在1294年来“汗八里”(即北京)传教并(根据他的报告)曾经教40个男童教规和拉丁语。由此可见,拉丁语和中国早就“结缘”。20世纪的著名历史学家方豪(1910—1980年)曾经写过一篇《拉丁文传入中国考》(参见他的《方豪六十自定稿》,台北,1969年),其中指出,明、清文献曾用40多种“拉丁文之异译”:“大西字”、“红毛字”、“番字”、“喇提诺”、“腊底诺”、“辣第诺”、“拉替努”、“赖丁”、“罗典”等等。这一切都证明拉丁语在中国和欧洲之间的文化交流上曾经起了非常关键的作用,但遗憾的是,在20世纪中国的新兴学院和大学中(无论是1900年后、1949年后或1979年后建立的学院),很少有正规的拉丁语文学方面的课程,而且缺乏拉丁语教师、教材或词典。这就严重地影响了中国学者对“西方文化”的了解,因为很多古代的、中世纪的或近代的文献被拒之门外——没有人看得懂这些文献,也没有人翻译它们。

说到“西方文化”——“文化”这个词的拉丁词根是 colere(“培养”、“耕种”、“修饰”、“敬仰”),我经常告诉我的学生:真正的文化修养只能是慢慢培养的,它是“长出来的”,不可能是“制造出来的”或“速成的”。近年来,我看到中国大学生和学者对拉丁语的兴趣越来越浓,在这种逐渐走近西方古典文化的过程中,《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的出版将是一座重要的里程碑!我希望中国的教育界和学术界重视这部大作,进一步“培养”(colere-culture)对西方古典语言和文化的“热爱”(ardenter amare)!

雷立柏

中国人民大学文学院
2009年2月

序二：我们的父亲韦洛克

《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的缘起是 1946 年的“美国退伍军人教育法案”，这个法案旨在为退伍的二战老兵提供高等教育。“如何让一个在欧亚战场上受过训练的老兵想学拉丁语？”父亲提出了这样的问题，那时他还是布鲁克林学院的古典学教授。这种语言能够给那些阅历已经如此丰富的人带来什么？作为教师，怎样才能使一门已经死去的语言变得生动起来，让人觉得它与我们息息相关，而且完全可以掌握？如何不把拉丁语仅仅当成一种已经过时的工具，而是作为文化和哲学的一种活生生的反映来教授？这就是父亲当时面临的挑战。

于是，弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克(Frederic M. Wheelock)开始编写一本拉丁语教材，试图用一种人文主义的养料在语言和哲学上滋养学生。本书始于他为布鲁克林学院的学生们专门开设的课程。小时候，我们会经常闻到胶版誊写机的那种刺鼻的油墨味，那时他经常不辞辛劳地为每一位学生在凝胶衬垫上一页页地复制那本教材的部分内容。1950 年，利用弗雷德里克六个月的休假年，韦洛克一家到遥远的墨西哥 San Miguel De Allende 村旅行。在那里，弗雷德里克兢兢业业地编写着那本教材，我们勤劳的母亲多萝西(Dorothy)在一台旧式手提打字机上细心地打印着手稿，我们则淘气地跑来跑去，与当地的孩子和毛驴嬉戏打闹。

历经 12 年的精心构思、修改和试用，本书的第一版终于问世。当学生们需要学习语法时，他们会去阅读伟大的古代作家的训诫和文学作品，这些作家往往会在一种意味深长的语境下使用语法。父亲试图把罗马人思想感受的血肉与词形、句法和词汇的基本骨架紧密结合起来，以期学生们不是“死啃”拉丁语，而是通过文学和哲学的内容使头脑更加敏锐。

在我们的记忆中，家里的古典传统是很深厚的。一个词的词源可能会激起长时间的讨论，这对于我们年轻人来说往往是枯燥乏味的，然而我们长大后，却又会使我们受益匪浅。经常有人提醒我们，了解拉丁语有助于学习英语，60% 的英语词汇都源于拉丁语。学过拉丁语的学生对 SAT(学术能力评估考试)的词汇部分会更加得心应手，得到的分数也会更高。商业界早就认识到了拥有较大词汇量的重要性，认为它预示着管理方面的潜力和成功。了解一个词的词源史会让使用者觉得这个词更有色彩和力量，更具鲜活性和精确性。而且我们所掌握

的语词形象越清晰,数量越多,我们思想的力量似乎就越大。《韦洛克拉丁语教程》中包含着为数众多的英语词源研究以及丰富的词汇。我们自己的经验表明,学生们在理解词源之后,不仅能够更持久、更好地记忆词汇,而且也能在一种更为精准的含义上使用它们,体味出其中的微妙差别。

那么,为什么还要去练习翻译拉丁语呢?弗雷德里克·韦洛克认为,“准确地翻译拉丁语可以培养我们的观察、分析、判断和评价的能力,加强我们对语言形式、清晰性和美的感受,对我们提高自己的英语表达水平大有裨益”。通过翻译,我们可以学习到一种准则和精确性,它可以被移植到任何思维推理过程,比如数学家的那种推理过程。事实上,父亲在 Barnes & Noble 公司的编辑 Gladys Walterhouse 博士就是那里的数学编辑,他对拉丁语及其精确性很是欣赏。

父亲挚爱着古典作家和思想家的人文主义传统。对于这种爱,他不仅通过本书的“古代名言”部分与学生分享,而且也在平日里同家人和朋友们分享。当我们还是小姑娘的时候,父亲就教给我们古人的许多至理名言,告诉我们这些真理和训诫为何直到今天仍是那么鲜活有力。在本书中,读者将会捕捉到不少哲言的吉光片羽,比如 *carpe diem*(抓紧时机或及时行乐), *aurea mediocritās*(中庸之道;黄金分割), *summum bonum*(至善),“morality”(道德)源于 *mōrēs*(习惯)。(“好习惯造就好性格,”父亲经常这样告诫我们。)

不仅学习拉丁语和翻译过程很重要,了解贺拉斯、奥维德、维吉尔等罗马作家的思想和技艺也同样重要。围绕着一些发人深省的主题,比如面向未来而生活、追求卓越、人的生老病死、友谊等等,韦洛克为我们提供了这些古典作家的部分作品。弗雷德里克·韦洛克写道:“拉丁语研究的至善就是阅读、分析和欣赏原汁原味的人文主义拉丁语经典作品,我们的文明深深地植根于它,它在 20 世纪使我们受益良多。”

在弗雷德里克·韦洛克任拉丁语教授的 45 年中,他以幽默而谦逊的方式,从语言和文学两方面培养了学生们对拉丁语的热爱。他对教学工作怀有深深的眷恋,因为他对自己所教授的东西充满热忱。他非常尊重自己的学生,总是以高标准去要求他们。他希望学生们能够像他本人一样热爱和学习拉丁语,把它当作世代相传的火炬,照亮我们今天的路途。

1987 年,弗雷德里克·韦洛克在即将走完 85 年丰满富足的人生时,还吟诵着荷马、贺拉斯和爱米莉·狄金森的名言。和古人一样,他秉承着献身学术的传统,坚信我们应当站在古人的肩上。如果他地下有知,今天有许多学生正在满怀热情地分享他深爱的拉丁语所带来的激动和乐趣,他一定会感到欣悦的。

玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒

Filiae amantissimae(您最亲爱的女儿们)

前 言

既然已经有了那么多拉丁语入门教材,为什么还要出一本新的呢?问这个问题不无道理,不过这里还是能够给出几点理由。

众所周知,每一年都有越来越多不具备拉丁语知识的学生进入大学。如果他们想了解拉丁语,就只能在大学阶段才开始学习这门语言,而且通常是作为选修课来学习。虽然有些学校的学生有机会在两到三年的时间里学习拉丁语,但更多的学生却只有一年时间学习。这些学生主要分为三个群体:罗曼语专业的学生、英语专业的学生以及认识到拉丁语(哪怕只是初步的拉丁语知识)具有文化和应用价值的学生。¹如果让这些高年级学生(他们当中有许多人其实已是大三和大四的学生!)使用在思想和进度上只适用于高中生的入门教材,那么必定无法取得好的效果,结果反而得不偿失。而另一方面,我们也应秉持适度温和的古典精神,避免走到另一个极端,把入门教材编写得过于严肃高深,那样有可能会挫伤一些有上进心的学生通盘掌握拉丁语的积极性。

有鉴于此,笔者尝试编写一本供初学者使用的教材,力求内容周详,富于人文气息,有挑战性和启发性,同时要求也比较适度。当然,这并不是说拉丁语可以变得简单,无须努力就能掌握。不过,就先前的这份油印教材而言,根据笔者多年的使用经验,拉丁语尽管繁难,却可以变得活泼有趣。即使是对初学者和只修习一年的学生,拉丁语也可以带来愉悦和教益。只要方法步骤得当,学习拉丁语可以使人获得一种进步感和文学上的成就感,其效果甚至不亚于那些罗曼语专业的学生。因此,笔者的目标就是编写一本教材,帮助那些在整个教育阶段只修一年拉丁语的学生打下牢固的拉丁语基础,使他们至少能够享用某些文学果实,同时为那些打算继续在这一领域进行研究的人提供适当的引导和鼓励。为此,本书采用了一些较为独特的方法和设计。

¹ 还有一些研究生希望听我的课,因为他们忽然发觉自己需要掌握一些拉丁语知识,并希望自学——就像当我决定到墨西哥旅游时,根据 E. V. Greenfield 的《西班牙语语法》(*Spanish Grammar, College Outline Series of Barnes & Noble*)自学西班牙语那样。他们实际上组成了第四个群体,即希望在正规的学术课程之外学一点拉丁语的成年人。

1. “古代名言”(SENTENTIAE ANTĪQUAE) 和 “古文选编”(LOCĪ ANTĪQUĪ)

几乎毋庸置疑,学习古老的拉丁语,最有益且最能鼓舞人心的途径就是借助古代作家的拉丁语原本来学习。带着这种信念,笔者认真审读了一些古代著作,¹ 摘出适当的句子和段落作为这本入门教材的材料。选择的主要标准是,材料本身应当有趣,而不仅仅因为能够说明词形和句法就被选用。这些内容丰富的文本是拉丁语文学的一个极好缩影,词形、句法和本书中的词汇都可以在此基础上建立起来。“古代名言”部分构成了每一课中固定的阅读练习,其中所有句子都选自这些拉丁语原文,每一句话后面都标注了古代作家的名字。在书中各处以及“古文选编”部分中出现的段落也是如此。根据我们的经验,本书的正式内容大致可以在一个半学期内讲授完毕,在剩下的半个学期里,可以不拘形式地阅读补充的古代拉丁语原文。² 这些内容涉及许多有趣的主题,比如爱情、传记、哲学、宗教、道德、友谊、慈善、游戏、战争、逸事、幽默、讽刺等等。这些基本的练习都选自原始的拉丁语文学作品,³ 而非人工炮制出来的拉丁语。事实上,这些内容不仅是为了说明词汇、词形和规则,而且也是对罗马人思想和经验的介绍。

2. 词汇表和词汇设计

每一课都有一个词汇表,其中的内容需要牢牢掌握。每一个条目都由以下几个部分组成:拉丁词及其若干形式(比如动词的几个主要部分)、重要的语法信息(比如名词的性、介词支配的格)、英语释义(通常基本含义排在第一位)、括号里列出的有代表性的英语派生词。词条中的每一项都需要记住。随着课程的进行,在笔记本或电脑文件中做一个不断更新的词汇表,或者使用词汇卡片(一面是拉丁词,另一面是词条中的其余部分)会很有帮助。考虑到“重复是记忆之母”(repetitio mater memoriae),某一课的词汇通常会在接下来的课程中或其他地方反复出现。

不太常见或者在本书中不常出现(有时只出现一次)的拉丁词会在“古代名

¹ 我有意没有选用恺撒的著作,因为他的著作不大适合在头两年的课程中学习,我们可以找到更合适的阅读材料。

² 其中包括拉丁晚期和中世纪作家的六段作品,以说明拉丁语在中世纪的连续性。

³ 当然,有时不得不对这些拉丁语做一些编辑调整,以避免原先的单词、形式或句法过于困难,以致超出了学生的能力。在大多数情况下,这种调整只涉及省略一些不重要的内容,对词序稍作简化,或者用较为简单的单词、形式或句法来代替。然而,其基本思想和表达方式依然是古代作家的。

言”和阅读材料后面的括号中标注出来,以免每一课的词汇负担过重。这些注释通常不如正规的词条完整,而且课程越往后进行,注释可能就越简略,不过已经能够为翻译相关的文本提供足够的信息。对于那些可以很容易地从英语派生词推断出含义的拉丁词,通常不给出英文释义。教师对这些词条的要求可以因人而异,但一般而言,学生们应当至少能够“被动地”掌握这些词,即如果在类似的语境(比如在后续课程中)或考试中碰到它们,他们应当能够辨识出这些词,其完整词条大都可以在书末的词汇表中找到。

3. 句法

尽管前面提到的作品摘选构成了本书应当进一步介绍的句法概念的逻辑向导,但正如我们已经说过的,不愠不火、张弛有度才是常识之道。已经介绍过的句法概念应当足以用来阅读“古文选编”的成熟段落,并为那些希望在一年之后继续学习拉丁语的人打下坚实的基础。事实上,如果已经具备了在处理这种成熟拉丁语过程中所获得的技能,并且掌握了附录中所补充的句法,学生就可以跳过第二年阅读恺撒的传统课程,而直接进入第三年的课程去阅读西塞罗等作家的作品。在对句法的解释方面,本书力争做到尽可能简洁和没有学究气,每一个概念都通过大量例子进行了说明,其中既有必要的重复,也包括了自学素材。最后,鉴于即使英语专业的学生也可能不具备足够的语法知识,书中对大多数语法术语都作了补充解释(通常是借助词源)。这些解释没有被归入某个一般的概要性章节(学生们通常会回避这些部分),而是当术语首次出现时自然地加入。

4. 词形及其展示

对于一本入门教材来说,各种屈折和非屈折形式都是共通的。然而在本教材中,讲解名词或形容词形式的课程单元与讲解动词形式的课程单元一般会交替出现,这有助于减少因单调而导致的厌倦。基于同样的考虑,笔者也把位置格、副词和大多数不规则动词放在了本书的较后部分,它们可以暂缓虚拟式以及其他复杂句法所造成的负担。

笔者力图把具有类似形式的词形变化表列在一起,以便在同一课中互为参照,¹并把新的词形自然地安排在熟悉的相关词形之后(比如把第三变格法形容词安排在*i-*词干名词之后)。

掌握句法和词形的速度显然与班级的性质和水平有关,教师应当根据实际情况对任务做出调整。虽然每一课都构成了一个逻辑单元,但我们发现,对于大多数内容较多的课,至少需要分配两项任务:首先是正文、词形变化表、词汇表、

¹附录中也采用了这样的设计。

“练习与复习”以及某些“古代名言”；其次是复习、完成“古代名言”、阅读材料以及词源部分。这两项任务显然有利于对内容进行不断反复。

5. 练习与复习

“练习与复习”中的句子旨在确保对形式、句法和词汇进行重复,这对于学习语言至关重要。如果教材的作者能够以预先确定的一系列词汇和句法开始,并且在此基础上自由地构造句子,那么让后续课程单元中的句子重复前几课的内容,就会比较容易,尤其是在不太关注句子思想内容的情况下。而如果受制于第一节中所谈的那些限制,那么这种重复显然就更难做一些。实际上,在某一课中介绍的内容大都会在接下来几课的“古代名言”以及其他地方多次出现,不过笔者还是编写了“练习与复习”中的句子¹来填补空隙,以保证出现更多的重复,并为复习提供练习。由于阅读拉丁语是学习重点,所以英译拉的句子数量并不多,但也要定期加以练习。其他练习则不需要预先布置给学生。只要时间允许,它们当堂就可以轻松地完成,也可以在学过四五课之后用作复习课的材料。

6. 词源点滴

在每一课的词汇表中,我们都在单词后面的括号里列出了许多英语派生词,以帮助学生记忆拉丁词,了解拉丁语对英语的影响,并扩展学生的词汇量。我们偶尔也会加入一些英语同源词。每一课的结尾都有一个名为“词源点滴”的部分,它包含了句子和阅读材料中的某些词汇,以及其他一些单凭词汇表难以言说的有趣之处。学生应当在学习开始时先查阅附录中“词源帮助”部分的词缀表。有时我们也会列出一些罗曼语派生词,以激发罗曼语专业学生的兴趣,同时表明拉丁语对于这些学科的重要性。

7. 导言

除了讨论罗马字母表和发音,本书的综论性导言还简要介绍了拉丁语的语言学、文学和古文书学背景。这些背景以及“古代名言”和“古文选编”中的拉丁语原文有助于学生深入理解罗马人的文学、思想、表达方式和感受,并且体现了罗马传统与我们这个时代的连续性。但愿导言,尤其是教材本身的特色,能够使本书不只是又一本拉丁语语法书,而且也能成为一部阅读原汁原味拉丁语的人文主义导论。

本书的雏形是油印的课堂教材,当时编写的动机就是序言开头所表达的那种不满。尽管由于编写仓促而存在着各种显而易见的缺陷,但课程还是取得了

¹其中有些句子是由古代的拉丁语句子联想而来的。

良好的效果。感谢亨特学院的 Lillian B. Lawler 教授仔细阅读了油印材料,并提出宝贵建议。感谢布鲁克林学院的学生和同事的耐心,他们对油印的内容提出了许多有益的反馈和建议。基于已有的经验,我又对教程进行了彻底修订和重写。我很感谢布鲁克林学院的 Joseph Pearl 教授,他详细审读了修改后的四十课手稿,提出了许多有益的建议。还要感谢波士顿学院的 Joseph M.-F. Marique 牧师对修改稿的鼓励和评论。衷心感谢东北大学的 Thomas S. Lester,他才华横溢,与我意气相投,拥有健全的心灵和乐观的精神,从我还是个古典学专业的本科生时就一直是我亲密的朋友,他经常耐心地倾听我的问题。我还要对我的妻子多萝西表示诚挚的谢意,她不仅毫无怨言地打印了这份非常困难的文稿,而且还提出了许多有益的建议,这些建议使得本书内容更为清晰,更能设身处地为学生着想。最后要感谢 Gladys Walterhouse 博士和她在 Barnes & Noble 公司编辑室的同事们,他们在许多事情上都给予了友好的帮助,这些帮助往往重要而及时。当然,任何尚存的错误和不当之处均由笔者本人负责。

第二版和第三版

有些人发现自己需要比“古文选编”更多的阅读材料,有鉴于此,我准备了本书的第二版,新加入了一个题为“古代文选”(Locī Immūtātī)的部分。在这些段落中,除在个别地方作了省略之外,原始的古代拉丁文本没有作任何变动。脚注格式与“古文选编”中的保持一致。希望这些阅读材料能够使一门导论课也能接触到足够广泛的材料,对自学者也能构成一次饶有兴味的挑战,并为使用关于古典作家的常规注释文本提供直接的途径。

由于重复对于建立语言反射具有无可争议的价值,我们在第三版中新加入了一个自测练习部分。它由语法和句法问题以及句子翻译组成。所有问题和句子翻译都备有答案。

第二版和第三版的改进仰赖于许多人的热情鼓励、意见和修改建议。这里我要对他们表示深深的谢意。我特别感谢大阿尔伯特学院的 Josephine Bree 教授,奥克兰城市学院的 Ben L. Charney 教授,叶史瓦学院的 Louis H. Feldman 教授,印第安纳大学的 Robert J. Leslie 教授,东北大学的 Thomas S. Lester 先生, Glenmary Home Missioners 的 James R. Murdock 牧师,华盛顿大学的 Paul Pascal 教授,哈佛大学的 Robert Renehan 教授,科尔盖特大学的 John E. Rexine 教授,摩拉维亚学院的 George Tyler 教授,亨特学院的 Ralph L. Ward 教授, Barnes & Noble 公司编辑室的 Gladys Walterhouse 博士。最后,我要再一次特别感谢我的妻子。

弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克

第六版修订前言

弗雷德里克·韦洛克教授的《拉丁语教程》(*Latin*)于 1956 年首次面世,随即以其周详的内容、清晰的结构和简洁的行文而广受赞誉。有评论预言,该书很可能会成为指导大学生和成年人学习拉丁语基础知识的标准教材。现在半个世纪过去了,事实证明,这一预言是正确的;第二版于 1960 年出版,更名为《拉丁语教程:基于古代作家的导论课》(*Latin: An Introductory Course Based on Ancient Authors*),并且新增了直接选自拉丁语文学的“古代文选”;第三版于 1963 年出版,书中新增了针对四十课教学内容的自测练习和答案,大大增强了教材的实用性。1984 年,作者于去世前三年补充了“古代名言”的原始出处,以方便教师和学生查阅和研究感兴趣的材料;1992 年,在新的 HarperCollins 出版公司支持下,本书又出了第四版,整个文本采用了大字体,阅读起来更加赏心悦目。

第五版出版于 1995 年,书名恰当地改为《韦洛克拉丁语教程》(*Wheelock's Latin*)。三十多年来,这是第一次做真正实质性的修订。我所做的修订并不是要改变教材的基本理念,而是为了强化它。事实上,一些关键性改动乃是基于韦洛克教授本人的建议,这些建议保存在他由家人保管的笔记里。还有一些改动则反映了全国同行们的意见。他们中有许多人和我一样,在至少二十年里一直使用这本书,对它赞赏有加,并且在这一过程中逐渐就某些基本方法达成共识,也许这些方法可以使本书得以更臻精进。

第五版所做的改动反映了韦洛克教授本人的意愿,也了却了我和长期使用本教材的许多同行的心愿,那就是在每一课中加入古代作家所写的拉丁语材料。在前面几课中,这些材料比较简短,而且会作一些改动,不过随着课程的进行,材料的量会不断增加,而且经常是从各种散文诗作中原封不动地摘引下来。有些材料曾经在前几版的“古文选编”和“古代文选”中出现过,不过大多是在第五版中首次加入。我们对“练习与复习”和“古代名言”中的一些句子进行了改换(有时是将其扩充成更长的阅读材料),这在一定程度上也是基于韦洛克教授本人的建议。

每一课的词汇大都被扩充为 20 到 25 个。这些词汇表使用起来很方便,既包括新词,也有以前作为“古代名言”注释出现的许多词汇。根据全国同行的一

致意见,所有动词从一开始就给出了完整的主要部分。学生们不会再像以前那样,看着第十二课中给出的列表而心生畏惧。

语法只做了略微改动,主要是将未完成时与第五、八、十课中的将来时一起讲解,以使过去时可以尽早用于阅读。原先第四十课中的数词移到第十五课中进行介绍。以前在“句法补充”中介绍的大约六种重要的语法结构,现在放到第四十课和它前面几课中介绍。我们重新编写了不少语法说明,并把脚注中的一些重要信息放在正文中,同时也删去了一些不太重要的脚注。

最后,我们在第五版每一课的结尾新增了一个部分——“欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语”(Latīna Est Gaudium— Et Ūtilis),它特意以一种不太正式的风格,为学生们介绍各种拉丁语格言、名言警句、常用的缩略语、有趣的词源、奇闻趣事,甚至还有少数令人不快的双关语,所有这些都旨在以较为轻松的方式表明,拉丁语的确可以给人带来愉快和教益。

第六版

第五版取得的巨大成功鼓励我们所有人——韦洛克教授的女儿玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒,我们的编辑 Greg Chaput 及其在 HarperCollins 出版公司的同事,以及我本人——根据我的建议做进一步修订,出版这一最新的第六版。我们希望教师和学生都能从这种修订中获益。其中较为明显的改动有:封面换成了一幅出自突尼斯的漂亮的罗马镶嵌画,描绘的是膝上放着《埃涅阿斯纪》(Aeneid)的维吉尔,身旁站立着代表其作品灵感的两个缪斯女神;¹ 加入了三张描绘古代意大利、埃及、爱琴海和地中海区域的地图,它们业已经过专门设计,除少数与罗马帝国相距遥远的地区之外,包含有书中阅读材料和注释中提到的所有地名;增加了古典时代以来的许多欧洲艺术图片,以说明阅读材料中涉及的那些文学历史形象以及古典文化和神话学方面的内容。有些改动不大显眼,但我们希望同样有所助益:对阅读材料,特别是“练习与复习”中的句子进行了修订,使之更为清晰,并且巩固最新介绍的词汇;扩充每一课词汇表中的派生词以及与其他教学单元中相关词的对照;扩充书末的英拉词汇表等等。

2005 年问世的第六版还对导言部分和某些句子、阅读材料、注释做了少量修改,并对英拉词汇表做了进一步扩充,以使辅助教材《韦洛克拉丁语教程学习手册》(Workbook for Wheelock's Latin, 修订版第三版由 Paul Comeau 和我编写,与《韦洛克拉丁语教程》同时出版)更具实用性。第六版同时推出了精装本,这也是多年以来的第一次。所有课程单元的词汇表和其他一些朗读部分的音频现在都可以在网上找到。教师指导用书也已经编写完成,只要提供了教师身份验证,教师们就可以在网上阅读(需要密码)。

¹ 此幅画在本次中译本中已被挪至扉页后。——译者注

最后需要提醒教授、教师和广大自学者的是,由于在一学期的课程中,实际分配给每一课的时间一般为两三天(高中大概一周左右),《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的这个修订版所包含的翻译材料很可能会超出在这段时间所能完成的任务量。教师可以有选择地安排任务:我建议,前一两天仅从“练习和复习”和“古代名言”的句子中选择需要布置的书面作业,而把其余的部分(或者事先认真挑选出一些)留到课堂上做口头翻译;后两天的任务则包括“古代名言”后面的阅读材料,它们将使更多的学生获得更多的经验。应当经常鼓励学生在课下结合自测练习和答案阅读新的材料。练习中的句子也是为此目的而精心挑选的,通过在课堂上做口头翻译,有助于掌握新的概念。

不少教师也希望学生们使用《韦洛克拉丁语教程学习手册》,其中有许多补充练习,包括了每一课的详细教学任务,为了熟练掌握新语法而设计的问题,各种句子变形,单词、短语和句子翻译,关于词源、同义词、反义词的问题,新词汇项的类比,阅读理解问题等等,所有这些都旨在检验学生们对每一课的阅读材料的理解。

对于那些也许没有时间完成《手册》中所有练习的读者,建议你们至少能够做到:了解每一课的 *Intellegenda*(课程目标),回答所有的 *Grammatica*(语法复习)问题,完成每一个 *Exercitātiōnēs*(练习)中的至少一两项(即从 A 部分练习中选出一两项,再从 B 部分练习中选出一两项等等),*Vīs Verbōrum*(词源和英语词汇)中的所有项,*Lēctiōnēs*(阅读材料)A 部分中的一两项拉译英,以及 *Lēctiōnēs* B 部分(关于每一课阅读材料的问题)中的所有项。

还有许多材料可以作为《韦洛克拉丁语教程》和《韦洛克拉丁语教程学习手册》的补充,比如补充阅读、各种电脑软件以及许多网络资源。通过《韦洛克拉丁语教程》进行学习和讲授拉丁语的进一步建议以及不少网络资源,都列在了韦洛克拉丁语官方网站 www.wheelockslatin.com 上,在我的《21 世纪拉丁语:从概念到课堂》(*Latin for the 21st Century: From Concept to Classroom*, Prentice Hall Publishers)一书中也有介绍。

许多人对《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的第五版和第六版都给予了热情的支持和帮助,我在此深表感谢:我的孩子 Jean-Paul, Laura Caroline 和 Kimberley Ellen 给我带来了无穷的欢乐;我的同事 Jared Klein,也是著名的印欧语言学家,阅读了我的修订稿,并提出了很多颇有见地的看法;我的研究生助手 Cleve Fisher, Marshall Lloyd, Sean Mathis, Matthew Payne 和 Jim Yavenditti 努力而出色地协助完成了各项任务;我的老朋友 Mary Wells Ricks,也是《古典学展望》(*Classical Outlook*)杂志的前资深副总编,曾就一系列编辑问题提供了专业解答;我们系的秘书 JoAnn Pulliam 和 Connie Russell 在誊写文稿方面提供了慷慨的帮助;HarperCollins 的编辑 Erica Spaberg, Patricia Leasure, 特别是 Greg Chaput, 热情地

支持我关于修订版的主张;纽约艺术资源库的 Tim MaCarthy 及其同事 Jim Anderson, Bob Curtis, Timothy Gantz 和 Frances Van Keuren 在图片方面给予了大力协助;感谢 Tom Elliott 和古代世界绘图中心在设计第六版地图方面的工作;佐治亚大学的学生和同事们,比如 Bob Harris 和 Richard Shedenhelm,不仅实地试用了新教材,而且提供了其他帮助;全国有许多同行都提出过修订建议,特别是南卡罗莱纳大学的 Ward Briggs(他撰写的韦洛克教授生平收录于他主编的《美国古典学家传记辞典》[*A Biographical Dictionary of American Classicists*], Westport CT: Greenwood Press, 1994 和 Winter, 2003, *Classical Outlook* 中), Rob Latousek, John Lautermilch, John McChesney-Young, Braden Mechley, Betty Rose Nagle, John Ramsey, Joseph Riegsecker, Cliff Roti, Les Sheridan, David Sider, Alden Smith, Cliff Weber 和 Stephen Wheeler;感谢系主任 Wyatt Anderson 对我本人和整个古典学系工作的鼓励;感谢我的“拉丁语姐妹”玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒对我修订工作的坚定支持,并慷慨地允许我查阅她们父亲的笔记;最后,感谢弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克教授本人锻造了这样一部经典教科书,能有机会对它进行修订是我莫大的荣幸。

理查德·A·拉弗勒

佐治亚大学

2004 年秋

目 录

简 目	2
作者简介	4
序 一 拉丁语在中国	雷立柏 5
序 二 我们的父亲韦洛克	玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒 9
前 言	弗雷德里克·M·韦洛克 11
第六版修订前言	理查德·A·拉弗勒 16

导 言 39

Introduction

拉丁语在语言史中的位置 / The Position of the Latin Language in Linguistic History 39

拉丁语文学简述 / A Brief Survey of Latin Literature 43

字母表和发音 / The Alphabet and Pronunciation 50

元音 / Vowels 52

双元音 / Diphthongs 52

辅音 / Consonants 52

音节 / Syllables 54

重音 / Accent 55

地 图 56

Maps

图 1: 古代意大利 / Map 1: Ancient Italy 56

图 2: 罗马帝国 / Map 2: The Roman Empire 57

图 3: 古代希腊和爱琴海 / Map 3: Ancient Greece and The Aegean 58

第一课 动词;第一和第二变位法动词:现在时主动态的不定式、直陈式和命令式;翻译 001

1. Verbs; First and Second Conjugations: Present Infinitive, Indicative, and Imperative Active; Translating

动词 / Verbs 001

变位 / Conjugation 002

人称词尾 / Personal Endings 002

现在时主动态不定式和现在时词干 / Present Infinitive Active and Present Stem 002

Laudō 和 Moneō 的现在时主动态直陈式 / Present Indicative Active of Laudō & Moneō 003

现在时主动态命令式 / Present Active Imperative 004

阅读和翻译拉丁语 / Reading and Translating Latin 004

词汇表 / Vocabulary 004

句子翻译 / Sententiae (Sentences) 005

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 007

第二课 名词和格;第一变格法;形容词的一致;句法 008

2. Nouns and Cases; First Declension; Agreement of Adjectives; Syntax

名词和格 / Nouns and Cases 008

主格 / Nominative Case 008

属格 / Genitive Case 008

与格 / Dative Case 009

宾格 / Accusative Case 009

夺格 / Ablative Case 009

呼格 / Vocative Case 010

第一变格法——名词与形容词 / First Declension—Noun and Adjective 010

第一变格法名词的性=阴性 / Gender of first Declension=Feminine 011

形容词的一致 / Agreement of Adjectives 011

句法 / Syntax 011

词汇表 / Vocabulary 012

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 013

词源点滴 / Etymology 014

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 015

第三课 第二变格法:阳性名词与形容词;同位语;词序 016

3. Second Declension: Masculine Nouns and Adjectives; Apposition; Word Order

第二变格法 / The Second Declension 016

以-us 结尾的阳性 / Masculines in -us 016

以-er 结尾的阳性 / Masculines in -er 017

关于格词尾的说明 / Comments on Case Endings 017

同位语 / Apposition 018

词序 / Word Order 018

词汇表 / Vocabulary 019

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 019

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 020

词源点滴 / Etymology 021

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 021

第四课 第二变格法中性词;形容词;Sum 的现在时直陈式;谓语性名词和谓语形容词; 形容词作名词 022

4. Second Declension Neuters; Adjectives; Present Indicative of Sum; Predicate Nouns and Adjectives; Substantive Adjectives

第二变格法——中性词 / Second Declension—Neuters 022

形容词的变格和一致 / Declension and Agreement of Adjectives	023
Sum: 现在时不定式和现在时直陈式 / Sum: Present Infinitive and Present Indicative	023
Sum 的现在时不定式: esse, to be / Present Infinitive of Sum: esse, to be	024
Sum 的现在时直陈式 / Present Indicative of Sum	024
谓语性名词和谓语形容词 / Predicate Nouns and Adjectives	024
形容词作名词 / Substantive Adjectives	024
词汇表 / Vocabulary	025
练习与复习 / Practice and Review	026
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae	026
词源点滴 / Etymology	027
欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis!	027

第五课 第一和第二变位法动词: 将来时和未完成时; 以-er 结尾的形容词 029

5. First and Second Conjugations: Future and Imperfect; Adjectives in -er

将来时和未完成时 / The Future and Imperfect Tenses	029
Laudō 和 Moneō 的将来时和未完成时直陈式主动态 / Future And Imperfect Indicative Active of Laudō and Moneō	029
翻译 / Translation	030
以-er 结尾的第一、第二变格法形容词 / Adjectives of the First and Second Declension in -er	030
词汇表 / Vocabulary	031
练习与复习 / Practice and Review	032
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae	032
词源点滴 / Etymology	033
欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis!	034

第六课 Sum 的将来时和未完成时直陈式; Possum 的现在时、将来时和未完成时直陈式; 补充不定式 035

6. Sum: Future and Imperfect Indicative; Possum: Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative; Complementary Infinitive

Sum 的将来时和未完成时直陈式 / Future and Imperfect Indicative of Sum	035
不规则动词 Possum, Posse, Potuī: To Be Able, Can, Could / Irregular Possum, Posse, Potuī: To Be Able, Can, Could	035
补充不定式 / Complementary Infinitive	036
词汇表 / Vocabulary	036
练习与复习 / Practice and Review	037
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae	037
词源点滴 / Etymology	038

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 039

第七课 第三变格法名词 041

7. Third Declension Nouns

第三变格法名词 / Nouns of The Third Declension 041

性 / Gender 042

翻译 / Translation 042

词汇表 / Vocabulary 043

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 043

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 044

词源点滴 / Etymology 045

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 046

第八课 第三变位法动词:现在时不定式,现在时、将来时和未完成时的直陈式,命令式 047

8. Third Conjugation: Present Infinitive, Present, Future, and Imperfect Indicative, Imperative

现在时直陈式主动态 / Present Indicative Active 047

将来时直陈式主动态 / Future Indicative Active 047

未完成时直陈式主动态 / Imperfect Indicative Active 047

现在时命令式主动态 / Present Imperative Active 048

现在时不定式 / Present Infinitive 048

现在时词干和现在时直陈式 / Present Stem and Present Indicative 048

将来时直陈式 / Future Indicative 048

未完成时直陈式 Imperfect Indicative 048

现在时命令式 / Present Imperative 048

词汇表 / Vocabulary 049

练习与复习 / Practict and Review 050

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 050

词源点滴 / Etymology 051

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 052

第九课 指示词 Hic, Ille, Iste; 特殊的-īus 形容词 053

9. Demonstratives Hic, Ille, Iste; Special -īus Adjectives

指示词 / Demonstratives 053

变格 / Declension 053

用法和翻译 / Usage and Translation 054

特殊的-īus 形容词 / Special-īus Adjectives 055

词汇表 / Vocabulary 056

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 056

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 057

词源点滴 / Etymology 058

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 058

第十课 第四变位法动词和第三变位法的-īō 动词 060

10. Fourth Conjugation and -īō Verbs of the Third

现在时直陈式主动态 / Present Indicative Active 060

将来时直陈式主动态 / Future Indicative Active 060

未完成时直陈式主动态 / Imperfect Indicative Active 061

现在时命令式主动态 / Present Imperative Active 061

Audiō 的变位 / Conjugation of Audiō 061

Capiō 的变位 / Conjugation of Capiō 061

词汇表 / Vocabulary 062

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 062

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 063

词源点滴 / Etymology 064

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 064

第十一课 人称代词 Ego、Tū 和 Is; 指示词 Is 和 Īdem 065

11. Personal Pronouns Ego, Tū, and Is; Demonstratives Is and Īdem

人称代词 / Personal Pronouns 065

第一和第二人称代词 Ego/Nōs, Tū/Vōs / The First and Second Person Pronouns Ego/Nōs, Tū/Vōs 065

第三人称代词/指示代词 Is, Ea, Id / The Third Person/Demonstrative Pronoun Is, Ea, Id 066

用法 / Usage 066

Is, Ea, Id 作指示词 / Is, Ea, Id as Demonstrative 068

指示词 Īdem, Eadem, Idem, *the Same* / Demonstrative Īdem, Eadem, Idem, *the Same* 068

词汇表 / Vocabulary 068

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 069

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 070

词源点滴 / Etymology 071

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 072

第十二课 动词完成时系统的主动态 073

12. Perfect Active System of All Verbs

动词的主要部分 / Principal Parts 073

完成时主动态词干 / The Perfect Active Stem 074

用法、翻译以及与未完成时的区分 / Usage, Translation, and Distinction from the Imperfect 075

词汇表 / Vocabulary 076

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 076
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 077
词源点滴 / Etymology 079
欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 079

第十三课 反身代词和反身物主代词;强势代词 080

13. Reflexive Pronouns and Possessives; Intensive Pronoun

反身代词 / Reflexive Pronouns 080

反身代词的变格 / Declension of Reflexive Pronouns 080

第一、第二人称反身代词和人称代词的比较 / Parallel Examples of Reflexive and Personal Pronouns of 1st and 2nd Persons 081

第三人称反身代词和人称代词的比较 / Parallel Examples of Reflexive and Personal Pronouns of 3rd Person 081

反身物主代词 / Reflexive Possessives 082

强势代词 Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum / The Intensive Pronoun Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum 082

词汇表 / Vocabulary 083

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 084

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 084

词源点滴 / Etymology 085

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 085

第十四课 第三变格法的 i-词干名词;手段夺格,伴随夺格,方式夺格 087

14. I-Stem Nouns of the Third Declension; Ablatives of Means, Accompaniment, and Manner

阳性和阴性的 i-词干名词 / Masculine and Feminine i-Stems 088

中性的 i-词干名词 / Neuter i-Stems 088

不规则的 Vis / Irregular Vis 088

夺格的用法 / Ablative Case Uses 089

手段夺格或工具夺格 / Ablative of Means or Instrument 089

伴随夺格和方式夺格 / Ablatives of Accompaniment and Manner 089

词汇表 / Vocabulary 090

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 091

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 091

词源点滴 / Etymology 092

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 093

第十五课 数词;整体属格;带有基数词的属格和夺格;时间夺格 095

15. Numerals; Genitive of the Whole; Genitive and Ablative with Cardinal Numerals; Ablative of Time

数词 / Numerals 095

基数词 / Cardinal Numerals 095

序数词 / Ordinal Numerals 096

整体属格 / Genitive of The Whole 096

带有基数词的属格和夺格 / Genitive and Ablative with Cardinal Numerals 097

时间夺格:何时/期间 / Ablative of Time When or Within Which 097

词汇表 / Vocabulary 097

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 098

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 098

词源点滴 / Etymology 099

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 101

第十六课 第三变格法形容词 102

16. Third Declension Adjectives

评论 / Observations 103

用法 / Usage 104

词汇表 / Vocabulary 104

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 105

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 105

词源点滴 / Etymology 107

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 107

第十七课 关系代词 108

17. The Relative Pronoun

QUI, QUAE, QUOD, *who, which, that* / QUI, QUAE, QUOD, *who, which, that* 108

用法和一致 / Usage and Agreement 108

词汇表 / Vocabulary 110

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 110

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 111

词源点滴 / Etymology 112

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 112

第十八课 第一和第二变位法动词:现在时系统的被动态;施事夺格 114

18. First and Second Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System; Ablative of Agent

第一、第二变位法:现在时系统的被动态 / First and Second Conjugation: Present System
Passive Voice 114

Laudō 和 Moneō 的现在时直陈式被动态 / Present Indicative Passive of Laudō and Moneō 114

未完成时直陈式被动态 / Imperfect Indicative Passive 114

将来时直陈式被动态 / Future Indicative Passive 115

现在时不定式被动态 / The Present Passive Infinitive 115
被动态 / The Passive Voice 115
施事夺格 / Ablative of Personal Agent 116
词汇表 / Vocabulary 116
练习与复习 / Practice and Review 117
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 118
词源点滴 / Etymology 119
欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 119

第十九课 动词完成时系统的被动态;疑问代词和疑问形容词 120

19. Perfect Passive System of All Verbs; Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives

完成时系统的被动态 / The Perfect Passive System 120
完成时直陈式被动态 / Perfect Indicative Passive 120
将来完成时直陈式被动态 / Future Perfect Passive 120
过去完成时直陈式被动态 / Pluperfect Indicative Passive 120
用法和翻译 / Usage and Translation 121
疑问代词 / The Interrogative Pronoun 121
疑问形容词 / The Interrogative Adjective 122
疑问词与关系词的分 / The Interrogatives and Relative Distinguished 122
词汇表 / Vocabulary 123
练习与复习 / Practice and Review 124
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 124
词源点滴 / Etymology 126
欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 126

第二十课 第四变格法;地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格 127

20. Fourth Declension; Ablatives of Place from Which and Separation

第四变格法 / Fourth Declension 127
地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格 / Ablatives of Place from Which and Separation 128
词汇表 / Vocabulary 128
练习与复习 / Practice and Review 129
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 130
词源点滴 / Etymology 131
欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 131

第二十一课 第三和第四变位法动词:现在时系统的被动态 133

21. Third and Fourth Conjugations: Passive Voice of the Present System

现在时直陈式被动态 / Present Indicative Passive 133

将来时直陈式被动态 / Future Indicative Passive	133
未完成时直陈式被动态 / Imperfect Indicative Passive	133
现在时不定式被动态 / Present Infinitive Passive	134
动词变位缩写式 / Synopsis	134
词汇表 / Vocabulary	134
练习与复习 / Practice and Review	135
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae	136
词源点滴 / Etymology	137
欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis!	138

第二十二课 第五变格法;地点夺格(在何处);夺格用法总结 139

22. Fifth Declension; Ablative of Place Where; Summary of Ablative Uses

第五变格法 / The Fifth Declension	139
评论 / Observations	139
地点夺格(在何处);夺格用法总结 / Ablative of Place Where and Summary of Ablative Uses	140
一、带介词的夺格 / I. The Ablative with A Preposition	140
二、无介词夺格 / II. The Ablative without A Preposition	141
词汇表 / Vocabulary	141
练习与复习 / Practice and Review	142
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae	142
词源点滴 / Etymology	144
欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis!	144

第二十三课 分词 145

23. Participles

分词的变格 / Declension of Participles	146
分词作为动词性形容词 / Participles as Verbal Adjectives	147
把分词短语翻译成从句 / Translating Participial Phrases As Clauses	147
词汇表 / Vocabulary	148
练习与复习 / Practice and Review	149
古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae	149
词源点滴 / Etymology	151
欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis!	152

第二十四课 独立夺格;被动迂说法;施事与格 153

24. Ablative Absolute; Passive Periphrastic; Dative of Agent

独立夺格 / Ablative Absolute	153
--------------------------	-----

被动迂说法变位:动形词+ Sum / The Passive Periphrastic Conjugation:Gerundive+Sum 154

施事与格 / The Dative of Agent 155

词汇表 / Vocabulary 155

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 156

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 157

词源点滴 / Etymology 158

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 158

第二十五课 不定式;间接陈述 160

25. Infinitives; Indirect Statement

不定式 / Infinitives 160

Agō,agere,ēgi, āctum, *to lead* 的不定式 / Infinitives of agō,agere,ēgi, āctum, *to lead* 161

用法 / Usage 161

不定式用在带有宾格主语的间接陈述中 / Infinitive In Indirect Statement with Accusative Subject 161

间接陈述中的不定式时态 / Infinitive Tenses in Indirect Statement 163

词汇表 / Vocabulary 164

能够引出间接陈述的动词表 / List of Verbs Capable of Introducing Indirect Statement 164

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 165

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 165

词源点滴 / Etymology 166

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 167

第二十六课 形容词的比较;比较级的变格;比较夺格 169

26. Comparison of Adjectives; Declension of Comparatives; Ablative of Comparison

形容词的比较 / Comparison of Adjectives 169

比较级和最高级的构成 / Formation of the Comparative and the Superlative 169

比较级的变格 / Declension of Comparatives 170

用法和翻译 / Usage and Translation 170

比较级和最高级与 Quam 连用 / Quam with the Comparative and Superlative 171

比较夺格 / Ablative of Comparison 171

词汇表 / Vocabulary 171

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 172

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 173

词源点滴 / Etymology 175

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 176

第二十七课 具有特殊形式和不规则形式的形容词比较等级 177

27. Special and Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

具有特殊形式最高级的形容词 / Adjectives Having Peculiar Forms in the Superlative 177

具有不规则比较等级的形容词 / Adjectives of Irregular Comparison 178

Plūs 的变格 / Declension of Plūs 178

词汇表 / Vocabulary 179

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 179

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 180

词源点滴 / Etymology 181

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 183

第二十八课 虚拟式;现在时虚拟式;祈愿句和目的从句 184

28. Subjunctive Mood; Present Subjunctive; Jussive and Purpose Clauses

虚拟式 / The Subjunctive Mood 184

虚拟式的时态 / Subjunctive Tenses 184

虚拟句 / Subjunctive Clauses 185

现在时虚拟式的变位 / Conjugation of the Present Subjunctive 185

翻译 / Translation 185

祈愿虚拟式 / The Jussive Subjunctive 186

目的从句 / Purpose Clauses 186

词汇表 / Vocabulary 187

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 188

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 188

词源点滴 / Etymology 190

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 190

第二十九课 未完成时虚拟式;Sum 和 Possum 的现在时和未完成时虚拟式;结果从句 192

29. Imperfect Subjunctive; Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of Sum and Possum; Result Clauses

未完成时虚拟式 / The Imperfect Subjunctive 192

Sum 和 Possum 的现在时和未完成时虚拟式 / Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of Sum and Possum 192

未完成时虚拟式的用法和翻译 / Use and Translation of the Imperfect Subjunctive 193

结果从句 / Result Clauses 193

词汇表 / Vocabulary 194

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 195

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 196

词源点滴 / Etymology 197

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 198

第三十课 完成时和过去完成时虚拟式;间接问句;时态序列 200

30. Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive; Indirect Questions; Sequence of Tenses

完成时和过去完成时虚拟式 / Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive 200

完成时虚拟式主动态 / Perfect Subjunctive Active 200

过去完成时虚拟式主动态 / Pluperfect Subjunctive Active 200

完成时虚拟式被动态 / Perfect Subjunctive Passive 201

过去完成时虚拟式被动态 / Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive 201

翻译和用法 / Translation and Usage 201

动词变位缩写式 / Synopsis 201

间接问句 / Indirect Questions 201

时态序列 / Sequence of Tenses 202

词汇表 / Vocabulary 203

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 204

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 205

词源点滴 / Etymology 207

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 207

第三十一课 Cum 从句;Ferō 209

31. Cum Clauses; Ferō

Cum 从句 / Cum Clauses 209

不规则的 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to bear, carry* / Irregular ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to bear, carry* 210

动词变位缩写式 / Synopsis 211

词汇表 / Vocabulary 211

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 212

古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 213

词源点滴 / Etymology 215

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 215

第三十二课 副词的构成与比较等级;Volō, Mālō, Nōlō;附带条件从句 217

32. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs; Volō, Mālō, Nōlō; Proviso Clauses

副词的构成与比较等级 / Formation and Comparison of Adverbs 217

原级 / Positive Degree 217

比较级和最高级 / Comparative and Superlative Degree 218

副词的比较级和最高级与 Quam 连用 / Quam with Comparative and Superlative Adverbs 218

不规则副词的比较 / Comparison of Irregular Adverbs 218

不规则的 Volō, velle, voluī, *to wish* / Irregular Volō, velle, voluī, *to wish* 219

动词变位缩写式 / Synopsis 219

Nōlō 和 Mālō / Nōlō and Mālō 220

Nōlō 的现在时直陈式 / Present Indicative of Nōlō 220

- Mālō 的现在时直陈式 / Present Indicative of Mālō 220
 Nōlō 和否定性的命令 / Nōlō and Negative Commands 220
 附带条件从句 / Proviso Clauses 220
 词汇表 / Vocabulary 221
 练习与复习 / Practice and Review 221
 古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 222
 词源点滴 / Etymology 224
 欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 224

第三十三课 条件从句 226

33. Conditions

- 条件句 / Conditional Sentences 226
 直陈条件句 / Indicative Conditions 226
 虚拟条件句 / Subjunctive Conditions 227
 例句 / Further Examples 227
 词汇表 / Vocabulary 228
 练习与复习 / Practice and Review 228
 古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 229
 词源点滴 / Etymology 230
 欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 231

第三十四课 异态动词;特殊异态动词加夺格 232

34. Deponent Verbs; Ablative with Special Deponents

- 异态动词 / Deponent Verbs 232
 主要部分与变位 / Principal Parts and Conjugation 232
 例词 Hortor 和 Sequor 的各种形式 / Sample Forms of Hortor and Sequor 232
 动词变位缩写式 / Synopsis 234
 分词和不定式 / Participles and Infinitives 234
 半异态动词 / Semi-Deponent Verbs 235
 特殊异态动词加夺格 / Ablative with Special Deponents 235
 含有异态动词的句子的更多例子 / Further Examples of Deponent Forms in Sentences 236
 词汇表 / Vocabulary 236
 练习与复习 / Practice and Review 237
 古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 238
 词源点滴 / Etymology 240
 欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 241

第三十五课 形容词加与格;特殊动词加与格;复合动词加与格 243

35. Dative with Adjectives; Dative with Special Verbs; Dative with Compounds

- 形容词加与格 / Dative with Adjectives 243

- 特殊动词加与格 / Dative with Special Verbs 244
复合动词加与格 / Dative with Compound Verbs 245
 词汇表 / Vocabulary 246
 练习与复习 / Practice and Review 246
 古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 247
 词源点滴 / Etymology 249
 欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 249

第三十六课 间接命令句;Fīō 251

36. Jussive Noun Clauses; Fīō

- 间接命令句 / Jussive Noun Clauses 251
不规则的 Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *to occur, happen; be done, be made* / Irregular Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *to occur, happen; be done, be made* 252
 词汇表 / Vocabulary 253
 练习与复习 / Practice and Review 254
 古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 254
 词源点滴 / Etymology 256
 欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 257

第三十七课 Eō 的变位;地点和时间的结构 258

37. Conjugation of Eō;Constructions of Place and Time

- 不规则动词 Eō, ire, iī, itum, *to go* / Irregular Eō, ire, iī, itum, *to go* 258
 对 Eō 的评论 / Observations on Eō 259
地点结构 / Place Constructions 259
时间结构 / Time Constructions 260
 词汇表 / Vocabulary 261
 练习与复习 / Practice and Review 262
 古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 263
 词源点滴 / Etymology 265
 欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 265

第三十八课 特征关系从句;关系与格;目的动名词 267

38. Relative Clauses of Characteristic; Dative of Reference; Supines

- 特征关系从句 / Relative Clauses of Characteristic 267
关系与格或兴趣与格 / Dative of Reference or Interest 268
目的动名词 / Supines 268
 词汇表 / Vocabulary 269
 练习与复习 / Practice and Review 270
 古代名言 / Sententiae Antiquae 270

词源点滴 / Etymology 272

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 273

第三十九课 动名词和动形词 274

39. Gerund and Gerundive

动形词 / The Gerundive 274

动名词 / The Gerund 274

动名词的变格 / Declension of the Gerund 274

动名词与动形词的区别 / Differences Between Gerund and Gerundive 275

动名词短语和动形词短语 / Gerund and Gerundive Phrases 275

词汇表 / Vocabulary 276

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 277

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 278

词源点滴 / Etymology 280

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latīna Est Gaudium—Et Ūtilis! 281

第四十课 直接问句中的-Ne、Num 和 Nōnne; 疑虑从句; 描述属格和描述夺格 282

40. -Ne, Num, and Nōnne in Direct Questions; Fear Clauses; Genitive and Ablative of Description

直接问句中的-Ne、Num 和 Nōnne / -Ne, Num, and Nōnne in Direct Questions 282

疑虑从句 / Fear Clauses 282

描述属格和描述夺格 / Genitive and Ablative of Description 283

词汇表 / Vocabulary 283

练习与复习 / Practice and Review 284

古代名言 / Sententiae Antīquae 285

词源点滴 / Etymology 288

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语! / Latina Est Gaudium—Etu Tilis! 288

古文选编 290

Locī Antīquī

1. Disillusionment 290

2. How Demosthenes Overcame His Handicaps 291

3. The Tyrant Can Trust No One 291

4. The Sword of Damocles 292

5. Derivation of “Philosophus” and Subjects of Philosophy 292

6. Cicero on the Value and the Nature of Friendship 293

7. Cicero on War 294

8. Hannibal; the Second Punic War 295

9. Autobiographical Notes by Horace 296

10. Horace Longs for the Simple, Peaceful Country Life on His Sabine Farm 297

11. Why No Letters? 297
12. What Pliny Thinks of the Races 298
13. Pliny Endows a School 298
14. Large Gifts—Yes, But Only Bait 298
15. The Lord's Prayer 298
16. Caedmon's Anglo-Saxon Verses and the Difficulties of Translation 299
17. Who Will Put the Bell on the Cat's Neck? 299
18. The Devil and a Thirteenth-Century Schoolboy 300

古代文选 301

Locī Immūtātī

1. A Dedication 301
2. How Many Kisses 302
3. Death of a Pet Sparrow 302
4. Frāter Avē, Atque Valē 303
5. Vitriolic Denunciation of the Leader of a Conspiracy against the Roman State 304
6. The Arrest and Trial of the Conspirators 307
7. Socrates' "Either-Or" Belief 312
8. A More Positive View about Immortality 313
9. On Contempt of Death 315
10. Literature: Its Value and Delight 316
11. Death of a Puppy (Example of an Omen) 317
12. Too Conscientious (An Example of Irony) 318
13. Quam Multa Nōn Dēsīderō ! 318
14. What Makes a Good Appetite 319
15. Themistocles; Fame and Expediency 320
16. Get the Tusculan Country House Ready 320
17. Livy on the Death of Cicero 321
18. Miltiades and The Battle of Marathon 322
19. Themistocles and The Battle of Salamis 325
20. Aristides the Just 328
21. Timoleon 330
22. Horace's "Carpe Diem" 331
23. Integer Vītae 332
24. Aurea Mediocritās—The Golden Mean 333
25. Lābuntur Annī 334

26. A Sense of Balance in Life 335
27. Diēs Fēstus 336
28. A Monument More Lasting than Bronze 336
29. The Other Person's Faults and Our Own 337
30. Sour Grapes 337
31. The Fox and the Tragic Mask 337
32. The Stag at the Spring 337
33. The Fox Gets the Raven's Cheese 338
34. The Ass and the Old Shepherd 339
35. The Two Mules and the Robbers 339
36. Delights of the Country 340
37. C. Plinius Canīniō Suō S. 340
38. Happy Married Life 341
39. Faithful in Sickness and in Death 341
40. A Sweet, Brave Girl 342
41. Pliny's Concern about a Sick Freedman 343
42. C. Plinius Sabīniānō Suō S. 345
43. C. Plinius Sabīniānō Suō S. 345
44. Selection of a Teacher 345
45. The Old Boy Dyed His Hair 346
46. What's in a Name? 346
47. Fake Tears 347
48. Even Though You Do Invite Me—I'll Come! 347
49. Pro-Cras-Tination 347
50. Issa 347

自测练习及答案 349

Optional Self-Tutorial Exercises

- 第一课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 1 350
- 第二课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 2 351
- 第三课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 3 353
- 第四课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 4 354
- 第五课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 5 356
- 第六课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 6 357
- 第七课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 7 358
- 第八课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 8 360
- 第九课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 9 361
- 第十课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 10 363

第十一课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 11	365
第十二课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 12	367
第十三课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 13	369
第十四课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 14	370
第十五课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 15	372
第十六课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 16	374
第十七课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 17	376
第十八课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 18	377
第十九课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 19	379
第二十课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 20	380
第二十一课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 21	382
第二十二课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 22	384
第二十三课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 23	386
第二十四课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 24	388
第二十五课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 25	390
第二十六课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 26	393
第二十七课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 27	395
第二十八课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 28	396
第二十九课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 29	399
第三十课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 30	401
第三十一课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 31	404
第三十二课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 32	406
第三十三课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 33	408
第三十四课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 34	410
第三十五课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 35	412
第三十六课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 36	414
第三十七课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 37	416
第三十八课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 38	419
第三十九课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 39	421
第四十课练习与答案 / Exercises and Keys for Chapter 40	424

附录 425

Appendix

词源帮助 / Some Etymological Aids	425
两条语音变化规则 / Two Rules of Phonetic Change	425
前缀 / Prefixes	426
后缀 / Suffixes	431
句法补充 / Supplementary Syntax	434
材料属格 / / Gentive of Material	434
宾语属格 / Objective Gentive	434

目的与格 / Dative of Purpose	434
物主与格 / Dative of Possession	435
指定夺格 / Ablative of Specification	435
原因夺格 / Ablative of Cause	435
差异夺格 / Ablative of Degree of Difference	436
间接引语中的从句 / Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse	436
宾语不定式 / Objective in Finitive	436
词形总结 / Summary of Forms	438
名词变格 / Nouns—Declensions	438
形容词变格 / Adjectives—Declensions	439
代词 / Pronouns	440
形容词的比较 / Comparison of Adjectives	442
副词的比较 / Comparison of Adverbs	442
数词 / Numerals	443
第一到第四变位法 / Conjugations 1–4	444
异态动词 / Deponent Verbs	447
不规则动词 / Irregular Verbs	449
不规则: <i>ferō , ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear, carry</i> / Irregular: <i>ferō , ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear, carry</i>	451
不规则: <i>ferō , fierī, factus sum, to happen, become; be made, be done</i> / Irregular: <i>ferō , fierī, factus sum, to happen, become; be made, be done</i>	452

英拉词汇表 453

English–Latin Vocabulary

拉英词汇表 462

Latin–English Vocabulary

缩 写 483

Abbreviations

作者和所引著作 / Authors and Works Cited 483

其他缩写 / Other Abbreviations 484

古代名言出处 486

Location of the Sententiae Antīquae

汉英术语对照表 489

Chinese–English Terminology

译后记 493

出版后记 498

导 言

不懂外语的人也不会了解母语。(歌德)

学习一门语言,就获得了一次新生。(法国谚语)

只要具备一点点背景知识,就可以使学习拉丁语的兴趣大增,本篇导言的目的便是提供这种背景知识。我们打算从语言学的角度介绍拉丁语在语言史中的位置,对拉丁语文学作一简要回顾,同时介绍一些作家,他们的部分作品构成了本书中的“古代名言”和“古文选编”部分。这一回顾虽然简要,却也提供了某种难得的文学视角。关于字母表的叙述也是如此。当然最后还要介绍一下字母发音,从而使整部导言更加完整。

拉丁语在语言史中的位置

当我们说出“*I*”(我[主格])、“*me*”(我[宾格])、“*is*”(是)、“*mother*”(母亲)、“*brother*”(兄弟)、“*ten*”(十)这些词时,我们实际上是在以某种方式言说欧洲人和亚洲人已经说了上千年的词。事实上,我们并不清楚这些词到底有多么古老。如果说它们的拼写和发音因时空的差异而有所不同,这并不奇怪;真正令人惊讶的是,这些人类思想符号的基本要素竟然能够越过这样的时空跨度,一直留存到今天。从下面这个简表就可以看出这一点。¹

英语	<i>I</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>mother</i>	<i>brother</i>	<i>ten</i>
梵语 ²	aham	mā	asti	mātar-	bhrātar-	daśam
希腊语	egō	me	esti	mētēr	phrātēr ³	deka
拉丁语	ego	mē	est	māter	frāter	decem
盎格鲁-撒克逊语 ⁴	ic	mē	is	mōdor	brōthor	tūen

¹ 这张表中省略了一些可有可无的成分。除了表中列出的词汇,可举的例子还有许多。

² 梵语是古印度圣典所使用的语言,它是南亚次大陆现代诸印欧语系语言的母语。

³ 虽然与这一列中的其他词同源,但古典希腊词 *phrātēr* 的意思是“部族成员”。

⁴ 日耳曼语族中的一支,该语族的其他成员还包括哥特语、德语、荷兰语、丹麦语、挪威语、瑞典语、冰岛语、英语。

古爱尔兰语 ¹		mé	is	máthir	bráthir	deich
立陶宛语 ²	aš	manè	esti	motè	broterélis	dešimtis
俄语 ³	ja	menja	jest'	mat'	brat	desjat'

由这张表格我们可以看出,这些语言相互之间是有关联的。⁴然而在它们当中,除英语是从盎格鲁-撒克逊语派生出来⁵的以外,没有任何一种语言是直接由另一种语言派生出来的,而是都可以回溯到一种共同的原始语。这种语言现已消亡,但根据留存下来的语言证据,乃有此推断。语言学家们称这些语言为“同源语”(cognate,拉丁语,意为“相关的”,字面意思是“共生的”,即来自同一祖先)。所有这些“亲戚语言”或同源语的原始语(现已消亡)一般称为原始印欧语,因为它的派生语既出现在印度附近(梵语、伊朗语),也出现在欧洲(希腊语、拉丁语、日耳曼语、凯尔特语、斯拉夫语、波罗的语)。⁶据文献考证,这些语言中最古老的是梵语、伊朗语、希腊语和拉丁语,这些文献均可追溯到公元前。

为了更清楚地说明派生语与同源语的区别,我们可以考察一下罗曼语与拉丁语的关系,以及罗曼诸语言之间的关系。这时的历史都有文字记录可查,我们看到,随着罗马在政治上征服了高卢(法国)、西班牙和达契亚(罗马尼亚),语言上的征服也悄然出现。越来越多的普通人(*vulgus*,所以是“通俗”[*vulgar*]拉丁语)开始讲古拉丁语,从这种语言中慢慢发展出了罗曼诸语言,如法语、西班牙语、葡萄牙语、罗马尼亚语、意大利语等等。因此我们可以说,意大利语、法语、西班牙语等语言都是从拉丁语派生出来的,它们彼此同源。

前面已经谈到,英语是从与拉丁语同源的盎格鲁-撒克逊语中派生出来的,但这远远不是事情的全部。盎格鲁-撒克逊语早先从拉丁语中借用过一些

¹ 凯尔特语族中的一支,该语族的其他成员还包括高卢语、布列塔尼人的凯尔特语、苏格兰语(盖尔语)。列表中的古爱尔兰语 *mé* 其实是主格,在含义和用法上等同于“*I*”,在形式上却等同于“*me*”。

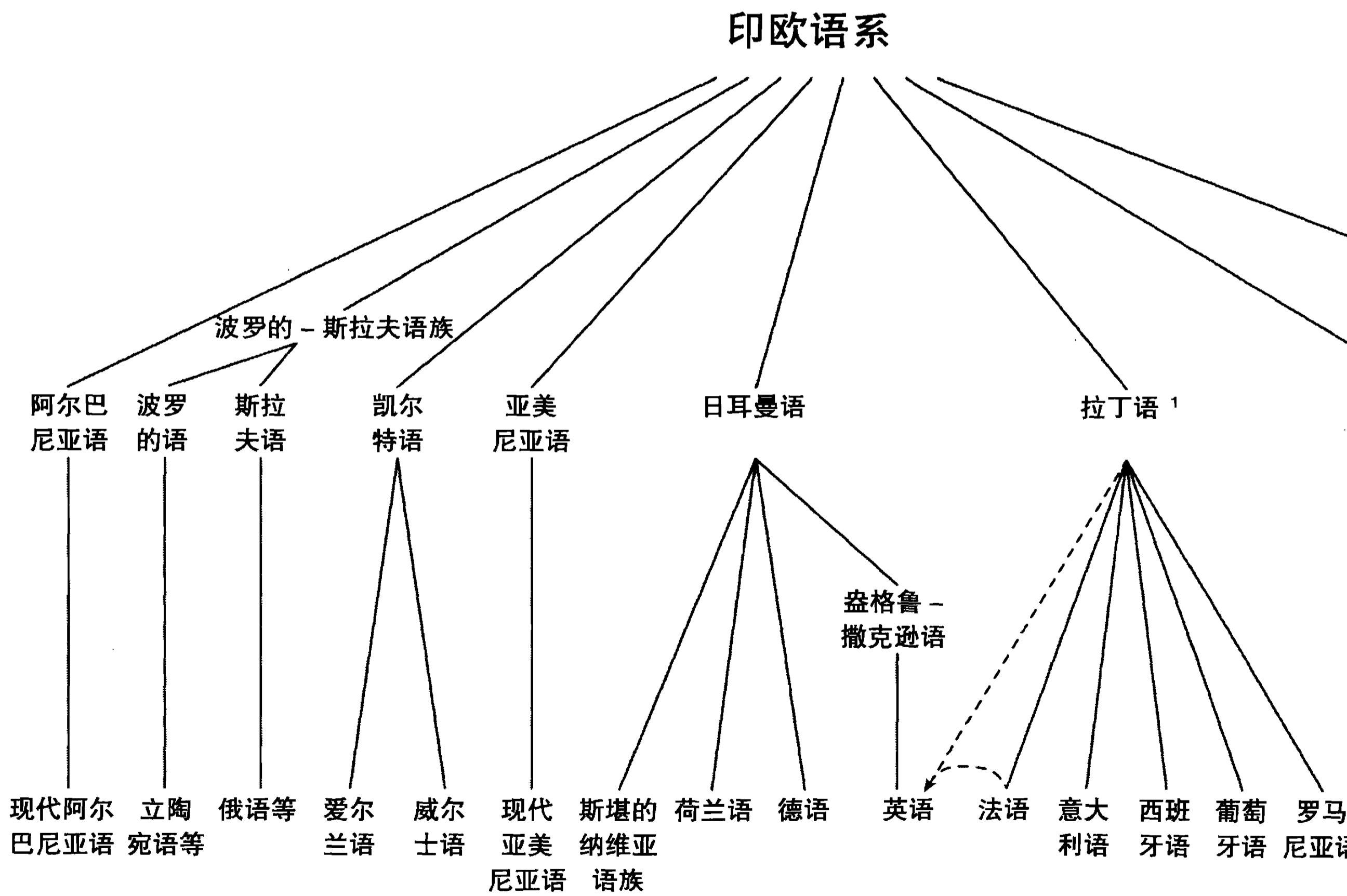
² 波罗的语族中的一支,该语族的其他成员还包括拉脱维亚语和古普鲁士语。

³ 斯拉夫语族中的一支,该语族的其他成员还包括波兰语、保加利亚语、捷克语。

⁴ 这个庞大的语系还显示了屈折变化方面的关系,但这里无意考察这一点。屈折语是指这样一种语言,它的名词、代词、形容词和动词都有可变词尾,通过这些词尾来表示句子中词与词的关系。需要注意的是,和拉丁语一样,盎格鲁-撒克逊语也是一种屈折语,但其后代英语却失去了它的大部分屈折变化。

⁵ 英语与拉丁语的关系将在后面给出。

⁶ 请注意,许多语言(如闪语族、埃及语、巴斯克语、汉语以及非洲和美洲的土著语言)都不属于印欧语系。



¹实际上,拉丁语只是若干种意大利方言(比如奥斯肯语和翁布里亚语)中的一种,过了很久之后才脱颖而出。类似地,方言(如伊奥利亚方言、雅典方言、爱奥尼亚方言、多利斯方言)。

filius	figlio	hijo	fils	son
ille	il	el	(le) ³	the(在古典拉丁语中是 that)
illa	la	la	la	the(在古典拉丁语中是 that)
quattuor	quattro	cuatro	quatre	four
bonus	buono	bueno	bon	good
bene	bene	bien	bien	well(副词)
facere	fare	hacer	faire	make, do
dīcere	dire	decir	dire	say
legere	leggere	leer	lire	read

词汇。公元 7 世纪时,又有更多的拉丁词⁴被吸收进来,这主要是由于坎特伯雷的圣奥古斯丁(不是那个著名的希波的圣奥古斯丁)著作的影响,他曾受教皇格列高利差遣,力图使盎格鲁人皈依基督教。在征服者威廉⁵于 1066 年取得胜利之后,诺曼法语成为上流语言,盎格鲁-撒克逊语被看作是战败者和农奴讲的劣等语言。盎格鲁-撒克逊语不再是文学语言,而是成了日常生活中的土话。然而,又过了大约两个世纪,随着诺曼人的后裔最终与当地英国人融合,盎格鲁-撒克逊语又重新得到了肯定。但是由于自身的贫乏,它在成为文学语言之前,不得不在文学、思想和文化上借用数百个法语词。到了 13、14 世纪,随着这种借用的不断增多,中古英语慢慢发展出来,其代表人物便是于 1400 年去世的乔叟(Chaucer)。除了这些含有拉丁词根的法语词被吸收进来,还有一些词是直接

¹ 在古典拉丁语中, *bucca* 是“面颊”的意思,对应于 *mouth*(口)的词是 *ōs, ōris*。

² 在古典拉丁语中,对应于 *horse*(马)的词是 *equus*。

³ 由 *ille* 派生,但实际上与 *il* 和 *el* 并不同源。

⁴ 其中有许多词其实源于希腊语和希伯来语,只是都被拉丁化了。拉丁文《圣经》起了重要作用。

⁵ 征服者威廉(William the Conqueror, 1027-1087),英国国王(1066-1087)。原系法国诺曼底公爵。1066 年,英王爱德华(忏悔者)死而无嗣,大贵族哈罗德(Harold)被贵族会议拥戴即位。威廉借口前王遗嘱,救济诺曼底封建主和骑士,在教皇支持下渡海侵入英国,哈斯丁(Hastings)一战击毙哈罗德,自立为英王。——译者注

拉丁语借过来的。到了 16、17 世纪,文艺复兴重新唤起了人们对于古典作品的兴趣,从而使这一过程得到加强。从那以后,拉丁语一直是许多新词特别是科学语汇的来源。¹

既然英语经由盎格鲁-撒克逊语而与拉丁语同源,而且英语从拉丁语中直接或间接地借用了许多词汇,所以我们很容易用自己的词汇来说明同源和派生现象。例如,“brother”(兄弟)一词与拉丁词 *frāter*(兄弟)同源,而“fraternal”(兄弟的)显然是由 *frāter* 派生出来的。这样的例子还有很多:

英语	拉丁语同源词 ²	英语派生词
mother	<i>māter</i>	maternal
two	<i>duo</i>	dual, duet
tooth	<i>dēns</i> , 词干 <i>dent-</i>	dental
foot	<i>pēs</i> , 词干 <i>ped-</i>	pedal
heart	<i>cor</i> , 词干 <i>cord-</i>	cordial
bear	<i>ferō</i>	fertile

我们的词汇为什么会如此丰富,由此也就不难理解了。我们学习拉丁语的时间越长,就越能真切地体会到,如果没有拉丁语的基本要素,我们的语言将会是多么贫乏。

这一概述尽管简略,但还是可以帮助我们理解拉丁语在欧洲语言史中的大体位置,领会拉丁语对于我们现代人的重要性。拉丁语是许多语言的同源语,³也是许多语言的源始语。它甚至称得上是我们自身语言的母语。第 14 页的简表可以说明这一点。⁴

拉丁语文学简述

本书选用的拉丁语材料主要出自文学作品,这里有必要对拉丁语文学做一番概述,以彰显其特征和范围。为了帮助记忆,我们将拉丁语文学做如下的历史分期。不过,虽然这一分期有一定的道理,但我们要时刻记住,时期的名称和年

¹ 显然,如果不借助拉丁语词汇和一般的古典文学作品,即使是 20 世纪的广告设计者也会黔驴技穷,束手无策。

² 格里姆定律(Grimm's law)提出了日耳曼语中某些辅音(塞音)的音变规律,这表明一些看上去如此不同的词,比如英语的 *heart* 和拉丁语的 *cor, cord-*,其实都起源于同一个词。

³ 需要特别注意的是,拉丁语只是与希腊语同源,而不是由它派生出来。

⁴ 出于简洁和明晰的考虑,这里省去了一些语言和中间环节。需要特别注意的是,这里无意说明希腊语对英语的影响。印欧语系中有两支——安纳托利亚语和吐火罗语——现已消亡,表中没有列出。

代并不是绝对的。

- 一、早期(约公元前 80 年以前)
- 二、黄金时代(公元前 80 年—公元 14 年)
 - 1. 西塞罗时期(公元前 80 年—公元前 43 年)
 - 2. 奥古斯都时期(公元前 43 年—公元 14 年)
- 三、白银时代(公元 14 年—约公元 138 年)
- 四、教父时期(公元 2 世纪末—公元 5 世纪)
- 五、中世纪(公元 6 世纪—公元 14 世纪)
- 六、文艺复兴(约公元 15 世纪)至今

一、早期(约公元前 80 年以前)

公元前 5 至 4 世纪,希腊文明达到了顶峰,文学艺术空前繁荣。而相比之下,这段时期的罗马则乏善可陈。根据目前散见的证据,当地只出现了一种粗糙的、强调重音音节排列的萨图尔努斯格律(Saturnian meter),本地的一些幽默讽刺短剧,以及用于记录和说话的一种粗陋的实用散文。

然而,到了公元前 3 世纪,罗马的扩张使罗马人接触到了希腊文明。不知为什么,讲求实际、崇尚政治和法律的罗马人竟然被自己所看到的一切迷住了,作家们纷纷到学校学习希腊文学。从这时起,希腊文学的形式、格律、修辞技巧、题材和观念对罗马文学产生了深远的影响,甚至当罗马文学已经颇具自己的风格和原创性时也是如此。

事实上,罗马人自己毫不隐讳这一点。虽然罗马人接着也创作诗歌、悲剧、讽刺文学和发表演讲,但在这段向希腊学习的时期里,流传至今的最伟大成就是普劳图斯(Plautus,约公元前 254 年—公元前 184 年)和泰伦提乌斯(Terence,公元前 185 年—公元前 159 年)的喜剧。这些剧目基于一种关于风俗和生活方式的希腊戏剧,即所谓的“新戏剧”。直到今天,它们仍然拥有大批读者。事实上,其中有些剧目对现代剧作家产生了影响。例如,普劳图斯的《墨奈赫穆斯兄弟》(*Menaechmi*)就曾启发莎士比亚创作了《错中错》(*Comedy of Errors*)。

二、黄金时代(公元前 80 年—公元 14 年)

公元前 1 世纪,罗马作家完善了他们的文学语言,使拉丁语文学成为世界上最伟大的文学之一。它尤以优美而严整的古典形式和真实的材料内容而著称。如果说卢克莱修曾经抱怨过拉丁语词汇的贫乏,那么西塞罗则对词汇及其用法进行了锻造,使得拉丁语在 1300 多年的时间里一直是一种灵活而精妙的语言工具。¹

¹ 参见下面中世纪拉丁语和文艺复兴拉丁语。

1. 西塞罗时期(公元前 80 年—公元前 43 年)

西塞罗时期的文学作品是在罗马共和国末期产生的。这一时期内战频仍,君主独裁专断,宪法权利随时可能遭武力践踏。整个社会自私自利,炫耀浮华,道德败坏,宗教衰微。本书中出现的这一时期的杰出作家有:

卢克莱修(Titus Lūcrētius Cārus, 约公元前 98 年—公元前 55 年):写出了《物性论》(*Dē Rērum Nātūrā*),这是一篇教导人通过伊壁鸠鲁哲学获得幸福的长诗。这种哲学建立在快乐¹的基础之上,背后有一种原子论作支撑,这种原子论认为,宇宙受制于自然法则而不是神的法则,从而使人们对神的畏惧以及宗教专制得以消解,卢克莱修认为这些东西破坏了人的幸福。

卡图卢斯(Gāius Valerius Catullus, 约公元前 84 年—公元前 54 年):抒情诗人,罗马文学的罗伯特·彭斯²。他出生在意大利北部,富于激情,生性敏感。他疯狂地迷恋上了一个被他称作“勒斯比娅”(这是她的笔名,其真名叫克洛狄娅)的精于世故的女子,最终痛苦地幡然醒悟。他有一百多首诗歌留存下来。

西塞罗(Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, 公元前 106 年—公元前 43 年):最伟大的罗马演说家。他的雄辩挫败了公元前 63 年破产贵族喀提林³的阴谋,也使他本人在 20 年后反抗安东尼高压政策的过程中丢掉了性命。他被誉为罗马雄辩术的权威,曾向国民阐释希腊哲学,写过《论友谊》(*Dē Amīcitiā*)、《论老年》(*Dē Senectūte*)等著作,还留下了不少显露性情的非正式的书信。西塞罗对拉丁语本身也做出过重大贡献,这一点我们已经说过。

恺撒(Gāius Iūlius Caesar, 公元前 102 或 100 年—公元前 44 年):演说家,政治家,将军,执政官,作家。最著名的著作是军事回忆录《高卢战记》(*Bellum Gallicum*)和《内战记》(*Bellum Cīvile*)。

涅波斯(Cornēlius Nepōs, 公元前 99 年—公元前 24 年):卡图卢斯和恺撒的朋友,传记作家,其作品主要不是因其历史文献价值而著名,而是因为相对平易而通俗的风格。

叙鲁斯(Publilius Syrus, 盛年为公元前 43 年):被卖到罗马的奴隶,因其哑剧而著名,但现在只有一些格言性警句最为人称道。

2. 奥古斯都时期(公元前 43 年—公元 14 年)

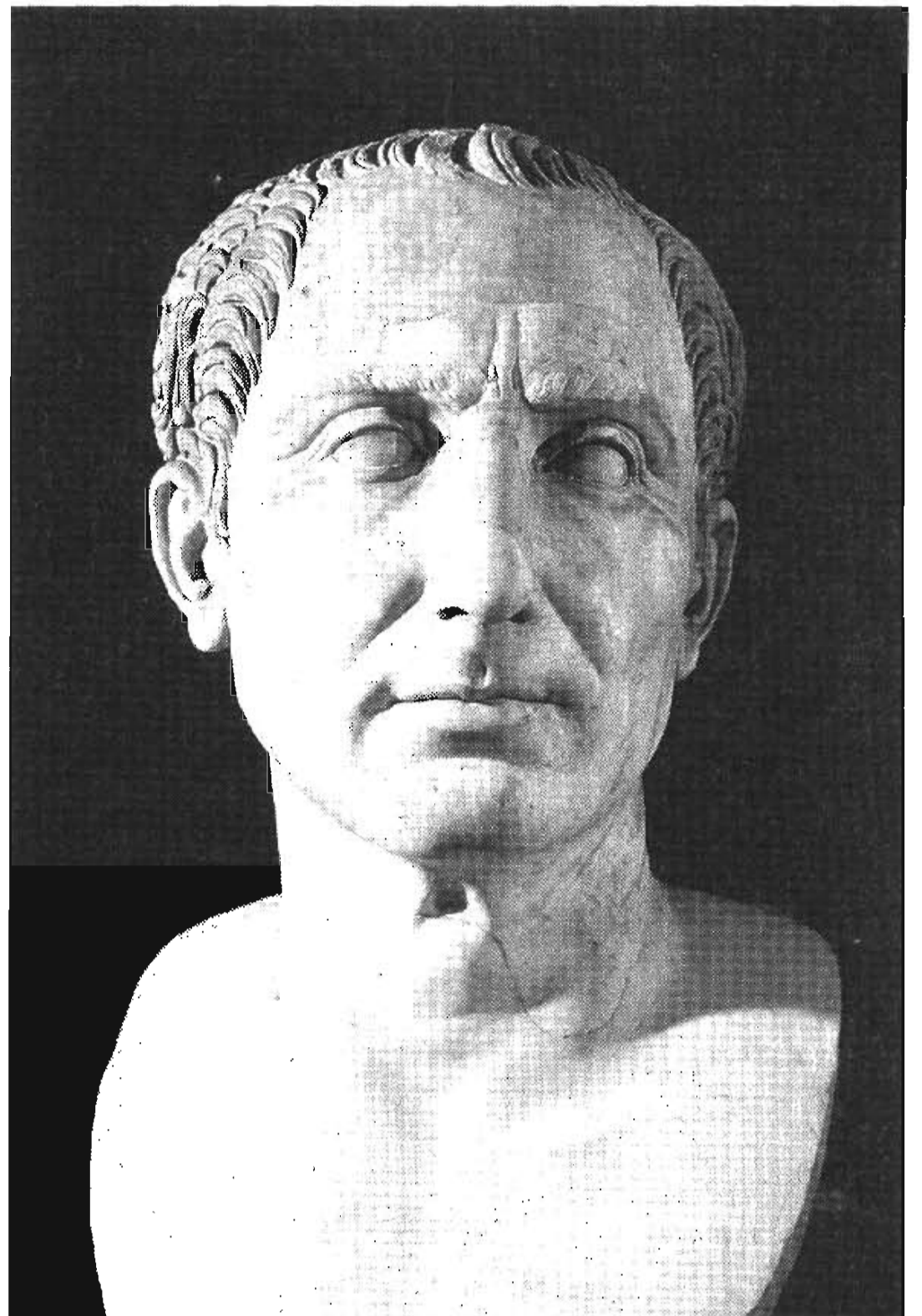
奥古斯都(Augustus)是罗马帝国的开国皇帝,这一时期正是以他的名字命

¹ 然而,认为快乐仅仅意味着吃喝玩乐实乃俗见。

² 罗伯特·彭斯(Robert Burns, 1759—1796),苏格兰诗人。他主要用苏格兰方言写抒情诗,曾长期搜集整理民歌。——译者注

³ 参见第十一课“Cicero Denounces Catiline”以及第三十课的“Evidence and Confession”的注释介绍。

Julius Caesar
1st century B. C.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy



名的。他希望通过稳定的政府来消除时代的罪恶,建立国内和平,赢得罗马人对其新政权的支持。为此,奥古斯都和他的亲密谋臣麦凯纳斯(Maecenas)试图使文学也能为国家效力。在他们的资助下,维吉尔和贺拉斯被授予“桂冠诗人”称号。现代的一些评论家认为,这件事情损害了这些诗人的高尚情操;另一些人则在贺拉斯那里看到了一种独立精神和真正的道德关切,认为维吉尔通过史诗英雄埃涅阿斯(Aeneas),并不仅仅是在歌颂奥古斯都,而是在向皇帝暗示应当怎样做一国之君。¹

维吉尔(Pūblius Vergilius Marō,公元前70年—公元前19年):生于意大利北部,出身卑微。他热爱自然,对人类抱有深刻的同情,同时也是一个伊壁鸠鲁主义者和神秘主义者。他严于内省,是语言和文学的建筑师,“语言之王”(lord of language)。其作品《牧歌》(*Eclogues*)以及歌颂农业生活的教诲诗《农事诗》(*Georgics*)久负盛名。维吉尔最著名的作品是《埃涅阿斯纪》(*Aeneid*)这部伟大的民族史诗。²它固然有其他目的,但也有着普遍的人性诉求,这使它在20世纪依

¹ 参见 E. K. Rand, *The Builders of Eternal Rome* (Harvard Univ. Press, 1943)。

² 人们总是将《埃涅阿斯纪》与荷马的《伊利亚特》(*Iliad*)和《奥德赛》(*Odyssey*),但丁的《神曲》(*Divine Comedy*)以及弥尔顿(Milton)的《失乐园》(*Paradise Lost*)相提并论。维吉尔得益于荷马甚多,但丁和弥尔顿也得益于维吉尔甚多。

然读者甚众。

贺拉斯(Quīntus Horātius Flaccus, 公元前 65 年—公元前 8 年): 一个获释奴隶的孩子。幸亏父亲慧眼识珠, 再加上他自己的禀赋, 使其荣膺“桂冠诗人”的称号。他写过一些自我剖析式的真诚的讽刺作品, 也写过不少极为出色的抒情诗(既有轻快的, 也有严肃的)。其谨慎细心的语言技艺尤为人所称道(*cūriōsa fēlīcītās*, 斟酌后精妙的表达)。他将伊壁鸠鲁的 *carpe diem*(及时行乐)和斯多亚派的 *virtūs*(美德)结合在了一起, 同时也倡导和实践 *aurea mediocritās*(中庸之道)。

李维(Titus Livius, 公元前 59 年—公元 17 年): 奥古斯都的朋友, 也是一位共和国和古老美德的赞美者。他写过一部具有史诗精神的里程碑式的《罗马史》, 刻画了(在他看来)处于全盛时期的罗马帝国。

普洛佩提乌斯(Sextus Propertius, 约公元前 50 年—公元 2 年): 写过四卷富于浪漫色彩的哀歌体诗集, 奥维德对其推崇备至。

奥维德(Pūblius Ovidius Nāsō, 公元前 43 年—公元 17 年): 写过许多有违奥古斯都初衷的爱情诗。今天, 奥维德主要以《变形记》(*Metamorphōsēs*)的作者而著称, 这是一部以六音步诗行写成的长篇神话著作, 是后世诗人汲取养料的宝库。就像蒲柏那样, 奥维德也能“绮丽诗章, 脱口而出”(lisped in numbers, for the numbers came)¹。

三、白银时代(公元 14 年—约公元 138 年)

在白银时代涌现出了优秀的文学作品, 但也不乏虚情假意和矫揉造作之作。不少人热衷于追求效果, 对铭辞趋之若鹜, 这些特征往往暗示出对文学感受和能力的一种不自信——因此才有了“黄金”与“白银”的传统区分(尽管这一区分经常被过分夸大)。在这一时期, 几位皇帝的性情也或多或少对当时的文学产生了影响。

塞内卡(Lūcius Annaeus Seneca, 公元前 4 年—公元 65 年): 来自西班牙的斯多亚派哲学家, 担任过尼禄的老师。他写过许多富有斯多亚精神的高贵的道德短论, 写过悲剧(虽然因过多的修辞和矫揉造作而受人诟病, 但对欧洲近代早期的戏剧产生了极大影响), 还写过《变瓜记》(*Apocolocyntōsis*), 这是一部机智诙谐(尽管有时显得残忍)的诗文间杂的讽刺作品, 描写的是皇帝克劳狄乌斯死后

¹ 这是 18 世纪英国诗人蒲柏(Alexander Pope)16 岁时写下的诗句(*Epistle to Dr. Arbuthnot*, line 128)。字面意思是“我咬舌吟出诗节, 因为诗节已经产生”。它暗指诗的韵律对于他来说犹如天然的本能。其精确含义很难用汉语表达, 这里姑且译为“绮丽诗章, 脱口而出”。——译者注

不成神反成南瓜。

佩特罗尼乌斯(确切的身份和生卒年份不详,可能是卒于公元 65 年的 Titus Petrōnius Arbiter):尼禄的廷臣和执政官。著有《萨蒂利孔》(*Satyricon*),它类似于一部诗文间杂的讽刺小说,最出名的就是对暴发户和获释奴隶特里马尔基奥(Trimalchio)穷奢极欲的宴会的描写。

昆体良(Mārcus Fabius Quīntiliānus,约公元 35 年—公元 95 年):教育家,著有《演说术原理》(*Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria*)。这是一部著名的教育学著作,讨论了一个人要想做演说家应当受怎样的教育。他非常推崇西塞罗的风格,对他那个时代修辞手法的泛滥批判有加。

马提雅尔(Mārcus Valerius Mārtiālis,公元 45 年—公元 104 年):以其 1500 多首铭辞以及惯用的讽刺手法而著称。正如他本人所说,他的作品也许不是伟大的文学,但的确受人喜爱。

小普林尼(Gāius Plīnius Caecilius Secundus,约公元 62 年—公元 113 年):认真尽责的公众人物,作品以《书信集》(*Epistulae*)最为著名,这些书信反映了帝国时期罗马人生活的光明面和阴暗面。

塔西佗(Pūblius Cornēlius Tacitus,公元 55 年—公元 117 年):拥护元老院的历史学家,以讽刺性的笔调记述了从奥古斯都去世到图密善(Domitian)去世这一时期的历史。

尤维纳利斯(Decimus Iūnius Iuvenālis,约公元 55 年—公元 127 年之后):非常注重修辞的讽刺诗人。他无情地讽刺了那个时代的罪恶,认为人唯一能够祈望的就是 **mēns sāna in corpore sānō**(健全身体中的健全心灵)。他的讽刺作品启发塞缪尔·约翰逊¹博士写出了诗集《伦敦》(*London*)和《人类欲求之虚妄》(*Vanity of Human Wishes*),还造就了刻薄的“尤维纳利斯式”讽刺手法。

古风时期

从公元 2 世纪中叶到 2 世纪末或可看成一段古风时期 (archaizing period),在这段时间里逐渐发展出了一种对于早期拉丁语词汇和风格的喜好,通俗拉丁语中的用词不断得到吸纳。这一时期的典型作家有:修辞学家弗隆托(Fronto),以札记《阿提卡之夜》(*Noctēs Atticae*)而闻名的革利乌斯(Aulus Gellius)。

四、教父时期(公元 2 世纪末—公元 5 世纪)

这一时期之所以被称作“教父时期”,是因为此间的重要著作多出自基督教教父之手,比如德尔图良(Tertullian)、西普里安(Cyprian)、拉克坦修(Lactantius)、哲

¹ 塞缪尔·约翰逊(Samuel Johnson, 1709—1784),英国著名诗人、散文家、文学批评家、词汇学家,编纂了世界上第一部英文字典。——译者注

罗姆(Jerome)、安布罗斯(Ambrose)和奥古斯丁(Augustine)等人。他们均受过良好的教育,对优秀的古典作家了如指掌,对其作品往往珍爱有加。在为教会服务之前,他们中的许多人都做过教师或律师。开始时,古典风格主要用来影响异教徒,但是渐渐地,随着基督教福音向普通民众(**vulgus**)的传播越来越受到重视,通俗拉丁语很自然地再度复兴,¹对这一时期的文学作品产生了重要影响。圣哲罗姆的书信仍是西塞罗式的,但在拉丁文《圣经》(*Vulgate*,公元383年—公元405年)中,他却使用了民众的语言。类似地,圣奥古斯丁虽然热爱并教授过罗马古典作品,但他也乐于使用任何可能通达民众(**ad ūsum vulgī**)的习语,并且说,即使野蛮人征服了罗马也没关系,只要他们是基督徒就可以。

五、中世纪(公元6世纪—公元14世纪)

在中世纪的前三个世纪里,通俗拉丁语迅速发生改变,²以致很难说还能称得上是拉丁语。根据地域的不同,它变成了某种罗曼语。

而另一方面,作为或多或少受到拉丁文《圣经》等因素影响的书面语,拉丁语在整个中世纪仍然是教会和思想界使用的活语言。虽然无论是在特征上还是在性质上,拉丁语都发生了巨大改变,但它仍然是一门国际性的语言。因此中世纪拉丁语文学有时被称为“欧洲文学”,而不是早先的“罗马文学”。许多生动的文学作品(宗教著作、传奇故事、奇文轶事、戏剧诗歌)都是以中世纪拉丁语写成的。比如本书的第二十九课摘录了公元7世纪作家塞维利亚的伊西多尔(Isidore of Seville)的段落,“古文选编”也收入了其他作家的作品。直到14世纪初,但丁(Dante)还用拉丁语写出了政治专论《论君主制》(*Dē Monarchiā*)以及《论俗语》(*Dē Vulgārī Eloquentiā*),他试图通过后一著作来证明,自己把意大利民族语言用于文学是正当的。在拉丁语田园诗中,但丁并不接受放弃民族语言(他正在用这种语言写作《神曲》)而改用拉丁语进行创作的劝诫。这些事实都证明了拉丁语强大的生命力。³

六、文艺复兴(约公元15世纪)至今

随着彼得拉克(Petrarch)重新激发了对西塞罗的赞美,中世纪拉丁语开始成为文艺复兴学者嘲弄的对象,他们特别把西塞罗当作完美的典范。虽然这种朝

¹我们已经提到,通俗拉丁语是普通民众的语言,它发端于早期。事实上,普劳图斯的语言与这种后来的通俗拉丁语有颇多共同之处。我们知道,在整个黄金时代和白银时代,通俗拉丁语都是民众的方言口语,但却一直没有成为书面语和有教养者的谈话用语。

²比如大量变格词尾慢慢失去,介词的使用渐渐增多,助动词得到广泛使用,虚拟式和直陈式使用混乱。

³与此同时,鉴于但丁等人在使用本国语方面大获成功,必须承认,拉丁语正在开始打一场无望取胜之仗。

着优雅的西塞罗用语的回归乃因巨大的热情而生,而且成绩斐然,但这是一种人为的运动,与中世纪的那种自发的、活生生的语言相比,它使得拉丁语变得日趋僵化和做作。不过直到近代,拉丁语仍被广泛使用,¹教会拉丁语依旧是罗马天主教会和神学院的语言(尽管在20世纪60年代初不再被强调)。不仅如此,古代拉丁希腊文学中纯正的人文主义精神被重新发现,古典作品中的文学修养和形式重新受到重视,所有这些都对新时期的本族文学有莫大的益处。

这里仅就拉丁语文学从公元3世纪的连续发展作了浮光掠影的介绍,旨在简单地勾勒出一个轮廓。拉丁语文学不仅有着漫长而可敬的历史,而且也激发、砥砺和丰富着包括英语文学在内的西方文学,其程度之深也许超出了我们的想象。此外,鉴于拉丁语本身广泛而深刻的影响,我们不得不说,拉丁语仅仅在一种技术意义上死去了。哪怕掌握有限的拉丁语知识,也会使英语和罗曼语语言文学的研究者和爱好者受益匪浅。

字母表和发音

我们现在所看到的字母已经有数百年的历史。它们可以追溯到公元9世纪法国图尔圣马丁修道院的修士们沉稳而清晰的加洛林手书体,加洛林文艺复兴使之得以完善,后来通过11、12世纪的精美手稿以及15世纪最古老的意大利印本²流传下来。这些修士根据隽秀而清丽的半安色尔字体发展出了小写字母,而半安色尔字体又源于罗马帝国时期的安色尔字体³和方块大写字。今天,我们习惯于将罗马字母与希腊字母区分开来,但事实上,罗马人从伊特鲁里亚人那里学会了书写,而伊特鲁里亚人又是从公元前8世纪定居于那不勒斯附近的希腊移民那里学会了书写。因此,罗马字母实际上只是希腊字母的一种形式。但在这方面,希腊人自己也受惠于他人,因为此前,他们的字母是从闪米特人的一支即腓尼基人那里得到的。⁴而再往前追溯,早期闪米特人似乎又受到了埃及象形文字的启发。字母形式的这一历史再次表明我们在何种程度上受惠于古代。

¹ 比如16世纪的伊拉斯谟(Erasmus)和莫尔(Thomas More),17世纪的弥尔顿、培根(Francis Bacon)和牛顿(Issac Newton),以及后来的植物学家、古典学者和诗人。

² 这些印本被称为“摇篮刊本”(incunabula),因为它们都制作于印刷术的“摇篮时代”(cradle days)。后人称其为“罗马字体”,以区别于北欧所使用的“黑花体字”(与德国字体进行比较)。意大利印刷工根据当时的一些最为精致的手稿设计出了罗马字体,抄写这些手稿都是受命于文艺复兴时期那些唯美而苛刻的富有主顾。为了取悦其主顾,手稿抄写员们苦苦寻觅着最诱人的手稿,终于,他们在最好的加洛林印本手稿中找到了它。

³ 安色尔字体与方块大写字类似,只是有角字母的尖角变圆了,所以可以书写得更快(见本书第78页图)。相关说明可参见《韦伯斯特大学词典》中的 *uncial* 词条。

⁴ 22个腓尼基字母只代表辅音。在用这些字母表示元音方面,希腊人显示出了自己的原创性。



*Portrait of a young woman with stilus and tabella, fresco from Pompeii
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy*

罗马字母与我们的字母非常相似,只是其中缺少字母 **j** 和 **w**,而且字母 **v** 最初既相当于元音 **u**,也相当于辅音 **w**。¹虽然直到公元 2 世纪,圆底的 **u** 的形式才出现,但是为了方便,现在的版本大多 **v** 和 **u** 并用。字母 **k** 比较罕用,仅在少数几个词中出现于 **a** 之前。到了罗马共和国晚期,字母 **y**² 和 **z** 开始被用于拼写源

¹ 请注意,我们的字母 **w** 其实就是两个 **v** 形的 **u** 的合写。

² **y** 实际上是希腊语的第二十个字母 **u**——upsilon (Υ),这是一个发音介于 **u** 和 **i** 之间的元音,就像法语中的 **u**。

于希腊的词。

下列各表列出了拉丁语的大致读音,以及古典时期的罗马人是如何用这些字母来表示这些读音的(中世纪拉丁语和教会拉丁语的读音不尽相同)。

元音

拉丁语中元音的发音有长和短两种。长元音的持续时间一般是短元音的两倍(就像音乐中的二分音符之于四分音符),在本书中以长音符号标出(比如 **ā**),这也是大多数初级教程的体例;没有长音符号的元音就是短元音。应当把长音符号当作拼写的一部分来记忆,因为它所指示的发音区别往往对于含义极为关键(例如, **liber** 是名词,意为“书”,而 **liber** 则是形容词,意为“自由的”)。元音的发音大致如下:

长元音	短元音
ā 的发音如同在 <i>father</i> 中: dās, cārā	a 的发音如同在 <i>Dinah</i> 中: dat, casa
ē 的发音如同在 <i>they</i> 中: mē, sēdēs	e 的发音如同在 <i>pet</i> 中: et, sed
ī 的发音如同在 <i>machine</i> 中: hīc, sīca	i 的发音如同在 <i>pin</i> 中: hic, sicca
ō 的发音如同在 <i>clover</i> 中: ōs, mōrēs	o 的发音如同在 <i>orb, off</i> 中: os, mora
ū 的发音如同在 <i>rude</i> 中: tū, sūmō	u 的发音如同在 <i>put</i> 中: tum, sum
y 可长可短,发音如同在法语词 tu 或德语词 über 中	

双元音

拉丁语有以下六个双元音,即两个元音的声音合为一个音节:

ae 的发音如同 *aisle* 中的 **ai**: **cārae, saepe**

au 的发音如同 *house* 中的 **ou**: **aut, laudō**

ei 的发音如同在 *reign* 中: **deinde**

eu 的发音如同拉丁语 **e+u**, 要像单音节那样快速读出: **seu**。

这个音在英语中并不存在,在拉丁语中也很少见。

oe 的发音如同 *oil* 中的 **oi**: **coepit, proelium**

ui 的发音如同拉丁语 **u + i**, 要像一个单音节那样读出,就像西班牙语的 **muy**(或像英语的 *gooey*, 像一个单音节那样快速读出)。这个双元音只见于 **huius, cuius, huic, cui, hui**。在其他地方,这两个字母要分开发音,比如 **fu-it, frūctu-ī**。

辅音

拉丁语辅音和英语辅音发音基本相同,只是有以下例外情况:

bs 和 **bt** 发 *ps* 和 *pt* (例如 **urbs, obtineō**)的音;在其他地方,拉丁语字母 **b**和

我们的字母发音相同(例如 **bibēbant**)。

c 总是像在 *can* 中那样发硬音, 而不要像在 *city* 中那样发软音: **cum, cīvis, facilis**。

g 总是像在 *get* 中那样发硬音, 而不要像在 *gem* 中那样发软音: **glōria, gerō**。当它位于 **n** 之前时, 字母 **g** 相当于鼻化的 *ng* 音, 就像在 *hangnail* 中那样: **magnus**。

h 是一个送气音, 就像在英语中那样, 只是在发音时没有那么刺耳: **hic, haec**。

i (也是一个元音) 用在词首元音之前时, 通常充当辅音, 发音为 *y*, 就像在 *yes* 中那样(**iūstus** = *yustus*); 用在两个元音之间时起两个作用: 既作为元音 *i* 与前一元音构成双元音, 同时也作为辅音 *y* (**reiectus** = *rei-yectus*, **maior** = *mai-yor*, **cuius** = *cui-yus*); 在其他情况下通常是一个元音。这种所谓的“辅音性的”**i** 在英语派生词中一般以 *j* 出现(*j* 这个字母直到中世纪才被加入字母表中): **maior** = *major*, **Iūlius** = *Julius*。

m 和在英语中一样发闭口音: **monet**。不过在某些情况下, 元音之后的词尾 **m** 发音时双唇不闭合, 从而造成它之前的元音的鼻音化: **tum, etiam**。

q 和英语中一样, 后面总是跟着辅音性的 **u**, 其组合发 *kw* 的音: **quid, quoque**。

r 发颤音; 罗马人称它为 **littera canīna** (狗的字母), 因为它的声音会让人想起狗吠: **Rōma, cūrāre**。

s 总是像在 *see* 中那样发清音, 而不是像在 *ease* 中那样发浊音: **sed, posuissēs, mīsistis**。

t 的发音如同 *tired* 中的 *t*, 而不像 *nation* 中的 *sh*, 或者 *mention* 中的 *ch*: **taciturnitās, nātiōnem, mentiōnem**。

v 的发音如同我们的 *w*: **vīvō = wīwō, vīnum = wīnum**。

x 的发音如同 *axle* 中的 *ks*, 而不像 *exert* 中的 *gz*: **mixtum, exerceō**。

ch 相当于希腊语中的 *chi*, 发音如同 *block head* 中的 *ckh*, 而不像 *church* 中的 *ch*: **chorus, Archilochus**。

ph 相当于希腊语中的 *phi*, 发音如同 *uphill* 中的 *ph*, 而不像 *philosophy* 中的 *f*: **philosophia**。

th 相当于希腊语中的 *theta*, 发音如同 *hot house* 中的 *th*, 而不像 *thin* 或 *the* 中的 *th*: **theātrum**。

罗马人非常恰当地将双辅音按照两个分开的辅音来发音, 而我们往往将它们急促地读成单辅音。例如, 拉丁词 **currant** 中的 **rr** 听起来就像是 *the cur ran* 中的两个 *r* (只不过在拉丁语中, 每一个 **r** 都要发颤音); **admittent** 中的 **tt** 听起

来就像是 *admit ten* 的两个 *t*。

音节

和英语一样,在拉丁语中,一个词的音节数等于它的元音和双元音的个数。

音节划分:在把一个词划分成各个音节时,

1. 两个临近的元音, 或者一个元音和一个辅音, 要分开: **dea, de-a; deae, de-ae**。
2. 两个元音之间的单辅音隶属于第二个元音: **amīcus, a-mī-cus**。
3. 当两个元音之间有两个或多个辅音时, 一般只有最后一个辅音从属于后面那个元音: **mittō, mit-tō; servāre, ser-vā-re; cōnsūptus, cōn-sūmp-tus**。然而, 一个塞音 (**p, b, t, d, c, g**) + 一个流音 (**l, r**) 通常算作单辅音, 它们都从属于后面那个元音: **patrem, pa-trem; castra, cas-tra**。此外, **qu** 和送气音 **ch, ph, th** 也算作单辅音, 它们在音节划分时不能分开: **architectus, ar-chi-tec-tus; loquācem, lo-quā-cem**。

音节音量²: 如果一个音节中包含有长元音或双元音, 那么该音节就是天然 (by nature) 为长; 如果一个音节中包含有短元音, 而且该元音后面跟着两个或多个辅音,³ 或者跟着 **x** (它是一个双元音, = *ks*), 那么该音节就是凭借位置 (by position) 为长。在其他情况下, 音节都是短的。这里的区别也很类似于二分音符与四分音符的区别。

天然为长的音节(以下划线标出): **lau-dō, Rō-ma, a-mī-cus**

凭借位置为长的音节 (以下划线标出): **ser-vat, sa-pi-en-ti-a, ax-is (= ak-sis)**

带有各种长音节 (无论以上二者之中的哪一种, 以下划线标出) 的例子:

lau-dā-te, mo-ne-ō, sae-pe, cōn-ser-vā-tis, pu-el-lā-rum

即使在英语中, 音节也有这种时间音量, 即一些音节要比另一些发音时间长 (比如 “enough” 这个词, 它的第一个音节很短, 发音很干脆, 而第二个音节则较长), 但我们并不很关注这个现象。然而, 这在拉丁语中却相当重要, 理由至少有两个: 首先, 音节音量是决定拉丁语诗歌节奏的主要因素, 这一点我们以后便会了解; 其次, 音节音量决定着一个词的主重音的位置, 这对目前来说是更为重要

¹ 但在诗歌中, 这两个辅音可以根据双辅音规则分开。

² 音量 (quantity), 即元音或音节的长短。——译者注

³ 但是不要忘了, 一个塞音 (**p, b, t, d, c, g**) + 一个流音 (**l, r**), 以及 **qu** 和送气音 **ch, ph, th** 通常都算作单辅音, 比如 **pa-trem, quo-que**。

的,下面我们将给出说明。

重音

和英语一样,在读拉丁词的时候,也要对一个音节(或多个音节,如果这个词较长的话)格外强调;在拉丁语中,这一主重音的位置(与英语不同)遵循着严格而简洁的规则:

1. 双音节词的重音总是落在第一个音节上:**sér-vo, saé-pe, ní-hil**。
2. 对于三音节词或多音节词的情况:①如果它的倒数第二个音节是长的,那么重音落在倒数第二个音节上(**ser-vā-re, cōn-sér-vat, for-tū-na**);②否则,重音就落在倒数第三个音节上(**mó-ne-ō, pā-tri-a, pe-cū-ni-a, vó-lu-cris**)。

由于这些重音规则十分严整,所以在写作拉丁语的时候,重音符号(与长音符号不同)通常并不标出;不过在本书中,“词形变化表”(变格和变位的例示)和每一课的词汇表中都标注了重音符号,以帮助纠正发音。

虽然在拉丁语课堂上,有时并不太强调听说训练和会话技能(这实在令人遗憾!),但“正确的”或至少是一致的发音对于掌握任何一门语言都是至关重要的。如果能够根据本篇导言所介绍的规则大声朗读拉丁词句,那么每当我们想起一个词时,我们也能在心里正确地“朗读”和拼写它。

别忘了,我们所学的拉丁语并不仅仅是一些需要默读的文本(事实上,罗马人自己几乎总是大声朗读的!),而是数百年来的一种口头语言——不仅著名的演说家、诗人和政治家,而且罗马的孩子们都在使用它,就像我们小时候学习母语一样。在每天的学习中,我们应当听说读写四种语言学习技巧并用;一定要大声朗读词形变化表和词汇项,特别是要大声朗读你所碰到的每一个拉丁语句子或段落;而且要带着理解去阅读,然后再试着翻译成英语。

第一课

动词；第一和第二变位法动词：

现在时主动态的不定式、直陈式和命令式；翻译

动词

在一个句子中，描述主语活动或存在状态的动词(verb, 源于拉丁语 *verbum*, *word*)可以说是最重要的，所以学习拉丁语最好从考察这一词类开始(和英语一样，其他词类还包括名词、代词、形容词、副词、介词、连词、感叹词等等)。

和英语一样，拉丁语动词也有以下五种特征：

人称(*persōna*, *person*): 主语，即从说话者的角度看，动作的执行者(或者在被动的情况下，动作的承受者)。第一人称：*I, we*；第二人称：*you*；第三人称：*he, she, it, they*。

数(*numerus*, *number*): 主语的数目，一个或多个。

时态(*tempus*, *tense*): 动作发生的时间。拉丁语有六种时态：现在时，将来时，未完成时，完成时(或现在完成时)，将来完成时，过去完成时。

语气，式¹(*modus*, *mood*): 指示动词动作或存在状态的方式。像英语一样，拉丁语也有直陈式²(陈述事实)和命令式³(发出命令)，这两种语气我们在本课介绍；还有虚拟式⁴(主要描述假想的或可能的动作)，我们将在第二十八课介绍。

语态(*vōx*, *voice*): 对于及物动词(可以带直接宾语的动词)而言，指示主语是执行动作(主动语态，以下简称“主动态”)还是承受动作(被动语态，以下简称“被动态”)。

¹ 除极个别情况外，以下均译为“式”。——译者注

² 亦称“陈述式”。——译者注

³ 亦称“祈使式”。——译者注

⁴ 亦称“假定式”。——译者注

变位

将一个动词进行变位(*coniugāre, join together*),就是根据人称、数、时态、语气、语态的不同列出动词的所有形式。比如英语动词 *to praise* 的现在时主动态直陈式变位就是:

	单数	复数
第一人称	I praise	we praise
第二人称	you praise	you praise
第三人称	he (she, it) praises	they praise

在这六种形式中,有五种形式的人称和数在英语中需要由代词 *I, you, we, they* 来确定。只有在第三人称单数的情况下,代词 *he (she, it)* 才可以省略,因为借助动词的特殊词尾就可以表明, *praises* 是第三人称单数。

人称词尾

拉丁语可以通过“人称词尾”在所有六种形式中清楚地显示动词的人称、数和语态(英语则只能在第三人称单数中显示)。由于这些人称词尾经常会遇到,我们最好现在就将它们牢记于心。其主动态形式如下:

单数

第一人称	-ō 或 -m, 对应于 <i>I</i>
第二人称	-s, 对应于 <i>you</i>
第三人称	-t, 对应于 <i>he, she, it</i>

复数

第一人称	-mus, 对应于 <i>we</i>
第二人称	-tis, 对应于 <i>you</i>
第三人称	-nt, 对应于 <i>they</i>

下一步就是要找到一个动词“词干”,把这些词尾加上去。

现在时主动态不定式¹和现在时词干

本书所使用的第一、第二变位法范例动词的现在时主动态不定式分别是:

laudāre, *to praise* monēre, *to advise*

我们看到, -āre 是第一变位法的特征, -ēre 是第二变位法的特征。

¹ 不定式(*infinitive, īnfinītus, īnfinītīvus, not limited*)只是给出了动词的基本观念;其形式虽然指示出了时态和语态,但不受人称和数的限制。

从不定式中去掉-re,便得到了“现在时词干”:

laudā-

monē-

给这个现在时词干加上人称词尾(并稍作改动,后面会解释),我们就已经能够开始阅读或讲说拉丁语了。例如,laudā-s, you praise; monē-mus, we advise。

这样,我们就得到了一张词形变化表(paradigm)。“Paradigm”一词源于古希腊词 paradeigma,意为“样式”(pattern)、“例子”(example)。在本书的正文和附录中会经常用词形变化表来总结各种形式。当然,就像我们今天学习英语一样,古罗马人也是借助一些直接的方法,从父母那里或者从与他人的日常交往中来学习各种屈折变化形式的。然而,由于我们缺少这种自然的拉丁语环境,而且通常是在较晚时才开始学习拉丁语,时间不够充裕,所以尽管通过分析词形变化表来学习拉丁语有些死板和乏味,但一般认为,这是最有效的学习方法。

在记忆所有词形变化表时,一定要大声朗读它们,因为这将同时有助于视听。对一门语言进行听说,听它基本的发音和节奏,能够极大地帮助我们掌握这门语言。

Laudō 和 Moneō 的现在时主动态直陈式

单数

1. laudō, I praise, am praising, do praise

moneō, I advise, etc.

2. laudās, you praise, are praising, do praise

moneēs, you advise, etc.

3. laudat, he (she, it) praises, is praising,
does praise

monet, he (she, it) advises,
etc.

复数

1. laudāmus, we praise, are praising, do praise

monēmus, we advise, etc.

2. laudātis, you praise, are praising, do praise

monētis, you advise, etc.

3. laudant, they praise, are praising, do praise

monent, they advise, etc.

请注意,拉丁语的现在时直陈式主动态形式只有这些,我们可以根据语境把它们翻译成一般时、进行时或强调句。例如,mē laudant 可以译成 they praise me, 或 they are praising me, 或 they do praise me。

词形变化表中的重音符号只是为了方便我们发音,它遵循导言中所介绍的严格的重音规则,在对拉丁语动词进行变位时不必将其包括进去(除非老师要求)。

但长音符号却不能省去,在记忆词形变化表或者对其他第一、第二变位法动词进行变位时,必须考虑它所指示的元音读音。请注意,在有些形式中,词干元音并不带有长音符号(如 moneō, laudant)。以下规则有助于解释这些看似任意的长音符号:

长元音通常会变短,如果该元音之后紧跟着另一个元音(因此是 **moneō**,而不是 ***monēō**¹),或词末的 **-m, -r, -t**(因此是 **laudat**,而不是 ***laudāt**),或处于任何位置的 **nt** 或 **nd**(因此是 **laudant**)。

对于第一变位法或 **-ā**-变位法动词(与第二变位法或 **-ē**-变位法动词不同),词干元音不仅会变短,而且还会与词末的 **-ō** 缩约,在第一人称单数中完全消失(所以是 **laudō**,而不是 ***laudāō**)。

现在时主动态命令式

命令式用于发出命令。单数命令式的形式与现在时词干相同,复数命令式(用于向两人或多人发出命令)则只需给现在时词干加上 **-te**:

第二人称单数	laúdā, <i>praise!</i>	mónē, <i>advise!</i>
第二人称复数	laudāte, <i>praise!</i>	monēte, <i>advise!</i>

例如 **Monē mē! Advise me! Servāte mē! Save me!**

阅读和翻译拉丁语

以下简单规则将有助于翻译本课中的句子和阅读材料,后续课程还会提供别的帮助。首先,把每一个句子从头到尾朗读出来。要为了理解而朗读,同时考虑每一个单词的意思和整个句子的可能含义。在拉丁语句子中,动词往往出现在最后。请记住,如果动词词尾是第一或第二人称,那么主语就已经知道了(“我”,“我们”或“你们”);如果动词是第三人称,那么就可能需要寻找一个能够作主语的名词(往往是这句话的第一个词)。主语—宾语—谓语(SOV)是常见的结构。现在,如果你已经记住了上面的词形变化表以及下面列出的词汇,并且对其中的某些动词做了变位练习,那么就请阅读和翻译本课结尾的句子和段落吧。**BONAM FORTŪNAM!**(祝你好运!)

词汇表

别忘了,在记忆词汇表时,一定要在学习单词含义的同时大声朗读出它们。请注意,就像英语动词那样,拉丁语动词也有几个“主要部分”(principal parts,拉丁语动词通常有四个,英语动词有三个)。必须记住它们,才能对动词进行所有形式的变位。下表中列出的动词的第一个主要部分是其第一人称单数的现在时主动态直陈式,第二个主要部分是现在时主动态不定式,其余部分的含义将在后续课程中解释。

¹ 此处以及本书中其他地方出现的星号是指,这种形式在古典拉丁语中实际上并不出现。

mē, pronoun, *me, myself*
quid, pronoun, *what* (quid pro quo)
nihil, noun, *nothing* (nihilism, annihilate)
nōn, adverb, *not*
saepe, adverb, *often*
sī, conjunction, *if*
amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, *to love, like; amābō tē*, idiom, *please* (lit., *I will love you*) (amatory, Amanda)
cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum, *to think, ponder, consider, plan* (cogitate)
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum, *to owe; ought, must* (debt, debit, due, duty)
dō, dare, dedī, datum, *to give, offer* (date, data)
errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum, *to wander; err, go astray, make a mistake, be mistaken* (erratic, errant, erroneous, error, aberration)
laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum, *to praise* (laud, laudable, laudatory)
mōneō, monēre, mōnuī, mōnitum, *to remind, advise, warn* (admonish, admonition, monitor, monument, monster, premonition)
sālveō, salvēre, to be well, be in good health; sālve, salvēte, *hello, greetings* (salvation, salver, salvage)
servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum, *to preserve, save, keep, guard* (observe, preserve, reserve, reservoir)
cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum (con-servō), a stronger form of **servō**, *to preserve, conserve, maintain* (conservative, conservation)
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, *to frighten, terrify* (terrible, terrific, terrify, terror, terrorist, deter)
vāleō, valēre, vāluī, valitūrum, *to be strong, have power; be well; vālē (valēte)*, *good-bye, farewell* (valid, invalidate, prevail, prevalent, valedictory)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *to see; observe, understand* (provide, evident, view, review, revise, revision, television)
vócō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum, *to call, summon* (vocation, advocate, vocabulary, convoke, evoke, invoke, provoke, revoke)

句子翻译¹

1. Labor mē vocat. (**labor**, a noun, and one of hundreds of Latin words that come into English with their spelling unchanged; such words are often not defined in the chapters but may be found in the end Vocab., p. 470–90 below.)
2. Monē mē, amābō tē, sī errō.
3. Festīnā lentē. (a saying of Augustus.—**festīnō, festīnāre**, *to hasten, make haste*.—**lentē**, adv., *slowly*.)
4. Laudās mē; culpant mē. (**culpō, culpāre**, *to blame, censure*.)

¹ 所有这些句子都取自古罗马原作,但大多数句子不得不作一定修改,以配合第一课的学习内容。

5. Saepe peccāmus. (**peccō, peccāre, to sin.**)
6. Quid dēbēmus cōgitāre?
7. Cōservāte mē!
8. Rūmor volat. (**volō, volāre, to fly.**)
9. Mē nōn amat.
10. Nihil mē terret.
11. Apollō mē saepe servat.
12. Salvēte!—quid vidētis? Nihil vidēmus.
13. Saepe nihil cōgitās.
14. Bis dās, sī cito dās. (**bis, adv., twice.**—**cito, adv., quickly.**—What do you suppose this ancient proverb actually means?)
15. Sī valēs, valeō. (A friendly sentiment with which Romans often commenced a letter.)
16. What does he see?
17. They are giving nothing.
18. You ought not to praise me.
19. If I err, he often warns me.
20. If you love me, save me, please!

THE POET HORACE CONTEMPLATES AN INVITATION

Maecēnās et Vergilius mē hodiē vocant. Quid cōgitāre dēbeō? Quid dēbeō respondēre? Sī errō, mē saepe monent et culpant; sī nōn errō, mē laudant. Quid hodiē cōgitāre dēbeō?

(For Horace, and the other authors cited in these chapter reading passages, review the Introd.; the patron Maecenas and the poet Virgil were both friends of Horace, and this brief passage is very freely adapted from autobiographical references in his poetry.—**et, conj., and.**—**hodiē, adv., today.**—**respondeō, respondēre, to reply, respond.**)



*Roman portrait medal of Horace
Museo Nazionale Romano delle Terme
Rome, Italy*

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

(LATĪNA EST GAUDIUM — ET ŪTILIS)

Salvēte! 在本书中,每一课的结尾都会有一些拉丁语的趣闻花絮,希望能够给你带来乐趣和启迪!(顺便指出,**Gaudium** 是拉丁语名词,意为 *joy* 或 *fun*, **ūtilis** 则是形容词,意为 *useful*)。我们“第一天”的拉丁语对话是:

Salvē, discipula or **discipule!** *Hello, student!* (-a/-e 分别指女生和男生)

Salvēte, discipulae et discipulī! *Hello, students!* (女生复数和男生复数)

Salvē, magister or **magistra!** *Greetings, teacher!* (男老师或女老师)

Valēte, discipulī et discipulae! **Valē, magister (magistra)!** *Good-bye, students..., etc.*

Quid est nōmen tibi? *What's your name?*

Nōmen mihi est “Mark”. *My name is Mark.* (或者取一个拉丁语名字: **nōmen mihi est “Mārcus.”**)

有许多拉丁词原封不动地进入了英语,前面“古代名言”句1中的 **labor** 只是其中一个,句8中的 **rūmor** 和词汇表中的 **videō** 也是。然而, **amō** 的意思并不是“bullets”, **amat** 的意思也不是“a small rug”,所以要谨防闹出……**iocī terribilēs** (*terrible jokes*): **valēte!**



*Model of Rome in the 4th century A.D.
Museo della Civiltà Romana, Rome, Italy*

第二课

名词和格；第一变格法；形容词的一致；句法

名词和格

就像动词有各种屈折变化或词尾来表明它的语法意义一样，名词（源于 *nōmen, name*）也有各种词尾来显示它在句中是作主语还是作动词宾语，是否表示属有关系等等。名词的各种屈折形式称为“格”（cases），它的常见用法和含义见下。在后续课程中，我们还会碰到其他几种格，所有这些都必须能够辨识出来。建议从现在开始为每种格都列出一张表，记下它们的定义和例子。为了把这一点说得更清楚，请看以下几个英语句子，¹它们将在本课后面的内容中被译成拉丁语以作进一步分析。

1. The poet is giving the girl large roses (*or is giving large roses to the girl*).
2. The girls are giving the poet's roses to the sailors.
3. Without money the girls' country (*or the country of the girls*) is not strong.

主格 (Nominative Case)

在通常情况下，罗马人用主格来指示一个限定动词²的主语，类似于句1中的 *poet*，句2中的 *girls*。

¹ 这些句子都没有超出第一、二课的范围，所以当它们被译成拉丁语时很容易理解。

² “限定动词”（finite verb）是动词的一种形式，它在时间上受时态的限制，同时在许多语言中表现出人称和数的一致关系。比如在英语中，动词 *be* 的限定形式为 *am, is, are, was, were*。——译者注

属格¹ (Genitive Case)

当用一个名词来修饰²另一个名词时,罗马人把修饰名词写成属格形式,类似于句2中的 *poet's* 和句3中的 *girl's*。属格通常表示属有关系,虽然除此之外还有其他一些用法,但属格的意思一般都可以用介词 *of* 来翻译。属格的拉丁语名词通常位于它所修饰的名词之后。

与格 (Dative Case)

罗马人用与格来表示间接受到动词动作影响的人或事物,类似于句1中的 *girl(to the girl)* 和句2中的 *to the sailors*。这两个名词都是间接宾语,这是与格最常见的用法。在大多数情况下,与格的含义可以通过把 *to* 或 *for* 与名词连用来确定。

宾格³ (Accusative Case)

罗马人用宾格来表示动词动作的直接宾语,即受到动词动作直接影响的人或事物。它也可以用作某些介词⁴(例如 **ad**, *to*; **in**, *into*; **post**, *after*, *behind*)的宾语。在句1和句2中, *roses* 便是 *is (are) giving* 的直接宾语。

夺格⁵ (Ablative Case)

夺格有时又称状语(*adverbial*⁶)格,罗马人在用下述观念修饰或限制动词时会使用夺格:手段(或工具)、施事者、伴随、方式、地点、时间。罗马人有时把夺格与介词连用,有时不连用。翻译这个复杂的格没有什么简单规则可循。不过,如果有拉丁语介词(**ab**, *by*, *from*; **cum**, *with*; **dē** 和 **ex**, *from*; **in**, *in*, *on*)出现,问题就不大。一般而言,我们总可以把夺格与 *by*, *with*, *from*, *in*, *on*, *at* 等英语介词联系起来。⁷更复杂的夺格用法将在后续课程中陆续讲述。

¹ 亦称“所有格”、“生格”。——译者注

² “修饰”(modify)源于拉丁词 **modus**, 其含义是“限制”,意为用一个词来限制另一个词。例如,句2中的 *roses* 给出的是一种一般观念,而加入 *poet's* 就修饰或限制了 *roses*,也就是说,作者希望表达的是一些特定的 *roses*。如果加入 *red* 一词,则又会进一步地修饰或限制 *roses*,因为它排除了白色、黄色等其他颜色的 *roses*。

³ 亦称“受格”、“对格”。——译者注

⁴ “介词”(preposition)是指被置于名词或代词之前(**prae-positus**, 前-置)的词,表示这个名词或代词与句中另外一个词的关系,这个名词或代词即为“介词宾语”。介词短语可以起形容词(“a man of wisdom”)或副词(“he came from Rome”)的作用。

⁵ 亦称“离格”。——译者注

⁶ 拉丁语 **ad verbum** 意为 *to* 或 *near the verb*。副词(adverb)修饰动词、形容词或另一个副词。

⁷ 例如, **pecūniā**, *by* 或 *with money*; **ab puellā**, *by* 或 *from the girl*; **cum puellā**, *with the girl*; **cum irā**, *with anger, angrily*; **ab(dē, ex) patriā**, *from the fatherland*; **in patriā**, *in the fatherland*; **in mēnsā**, *on the table*; **ūnā hōrā**, *in one hour*。

呼格 (Vocative Case)

罗马人用呼格(有时与感叹词¹ *Ō* 连用)来直接呼唤(*vocāre, to call*)某人或某物。例如, (*Ō*)*Caesar*, (*O*)*Caesar*; *Ō fortūna*, *O fortune*。在现代的标点符号中,呼语(或直接称呼的名词)用逗号与句中其余部分隔开。除了第三课中将要学到的一个主要例外,呼格的形式与主格相同,所以通常不列入词形变化表。

第一变格法²——名词与形容词

将名词——或形容词——的每一个格都列出来,称为“变格”。就像通过给动词词干(stem)加词尾来对动词进行变位一样,我们也可以通过给“词根”(base)加词尾来对名词和形容词进行变格。在词汇表词条中列出的是名词的单数主格和单数属格形式(必须牢记),词根可以通过去掉属格词尾来得到。形容词的情况与此类似,我们将在第三课和第四课中介绍。下表列出了名词/形容词短语 *porta magna* (*the large gate*) 的变格情况:

	porta, gate 词根 port-	magna, large magn-		词尾
单数				
主格	pórtā	mágnā	<i>the (a)³ large gate</i>	-a
属格	pórtāe	mágnāe	<i>of the large gate</i>	-ae
与格	pórtāe	mágnāe	<i>to/for the large gate</i>	-ae
宾格	pórtā	mágnā	<i>the large gate</i>	-am
夺格	pórtā	mágnā	<i>by/with/from, etc., the large gate</i>	-ā
呼格	pórtā	mágnā	<i>O large gates</i>	-a
复数				
主格	pórtāe	mágnāe	<i>the large gates or large gates</i>	-ae
属格	pórtārum	mágnārum	<i>of the large gates</i>	-ārum
与格	pórtīs	mágnīs	<i>to/for the large gates</i>	-īs
宾格	pórtās	mágnās	<i>the large gates</i>	-ās
夺格	pórtīs	mágnīs	<i>by/with/from, etc., the large gates</i>	-īs
呼格	pórtāe	mágnāe	<i>O large gates</i>	-ae

¹ 感叹词(interjection)源于拉丁语 *interiectiō*, 字面意思是“把某种东西扔进”, 即与句子的其余部分没有句法上的联系。

² 变格(declension)与动词 *dē-clīnāre, to lean away from* 有关。古代语法家的想法是, 其他格都偏离于主格, 也都来源于主格。

³ 在古典拉丁语中, 由于没有什么词能够精确对应于我们的定冠词 *the* 或不定冠词 *a*, 所以 *porta* 既可以翻译成 *gate*, 也可以翻译成 *the gate* 或 *a gate*。

第一变格法名词的性 = 阴性

拉丁语区分了三种性:阳性、阴性和中性。那些指示雄性事物的拉丁语名词自然是阳性的,指示雌性事物的名词是阴性的,但大多数名词的性却是语法概念,而不是自然概念,所以名词的性必须当作词条的一部分死记下来。

第一变格法名词通常是阴性的,比如 **puella**, *girl*; **rosa**, *rose*; **pecūnia**, *money*; **patria**, *country*。有极少数第一变格法名词指示这样一些人,他们从事着罗马人认为应当由男人从事的职业,这些名词也是阳性的,比如 **poēta**, *poet*; **nauta**, *sailor*; **agricola**, *farmer* (本书中没有涉及的这类名词还有: **aurīga**, *charioteer*; **incola**, *inhabitant*; **pīrāta**, *pirate*)。

在本书中,如果符合一般规则,名词的性将不再特别标注阳性(m.)、阴性(f.)或中性(n.)。

形容词的一致

形容词通常与名词连用,在大小、颜色、质地、特征等方面修饰或限制名词。与名词一样,形容词也需要变格。所以很自然地,形容词要在性、数、格上与名词保持一致(修饰多个名词的形容词通常与距它最近的名词的性保持一致,虽然有时阳性优先)。形容词(**adiectum**, *set next to, added*)是指被加到名词上的词。正如其拉丁语词根所暗示的,形容词通常要紧靠名词(诗歌中除外,那里的词序要自由得多)。在大多数情况下,形容词位于名词之后,这是一种逻辑上的安排,因为一般来说,被命名的人或物要比属性更为重要。指示大小或数目的形容词属于例外,它们和指示词(**hic**, *this*; **ille**, *that*)一样,通常会前置,说话者或作者希望强调的形容词也是如此。

句法

希腊语动词 **syntattein** 意为“排列”,特指将军队排成有秩序的队列。类似地,在语法术语中,“句法”(syntax)是指根据语词在一个句子中所起的作用对它们进行有秩序的排列。要解释一个给定名词或形容词的句法,就应当说明它的形式,它最从属于哪个词,以及为什么会有这样的形式(即它在句中的语法使用或功能)。前面给出的例句(这里都译成了拉丁语)提供了一些例子。我们由主语和动词词尾可以注意到这样一条规则,即动词必须在人称和数上与它的主语保持一致;此外,像 **-ae** 这样的名词词尾有可能表示多种格,这时词序和语境会为我们理解句义提供必要的线索(于是 **puellae** 是句 1 中的间接宾语,是句 2 中的主语)。

1. Poēta puellae magnās rosās dat.
2. Puellae nautīs rosās poētae dant.
3. Patria puellārum sine pecūniā nōn valet.

其中一些词的句法可以方便地表述如下：

词	形式	从属	理由
句 1			
Poēta	单数主格	dat	主语
Puellae	单数与格	dat	间接宾语
magnās	复数宾格	rosās	修饰名词并与之一致
句 2			
Puellae	复数主格	dant	主语
nautīs	复数与格	dant	间接宾语
rosās	复数宾格	dant	直接宾语
poētae	单数属格	rosās	属有
句 3			
pecūniā	单数夺格	sine	介词宾语

试着解释一下这些句子中所有名词和形容词的句法,然后阅读下面的段落。

词汇表

fāma, fāmae, f., *rumor, report; fame, reputation* (famous, defame, infamy)
fōrma, fōrmae, f., *form, shape; beauty* (formal, format, formula, formless, deform, inform, etc.; but not formic, formidable)
fortūna, fortūnae, f., *fortune, luck* (fortunate, unfortunate)
īra, īrae, f., *ire, anger* (irate, irascible; but not irritate)
naūta, naūtae, m., *sailor* (nautical)
pātria, pātriae, f., *fatherland, native land, (one's) country* (expatriate, repatriate)
pecūnia, -ae, ¹ f., *money* (pecuniary, impecunious; cp. peculation)
philosóphia, -ae, f. (Greek **philosophia**, *love of wisdom*), *philosophy*
poéna, -ae, f., *penalty, punishment*; **poénās dáre**, *idiom, to pay the penalty* (penal, penalize, penalty, pain, subpoena)
poēta, -ae, m., *poet* (poetry)
pórta, -ae, f., *gate, entrance* (portal, portico, porch, porthole)
puélla, -ae, f., *girl*
rósa, -ae, f., *rose* (rosary, roseate, rosette)
senténtia, -ae, f., *feeling, thought, opinion, vote, sentence* (sententious,

¹ **pecūnia, -ae = pecūnia, pecūniae**; 这种缩略形式今后将用于所有规则的第一变格法名词。

sentencing)
vīta, -ae, f., *life; mode of life* (vital, vitals, vitality, vitamin, vitalize, devitalize, revitalize)
antīqua, -ae, adjective,¹ *ancient, old-time* (antique, antiquities, antiquated, antiquarian)
magna, -ae, adj., *large, great; important* (magnify, magnificent, magnate, magnitude, magnanimous)
mēa, -ae, adj., *my*
mūlta, -ae, adj., *much, many* (multitude, multiply, multiple; multi-, a prefix as in multimillionaire)
tūa, -ae, adj., *your*, used when speaking to only one person
et, conjunction, *and; even; et . . . et, both . . . and*
sed, conj., *but*
Ō, interjection, *O!, Oh!*, commonly used with the vocative
sīne, preposition + abl., *without* (sinecure, sans)
est, is

古代名言²

1. Salvē, Ō patria! (Plautus.)
2. Fāma et sententia volant. (Virgil.—**volāre**, *to fly, move quickly*.)
3. Dā veniam puellae, amābō tē. (Terence.—**venia, -ae**, *favor, pardon*.)
4. Clēmētia tua multās vītās servat. (Cicero.—**clēmētia, -ae**, *clemency*.)
5. Multam pecūniam dēportat. (Cicero.—**dēportāre**, *to carry away*.)
6. Fortūnam et vītā antīquae patriae saepe laudās sed recūsās. (Horace.—**recūsāre**, *to refuse, reject*.)
7. Mē vītāre turbam iubēs. (*Seneca.—**vītāre**, *to avoid*; do not confuse this verb with the noun **vīta**.—**turba, -ae**, *crowd, multitude*.—**iubēre**, *to order*.)
8. Mē philosophiae dō. (Seneca.)
9. Philosophia est ars vītāe. (*Cicero.—**ars**, nom. sg., *art*.)
10. Sānam fōrmam vītāe cōservāte. (Seneca.—**sāna, -ae**, adj., *sound, sane*.)
11. Immodica īra creat īnsāniam. (Seneca.—**immodica, -ae**, adj., *immoderate, excessive*.—**creāre**, *to create*.—**īnsānia, -ae**, *unsoundness, in-*

¹ 这里给出的是形容词的主格和属格形式, 后者的缩略形式同第一变格法名词。我们在下面两课还会学到形容词的阳性和中性形式, 在那之后, 形容词词条将只给出三种性的主格词尾(例如第四课词汇表中的 **bonus, -a, -um**)。

² 这些句子都是古罗马人的原话, 所以每一句古代拉丁语名言的作者都会注明。作者名字之前的星号表示该句是逐字引用。没有星号表示对原句作了修改, 以适应当前学过的有限的拉丁语知识, 但并没有改变这位古代作家的思想和表述。如果对它的上下文有兴趣, 并且愿意作进一步阅读, 可以参见书末的“古代名言出处”, 那里标明了每一句话的原始出处。

sanity.)

12. Quid cōgitās?—dēbēmus īram vītāre. (Seneca.)
13. Nūlla avāritia sine poenā est. (*Seneca.—**nūlla**, -ae, adj., *no.*—**avāritia**, -ae, *avarice.*)
14. Mē saevīs catēnīs onerat. (Horace.—**saeva**, -ae, adj., *cruel.*—**catēna**, -ae, *chain.*—**onerāre**, *to load, oppress.*)
15. Rotam fortūnae nōn timent. (Cicero—**rota**, -ae, *wheel.*—**timēre**, *to fear.*)
16. The girls save the poet's life.
17. Without philosophy we often go astray and pay the penalty.
18. If your land is strong, nothing terrifies the sailors and you ought to praise your great fortune.
19. We often see the penalty of anger.
20. The ancient gate is large.

CATULLUS BIDS HIS GIRLFRIEND FAREWELL

Puella mea mē nōn amat. Valē, puella! Catullus obdūrat: poēta puellam nōn amat, fōrmam puellae nōn laudat, puellae rosās nōn dat, et puellam nōn bāsiat! Īra mea est magna! Obdūrō, mea puella—sed sine tē nōn valeō.

(Catullus 8; prose adaptation. For this 1st cen. B.C. poet, see the Introd., and for unadapted excerpts from the original poem, see Ch. 19.—Note the poet's shift from first person, to third, and back to first; what is the intended emotional effect?—**obdūrāre**, *to be firm, tough.*—**bāsiāre**, *to kiss.*—**tē**, *you.*)

词源点滴

“词源(学)”(etymology)一词来自希腊词 **etymos**, *true, real* 以及 **logos**, *word, meaning*。因此,一个词的词源追溯该词的来源,显示其原初含义。在“词源点滴”中,我们将会介绍词汇表派生词中没有包括的词条。不过,每一课都包含有许多这样的内容,要想完全涵盖是不可能的。

Pecūnia 与 **pecus**, *cattle* 相关,就像英语的 *fee* 与德语的 **Vieh**, *cattle* 相关一样。

Fortūna 源于 **fors**, *chance, accident*。

根据句子中的拉丁词,解释下面英语词的含义。如果需要,可以查阅一本好的字典。《韦伯斯特新世界词典》(*Webster's New World Dictionary*)和《美国传统辞典》(*American Heritage Dictionary*)特别有助于了解词源。

volatile (2)	tenet (10)	onerous (14)
venial (3)	creature (11)	rotary, rotate (15)
turbulent (7)	nullify (13)	obdurate (“Catullus”)
insane (10)	concatenation (14)	

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvete, discipulī et discipulae! 根据词汇表, **sub rosā** 地做某事就是秘密地做某事(在古代,玫瑰是秘密的象征); **aqua vītae**, 字面意思是 *the water of life*, 这是一个古老的拉丁语短语,指“威士忌酒”;“**sinecure**”源于 **sine + cūra**(*care*), 意指在很大程度上没有责任或“没有任务”的部门或职位。

以下是另一些拉丁语会话:

Quid agis hodiē? *How are you today?*

Optimē! *Great!*

Pessimē! *Terrible!*

Bene! *Good!*

Satis bene. *So-so 或 Okay.*

Nōn bene. *Not well.*

Et tū? *And you?*

Discipulae et discipulī, valēte!

第三课

第二变格法：阳性名词与形容词；同位语；词序

第二变格法

第二变格法也遵从第一变格法的“词根+词尾”规则。不过，除了复数与格和复数夺格，第二变格法的词尾均与第一变格法不同。第二变格法名词通常为阳性或中性，本课介绍阳性名词，中性名词将在第四课介绍。大多数第二变格法阳性名词的单数主格词尾都是**-us**，但也有少数以**-er** 结尾(在下一课中我们将会看到，第二变格法中性名词以**-um** 结尾)。

以-us 结尾的阳性

词根	amīcus, friend amīc-	magnus, great magn-		词尾
单数				
主格	amīcus	māgnus	<i>althe great friend</i>	-us
属格	amīcī	māgnī	<i>of a great friend</i>	-ī
与格	amīcō	māgnō	<i>to/for a great friend</i>	-ō
宾格	amīcum	māgnum	<i>a great friend</i>	-um
夺格	amīcō	māgnō	<i>by/with/from a great friend</i>	-ō
呼格	amīce	māgne	<i>O great friend</i>	-e
复数				
主格	amīcī	māgnī	<i>great friends</i>	-ī
属格	amīcōrum	māgnōrum	<i>of great friends</i>	-ōrum
与格	amīcīs	māgnīs	<i>to/for great friends</i>	-īs
宾格	amīcōs	māgnōs	<i>great friends</i>	-ōs
夺格	amīcīs	māgnīs	<i>by/with/from great friends</i>	-īs
呼格	amīcī	māgnī	<i>O great friends</i>	-ī

以-er 结尾的阳性

在以-er 结尾的第二变格法阳性名词中,有少数像 **puer** 这样的词在词根中保留-e-,而大多数像 **ager** 这样的词都要去掉-e-,因此,将属格作为整个词条的一部分来掌握非常重要(虽然“puerile”和“agriculture”等英语派生词也有助于我们记住词根)。**Vir, virī, man** 这一特殊的-ir 阳性名词也是如此。

词根	puer, boy puer-	ager, field agr-		词尾
单数				
主格	<u>p</u> uer ²	<u>á</u> ger ²	mágnus ³	(none)
属格	<u>p</u> uerī	<u>á</u> grī	mágnī	-ī
与格	p <u>u</u> erō	ágrō	mágnō	-ō
宾格	p <u>u</u> erum	ágrum	mágnum	-um
夺格	p <u>u</u> erō	ágrō	mágnō	-ō
呼格	<u>p</u> uer	<u>á</u> ger	mágne	(none)
复数				
主格	p <u>u</u> erī	ágrī	mágnī	-ī
属格	puerōrum	agrōrum	magnōrum	-ōrum
与格	p <u>u</u> erīs	ágrīs	mágnīs	-īs
宾格	p <u>u</u> erōs	ágrōs	mágnōs	-ōs
夺格	p <u>u</u> erīs	ágrīs	mágnīs	-īs
呼格	p <u>u</u> erī	ágrī	mágnī	-ī

关于格词尾的说明

我们注意到,某些第二变格法的词尾与第一变格法相同(如复数与格和复数夺格的词尾均为-īs),还有一些则类似(如单数宾格-am/-um,复数属格-ārum/-ōrum,复数宾格-ās/-ōs)。和第一变格法一样,某些第二变格法词尾也被用于不同的格(例如,amīcī, amīcō 和 amīcīs 可以分别表示哪些格?)。在这些情况下,词序和语境将为阅读理解和翻译提供重要帮助。

需要特别注意的是,只有在以-us 结尾的第二变格法名词和形容词的单数情况下,呼格的拼写才与主格不同。例如,单数是 amīcus, amīce, 复数则是 amīcī, amīcī。以-ius 结尾的名词(如 filius, son; Vergilius, Virgil)以及形容词 meus, my 的单数呼格词尾就是一个-ī: mī fili, my son; Ō Vergilī, O Virgil。

¹ 请记住,这只是一种表示夺格的权宜之计。介词通常与夺格连用,特别是当名词指人的时候。在英语翻译时,几乎总要用到介词。

² 下划线是为了提请注意。

³ 加入这个词是为了进行对比。请注意,puer magnus, a big boy; Ō puer magne, O big boy。

同位语

Gāium, filium meum, in agrō videō.

I see Gaius, my son, in the field.

在这句话中, **filium** 是 **Gāium** 的同位语。同位语是指一个名词“被置于另一个名词旁边”¹, 作为对它进行解释的等价词。处于同位关系的名词通常会在性、数、格上保持一致。同位语与它之前的名词往往用逗号隔开。

词序

在一个简单的拉丁语句子或从句中, 典型的词序是:(1) 主语及其修饰语;(2) 间接宾语;(3) 直接宾语;(4) 状语(副词或副词短语);(5) 动词。在正规作品中, 动词之所以常常位于句子末尾, 可能与罗马人喜好尾重句文体(periodic style) 有关, 这种文体试图使读者或听者处于悬而未决的状态, 直到句中最后一个词出现。此外, 形容词和属格名词通常跟在所修饰词的后面。不过, 尽管这些规则应当牢记, 但为了变化和强调, 罗马人往往并不遵守这些规则。事实上, 在像拉丁语这样的高度屈折的语言中, 同语义相比, 词序相对而言并不重要, 因为屈折词尾可以指明句中词与词的相互关系。而在英语中, 屈折变化相对而言要少得多, 语义一般要依赖于更严格的词序约定。

例如, 考察下列英语句子和四个拉丁语句子, 尽管词序不同, 但它们的意思是一样的。

(1) *The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.*

(2) *Puer puellae bellae rosam dat.*

(3) *Bellae puellae puer rosam dat.*

(4) *Bellae puellae rosam dat puer.*

(5) *Rosam puer puellae bellae dat.*

无论拉丁语句子的词序如何变化, 它的意思都是一样的(尽管侧重点有所不同)。而且根据词尾, 无论处于什么位置, **bellae** 都必须修饰 **puellae**。但是如果改变英语句子的词序, 意思就会随之而改变:

(1) *The boy is giving the pretty girl a rose.*

(2) *The pretty girl is giving the boy a rose.*

(3) *The girl is giving the boy a pretty rose.*

(4) *The girl is giving the pretty boy a rose.*

¹ 同位语(apposition)源于 **ad** (*to, near*) + **pōnō, positus** (*put*)。

(5) *The rose is giving the boy a pretty girl.*

所有这些句子使用的词都一样,但是根据英语词序的约定,每句话的意思都不同。而且,第5个英语句子是无意义的,而第5个拉丁语句子尽管词序与它一样,却是有意义的。

词汇表

- áger, ágrī, m.,** *field, farm* (agrarian, agriculture, agronomy; cp. **agricola**)
agricola, -ae, m., *farmer*
amīca, -ae, f., and **amīcus, amīcī, m.,** *friend* (amicable, amiable, amity; cp. **amō**)
fēmina, -ae, f., *woman* (female, feminine, femininity)
fīlia, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **fīliābus,** *daughter* (filiation, affiliation, affiliate, filial, hidalgo)
fīlius, fīlī, m., *son* (see **fīlia**)
nūmerus, -ī,¹ m., *number* (numeral, innumerable, enumerate)
pópulus, -ī, m., *the people, a people, a nation* (populace, population, popularity, popularize, populous)
púer, púerī, m., *boy*; pl. *boys, children* (puerile, puerility)
sapiéntia, -ae, f., *wisdom* (sapience, sapient, sage, savant)
vir, vírī, m., *man, hero* (virtue, virile, triumvirate; *not* virulent)
avárus (m.), avára (f.), adj., *greedy, avaricious* (avarice)
paúcī (m.), paúcae (f.), adj., usually pl., *few, a few* (paucity)
Rōmānus (m.), Rōmāna (f.), adj., *Roman* (Romance, romance, romantic, romanticism, Romanesque, Roumania)
dē, prep. + abl., *down from, from; concerning, about*; also as a prefix **dē-** with such meanings as *down, away, aside, out, off* (demote, from **dē-moveō**; decline, descend)
in, prep. + abl., *in, on*
hódiē, adv., *today*
sēmpēr, adv., *always* (sempiternal)
hábeō, habére, hábuī, hábitum, *to have, hold, possess; consider, regard* (inhabit, “hold in”; ex-habit, “hold forth”; habit, habitat)
sátiō (1),² *to satisfy, sate* (satiare, insatiable, satiety, satisfaction; cp. **satis**, Ch. 5)

练习与复习

1. *Fīlium nautae Rōmānī in agrīs vidēmus.*

¹ 在以后的词汇表中,以**-us**结尾的规则的第二变格法名词将以这种缩略形式表示(即 **numerus, -ī = numerus, numerī**)。

² 对于动词主要部分为**-ō/-āre/-āvī/-ātum**的规则的第一变位法动词,今后将不再标出其他三个部分,而仅以(1)来表示。

2. Puerī puellās hodiē vocant.
3. Sapientiam amīcārum, Ō filia mea, semper laudat.
4. Multī viri et fēmināe philosophiam antīquam cōservant.
5. Sī ira valet, Ō mī fili, saepe errāmus et poenās damus.
6. Fortūna virōs magnōs amat.
7. Agricola filiābus pecūniam dat.
8. Without a few friends life is not strong.
9. Today you have much fame in your country.
10. We see great fortune in your daughters' lives, my friend.
11. He always gives my daughters and sons roses.

古代名言

1. Dēbētis, amīcī, dē populō Rōmānō cōgitāre. (Cicero.)
2. Maecēnās, amīcus Augustī, mē in numerō amīcōrum habet. (Horace.—**Maecēnās**, a name in nom. sg.; see Ch. 1 reading passage.—**Augustus**, -ī.)
3. Libellus meus et sententiae meae vītās virōrum monent. (Phaedrus.—**libellus**, -ī, *little book*.)
4. Paucī virī sapientiae student. (Cicero.—**studēre** + dat., *to be eager for*.)
5. Fortūna adversa virum magnae sapientiae nōn terret. (Horace.—**adversus**, **adversa**, adj. = English.)
6. Cimōn, vir magnae fāmae, magnam benevolentiam habet. (Ne-
pos.—**Cimōn**, proper name nom. sg.—**benevolentia**, -ae = Eng.)
7. Semper avārus eget. (*Horace.—**avārus** = **avārus vir**.—**egēre**, *to be in need*.)
8. Nūlla cōpia pecūniae avārum virum satiat. (Seneca.—**nūllus**, **nūlla**,
adj., *no*.—**cōpia**, -ae, *abundance*.)
9. Pecūnia avārum irrītat, nōn satiat. (Publilius Syrus.—**irrītāre**, *to ex-
cite, exasperate*.)
10. Sēcrētē amīcōs admonē; laudā palam. (*Publilius Syrus.—**sēcrētē**,
adv., *in secret*.—**admonē** = **monē**.—**palam**, adv., *openly*.)
11. Modum tenēre dēbēmus. (*Seneca.—**modus**, -ī, *moderation*.—**te-
nēre**, *to have, observe*.)

THE GRASS IS ALWAYS GREENER

Agricola et vītā et fortūnam nautae saepe laudat; nauta magnam fortūnam et vītā poētae saepe laudat; et poēta vītā et agrōs agricolae laudat. Sine philosophiā avārī virī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant: multam pecūniam habent, sed pecūnia multa virum avārum nōn satiat.

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 1.1; free prose adaptation.)

词源点滴

下面是一些罗曼语词, 我们可以通过本课的词汇表来辨识它们。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
amīcus	amico	amigo	ami
filius	figlio	hijo	fil
numerus	numero	número	numéro
populus	popolo	pueblo	peuple
paucī	poco	poco	peu
semper	sempre	siempre	
habēre	avere	haber	avoir
dē	di	de	de

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, amīcae et amīcī! Quid agitis hodiē? 如果你在海岸警卫队工作, 那么你就要 **semper parātus**, *always prepared*。如果你是一个美国海军陆战队队员, 那么就要 **semper fidēlis**, *always faithful*。这只是显示各种现代组织机构特质的无数拉丁语格言中的两条。**Valēte et habēte fortūnam bonam!**



*Augustus of Prima Porta
Late 1st century B.C.
Vatican Museums
Vatican State*

第四课

第二变格法中性词;形容词;Sum 的现在时直陈式;
谓语性名词和谓语形容词;形容词作名词

第二变格法——中性词

第一变格法没有中性名词,但在第二变格法中却为数不少。其变格如下,也是通过词根加词尾得到的:

词根	dōnum, <i>gift</i> dōn-	cōnsilium, <i>plan</i> cōnsili-	magnum, <i>great</i> magn-	词尾
单数				
主格	dōnum	cōnsilium	māgnum	-um
属格	dōnī	cōnsilī ¹	māgnī	-ī
与格	dōnō	cōnsiliō	māgnō	-ō
宾格	dōnum	cōnsilium	māgnum	-um
夺格	dōnō	cōnsiliō	māgnō	-ō
复数				
主格	dōna	cōnsilia	māgna	-a
属格	dōnōrum	cōnsiliōrum	māgnōrum	-ōrum
与格	dōnīs	cōnsiliīs	māgnīs	-īs
宾格	dōna	cōnsilia	māgna	-a
夺格	dōnīs	cōnsiliīs	māgnīs	-īs

我们注意到,除了主格、宾格和呼格的词尾相同,第二变格法的中性词尾与

¹ 在西塞罗时期,以-ius 或-ium 结尾的第二变格法名词的单数属格均以单个-ī 结尾(如 filius, 属格 fili; cōnsilium, 属格 cōnsilī)。不过,由于在奥古斯都时期确立了属格形式-īi (filiī, cōnsiliī),而且-īi 一直是形容词的规则(eximius, 属格 eximīi),所以本书将使用这种形式。

阳性词尾完全一致:单数都以-um 结尾,复数都以-a 结尾(这对于所有变格法的中性词都成立)。词序和语境可以帮助我们区分用作主语和宾语的中性名词(当然,呼格更容易区分,因为它们通常用逗号与句子隔开)。复数词尾-a 有可能会被误认为是第一变格法的单数主格,所以一定要记住包括名词的性在内的词条的所有内容。在词汇表中,规则的第二变格法中性词将以如下缩略形式表示:
dōnum, -ī (= dōnum, dōnī), n。

形容词的变格和一致

由第二课到第四课 **magnus** 的词形变化表,我们可以看出,虽然形容词的词根保持不变,但是根据所修饰名词的性的不同,形容词有阳性、阴性或中性词尾,而且在数和格上要与名词保持一致。下面列出了 **magnus** 的完整变格,以帮助我们复习前两种变格法。

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
主格	mágnus	mágnā	mágnū
属格	mágnī	mágnae	mágnī
与格	mágnō	mágnae	mágnō
宾格	mágnū	mágnam	mágnū
夺格	mágnō	mágnā	mágnō
呼格	mágne	mágnā	mágnū
复数			
主格	mágnī	mágnae	mágnā
属格	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
与格	mágnīs	mágnīs	mágnīs
宾格	mágnōs	mágnās	mágnā
夺格	mágnīs	mágnīs	mágnīs
呼格	mágnī	mágnae	mágnā

在词汇表中,这类第一、第二变格法形容词今后将写成如下形式:

méus, -a, -um múltus, -a, -um paúci, -ae, -a (pl. only)

Sum: 现在时不定式和现在时直陈式

英语动词 *to be* 是不规则的,拉丁语动词 **sum** 也是如此。虽然人称词尾还可以辨认出来,但词干却已经变得面目全非,最好还是老老实实记住这些十分常见的形式。请注意,**sum** 是一个不及物的系动词,我们不说它的语态是主动态还是被动态。

Sum 的现在时不定式: esse, to be

Sum 的现在时直陈式

单数

1. sum, *I am*
2. es, *you are*
3. est, *he (she, it) is, there is*

复数

- súmus, *we are*
 éstis, *you are*
 sunt, *they are, there are*

谓语性名词和谓语形容词

作为不及物动词, **sum** 不能带直接宾语。它(以及今后要学到的其他系动词)就像火车上连接两节车厢的车钩一样, 将一句话的主语和谓语¹中的名词或形容词连接起来。这些谓语性名词和谓语形容词通过系动词与主语相连接、甚至相等同, 所以自然地, 它们在数和格(当然, 通常是主格)上要与主语保持一致, 在性上也要尽可能地一致。如果主语中包含有不同的性, 那么谓语形容词的性通常要与距它最近的词保持一致, 虽然阳性往往占支配地位。考察以下例句, 为辨识本课中的谓语性名词和谓语形容词做准备。

Vergilius est amīcus Augustī, *Virgil is the friend of Augustus.*

Vergilius est poēta, *Virgil is a poet.*

Vergilius est magnus, *Virgil is great.*

Fāma Vergiliī est magna, *the fame of Virgil is great.*

Amīcae sunt bonae, *the girlfriends are good.*

Puerī dēbent esse bonī, *the boys ought to be good.*

Puer et puella sunt bonī, *the boy and girl are good.*

Dōnum est magnum, *the gift is large.*

Dōna sunt magna, *the gifts are large.*

Sumus Rōmānī, *we are Romans (Roman men).*

Sumus Rōmānae, *we are Roman women.*

形容词作名词

罗马人经常把形容词用作名词, 即用它来取代名词, 就像在英语中那样(“The meek shall inherit the earth”——即“the meek *people*”)。这样的形容词一般将译成名词, 根据数和性的不同, 通常要加上 *man* 或 *men*, *woman* 或 *women*, *thing* 或 *things*, 比如下面的例子:

¹ 主语和谓语是一句话的两个主要部分。谓语由动词及其附属词和附属短语组成。

Bonās saepe laudant, *they often praise the good women.*
 Multī sunt stultī, *many (men) are foolish.*
 Puerī mala nōn amant, *the boys do not love bad things.*
 Paucī dē perīculō cōgitant, *few (men) are thinking about the danger.*

词汇表

- bāsium, -iī** (= **bāsī**), n., *kiss*
béllum, -ī, n., *war* (bellicose, belligerent, rebel, rebellion, revel)
cōnsīlium, -iī, n., *plan, purpose, counsel, advice, judgment, wisdom* (counsel, counselor)
cūra, -ae, f., *care, attention, caution, anxiety* (cure, curator, curious, curiosity, curio, curettage, sinecure; cp. **cūrō**, Ch. 36))
dōnūm, -ī, n., *gift, present* (donate, donation, condone; cp. **dō**)
exitium, -iī, n., *destruction, ruin* (exit; cp. **exeō**, Ch. 37)
magīster, magīstrī, m., and **magīstra, -ae**, f., *schoolmaster or schoolmistress, teacher, master or mistress* (magistrate, magistracy, magisterial, maestro, mastery, mister, miss; cp. **magnus**)
móra, -ae, f., *delay* (moratorium, demur)
nīhil, indeclinable, n., *nothing* (see Ch. 1)
óculus, -ī, m., *eye* (ocular, oculist, binoculars, monocle)
offīcium, -iī, n., *duty, service* (office, officer, official, officious; cp. **faciō**, Ch. 10)
ótium, -iī, n., *leisure, peace* (otiose, negotiate)
perīculum, -ī, n., *danger, risk* (peril, perilous, imperil, parlous)
remédium, -iī, n., *cure, remedy* (remedial, irremediable, remediation)
béllus, -a, -um, *pretty, handsome, charming* (belle, beau, beauty, embellish, belladonna, belles-lettres). Do not confuse with **bellum, war**.
bónus, -a, -um, *good, kind* (bonus, bonanza, bonny, bounty, bona fide)
hūmānus, -a, -um, *pertaining to man* (**homō**, Ch. 7), *human; humane, kind; refined, cultivated* (humanity, humanitarian, humanism, the humanities, humanist, inhuman, superhuman)
málus, -a, -um, *bad, wicked, evil* (malice, malicious, malign, malignant, malaria, malady, malefactor, malfeasance, malevolent; mal-, a prefix as in maladjustment, malnutrition, maltreat, malapropos)
párvus, -a, -um, *small, little* (parvovirus, parvule, parvicellular)
stúltus, -a, -um, *foolish*; **stúltus, -ī**, m., *a fool* (stultify, stultification)
vérus, -a, -um, *true, real, proper* (verify, verisimilitude, very, veracity)
iúvō (or **ádiuvō**), **iuvāre, iúvī, iútum**, *to help, aid, assist; please* (adjutant, coadjutant, aid, aide-de-camp)
sum, ésse, fūī, futúrum, *to be, exist* (essence, essential, future, futurity)

练习与复习

1. Ōtium est bonum, sed ōtium multōrum est parvum.
2. Bella (from **bellum**, -ī, n.) sunt mala et multa perīcula habent.
3. Officiū nautam dē ōtiō hodiē vocat.
4. Paucī virī avārī multās fōrmās perīculī in pecūniā vident.
5. Sī multam pecūniā habētis, saepe nōn estis sine cūrīs.
6. Puellae magistrā dē cōnsiliō malō sine morā monent.
7. Ō magne poēta, sumus vērī amīcī; mē iuvā, amābō tē!
8. Fēmina agricolae portam videt.
9. You (sg.) are in great danger.
10. My son's opinions are often foolish.
11. The daughters and sons of great men and women are not always great.
12. Without wisdom the sailors' good fortune is nothing and they are paying the penalty.

古代名言

1. Fortūna est caeca. (*Cicero.—**caecus**, -a, -um, *blind*.)
2. Sī perīcula sunt vēra, īnfortūnātus es. (Terence.—**īnfortūnātus**, -a, -um, *unfortunate*.)
3. Salvē, Ō amīce; vir bonus es. (Terence.)
4. Nōn bella est fāma filiī tuī. (Horace.)
5. Errāre est hūmānum. (Seneca.—As an indeclinable neuter verbal noun, an infinitive can be the subject of a verb.)
6. Nihil est omnīnō beātum. (Horace—**omnīnō**, adv., *wholly*.—**beātus**, -a, -um, *happy, fortunate*.)
7. Remedium īrae est mora. (Seneca.)
8. Bonus Daphnis, amīcus meus, ōtium et vītā agricolae amat. (Virgil.—Daphnis is a pastoral character.)
9. Magistrī parvīs puerīs crūstula et dōna saepe dant. (Horace.—**crūstulum**, -ī, *cookie*.)
10. Amīcam meam magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.—**magis quam**, *more than*.)
11. Salvē, mea bella puella—dā mihi multa bāsia, amābō tē! (Catullus.—**mihi**, dat., *to me*.)
12. Īnfinītus est numerus stultōrum. (Ecclesiastes.—**īnfinītus**, -a, -um = Eng)
13. Officiū mē vocat. (Persius.)
14. Malī sunt in nostrō numerō et dē exitiō bonōrum virōrum cōgitant. Bonōs adiuvāte; cōservāte populum Rōmānum. (Cicero.—**nostrō**, *our*.)

THE RARITY OF FRIENDSHIP

Paucī virī vērōs amīcōs habent, et paucī sunt dignī. Amīcitiā vērā est praeclāra, et omnia praeclāra sunt rāra. Multī virī stultī dē pecūniā semper cōgitant, paucī dē amīcīs; sed errant: possumus valēre sine multā pecūniā, sed sine amīcitiā nōn valēmus et vīta est nihil.

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 21.79–80.—**dignus, -a, -um**, *worthy, deserving*. **amīcitiā, -ae**, *friendship*.—**omnia, all [things]**.—**praeclārus, -a, -um**, *splendid, remarkable*.—**rārus, -a, -um** = Eng.—**possumus, we are able**.)

词源点滴

下面是一些罗曼语派生词:

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
oculus	occhio	ojo	œil
ōtium	ozio	ocio	oisiveté
perīculum	pericolo	peligro	péril
officium	ufficio	oficio	office
bonus	buono	bueno	bon
vērū	vero	verdadero	vrai
magister	maestro	maestro	maître
bellus	bello	bello	belle
hūmānus	umano	humano	humain
beātus	beato	beato	béat
bāsium	bacio	beso	baiser
rārus	raro	raro	rare

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvē, amīce! 当前的英语用法中有大量拉丁语表达(还记得 **sub rosā** 吗?)。在本课中,我们遇到了一个与形容词有关的表达 **rāra avis**,字面意思是 *a rare bird*,但却用来指不寻常的人或罕见的事物。在 20 世纪六七十年代,美国学习拉丁语的学生正在成为 **rāra avis**,但此后却出现了明显的复苏。**Ergō, therefore** 是另一个直接进入英语的拉丁词;因此(**ergo**),你现在知道笛卡儿在《方法谈》(*Discourse on Method*)中说 **cōgito ergō sum**(“我思故我在”)的意思了。**Semper cōgitā, amīce, et valē!**



*Cicero
Uffizi
Florence, Italy*

第五课

第一和第二变位法动词：将来时和未完成时； 以 -er 结尾的形容词

将来时和未完成时

对于第一、第二变位法动词而言，罗马人通过在现在时词干和人称词尾之间插入将来时标志（在大多数形式中是 -bi-）来表示将来时。类似地，（在所有四种变位法中）-bā- 是未完成时的标志。未完成时是一种过去时态，一般来说对应于英语中的过去进行时。从下列词形变化表可以看出将来时和未完成时的词尾：

Laudō 和 Moneō 的将来时和未完成时直陈式主动态

将来时	未完成时
单数	
1. laudā-bō, <i>I shall praise</i>	laudā-ba-m, <i>I was praising, kept praising, used to praise, praised</i>
2. laudā-bi-s, <i>you will praise</i>	laudā-bā-s, <i>you were praising, etc.</i>
3. laudā-bi-t, <i>he, she, it will praise</i>	laudā-ba-t, <i>he was praising, etc.</i>
复数	
1. laudābimus, <i>we shall praise</i>	laudābāmus, <i>we were praising, etc.</i>
2. laudābitis, <i>you will praise</i>	laudābātis, <i>you were praising, etc.</i>
3. laudābunt, <i>they will praise</i>	laudābant, <i>they were praising, etc.</i>
单数	
1. monē-bō, <i>I shall advise</i>	monē-ba-m, <i>I was advising, kept advising, used to advise, advised</i>

- | | |
|--|---|
| 2. monē-bi-s, <i>you will advise</i> | monē-bā-s, <i>you were advising, etc.</i> |
| 3. monē-bi-t, <i>he, she, it will advise</i> | monē-ba-t, <i>he was advising, etc.</i> |

复数

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. monēbimus, <i>we shall advise</i> | monēbāmus, <i>we were advising, etc.</i> |
| 2. monēbitis, <i>you will advise</i> | monēbātis, <i>you were advising, etc.</i> |
| 3. monēbunt, <i>they will advise</i> | monēbant, <i>they were advising, etc.</i> |

请注意,第一人称单数和第三人称复数的将来时词尾发生了元音变化(请记住 **bō/bi/bi/bi/bu**——听起来像是婴儿的咿呀学语!),未完成时的第一人称单数、第三人称单数和第三人称复数的词尾也变成了短音 **-a-**(请记住,元音在词末的 **-m**, **-r** 和 **-t** 之前通常要变短,在任何位置的 **nt** 或另一个元音之前也要变短)。

作为将来时和未完成时的标志,“中缀”**-bi-**和**-bā-**(区别性特征为**-i-**和**-ā-**)记忆起来并不困难,因为我们可以将它们与通常用来翻译这两个时态的英语助动词“will”和“was”(拼写中也包含**-i-**和**-a-**)联系起来。请注意,要想表达 *he will praise* 或 *he was praising*,英语需要三个不同的词,而拉丁语只需一个词就可以表达了。这个词由词干+时态标志+人称词尾三部分组成 (**laudā+bi+t = praise-will-he**, **laudā-ba-t = praising-was-he**)。

翻译

对于将来时的翻译,通常在第一人称情况下用 *shall*,在第三人称情况下用 *will*,这一般没有什么问题:**dē amīcō cōgitābō**, *I shall think about my friend*;
multam sapientiam habēbunt, *they will have much wisdom*。

未完成时一般表示在过去正在继续或正在进行的动作,就像“未完成的”(imperfect,源于 **imperfectum**, *not completed*)一词所暗示的那样。下面所有的翻译都是可能的,这要取决于句子出现的具体语境:

Nautam monēbam, *I was warning (kept warning, used to warn, tried to warn, was beginning to warn) the sailor*.

Poētae vītam agricolae laudābant, *poets used to praise the farmer's life*.

Magister puerōs vocābat, *the teacher kept calling (was calling) the boys*.

未完成时偶尔也可以翻译成简单过去时,特别是在有副词指示持续的动作时:**nautam saepe monēbam**, *I often warned the sailor*。

以-er 结尾的第一、第二变格法形容词

r 之前出现 **e** 的问题不仅见于像 **puer** 和 **ager** 这样的名词(第三课),而且也见于形容词。如果我们记得词汇表中所给出的形容词形式(阳性、阴性、中性

的主格形式),那么就没有什么问题,因为不论是否包含-e-,词根都完整地出现在阴性和中性形式中,如下面的例子所示;同样,与-er 名词类似,英语派生词可以帮助我们记忆词根(“liberal”来自 **liber**,“pulchritude”来自 **pulcher**,“miserable”来自 **miser**,等等)。

liber	liber-a	liber-um	free
pulcher	pulchr-a	pulchr-um	beautiful

词形变化表中的其余部分都是由词根加上规则的词尾构成的:

	阳性	阴性	中性	阳性	阴性	中性
主格	liber	libera	liberum	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
属格	liberī	liberae	liberī	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
与格	liberō	liberae	liberō	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
		(etc.)			(etc.)	

这些例子完整的变格形式参见书末的“词形总结”部分。复习变格和变位的时候,我们需要经常查看它。

词汇表

adulēscēntia, -ae, f., *youth, young manhood; youthfulness* (adolescence, adolescent)

ānimus, -ī, m., *soul, spirit, mind; ānimī, -ōrum, high spirits, pride, courage* (animus, animosity, magnanimous, unanimous, pusillanimous)

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heaven* (ceiling, celestial, Celeste, cerulean)

cūlpa, -ae, f., *fault, blame* (cp. **cūlpō** below; culpable, culprit, exculpate, inculpate)

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame* (glorify, glorification, glorious, inglorious)

vērbum, -ī, n., *word* (verb, adverb, verbal, verbiage, verbose, proverb)

tē, abl. and acc. sg., *you; yourself*; cp. **mē**

liber, **libera**, **liberum**, *free* (liberal, liberality, libertine; cp. **libertās**, Ch. 8, **liberō**, Ch. 19)

nōster, **nōstra**, **nōstrum**, *our, ours* (nostrum, paternoster)

pūlcher, **pūlchra**, **pūlchrum**, *beautiful, handsome; fine* (pulchritude)

sānus, -a, -um, *sound, healthy, sane* (sanity, sanitary, sanitation, sanitarium, insane)

īgitur, conj., postpositive,¹ *therefore, consequently*

-ne, enclitic or suffix added to the emphatic word placed at the beginning of a sentence to indicate a question the answer to which is uncertain.

(For other types of direct questions, see **nōnne** and **num** in Ch. 40.)

prōpter, prep. + acc., *on account of, because of*

crās, adv., *tomorrow* (procrastinate, procrastination)

herī, adv., *yesterday*

¹ 后置(postpositive)词不作为句中的第一个词出现;它被置于第一个词或短语之后(**post-pōnō**)。

quándō, interrogative and relative adv. and conj., *when*; **sī quándō**, *if ever*
sátis, indecl. noun. adi., and adv., *enough, sufficient (-ly)* (cp. **satiō**; satisfy, satisfactory, satiate, insatiable, sate; assets, from **ad**, *up to* + **satis**)
tum, adv., *then, at that time; thereupon, in the next place*
cénō (1), *to dine* (cenacle; cp. **cēna**, Ch. 26)
cúlpō (1), *to blame, censure* (cp. **culpa** above)
remáneō, remanére, remánsī, remánsūm, or **máneō, manére, mánsī, mánsūm**, *to remain, stay, stay behind, abide, continue* (permanent, remnant, mansion, manor, immanent—do not confuse with imminent)
súperō (1), *to be above* (cp. **super**, adv. and prep. + abl. or acc., *above*), *have the upper hand, surpass; overcome, conquer* (superable, insuperable)

练习与复习

1. Officium liberōs virōs semper vocābat.
2. Habēbimusne multōs virōs et fēminās magnōrum animōrum?
3. Perīcula bellī nōn sunt parva, sed patria tua tē vocābit et agrico adiuvābunt.
4. Propter culpās malōrum patria nostra nōn valēbit.
5. Mora animōs nostrōs superābat et remedium nōn habēbāmus.
6. Multī in agrīs herī manēbant et Rōmānōs iuvābant.
7. Paucī virī dē cūrā animī cōgitābant.
8. Propter iram in culpā estis et crās poenās dabit.
9. Vērum ōtium nōn habēs, vir stulte!
10. Nihil est sine culpā; sumus bonī, sī paucās habēmus.
11. Poēta amīcae multās rosās, dōna pulchra, et bāsia dabat.
12. Will war and destruction always remain in our land?
13. Does money satisfy the greedy man?
14. Therefore, you (sg.) will save the reputation of our foolish boys.
15. Money and glory were conquering the soul of a good man.

古代名言

1. Invidiam populī Rōmānī crās nōn sustinēbis. (Cicero.—**invidia, -ae, dislike.**—**sustinēre, to endure, sustain.**)
2. Perīculumne igitur herī remanēbat? (Cicero.)
3. Angustus animus pecūniam amat. (Cicero.—**angustus, -a, -um, narrow.**)
4. Superā animōs et iram tuam. (Ovid.)
5. Culpa est mea, Ō amīcī. (Cicero.)
6. Dā veniam filiō et filiābus nostrīs. (Terence.—**venia, -ae, favor, pardon.**)
7. Propter adulēscēntiam, filiī meī, mala vītae nōn vidēbātis. (Terence.)
8. Amābō tē, cūrā filiā meā. (Cicero.—**cūrāre, to take care of.**)
Vīta hūmāna est supplicium. (Seneca.—**supplicium, -iī, punishment.**)
10. Satisne sānus es? (Terence.)

11. Sī quandō satis pecūniae habēbō, tum mē cōnsiliō et philosophiae dabō. (Seneca.—**pecūniae**, gen. case.)
12. Semper glōria et fāma tua manēbunt. (Virgil.)
13. Vir bonus et perītus aspera verba poētārum culpābit. (Horace.—**perītus**, -a, -um, *skillful*.—**asper**, **aspera**, **asperum**, *rough, harsh*.)

HIS ONLY GUEST WAS A REAL BOAR!

Nōn cēnat sine aprō noster, Tite, Caeciliānus:
bellum convīvam Caeciliānus habet!

(*Martial 7.59. This is the first of several selections included in this book from the *Epigrams* of Martial, a popular poet of the late 1st cen. A.D., briefly discussed in the Introd.; these poems are generally quite short, like this two-verse elegiac couplet, satirical, and targeted at a specific, but usually fictitious, character, here the glutton Caecilianus.—**Titus**, the poem's addressee, but not its victim.—**aper**, **apri**, *boar, pig*.—**convīva**, -ae one of a few masc. first decl. nouns, *dinner-guest*.)

THERMOPYLAE: A SOLDIER'S HUMOR

“Exercitus noster est magnus,” Persicus inquit, “et propter numerum sagittārum nostrārum caelum nōn vidēbitis!” Tum Lacedaemonius respondet: “In umbrā, igitur, pugnābimus!” Et Leōnidās, rēx Lacedaemoniōrum, exclāmat: “Pugnāte cum animīs, Lacedaemoniī; hodiē apud īferōs fortasse cēnābimus!”

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.42.101; an anecdote from the battle of Thermopylae, 480 B.C., in which the Persians under king Xerxes defeated the Spartans under Leonidas.—**exercitus**, *army*.—**Persicus**, -ī, *a Persian*.—**inquit**, *says*.—**sagitta**, -ae, *arrow*.—**Lacedaemonius**, -ī, *a Spartan*.—**respondere** = Eng.—**umbra**, -ae, *shade, shadow; ghost*.—**pugnare**, *to fight*.—**rēx**, *king*.—**exclāmāre**, *to shout*.—**cum** + abl., *with*.—**apud** + acc., *among*.—**īferī**, -ōrum, *those below, the dead*.—**fortasse**, adv., *perhaps*.)

词源点滴

与 **animus** 有关的是 **anima**, -ae, *the breath of life; animal, animated, inanimate* 皆由此而来。

“Envy”经由法语间接地来自 **invidia** (sent. 1); “invidious”是直接来自拉丁语借来的。“Expert”和“experience”都与 **perītus** (13) 有关。这里的 **ex** 是强调成分 (= *thoroughly*), 词干 **perī-** 的意思是 *try, make trial of*。那么, “experiment”指的是什么? 显然, 所有 experiment (实验) 都会带有某种危险 (**perī-culum**)。

In sent. 13: *asperity, exasperate* (**ex** 同样是强调成分)。In “Thermopylae”: *sagittate; umbrella* (经由意大利语而来, 带有指小词尾 [diminutive ending]), *umbrage, adumbrate; pugnacious, pugilist*.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, et amīcī et amīcae meae! Quid agitis hodiē?事实上,我希望你们同时在身体和精神上 **sānī et sānae**;如果是这样,那么你已经获得了公元1世纪的罗马讽刺作家尤维纳利斯所说的生活中的至善——**mēns sāna in corpore sānō, a healthy mind in a healthy body** (以后我们会遇到 **mēns** 和 **corpus** 这两个第三变格法名词,在此之前,我们可以 **in mente** 记住这句著名的引语)。顺便说一句,有传言说,体育用品品牌 ASICS 是 **animus sānus in corpore sānō** 的首字母缩略词;根据所学的词汇,这个短语的意思我们应当可以明白。ASICS 的竞争者 NIKE 源于表示“胜利”(victory)的希腊词,它所对应的拉丁词是 **victōria**,这往往是某个女王或有权势的女士常使用的带有获胜意味的名字(其阳性的对应词应该是“Victor”,源于拉丁词 **victor**)。

你以前也许见过 **verbum sap** 和 **mea culpa** 这两个短语。如果没有,那么你以后会见到的。前者是 **verbum satis sapientī est** 的缩写:**sapientī** 是第三变格法形容词 **sapiēns, wise** 的与格形式,这里用作名词(还记得我们在第四课中讲的形容词作名词吗?)现在,你应当已经明白这个短语的意思是 *a word to the wise is sufficient* 了。如果没能做到,请你大喊一声“**mea culpa!**”然后(这里是 **verbum sap**)回过头去复习一至五课的词汇。**Valēte!**

第六课

Sum 的将来时和未完成时直陈式；
Possum 的现在时、将来时和未完成时直陈式；
补充不定式

Sum 的将来时和未完成时直陈式

对于不规则动词 **sum, esse**, 学习其将来时和未完成时的最好方法就是记住下面这张词形变化表; 不过, 它们比现在时形式更为规则, 均由词干 **er-**加上我们已经熟悉的现在时系统的人称词尾 (**-ō/-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt**) 所构成。

	将来时直陈式	未完成时直陈式
单数	1. <i>ērō, I shall be</i>	<i>éram, I was</i>
	2. <i>éris, you will be</i>	<i>érās, you were</i>
	3. <i>érit, he (she, it, there) will be</i>	<i>érat, he (she, it, there) was</i>
复数	1. <i>érimus, we shall be</i>	<i>erāmus, we were</i>
	2. <i>éritis, you will be</i>	<i>erātis, you were</i>
	3. <i>érunt, they (there) will be</i>	<i>érant, they (there) were</i>

不规则动词 **Possum, Posse, Potuī: To Be Able, Can, Could**

常用动词 **possum, posse, potuī** 是源于不规则形容词 **potis** (*able, capable*; 与“potent”, “potential”比较) 的 **pot-**和 **sum** 的复合词。在以 **s-**开头的 **sum** 前, **-t-**会变成或“同化为”**-s-**(所以 **possum** 来自 ***potsum**); 在其他情况下 **-t-**保持不变。不规则的现在时不定式 **posse** 是从遵循这一规则的较早形式 **potesse** 发展而来的。

	现在时直陈式	将来时直陈式	未完成时直陈式
	<i>I am able, can</i>	<i>I shall be able</i>	<i>I was able, could</i>
单数	1. p ^o s-sum	p ^o t-er ^o	p ^o t-eram
	2. p ^o t-es	p ^o t-eris	p ^o t-erās
	3. p ^o t-est	p ^o t-erit	p ^o t-erat
复数	1. p ^o s-sumus	pot-érimus	pot-erāmus
	2. pot-éstis	pot-éritis	pot-erātis
	3. p ^o s-sunt	p ^o t-erunt	p ^o t-erant

Sum和possum的将来时和未完成时词尾分别是-ō/-is/-it..., -am/-ās/-at...,而我们在上一课中介绍的第一、第二变位法动词的将来时和未完成时词尾是-bō/-bis/-bit..., -bam/-bās/-bat...,它们之间的相似之处有助于我们记忆。

补充不定式

就像英语词 *to be able* 或 *can* 那样, **possum** 通常要求有一个不定式来补充它的含义。于是,我们就有了“补充”(complementary)不定式这种说法,意思是使不定式“完整”。我们已经见过 **dēbeō** 带出的补充不定式,以后还会见到其他动词带出的补充不定式。

Our friends were able to overcome (could overcome) many dangers.

Amīcī nostrī poterant superāre multa perīcula.

My friend is not able to remain (cannot remain).

Amīcus meus nōn potest remanēre.

You ought to save your money.

Dēbēs cōservāre pecūniam tuam.

请注意,补充不定式自身并没有独立的主语,它的主语就是它所从属的动词的主语。

词汇表

dēa, -ae, f., dat. and abl. pl. **deābus**, goddess, and **dēus**, -ī, m., voc. sg.

deus, nom. pl. **dī**, dat. and abl. pl. **dīs** (the plurals **deī** and **deīs** became common during the Augustan Period), god (adieu, deify, deity)

discípula, -ae, f., and **discípulus**, -ī, m., learner, pupil, student (disciple, discipline, disciplinary; cp. **discō**, Ch. 8)

īnsīdiae, -ārum, f. pl., ambush, plot, treachery (insidious)

líber, **librī**, m., book (library, libretto); not to be confused with **líber**, free

tyrānnus, -ī, m., absolute ruler, tyrant (tyrannous, tyrannicide)

vítium, -ī, n., fault, crime, vice (vitiate, vicious; but not vice in vice versa)

Graécus, -a, -um, Greek; **Graécus**, -ī, m., a Greek

perpétuus, -a, -um, *perpetual, lasting, uninterrupted, continuous* (perpetuate, perpetuity)

plénus, -a, -um, *full, abundant, generous* (plenary, plenteous, plentiful, plenitude, plenty, replenish, plenipotentiary)

sálvus, -a, -um, *safe, sound* (cp. **salveō**)

secúndus, -a, -um, *second; favorable* (secondary)

véster, véstra, véstrum, *your* (pl., i.e., used in addressing more than one person, vs. **tuus, -a, -um**), *yours*

-que, enclitic conj., *and*. It is appended to the second of two words to be joined: **fāma glōriaque**, *fame and glory*.

úbi: (1) rel. adv. and conj., *where, when*; (2) interrog. adv. and conj., *where?* (ubiquitous)

íbi, adv., *there* (ib. or ibid.)

nunc, adv., *now, at present* (quidnunc)

quárē, adv., lit. *because of which thing* (**quā rē**), *therefore, wherefore, why*

póssum, pósse, pótuī, *to be able, can, could, have power* (posse, possible, potent, potentate, potential, puissant, omnipotent)

tólerō (1), *to bear, endure* (tolerate, toleration, tolerable, intolerable, intolerance; cp. **tollō**, Ch. 22, **ferō**, Ch. 31)

练习与复习

- Oculī nostrī nōn valēbant; quārē agrōs bellōs vidēre nōn poterāmus.
- Sine multā pecūniā et multīs dōnīs tyrannus satiāre populum Rōmānum nōn poterit.
- Nōn poterant, igitur, tē dē poenā amīcōrum tuōrum herī monēre.
- Parvus numerus Graecōrum crās ibi remanēre poterit.
- Magister puerōs malōs sine morā vocābit.
- Fīliae vestrae dē librīs magnī poētae saepe cōgitābant.
- Quandō satis sapientiae habēbimus?
- Multī librī antiquī propter sapientiam cōsiliūque erant magnī.
- Glōria bonōrum librōrum semper manēbit.
- Possuntne pecūnia otiumque cūrās vītae hūmānae superāre?
- Therefore, we cannot always see the real vices of a tyrant.
- Few free men will be able to tolerate an absolute ruler.
- Many Romans used to praise the great books of the ancient Greeks.
- Where can glory and (use **-que**) fame be perpetual?

古代名言

- Dionysius tum erat tyrannus Syracūsānōrum. (Cicero.—**Dionysius, -iī**, a Greek name.—**Syracūsānus, -ī**, a *Syracusan*.)
- Optāsne meam vītam fortunamque gustāre? (Cicero.—**optāre, to wish**.—**gustāre, to taste**.)
- Possumusne, Ō dī, in malīs insidiīs et magnō exitiō esse salvī? (Cicero.—Can you explain why the nom. pl. **salvī** is used here?)

4. Propter cūram meam in perpetuō periculō nōn eritis. (Cicero.)
5. Propter vitia tua multī tē culpant et nihil tē in patriā tuā dēlectāre nunc potest. (Cicero.—**dēlectāre**, *to delight*.)
6. Fortūna Pūnicī bellī secundī varia erat. (Livy.—**Pūnicus**, **-a**, **-um**, *Punic, Carthaginian*.—**varius**, **-a**, **-um**, *varied*.)
7. Patria Rōmānōrum erat plēna Graecōrum librōrum statuārumque pulchrārum. (Cicero.—**statua**, **-ae**, Eng.)
8. Sine dīs et deābus in caelō animus nōn potest sānus esse. (Seneca.)
9. Sī animus infirmus est, nōn poterit bonam fortūnam tolerāre. (Publius Syrus.—**infirmitas**, **-a**, **-um**, *not strong, weak*.)
10. Ubi lēgēs valent, ibi populus līber potest valēre. (Publius Syrus.—**lēgēs**, nom. pl., *laws*.)

"I DO NOT LOVE THEE, DOCTOR FELL"

Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē.
Hoc tantum possum dīcere: nōn amo tē.

(*Martial 1.32; meter: elegiac couplet. **amo**: final -ō was often shortened in Latin poetry.—**Sabidius**, **-ī**.—**nec** = **et nōn**.—**dīcere**, *to say*.—**hoc**, *this*, acc. case.—**tantum**, adv., *only*.)

THE HISTORIAN LIVY LAMENTS THE DECLINE OF ROMAN MORALS

Populus Rōmānus magnōs animōs et paucās culpās habēbat. Dē officiīs nostrīs cōgitābāmus et glōriam bellī semper laudābāmus. Sed nunc multum ōtium habēmus, et multī sunt avārī. Nec vitia nostra nec remedia tolerāre possumus.

(Livy, from the preface to his history of Rome, *Ab Urbe Conditā*; see Introd.—**nec . . . nec**, conj., *neither . . . nor*.)

词源点滴

英语单词“library”显然与 **liber** 有关。然而，它在许多欧洲语言中的对应词却源于 **bibliothēca** 一词。这是一个源于希腊语的拉丁词，意思与我们的“**library**”是一样的。那么，你认为 **biblos** 在希腊语中是什么意思？试与 *Bible* 进行比较。

***In the readings*¹**

2. option, adopt.—gusto, disgust. 5. delectable, delight. 10. legal, legislative, legitimate, loyal.

如果我们知道法语词 **y** 源于 **ibi**，那么像 **il y a** (*there is*)等短语中的 **y** 就

¹为了简洁，我们今后将用这个短语来提请读者注意一些词，它们都与“古代名言”中相应的词有词源关系。

更好理解了。

以下法语词均源于所给出的拉丁词: **êtes = estis; nôtre = noster; vôtre = vester; goûter = gustāre**。那么, 法语的这个音调符号标示出了什么?

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae! Quid hodiē agitis, amīcī? Cōgitātisne dē linguā Latīnā? 现在, 我想你的词源知识已经可以使你懂得 **lingua Latīna** 是什么意思了。不错, 这就是你最喜欢的科目——*the Latin language*, 或者直接就写做“Latin”。相信你对这门语言已经有了一定的鉴赏力, 而且你一定是带着极大的“gusto”(“兴致、热忱”)去学习的!(如果你忘记了这个词的词源, 请参见上面的词源点滴。)新词 **deus** 出现在短语 **deus ex machinā**, *god from a machine* 中, 它通常(在戏剧和其他语境中)指某个人或某种机制挽狂澜于既倒, 使几乎毫无希望的局面发生逆转。

如果你知道, **sub** 是一个介词, 意为 *under*, 比如在“subterranean”(under the *terra, earth*)中, 那么你会为下面这句古老的话捧腹的: **semper ubi sub ubi!**¹(注意卫生, 防止皮疹!)说到 **ubi**, 它问的问题应由 **ibi** 来回答; 由 **ibi** 和强势后缀 **-dem, the same**(参见第十一课 **-dem** 的类似用法)构成的复合词 **ibidem** 使我们有了 **ibid.**, *in the same place cited*, 这是英语中基于拉丁语的诸多常用缩写之一。类似的还有:

cf. = **cōnfer, compare**

cp. = **comparā, compare**

e.g. = **exemplī grātiā, for the sake of example**

et al. = **et aliī/aliae, and others (of persons)**

etc. = **et cētera, and others (of things)**

i.e. = **id est, that is**

n.b. = **nōtā bene, note carefully (i.e., pay close attention)**

v.i. and v.s. = **vidē infrā and vidē suprā, see below and see above**

在这一课中, 你是否既 **Semper ubi sub ubi**, 又从学理上弄懂了 **ibid.**? 正如我们的标题所说: 欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语! **Valēte!**

¹ 这是一个因谐音而起的拉丁语双关语, “Semper”是“always”, “ubi”是“where”, 谐音为 wear, “sub”是“under”, 连在一起就是 Always wear underwear!(永远要穿内衣裤!)——译者注



Paquius Proculus (?) and wife
Wallpainting from Pompeii, house at region VII.ii.6, 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy

第七课

第三变格法名词

拉丁语五种变格法中的第三变格法包括所有三种性的名词,而且单数主格词尾有多种形式,不过所有第三变格法名词的单数属格词尾均为**-is**。由于第三变格法名词的性各有不同,主格形式多种多样,所以记住完整的词条(在每一课的词汇表中将包含完整的、未经缩写的属格形式,缩写形式只用于注释)是非常重要的。变格本身遵循着与第一、第二变格法名词相同的规则:找到词根(去掉单数属格的**-is**¹),加上词尾。由于呼格总是与主格相同(只有以**-us/-ius**结尾的第二变格法名词是例外),所以它不出现在词形变化表中。

第三变格法名词

	rēx, m. <i>king</i>	virtūs, f. <i>merit</i>	homō, m. <i>man</i>	corpus, n. <i>body</i>	格词尾	
词根	rēg-	virtūt-	homin-	corpor-	阳性/阴性	中性
单数						
主格	rēx (rēg-s)	virtūs	hómō	córpus	—	—
属格	rēg-is	virtūtis	hóminis	córpōris	-is	-is
与格	rēg-ī	virtūtī	hóminī	córpōrī	-ī	-ī
宾格	rēg-em	virtūtem	hóminem	córpus	-em	—
夺格	rēg-e	virtūte	hómīne	córpore	-e	-e

¹ 正如我们已经指出的,英语派生词也有助于记住词根;如 **iter, itineris, journey**: itinerary; **cor, cordis, heart**: cordial; **custōs, custōdis, guard**: custodian.

复数

主格	rēg-ēs	virtūtēs	hóminēs	córpora	-ēs	-a
属格	rēg-um	virtútum	hóminum	córporum	-um	-um
与格	rēg-ibus	virtútibus	homínibus	corpóribus	-ibus	-ibus
宾格	rēg-ēs	virtūtēs	hóminēs	córpora	-ēs	-a
夺格	rēg-ibus	virtútibus	homínibus	corpóribus	-ibus	-ibus

性

虽然有不少第三变格法名词的性可以借助一些规则来记忆,但除了指人的名词是阳性或阴性以外,其他大部分规则都有许多例外情况。¹最保险的方法就是在第一次碰到名词时就记住它的性。²

翻译

在翻译(和变格)的过程中,要非常注意这样一个事实,即第三变格法名词可能会被一个第一或第二变格法形容词所修饰,如 *great king* 在拉丁语中就是 **magnus rēx, magnī rēgis, etc.**, *true peace* 是 **vēra pāx, vērae pācis, etc.**。虽然形容词和名词必须在性、数、格上保持一致,但其词尾的拼写却不一定相同。

由于第三变格法名词的某些词尾与其他变格法名词的不同格的词尾相同(如单数与格的 -ī 与第二变格法的单数属格和阳性复数主格相同),所以在阅读和翻译的时候,不仅要注意词序和语境,还要辨认出是哪种名词的变格。在这里,认真细致地学习词汇同样是成功的关键。

¹ 不过,以下规则没有或几乎没有例外:

阳性:

-or, -ōris (amor, -ōris; labor, -ōris; arbor, tree 是主要例外)

-tor, -tōris (victor, -tōris; scriptor, -tōris, writer)

阴性(包括大量抽象名词):

-tās, -tātis (vēritās, -tātis, truth; libertās, -tātis)

-tūs, -tūtis (virtūs, -tūtis; senectūs, -tūtis, old age)

-tūdō, -tūdinis (multitūdō, -tūdinis; pulchritūdō, -tūdinis)

-tiō, -tiōnis (nātiō, -tiōnis; ōrātiō, -tiōnis)

中性:

-us (corpus, corporis; tempus, temporis; genus, generis)

-e, -al, -ar (mare, maris, sea; animal, animālis)

-men (carmen, carminis; nōmen, nōminis)

符合这些规则的名词的性将不在注释中给出。

² 通过了解某个形容词(如 **magnus, -a, -um**)与名词连用的正确形式,也能有所助益。这一方法可以使名词的性更容易记忆,类似于在罗曼语中借助名词来学习定冠词。例如:
magna virtūs, magnum corpus, magnus labor.

词汇表

- á**mor, **amóris**, m., *love* (amorous, enamored; cp. **amō**, **amīcus**)
cármen, **cárminis**, n., *song, poem* (charm)
cívitās, **cīvitātis**, f., *state, citizenship* (city; cp. **cīvis**, Ch. 14)
córpus, **có**rporis, n., *body* (corps, corpse, corpuscle, corpulent, corporal, corporeal, corporate, corporation, incorporate, corsage, corset)
hómō, **hó**minis, m., *human being, man* (homicide, homage; homo sapiens, but not the prefix homo-; cp. **hūmānus** and **vir**)
lábor, **labóris**, m., *labor, work, toil; a work, production* (laboratory, be-labor, laborious, collaborate, elaborate; cp. **labōrō**, Ch. 21)
líttera, **-ae**, f., *a letter of the alphabet; litterae, -ārum, pl., *a letter (epistle), literature* (literal, letters, belles-lettres, illiterate, alliteration)
mōs, **móris**, m., *habit, custom, manner; mōrēs, mōrum, pl., *habits, morals, character* (mores, moral, immoral, immorality, morale, morose)
nómen, **nó**minis, n., *name* (nomenclature, nominate, nominative, nominal, noun, pronoun, renown, denomination, ignominy, misnomer)
pāx, **pácis**, f., *peace* (pacify, pacific, pacifist, appease, pay)
rēgīna, **-ae**, f., *queen* (Regina, regina, reginal; cp. **regō**, Ch. 16)
rēx, **rēgis**, m., *king* (regal, regalia, regicide, royal; cp. rajah)
tēmpus, **tē**mporis, n., *time; occasion, opportunity* (tempo, temporary, contemporary, temporal, temporize, extempore, tense [of a verb])
tērra, **-ae**, f., *earth, ground, land, country* (terrestrial, terrace, terrier, territory, inter [verb], parterre, subterranean, terra cotta)
úxor, **uxóris**, f., *wife* (uxorial, uxorious, uxoricide)
vírgō, **vír**ginis, f., *maiden, virgin* (virgin, virginal, virginity, Virginia)
vírtūs, **virtútis**, f., *manliness, courage; excellence, character, worth, virtue* (virtuoso, virtuosity, virtual; cp. **vir**)
nóvus, **-a, -um**, *new; strange* (novel, novelty, novice, innovate)
post, prep. + acc., *after, behind* (posterity, posterior, posthumous, post mortem, P.M. = post meridiem, preposterous, post- as a prefix, post-graduate, postlude, postwar, etc.; cp. **postrēmum**, Ch. 40)
sub, prep. + abl. with verbs of rest, + acc. with verbs of motion, *under, up under, close to* (sub- or by assimilation suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sus-, in countless compounds: subterranean, suburb, succeed, suffix, suggest, support, sustain)
aúdeō, audēre, aúsus sum (the unusual third principal part of this “semi-deponent” verb is explained in Ch. 34), *to dare* (audacious, audacity)
nécō (1), *to murder, kill* (internecine; related to **noceō**, Ch. 35, and **necro-** from Gk. **nekros**).**

练习与复习

1. Secundās litterās discipulae herī vidēbās et dē verbīs tum cōgitābās.
2. Fēminae sine morā cīvitātem dē īnsidiīs et exitiō malō monēbunt.

3. Rēx et rēgīna igitur crās nōn audēbunt ibi remanēre.
4. Mōrēs Graecōrum nōn erant sine culpīs vitīisque.
5. Quandō hominēs satis virtūtis habēbunt?
6. Corpora vestra sunt sāna et animī sunt plēnī sapientiae.
7. Propter mōrēs hūmānōs pācem vēram nōn habēbimus.
8. Poteritne cīvitās perīcula temporum nostrōrum superāre?
9. Post bellum multōs librōs dē pāce et remediīs bellī vidēbant.
10. Officia sapientiamque oculīs animī possumus vidēre.
11. Without sound character we cannot have peace.
12. Many students used to have small time for Greek literature.
13. After bad times true virtue and much labor will help the state.
14. The daughters of your friends were dining there yesterday.

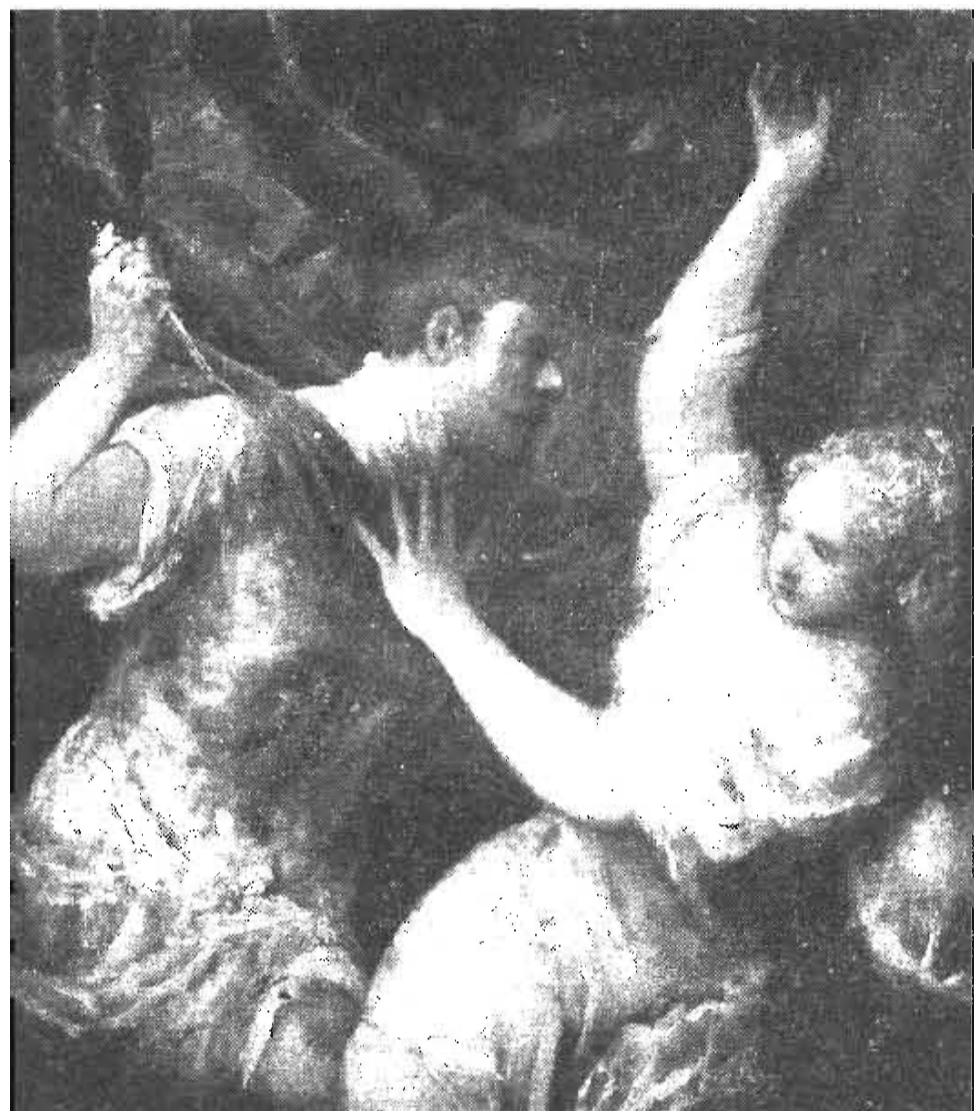
古代名言

1. Homō sum. (*Terence.)
2. Nihil sub sōle novum (*Ecclesiastes.—**sōl**, **sōlis**, m., *sun.*—**novum**: sc. **est.**)
3. Carmina nova dē adulēscientiā virginibus puerisque nunc cantō. (Horace.—**cantāre**, *to sing.*)
4. Laudās fortūnam et mōrēs antīquae plēbis. (*Horace.—**plēbs**, **plēbis**, f., *the common people.*)
5. Bonī propter amōrem virtūtis peccāre ōdērunt. (Horace.—**peccāre**, *to sin.*—**ōdērunt**, defective vb., 3d per. pl., *to hate.*)
6. Sub prīncipe dūrō temporibusque malīs audēs esse bonus. (Martial.—**prīnceps**, **-cipis**, m., *chief, prince*; **dūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, *hard, harsh.*)
7. Populus stultus virīs indignīs honōrēs saepe dat. (Horace.—**honor**, **-nōris**, *honor, office.*—**indignus**, **-a**, **-um**, *unworthy.*)
8. Nōmina stultōrum in parietibus et portīs semper vidēmus. (Cicero.—The desire to scribble names and sentiments in public places is as old as antiquity!—**pariēs**, **-etis**, m., *wall of a building.*)
9. Ōtium sine litterīs mors est. (*Seneca.—**mors**, **mortis**, f., *death.*)
10. Multae nātiōnēs servitūtem tolerāre possunt; nostra cīvitās nōn potest. Praeclāra est recuperātiō libertātis. (Cicero.—**nātiō**, **-ōnis** = Eng.—**servitūs**, **-tūtis**, *servitude.*—**praeclārus**, **-a**, **-um**, *noble, remarkable.*—**recuperātiō**, **-ōnis**, *recovery.*—**libertās**, **-tātis** = Eng.)
11. Nihil sine magnō labōre vīta mortālibus dat. (Horace.—**mortālis**, **-tālis**, *a mortal.*)
12. Quōmodo in perpetuā pāce salvī et liberī esse poterimus? (Cicero.—**quōmodo**, *how.*)
13. Glōria in altissimīs Deō et in terrā pāx hominibus bonae voluntātis. (*Luke.—**altissimīs**, abl. pl., *the highest.*—**voluntās**, **-tātis**, *will.*)

THE RAPE OF LUCRETIA

Tarquinius Superbus erat rēx Rōmānōrum, et Sextus Tarquinius erat fīlius malus tyrannī. Sextus Lucretiam, uxōrem Collātīnī, rapuit, et fēmina bona, propter magnum amōrem virtūtis, sē necāvit. Rōmānī antīquī virtūtem animōsque Lucretiae semper laudābant et Tarquiniōs culpābant.

(Livy 1.58; Tarquinius Superbus was Rome's last king, Collatinus a Roman nobleman; according to legend, the rape of Lucretia led to the overthrow of the Tarquin dynasty, the end of monarchy, and the establishment of the Roman Republic in 509 B.C.—**rapuit**, *raped*.—**sē**, *herself*.—**necāvit**, a past tense form.)



Tarquin and Lucretia
Titian, 1570–75
Bildenden Kuenste, Vienna, Austria

CATULLUS DEDICATES HIS POETRY BOOK

Cornēliō, virō magnae sapientiae, dabō pulchrum librum novum. Cornēlī, mī amīce, librōs meōs semper laudābās, et es magister doctus literārū! Quārē habē novum labōrem meum: fāma librī (et tua fāma) erit perpetua.

(Catullus 1, prose adaptation; see L.I. 1. Catullus dedicated his first book of poems to the historian and biographer Cornelius Nepos.—**doctus**, *-a, -um*, *learned, scholarly*.)

词源点滴

猜一猜,[意]uomo,[西]hombre,[法]homme 和 on 都源于哪个拉丁词?

“Tense”(时态)意为一个动词的“时间”,它经由古法语 **tens** 源于 **tempus**;但表示“stretched tight”的“tense”却源于 **tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēsum, to stretch**。

在晚期拉丁语中,**cīvitās** 逐渐开始意指 *city* 而不是 *state*, 于是它成了罗曼

语中表示“城市”的母词:[意] **città**, [西] **ciudad**, [法] **cit **。

In the readings

2. solar, solstice.—novel, novelty, novice, novitiate, innovate, renovate. 3. chant, enchant, incantation, cant, recant, canto, cantabile, precentor. 4. plebeian, plebe, plebiscite. 5. peccant, peccadillo. 6. dour, duration, endure, obdurate. 13. volunteer, involuntary.

以下是本课 p.42 注释 1 中三种后缀的罗曼语和英语对应词。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语	英语
-tās, -tātis	-tà	-dad	-té	-ty
vēritās	verità	verdad	v�rit�	verity (truth)
ant�quitās	antichità	antigüedad	antiquit�	antiquity
-ti�, -ti�nis	-zione	-ci�n	-tion	-tion
n�ti�	nazione	naci�n	nation	nation
rati�	razione	raci�n	ration	ration
-tor, -t�ris	-tore	-tor	-teur	-tor
inventor	inventore	inventor	inventeur	inventor
actor	attore	actor	acteur	actor

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salv te, et discipul  et discipulae! Quid nunc agitis? 现在你已经看到, 拉丁语在我们的语言中比比皆是; 事实上, 现在认为拉丁语是一门死语言的人是 **r ra avis**。对于持这些观点的人, 你可以报以讽刺: **quot homin s, tot sententiae**——这是公元前 2 世纪的喜剧作家特伦斯的一句谚语, 意为 *there are as many opinions as there are men*。

注意词汇中的 **terra**: 在上一课中我们见到了“subterranean”, 现在你是否想起了 E.T.¹? 20 世纪 80 年代, 这个小家伙是人们最喜爱的外星人 (*Extra Terrestrial*, 源于 **extr **, prep. + acc., *beyond* + **terra**)。在熟悉地球之前, 他还处于 **terra incognita** 状态; 而一旦了解了这个地方, 他就感觉自己处于 **terra firma** 之上。说起电影, 斯蒂芬·斯皮尔伯格最卖座的影片《侏罗纪公园》使我们想起, “霸王龙”(Tyrannosaurus rex) 既是一个“暴君”(tyrant), 又是一个“王”(king)(斯皮尔伯格的“迅猛龙”[velociraptor] 则是可怕的“swift-snatcher”, 它源于拉丁语形容词 **v l x**, *fast* [如在“velocity”一词中] + **raptor**, 后者是一个第三变格法名词, 基于动词 **rapere**, *to seize, snatch, grab*)。 **Lat nam semper am bitis—val te!**

¹《E. T.》是 1982 年出品的一部深受人们喜爱的美国科幻电影, 由斯蒂芬·斯皮尔伯格制作, 讲述一个外星生物来到地球的故事。——译者注

第八课

第三变位法动词：现在时不定式， 现在时、将来时和未完成时的直陈式，命令式

第三变位法是四种拉丁语变位法中最困难的一种，尤其是在现在时系统（现在时、将来时和未完成时）中。与其他三种变位法的词干元音（第一变位法中的 *-ā-*，第二变位法中的 *-ē-*，第四变位法中的 *-ī-* [我们将在第十课介绍]——与 *laudāre*, *monēre*, *audīre* 和 *ágere* 比较)不同，第三变位法的词干元音是短音 *-e-*，而且一般不重读。所以到了古典时期，第三变位法发生了一些读音和拼写变化。在这里，最保险的方法依然是记住下面这张词形变化表；现在多花一些功夫，对学习后续课程有莫大的帮助。

现在时直陈式主动态

单数	1. <i>ág-ō</i>	(<i>I lead</i>)
	2. <i>ág-is</i>	(<i>you lead</i>)
	3. <i>ág-it</i>	(<i>he, she, it leads</i>)

复数	1. <i>ágimus</i>	(<i>we lead</i>)
	2. <i>ágitis</i>	(<i>you lead</i>)
	3. <i>águnt</i>	(<i>they lead</i>)

将来时直陈式主动态

	1. <i>ág-am</i>	(<i>I shall lead</i>)
	2. <i>ág-ēs</i>	(<i>you will lead</i>)
	3. <i>ág-et</i>	(<i>he, she, it will lead</i>)

	1. <i>agēmus</i>	(<i>we shall lead</i>)
	2. <i>agētis</i>	(<i>you will lead</i>)
	3. <i>ágent</i>	(<i>they will lead</i>)

未完成时直陈式主动态

单数	1. <i>ag-ēbam</i>	(<i>I was leading, used to lead, etc.</i>)
	2. <i>ag-ēbās</i>	(<i>you were leading, etc.</i>)
	3. <i>ag-ēbat</i>	(<i>he, she, it was leading, etc.</i>)

复数	1. <i>agēbāmus</i>	(<i>we were leading, etc.</i>)
	2. <i>agēbātis</i>	(<i>you were leading, etc.</i>)
	3. <i>agēbant</i>	(<i>they were leading, etc.</i>)

现在时命令式主动态

2. 单数 *áge* (*lead*) 2. 复数 *ágite* (*lead*)

现在时不定式

正像 *-āre* 和 *-ēre* 分别指示着第一变位法和第二变位法一样, *-ere* 也指示着第三变位法。我们又一次看到,一定要认真细致地学习词汇,连长音符号也要留心:我们必须格外小心地区分以 *-ēre* 结尾的第二变位法动词和以 *-ere* 结尾的第三变位法动词。

现在时词干和现在时直陈式

根据寻找现在时词干的规则,我们去掉不定式的词尾 *-re*,就得到了现在时词干 *age-*。这时,我们很自然地期待着加上人称词尾,构成它的现在时直陈式形式。但事实上,第一人称单数中的非重读词干元音完全消失,它在第二、第三人称单数和第一、第二人称复数中变成了 *-i-*,在第三人称复数中变成了 *-u-*。因此,最实际的方法还是老老实实地记住这些词尾。¹

将来时直陈式

第三变位法(以及将在第十课学习的第四变位法)将来时的突出特点是,它没有将来时的时态标志 *-bi-*。在这里除第一人称单数以外, *-ē-* 是所有形式中将来时的标志。词干元音通过缩约消失了。

未完成时直陈式

第三变位法动词未完成时的构成规则与前两种变位法相同(现在时词干 + *-bam, -bās, etc.*),只是词干元音变成了长音 *-ē-*,所以形式与第一、第二变位法类似。

现在时命令式

根据我们已经学过的规则,现在时命令式的第二人称单数就是现在时的词干,比如 *mitte* (源于 *mittere, to send*), *pōne* (*pōnere, to put*)。而在复数命令式中,我们又一次看到,非重读短音 *-e-* 变成了 *-i-*,所以是 *mittite* 和 *pōnite* (而不是 **mittete* 或 **pōnete*)。

¹ 下面这条技巧也许可以帮助我们记忆:(1)对于现在时,用 IOU(四种形式中是 *i*,第一种形式中是 *o*,最后一种形式中是 *u*)来记忆;(2)对于将来时,用剩下两个元音 *a* 和 *e* 来记忆。我们还注意到,元音的变化情况与第一、第二变位法动词将来时词尾的变化情况一致(*-bō, -bis, -bit, -bimus, -bitis, -bunt*)。

Dūcere 的单数命令式最初是 **dūce**, 这一形式可见于早期作家普劳图斯的作品。但是后来, **dūce** 中的 **-e** 丢掉了。类似的还有另外三个常用的第三变位法动词: **dīc** (**dīcere**, *say*), **fac** (**facere**, *do*), **fer** (**ferre**, *bear*)。其他第三变位法动词都遵循着 **age**, **mitte** 和 **pōne** 所阐明的规则。四种不规则形式 **dīc**, **dūc**, **fac** 和 **fer** 应单独记忆。

词汇表

- Cícērō, Cicerōnis**, m., (*Marcus Tullius*) *Cicero* (Ciceronian, cicerone)
cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, supply*; **cōpiae**, -ārum, pl., *supplies, troops, forces* (copious, copy, cornucopia)
fráter, frátris, m., *brother* (fraternal, fraternity, fraternize, fratricide)
laus, laúdis, f., *praise, glory, fame* (laud, laudable, laudation, laudatory, magna cum laude; cp. **laudō**)
libértās, libértātis, f., *liberty* (cp. **liber**, **liberō**, Ch. 19, **liberālis**, Ch. 39)
rātiō, ratiōnis, f., *reckoning, account; reason, judgment, consideration; system; manner, method* (ratio, ration, rational, irrational, ratiocination)
scrīptor, scrīptōris, m., *writer, author* (scriptorium; cp. **scrībō** below)
sóror, soróris, f., *sister* (sororal, sororate, sororicide, sorority)
victória, -ae, f., *victory* (victorious; see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 5, and cp. **vincō** below)
dum, conj., *while, as long as, at the same time that*; + subjunctive, *until*
ad, prep. + acc., *to, up to, near to*, in the sense of “place to which” with verbs of motion; contrast the dat. of indirect object (administer, ad hoc, ad hominem). In compounds the **d** is sometimes assimilated to the following consonant so that **ad** may appear, for instance, as **ac-** (**accipiō: ad-capiō**), **ap-** (**appellō: ad-pellō**), **a-** (**aspiciō: ad-spiciō**).
ex or **ē**, prep. + abl., *out of, from, from within; by reason of, on account of*; following cardinal numbers, *of* (exact, except, exhibit, evict). The Romans used **ex** before consonants or vowels; **ē** before consonants only. Like **ad** and many other prepositions, **ex/ē** was often used as a prefix in compounds, sometimes with the **x** assimilated to the following consonant; e.g., **excipiō**, **ēducō**, **ēventus**, **efficiō** from **ex** + **faciō**, etc.
númquam, adv., *never* (cp. **umquam**, Ch. 23)
támen, adv., *nevertheless, still*
ágō, ágere, égi, áctum, *to drive, lead, do, act; pass, spend* (life or time); **grātiās agere** + dat., *to thank someone*, lit., *to give thanks to* (agent, agenda, agile, agitate, active, actor, action, actual, actuate)
dēmōnstrō (1), *to point out, show, demonstrate* (demonstrable, demonstration, demonstrative; see the demonstrative pronouns in Ch. 9)
díscō, díscere, dídicī, *to learn* (cp. **discipulus**, **discipula**)
dóceō, docére, dócuī, dóctum, *to teach* (docent, docile, document, doctor, doctrine, indoctrinate)
dúcō, dūcere, dúxī, dúctum, *to lead; consider, regard; prolong* (ductile, ab-

duct, adduce, deduce, educe, induce, produce, reduce, seduce)
gérō, gérere, géssī, géstum, to carry; carry on, manage, conduct, wage, accomplish, perform (gerund, gesture, gesticulate, jest, belligerent, congest, digest, suggest, exaggerate, register, registry)
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, to write, compose (ascribe, circumscribe, conscript, describe, inscribe, proscribe, postscript, rescript, scripture, subscribe, transcribe, scribble, scrivener, shrive)
tráhō, tráhere, tráxī, tráctum, to draw, drag; derive, acquire (attract, contract, retract, subtract, tractor, etc.; see Etymology section below)
víncō, víncere, vícī, víctum, to conquer, overcome (convince, convict, evince, evict, invincible, Vincent, victor, Victoria, vanquish)

练习与复习

1. Tempora nostra nunc sunt mala; vitia nostra, magna.
2. Quārē soror mea uxōrī tuae litterās scrībit (scrībet, scrībēbat)?
3. Tyrannus populum stultum ē terrā vestrā dūcet (dūcit, dūcēbat).
4. Ubi satis ratiōnis animōrumque in hominibus erit?
5. Cōpia vērae virtūtis multās culpās superāre poterat.
6. In liberā cīvitāte adulēscēntiam agēbāmus.
7. Rēgem malum tolerāre numquam dēbēmus.
8. Post parvam moram multa verba dē īnsidiīs scrīptōrum stultōrum scrībēmus.
9. The body will remain there under the ground.
10. Write (sg. and pl.) many things about the glory of our state.
11. Does reason always lead your (pl.) queen to virtue?
12. We shall always see many Greek names there.

古代名言

1. Frāter meus vītam in ōtiō semper aget. (Terence.)
2. Age, age! Iuvā mē! Dūc mē ad secundum fīlium meum. (Terence.—**age, age = come, come!**)
3. Ō amīcī, libertātem perdimus. (Laberius.—**perdere, to destroy.**)
4. Nova perīcula populō Rōmānō expōnam sine morā. (Cicero.—**expōnere, to set forth.**)
5. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
6. Ex meīs errōribus hominibus rēctum iter dēmōnstrāre possum. (Seneca.—**error, -rōris.**²—**rēctus, -a, -um, right.**—**iter, itineris, n., road, way.**)
7. Catullus Mārcō Tulliō Cicerōnī magnās grātiās agit. (Catullus.—See “Thanks a Lot, Tully!” Ch. 27.)
8. Eximia fōrma virginis oculōs hominum convertit. (Livy.—**eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary.**—**convertere, to turn around, attract.**)

¹ 今后在注释中,如果一个拉丁词很容易让人想起英语派生词,其英语含义将不再注出。



Gold funerary mask of "Agamemnon"
Mycenae, 16th century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Athens Greece

9. Agamemnon magnās cōpiās ē terrā Graecā ad Trōiam dūcet, ubi multōs virōs necābit. (Cicero.—Agamemnon, -nonis.)
10. Amor laudis hominēs trahit. (Cicero.)
11. Auctōrēs pācis Caesar cōservābit. (Cicero.—auctor, -tōris, author.—Caesar, -saris.)
12. Inter multās cūrās labōrēsque carmina scrībere nōn possum. (Horace.—inter, prep. + acc., among.)
13. Dum in magnā urbe dēclāmās, mī amīce, scrīptōrem Trōiānī bellī in ōtiō relegō. (Horace.—urbs, urbis, f., city.—dēclāmāre, to declaim.—Trōiānus, -a, -um.—relegere, to re-read.)
14. Nōn vītāe, sed scholae, discimus. (*Seneca.—vītāe and scholae, datives expressing purpose; see S.S., p. 443—schola, -ae, school.)
15. Hominēs, dum docent, discunt. (*Seneca.)
16. Ratiō mē dūcet, nōn fortūna. (Livy.)

CICERO ON THE ETHICS OF WAGING WAR

Cīvitās bellum sine causā bonā aut propter īram gerere nōn dēbet. Sī fortūnās et agrōs vītāsque populī nostrī sine bellō dēfendere poterimus, tum pācem cōservāre dēbēbimus; sī, autem, nōn poterimus esse salvī et servāre pātriam lībertātemque nostram sine bellō, bellum erit necessārium. Semper dēbēmus dēmōnstrāre, tamen, magnum officium in bellō, et magnam clēm-entiam post victōriam.

(Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* 1.11.34–36 and *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 3.23.34–35, and see L.A. 7 for a fuller adaptation.—causa, -ae.—dēfendere.—autem, conj., however.—necessārius, -a, -um.—clēmēntia, -ae.)

词源点滴

与 *trahō* 相关的词还有: abstract, detract, detraction, distract, distraction, distraught, extract, protract, portray, portrait, retreat, trace, tract, tractable, intractable,

traction, contraction, retraction, trait, treat, treaty, train, training 等等。

In the readings

6. rectitude; 与英语同源词“right”比较。—itinerary, itinerant。 11. kaiser, czar。 14. “School”源于拉丁词 **schola**, 后者又源于希腊词 **scholē**, *leisure*。“Waging War”: causation; defense, defensive; necessary; clement, clemency。

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvete! 本课出现了大量新词,你的语言储备已经变得十分丰饶(*cornucopia*, a “horn of plenty”, 源于 **cōpia**+**cornū**, *horn*, 它与“cornet”同源)。**Scīptor** 属于一大类阳性第三变格法名词,它们由后缀**-or**取代动词第四个主要部分中的**-um**而构成。后缀**-or**意为执行动词动作的人。于是,**monitor**, **-tōris** 指的就是 *one who advises*, 即 *an advisor*; **amātor** 指的是 *a lover* 等等。那么,由 **docēre** 和 **agō** 而来的有着类似结构的名词是什么? 查看一下本课介绍的其他动词以及前几课的词汇,你还能构成和辨识出哪些**-or**名词?

如果懂得一个拉丁根词,那么你往往就能推断出整个词族的含义,比如动词 **discere** 与 **discipulus** 和 **discipula** 有关,也与名词 **disciplīna** 有关。我常常指出,“discipline”并不是“punishment”,而是“learning”。如果你看过 1993 年的影片《无脸的男人》(*Man Without a Face*),你就会听到大量拉丁语,包括英格兰温彻斯特学院古老的箴言:**aut disce aut discēde**, *either learn or leave* (我把这句话贴在了办公室的门上)。我绝对相信,你会一直学习下去,而不会离开。不过现在,**valēte, discipulī et discipulae!**

第九课

指示词 Hic, Ille, Iste; 特殊的 -īus 形容词

指示词

拉丁语指示词(demonstratives, 源于 **dēmōnstrāre**, *to point out*)可以起代词或形容词的作用, 对应于英语中的 *this/these* 和 *that/those*, 变格一般遵循 **magnus, -a, -um** 的变格方式(参见第四课), 例外情况在下列词形变化表中用下划线标记了出来(和往常一样, 词形变化表应当从左到右大声朗读出来, 以帮助记忆, 如 **hic, haec, hoc; huius, huius, huius; ...**)。

	ille, that, those			hic, this, these		
	阳性	阴性	中性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数						
主格	<u>ille</u>	illa	<u>illud</u>	<u>hic</u>	<u>haec</u>	<u>hoc</u>
属格	<u>illīus</u>	<u>illīus</u>	<u>illīus</u>	<u>hūius</u>	<u>hūius</u>	<u>hūius</u>
与格	<u>illī</u>	<u>illī</u>	<u>illī</u>	<u>huic</u>	<u>huic</u>	<u>huic</u>
宾格	illum	illam	<u>illud</u>	hunc	hanc	<u>hoc</u>
夺格	illō	illā	<u>illō</u>	hōc	hāc	<u>hōc</u>
复数						
主格	illī	illae	illa	hī	hae	<u>haec</u>
属格	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	hōrum	hārum	<u>hōrum</u>
与格	illīs	illīs	illīs	hīs	hīs	hīs
宾格	illōs	illās	illa	hōs	hās	<u>haec</u>
夺格	illīs	illīs	illīs	hīs	hīs	hīs

变格

Iste, ista, istud, that (near you), that of yours, such 遵循着 **ille** 的变格方式:

主格 *iste, ista, istud*; 属格 *istius, istius, istius*; 与格 *istī, istī, istī*, 等等。我们应当能够随口说出所有形式。

所有这三种指示词的形式都非常接近于 **magnus, -a, -um**。除中性的 **haec** 以外, 复数形式与之完全一致。最显著的区别是单数属格和单数与格形式(下面还要介绍其他九个类似的特殊形容词), 以及 **hic** 的几种形式中的 **-c**, 它是指示性非重读后接成分 **-ce** 的缩略形式。请注意, **huius** 和 **huic** 属于少数几个 **ui** 起双元音作用的词; 关于 **huius** (= **huī-yus**) 的特殊发音, 参见导言部分。

用法和翻译

一般来说, 指示词或者指距离说话者很近的人或事物 (**hic liber, this book = this book of mine, this book here**), 或者指距离听者很近的人或事物 (**iste liber, that book, that book of yours, that book next to you**), 或指与两者都很远的人或事物 (**ille liber, that book = that book over there, that book of his or hers**)。 **Ille** 和 **hic** 有时分别等价于 *the former* 和 *the latter*, 有时其确切含义类似于英语中的人称代词 *he, she, it, they*; **ille** 也可意指 *the famous . . .*; **iste** 有时最好翻译成 *such*, 偶尔含轻视之意, 比如 **ista ira, that awful anger of yours**。

指示词在修饰名词时, 起形容词的作用; 由于指示词表强调, 所以一般位于所修饰名词之前。下面是一些例子。

<i>hic liber, this book</i>	<i>hanc cīvitātem, this state</i>
<i>ille liber, that book</i>	<i>huic cīvitātī, to this state</i>
<i>illius librī, of that book</i>	<i>illī cīvitātī, to that state</i>
<i>illī librī, those books</i>	<i>illae cīvitātēs, those states</i>
<i>illī librō, to that book</i>	<i>haec cīvitās, this state</i>
<i>illō librō, by that book</i>	<i>haec cōnsilia, these plans</i>
<i>istius amīcī, of that friend (of yours)</i>	<i>hoc cōnsilium, this plan</i>
<i>istī amīcī, those friends (of yours)</i>	<i>hōc cōnsiliō, by this plan</i>
<i>istī amīcō, to that friend (of yours)</i>	<i>huic cōnsiliō, to this plan</i>

指示词在单独使用时起代词 (*pronouns*, 源于拉丁词 **prō, for, in place of + nōmen, name, noun**) 的作用。根据性、数和语境的不同, 它们一般可以译成 *this man, that woman, these things* 等等。

<i>hic, this man</i>	<i>ille, that man</i>
<i>hanc, this woman</i>	<i>illa, that woman</i>
<i>hunc, this man</i>	<i>illa, those things</i>
<i>haec, this woman</i>	<i>huius, of this man or woman¹</i>

¹ 作为规则, 中性指示词只有在主格和宾格的情况下才能用作代词。对于属格、与格和夺格, 罗马人倾向于把指示词用作与表示“事物”的名词相一致的形容词, 例如 **huius rei, of this thing**。

haec, *these things*
 istum, *that man*
 istārum, *of those women*

illī, *to that man or woman*¹
 illī, *those men*

特殊的-īus 形容词

有九个第一、第二变格法形容词的单数形式是不规则的,其单数属格词尾是-īus,单数与格词尾是-ī,遵循着 **illius** 和 **illī** 的变格方法。其他单数形式和所有复数形式则符合规则的第一、第二变格法形容词,遵循着 **magnus, -a, -um** 的变格方法。¹

	sōlus, -a, -um, <i>alone, only</i>			alius, alia, aliud, <i>another, other</i>		
单数						
主格	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alius	alia	aliud
属格	sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	alterius ³	alterius	alterius
与格	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alīī	alīī	alīī
宾格	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alium	aliam	aliud
夺格	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	aliō	aliā	aliō
复数						
主格	sōlī	sōlae etc.	sōla	alīī	aliae etc.	alia

借助于首字母缩略词 UNUS NAUTA,可以很容易地记住这九个形容词。它的每一个字母都代表着其中一个形容词的首字母(同时还包括了其中一个形容词 **ūnus**,甚至还可以使我们想起 **nauta** 虽然是第一变格法名词,却是阳性的,所以用阳性形式 **ūnus** 来修饰它)。还要注意,九个词中的每一个都指示数的某个方面:

UNUS:

ūnus, -a, -um (ūnīus, etc.), *one*

nūllus, -a, -um (nūllīus, etc.), *no, none*

ūllus, -a, -um, *any*

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only*

NAUTA:

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither*

alius, -a, -ud, *another, other*

¹除了中性单数形式 **aliud**(与 **illud** 比较)。

²这种借自 **alter** 的形式要比规则形式 **alīus** 更为常见。

uter, utra, utrum, *either, which* (of two)

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire*

alter, altera, alterum, *the other* (of two)

词汇表

lōcus, -ī, m., *place; passage in literature*; pl., **lōca, -ōrum, n.**, *places, region*; **lōcī, -ōrum, m.**, *passages in literature* (allocate, dislocate, locality, locomotion)

mórbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness* (morbid, morbidity)

stúdium, -ī, n. *eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study* (studio, studious; cp. **studeō**, Ch. 35)

hic, haec, hoc, *this; the latter*; at times weakened to *he, she, it, they* (ad hoc)

ille, illa, illud, *that; the former; the famous; he, she, it, they*

iste, ista, istud, *that of yours, that; such*; sometimes with contemptuous force

álius, -a, -ud, *other, another*; **álii . . . álii**, *some . . . others* (alias, alibi, alien)

álder, áltera, álterum, *the other (of two), second* (alter, alteration, alternate, alternative, altercation, altruism, adulterate, adultery)

neúter, neútra, neútrum, *not either, neither* (neutrality, neutron)

núllus, -a, -um, *not any, no, none* (null, nullify, nullification, annul)

sólus, -a, -um, *alone, only, the only*; **nōn solum . . . sed étiam**, *not only . . . but also* (sole, solitary, soliloquy, solo, desolate, sullen)

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire* (total, totality, factotum, in toto)

úllus, -a, -um, *any*

únus, -a, -um, *one, single, alone* (unit, unite, union, onion, unanimous, unicorn, uniform, unique, unison, universal, university)

úter, útra, útrum, *either, which* (of two)

énim, postpositive conj., *for, in fact, truly*

in, prep. + acc., *into, toward; against* (also **in** + abl., *in, on*, see Ch. 3).

In compounds **in-** may also appear as **il-**, **ir-**, **im-**; and it may have its literal meanings or have simply an intensive force. (Contrast the inseparable negative prefix **in-**, *not, un-, in-*.)

nímis or **nímium**, adv., *too, too much, excessively*

练习与复习

1. Hic tōtus liber litterās Rōmānās semper laudat.
2. Hī igitur illīs deābus herī grātiās agēbant.
3. Illud dē vitīīs istīus rēgīnae nunc scrībam, et ista poenās dabit.
4. Neuter alterī plēnam cōpiam pecūniae tum dabit.
5. Potestne laus ūllīus terrae esse perpetua?
6. Labor ūnīus numquam poterit hās cōpiās vincere.
7. Mōrēs istīus scrīptōris erant nimis malī.
8. Nūllī magistrī, tamen, sub istō vēra docēre audēbant.

9. Valēbitne pāx in patriā nostrā post hanc victōriam?
10. Dum illī ibi remanent, aliī nihil agunt, aliī discunt.
11. Cicero was writing about the glory of the other man and his wife.
12. The whole state was thanking this man's brother alone.
13. On account of that courage of yours those (men) will lead no troops into these places tomorrow.
14. Will either book be able to overcome the faults of these times?

古代名言

1. Ubi illās nunc vidēre possum? (Terence.)
2. Hic illam virginem in mātrimōnium dūcet. (Terence.—**mātrimōnium, -ī.**)
3. Huic cōsiliō palmam dō. (Terence.—**palma, -ae, palm branch of victory.**)
4. Virtūtem enim illīus virī amāmus. (Cicero.)
5. Sōlus hunc iuvāre potes. (Terence.)
6. Poena istīus ūnīus hunc morbum cīvitātis relevābit sed perīculum semper remanēbit. (Cicero.—**relevāre, to relieve, diminish.**)
7. Hī enim dē exitiō huius cīvitātis et tōtīus orbis terrārum cōgitant. (Cicero.—**orbis, orbis, m., circle, orb; orbis terrārum, idiom, the world.**)
8. Est nūllus locus utrī hominī in hāc terrā. (Martial.)
9. Nōn sōlum ēventus hoc docet—iste est magister stultōrum!—sed etiam ratiō. (Livy.—**ēventus, outcome.**)

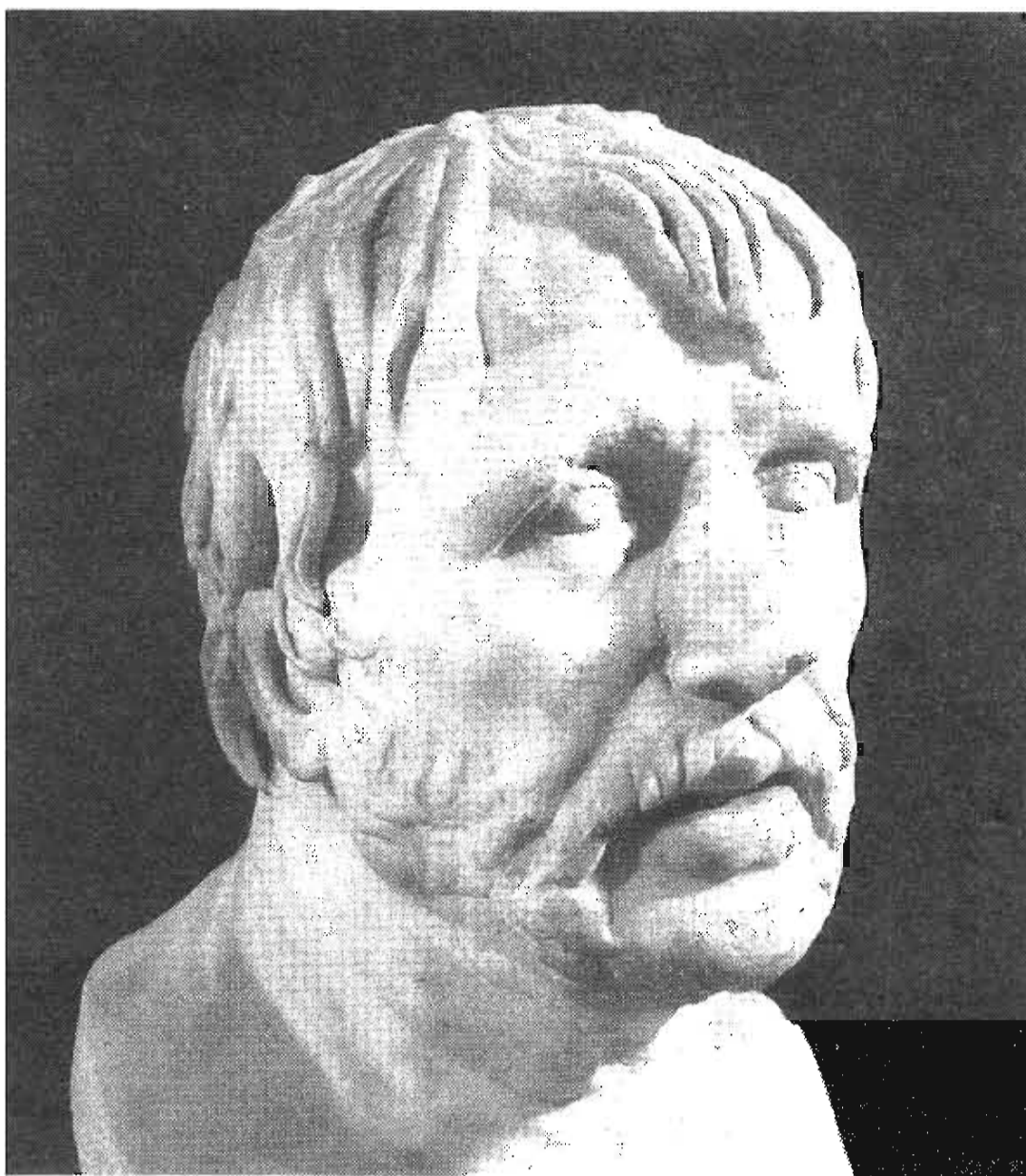
WHEN I HAVE . . . ENOUGH!

Habet Āfricānus mīliēns, tamen captat.
Fortūna multīs dat nimis, satis nūllī.

(*Martial 12.10; meter: choliambic.—**Āfricānus, -ī**, a personal name.—**mīliēns**, call it *millions*.—**captāre, to hunt for legacies.**)

Sī vīs studēre philosophiae animōque, hoc studium nōn potest valēre sine frūgālitate. Haec frūgālitas est paupertās voluntāria. Tolle, igitur, istās excūsātiōnēs: “Nōndum satis pecūniae habeō. Sī quandō illud ‘satis’ habēbō, tum mē tōtum philosophiae dabō.” Incipe nunc philosophiae, nōn pecūniae, studēre.

(Seneca, *Epistulae* 17.5.—**vīs**, irreg. form, *you wish*.—**studēre** + dat., *to be eager for, devote oneself to*.—**frūgālitas -tātis**.—**paupertās, -tātis**, *small means, poverty*.—**voluntārius, -a, -um**.—**tollere, to take away**.—**excūsātiō, -ōnis**.—**nōndum**, adv., *not yet*.—**incipe**, imper., *begin*.)



Seneca (the Younger)
Museo Archeologico Nazionale
Naples, Italy

词源点滴

in-作为介词前缀的例子: invoke, induce, induct, inscribe, inhibit, indebted.

in-作为不可分否定前缀的例子: invalid, innumerable, insane, insuperable, intolerant, inanimate, infamous, inglorious, impecunious, illiberal, irrational.

拉丁词 **ille** 为意大利语、西班牙语和法语提供了定冠词和第三人称代词; 拉丁词 **ūnus** 为这些语言提供了不定冠词。下表中列出了其中一些形式以及其他几个派生词:

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
ille, illa	il, la	el, la	le, la
ille, illa	egli, ella	él, ella	il, elle
ūnus, ūna	un(o), una	un(o), una	un, une
tōtus	tutto	todo	tout
sōlus	solo	solo	seul
alter	altro	otro	autre

法语词 **là** (*there*) 源于 **illāc** (**viā**), 这是一个副词形式, 意为 *there* (*that way*); 意大利语词 **là** 和西班牙语词 **allá** 也属类似情况。

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 在道奇城(Dodge City)¹ 西郊的一个拴牲口的桩子上, 我们发现了这

¹ 道奇城, 美国堪萨斯州的一个城市, 原以家畜贸易闻名。该城在 19 世纪的地位十分重要, 那时这里的暴力事件很出名, 有“美国最邪恶的小城”之称。——译者注

样一条古老的铭文：

TOTI

EMUL

ESTO

啊哈！——看上去像是我们新学的 **tōtus** 的与格 + **emul**（也许是 **simul, simultaneously?**）+ **sum, es, est** 的某种形式，也许是奇怪的将来时命令式？不！——它只不过写着“to tie mules to”（将骡子拴于[此处]）！

以下是拉丁语会话以及其他课堂活动有可能用到的一些词汇：**surgere, to rise, stand up** (surge, resurgence, insurgency); **sedēre, to sit** (sedentary); **ambulāre, to walk** (ambulatory, amble, ambulance); **aperīre** (第四变位法), *to open* (aperture); **claudere, to close** (clause, closet); **dēclīnāre; coniugāre; crēta, -ae, chalk** (cretaceous); **ērāsūra, -ae, eraser**; **stilus, -ī, pen or pencil** (actually a stylus); **tabula, -ae, chalkboard** (tabular, tabulate); **tabella, -ae** 是 **tabula, notebook, writing pad** 的指小形式 (tablet); **iānua, -ae, door** (janitor, Janus, January); **fenestra, -ae, window**; **cella, -ae, room** (cell); **sella, -ae, chair**; **mēnsa, -ae, table**; **podium, -ī**。如果老师对你说：**Salvē, discipula** (or **discipule**)! **Quid agis hodiē? Surge ex sellā tuā, ambulā ad tabulam, et dēclīnā “hic, haec, hoc.”** 现在你知道该怎么做了，而且还知道要开始说拉丁语了——这并非那么困难(连蹒跚学步的罗马幼童都能做到!)：**semper valēte, amīcae amīcīque!**

第十课

第四变位法动词和第三变位法的*-iō* 动词

本课介绍主动态的最后一种规则的变位法——第四变位法（用 **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audī-tum, to hear** 来说明）以及第三变位法的*-iō* 动词（用 **capīō, capere, cēpī, captum, to take, seize** 来说明）。与前两种变位法类似，第四变位法的标志也是一个长的词干元音；如下列词形变化表所示，**-ī-**在现在时系统（现在时、将来时和未完成时）中都保留，只是在元音和词末的**-t**之前要变短。某些第三变位法动词在现在时系统中是以同样方式构成的，只不过**-i-**总是短的，且单数命令式（**cape**）和现在时主动态不定式（**capere**）中的词干元音是 **e**。表中附上 **agō** 的变化形式是为了帮助比较和复习（参见第八课）。

现在时直陈式主动态

	1. ágō	aúdi-ō	cápi-ō	(<i>I hear, take</i>)
单数	2. ágis	aúdi-s	cápi-s	(<i>you hear, take</i>)
	3. ágit	aúdi-t	cápi-t	(<i>he, she, it hears, takes</i>)
	1. ágimus	audímus	cápi-mus	(<i>we hear, take</i>)
复数	2. ágitis	audítis	cápi-tis	(<i>you hear, take</i>)
	3. águnt	aúdiunt	cápiunt	(<i>they hear, take</i>)

将来时直陈式主动态

	1. ágam	àudi-am	cápi-am	(<i>I shall hear, take</i>)
单数	2. ágēs	aúdi-ēs	cápi-ēs	(<i>you will hear, take</i>)
	3. áget	aúdi-et	cápi-et	(<i>he, she, it will hear, take</i>)
	1. agēmus	audiēmus	capīēmus	(<i>we shall hear, take</i>)
复数	2. agētis	audiētis	capīētis	(<i>you will hear, take</i>)
	3. ágent	aúdient	cápi-ent	(<i>they will hear, take</i>)

未完成时直陈式主动态

	1. agēbam	audi-ēbam	capi-ēbam	(I was hearing, taking)
单数	2. agēbās	audi-ēbās	capi-ēbās	(you were hearing, taking)
	3. agēbat	audi-ēbat	capi-ēbat	(he, she, it was hearing, taking)
	1. agēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus	(we were hearing, taking)
复数	2. agēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbātis	(you were hearing, taking)
	3. agēbant	audiēbant	capiēbant	(they were hearing, taking)

现在时命令式主动态

单数	2. áge	aúdī	cápe	(hear, take)
复数	2. ágite	audí-te	cápi-te	(hear, take)

Audiō 的变位

-īre 将第四变位法的不定式与其他变位法的不定式区分开来 (laud-áre, mon-ére, ág-ere, aud-īre, cá-pere)。

和前两种变位法一样,现在时直陈式的构成规则也是现在时词干(audī-)加上人称词尾。按照规则,第三人称复数应该是 *audi-nt, 但实际形式却是 audi-unt, 这一词尾让人想起了 águnt。

对于 audiō 的将来时,有一条不错的经验规则可以使用:先把现在时词干的 ī 变短,得到 audi-, 再加上 agō 的将来时词尾: -am, -ēs, -et, -ēmus, -ētis, -ent。和第三变位法一样, -ē- 也是将来时的特征元音。

未完成时由 -iē- (而不是词干元音 -ī-) 加上时态标志 -bā- 构成, 所以最后得到的形式是 audiēbam, audiēbās, … (而不是预想的 *audībam, …)。

不过,命令式严格遵循第一、第二变位法的变化形式,即单数与现在时词干(audī)相同,复数只需加上 -te(audīte)。

Capiō 的变位

不定式 capere 显然是一个第三变位法动词的不定式,而不属于第四变位法。它的命令式形式也表明,这是一个第三变位法动词。

capiō 的现在时、将来时和未完成时直陈式遵循着 audiō 的变位方式,只不过和 agō 类似, capiō 在 cápis, cápimus, cápitis 中也有一个短音 -i-。

这里仍然要注意以下规则,即对于第四变位法动词和第三变位法的 -iō 动词, -i- 出现在现在时系统的所有直陈式主动态形式中, 双元音 -iē- 出现在未完成时形式中的 -bā- 之前。

词汇表

- amīcītia**, -ae, f., *friendship* (cp. **amō**, **amīca**, **amīcus**)
- cupīditās**, **cupīditātis**, f., *desire, longing, passion; cupidity, avarice* (cp. **cupīo**, Ch. 17)
- hōra**, -ae, f., *hour, time*
- nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature* (natural, preternatural, supernatural; cp. **nāscor**, Ch. 34)
- senectūs**, **senectūtis**, f., *old age* (cp. **senex**, Ch. 16)
- tīmor**, **tīmōris**, m., *fear* (timorous; cp. **timeō**, Ch. 15)
- vēritās**, **vēritātis**, f., *truth* (verify, veritable, verity; cp. **vērus**, **vērō**, Ch. 29)
- vīa**, -ae, f., *way, road, street* (via, viaduct, deviate, devious, obvious, pervious, impervious, previous, trivial, voyage, envoy)
- volūptās**, **volūptātis**, f., *pleasure* (voluptuary, voluptuous)
- beātus**, -a, -um, *happy, fortunate, blessed* (beatific, beatify, beatitude, Beatrice)
- quōniam**, conj., *since, inasmuch as*
- cum**, prep. + abl., *with*. As a prefix **cum** may appear as **com-**, **con-**, **cor-**, **col-**, **co-**, and means *with, together, completely*, or simply has an intensive force (complete, connect, corroborate, collaborate)
- aūdiō**, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītum**, *to hear, listen to* (audible, audience, audit, audition, auditory; cp. **audītor**, Ch. 16)
- cāpiō**, **cāpere**, **cēpī**, **cāptum**, *to take, capture, seize, get*. In compounds the **-a-** becomes **-i-**, **-cipiō**: **ac-cipiō**, **ex-cipiō**, **in-cipiō**, **re-cipiō**, etc. (capable, capacious, capsule, captious, captive, captor)
- dīcō**, **dīcere**, **dīxī**, **dīctum**, *to say, tell, speak; name, call* (dictate, dictum, diction, dictionary, dight, ditto, contradict, indict, edict, verdict)
- fāciō**, **fācere**, **fēcī**, **fāctum**, *to make, do, accomplish*. In compounds the **-a-** becomes **-i-**, **-ficiō**: **cōn-ficiō**, **per-ficiō**, etc. (facile, fact, faction, factotum, facsimile, faculty, fashion, feasible, feat)
- fūgiō**, **fūgere**, **fūgī**, **fūgitūrum**, *to flee, hurry away; escape; go into exile; avoid, shun* (fugitive, fugue, centrifugal, refuge, subterfuge)
- vēniō**, **venīre**, **vēnī**, **vēntum**, *to come* (advent, adventure, avenue, convene, contravene, covenant, event, inconvenient, intervene, parvenu, prevent, provenience)
- invēniō**, **invenīre**, **-vēnī**, **-vēntum**, *to come upon, find* (invent, inventory)
- vīvō**, **vīvere**, **vīxī**, **vīctum**, *to live* (convivial, revive, survive, vivacity, vivid, vivify, viviparous, vivisection, victual, vittle; cp. **vīta**)

练习与复习

1. Quid discipulae hodiē discere dēbent?
2. Frātrēs nihil cum ratiōne herī gerēbant.
3. Ille magnam virtūtem labōris et studiī docēre saepe audet.
4. Hic dē senectūte scrībēbat; ille, dē amōre; et alius, dē libertāte.
5. Ex librīs ūnīus virī nātūram hārum īnsidiārum dēmōnstrābimus.

6. Istī sōlī victōriam nimis amant; neuter dē pāce cōgitat.
7. Ubi cīvitās ūllōs virōs magnae sapientiae audiet?
8. Ex illīs terrīs in hunc locum cum amīcīs vestrīs venīte.
9. Post paucās hōrās sorōrem illīus invenīre poterāmus.
10. Cōpiae vestrae utrum virum ibi numquam capient.
11. Alter Graecus remedium huius morbī inveniet.
12. Carmina illīus scrīptōris sunt plēna nōn solum vērītātis sed etiam virtūtis.
13. We shall then come to your land without any friends.
14. While he was living, nevertheless, we were able to have no peace.
15. The whole state now shuns and will always shun these vices.
16. He will, therefore, thank the queen and the whole people.

古代名言

1. Cupiditātem pecūniae glōriaeque fugite. (Cicero.)
2. Officium meum faciam. (*Terence.)
3. Fāma tua et vīta filiae tuae in perīculum crās venient. (Terence.)
4. Vīta nōn est vīvere sed valēre. (Martial.)
5. Semper magnō cum timōre incipiō dīcere. (Cicero.— **incipiō, -ere, to begin.**)
6. Sī mē dūcēs, Mūsa, corōnam magnā cum laude capiam. (Lucretius.— **Mūsa, -ae, Muse.** — **corōna, -ae, crown.**)
7. Vīve memor mortis; fugit hōra. (Persius.— **memor, adj. nom. sg. m. or f., mindful.** — **mors, mortis, f., death.**)
8. Rapite, amīcī, occāsiōnem dē hōrā. (Horace.— **rapiō, -ere, to snatch, seize.** — **occāsiō, -ōnis, f., opportunity.**)
9. Paucī veniunt ad senectūtem. (*Cicero.)
10. Sed fugit, intereā, fugit tempus. (Virgil.— **intereā, adv., meanwhile.** — The verb is repeated for emphasis.)
11. Fāta viam invenient. (*Virgil.— **fātum, -ī, fate.**)
12. Bonum virum nātūra, nōn ōrdō, facit. (*Publilius Syrus.— **ōrdō, -dinis, m., rank.**)
13. Obsequium parit amīcōs; vērītās parit odium. (Cicero.— **obsequium, -iī, compliance.** — **pariō, -ere, to produce.** — **odium, -iī, hate.**)

THE INCOMPARABLE VALUE OF FRIENDSHIP

Nihil cum amīcitiā possum comparāre; dī hominibus nihil melius dant. Pecūniam aliī mālunt; aliī, corpora sāna; aliī, fāmam glōriamque; aliī, voluptātēs—sed hī virī nimium errant, quoniam illa sunt incerta et ex fortunā veniunt, nōn ex sapientiā. Amīcitiā enim ex sapientiā et amōre et mōribus bonīs et virtūte venit; sine virtūte amīcitiā nōn potest esse. Sī nullōs amīcōs habēs, habēs vītam tyrannī; sī inveniēs amīcum vērūm, vīta tua erit beāta.

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā*, excerpts; see L.A. 6.— **comparāre.** — **melius, better.** — **mālunt, prefer.** — **incertus, -a, -um, uncertain.**)

词源点滴

Audiō 是下面这些奇特的派生词的最终母词：“obey”经由法语词 **obeir** 源于拉丁词 **obēdīre** (**ob** + **audīre**)；“obedient” (**ob** + **audiēns**)；“oyez, oyez”源于法语词 **ouir**，拉丁词 **audīre**。

In the readings

5. incipient, inception. 6. museum, music.—corona, coronation, coronary, corner, corolla, corollary. 7. memory, memoir, commemorate. 8. rapid, rapture, rapacious. 13. obsequious.—odium, odious. “Friendship”: comparable.—certainty.

欢乐拉丁语，有用拉丁语！

Salvēte! 还记得由动词的第四个主要部分构成的阳性-**or** 名词吗？(见第八课) 还有许多-**or** 名词与本课新学到的动词有关，**audītor**, *auditor*, *listener* 便是其中之一。你还能找到其他这类名词吗？书末附录中的“词源帮助”部分能够帮助你学到更多关于词族的知识，还能了解到另一组第三变格法名词，它们多为阴性，由第四个主要部分加上后缀-**iō** (-**iōnis**, -**iōnī**, etc.) 而构成。这些名词一般指示动作的执行或结果，如 **audītiō**, **audītiōnis**, *f.*, *listening*, *hearing*，而且许多都有以-*ion* 结尾的英语派生词(比如“audition”)。**Dictiō**, (*the act of*) *speaking*, *public speaking* 是本课中的另一个例子，由它产生了“diction”(一个人说话或写作的方式或风格)，“dictionary”，“benediction”，“contradiction”等英语派生词。你还能从本课新学到的动词中找出拉丁语名词和英语派生词吗？祝猎奇愉快！不过 **tempus fugit**，所以我不得不说：**valēte!**

第十一课

人称代词 Ego、Tū 和 Is; 指示词 Is 和 Īdem

人称代词

人称代词代替名词(还记得 **prō+ nōmen** 吗?)从说话者角度指称某个人或某些人:第一人称代词指说话者本人(**ego/nōs, I/me, we/us**),第二人称代词指听者(**tū/vōs, you**),第三人称代词指说话者正在谈论的人或事物(**is, ea, id** 及其复数, *he/him, she/her, it, they/them*)。

第一和第二人称代词 Ego/Nōs, Tū/Vōs

虽然第一和第二人称代词在形式上是不规则的,但它们的变格却非常类似,记忆起来并不困难;请注意,它们的复数属格有两种形式。

	第一人称—Ego, I		第二人称—Tū, You	
单数				
主格	égo	(I)	tū	(you)
属格	méi	(of me)	túī	(of you)
与格	míhi	(to/for me)	tíbi	(to/for you)
宾格	mē	(me)	tē	(you)
夺格	mē	(by/with/from me)	tē	(by/with/from you)
复数				
主格	nōs	(we)	vōs	(you)
属格	nóstrum	(of us)	véstrum	(of you)
	nóstrī	(of us)	véstrī	(of you)
与格	nóbīs	(to/for us)	vóbīs	(to/for you)
宾格	nōs	(us)	vōs	(you)

夺格 nōbīs (by/with/from us¹) vōbīs (by/with/from you)

第三人称代词/指示代词 Is, Ea, Id

代词 **is, ea, id** 的变格可与 **hic** 和 **ille** 的变格(第九课)进行比较,其变格方式与 **magnus, -a, -um**(第四课)相同,例外形式已用下划线标出;请注意,除四种形式(包括另一种复数主格形式 **ī**)以外,词根都是 **e-**。

阳性		阴性		中性	
单数					
主格 <u>is</u>	(he ²)	éa	(she ²)	<u>id</u>	(it ²)
属格 <u>éius</u> ³	(of him, his)	<u>éius</u>	(of her, her)	<u>éius</u>	(of it, its)
与格 <u>éī</u>	(to/for him)	<u>éī</u>	(to/for her)	<u>éī</u>	(to/for it)
宾格 <u>éum</u>	(him)	éam	(her)	<u>id</u>	(it)
夺格 <u>éō</u>	(by/w./lfr. him)	éā	(by/w./lfr. her)	<u>éō</u>	(by/w./lfr. it)
复数					
主格 <u>éī, ī</u>	(they, masc.)	éae	(they, fem.)	éa	(they, neut.)
属格 <u>eōrum</u>	(of them, their)	<u>eārum</u>	(of them, their)	<u>eōrum</u>	(of them, their)
与格 <u>éis</u>	(to/for them)	<u>éis</u>	(to/for them)	<u>éis</u>	(to/for them)
宾格 <u>éōs</u>	(them)	éās	(them)	éa	(them)
夺格 <u>éis</u>	(by/w./lfr. them)	<u>éis</u>	(by/w./lfr. them)	<u>éis</u>	(by/w./lfr. them)

用法

既然这些代词被用于替代名词,所以一般来说,它们也和对应的名词一样,充当主语、直接宾语、间接宾语、介词宾语等成分。

Ego tibi (vōbīs) librōs dabō, *I shall give the books to you.*

Ego eī (eīs) librōs dabō, *I shall give the books to him or her (to them).*

Tū mē (nōs) nōn capiēs, *you will not capture me (us).*

Eī id ad nōs mittent, *they (masc.) will send it to us.*

Vōs eōs (eās, ea) nōn capiētis, *you will not capture them (them).*

Eae ea ad tē mittent, *they (fem.) will send them (those things) to you.*

不过需要注意的是,只有在对主语进行强调时,罗马人才会使用代词的主格(**ego, tū, etc.**)。因此,拉丁语动词的代词主语一般并不直接指明,而只是通过动词词尾来暗示。

¹ 我们将会发现,指人的夺格名词或代词常与介词连用。

² 也指 *this/that man, woman, thing*。

³ 读作 **ei-yus**(比较第九课的 **huius**)。

Eīs pecūniam dabō, *I shall give them money.*

Ego eīs pecūniam dabō; quid tū dabis? *I shall give them money; what will you give?*

此外,当 **cum** 与人称代词(以及我们以后将会学到的关系代词和反身代词)的夺格连用时,它往往作为代词的后缀出现,而不是作为单独的介词出现在它之前。如 **eōs nōbiscum ibi inveniēs**, *you will find them there with us*。

还要注意,ego 和 tū 的属格(即 **meī, nostrum, nostrī; tuī, vestrum, vestrī**)不能用来表示属有。¹ 如果想表示属有,罗马人习惯于使用我们已经学过的形容词性物主代词:

meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i>	tuus, -a, -um, <i>your</i>
noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i>	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i>

这与英语中的用法类似:正如拉丁语说 **liber meus**, 而不说 **liber meī**, 英语也说 *my book*, 而不说 *the book of me*。

而 **is, ea, id** 的属格则常常用来表示属有。因此,尽管 **eius** 有时可以译成 *of him/of her/of it*, 但在一般情况下最好还是译成 *his/her/its*; 类似地, **eōrum/eārum/eōrum** 虽然可以翻译成 *of them*, 但在一般表示属有的情况下应当翻译成 *their*。考察以下例子中的物主代词,其中所有名词均由 **mittam** 支配:

Mittam (*I shall send*)

pecūniam meam (<i>my money</i>).	amīcōs meōs (<i>my friends</i>).
pecūniam nostram (<i>our money</i>).	amīcōs nostrōs (<i>our friends</i>).
pecūniam tuam (<i>your money</i>).	amīcōs tuōs (<i>your friends</i>).
pecūniam vestram (<i>your money</i>).	amīcōs vestrōs (<i>your friends</i>).
pecūniam eius (<i>his, her money</i>).	amīcōs eius (<i>his, her friends</i>).
pecūniam eōrum (<i>their money</i>).	amīcōs eōrum (<i>their friends</i>).
pecūniam eārum (<i>their money</i>).	amīcōs eārum (<i>their friends</i>).

既然所有形容词都要与名词保持一致,第一、第二人称的形容词性物主代词当然也要在性、数、格上与名词保持一致。物主所有格 **eius, eōrum** 和 **eārum** 是代词的属格形式,它们不随所属名词的性、数、格的变化而变化。

最后需要指出的是,除非是为了强调或避免混淆,物主代词在拉丁语中经

¹ **Meī** 和 **tuī** 用作宾语属格(如 **timor tuī**, *fear of you*)和部分属格(即“整体属格”,如 **pars meī**, *part of me*, 参见第十五课), **nostrī** 和 **vestrī** 仅作宾语属格, **nostrum** 和 **vestrum** 仅作部分属格。

常略去。而英语则经常使用物主代词,所以在翻译过程中,往往需要将它们补充进去(就像需要补充冠词“a”、“an”和“the”一样),以合乎语言习惯。如 **patriam amāmus, we love our country.**

Is, Ea, Id 作指示词

Is 一般用作拉丁语的第三人称代词,但也可以用作指示词,含义比 **hic** 和 **ille** 稍弱,可以翻译成 *this/these* 或 *that/those*。一般来说,如果它后面紧跟着一个名词,并且修饰这个名词(有一样的性、数、格),那么就应当这样来翻译;试比较:

Is est bonus, he is good.

Is amīcus est vir bonus, this friend is a good man.

Vidēsne eam, do you see her?

Vidēsne eam puellam, do you see that girl?

指示词 **Īdem, Eadem, Idem, the Same**

Īdem, eadem, idem, the same (*man, woman, thing*) 是常用指示词,它们通过在 **is, ea, id** 的各种形式后面直接加 **-dem** 而得到,如属格 **eiusdem**, 与格 **eīdem**, ...; 除了单数主格 **īdem** (阳性,不是 ***isdem**) 和 **idem** (中性,不是 ***iddem**),不遵循这一变格方法的形式已经列在下面,它们在后缀 **-dem** 之前的词尾 **-m** 都变成了 **-n-** (关于 **īdem** 的所有变格形式,参见书末附录中的“词形总结”)。

	阳性	阴性	中性
单数			
宾格	eūndem ⁵	eāndem	īdem
复数			
属格	eōrūndem ⁵	eārūndem	eōrūndem

和其他指示词一样, **īdem** 也可以起形容词或代词的作用: **eōsdem mittō, I am sending the same men; dē eādem ratiōne cōgitābāmus, we were thinking about the same plan.**

词汇表

cāput, cāpitis, n., head; leader; beginning; life; heading; chapter (cape =

¹ 如果你快速读出 ***eumdem** 或 ***eōrumdem**, 那么你可能最终会把 **-d-** 前的 **-m-** 变成 **-n-**, 这也正是罗马人的做法。

headland, capital, capitol, capitulate, captain, chief, chieftain, chef, cattle, chattels, cadet, cad, achieve, decapitate, recapitulate, precipice, occiput, sinciput, kerchief)

cōsul, cōsulis, m., *consul* (consular, consulate, consulship; cp. **cōnsilium**)

nēmō, nūllūs,⁶ **nēminī, nēminem, nūllō**⁶ or **nūllā**, m. or f., *no one, nobody*

égo, méi, *I* (ego, egoism, egotism, egotistical)

tū, túi, *you*

is, éa, id, *this, that; he, she, it* (i.e. = **id est**, *that is*)

īdem, éadem, ídem, *the same* (id., identical, identity, identify)

amīcus, -a, -um, *friendly* (amicable, amiable, amiably—cp. **amō** and the nouns **amīcus, amīca**, and **amīcītia**).

cārus, -a, -um, *dear* (caress, charity, charitable, cherish)

quod, conj., *because*

néque, nec, conj. *and not, nor*; **néque . . . néque** or **nec . . . nec**, *neither . . . nor*

aútem, postpositive conj., *however; moreover*

béne, adv. of **bonus**, *well, satisfactorily, quite* (benediction, benefit, benefactor, beneficent, benevolent)

étiam, adv., *even, also*

intéllegō, intellégere, intelléxī, intelléctum, *to understand* (intelligent, intellegentsia, intelligible, intellect, intellectual; cp. **legō**, Ch. 18)

míttō, míttēre, mísī, míssum, *to send, let go* (admit, commit, emit, omit, permit, promise, remit, submit, transmit, compromise, demise)

séntiō, sentíre, sénsī, sénsūm, *to feel, perceive, think, experience* (assent, consent, dissent, presentiment, resent, sentimental, scent)

练习与复习

1. Eum ad eam cum aliō agricolā herī mittēbant.
2. Tū autem filiam beātam eius nunc amās.
3. Propter amīcītiam, ego hoc faciō. Quid tū faciēs, mī amīce?
4. Vōsne eāsdēm litterās ad eum mittere crās audēbitis?
5. Dūc mē ad eius discipulam (ad eam discipulam), amābō tē.
6. Post labōrem eius grātiās magnās eī agēmus.
7. Tūne vēritātem in eō librō dēmōnstrās?
8. Audē, igitur, esse semper īdem.
9. Venitne nātūra mōrum nostrōrum ex nōbīs sōlīs?
10. Dum ratiō nōs dūcet, valēbimus et multa bene gerēmus.
11. Illum timōrem in hōc virō ūnō invenīmus.
12. Sine labōre autem nūlla pāx in cīvitātem eōrum veniet.
13. Studium nōn solum pecūniae sed etiam voluptātis hominēs nimium trahit; aliī eās cupiditātēs vincere possunt, aliī nōn possunt.
14. His life was always dear to the whole people.

¹ 经常用 **nūllus** 的属格和夺格形式来代替 **nēminis** 和 **nēmine**。

15. You will often find them and their friends with me in this place.
16. We, however, shall now capture their forces on this road.
17. Since I was saying the same things to him about you and his other sisters, your brother was not listening.

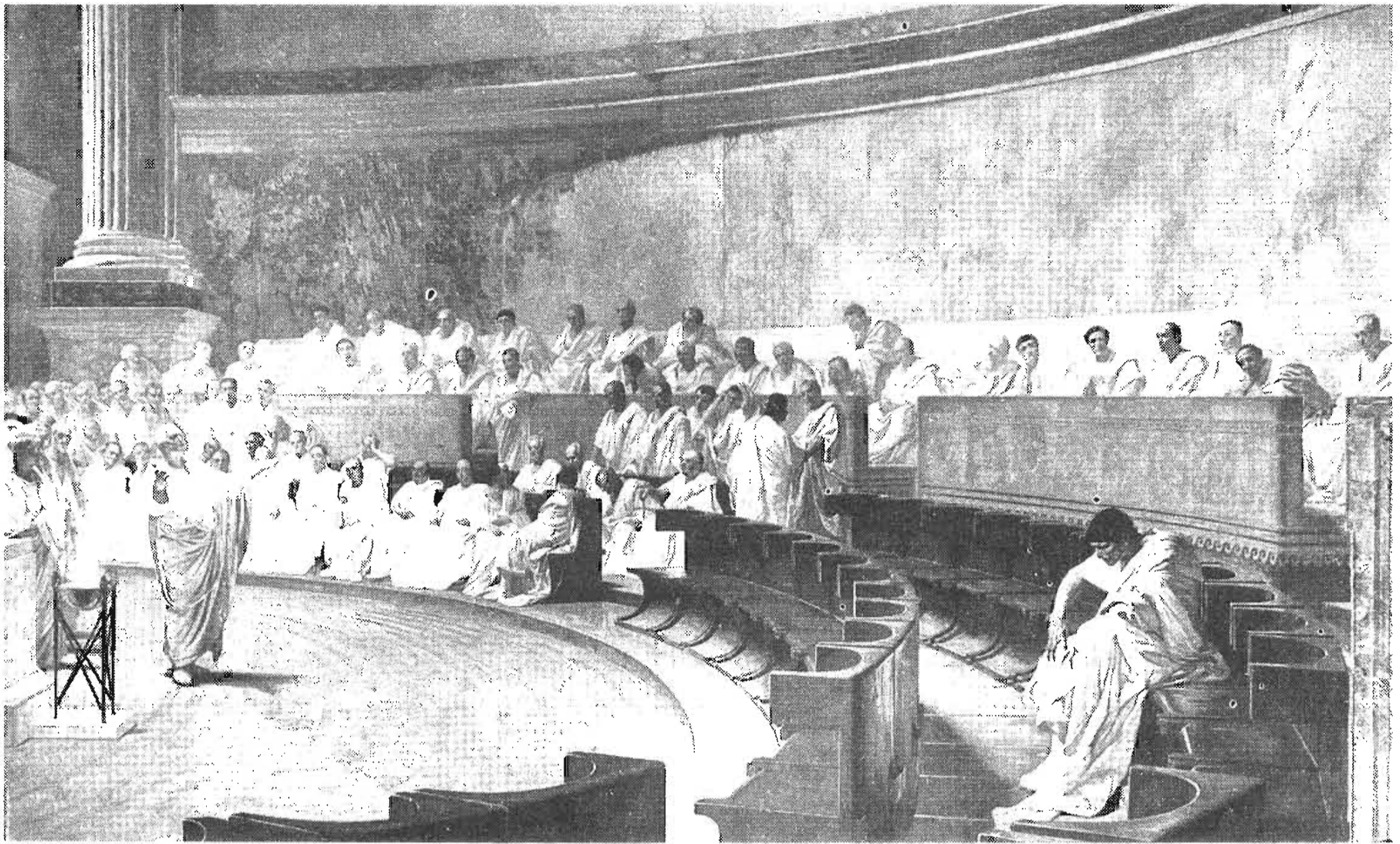
古代名言

1. Virtūs tua mē amīcum tibi facit. (Horace.)
2. Id solum est cārum mihi. (Terence.—**cārus** and other adjectives indicating relationship or attitude often take the dat., translated *to* or *for*; see Ch. 35).
3. Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. (Pliny.—**bene est**, idiom, *it is well*.)
4. Bene est mihi quod tibi bene est. (Pliny.)
5. “Valē.” “Et tū bene valē.” (Terence.)
6. Quid hī dē tē nunc sentiunt? (Cicero.)
7. Omnēs idem sentiunt. (*Cicero.—**omnēs**, *all men*, nom. pl.)
8. Videō nēminem ex eīs hodiē esse amīcum tibi. (Cicero.—The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the acc., hence **nēminem**; add this to your list of acc. case uses, and see Ch. 25.)
9. Hominēs vidēre caput Cicerōnis in Rōstrīs poterant. (Livy.—Antony proscribed Cicero and had the great orator’s head cut off and displayed on the Rostra!—**Rōstra**, **-ōrum**; see Etymology below.)
10. Nōn omnēs eadem amant aut eādem cupiditātēs studiaque habent. (Horace.)
11. Nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē (*Martial.)
12. Vērus amīcus est alter īdem. (Cicero.—Explain how **alter īdem** can mean “a second self.”)

CICERO DENOUNCES CATILINE IN THE SENATE

Quid facis, Catilīna? Quid cōgitās? Sentīmus magna vitia īnsidiāsque tuās. Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt. Hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Etiam in senātum venit; etiam nunc cōsilia agere audet; oculīs dēsignat ad mortem nōs! Et nōs, bonī virī, nihil facimus! Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, cōsul et senātus dūcere dēbent. Cōsiliū habēmus et agere dēbēmus; sī nunc nōn agimus, nōs, nōs—apertē dīcō—errāmus! Fuge nunc, Catilīna, et dūc tēcum amīcōs tuōs. Nōbīscum remanēre nōn potes; nōn tē, nōn istōs, nōn cōsilia vestra tolerābō!

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.1. ff. Lucius Sergius Catilina, “Catiline,” masterminded a conspiracy against the Roman government during Cicero’s consulship; this excerpt is adapted from the first oration Cicero delivered against him, before the senate, in 63 B.C. See L.I. 5–6 and the reading passage in Ch. 14 below.—**senātus**, *senate*.—**dēsignāre**.—**mors**, **mortis**, *f., death*.—**apertē**, *adv., openly*.)



Cicero Denouncing Catiline in the Roman Senate
 Cesare Maccari, 19th century
 Palazzo Madama, Rome, Italy

词源点滴

Cārus 有时意为 *expensive*, 就像英语词“dear”和法语词“cher”一样。

In the sentences

9. **Rōstra**, 被俘战船的喙形船首, 被用来装饰罗马广场的讲演台, 以纪念公元前 338 年在 Antium(今天的安其奥[Anzio])所取得的一场胜利。古罗马的讲演台正是以这些喙形船首命名的。虽然复数形式 *rostra* 仍然是规则的英语形式, 但我们有时使用它的单数形式 *rostrum*。“Cicero Denounces Catiline”: senator, senatorial; senile.—designate, designation.—mortal, mortality.—aperture; 与 **aperīre**, *to open* 比较。

以下是一些源于拉丁语人称代词的罗曼语派生词。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
ego, tū	io, tu	yo, tu	je, tu
mihi, tibi	mi, ti		
mē, tē	me, te	me, te	me, moi, te, toi ⁷

⁷ 法语词 **moi, toi** 源于重读拉丁词 **mē, tē**, 法语词 **me, te** 源于非重读拉丁词 **mē, tē**。

nōs, vōs (nom.)	noi, voi	nosotros, vosotros ⁸	nous, vous
nōs, vōs (acc.)		nos, os	nous, vous

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, discipulī et discipulae cārae! 注意到形容词 **cārae** 的词尾了吗? ——当形容词修饰两个不同性的名词时,我们习惯于让形容词与距它最近的名词相一致。顺便说一句,你现在知道弗洛伊德的“自我”(ego)和“本我”(id)概念的出处了,也知道问候语 **pāx vōbīscum/pāx tēcum** 是什么意思了。对了,恺撒的崇拜者们,你能想象以下三句话的翻译是一样的吗?(好吧……在某种程度上是)**Caesar, Caesar! Caesar eam videt. Caesar, cape eam!** 根据传统说法,恺撒对刺杀他的布鲁图斯说的最后一句话是:**et tū, Brūte?** (根据伟大的喜剧演员“戴夫老兄”加德纳 [Brother Dave Gardner] 后来的说法,布鲁图斯饥饿地回答说,“不,我一个还没吃呢!”)²

你是否在词汇表中注意到了缩写词 **i.e.**和 **id.**的出处? 我们现在的用法中有数十个拉丁语缩写词。除第六课结尾列出的那些之外,书末还列出了其他缩写形式(见 p.484—485)。

还记得那些 **-or/-iō** 名词吗? 本课词汇表中的此类动词有 **missor, missōris, m., a shooter** (of “missiles”—lit., *a sender*) 和 **missiō, missiōnis, f., lit. a sending forth**, 在古典拉丁语中指 *release from captivity, liberation* (源于 **liberāre, to free**), *discharge, dismissal*, 当然还有 *mission*; 由 **mittō** 可以构成许多拉丁语复合词, 由此又进一步衍生出了大量英语派生词, 例如 “admission”, “commission”, “emission”, “permission” 等等。你还能想出哪些拉丁语名词和英语派生词源于 **mittō** 吗? **Sentiō** 呢?

哎呀, **tempus fugit**, 所以 **pāx vōbīscum et valēte!**

¹ **-otros** 源于 **alterōs**。

² 这里用了谐音,把 **et** = [英]ate, **tu** = [英]two。于是“**et tū, Brūte?**”就成了“吃了两个吗? 布鲁图斯?”——译者注

第十二课

动词完成时系统的主动态

我们已经熟悉了现在时、将来时和未完成时的构词和翻译。现在时、将来时和未完成时构成了“现在时系统”。之所以这样称呼,是因为它们都是在现在时词干的基础上构成的,而且都从现在的角度来看时间。和英语一样,拉丁语也有另外三种时态,即完成时(有时称为现在完成时)、将来完成时和过去完成时,它们构成了“完成时系统”。之所以这样称呼,是因为它们都是在完成时(主动态或被动态)词干的基础上构成的,而且都是从一个不尽相同的角度来看时间。

这三种时态的主动态形式(被动态的完成时系统将在第十九课介绍)相对而言比较容易,因为所有变位法的动词都遵循同一条简单规则:完成时主动态词干+词尾。

动词的主要部分

要想确定一个拉丁语动词的完成时主动态词干,就必须知道动词的主要部分,就像只有知道一个英语动词的主要部分,才能正确地使用英语一样。¹正如词汇表所示,大多数规则的拉丁语动词都有四个主要部分,比如以 **laudō** 为例:

¹事实上,英语动词的主要部分在一定程度上类似于拉丁语动词的主要部分:

(1)现在时:praise lead take see sing be/am

(2)过去时:praised led took saw sang was

(3)过去分词:praised led taken seen sung been

在英语中,由于现在时直陈式和现在时不定式通常有相同的形式,所以只需给出一种形式。还要注意,英语中的过去分词实际上就是过去时被动态分词,类似于拉丁语中的 **laudātum**。

1. 现在时直陈式主动态: *laudō, I praise*
2. 现在时不定式主动态: *laudāre, to praise*
3. 完成时直陈式主动态: *laudāvī, I praised, have praised*
4. 完成时被动态分词: *laudātum, praised, having been praised*

曾经出现在词形变化表中的动词的主要部分如下:

现在时直陈式	现在时不定式	完成时直陈式	完成时被动态分词
<i>laúdō</i>	<i>laudāre</i>	<i>laudāvī, I praised</i>	<i>laudātum, having been praised</i>
<i>móneō</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>mónuī, I advised</i>	<i>mónitum, having been advised</i>
<i>ágō</i>	<i>ágere</i>	<i>égī, I led</i>	<i>âctum, having been led</i>
<i>cápiō</i>	<i>cápere</i>	<i>cépī, I took</i>	<i>cáptum, having been taken</i>
<i>aúdiō</i>	<i>audīre</i>	<i>audívī, I heard</i>	<i>audítum, having been heard</i>
<i>sum</i>	<i>esse</i>	<i>fúī, I was</i>	<i>futūrum, about to be</i>
<i>póssum</i>	<i>pósse</i>	<i>pótuī, I was able</i>	——

前两个主要部分我们已经详细讨论过,它们对于现在时系统的动词变位至关重要。动词的第三个主要部分是完成时直陈式主动态的第一人称单数,总是以 $-ī$ 结尾。它与动词的第一个主要部分类似,后者是现在时直陈式主动态的第一人称单数,总是以 $-ō$ 结尾。第四个主要部分在本书中给出的是中性形式,对于规则的及物动词来说,就是其完成时被动态分词,这是一个可以按照 $-us/-a/-um$ 类型进行完全变格的动词性形容词(*laudātus, -a, -um, etc.*——分词的某些用法将在第十九、二十三、二十四课中介绍);对于没有完成时被动态分词的动词,第四个主要部分用目的动名词(*supine*)的宾格来代替(参见第三十八课);对于*sum*等一些不及物动词,用将来时主动态分词来代替(如*futūrum = futūrus, -a, -um*);而像*possum*等动词则根本没有第四个主要部分。

完成时主动态词干

虽然规则动词的第一、第二个主要部分的变化方式非常一致,但第三、第四个主要部分的许多变化却无简单规律可循(尽管在词汇表中标(1)的大多数第一变位法动词遵循着*laudō*的 $-ō/-āre/-āvī/-ātum$ 变位方式,但许多第二、第四变位法动词遵循着*moneō*和*audiō*的变位方式);因此,就像我们曾经指出的那样,对于每一个动词,我们都要通过大声朗读和书写来记住它的所有主要部分,这是极为重要的。在这一过程中,英语知识可以帮助我们记忆,因为有相当多的派生词都来源于现在时词干和完成时分词词干(例如“*docile*”和“*doctor*”,“*agent*”和“*action*”等等)。

一旦知道了动词的主要部分,就很容易找到它的完成时主动态词干了:只需去掉标志着动词第三个主要部分的词尾 $-ī$ 即可得到。上表中例词的完成时主

动态词干分别是: **laudāv-**, **monu-**, **ēg-**, **cēp-**, **audīv-**, **fu-**和 **potu-**。下面的词形变化表显示了完成时系统三种时态的词尾。

完成时直陈式主动态				
	<i>I praised, have praised</i>	<i>I led, have led</i>	<i>I was, have been</i>	词尾
单数	1. laudāv-ī	ēg-ī	fú-ī	-ī
	2. laudāv-ístī	ēg-ístī	fu-ístī	-ístī
	3. laudāv-it	ēg-it	fú-it	-it
复数	1. laudāvimus	ēgimus	fúimus	-imus
	2. laudāvístis	ēgístis	fuístis	-ístis
	3. laudāvérunt	ēgérunt	fuérunt	-érunt, -ēre ²

过去完成时直陈式主动态		将来完成时直陈式主动态		
	<i>I had praised</i>	<i>I had been</i>	<i>I shall have praised</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>
单数	1. laudāv-eram	fú-eram	laudāv-erō	fú-erō
	2. laudāv-erās	fú-erās	laudāv-eris	fú-eris
	3. laudāv-erat	fú-erat	laudāv-erit	fú-erit
复数	1. laudāverámus	fuerámus	laudāverimus	fuérimus
	2. laudāverátis	fuerátis	laudāveritis	fuéritis
	3. laudāverant	fúerant	laudāverint	fúerint

完成时词尾(-ī, -ístī, -it, etc.)是本课的新内容,必须牢牢掌握。事实上,过去完成时就是现在时词干+ **eram**(**sum** 的未完成时形式),将来完成时就是完成时词干+**erō**(**sum** 的将来时形式),只不过第三人称复数是**-erint**而不是**-erunt**。

用法、翻译以及与未完成时的区分

完成时和未完成时有时可以翻译成简单过去时。于是,在某些语境中,**puer amicum monuit**和**puer amicum monēbat**均可译为 *the boy warned his friend*。不过比较而言,未完成时更像是过去的一段影像,而完成时(perfect, 源于 **perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum, to finish, complete**) 则更像是一个快照: 未完成时表示动作是正在进行的、重复性的或习惯性的, 所以根据语境,**puer amicum monēbat** 或可更精确地翻译成 *the boy was warning/kept warning/used to warn his friend*; 而完成时则更为静态, 它表示动作是一个单独的、已经完成了的事件, 或者是一个虽然已经完成、但对现在仍有影响的事件; 如果是后者, 那么一般应当用助动词“has/have”来翻译(*he has warned his friend, and so his friend*

¹ 第二种词尾**-ēre**(**laudāvēre, ēgēre, fuēre**)虽然在拉丁语诗歌中比较常见,但在本书中只出现了一两次。

is now prepared)。

过去完成时(pluperfect, 源于 **plūs quam perfectum**, *more than complete*, 即“先于完成时的”时间)和将来完成时与英语中的用法很类似, 它和完成时一样, 都关注已经完成的动作所产生的结果。考察下列英语句子, 它们分别说明了过去完成时、完成时和将来完成时, 注意英语助动词“had”, “has”和“will have”(动词“to have”的过去时、现在时和将来时形式)的使用: “he had studied the material and so he knew it well”; “he has studied the material and so he knows it well”; “he will have studied the material and so he will know it well”。由这些例子可以看出, 完成时系统的三种时态非常类似于现在时系统的三种时态。在现在时系统中, 我们关注的只是过去、现在或未来的事件; 而在完成时系统中, 我们不仅关注过去、现在或未来的事件, 而且还关注此前已经完成的行为对这些事件的影响。

词汇表

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, m. and f., *young man or woman* (adolescent, adolescence, adult; cp. **adulēscēntia**)

ānnus, -ī, m., *year* (annals, anniversary, annuity, annual, biennial, perennial, centennial, millennium, superannuated)

Āsia, -ae, f., *Asia*, commonly referring to Asia Minor

Caésar, Caésaris, m., *Caesar* (Caesarian, Caesarism, kaiser, czar, tsar)

māter, mātris, f., *mother* (maternal, maternity, matriarchy, matrimony, matricide, matriculate, matrilineal, matrix, matron)

médicus, -ī, m., and **médica, -ae**, f., *doctor, physician* (medic, medical, medicate, medicine, medicinal)

pāter, pátris, m., *father* (paternal, paternity, patrician, patrimony, patron, patronage, patronize, pater, padre, père; cp. **patria**)

patiéntia, -ae, f., *suffering; patience, endurance* (patient, impatient; cp. **patior**, Ch. 34)

prīncípium, -iī, n., *beginning* (principal, principle; cp. **prīnceps**, Ch. 28)

acérbus, -a, -um, *harsh, bitter, grievous* (acerbity, exacerbate)

prō, prep. + abl., *in front of, before, on behalf of, for the sake of, in return for, instead of, for, as*; also as prefix (pros and cons, pro- as a prefix)

dīū, adv., *long, for a long time*

nūper, adv., *recently*

āmíttō, -míttēre, -mísī, -míssum, *to lose, let go*

cádō, cádere, cécidī, cāsúrūm, *to fall* (cadence, case, casual, cascade, chance, accident, incident, decadence, decay, deciduous)

créō (1), *to create* (creation, creativity, creature, procreate)

练习与复习

1. Vōs nōbīs dē voluptātibus adulēscēntiae tum scrīpsistis.
2. Ratiōnēs alterīus filiae herī nōn fuērunt eadem.

3. Nēmō in hanc viam ex utrā portā fūgerat.
4. Illī autem ad nōs cum medicā eius nūper vēnērunt.
5. Illī adulēscētēs ad nōs propter amīcitiā saepe veniēbant.
6. Eundem timōrem in istō cōnsule sēnsimus.
7. Post paucās hōrās Caesar Asiā cēpit.
8. Illa fēmina beāta sōla magnam cupiditātem pācis sēnsit.
9. Potuistisne bonam vītā sine ūllā lībertāte agere?
10. Vēritās igitur fuit tōtī populō cāra.
11. Neuter medicus nōmen patris audīverat.
12. That friendly queen did not remain there a long time.
13. Our mothers had not understood the nature of that place.
14. However, we had found no fault in the head of our country.
15. They kept sending her to him with me.

古代名言

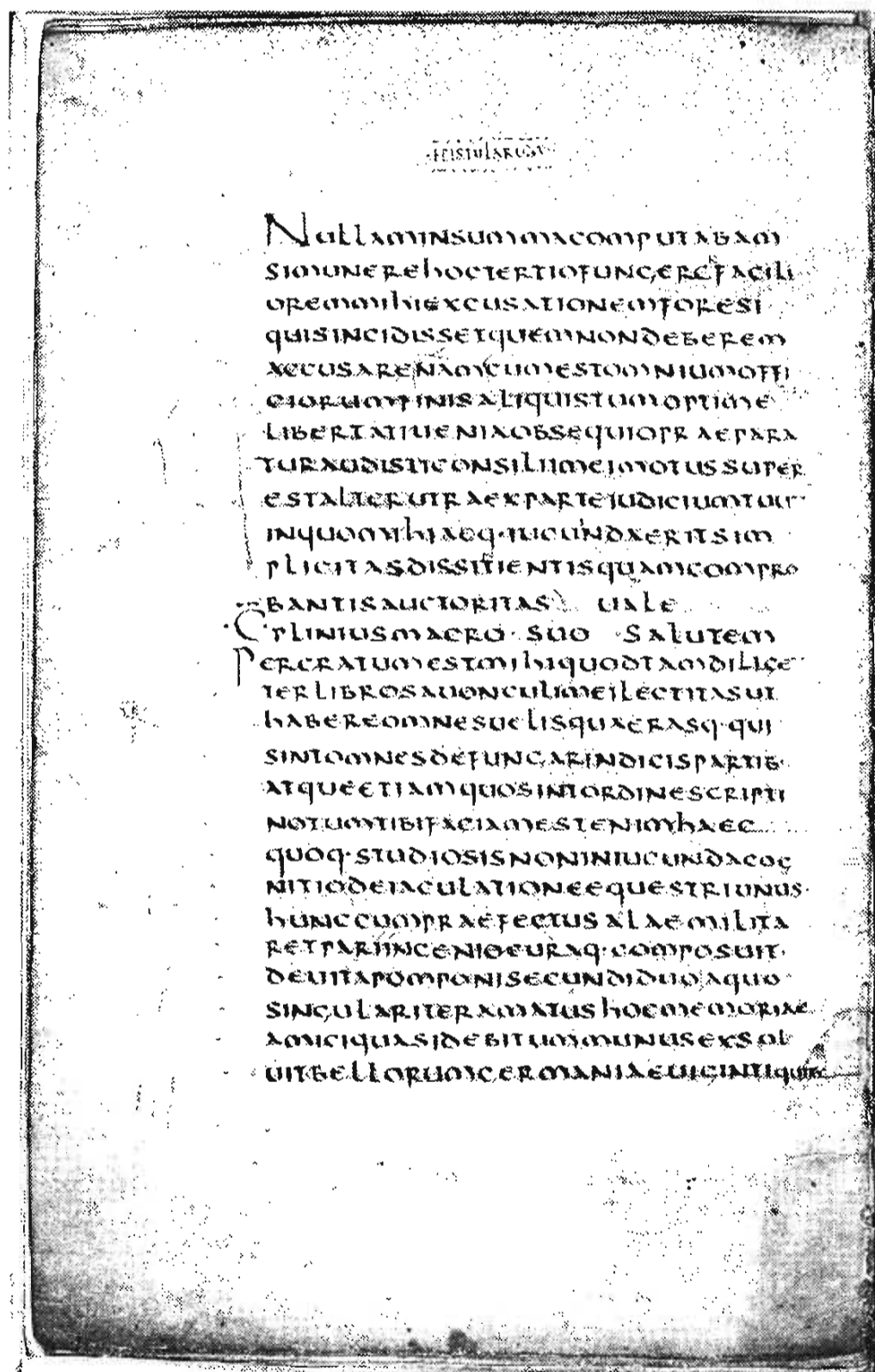
1. In prīncipiō Deus creāvit caelum et terram; et Deus creāvit hominem. (Genesis.)
2. In triumphō Caesar praetulit hunc titulum: “Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī.” (Suetonius.—**triumphus, -ī**, *triumphal procession*, here celebrating his quick victory at Zela in Asia Minor in 47 B.C.—**praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum**, *to display*.—**titulus, -ī**, *placard*.)
3. Vīxit, dum vīxit, bene. (*Terence.)
4. Adulēscēns vult diū vīvere; senex diū vīxit. (Cicero.—**vult**, *irreg., wishes*.—**senex, senis**, *m., old man*.)
5. Nōn ille diū vīxit, sed diū fuit. (*Seneca.)
6. Hui, dīxistī pulchrē! (*Terence.—**hui**, *interj., comparable to Eng. “whee!”*—**pulchrē**, *adv. from pulcher*; *advs. were commonly formed from adjs. in this way*. See Chs. 26–27, and cp., e.g., **vērē** from **vērus**, **līberē** from **līber**, and the irregular **bene** from **bonus**.)
7. Sophoclēs ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit. (*Cicero.—**Sophoclēs, -clis**, the famous Athenian playwright.—**summus, -a, -um**, *extreme*.—**tragoedia, -ae**, *tragedy*.)
8. Illī nōn solum pecūniam sed etiam vītā prō patriā prōfūdērunt. (Cicero.—**prōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum**, *to pour forth*.)
9. Rēgēs Rōmam ā prīncipiō habuērunt; lībertātem Lūcius Brūtus Rōmānīs dedit. (Tacitus.—**ā** + *abl., from*.)
10. Sub Caesare autem lībertātem perdidimus. (Laberius.—**perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum**, *to destroy, lose*.)
11. Quandō lībertās ceciderit, nēmō līberē dīcere audēbit. (Publilius Syrus.)

PLINY WRITES TO MARCELLINUS ABOUT THE DEATH OF FUNDANUS' DAUGHTER

Salvē, Marcellīne! Haec tibi scrībō dē Fundānō, amīcō nostrō; is filiā cāram et bellā amīsīt. Illa puella nōn XIII annōs vīxerat, sed nātūra eī

multam sapientiam dederat. Mātrē patremque, frātrē sorōremque, nōs et aliōs amīcōs, magistrōs magistrāsque semper amābat, et nōs eam amābāmus laudābāmusque. Medicī eam adiuvāre nōn poterant. Quoniam illa autem magnōs animōs habuit, morbum nimis malum cum patientiā tolerāvit. Nunc, mī amīce, mitte Fundānō nostrō litterās dē fortūnā acerbā filiae eius. Valē.

(Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.16; see L.I. 40.—**XIII annōs**, for 13 years, acc. of duration of time, Ch. 37. Minicius Fundanus was a consul in A.D. 107; his daughter's funerary urn and the following epitaph were found in the family's tomb outside of Rome: **D[is] M[ānibus] Miniciae Marcellae Fundānī f[iliae]; v[ixit] a[nnōs] XII m[ēnsēs] XI d[ies] VII.**—The bracketed text was abbreviated in the original inscription.—The **dī mānēs** were the *spirits of the dead*, who protected the deceased.—**mēnsēs**, months.—**diēs**, days.)



om manuscript of Pliny's *Epistulae*
(*Epist. III.4.8–9 and III.5.1–3*)
6th century A.D., Italy
erpont Morgan Library, New York

DIAULUS STILL BURIES HIS CLIENTS

Nūper erat medicus, nunc est vespillo Diaulus.

Quod vespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus.

(*Martial 1.47; meter: elegiac couplet.—**vespillō**, -lōnis, m., *undertaker*.—Diaulus' name is delayed for suspense.—**quod**, *what*.—**et** = *etiam*.)

词源点滴

英语词能够帮助我们学习拉丁语动词的主要部分,下面是其他一些例子:

拉丁语动词	英语词中的 现在时词干	英语词中的 完成时分词词干
videō	provide (vidēre)	provision (vīsum)
maneō	permanent (manēre)	mansion (mānsum)
vīvō	revive (vīvere)	victuals (vīctum)
sentiō	sentiment (sentīre)	sense (sēnsum)
veniō	intervene (venīre)	intervention (ventum)
faciō	facile (facere)	fact (factum)

拉丁词 **pater** 和 **patria**(*father-land*)之间的关联是显而易见的。不过,虽然英语词“patriarch”,“patriot”和“patronymic”中都有词干 **patr-**,懂拉丁语的人能够看出其中的门道,但事实上,这些英语词却来源于希腊语,其词干 **patr-**与拉丁语词干 **patr-**是同源的;与希腊词 **patēr**, *father*, **pátrā** 或 **patrís**, *fatherland*, **patría**, *lineage* 比较。

In the readings

2. prefer, prelate.—title, titular. 8. confound, confuse, effuse, effusive, fuse, fusion, refund, refuse, transfusion. 10. perdition.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvete, discipulae discipulique carī! 据说恺撒在捷拉城(Zela)发出捷报 **vēnī, vīdī, vīcī**,以此宣布他的胜利。这是完成时的一个好例子,是动作的“快照”,恺撒希望强调的正是其闪电般的结果。这句名言在 20 世纪产生了一些变种,比如信用卡商说,**VENI, VIDI, VISA**,“I came, I saw, I bought everything in sight!”;素食主义者说:**VENI, VIDI, VEGI**,“I came, I saw, I had a salad.”你是不是已经在摇头了?! — 不过要记住,**patientia est virtūs**,今后可能还有更糟的:不管怎么说,**rīdēte**(源于 **rīdēre**, *to smile*) **et valēte!**

第十三课

反身代词和反身物主代词;强势代词

反身代词

反身代词与其他代词的不同之处在于,反身代词通常只用在谓语中,且回指主语。“反身”(reflexive),源于 **re-flexus, -a, -um** (**reflectō, -ere, -flexī, -flexum, to bend back**),意为“折回”,即反身代词“折回”到主语,或者说,它“反映”或指涉主语。以下是一些英语例子:

反身代词

I praised *myself*.

Cicero praised *himself*.

人称代词

You praised *me*.

Cicero praised *him* (Caesar).

反身代词的变格

由于反身代词指涉主语,所以它们不能充当限定动词¹的主语,而且没有主格形式。此外,第一、第二人称反身代词与相应的人称代词具有同样的变格方式。

然而,第三人称反身代词的形式却很特殊。它们记忆起来并不困难,如下表所示,它们与 **tū** 的单数形式类似,只不过没有主格,词首是 **s-**而不是 **t-**。还要注意,第三人称反身代词的单复数同形,或者换句话说,对它们不作(也没有必要作)单复数的区分,因为反身代词实际上“反映”了主语の数(和性);比如很容易

¹ 限定(finite)动词是那些受到人称和数限制(**fīnītus, -a, -um, having been limited, bounded**)的动词形式;不过我们在第二十五课中将会看到,反身代词可以充当不定式的主语。

看出,在 *fēmina dē sē cōgitābat* (*the woman was thinking about herself*) 中, *sē* 意为 *herself*; 在 *virī dē sē cōgitābant* (*the men were thinking about themselves*) 中, *sē* 意为 *themselves*。

	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
单数			
主格	—	—	—
属格	<i>mēī (of myself)</i>	<i>tūī</i>	<i>sūī (of himself, herself, itself)</i>
与格	<i>mīhi (to/for myself)</i>	<i>tībi</i>	<i>sībi (to/for himself, etc.)</i>
宾格	<i>mē (myself)</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē (himself, herself, itself)</i>
夺格	<i>mē (by/w./fr. myself¹)</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē (by/w./fr. himself, etc.)</i>
复数			
主格	—	—	—
属格	<i>nóstrī (of ourselves)</i>	<i>vēstrī</i>	<i>sūī (of themselves)</i>
与格	<i>nóbīs (to/for ourselves)</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sībi (to/for themselves)</i>
宾格	<i>nōs (ourselves)</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē (themselves)</i>
夺格	<i>nóbīs (by/w./fr. ourselves)</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sē (by/w./fr. themselves)</i>

第一、第二人称反身代词和人称代词的比较²

1. *Tū laudāvistī tē, you praised yourself.*
2. *Cicerō laudāvit tē, Cicero praised you.*
3. *Nōs laudāvimus nōs, we praised ourselves.*
4. *Cicerō laudāvit nōs, Cicero praised us.*
5. *Ego scrīpsī litterās mihi, I wrote a letter to myself.*
6. *Cicerō scrīpsit litterās mihi, Cicero wrote a letter to me.*

第三人称反身代词和人称代词的比较

1. *Cicerō laudāvit sē, Cicero praised himself.*
2. *Cicerō laudāvit eum, Cicero praised him* (e.g., Caesar).
3. *Rōmānī laudāvērunt sē, the Romans praised themselves.*
4. *Rōmānī laudāvērunt eōs, the Romans praised them* (e.g., the Greeks).
5. *Puella servāvit sē, the girl saved herself.*
6. *Puella servāvit eam, the girl saved her* (i.e., another girl).

¹ 参见第十一课, p.66 脚注 1。

² 为简洁起见, 我们已经对这些例子的词序做了调整。

反身物主代词

第一、第二人称的反身物主代词与我们已经熟悉的规则的物主代词相同：**meus, tuus, noster, vester**（即 *my, my own; your, your own; etc.*）。它们并不会给我们造成什么困难。

然而，第三人称的反身物主代词却是形容词 **suus, sua, suum, his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)**。虽然这些形式本身很容易变格（与规则的第一/第二变格法形容词 **tuus, -a, -um** 一致），但是对它的用法和翻译，却需要做几点重要说明。首先，和形容词一样，**suus, -a, -um** 必须与它所修饰的名词在性、数、格上保持一致。而对它的英语翻译，就像对反身代词的翻译一样，必须反映它所指涉的主语的性和数（例如，**vir filium suum laudat, the man praises his [own] son; femina filium suum laudat, the woman praises her [own] son; viri patriam suam laudant, the men praise their [own] country**）。最后，反身物主代词形容词 **suus, -a, -um** 必须与非反身物主代词的属格 **eius, eorum, earum**（*his/her, their*：参见第十一课）区分开来，因为后者并不指涉主语。

1. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum **suum**, Cicero praised his (own) friend.
2. Cicerō laudāvit amīcum **eius**, Cicero praised his (Caesar's) friend.
3. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum **suum**, the Romans praised their (own) friend.
4. Rōmānī laudāvērunt amīcum **eorum**, the Romans praised their (the Greeks') friend.
5. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **suīs**, the woman wrote a letter to her (own) friends.
6. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **eius**, the woman wrote a letter to his (or her, i.e., someone else's) friends.
7. Fēmina scrīpsit litterās amīcīs **eorum**, the woman wrote a letter to their (some other persons') friends.

强势代词 Ipse, Ipsa, Ipsum

强势代词 **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** 的单数属格和单数与格遵循着指示词的变格方式（即属格 **ipsius, ipsius, ipsius**，与格 **ipsi, ipsi, ipsi**），其他形式则类似于 **magnus, -a, -um**。¹ 罗马人用强势代词来强调主语或谓语中任何人称的名词或代词。于是，可以把它翻译成 *myself / ourselves*（第一人称），*yourself / yourselves*（第二人称），*himself / herself / itself / themselves*（第三人称），或者 *the very* 和 *the actual*，比如下面这些例子：

¹ 完整的变格情况参见书末的词形总结(p.441 页)。

Cicerō **ipse** laudāvit mē, *Cicero himself praised me.*

Cicerō laudāvit mē **ipsum**, *Cicero praised me myself (i.e., actually praised me)*

Ipse laudāvī eius amīcum, *I myself praised his friend.*

Filia scrīpsit litterās vōbīs **ipsīs**, *your daughter wrote a letter to you yourselves.*

Cicerō vīdit Caesaris litterās **ipsās**, *Cicero saw Caesar's letter itself (i.e., Caesar's actual letter).*

词汇表

dīvītiaē, -ārum, f. pl., *riches, wealth* (cp. **dīves**, Ch. 32)

fāctum, -ī, n., *deed, act, achievement* (fact, faction, feat; cp. **faciō**)

sīgnum, -ī, n., *sign, signal, indication; seal* (assign, consign, countersign, design, ensign, insignia, resign, seal, signet)

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron., *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, etc., the very, the actual* (ipso facto, solipsistic)

quīque, quīdque (gen. **cuiūsque**; dat. **cuique**—cp. **quis**, Ch. 19), indefinite pron., *each one, each person, each thing*

sūī, reflexive pron. of 3rd pers., *himself, herself, itself, themselves* (suicide, sui generis, per se)

dōctus, -a, -um, *taught, learned, skilled* (doctor, doctorate, doctrine, indoctrinate; cp. **doceō**)

fortūnātus, -a, -um, *lucky, fortunate, happy* (unfortunate; cp. **fortūna**)

sūus, -a, -um, reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers., *his own, her own, its own, their own*

nam, conj., *for*

ānte, prep. + acc., *before* (in place or time), *in front of*; adv., *before, previously*; not to be confused with Greek **anti**, *against* (antebellum, antedate, ante-room, anterior, antediluvian, A.M. = **ante merīdiem**, advance, advantage)

per, prep. + acc., *through*; with reflexive pron., *by*; **per-** (assimilated to **pel-** before forms beginning with l-), as a prefix, *through, through and through = thoroughly, completely, very* (perchance, perforce, perhaps, perceive, perfect, perspire, percolate, percussion, perchloride, pelucid)

ōlim, adv., *at that time, once, formerly; in the future*

ālō, ālere, āluī, āltum, *to nourish, support, sustain, increase; cherish* (alible, aliment, alimentary, alimony, coalesce, adolescence)

dīligō, dīligere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum, *to esteem, love* (diligent, diligence; cp. **legō**, Ch. 18)

iūngō, iūngere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *to join* (join, joint, junction, juncture, adjunct, conjunction, enjoin, injunction, subjunctive)

stō, stāre, stēti, stātum, *to stand, stand still or firm* (stable, state, station, statue, stature, statute, establish, instant, instate, reinstate, stay; cp. **praestō**, Ch. 28)

练习与复习

1. Cōsulēs sē nec tēcum nec cum illīs aliīs iungēbant.
2. Tōtus populus Rōmānus libertātem amīsīt.
3. Rēx malus enim mē ipsum capere numquam potuit.
4. Ad patrem mātremque eōrum per illum locum tum fūgistis.
5. Dī animōs creant et eōs in corpora hominum ē caelō mittunt.
6. Ipsī per sē eum in Asiā nūper vīcērunt.
7. In hāc viā Cicerō medicum eius vīdit, nōn suum.
8. Nēmō filiam acerbam cōsulis ipsīus diū dīligere potuit.
9. Hī Cicerōnem ipsum sēcum iūnxērunt, nam eum semper dīlēxerant.
10. Fēmina ante illam hōram litterās suās mīserat.
11. Ille bonam senectūtem habuit, nam bene vīxerat.
12. Māter filium bene intellēxit, et adulēscēns eī prō patientiā grātiās ēgit.
13. However, those young men came to Caesar himself yesterday.
14. Cicero, therefore, will never join his (Caesar's) name with his own.
15. Cicero always esteemed himself and even you esteem yourself.
16. Cicero used to praise his own books and I now praise my own books.
17. The consul Cicero himself had never seen his (Caesar's) book.

古代名言

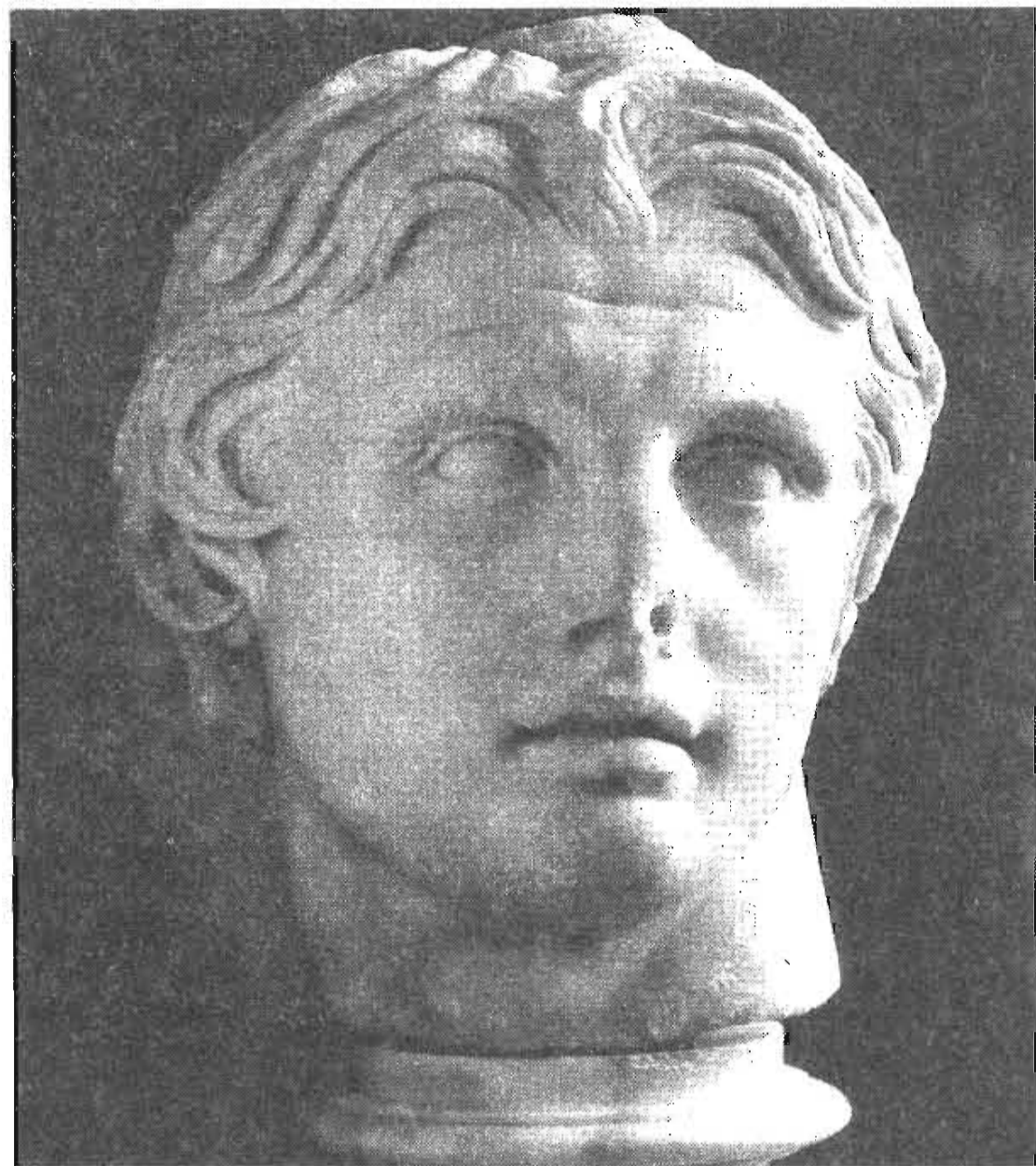
1. Ipse ad eōs contendēbat equitēsque ante sē mīsīt. (Caesar.—**contendō, -ere, to hasten.**—**eques, equitis, m., horseman.**)
2. Ipsī nihil per sē sine eō facere potuērunt. (Cicero.)
3. Ipse signum suum et litterās suās ā prīncipiō recognōvit. (Cicero.—**recognōscō, -ere, -cognōvī, -cognitum, to recognize.**)
4. Quisque ipse sē dīligit, quod quisque per sē sibi cārus est. (Cicero.)
5. Ex vitiō alterīus sapiēns ēmendat suum. (*Publilius Syrus.—**sapiēns, -entis, m., wise man, philosopher.**—**ēmendāre, to correct.**)
6. Recēde in tē ipsum. (*Seneca.—**recēdō, -ere, to withdraw.**)
7. Animus sē ipse alit. (*Seneca.)
8. Homō doctus in sē semper dīvitiās habet. (Phaedrus.)

ALEXANDER THE GREAT AND THE POWER OF LITERATURE

Magnus ille Alexander multōs scrīptōrēs factōrum suōrum sēcum semper habēbat. Is enim ante tumulum Achillis ōlim stetit et dīxit haec verba: “Fuistī fortūnātus, ō adulēscēns, quod Homērum laudātōrem virtūtis tuae invēnistī.” Et vērē! Nam, sine *Īliade* illā, īdem tumulus et corpus eius et nōmen obruere potuit. Nihil corpus humānum cōservāre potest; sed litterae magnae nōmen virī magnī saepe cōservāre possunt.

(Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 24. —**ille**, usually when placed after the word it modifies, can mean *that famous*.—**tumulus, -ī, tomb, grave.**—**Achillēs, -lis, m.**—**Homērus, -ī.**—**laudātōr, -tōris, one who praises** [see Ch. 8, *Latīna Est Gaudium*], here

chronicler.—*vērē*, adv. of *vērus*.—*Ilias*, -adis, f.—*obruō*, -ere, to overwhelm, bury.)



Alexander the Great
Pergamon, 3rd century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Istanbul, Turkey

THE AUTHORITY OF A TEACHER'S OPINION

Magistrī bonī discipulīs sentiētiās suās nōn semper dīcere dēbent. Discipulī Pŷthagorae in disputātiōnibus saepe dīcēbant: “Ipse dīxit!” Pŷthgorās, eōrum magister philosophiae, erat “ipse”: sentiētiāe eius etiam sine ratiōne valuērunt. In philosophiā autem ratiō sōla, nōn sentiētia, valēre dēbet.

(Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* 1.5.10.—Pŷthagorās, -ae, m.—disputātiō, -ōnis, argument, debate.—sc. *id* as direct obj. of *ipse dīxit*.)

词源点滴

形容词 *altus*, -a, -um, *high* 的字面意思是 *having been nourished*, 所以才会 *grown large*; altitude, alto, contralto, exalt, hautboy, oboe 均源于该词。

In the readings

1. contend, contention, contentious.—equestrian; cp. *equus*, horse. 5. emend, emendation, mend. 6. recede, recession. “Alexander”: tumulus, tumular, tumulose.—laudatory. “Authority”: disputable, dispute, disputant, disputation, disputatious

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 如果你常去法庭, 或者看过《佩里·梅森探案集》¹, 那么你一定碰到

¹ 《佩里·梅森探案集》(*Perry Mason*) 是加德纳 (Erle Stanley Gardner) 的著名侦探小说集。

——译者注

过一些法律拉丁语。在律师的词典里, **ipse** 是常见词, 例如: **ipsō factō**, *by that very fact*; **ipsō jūre** (古典拉丁语写作 **iūre**), *by the law itself*; **rēs ipsa loquitur**, *the matter speaks for itself*。由第三人称反身代词产生了 **suī jūris** (**iūris**), *lit. of his own right*, 即在法律上有权处理自己的事务。英语中的常用语 **suī generis**, *lit. of his/her/its own kind*(参见第十八课的 **genus**)并非法律术语, 不过它源自反身代词, 指独特的人或事物。另一个常用的英语短语(参见前面关于毕达哥拉斯的阅读材料)是 **ipse dixit**, 指某种教条的或武断的说法; 类似地, 源于强势代词的还有: **ipsissima verba**, *the very words*([被引用者的]原话); 医学术语“ipsilateral”, 意为“身体同侧的”(源于拉丁语 **latus, lateris, n., side**); “solipsism”, 指这样一种哲学理论, 主张自我是唯一的实在, 或者只有自我决定着对实在的感知。

现在, 你所掌握的词汇已经足以翻译君士坦丁大帝的名言 **in hōc signō vincēs** (*under this standard—i.e., the cross—you shall prevail*)了。近年来, 它成了一条著名的香烟广告, 意为 *You'll win with this brand*。(可美国卫生局长会答应吗?) 哎呀, **tempus iterum fūgit: valēte!**



School of Athens, detail of Pythagoras and a boy
Raphael, 1508
Stanza della Segnatura
Vatican Palace, Vatican State

第十四课

第三变格法的 i- 词干名词； 手段夺格, 伴随夺格, 方式夺格

有些第三变格法名词与第七课介绍的有所不同, 它们的格词尾中有时有一个特征性的 *i*。所以这些名词也被称为 *i*-词干名词, 其他第三变格法名词则被称为辅音词干名词。由下列词形变化表可知, *i*-词干名词的共同特点是: 复数属格以 **-ium** (而不是 **-um**) 结尾; 中性名词的单数夺格以 **-ī** 结尾, 而不是以 **-e** 结尾, 中性名词的复数主格、复数宾格和复数呼格以 **-ia** 结尾, 而不是以 **-a** 结尾; **vīs** 是一个常见的不规则 *i*-词干名词, 应当牢记(括号中给出的单数属格和单数与格很少用到)。

辅音词干 复习	等音节词	双辅音 词根	以 -e, -d, -ar 结尾的 中性词	不规则词
rēx, rēgis, m., <i>king</i>	cīvis, -is, m., <i>citizen</i>	nūbēs, -is, f., <i>cloud</i>	urbs, -is, f., <i>city</i>	mare, -is, n., <i>sea</i> vīs, vīs, f., <i>force;</i> pl. <i>strength</i>
单数				
主格 rēx	cīvis	nūbēs	úrbs	máre vīs
属格 rēgis	cīvis	nūbis	úrbis	máris (vīs)
与格 rēgī	cívī	núbī	úrbī	márī (vī)
宾格 rēgem	cívem	núbem	úrbem	máre vim
夺格 rēge	cíve	núbe	úrbe	márī vī
复数				
主格 rēgēs	cívēs	nūbēs	úrbēs	mária vírēs
属格 rēgum	cívium	núbium	úrbium	márium vírium
与格 rēgibus	cívibus	núbibus	úrbibus	máribus víribus
宾格 rēgēs	cívēs	nūbēs	úrbēs	mária vírēs
夺格 rēgibus	cívibus	núbibus	úrbibus	máribus víribus

阳性和阴性的复数宾格还有一种重要词尾是 **-īs** (比如写成 **cívīs** 而不是

cīvēs)。虽然这种形式在本书中出现不多,但在从共和国时期到奥古斯都时期的文学作品中经常使用,所以也应当记住。

除了学习这几个新词尾,还应当能够辨识出词汇表和阅读材料中出现的 i-词干名词。为此,不妨记住以下三条规则。

阳性和阴性的 i-词干名词

1. 阳性和阴性名词,单数主格以 **-is** 或 **-ēs** 结尾,且主格和属格的音节数相等(通常称为“parisyllabic”[等音节的]),源于 **pār, equal, + syllaba**)。¹

hostis, hostis, m.; hostium; *enemy*

nāvis, nāvis, f.; nāvium; *ship*

mōlēs, mōlis, f.; mōlium; *mass, structure*

2. 阳性和(主要是)阴性名词,单数主格以 **-s** 或 **-x** 结尾,且词根以两个辅音结尾;主格多为单音节。

ars, art-is, f.; artium; *art, skill*

dēns, dent-is, m.; dentium; *tooth*

nox, noct-is, f.; noctium; *night*

arx, arc-is, f.; arcium; *citadel*

当然,将这些阳性、阴性名词与辅音词干名词区分开来的唯一词尾通常是复数属格的词尾 **-ium**。

中性的 i-词干名词

3. 中性名词,单数主格以 **-al**, **-ar** 或 **-e** 结尾。它们不仅在以 **-ium** 结尾的复数属格中含有 **i**,而且在以 **-ī** 结尾的单数夺格,以及以 **-ia** 结尾的复数主格/宾格/呼格中也含有特征性的 **i**。

animal, animālis, n., *animal*

exemplar, exemplāris, n., *model, pattern, original*

mare, maris, n., *sea*

不规则的 Vis

Vis 是常见的不规则名词,必须牢记,而且应当与 **vir** 区分开。请注意,特征

¹ **Canis, canis, dog** 和 **iuvenis, -is, youth** 属例外情况,其复数属格以 **-um** 结尾。还有几个主格以 **-er** 结尾的名词属于 i-词干名词,比如 **imber, imbris, m., shower, rain** (复数属格 **imbrium**)。

性的 *i* 出现在大多数形式中。作为练习,请对下列形式进行分析:*virī, vīrēs, virīs, vīrium, vīribus, virōs, virum*。

夺格的用法

到目前为止,夺格一般都是与介词连用的,所以没有造成什么困难。然而,罗马人经常用无介词夺格来表达英语中需要用介词来表达的想法。要对这些夺格作出正确解释,需要做到两点:(1)知道无介词夺格的类型;(2)对语境进行分析,看看哪种类型最合乎逻辑。

以前我们学过,夺格可以充当某些介词的宾语,以下是夺格的另外三种常见用法(或“结构”);夺格的其他几种用法将在后续课程中陆续介绍。最好能列一张表,就每一种用法记下夺格的名称、定义和例子(当然,对其他格也应当如此)。

手段夺格或工具夺格

手段夺格或工具夺格是最重要的无介词类型之一。它回答“通过什么手段或工具”(by means of what [instrument]?)、“用什么”(by what?, with what?)的问题,对应于由介词 *by, by means of, with* 引出的英语短语。

Litterās stilō scrīpsit, he wrote the letter with a pencil (stilus, -ī).

Cīvēs pecūniā vīcit, he conquered the citizens with/by money.

Id meīs oculīs vīdī, I saw it with my own eyes.

Suīs labōribus urbem cōservāvit, by his own labors he saved the city.

在阅读材料和翻译练习中我们已经不止一次见到过这种形式了。

伴随夺格和方式夺格

我们也见过用 *cum* + 夺格来指(1)伴随,回答“和谁”(with whom?)的问题;(2)方式,回答“怎样”(how?)的问题。

Cum amīcīs vēnērunt, they came with friends (= with whom?).

Cum celeritāte vēnērunt, they came with speed (= how? ; speedily.—celeritās, -tātis).

Id cum eīs fēcit, he did it with them (= with whom?).

Id cum virtūte fēcit, he did it with courage (= how? ; courageously).

应当注意,这三种结构都可以用英语介词“with”来翻译,但在概念上是不同的,必须认真加以区分。夺格结构一般起副词的作用,告诉我们关于动词动作的

某些情况;这三种夺格分别告诉我们,动作是通过什么手段或工具完成的,和谁一起完成的,以及用什么方式完成的。

在把英语翻译成拉丁语时需要注意:如果 *with* 指“和谁”(with whom)或“以何种方式”(in what manner),就使用 **cum** +夺格;如果 *with* 指“借助什么”(by means of what),就使用无介词夺格。

词汇表

- ánimal, animális**, n., *a living creature, animal* (related to **anima**, Ch. 34, *breath, air, spirit, soul*, and **animus**; animate, animation)
- áqua, -ae**, f., *water* (aquatic, aquarium, Aquarius, aqueduct, subaqueous, ewer, sewer, sewage, sewerage)
- ars, ártis**, f., *art, skill* (artifact, artifice, artificial, artless, artist, artisan, inert, inertia)
- aúris, aúris**, f., *ear* (aural, auricle, auricular, auriform; not to be confused with “auric,” “auriferous,” from **aurum**, *gold*)
- cívis, cívis**, m. and f., *citizen* (civil, civilian, civility, incivility, civilize, civic; cp. **cīvitās, cīvilis**, *related to one's fellow citizens*)
- iūs, iúris**, n., *right, justice, law* (jurisdiction, jurisprudence, juridical, jurist, juror, jury, just, justice, injury; cp. **iniúria**, Ch. 39, **iústus**, Ch. 40)
- máre, máris**, n., *sea* (marine, mariner, marinate, maritime, submarine, cormorant, rosemary, mere = Eng. cognate, archaic for “small lake.”)
- mors, mórtis**, f., *death* (mortal, immortal, mortify, mortgage; murder = Eng. cognate; cp. **mortālis**, Ch. 18, **immortālis**, Ch. 19)
- núbēs, núbis**, f., *cloud* (nubilous)
- ōs, ōris**, n., *mouth, face* (oral, orifice)
- pars, pártis**, f., *part, share; direction* (party, partial, partake, participate, participle, particle, particular, partisan, partition, apart, apartment, depart, impart, repartee)
- Róma, -ae**, f., *Rome* (romance, romantic, romanticism; cp. **Rōmānus**)
- túrba, -ae**, f., *uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd, multitude* (cp. **turbāre**, *to disturb, throw into confusion*; turbid, turbulent, turbine, turbo, disturb, perturb, imperturbable, trouble)
- urbs, úrbis**, f., *city* (urban, urbane, urbanity, suburb, suburban)
- vīs, vīs**, f., *force, power, violence*; **vírēs, vírium**, pl., *strength* (vim, violate, violent; do not confuse with **vir**)
- ā** (before consonants), **ab** (before vowels or consonants), prep. + abl., *away from, from; by* (personal agent); frequent in compounds (aberration, abject, abrasive, absolve, abstract, abundant, abuse)
- trāns**, prep. + acc., *across*; also a prefix (transport, transmit)
- appéllō** (1), *to speak to, address (as), call, name* (appellation, appellative, appeal, appellant, appellate)
- cúrrō, cúrrere, cucúrrī, cúrsum**, *to run, rush, move quickly* (current, cursive, cursory, course, coarse, discursive, incur, occur, recur)
- mútō** (1), *to change, alter; exchange* (mutable, immutable, mutual, com-

mute, permutation, transmutation, molt)
téneō, tenēre, tenuī, tēntum, to hold, keep, possess; restrain; **-tineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum** in compounds, e.g., **contineō** (tenable, tenacious, tenant, tenet, tenure, tentacle, tenor, continue, content, continent, pertinent, pertinacity, lieutenant, appertain, detain, retain, sustain)
vītō (1), to avoid, shun; not to be confused with **vīvō** (inevitable)

练习与复习

1. Magnam partem illārum urbium post multōs annōs vī et cōnsiliō capiēbat.
2. Ante Caesaris ipsīus oculōs trāns viam cucurrimus et cum amīcīs fūgimus.
3. Nēmō vitia sua videt, sed quisque illa alterīus.
4. Monuitne nūper eōs dē vīribus illārum urbium in Asiā?
5. Ipsī autem libertātem cīvium suōrum magnā cum cūrā aluerant.
6. Nōmina multārum urbium nostrārum ab nōminibus urbium antiquārum trāximus.
7. Pars cīvium dīvitiās cēpit et per urbem ad mare cucurrit.
8. Hodiē multae nūbēs in caelō sunt signum īrae acerbae deōrum.
9. Illud animal herī ibi cecidit et sē trāns terram ab agrō trahēbat.
10. That wicked tyrant did not long preserve the rights of these citizens.
11. Great is the force of the arts.
12. His wife was standing there with her own friends and doing that with patience.
13. Cicero felt and said the same thing concerning his own life and the nature of death.

古代名言

1. Et Deus aquās maria in prīncipiō appellāvit. (Genesis; **aquās** is direct object; **maria** is predicate acc. or objective complement.²)
2. Terra ipsa hominēs et animālia ōlim creāvit. (Lucretius.)
3. Pān servat ovēs et magistrōs fortūnātōs ovium. (Virgil.—Pan, the god of pastures and shepherds.—**ovis, ovis**, f., *sheep*.)
4. Parva formīca onera magna ōre trahit. (Horace.—**formīca, -ae, ant.**—**onus, oneris**, n., *load*.)
5. Auribus teneō lupum. (*Terence.—a picturesque, proverbial statement of a dilemma, like Eng. “to have a tiger by the tail.”—**lupus, -ī**, *wolf*.)
6. Ille magnam turbam clientium sēcum habet. (Horace.—**cliēns, -entis**, m., *client, dependent*.)

¹ 像 *call* (**appellō, vocō**), *consider* (**dūcō, habeō**), *choose* (**legō**), *make* (**faciō, creō**) 等一些动词可以跟两个宾格:一个是直接宾语;另一个是某种类型的谓语性名词或谓语形容词,有时称为“宾语补足语”。

7. Hunc nēmō vī neque pecūniā superāre potuit. (Ennius.)
8. Animus eius erat ignārus artium malārum. (Sallust.—**ignārus**, -a, -um, *ignorant*.)
9. Magna pars meī mortem vītābit. (Horace.—**meī**, partitive gen., Ch. 15.)
10. Vōs, amīcī doctī, exemplāria Graeca semper cum cūrā versāte. (Horace.—**exemplar**, -plāris, *model, original*.—**versāre**, *to turn; study*.)
11. Nōn vīribus et celeritāte corporum magna gerimus, sed sapientiā et sententiā et arte. (Cicero.—**celeritās**, -tātis, *swiftness*.)
12. Istī caelum, nōn animum suum, mūtant, sī trāns mare currunt. (Horace.)

STORE TEETH

Thāis habet nigrōs, niveōs Laecānia dentēs.
Quae ratiō est? Ēmptōs haec habet, illa suōs.

(*Martial 5.43; meter: elegiac couplet.—Thāis and Laecānia are names of women; take **habet** . . . **dentēs** with both these subjects.—**niger**, -gra, -grum, *black*.—**niveus**, -a, -um, *snowy*.—**dēns**, **dentis**, m., *tooth*.—**quae** (interrogative adj. modifying **ratiō**), *what*.—**ēmptōs** [**dentēs**], perf. pass. partic., *bought, purchased*.)

CICERO IMAGINES THE STATE OF ROME ITSELF URGING HIM TO PUNISH THE CATILINARIAN CONSPIRATORS

M. Tullī Cicerō, quid agis? Istī prō multīs factīs malīs poenās dare nunc dēbent; eōs enim ad mortem dūcere dēbēs, quod Rōmam in multa perīcula traxērunt. Saepe Rōmānī in hāc cīvitāte etiam cīvēs morte multāvērunt. Sed nōn dēbēs cōgitāre hōs malōs esse cīvēs, nam numquam in hāc urbe prōditōrēs patriae iūra cīvium tenuērunt; hī iūra sua āmīsērunt. Populus Rōmānus tibi magnās grātiās aget, M. Tullī, sī istōs cum virtūte nunc multābis.

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam* 1.11.27–28; see the readings in Ch. 11 above and Ch. 20 below.—M. = Mārcus.—**multāre**, *to punish*.—**prōditōr**, -tōris, *betrayed*.)

词源点滴

In the readings

4. formic, formaldehyde.—onus, onerous. 11. celerity, accelerate, accelerator. “Store Teeth”: Negro (Spanish from **niger**), Negroid; dental, dentist, dentifrice, dentil, indent, dandelion (Fr. **dent de lion**), tooth = Eng. cognate.

潘(Pan, sent. 3)是希腊神话中的牧神和田野之神。他有一种力量,能够使人突然产生恐慌。“Panic”一词便是由此产生的(不过,像“Pan-American”中的“pan-”却源于另一个希腊词,意为 *all*)。

考察以下罗曼语派生词:

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
ars, artis; artem	arte	arte	art
mors, mortis; mortem	morte	muerte	mort
pars, partis; partem	parte	parte	parti
pēs, pedis; pedem	pie	pie	pied
dēns, dentis; dentem	dente	diente	dent
nāvis, nāvis; nāvem	nave	nave	navire nef (<i>nave</i>)
nox, noctis; noctem	notte	noche	nuit

显然,这些罗曼语派生词并非来自拉丁词的主格形式。这里的规律是,来源于拉丁语的罗曼语名词和形容词一般源于其宾格形式,而且往往丢掉了最后一个音节的某种声音或特征。¹

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

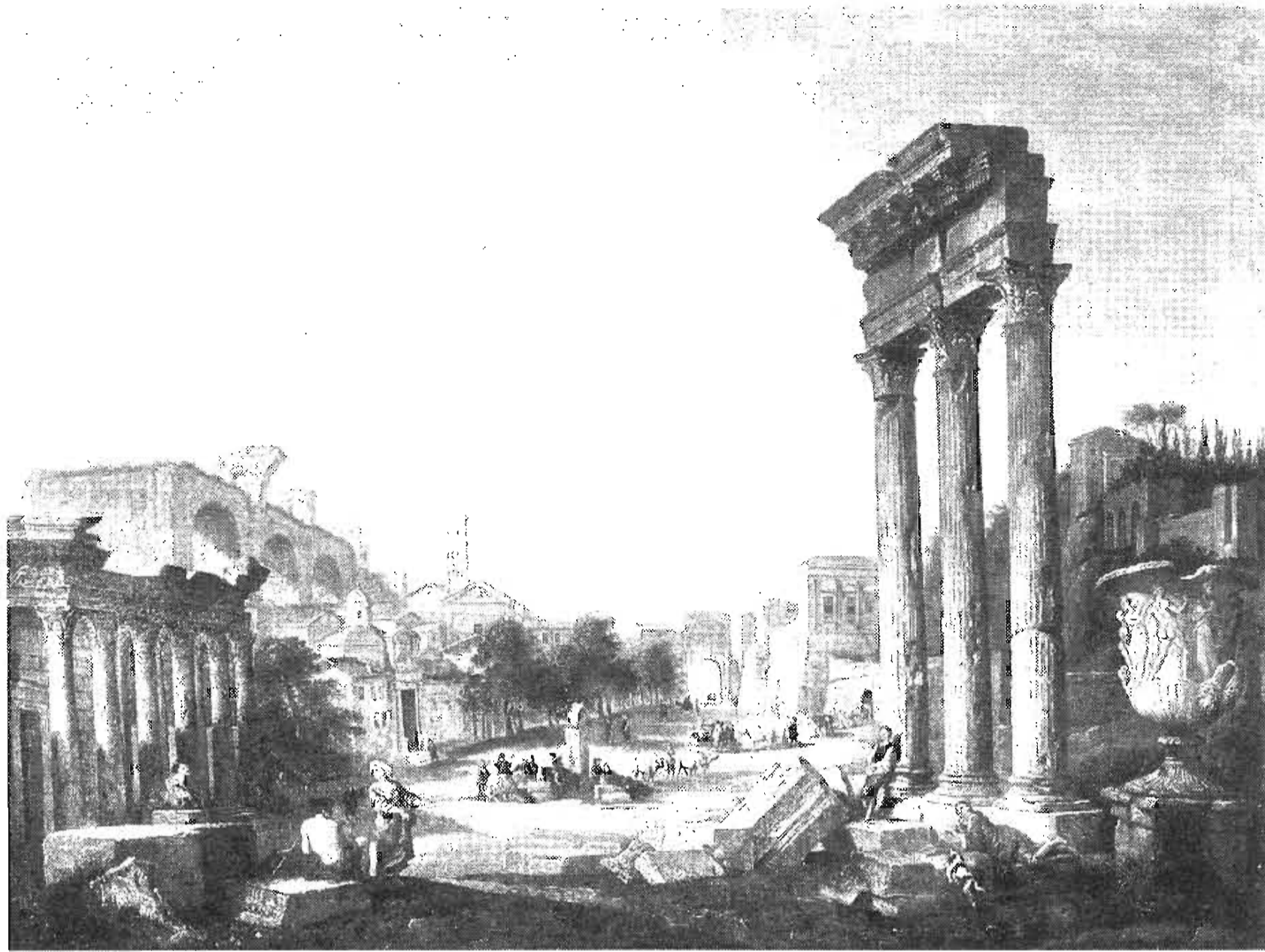
Quid agitis, amīcī et amīcae! 希望你有一个 **mēns sāna in corpore sānō**, 在它的所有 **partēs**。我们已经学过一些表示身体部位的拉丁词:**oculus, auris, ōs** 和 **dēns**(还记得 **Thais** 和 **Laecania** 吗?)。以下是位于 **caput** 之上的其他一些词,根据其英语派生词很容易记住:**collum, -ī, neck** (“collar”); **nāsus, -ī, nose** (“nasal”); **supercilium, -ī, eyebrow**(但愿你从未傲慢地 [*superciliously*] 对朋友竖起眉毛 [*eyebrow*]); **coma, -ae, hair** (天文学爱好者知道“后发星座”**Coma Berenīcēs, Berenice’s lock**——不过它与“comb”无关,而与“comet”有关); **lingua, -ae, tongue** 或 **language** (“multilingual”, “lingo”, 甚至是像舌头一样又长又扁的“linguine”!)。关于更多的 **partēs corporis**, 参见第二十课。

顺便指出,语言应当通过“听—说”技巧来学习,而不仅仅是读和写。所以我希望你记得通过大声朗读来练习变格和变位,并且每天对某个人说一声 **salvē** 或 **tē amō**。

唔——看了词汇表和新的 i-词干名词,我想起了米高梅电影制片公司的座右铭 **ars grātiā artis, art for the sake of art**, 还想起了你已经获得或将要获得的学位 **B.A. (Baccalaureus Artium)** 和 **M.A. (Magister Artium)**。再有就是 **mare nostrum** 这句熟悉的拉丁语短语,它或者是罗马人用来称呼地中海(*our sea*)的,或者可能性稍小一点,指恺撒对自己那匹毫无音乐细胞的马的批评²(“我的马不弹六弦琴!”——唉!!!)。 **Valēte!**

¹ 到目前为止,本书中出现的唯一一个例外是源自拉丁词 **filius** 的法语词 **fil, son**(古法语词是 **fiz**, 由此衍生出英语词“Fitz-”, *natural son*, 如 *Fitzgerald*)。

² “Mare”在英语中指“母马”、“母驴”。——译者注



*The Forum, Rome, Giovanni Paolo Pannini, 18th century
Private Collection*

第十五课

数词;整体属格;
带有基数词的属格和夺格;时间夺格

数词

和英语一样,拉丁语中最常见的数词也是“基数词”(cardinals,源于 **cardō**, **cardinis**, m., *hinge*, 即计数过程中“关键的、起枢轴作用的[pivotal]”数词,如“一、二、三、……”)和“序数词”(ordinals,源于 **ōrdō**, **ōrdinis**, m., *rank*, *order*, 即表示出现“顺序”的数词,如“第一、第二、第三、……”)。

基数词

在拉丁语中,一百以内的基数词大都是不发生性、数、格变化的形容词,只有以下几个是例外:

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, one (参见第九课)

duo, two			trēs, three		mīlle, thousand	
阳性	阴性	中性	阳性和 阴性	中性	阳性、阴 性、中性	中性
主格 dúo	dúae	dúo	trēs	tría	mīlle	mīlia
属格 duōrum	duārum	duōrum	tríum	tríum	mīlle	mīlium
与格 duóbus	duābus	duóbus	tríbus	tríbus	mīlle	mīlibus
宾格 dúos	dúās	dúo	trēs	tría	mīlle	mīlia
夺格 duóbus	duābus	duóbus	tríbus	tríbus	mīlle	mīlibus

200 到900 之间表示,100 的整数倍的基数词与第一、第二变格法的形容词复数有相同的变格方式,例如 **ducentī, -ae, -a, two hundred**。

Mille(1000)的单数形式是一个不发生变格的形容词,而复数形式却充当第三变格法的中性*i-*词干名词(例如 **mille virī**, *a thousand men*; **mīlia virōrum**, *thousands of men*)。

应当牢记从 **ūnus** 到 **vīgintī quīnque** 的基数词(参见附录 p.443 的表)以及 **centum** (100) 和 **mīlle**。下列句子说明了基数词的各种形式和应用:

Trēs puerī rosās dedērunt duābus puellīs, *three boys gave roses to two girls.*

Octō puerī librō s dedērunt decem puellīs, *eight boys gave books to ten girls.*

Ūnus vir vēnit cum quattuor amīcīs, *one man came with four friends.*

Cōnsul vēnit cum centum virīs, *the consul came with 100 men.*

Cōnsul vēnit cum ducentīs virīs, *the consul came with 200 men.*

Cōnsul vēnit cum mīlle virīs, *the consul came with 1,000 men.*

Cōnsul vēnit cum sex mīlibus virōrum, *the consul came with six thousand(s) (of) men.*

序数词

表示排列顺序的序数词是规则的第一、第二变格法形容词(**prīmus, -a, -um; secundus, -a, -um; etc.**——参见附录 p.443)。应当掌握从 **prīmus** 到 **duodecimus** 的序数词。

整体属格

表示部分的词后面常常跟一个表示事物整体的词的属格,例如:

pars urbis, *part of the city* (city = 整体)

nēmō amīcōrum meōrum, *no one of my friends*

整体属格(Genitive of the Whole,有时也称“部分属格”[partitive genitive])也可以用在某些中性代词和形容词的主格和宾格之后,如 **aliquid, quid, multum, plūs, minus, satis, nihil, tantum, quantum**。

nihil temporis, *no time* (*nothing of time*)

quid cōsiliī, *what plan?*

satis ēloquentiae, *sufficient eloquence*

整体属格本身可以是第二变格法形容词的中性单数。

multum bonī, *much good* (lit. *of good*)

quid novī, *what (is) new?*

nihil certī, *nothing certain*

带有基数词的属格和夺格

Mīlia 常与整体属格连用。

decem mīlia virōrum, 10000 men (但是 mille virī, 1000 men)

对于其他基数词以及 **quīdam** (*a certain one*, 将在第二十六课中介绍), 在表达整体时常常用 **ex** 或 **dē** 加夺格。

trēs ex amīcīs meīs, three of my friends (但是 trēs amīcī = three friends)

quīnque ex eīs, five of them

centum ex virīs, 100 of the men

quīdam ex eīs, a certain one of them

时间夺格:何时/期间

在表示“何时/期间”(“time when”或“within which”)时,罗马人常常使用无介词夺格。它通常对应于英语中由 *at*, *on*, *in* 或 *within* 引出的介词短语,具体使用哪个介词取决于英语习惯(表示“延续时间”的 *for* 不在此列:参见第三十七课)。

Eō tempore nōn poteram id facere, *at that time I could not do it.*

Agricolae bonīs annīs valēbant, *in good years the farmers flourished.*

Eōdem diē vēnerunt, *they came on the same day* (**diē**, abl. of **diēs**, *day*).

Aestāte lūdēbant, *in the summer they used to play.* (**aestāte**, abl. of **aestās**, *summer*)

Paucīs hōrīs id faciet, *in (within) a few hours he will do it.*

由于这种结构总是包含有某个表示时间单位的名词,而没有介词,所以很容易将它与我们已经学过的其他类型的夺格用法(介词宾语、手段、方式、伴随、带有基数词的夺格)区分开来。我们必须能够辨识、命名和翻译所有这六种夺格用法。

词汇表

Itālia, -ae, f., *Italy* (italics, italicize)

memória, -ae, f., *memory, recollection* (memoir, memorial, memorize, memorandum, commemorate)

tempéstās, **tempéstātis**, f., *period of time, season; weather, storm* (tempest, tempestuous; cp. **tempus**)

Cardinal numerals from **ūnus** to **vīgintī quīnque** (App., p. 451)

Ordinal numerals from **prīmus** to **duodécimus** (App., p. 451)

céntum, indecl. adj., *a hundred* (cent, centenary, centennial, centi-, centigrade, centimeter, centipede, centurion, century, bicentenary, bicen-

ennial, sesquicentennial, tercentenary)

mīlle, indecl. adj. in sg., *thousand*; **mīlia**, **mīlium**, n. pl., *thousands* (millennium, millennial, mile, milli-, milligram, millimeter, millipede, million, mill (= 1/10 cent), bimillennium, millefiori)

miser, **miserā**, **miserum**, *wretched, miserable, unfortunate* (misery, Misere, commiserate)

inter, prep. + acc., *between, among* (intern, internal; common as Eng. prefix, e.g., interact, intercept, interdict)

itaque, adv., *and so, therefore*

committō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-mīssum**, *to entrust, commit* (committee, commission, commissary, commitment, noncommissioned, noncom)

exspēctō (1), *to look for, expect, await* (expectancy, expectation)

iāciō, **iācere**, **iēcī**, **iāctum**, *to throw, hurl*. This verb appears in compounds as **-iciō**, **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum**: e.g., **ēiciō**, **ēicere**, **ēiēcī**, **ēiectum**, *to throw out, drive out* (abject, adjective, conjecture, dejected, eject, inject, interject, object, project, subject, reject, trajectory)

tīmeō, **tīmēre**, **tīmuī**, *to fear, be afraid of, be afraid* (timid, timorous, intimidate; cp. **timor**)

练习与复习

1. Illae quīnque fēminae inter ea animālia mortem nōn timēbant.
2. Duo ex filiīs ā portā per agrōs cum patre suō herī currēbant et in aquam cecidērunt.
3. Prīmus rēx dīvitiās in mare iēcit, nam magnam īram et vim turbae timuit.
4. Nēmō eandem partem Asiae ūnō annō vincet.
5. Rōmānī quattuor ex eīs urbibus prīmā viā iūnxērunt.
6. Itaque mīlia librōrum eius ab urbe trāns Italiam mīsistis.
7. Lībertātem et iūra hārum urbium artibus bellī cōservāvimus.
8. Dī Graecī sē inter hominēs cum virtūte saepe nōn gerēbant.
9. Cicerō mīlia Rōmānōrum vī sententiārum suārum dūcēbat.
10. Sententiae medicī eum cārum mihi numquam fēcērunt.
11. The tyrant used to entrust his life to those three friends.
12. The greedy man never has enough wealth.
13. At that time we saved their mother with those six letters.
14. Through their friends they conquered the citizens of the ten cities.

古代名言

1. Diū in istā nāve fuī et propter tempestātem nūbēsque semper mortem exspectābam. (Terence.—**nāvis**, **nāvis**, *f.*, ship.)
2. Septem hōrīs ad eam urbem vēnimus. (Cicero.)
3. Italia illīs temporibus erat plēna Graecārum artium, et multī Rōmānī ipsī hās artēs colēbant. (Cicero.—**artēs**, in the sense of studies, literature, philosophy.—**colō**, **-ere**, *to cultivate, pursue.*)

4. Inter bellum et pācem dubitābant. (Tacitus.—**dubitāre**, *to hesitate, waver*.)
5. Eō tempore istum ex urbe ēiciēbam. (Cicero.)
6. Dīcēbat quisque miser: “Cīvis Rōmānus sum.” (Cicero.)
7. Mea puella passerem suum amābat, et passer ad eam sōlam semper pīpiābat nec sē ex gremiō movēbat. (Catullus.—**passer**, **-seris**, *m., sparrow, a pet bird.*—**pīpiāre**, *to chirp.*—**gremium**, **-iī**, *lap.*—**movēre**.)
8. Fīliī meī frātre[m] meum dīligēbant, mē vītābant; mē patrem acerbum appellābant et meam mortem expectābant. Nunc autem mōrēs meōs mūtāvī et duōs filiōs ad mē crās traham. (Terence.)
9. Dionysius tyrannus, quoniam tōnsōrī caput committere timēbat, filiās suās barbam et capillum tondēre docuit; itaque virginēs tondēbant barbam et capillum patris. (Cicero.—**tōnsor**, **-sōris**, *barber.*—**barba**, **-ae**, *beard.*—**capillus**, **-ī**, *hair.*—**tondēre**, *to shave, cut.*)

CYRUS' DYING WORDS ON IMMORTALITY

Ō meī filiī trēs, nōn dēbētis esse miserī. Ad mortem enim nunc veniō, sed pars meī, animus meus, semper remanēbit. Dum eram vōbiscum, animum nōn vidēbātis, sed ex factīs meis intellegēbātis eum esse in hōc corpore. Crēdite igitur animum esse eundem post mortem, etiam sī eum nōn vidēbitis, et semper cōservāte mē in memoriā vestrā.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 22.79–81.—Cyrus the Great, whom Cicero quotes here, was a Persian king of the 6th cen. B.C.—**crēdō**, **-ere**, *to believe*.)

FABIAN TACTICS

Etiam in senectūte Quīntus Fabius Maximus erat vir vērae virtūtis et bella cum animīs adulēscētis gerēbat. Dē eō amīcus noster Ennius, doctus ille poēta, haec verba ōlim scrīpsit: “Ūnus homō cīvitatē[m] fortunātā[m] nōbīs cūctātiōne cōservāvit. Rūmōrēs et fāmā[m] nōn pōnēbat ante salūtem Rōmae. Glōria eius, igitur, nunc bene valet et semper valēbit.”

(Ibid. 4.10.—Quintus Fabius Maximus enjoyed considerable success against Hannibal in the Second Punic War [218–201 B.C.] through his delaying tactics, thus earning the epithet **Cūctātor**, *the Delayer*.—**Ennius**, an early Roman poet.—**cūctātiō**, **-ōnis**, *delaying*.—**rūmor**, **-mōris**, *rumor, gossip*.—**pōnō**, **-ere**, *to put, place*.—**salūs**, **salūtis**, *f., safety*.)

词源点滴

以下是一些源自拉丁语基数词和序数词 2—12 的英语派生词: (2) dual, duel, duet, double (cp. doubt, dubious), duplicity; second; (3) trio, triple, trivial; (4) quart, quarter, quartet, quatrain; (5) quinquennium, quintet, quintuplets, quincunx; (6) sextet, sextant; (7) September; (8) October, octave, octavo; (9) November, noon; (10) December, decimal, decimate, dime, dean; (12) duodecimal,



Hamilcar Asks Hannibal to Swear His Hatred Against the Romans
Giovanni Battista Pittoni, 18th century
Pinacoteca di Brera, Milan, Italy

dozen。

下表列出了一些源于拉丁语的罗曼语基数词。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
ūnus	un(o)	un(o)	un
duo	due	dos	deux
trēs	tre	tres	trois
quattuor	quattro	cuatro	quatre
quīnque	cinque	cinco	cinq
sex	sei	seis	six
septem	sette	siete	sept
octō	otto	ocho	huit
novem	nove	nueve	neuf
decem	dieci	diez	dix
ūndecim	undici	once	onze
duodecim	dodici	doce	douze
centum	cento	ciento	cent
mīlle	mille	mil	mille

In the readings

3. cult, culture, agriculture, horticulture (**hortus**, *garden*), colony. 7. passerine.
—“pipe”,既是动词又是名词,是一个被广泛使用的拟声词;如希腊词 **pipos**, *a*

young bird, **pipizein** 或 **peppizein**, *to peep, chirp*, 德语词 **piepen** 和 **pfeifen**, 英语词“peep”, 法语词 **piper**。9. tonsorial, tonsure.—barber, barb, barbed, barbate.—capillary, capillaceous. “Cyrus”: credo, creed, credible, credulous (参见第二十五课词汇表)。“Fabian”: cunctation.—component, etc. (第二十七课)—salutation, salutary; cf. **salvēre**。

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! Quid novī, meī amīcī amīcaequē? 除基数词和序数词外,拉丁语还有其他类型的数词,在后续课程中我们会陆续碰到。其中一些我们已经很熟悉了。“罗马数字”源于用手指计数:**I** = one finger, **II** = two, …, **V** = five(伸出手掌,拇指和食指成“V”字形), **VI** = 一只手的手指数加一,……, **X** = 两个 **V**, 一个倒加在另一个上面,等等;还有“分配”数词, **singulī, -ae, -a** (*one each*), **bīnī, -ae, -a** (*two each*), **ternī, -ae, -a**, etc.; “倍数词”, **simplex, simplicis** (*single*), **duplex** (*double*), **triplex**, etc.; “表数副词”, **semel** (*once*), **bis** (*twice*), **ter** (*three times*), etc.。所有这些词都有无数(numerous)英语派生词!

“我信赖语法,但直到学了一点拉丁语,我才真正对语法有了了解——拉丁语是一种馈赠,一种绝对的馈赠。”——撒切尔夫人。不论你有怎样的政治立场, **Id est bonum cōsiliū. Valēte!**

第十六课

第三变格法形容词

拉丁语形容词主要可以分为两类。第一类我们已经很熟悉了,那就是类似于 **magnus, -a, -um** 的第一、第二变格法形容词(第四课),以及少数单数属格以 **-īus** 结尾、单数与格以 **ī** 结尾的第一/第二变格法形容词子类(第九课)。

第二类形容词一般具有第三变格法的 **i-**词干形式。它们与第三变格法的 **i-**词干名词的变格方式完全相同,只是所有性(不仅仅是中性)的单数夺格都以 **-ī** 结尾。

这类形容词又可以分为三组,它们仅在一个方面有区别。一种称为“三尾形容词”(adjectives of three endings),就像 **magnus, magna, magnum** 那样,仅凭单数主格形式就可以区分三种性,例如 **ācer**[阳], **ācris**[阴], **ācre**[中];其次是“二尾形容词”(在第三变格法形容词中数量最多),即阳性和阴性主格具有同一种形式,中性主格是另一种形式,例如 **fortis**[阳、阴], **forte**[中];最后是“一尾形容词”,三种性的单数主格形式没有区分,例如 **potēns** 同时是阳性、阴性、中性的单数主格形式。在所有其他方面,这三组形容词都是一样的,阳性和阴性词尾与中性词尾的不同仅仅体现在单数宾格、复数主格(呼格)和复数宾格形式上。

下面给出了词形变化表,特殊的 **i-**词干词尾作了突出显示;作为比较, **cīvis** 和 **mare** 也一同列出(如果需要,请复习第十四课),以说明掌握第三变格法形容词并不需要学习太多新东西。

	I-词干名词复习		二尾形容词	
	阳性或阴性	中性	fortis, forte, strong, brave	
			阳性和阴性	中性
主格	cīvis	māre	fórtis	fórtē
属格	cīvis	māris	fórtis	fórtis

与格	cívī	mārī	fórtī	fórtī
宾格	cívem	máre	fórtē	fórtē
夺格	cíve	mārī	fórtī	fórtī
主格	cívēs	mária	fórtēs	fórtia
属格	cívium	márium	fórtium	fórtium
与格	cívibus	máribus	fórtibus	fórtibus
宾格	cívēs ¹	mária	fórtēs ¹	fórtia
夺格	cívibus	máribus	fórtibus	fórtibus

三尾形容词

ācer, ācris, ācre,
keen, severe, fierce

阳性和阴性

中性

一尾形容词

potēns, 属格 potētis,
powerful

阳性和阴性

中性

主格	ācer, ācris	ācre	potēns	potēns
属格	ācris	ācris	potētis	potētis
与格	ācrī	ācrī	potētī	potētī
宾格	ācrem	ācre	potētem	potēns
夺格	ācrī	ācrī	potētī	potētī
主格	ācrēs	ācria	potētēs	potētia
属格	ācrium	ācrium	potētium	potētium
与格	ācribus	ācribus	potētibus	potētibus
宾格	ācrēs ¹	ācria	potētēs ¹	potētia
夺格	ācribus	ācribus	potētibus	potētibus

评论

请注意这个特征性的 **i** 在词形变化表中出现的位置:²

(1) **-ī**, 所有性的单数夺格。

(2) **-ium**, 所有性的复数属格。

(3) **-ia**, 中性的复数主格和复数宾格。

还要注意, 就像第一、第二变格法形容词那样, 第三变格法形容词也可以与任何变格法的名词连用。在以下说明中, 我们把 **omnis, -e, every, all** 作为二尾形容词的例词。

omnis amīcus or homō	ācer amīcus/homō	potēns amīcus/homō
omnis rēgīna or māter	ācris rēgīna/māter	potēns rēgīna/māter

¹ 别忘了, **i-**词干名词和形容词的复数宾格还有另一种以 **-īs** 结尾的形式 (在奥古斯都时代之前一直是规则词尾), 不过在本书中基本不出现。

² 少数第三变格法一尾形容词的变格并非在这三个位置上都有这个特征性的 **i**, 例如 **vetus, veteris, old: vetere** (单数夺格), **veterum** (复数属格), **vetera** (中性复数主格和复数宾格)。比较级和现在时分词形式将在以后介绍。

omne bellum *or* animal ācre bellum/animal potēns bellum/animal

作为练习,考察并分析下列短语中的诸形式:

omnī fōrmae	in omnī fōrmā	omnium fōrmārum
omnī animō	in omnī animō	omnium animōrum
omnī hominī	in omnī homine	omnium hominum
omnī urbī	in omnī urbe	omnium urbium
omnī marī	in omnī marī	omnium marium

在词汇表中,三尾形容词(像 **ācer** 这样的以 **-er** 结尾的词,有些在词根中保留了 **-e-**,有些则没有保留)和二尾形容词(词尾为 **-is/-e**)列出了不同的主格词尾;词根可以通过阴性或中性形式来确定。一尾形容词(其中许多都以 **-ns** 或 **-x** 结尾)则给出了属格形式,从而可以确定出词根(去掉词尾 **-is**,如 **potēns**, **potent-is**)。

用法

与其他形容词一样,第三变格法形容词也可以修饰名词(**omnēs agricolae**, *all the farmers*,有时称为“定语”用法);可以充当“谓语名词”(**virī erant ācrēs**, *the men were fierce*)或“宾语补足语”(**virtūs fēcit virōs fortēs**, *virtue made the men brave*);可以代替名词(**fortūna fortēs adiuvat**, *fortune helps the brave*,有时称为“名词”用法)。需要注意的是,除了表示大小或数量的词、指示词以及希望强调的词之外,定语形容词通常跟在所修饰名词的后面。

词汇表

aētās, aetātis, f., *period of life, life, age, an age, time* (eternal, eternity)
audītor, audītōris, m., *hearer, listener, member of an audience* (auditor, auditory, auditorium; cp. **audiō**)
clēmēntia, -ae, f., *mildness, gentleness, mercy* (clement, clemency, inclement, Clement, Clementine)
mēns, mētis, f., *mind, thought, intention* (mental, mentality, mention, demented; Minerva [?]; cp. *mind*)
sātura, -ae, f., *satire* (satirist, satirical, satirize)
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, eager; severe, fierce* (acrid, acrimony, acrimonious, eager, vinegar)
brēvis, brēve, *short, small, brief* (brevity, breviary, abbreviate, abridge)
cēler, cēleris, cēlere, *swift, quick, rapid* (celerity, accelerate)
diffīcilis, diffīcile, *hard, difficult, troublesome* (difficulty)
dūlcis, dūlce, *sweet; pleasant, agreeable* (dulcify, dulcet, dulcimer)
fācilis, fācile, *easy, agreeable* (facile, facility, facilitate; cp. **faciō**)
fōrtis, fōrte, *strong, brave* (fort, forte, fortify, fortitude, force, comfort)

íngēns, gen. **ingéntis**, *huge*

iūcúndus, -a, -um, *pleasant, delightful, agreeable, pleasing* (jocund)

lóngus, -a, -um, *long* (longitude, longevity, elongate, oblong, prolong; Eng. "long" is cognate.)

ómnis, **ómne**, *every, all* (omnibus, bus, omnipresent, omnipotent, omniscient, omnivorous; cp. **omnīnō**, Ch. 40)

pótēns, gen. **poténtis**, pres. part. of **possum** as an adj., *able, powerful, mighty, strong* (potent, impotent, omnipotent, potentate, potential)

sénex, gen. **sénis**, adj. and noun, *old, aged; old man* (senate, senator, senescent, senile, senior, seniority, sir, sire)

quam, adv., *how*

régō, **régere**, **rēxī**, **rēctum**, *to rule, guide, direct* (regent, regime, regiment, regular, regulate, correct, direction, rectitude; cp. **rēx**, **rēgīna**)

练习与复习

1. Fortēs virī et fēminae ante aetātem nostram vīvēbant.
2. Eōs centum senēs miserōs ab Italiā trāns maria difficilia herī mittēbat.
3. Illī duo virī omnēs cupiditatēs ex sē eiēcērunt, nam nātūram corporis timuērunt.
4. Potēns rēgīna, quoniam sē dīlēxit, istōs trēs vītāvit et sē cum eīs numquam iūnxit.
5. Itaque inter eōs ibi stābam et signum cum animō fortī diū exspectābam.
6. Celer rūmor per ōra aurēsque omnium sine morā currēbat.
7. Vīs bellī acerbī autem vītātam eius paucīs hōrīs mūtāvit.
8. Quīnque ex nautīs sē ex aquā trāxērunt sēque Caesarī potentī commīsērunt.
9. Caesar nōn poterat suās cōpiās cum celeribus cōpiīs rēgis iungere.
10. Themistoclēs omnēs cīvēs ōlim appellābat et nōmina eōrum ācrī memoriā tenēbat.
11. In caelō sunt multae nūbēs et animālia agricolae tempestāte malā nōn valent.
12. The father and mother often used to come to the city with their two sweet daughters.
13. The souls of brave men and women will never fear difficult times.
14. Does he now understand all the rights of these four men?
15. The doctor could not help the brave girl, for death was swift.

古代名言

1. Quam dulcis est libertās! (Phaedrus.)
2. Labor omnia vīcit. (*Virgil.)
3. Fortūna fortēs adiuvat. (Terence.)
4. Quam celeris et ācris est mēns! (Cicero.)
5. Polyphēmus erat mōnstrum horrendum, īnfōrme, ingēns. (Virgil.—



*The blinding of Polyphemus
Hydria from Cerveteri, 525 B.C.
Museo Nazionale di Villa Giulia, Rome, Italy*

6. Varium et mūtābile semper fēmina. (*Virgil.—Order: **fēmina semper [est] varium et mūtābile.**—**varius, -a, -um,** *varying, fickle.*—**mūtābilis, -e,** *changeable;* the neuters **varium** and **mūtābile** are used to mean “a fickle and changeable *thing*”)
7. Facile est epigrammata belle scrībere, sed librum scrībere difficile est. (*Martial.—**epigramma, -matis, n.,** *short poem, epigram.*—**belle,** adv. from **bellus, -a, -um.**)
8. Īra furor brevis est; animum rege. (*Horace.—**furor, -rōris,** *madness.*)
9. Ars poētica est nōn omnia dīcere. (*Servius.—**poēticus, -a, -um.**)
10. Nihil est ab omnī parte beātum. (*Horace.)
11. Liber meus hominēs prūdentī cōnsiliō alit. (Phaedrus.—**prūdēns,** gen. **prūdentis.**)
12. Māter omnium bonārum artium sapientia est. (*Cicero.)
13. Clēmētia rēgem salvum facit; nam amor omnium cīvium est inexpugnābile mūnīmentum rēgis. (Seneca.—**inexpugnābilis, -e,** *impregnable.*—**mūnīmentum, -ī,** *fortification, defense.*)
14. Vīta est brevis; ars, longa. (Hippocrates, quoted by Seneca.)
15. Breve tempus aetātis autem satis longum est ad bene vīvendum. (Cicero.—**vīvendum,** *living,* verbal noun obj. of **ad, for.**)
16. Vīvit et vīvet per omnium saeculōrum memoriam. (*Velleius Paterculus.—**saeculum, -ī,** *century, age.*)

JUVENAL EXPLAINS HIS IMPULSE TO SATIRE

Semper ego audītor erō? Est turba poētārum in hāc urbe—ego igitur erō poēta! Sunt mīlia vitiōrum in urbe—dē istīs vitiīs scrībam! Difficile est saturam nōn scrībere. Sī nātūra mē adiuvāre nōn potest, facit indignātiō versum. In librō meō erunt omnia facta hominum—timor, ĩra, voluptās, culpa, cupiditās, ĩnsidiae. Nunc est plēna cōpia vitiōrum in hāc miserā urbe Rōmae!

(Juvenal, *Saturae* 1.1ff; prose adaptation from the opening of Juvenal’s programmatic first satire.—**indignātiō, -ōnis.**—**versus,** *verse, poetry.*)

ON A TEMPERAMENTAL FRIEND

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus—es īdem:
nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē.

(*Martial, 12.46; meter: elegiac couplet.)

词源点滴***In the readings***

5. monstrous.—horrendous.—informal, inform(带有否定前缀 **in-**的形容词)。
6. variety, variegated, vary, unvaried, invariable. 8. furor. 11. **prūdēns** 是 **prōvidēns** 的词中省略形式,后者见于“providence”,“providential”。“Juvenal”: indignation, indignant.—verse, versify, versification.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! Quid agitis? Quid hodiē est tempestās? 下面是一些可能的答案,其中有许多根据英语派生词就可以辨识出来:**frīgida**(由第十五课的内容可知,**tempestās** 是阴性,所以 **frīgida** 是阴性形容词,源于 **frīgīdus, -a, -um**); **calīda**(“scald”是英语派生词); **nimbōsa** (源于 **nimbus** [含义同 **nūbēs**] + 常用后缀 **-ōsus, -a, -um, full of**, 因此是“cloudy”——与英语词“cumulonimbus clouds”比较); **ventōsa**(同样的构词方式,源于 **ventus, wind**); **sōl lūcet, the sun is shining** (与“solar”,“translucent”比较); **pluit, it's raining** (“pluvial”,“pluviometer”); **ningit, it's snowing**(英语词“niveous”与之相关,它源于拉丁语 **niveus, -a, -um**)。

关于天气,我们就聊到这儿。下面是各种与 **omni-**有关的词和短语:如果你是“omnific”(源于 **facere**)和“omnipresent”(—**sent** 源于 **sum**)的,胃口是“omnivorous”(—**vorāre, to eat**, 与“carnivorous”,“herbivorous”比较)的,目光是“omnidirectional”(参见前面词汇表中的 **regō**)的,那么你也许就有“omnipotent”甚至“omniscient”(—**scīre, to know**)的潜能。然而,正如维吉尔的那句名言所说,**nōn omnēs possumus omnia**(顺便指出,前面提到的 **regō** 并不意为 *to go again*, **regit** 也不应当译成 *leave*, 不过现在我不得不表达这种意思了!)。

Valēte, omnēs amīcī et amīcae meae, et semper amāte Latīnam!

第十七课

关系代词

关系代词 **quī, quae, quod** 相当于英语中的 *who/which/that*, 通常引导从句, 指向前面的某个名词或代词, 即它的“先行词”; 关系从句本身能够起形容词的作用, 提供关于先行词的描述性信息(如“the man who was from Italy” . . . = “the Italian man”)。

关系代词的形式十分复杂, 死记也许是唯一实用的方法。不过很容易看出, 属格形式 **cuius** 和与格形式 **cui** 类似于 **illius** 和 **illi**; 其余大多数形式的性、数、格也不难确定。

QUI, QUAE, QUOD, *who, which, that*

单数			复数		
阳性	阴性	中性	阳性	阴性	中性
quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
cuius ¹	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
cui ¹	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

用法和一致

既然关系代词指涉(*refer*, 源于拉丁词 **referō, referre, rettulī, relātum**, 见第三十一课)并且本质上等价于先行词(*antecedent*, 源于 **antecēdere, to go**

¹ 关于 **cuius**(就好像拼写成 *cui-yus*)和 **cui** 中 **ui** 的读法, 参照 **huius** 和 **huic**(第九课), 并参见导言部分。

before, 因为先行词通常出现在前一子句中), 所以关系代词和先行词理应保持性和数的一致; 然而, 就像任何名词或代词一样, 关系代词的格需要根据它在从句中的用法而定。这一点可以通过分析和翻译下面的句子来理解:

The woman whom you are praising is talented.

1. 该句的主句为:

The woman... is talented. Fēmina... est docta.

2. *Whom* 引导关系从句, 修饰 *woman*。

3. *Woman* (**fēmina**) 位于关系代词 *whom* 之前, 是它的先行词。

4. *Whom* 既要忠于其先行词 **fēmina**, 又要忠于其所属的从句。

a. 由于先行词 **fēmina** 是阴性单数, 所以拉丁语中的 *whom* 也必须是阴性单数。

b. 由于在从句中, *whom* 是 (*you*) *are praising* (**laudās**) 的直接宾语, 所以在拉丁语中它必须是宾格。

c. 因此, 拉丁语形式必须是阴性单数宾格: **quam**。

于是, 完整的拉丁语句子就是:

Fēmina quam laudās est docta.

简而言之, 规则就是: 关系代词的性和数由其先行词决定, 格则由它在从句中的用法来决定。

试分析下列句子中关系代词的性、数、格:

1. *Diligō puellam quae ex Italiā vēnit, I admire the girl who came from Italy.*

2. *Homō dē quō dīcēbās est amīcus cārus, the man about whom you were speaking is a dear friend.*

3. *Puella cui librum dat est fortūnāta, the girl to whom he is giving the book is fortunate.*

4. *Puer cuius patrem iuvābāmus est fortis, the boy whose father we used to help is brave.*

5. *Vitam meam committam eīs virīs quōrum virtūtēs laudābās, I shall entrust my life to those men whose virtues you were praising.*

6. *Timeō idem perīculum quod timētis, I fear the same danger which you fear.*

在翻译时, 一定不要把关系从句中的词引入主句, 反之亦然; 比如在上面的句 3 中, 不要把 **puella** 误当成 **dat** 的主语。请注意, 关系从句是一个独立的单元, 一般从关系代词开始, 到第一个动词结束 (句 3 中的 **cui . . . dat**); 如果句子

比较复杂,比如下面“古代名言”中的句3,不妨先找到关系从句,用括号将它括起来:

Multī cīvēs aut ea perīcula [quae imminent] nōn vident aut ea [quae vident] negligunt.

然后再阅读句子的其余部分。在翻译完关系代词的先行词(往往紧挨着关系代词)之后,再翻译关系从句。

词汇表

- libellus, -ī, m.**, *little book* (libel, libelous; diminutive of **liber**)
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that* (quorum)
caecus, -a, -um, *blind* (caecum, caecal, caecilian)
lévis, léve, *light; easy; slight, trivial* (levity, lever, levy, levee, Levant, leaven, legerdemain, alleviate, elevate, relevant, irrelevant, relieve)
aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*
cito, adv., *quickly* (excite, incite, recite; cp. **recitō**, below)
quóque, adv., *also, too*
admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *to admit, receive, let in* (admission, admissible, inadmissible, admittedly)
coepī, coepisse, coeptum, *began*, defective verb used in the perfect system only; the present system is supplied by **incipiō** (below).
cúpiō, cúpere, cupívī, cupítum, *to desire, wish, long for* (Cupid, cupidity, concupiscence, covet, covetous, Kewpie doll; cp. **cupiditās, cupīdō**, Ch. 36, **cupidus**, Ch. 39)
dēleō, dēlere, dēlévī, dēlētum, *to destroy, wipe out, erase* (delete, indelible)
dēsīderō (1), *to desire, long for, miss* (desiderate, desideratum, desiderative, desire, desirous)
incipiō, -cípere, -cēpī, -céptum, *to begin* (incipient, inception; cp. **capiō**)
návīgō (1), *to sail, navigate* (navigation, navigable; cp. **nauta**)
néglēgō, néglēgere, néglēxī, néglēctum, *to neglect, disregard* (negligent, negligee, negligible; cp. **legō**, Ch. 18)
recitō (1), *to read aloud, recite* (recital, recitation, recitative)

练习与复习

1. Potēns quoque est vīs artium, quae nōs semper alunt.
2. Miserōs hominēs, autem, sēcum iungere coeperant.
3. Nam illā aetāte pars populī in Italiā iūra cīvium numquam tenuit.
4. Incipimus vērītātem intellegere, quae mentēs nostrās semper regere dēbet et sine quā valēre nōn possumus.
5. Quam difficile est bona aut dulcia ex bellō trahere!
6. Centum ex virīs mortem diū timēbant et nihil clēmēntiae exspectābant.

7. Puer mātrem timēbat, quae eum saepe neglegēbat.
8. Inter omnia perīcula illa fēmina sē cum sapientiā gessit.
9. Itaque celer rūmor ācris mortis per ingentēs urbēs cucurrit.
10. Quoniam memoria factōrum nostrōrum dulcis est, beātī nunc sumus et senectūtem facilem agēmus.
11. Multī audītōrēs saturās ācrēs timēbant quās poēta recitābat.
12. They feared the powerful men whose city they were ruling by force.
13. We began to help those three pleasant women to whom we had given our friendship.
14. We fear that book with which he is beginning to destroy our liberty.

古代名言

1. Salvē, bone amīce, cui filium meum herī commīsī. (Terence.)
2. Dionysius, dē quō ante dīxī, ā Graeciā ad Siciliam per tempestātem nāvigābat. (Cicero.—**Sicilia, -ae, Sicily.**)
3. Multī cīvēs aut ea perīcula quae imminent nōn vident aut ea quae vident neglegunt. (Cicero.—**imminēre, to impend, threaten.**)
4. Bis dat quī cito dat. (Publilius Syrus.—**bis, adv., twice.**)
5. Quī coepit, dīmidium factī habet. Incipe! (Horace.—**dīmidium, -ī, half.**)
6. Levis est fortūna: id cito repōscit quod dedit. (Publilius Syrus.—**repōscō, -ere, to demand back.**)
7. Fortūna eum stultum facit quem nimium amat. (Publilius Syrus.)
8. Nōn solum fortūna ipsa est caeca sed etiam eōs caecōs facit quōs semper adiuvat. (Cicero.)
9. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victōriā. (*Publilius Syrus.)
10. Simulātiō dēlet vērītātem, sine quā nōmen amīcitiae valēre nōn potest. (Cicero.—**simulātiō, -ōnis, pretense, insincerity.**)
11. Virtūtem enim illius virī amāvī, quae cum corpore nōn perit. (Cicero.—**pereō, -īre, -ī, -itum, to perish.**)
12. Turbam vītā. Cum hīs vīve quī tē meliōrem facere possunt; illōs admitte quōs tū potes facere meliōrēs. (Seneca.—**melior, better.**)

ON THE PLEASURES OF LOVE IN OLD AGE

Estne amor in senectūte? Voluptās enim minor est, sed minor quoque est cupiditās. Nihil autem est cūra nōbīs, sī nōn cupimus, et nōn caret is quī nōn dēsīderat. Adulēscētēs nimis dēsīderant; senēs satis amōris saepe habent et multum sapientiae. Cōgitō, igitur, hoc tempus vītāe esse iūcundum.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 14.47–48.—**minor, less.**—**carēre, to lack, want.**)

IT'S ALL IN THE DELIVERY

Quem recitās meus est, ō Fīdentīne, libellus;
sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus!

(*Martial, 1.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Fīdentīnus, a fellow who had publicly**

recited some of Martial's poems.—**libellus**, diminutive of **liber**, is the delayed antecedent of **quem**; in prose the order would be **libellus quem recitās est meus**.—**male**, adv. of **malus**.—**cum**, conj., *when*.)



*A Reading from Homer, Sir Lawrence Alma-Tadema, 1885
Philadelphia Museum of Art: The George W. Elkins Collection*

词源点滴

拉丁语关系代词是[意] **chi, che**, [西] **que**, [法] **qui, que** 等罗曼语词的母词。

如果后缀 **-scō** 表明该拉丁语动词是一个“表始”(inceptive)动词,那么该词尾为动词赋予了什么确切含义呢? ——**tremō, tremble; tremēscō = ?**

在中世纪手稿中,许多文本都以一个“incipit”(“由此开始”)作为开端用语;例如, **liber p̄rimus Epistulārum Pl̄n̄i incipit**。

[意] **o**, [西] **o**, [法] **ou** 均可追溯到拉丁语 **aut**。

In the readings

3. imminent. 10. simulation, simulator, dissimulation. 11. **perīre**: Fr. **périr**, **périssant**: Eng. “perish.” 12. ameliorate. “Old Age”: minority.—caret.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Iterum salvēte! 有一些英语缩写词源于 **quī, quae, quod**, 你也许见到过:
q.v. = quod vidē, which see (即“see this item”),**Q.E.D. = quod erat dēmōnstrandum, that which was to be proved**(比如用在数学证明中——关于“被

动迂说法”这种动词形式，参见第二十四课)。较不常见的有 **q.e. = quod est**, *which is*, 还有 **Q.E.F. = quod erat faciendum**, *which was to be done*。你看, 对于一个真正有修养的人来说, 拉丁语是 **sine quā nōn** (*indispensable*, 字面意思是, *something without which one can not manage*), 这一点我们就不要“[为了细枝末节而]争辩”(“quibble”, 这是一个指小词, 源于法律文件中常用的 **quibus**)了。

顺便指出, **recitāre** 的基本含义是 *to arouse again* (与“excite”, “incite”比较); 我们“背诵”一个文本, 就是完全从字面上“复活”它, 这就是为什么我们——就像罗马人一样——应当总是大声朗读文学作品(尤其是诗歌)的原因。

做翻译的一个好方法是: **semper scribe sentiās in tabellā tuā** (*your notebook*)。有一句古代谚语道破了个中奥妙: **quī scribit, bis discit!** 还有一句古老的谚语说: **cito matūrum, cito putridum**, *quickly ripe, quickly rotten*。所以我们不要走得太快: **valēte!**

第十八课

第一和第二变位法动词：现在时系统的被动态； 施事夺格

第一、第二变位法：现在时系统的被动态

和英语一样，拉丁语动词也有被动形式。在被动句中，主语是动作的承受者（而不是主动句中的执行者）。第一、第二变位法现在时系统被动态（即现在时、将来时和未完成时的被动态形式）的构成规则很简单：只要把我们在第一课所学的主动态词尾（-ō/-m, -s, -t; -mus, -tis, -nt）替换成新的被动态词尾（-r, -ris, -tur; -mur, -minī, -ntur）就可以了。这条规则的例外情况在下列词形变化表中作了强调标注。

Laudō 和 Moneō 的现在时直陈式被动态

被动态词尾

1. -r	laúd- or	móne or	<i>I am (am being) praised, warned</i>
2. -ris	laudá-ris	monéris	<i>you are (are being) praised, warned</i>
3. -tur	laudá-tur	monétur	<i>he is (is being) praised, warned</i>
1. -mur	laudá-mur	monémur	<i>we are (are being) praised, warned</i>
2. -minī	laudá-minī	monéminī	<i>you are (are being) praised, warned</i>
3. -ntur	laudá-ntur	monéntur	<i>they are (are being) praised, warned</i>

未完成时直陈式被动态

*I was (being) praised,
used to be praised, etc.*

*I was (being) warned,
used to be warned, etc.*

1. laudā-ba-r	monēbar
2. laudā-bā-ris	monēbāris
3. laudā-bā-tur	monēbātur
1. laudā-bā-mur	monēbāmur
2. laudā-bā-minī	monēbāminī
3. laudā-bā-ntur	monēbāntur

将来时直陈式被动态

<i>I shall be praised</i>	<i>I shall be warned</i>
1. laudā- b-or	monē bor
2. laudā- be-ris	monē beris
3. laudā- bi-tur	monē bitur
1. laudā- bi-mur	monē bimur
2. laudā- bí-minī	monē bíminī
3. laudā- bú-ntur	monē búntur

以上黑体标出的特例形式并不多:在现在时和将来时的第一人称单数形式中, **-r** 是直接加在完整的主动态形式上的(只是在词尾 **-r** 之前, **-o-** 变成了短音);在将来时的第二人称单数形式中, **-bi-** 变成了 **-be-**。还要注意,词干元音在 **laudantur/monentur** 中仍为短音,而在 **laudātur/monētur** 中则为长音(复习一下第一课所讲的规则:在任何位置的 **nt** 之前,元音都要变短,而只有在词末的 **-m**, **-r** 或 **-t** 之前,元音才会变短,因此是 **laudat** 和 **laudātur**)。第二人称单数的被动态词尾还有另外一种 **-re** 形式(如用 **laudābere** 取代 **laudāberis**);这种词尾本书虽不采用,但在日后的阅读中,我们肯定会碰到。

现在时不定式被动态

只要把第一、第二变位法动词主动态不定式的词尾 **-e** 变成 **-ī**, 就构成了现在时被动态不定式。

laudār-ī, *to be praised*

monēr-ī, *to be warned*

被动态

当动词是主动态(active, 源于 **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, to act**)时, 主语执行动词的动作。当动词是被动态(passive, 源于 **patior, patī, passus sum, to undergo, experience**)时, 主语被作用, 即它遭受或被迫接受动词的动作。一般而言, 只有及物动词才能用于被动态; 而及物动词的宾语(承受动词的动作)现在则成了被动态动词的主语(仍然承受动词的动作)。

Caesarem admonet, *he is warning Caesar.*

Caesar admonētur, *Caesar is being warned.*

Urbem dēlēbant, *they were destroying the city.*

Urbs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed.*

Patriam cōservābit, *he will save the country.*

Patria cōservābitur, *the country will be saved.*

施事夺格

被动态动词动作的施事者(*agent by whom*)由 **ab** 加“施事夺格”来表示;完成动作所借助的手段(*means by which*)则由无介词的“手段夺格”来表示,这一点我们在第十四课中已经学过。

Dī Caesarem admonent, *the gods are warning Caesar.*

Caesar ā dīs admonētur, *Caesar is warned by the gods.* (施事)

Caesar hīs prōdigīis admonētur, *Caesar is warned by these omens.* (手段);
prōdigium, -iī, *omen.*

Malī virī urbem dēlēbant, *evil men were destroying the city.*

Urbs ab malīs virīs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed by evil men.* (施事)

Urbs flammīs dēlēbātur, *the city was being destroyed by flames.* (手段);
flamma, -ae.

Hī cīvēs patriam cōservābunt, *these citizens will save the country.*

Patria ab hīs cīvibus cōservābitur, *the country will be saved by these citizens.*
(施事)

Patria armīs et vērītāte cōservābitur, *the country will be saved by arms and truth.* (手段)

总之,由以上这些例句可以看出,主动句可以这样来改成被动句:把直接宾语变成主语,它是动作的承受者;主语如果是人,就变成施事夺格(别忘了把这种用法加到你的夺格用法表中),如果是物,就变成手段夺格;动词的主动态形式也要变成相应的被动态形式。

词汇表

flūmen, flūminis, n., *river* (flume; cp. **fluō**, below)

gēnus, gēneris, n., *origin; kind, type, sort, class* (genus, generic, genitive, gender, general, generous, genuine, degenerate, genre, congenial; cp. **gēns**, Ch. 21, **ingenium**, Ch. 29)

hóstis, hóstis, m., *an enemy* (of the state); **hóstēs, -ium**, *the enemy* (hostile,

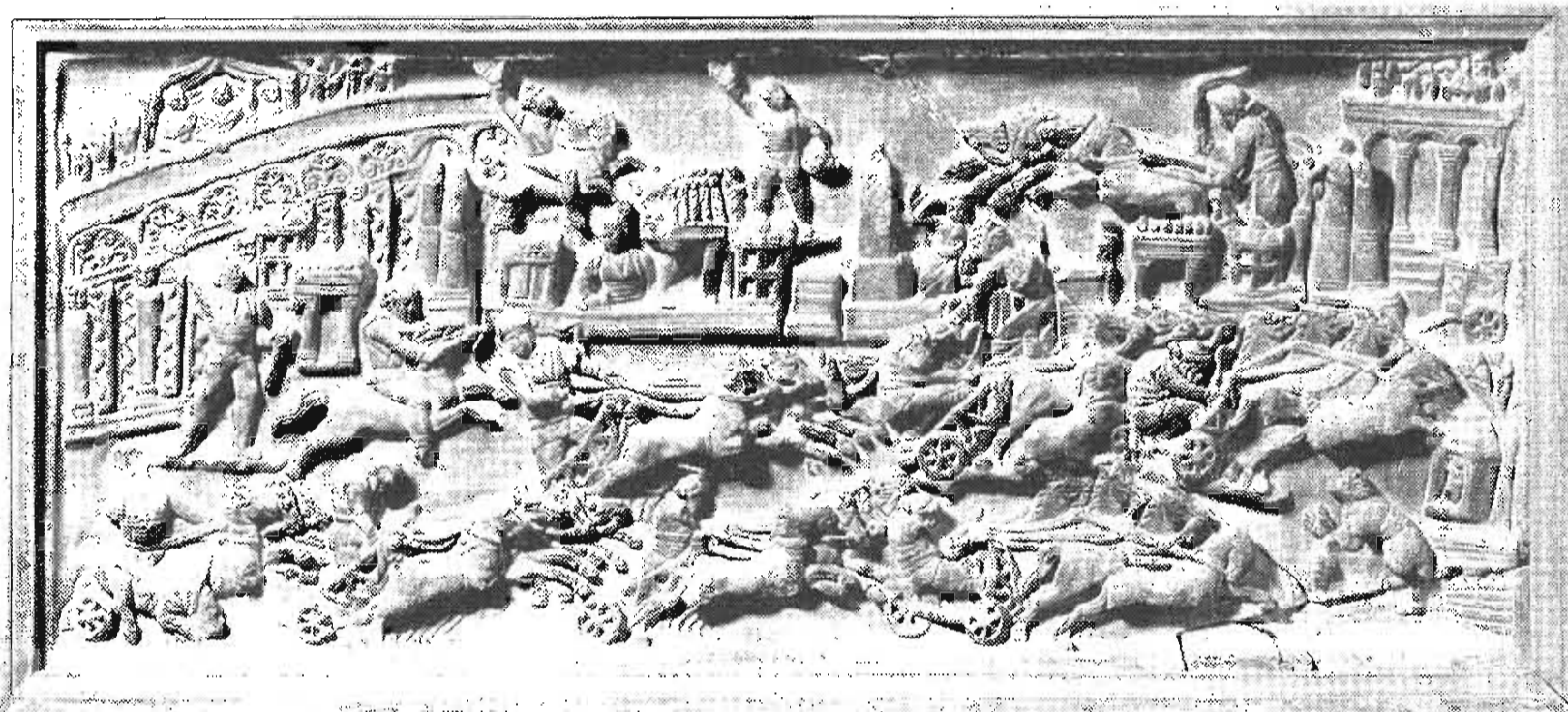
hostility, host)
lūdus, -ī, m., *game, sport; school* (ludicrous, delude, elude, elusive, allude, allusion, illusion, collusion, interlude, prelude, postlude)
próbitās, probitátis, f., *uprightness, honesty* (probity; cp. **probāre**, Ch. 27)
sciéntia, -ae, f., *knowledge* (science, scientific; cp. **sciō**, Ch. 21)
clárus, -a, -um, *clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious* (clarify, clarity, claret, clarinet, clarion, declare, Clara, Clarissa, Claribel)
mortális, mortále, mortal (mortality, immortality; cp. **mors**)
cūr, adv., *why*
deínde, adv., *thereupon, next, then*
flúō, flúere, flúxī, flúxum, *to flow* (fluid, fluent, flux, influx, affluence, effluence, influence, confluence, influenza, flu, mellifluous, superfluous)
légō, légere, légī, léctum, *to pick out, choose; read* (elect, elegant, eligible, lecture, legend, legible, intellect; cp. **intellegō, neglegō**)
míscēō, míscēre, míscuī, míxtum, *to mix, stir up, disturb* (miscellanea, miscellaneous, miscellany, miscible, meddle, meddlesome, medley, melee, admixture, intermixture, promiscuous)
móveō, movēre, móvī, mótum, *to move; arouse, affect* (mobile, motion, motive, motor, commotion, emotion, remote, locomotive, mutiny)
videor, vidērī, vísus sum, pass. of **videō**, *to be seen, seem, appear*

练习与复习

1. Multī morte etiam facilī nimis terrentur.
2. Beāta memoria amīcitiārum dulcium numquam dēlēbitur.
3. Illa fēmina caeca omnia genera artium quoque intellēxit et ab amīcīs iūcundīs semper laudābātur.
4. Pater senex vester, ā quō saepe iuvābāmur, multa dē celeribus perīculīs ingentis maris herī dīcere coepit.
5. Mentēs nostrae memoriā potentī illōrum duōrum factōrum cito moventur.
6. Cōnsilia rēgīnae illō tertiō bellō longō et difficilī dēlēbantur.
7. Itaque māter mortem quartī filiī exspectābat, quī nōn valēbat et cuius aetās erat brevis.
8. Bella difficilia sine cōnsiliō et clēmentiā numquam gerēbāmus.
9. Tē cum novem ex aliīs miserīs ad Caesarem crās trahent.
10. Rēgem ācrem, quī officia neglēxerat, ex urbe suā ēiēcērunt.
11. Ille poēta in tertiō libellō saturārum scrīpsit dē hominibus avārīs quī ad centum terrās aliās nāvigāre cupiunt quod pecūniam nimis dēsīderant.
12. Mercy will be given by them even to the citizens of other cities.
13. Many are moved too often by money but not by truth.
14. The state will be destroyed by the powerful king, whom they are beginning to fear.
15. Those ten women were not frightened by plans of that trivial sort.

古代名言

1. Possunt quia posse videntur. (*Virgil.—**quia**, conj., *because*.)
2. Etiam fortēs virī subitīs perīculīs saepe terrentur. (Tacitus.—**subitus**, **-a**, **-um**, *sudden*.)
3. Tua cōnsilia sunt clāra nōbīs; tenēris scientiā hōrum cīvium omnium. (Cicero.)
4. Malum est cōnsilium quod mūtārī nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)
5. Fās est ab hoste docērī. (Ovid.—**fās est**, *it is right*.)
6. Eō tempore erant circēnsēs lūdī, quō genere levī spectāculī numquam teneor. (Pliny.—**circēnsēs lūdī**, *contests in the Circus*.—As here with **genere**, the antecedent is often attracted into the rel. clause.—**spectāculum**, **-ī**.)



*Relief with scene of
Circus Maximus
Museo Archeologico
Foligno, Italy*

7. Haec est nunc vīta mea: admittō et salūtō bonōs virōs quī ad mē veniunt; deinde aut scrībō aut legō; post haec omne tempus corporī datur. (Cicero.—**salūtāre**, *to greet at the early morning reception*.)
8. Nihil igitur mors est, quoniam nātūra animī habētur mortālis. (Lucretius.)
9. Amor miscērī cum timōre nōn potest. (*Publilius Syrus.)
10. Numquam enim temeritās cum sapientiā commiscētur. (*Cicero.—**temeritās**, **-tātis**, *rashness*.)
11. Dīligēmus eum quī pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)
12. Laudātur ab hīs; culpātur ab illīs. (*Horace.)
13. Probitās laudātur—et alget. (*Juvenal.—**algēre**, *to be cold, be neglected*.)

ON DEATH AND METAMORPHOSIS

Ō genus hūmānum, quod mortem nimium timet! Cūr perīcula mortis timētis? Omnia mūtantur, omnia fluunt, nihil ad vērā mortem venit. Animus errat et in alia corpora miscētur; nec manet, nec eāsdem fōrmās servat, sed in fōrmās novās mūtātur. Vīta est flūmen; tempora nostra fugiunt et nova sunt semper. Nostra corpora semper mūtantur; id quod fuimus aut sumus, nōn crās erimus.

(Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 15.153–216; prose adaptation.—The ancients had some imaginative views on the transmigration of souls.)

词源点滴

Hostis 最初指“陌生人”(stranger),后来指“敌人”(enemy),因为任何陌生人都可能成为敌人。由 **hostis, enemy** 衍生出了“军队”意义上的“host”的含义。**Hospes, hospitis**, 是 **hostis, stranger** 和 **potis, having power over, lord of**(与俄语词 **gospodin, lord, gentleman** 比较)的古代复合词,既指 *host*(接受陌生人或客人的人),亦指 *guest*;比较“hospital”,“hospitality”,“hostel”,“hotel”(法语词 **hôtel**)以及英语同源词“guest”。

In the readings

6. circus.—spectator, spectacle, specter, spectacular. 10. temerity (contrast “timidity”).

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvete! 想知道为什么动词 **legere** 既可以指 *to pick out*, 又可以指 *to read* 吗? 这是因为,阅读的过程就像聚拢和收集一个文本中的语词。这个比喻多棒啊:我们所有人(特别是学拉丁语的人)都是“语词收集者”!“让我们尽情采撷这些缤纷的蓓蕾吧”,一并收获的将是语言所带来的喜悦。

还记得本课词汇 **videor** 特殊的被动含义吗?它的现在时被动态不定式形式见于 **esse quam vidēri, to be rather than to seem**, 这是北卡罗莱纳州的座右铭。**Scientia** 也出现在几条座右铭中:**scientia est potentia, knowledge is power**, 这一条最为著名;还有 **scientia sōl mentis est, knowledge is the sun of the mind**(特拉华大学校训)。**Valēte, discipulae discipulique!**

第十九课

动词完成时系统的被动态； 疑问代词和疑问形容词

完成时系统的被动态

完成时系统的被动态结构很简单：动词的完成时被动态分词(第四个主要部分)分别与 **sum**, **erō** 和 **eram** 组合,就构成了完成时被动态、将来完成时被动态和过去完成时被动态。这一模式适用于所有变位法的动词。于是,在下列词形变化表中,我们用 **laudātus** 来替代 **monitus**, **āctus**, **audītus**, **captus** 或其他完成时被动态分词。

完成时直陈式被动态

1. laudātus, -a, -um sum
2. laudātus, -a, -um es
3. laudātus, -a, -um est

1. laudātī, -ae, -a sūmus
2. laudātī, -ae, -a éstis
3. laudātī, -ae, -a sunt

I was praised, have been praised
you were praised, have been praised
he, she, it was praised, has been praised

we were praised, have been praised
you were praised, have been praised
they were praised, have been praised

将来完成时直陈式被动态

I shall have been praised, etc.

1. laudātus, -a, -um érō
2. laudātus, -a, -um éris
3. laudātus, -a, -um érit

1. laudātī, -ae, -a érimus
2. laudātī, -ae, -a éritis
3. laudātī, -ae, -a érint

过去完成时直陈式被动态

I had been praised, etc.

1. laudātus, -a, -um éram
2. laudātus, -a, -um érās
3. laudātus, -a, -um érat

1. laudātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2. laudātī, -ae, -a erātis
3. laudātī, -ae, -a érant

用法和翻译

在拉丁语中,虽然 **sum** +分词作为一个动词单元起作用,但分词本质上是一种谓形容词,即 **puella laudāta est = puella est laudāta** (试与 **puella est bona** 比较)。因此顺理成章地,分词要在性、数、格上与主语保持一致。

就像拉丁语用 **sum, esse** 的现在时、将来时和未完成时形式来构成这些完成时系统的被动态动词一样,英语也用动词 *to have* 的现在时、将来时和过去时形式作为完成时系统(主动态和被动态)的助动词:**laudātus est, he has been praised** (或者一般过去时:*was praised*);**laudātus erit, he will have been praised**; **laudātus erat, he had been praised**。¹ 请注意不要把 **laudātus est** 误译成 *is praised*,把 **laudātus erat** 误译成 *was praised*(这是由于把 **esse** 和分词的形式分开来看,而没有把它们视为一个整体)。

下面这些例子说明了完成时系统被动态的构成规则、用法和翻译方法:

Puella laudāta est, the girl has been (or was) praised.

Puellae laudātae erant, the girls had been praised.

Puellae laudātae erunt, the girls will have been praised.

Puerī monitī sunt, the boys have been (were) warned.

Periculum nōn vīsum erat, the danger had not been seen.

Pericula nōn vīsa sunt, the dangers were not seen.

Litterae scrīptae erunt, the letter will have been written.

疑问代词

和英语疑问代词(who, whose, whom? what, which?)一样,拉丁语疑问代词 **quis, quid** 问的是人或事物的身份。例如,**quid legis? what are you reading? quis illum librum legit? who is reading that book?** 拉丁语疑问代词的复数形式与关系代词的复数形式完全相同;单数形式也相同,只不过:(1)阳性和阴性具有同一形式;(2)主格形式有其特殊拼写 **quis, quid**(当然,**quid** 也是中性宾格形式)。

	单数		复数		
	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性	阴性	中性
主格	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
属格	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum

¹ 有时把完成时系统(更明确地)称为现在完成时、将来完成时和过去完成时;根据本课所讨论的现在时、将来时和过去时的助动词的用法,我们可以看到这些术语是恰当的。

与格	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
宾格	quem	quid	quos	quas	quae
夺格	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

疑问形容词

和英语疑问形容词(which, what, what kind of)一样,拉丁语疑问形容词 **quī, quae, quod** 要求对人或事物的身份做更加具体的确认。例如, **quem librum legis?** *which (or what) book are you reading?* **quae fēmina illum librum legit?** *which woman is reading that book?* 疑问形容词的形式与关系代词的形式完全相同,无论是单数还是复数。

疑问词与关系词的区分

Quis 和 **quid** 很容易看出是疑问代词,但在其他情况下,疑问代词、疑问形容词和关系代词不能通过词形,而只能通过语境和它们所起的作用来辨识。以下几点将有助于使这种区分变得简单:

关系代词通常引导一个从句,有一个先行词,而且不是在问问题(事实上,关系从句回答问题,因为它们是形容词性的,提供了关于先行词的进一步信息:例如 **liber quem legis est meus**, *the book which you are reading is mine*);

疑问代词问的是人或事物的身份,没有先行词,经常引导一个问句(将在第三十课中介绍的“间接问句”属于例外);

疑问形容词要求对人或事物的身份作更加具体的确认,位于它所询问的名词之前,并且在性、数、格上与该名词保持一致。

考察下列例句,确定句中使用的是关系代词、疑问代词还是疑问形容词:

Quis librum tibi dedit? *Who gave the book to you?*

Vir **quī** librum tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man who gave the book to you praised you.*

Quem librum tibi dedit? *Which book did he give you?*

Cuius librum Cicerō tibi dedit? *Whose book did Cicero give to you?*

Cuius librī fuit Cicerō auctor? *Of which book was Cicero the author?*

Vir **cuius** librum Cicerō tibi dedit tē laudāvit, *the man whose book Cicero gave to you praised you.*

Cui amīcō librum dedistī? *To which friend did you give the book?*

Cui librum Cicerō dedit? *To whom did Cicero give the book?*

Vir **cui** Cicerō librum dedit tē laudāvit, *the man to whom Cicero gave the book praised you.*

Quid dedit? *What did he give?*

Quod praemium dedit? *What reward did he give? (praemium, -ī.)*

Praemium **quod** dedit erat magnum, *the reward which he gave was large.*

Ā quō praemium datum est? *By whom was the reward given?*

Vir **ā quō** praemium datum est tē laudāvit, *the man by whom the reward was given praised you.*

Quō praemiō ille mōtus est? *By which reward was that man motivated?*

词汇表

argūmentum, -ī, n., *proof, evidence, argument* (argumentation, argumentative)

auctor, auctōris, m., *increaser; author, originator* (authority, authorize)

beneficium, -ī, n., *benefit, kindness; favor* (benefice, beneficence, beneficial, beneficiary; cp. **faciō**)

famīlia, -ae, f., *household, family* (familial, familiar, familiarity, familiarize)

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*

iūdex, iūdicis, m., *judge, juror* (judge, judgment; cp. **iūdicium**, below, **iūs, iniūria**, Ch. 39, **iūstus**, Ch. 40)

iūdicium, -ī, n., *judgment, decision, opinion; trial* (adjudge, adjudicate, judicial, judicious, injudicious, misjudge, prejudge, prejudice)

scelus, sceleris, n., *evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness*

quis? quid?, interrog. pron., *who? whose? whom? what? which?* (quiddity, quidnunc, quip)

quī? quae? quod? interrog. adj., *what? which? what kind of?* (quo jure)

certus, -a, -um, *definite, sure, certain, reliable* (ascertain, certify, certificate)

gravis, grāve, *heavy, weighty; serious, important; severe, grievous* (aggravate, grief, grievance, grieve, grave, gravity)

immortālis, immortalē, *not subject to death, immortal* (cp. **mors**)

at, conj. *but; but, mind you; but, you say*; a more emotional adversative than **sed**

nisi, conj., *if . . . not, unless; except* (nisi prius)

contrā, prep. + acc., *against* (contra- in compounds such as contradict, contrast, contravene, contrapuntal; contrary, counter, encounter, country, pro and con)

iam, adv., *now, already, soon*

dēlectō (1), *to delight, charm, please* (delectable, delectation; cp. **dēlectātiō**, Ch. 27)

liberō (1), *to free, liberate* (liberate, liberation, liberal, deliver; cp. **liber**,

libertās)

pārō (1), *to prepare, provide; get, obtain* (apparatus, compare, parachute, parapet, parasol, pare, parry, repair, reparation, separate, several)

练习与复习

1. Quis libertātem eōrum eō tempore dēlēre coepit?
2. Cuius libertās ab istō auctōre deinde dēlēta est?
3. Quōs librōs bonōs poēta caecus herī recitāvit?
4. Fēminae librōs difficilēs crās legent quōs mīsistī.
5. Omnia flūmina in mare fluunt et cum eō miscentur.
6. Itaque id genus lūdōrum levium, quod ā multīs familiīs laudābātur, nōs ipsī numquam cupimus.
7. Puerī et puellae propter facta bona ā mātribus patribusque laudātae sunt.
8. Cūr istī vērītātem timēbant, quā multī adiūtī erant?
9. Hostis trāns ingēns flūmen in Graeciā deinde nāvigāvit.
10. Quī vir fortis clārusque, dē quō lēgistī, aetātem brevem mortemque celerem exspectābat?
11. Quae studia gravia tē semper dēlectant, aut quae nunc dēsīderās?
12. Who saw the six men who had prepared this?
13. What was neglected by the second student yesterday?
14. We were helped by the knowledge which had been neglected by him.
15. Whose plans did the old men of all cities fear? Which plans did they esteem?

古代名言

1. Quae est nātūra animī? Est mortālis. (Lucretius.)
2. Illa argūmenta vīsa sunt et gravia et certa. (Cicero.)
3. Quid nōs facere contrā istōs et scelera eōrum dēbēmus? (Cicero.)
4. Quid ego ēgī? In quod perīculum iactus sum? (Terence.)
5. Ō dī immortālēs! In quā urbe vīvimus? Quam cīvitātem habēmus? Quae scelera vidēmus? (Cicero.)
6. Quī sunt bonī cīvēs nisi eī quī beneficia patriae memoriā tenent? (Cicero.)
7. Alia, quae pecūniā parantur, ab eō stultō parāta sunt; at mōrēs eius vērōs amīcōs parāre nōn potuerunt. (Cicero.)

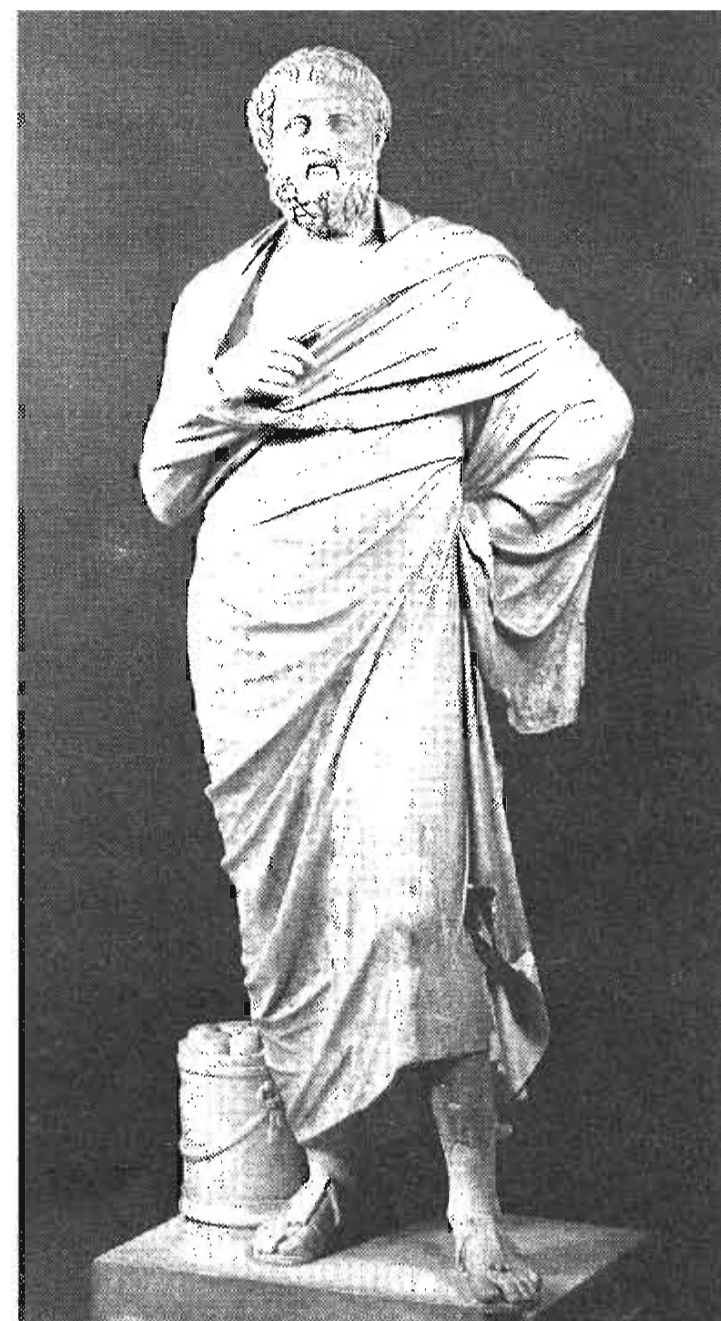
THE AGED PLAYWRIGHT SOPHOCLES HOLDS HIS OWN

Quam multa senēs in mentibus tenent! Sī studium grave et labor et probitās in senectūte remanent, saepe manent etiam memoria, scientia, sapientiaque.

Sophoclēs, scrīptor ille Graecus, ad summam senectūtem tragoediās fēcit; sed propter hoc studium familiam neglegere vidēbātur et ā filiīs in iūdi-

cium vocātus est. Tum auctor eam tragoediam quam sēcum habuit et quam proximē scripserat, “Oedipum Colōnēum,” iūdicibus recitāvit. Ubi haec tragoedia recitāta est, senex sententiīs iūdicum est līberātus.

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte*, 7.22.—**summam**, *extreme*.—**tragoedia**, **-ae**; the diphthong **oe** has become **e** in the English word.—**proximē**, *adv.*, *shortly before*.—“Oedipus at Colonus.”)



Sophocles
Roman copy, 4th century B. C.
Museo Gregoriano Profano
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

CATULLUS BIDS A BITTER FAREWELL TO LESBIA

Valē, puella—iam Catullus obdūrat.

...

- 15 Scelestā, vae tē! Quae tibī manet vīta?
Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
Quem bāsiābis? Cui labella mordēbis?
At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

(*Catullus 8.12, 15–19; meter: choliambic. See L.A. 1, below (and cp. the adaptation of this passage in Ch. 2). **obdūrāre**, *to be hard*.—**scelestus**, **-a, -um**, *wicked, accursed*.—**vae tē**, *woe to you*.—**Quae**, with **vīta**.—**adībit**, *will visit*.—**dīcēris**, *will you be said*.—**bāsiāre**, *to kiss*.—**cui**, here = **cuius**.—**labellum, -ī**, *lip*.—**mordēre**, *to bite*.—**dēstinātus, -a, -um**, *resolved, firm*.)

MESSAGE FROM A BOOKCASE

Sēlectōs nisi dās mihī libellōs,

admittam tineās trucēsque blattās!

(*Martial 14.37; meter: hendecasyllabic.—**sēlectus**, -a, -um, *select, carefully chosen*.—**tinea**, -ae, *maggot, bookworm*.—**trux**, gen. **trucis**, *fierce, savage*.—**blatta**, -ae, *cockroach*.)

词源点滴

In the readings

“Catullus”: obdurate, mordant, mordent.—destine, destination, destiny.
“Sophocles”: sum, summary, consummate—proximate, approximate. “Message”: truculent.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! —**quid agitis?** 从第二课开始,我们就经常见到这个包含 **quid** 的习惯用语(是 *how are you doing?* 而不是 *what are you doing?*)。根据第十五课中对整体属格的讨论,你是否想起了 **quid novī**, *what's new?* 在开始学习拉丁语之前,你也许见过习语 **quid prō quō**, *one thing in return for another* (=“tit for tat”[以牙还牙]——**quid** 往往对应于不确定的 *something*), 甚至可能碰到过 **quidnunc**, 即“爱探听消息的人”(字面意思是 *what-now?!*)。这个疑问形容词也进入了英语:**quō jūre** (= 古典拉丁语的 **iūre**), *by what (legal) right*, **quō animō**, *with what intention* 以及 **quō modō**, *in what manner*。

我们在第十五课中学过 **iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactum**, 你现在能够看出恺撒的名言 **alea iacta est**, *the die has been cast* 中的完成时被动态形式了。这是公元前49年, 恺撒在越过北意大利的卢比孔河与庞培交战时所说的话。 **Discipulī discipulaeque, valēte!**

第二十课

第四变格法;地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格

第四变格法

第四变格法的问题没有第三变格法多,名词数量也较少。其中大多数为阳性,单数主格以**-us**结尾。但也包括一些以**-us**结尾的阴性名词(本书中出现的有 **manus**, *hand* 和 **domus**, *house*),以及少数几个单数主格以**-ū**结尾的中性名词。

第四变格法名词的变格也是给词根加上下列新词尾。请注意,除了复数与格和复数夺格,特征元音 **u** 出现在所有词尾中(即使在复数与格和复数夺格的情况下,也有几个名词的词尾是**-ubus**而不是**-ibus**)。在所有以**-us**结尾的形式中,只有阳性和阴性的单数主格是短音**-u-**。

	frūctus, -ūs, m. <i>fruit</i>	cornū, -ūs, n. <i>horn</i>	词尾 阳性和阴性	中性
主格	frūctus	córnu	-us	-ū
属格	frūctūs	córnu	-ūs	-ūs
与格	frūctuī	córnu	-uī	-ū
宾格	frūctum	córnu	-um	-ū
夺格	frūctū	córnu	-ū	-ū
主格	frūctūs	córnu	-ūs	-ua
属格	frūctuum	córnuum	-uum	-uum
与格	frūctibus	córnuibus	-ibus	-ibus
宾格	frūctūs	córnu	-ūs	-ua
夺格	frūctibus	córnuibus	-ibus	-ibus

我们还记得,在第二、第三变格法中,也有以**-us**结尾的名词,例如 **amīcus** 和 **corpus**。决定名词变格的是属格词尾,而不是主格词尾,所以对于碰到的每一

一个新名词,都必须记住它的完整词条。再有,虽然名词与修饰它的形容词应当保持性、数、格的一致,但它们并不必然有相同的词尾,例如:**fructus dulcis, fructus dulcis, etc., sweet fruit; manus mea, manūs meae, etc., my hand; cornū longum, cornūs longī, etc., a long horn; etc.**

地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格

地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格是两种紧密相关的常见结构(现在请把它们加入你的夺格用法表中)。其主要区别是,地点夺格(从何处)总是涉及从一处主动运动到另一处的动作,而且夺格几乎总是由介词 **ab, dē** 或 **ex** (*away from, down from, out of*)来支配:

Graecī ā patriā suā ad Italiam navigāvērunt, *the Greeks sailed from their own country to Italy.*

Flūmen dē montibus in mare flūxit, *the river flowed down from the mountains into the sea.*

Multī ex agrīs in urbem venient, *many will come from the country into the city.*

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe mīsīt, *Cicero sent the enemy away from the city.*

而顾名思义,分离夺格仅指某人或某物与别的人或事物相分离,而没有从一处主动运动到另一处的动作发生;介词有时并不出现,特别是在动词有“释放”、“缺乏”、“剥夺”等含义时,这时常常使用分离夺格:

Cicerō hostēs ab urbe prohibuit, *Cicero kept the enemy away from the city.*(与上面的类似例子比较)

Eōs timōre liberāvit, *he freed them from fear.*

Agricolae pecūniā saepe carēbant, *the farmers often lacked money.*

词汇表

coniūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl., *conspirators* (conjure, conjurer; cp. **coniūrātiō**, *conspiracy, conjuration*)

córñū, cónūs, n., *horn* (corn—not the grain, but a thick growth of skin; cornea, corner, cornet, cornucopia, unicorn)

frūctus, fructūs, m., *fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment* (fructify, fructose, frugal)

génū, gēnūs, n., *knee* (genuflect, genuflection; *knee* and **genū** are cognates)

mánus, mánūs, f., *hand; handwriting; band* (manual, manufacture, manumit, manuscript, emancipate, manacle, manage, manicle, maneuver)

métus, -ūs (= **métūs**; subsequent 4th decl. nouns will be abbreviated in

this way), m., *fear, dread, anxiety* (meticulous; cp. **metuō**, Ch. 38)
mōns, mōntis, m., *mountain* (mount, mountainous, Montana, amount, catamount, paramount, surmount, tantamount)
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate* (senatorial; cp. **senex**)
sēnsus, -ūs, m., *feeling, sense* (sensation, sensory, sensual, sensuous, senseless, insensate, sensible, sensitive; cp. **sentiō**)
sérvitūs, servitūtis, f., *servitude, slavery* (cp. **servō**)
spīritus, -ūs, m., *breath, breathing; spirit, soul* (spiritual, spiritous, conspire, inspire, expire, respiratory, transpire; cp. **spīrāre, to breathe**)
vērsus, -ūs, m., *line of verse* (versify, versification; cp. **vertō**, Ch. 23)
commūnis, commūne, *common, general, of/for the community* (communal, commune, communicate, communicable, communion, communism, community, excommunicate)
dēxter, dēxtra, dēxtrum, *right, right-hand* (dexterity, dextrous, ambidextrous)
sinīster, sinīstra, sinīstrum, *left, left-hand; harmful, ill-omened* (sinister, sinistral, sinistrodextral, sinistrorse)
cāreō, carēre, cāruī, caritūrum + abl. of separation, *to be without, be deprived of, want, lack; be free from* (caret)
dēfēndō, -fēdere, -fēndī, -fēnsūm, *to ward off; defend, protect* (defendant, defense, defensible, defensive, fence, fencing, fend, fender, offend)
discēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssūm, *to go away, depart* (cp. **cēdō**, Ch. 28)
ōdī, ōdīsse, ōsūrum (a so-called “defective” verb, having only perf. system forms and a fut. act. participle), *to hate* (odious; cp. **odium**, Ch. 38)
prohibēō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, *to keep (back), prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit* (prohibitive, prohibition, prohibitory; cp. **habeō**)
prōnūntiō (1), *to proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce* (pronouncement, pronunciation; cp. **nūntius, messenger, message**)

练习与复习

1. Etiam senēs frūctibus sapientiae et cōnsiliīs argūmentīsque certīs saepe carent.
2. Aut ingentēs montēs aut flūmina celeria quae dē montibus fluēbant hostēs ab urbe prohibēbant.
3. Quoniam nimis fortia facta faciēbat, aetās eius erat brevis.
4. Illa medica facere poterat multa manū dextrā sed sinistrā manū pauca.
5. Vēritās nōs metū gravī iam līberābit quō diū territī sumus.
6. Quibus generibus scelerum sinistrōrum illae duae cīvītātēs dēlētāe sunt?
7. Quī mortālis sine amīcitiā et probitāte et beneficiō in aliōs potest esse beātus?
8. Pater pecūniam ex Graeciā in suam patriam movēre coeperat, nam familia discēdere cupīvit.

9. *Ā quibus studium difficilium artium eō tempore neglēctum est?*
10. *Ubi versūs illīus auctōris clārī lēctī sunt, audītōrēs delectātī sunt.*
11. *Sē cito iēcērunt ad genua iūdicum, quī autem nūllam clēmēntiam dēmōnstrāvērunt.*
12. *We cannot have the fruits of peace, unless we ourselves free our families from heavy dread.*
13. *Those bands of unfortunate men and women will come to us from other countries in which they are deprived of the benefits of citizenship.*
14. *The old men lacked neither games nor serious pursuits.*
15. *Who began to perceive our common fears of serious crime?*

古代名言

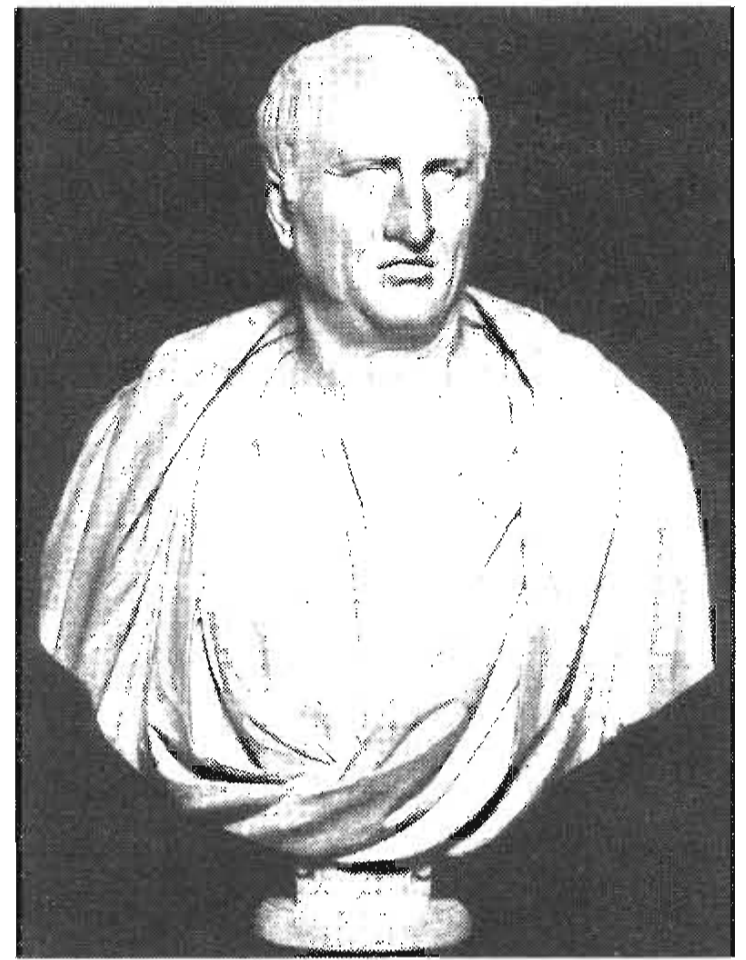
1. *Cornua cervum ā perīculīs dēfendunt. (Martial.—cervus, -ī, stag.)*
2. *Oedipūs duōbus oculīs sē prīvāvit. (Cicero.—prīvāre, to deprive.)*
3. *Themistoclēs bellō Persicō Graeciam servitūte līberāvit. (Cicero.—Persicus, -a, -um, Persian.)*
4. *Dēmōsthenēs multōs versūs ūnō spīritū prōnūntiābat. (Cicero.)*
5. *Persicōs apparātūs ōdī. (Horace.—apparātus, -ūs, equipment, display.)*
6. *Iste commūnī sēnsū caret. (Horace.)*
7. *Senectūs nōs prīvat omnibus voluptātibus neque longē abest ā morte. (Cicero.—longē, adv. of longus.—absum, to be away.)*
8. *Nūllus accūsātor caret culpā; omnēs peccāvimus. (Seneca.—accūsātor, -tōris.—peccāre, to sin.)*
9. *Nūlla pars vītae vacāre officiō potest. (Cicero.—vacāre, to be free from.)*
10. *Prīma virtūs est vitiō carēre. (Quintilian.)*
11. *Vir scelere vacuus nōn eget iaculīs neque arcū. (Horace.—vacuus, -a, -um, free from.—egēre, to need.—iaculum, -ī, javelin.—arcus, -ūs, bow.)*
12. *Magnī tumultūs urbem eō tempore miscēbant. (Cicero.—tumultus, -ūs.)*
13. *Litterae senātuī populōque Allobrogum manibus coniūrātōrum ipsōrum erant scrīptae. (Cicero.—Allobrogēs, -gum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe whom the Catilinarian conspirators tried to arouse against Rome.)*

CICERO URGES CATILINE'S DEPARTURE FROM ROME

Habēmus senātūs cōnsultum contrā tē, Catilīna, vehemēns et grave; ācre iūdicium habēmus, et vīrēs et cōnsilium cīvitās nostra habet. Quid est, Catilīna? Cūr remanēs? Ō dī immortalēs! Discēde nunc ex hāc urbe cum malā manū scelerātōrum; magnō metū mē līberābis, sī omnēs istōs coniūrātōs tēcum ēdūcēs. Nisi nunc discēdēs, tē cito ēiciēmus. Nihil in cīvitāte nostrā tē dēlectāre potest. Age, age! Deinde curre ad Manlium, istum amīcum ma-

lum; tē diū dēsīderāvit. Incipe nunc; gere bellum in cīvitatē! Brevī tempore tē omnēsque tuōs, hostēs patriae, vincēmus, et omnēs vōs poenās gravēs semper dabit.

(Cicero, *In Catilinam* 1.1.3ff; see the readings in Chs. 11 and 14 above, and “Evidence and Confession,” Ch. 30.—cōnsultum, -ī, decree.—vehemēns, gen. vehementis.—scelerātus, -a, -um, adj. from scelus.—Manlius was one of Catiline’s principal fellow conspirators.)



Cicero
Museo Capitolino, Rome, Italy

词源点滴

罗马元老院(*senate*)最初是由一些长者组成的委员会,因此便与 **senex** 有了联系。

如果我们知道“caret”(脱字符)一词的来源,就不大可能将它与“carat”(克拉)相混淆。

In the readings

5. peach (Persian apple). 7. absent. 9. vacant, vacuous, vacate, vacation, vacuity, evacuate. 11. arc, arcade. 12. tumult, tumultuous. “Cicero”: consult, consultation.—vehement, vehemence.)

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 本课的词汇表中有一些与“手”有关的词项:你能解释“manumit”, “manuscript”和“manufacture”的词源吗?“Manual”由拉丁语派生而来,等价于德语词“Handbuch”。有一句古老的罗马谚语说,**manus manum lavat** (**lavāre**, to bathe,由此衍生出“lavatory”), *one hand washes the other*。对右手的偏好可见于“dexterity”和“sinister”(源于古代的一种迷信,认为坏的征兆会显示于人的左手)

甚至“ambidextrous”(源于 **ambo**, *both, two*: 有“两只右手”要比有两只左手更好?)的词源。

那么,手指的情况又如何呢?“手指”所对应的拉丁词是 **digitus**, *-ī*, 由此衍生出了“digit”, “digital”, “prestidigitation”(戏法,指魔术师手指敏捷)甚至“digitalis”(毛地黄),后者是一种治疗心脏病的药物,取自一种手指形花瓣的植物。下面这些补充在数数 (**numerāre**) 时用得着:**prīmus digitus, secundus digitus, tertius . . . etc.**。(Potestisne numerāre omnēs digitōs vestrōs, discipulī et discipulae? 如果不能,请复习第十五课中的 **numeri!**) 罗马人给每根手指都起了名字:大拇指是 **pollex**, 食指是 **index** (源于 **indicāre**, *to point*), 中指是 **medius** (*middle*) 或 **īnfāmis** (*infamous, evil*——并不是所有肢体语言都是新的!), 无名指是 **quartus** 或 **ānulārius** (无名指上经常戴有 **ānulī**, *rings*: 参见第三十一课中的“Ringo”), 小拇指是 **minimus** (*the smallest*) 或 **auriculārius** (**parvus digitus**, 我们可以很方便地用它来清洁 **aurēs!**)。Valēte!

第二十一课

第三和第四变位法动词：现在时系统的被动态

我们在第十八课学习了第一、第二变位法动词的现在时系统被动态的构成方法，即用被动态词尾替代主动态词尾。这一规则一般来说也适用于第三、第四变位法动词，唯一的例外是第三变位法动词的第二人称单数现在时（在下列词形变化表中作了突出标注）和现在时不定式。

现在时直陈式被动态

1. ágor	aúdior	cápor
2. ágeris	audírís	cáperís
3. ágitur	audítur	cápitur
1. ágimur	audímur	cápmur
2. agíminī	audíminī	capíminī
3. agúntur	audiúntur	capiúntur

将来时直陈式被动态

1. ágar	aúdiar	cápiar
2. agéris	audiéris	capiéris
3. agétur	audiétur	capiétur
1. agémur	audiémur	capíemur
2. agéminī	audiéminī	capíeminī
3. agéntur	audiéntur	capíéntur

未完成时直陈式被动态

1. agébar	audiébar	capíebar
-----------	----------	----------

2. agēbāris	audiēbāris	capiēbāris
3. agēbātur	audiēbātur	capiēbātur
1. agēbāmur	audiēbāmur	capiēbāmi
2. agēbāminī	audiēbāminī	capiēbāmi
3. agēbāntur	audiēbāntur	capiēbānti

注意不要把第三变位法动词第二人称单数的现在时和将来时形式相混淆, 它们的区别仅仅在于元音的长短(**ageris** vs. **agēris**)。无论是现在时系统的主动态还是被动态, **capiō** 和 **audiō** 的形式都相同, 只不过其现在时形式分别包含 **-i-** 和 **-ī-**, 第二人称单数现在时被动态分别为 **caperis** 和 **audīris**。第三、第四变位法动词完成时系统的被动态则遵循第十九课中介绍的普遍模式。

现在时不定式被动态

和第一、第二变位法动词一样, 第四变位法动词也是把词尾的 **-e** 变成 **-ī** 而构成现在时不定式被动态; 而包括 **-iō** 动词在内的第三变位法动词, 则是把整个 **-ere** 变成 **-ī**。

audīre, <i>to hear</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i> (cp. laudārī, monērī)
āgere, <i>to lead</i>	āgī, <i>to be led</i>
cāpere, <i>to take</i>	cāpī, <i>to be taken</i>

动词变位缩写式

为了检验对拉丁语动词进行变位的能力, 我们可能会被要求就特定的人称和数写出动词的“动词变位缩写式”(synopsis), 而不是列出动词的所有形式。下面是例词 **agō** 的第三人称单数直陈式的动词变位缩写式:

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	āgit	āget	agēbat	ēgit	ēgerit	ēgerat
被动态	āgitur	agētur	agēbātur	āctus est	āctus erit	āctus erat

词汇表

- cāsa**, **-ae**, f., *house, cottage, hut* (casino)
caūsa, **-ae**, f., *cause, reason; case, situation*; **caūsā**, abl. with a preceding gen., *for the sake of, on account of* (accuse, because, excuse)
fenēstra, **-ae**, f., *window* (fenestra, fenestrated, fenestration, fenestella, defenestration)
fīnis, **fīnis**, m., *end, limit, boundary; purpose*; **fīnēs**, **-ium**, *boundaries, territory* (affinity, confine, define, final, finale, finance, fine, finesse, finial, finicky, finish, finite, infinite, paraffin, refine)

gēns, gēntis, f., *clan, race, nation, people* (gentile, gentle, genteel, gentry; cp. **genus, ingenium**, Ch. 29)
múndus, -ī, m., *world, universe* (mundane, demimonde)
nāvis, nāvis, f., *ship, boat* (naval, navy, navigable, navigate, nave; cp. **nāvigāre, nauta**)
sálūs, salútis, f., *health, safety; greeting* (salubrious, salutary, salutation, salute, salutorian, salutatory; cp. **salveō, salvus**)
Tróia, -ae, f., *Troy*
vīcīnus, -ī, m., and **vīcīna, -ae**, f., *neighbor* (vicinity)
vúlgus, -ī, n. (sometimes m.), *the common people, mob, rabble* (vulgar, vulgarity, vulgarize, vulgate, divulge)
ásper, áspera, ásperum, *rough, harsh* (asperity, exasperate, exasperation)
átque or **ac** (only before consonants), conj., *and, and also, and even*
íterum, adv., *again, a second time* (iterate, iterative, reiterate, reiteration)
contíneō, -tinēre, -tínui, -téntum, *to hold together, contain, keep, enclose, restrain* (content, discontent, malcontent, continual, continuous, incontinent, countenance; cp. **teneō**)
iúbeō, iubēre, iússī, iússum, *to bid, order, command* (jussive)
labóro (1), *to labor; be in distress* (laboratory, laborer, belabor; cp. **labor**)
rápiō, rápere, rápuī, ráptum, *to seize, snatch, carry away* (rapacious, rapid, rapine, rapture, ravage, ravine, ravish; cp. **ēripiō**, Ch. 22)
relínquō, -línquere, -líquī, -lícitum, *to leave behind, leave, abandon, desert* (relinquish, reliquary, relict, relic, delinquent, dereliction)
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scítum, *to know* (science, scientific, conscience, conscious, prescience, scilicet; cp. **scientia, nesciō**, Ch. 25)
tángō, tángere, tétigī, táctum, *to touch* (tangent, tangible, tact, tactile, contact, contagious, contiguous, contingent, integer, taste, tax)

练习与复习

1. Laus autem nimis saepe est neque certa neque magna.
2. Senēs in gente nostrā ab filiīs numquam neglegēbantur.
3. Quis tum iussus erat Graeciam metū liberāre, familiās dēfendere, atque hostēs ā patriā prohibēre?
4. Salūtis commūnis causā eōs coniūrātōs ex urbe discēdere ac trāns flūmen ad montēs dūcī iussit.
5. Aliī auctōrēs coepērunt spīritūs nostrōs contrā iūdicium atque argūmenta senātūs iterum movēre, quod omnēs metū novō territī erant.
6. Omnia genera servitūtis nōbīs videntur aspera.
7. Rapiēturne igitur Cicerō ex manibus istōrum?
8. Quī finis metūs atque servitūtis in eā cīvitate nunc potest vidērī?
9. At senectūtis bonae causā iam bene vīvere dēbēmus.
10. In familiā eōrum erant duae filiae atque quattuor filiī.
11. Casa vīcīnī nostrī habuit paucās fenestrās per quās vidēre potuit.
12. Quandō cornū audīvit, senex in genua cecidit et deīs immortālibus grātiās prōnūntiābat.

13. Propter beneficia et sēnsū commūnem tyrannī, paucī eum odērunt.
14. The truth will not be found without great labor.
15. Many nations which lack true peace are being destroyed by wars.
16. Their fears can now be conquered because our deeds are understood by all.
17. Unless serious pursuits delight us, they are often neglected for the sake of money or praise.

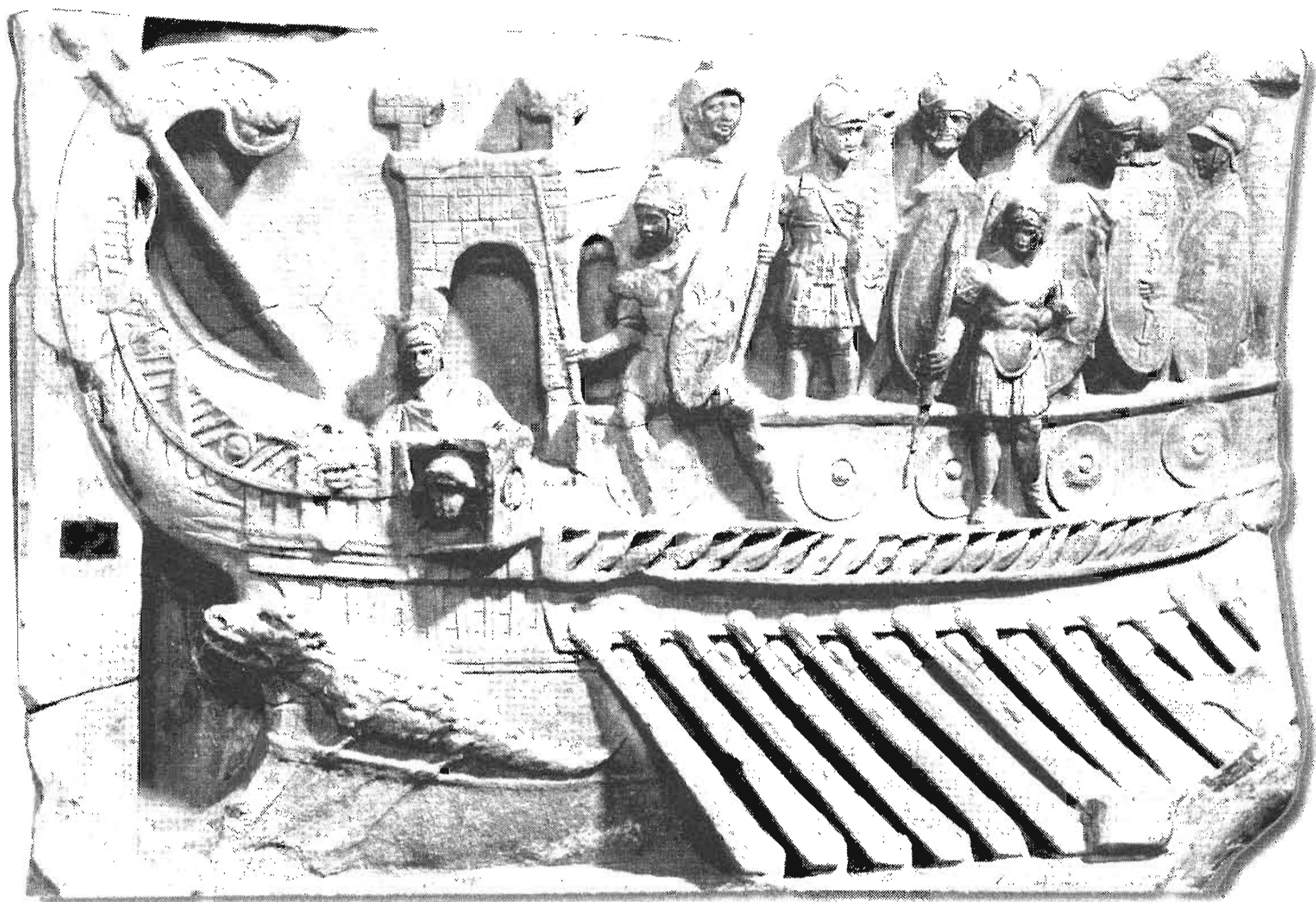
古代名言

1. Numquam perīculum sine perīculō vincitur. (Publīlius Syrus.)
2. Novius est vīcīnus meus et manū dextrā tangī dē fenestrīs meīs potest. (Martial.—**Novius**, a personal name.)
3. Nōne iūdicēs iubēbunt hunc in vincula dūcī et ad mortem rapī? (Cicero.—**nōne** introduces a question which anticipates the answer “yes”; see Ch. 40.—**vinculum**, -ī, *chain*.)
4. Altera aetās bellīs cīvīlibus teritur et Rōma ipsa suīs vīribus dēlētur. (Horace.—**cīvīlis**, -e.—**terō**, -ere, **trīvī**, **trītum**, *to wear out*.)
5. At amīcitiā nūllō locō exclūdatur; numquam est intempestīva aut sinistra; multa beneficia continet. (Cicero.—**exclūdō**, -ere, *to shut out*.—**intempestīvus**, -a, -um, *untimely*.)
6. Futūra scīrī nōn possunt. (Cicero.—**futūrus**, -a, -um.)
7. Prīncipiō ipse mundus deōrum hominumque causā factus est, et quae in eō sunt, ea parāta sunt ad frūctum hominum. (Cicero.)
8. Quam cōpiōsē ā Xenophonte agrīcultūra laudātur in eō librō quī “Oeconomicus” īnscrībatur. (Cicero.—**cōpiōsē**, adv., cp. **cōpia**.—**Xenophōn**, -phontis.—**agrīcultūra**, -ae.—**īnscrībō**, -ere, *to entitle*.)
9. Vulgus vult dēcipī. (*Phaedrus.—**vult**, *want* (irreg. form).—**dēcipiō**, -ere, *to deceive*.)
10. Ubi scientia ac sapientia inveniuntur? (Job.)
11. Vēritās nimis saepe labōrat; exstinguitur numquam. (Livy.—**exstinguō**, -ere.)

VIRGIL'S MESSIANIC ECLOGUE

Venit iam magna aetās nova; dē caelō mittitur puer, quī vītam deōrum habēbit deōsque vidēbit et ipse vidēbitur ab illīs. Hic puer reget mundum cui virtūtēs patris pācem dedērunt. Pauca mala, autem, remanēbunt, quae hominēs iubēbunt labōrāre atque bellum asperum gerere. Erunt etiam altera bella atque iterum ad Trōiam magnus mittētur Achillēs. Tum, puer, ubi iam longa aetās tē virum fēcerit, erunt nūllī labōrēs, nūlla bella; nautae ex navibus discēdent, agricolae quoque iam agrōs relinquent, terra ipsa omnibus hominibus omnia parābit. Currite, aetātēs; incipe, parve puer, scīre mātrem, et erit satis spīritūs mihi tua dīcere facta.

(Virgil, *Eclogae* 4; written ca. 40 B.C., the poem from which this reading is adapted was taken by many early Christians as a prophecy of the birth of Christ.—**altera bella**, *the same wars over again*.—**scīre mātrem**, i.e., to be born.)



*Relief of warship, temple of Fortuna Primigenia, Praeneste
1st century A.D., Museo Pio Clementino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State*

词源点滴

Exempli causā 是西塞罗用过的一个短语，对应于后来所说的 **exempli grātiā**，由此产生了我们的缩写词 **e.g.**。

以下是一些源于本课词汇的罗曼语派生词：

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
causa	cosa	cosa	chose
fīnis	fine	fin	fin
gēns	gente	gente	gent; gens (pl.)
continēre	continere	contener	contenir
mundus	mondo	mondo	monde

In the readings

3. vinculum (在数学中). 4. civil; cp. **cīvis, cīvītās**.—trite, contrite, contrition, attrition, detriment. 5. **ex + claudō** (—ere, **clausī, clausum, to shut, close**): con-clude, include, preclude, seclude, recluse, clause, close, closet, cloister.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, discipulae atque discipulī! Quid novī? 我们再看一些与本课词汇表中 **verba nova** 有关的著名拉丁语短语和座右铭。第一个,《教父》迷们听好了:**cosa nostra**¹, 源于 **causa nostra**。(嘘!) **Vestra causa tōta nostra est** 是美国古典学联盟的座右铭,这是一个为拉丁语、希腊语和古典人文学科的教师们设立的全国性专业组织。佐治亚大学的校训是:**et docēre et rērum exquīrere causās**, *both to teach and to seek out the causes of things* (即开展研究——关于 **rērum**, 参见下一课)。下面还有一些:**finis coronat opus**, *the end crowns the work*; **gēns togāta**, *the toga-clad nation* (维吉尔用这个短语来指罗马,其中 **toga** 是男性在正式场合穿的一种服装); **tangere ulcus**, *to touch a sore spot* (字面意思是 *ulcer*); **sic trānsit glōria mundī**, *so passes the glory of the world* (这是 15 世纪修士 Thomas à Kempis 对世间万物转瞬即逝的感叹——有一个不知名的喜剧演员给出了另一种翻译,即“Gloria always gets sick on the subway at the beginning of the week”!!!); 缩写词 **sc.** 意为 *supply* (即在文本中省略了但很容易理解的某种东西), 源于 **scīlicet**, 即 **scīre licet** 的简写,字面意思是 *it is permitted for you to understand*。 **Hic est finis: valēte!**

¹ “Cosa Nostra”是黑手党暗语,1962 年被首次披露,意为“我们的事业”,该词后来成为黑手党的代名词。——译者注

第二十二课

第五变格法;地点夺格(在何处);夺格用法总结

第五变格法

本课介绍拉丁语名词的最后一种变格法——第五变格法。其特征元音为 *-ē-*, 单数属格和与格的词尾为 *-ēī* 或 *-eī* (属格/与格的 *-e-* 如果在元音之后就是长音, 在辅音之后就是短音; 比较下面的 *diēī* 和 *reī*); 为避免混淆, 在本课词汇表中, 第五变格法名词(就像第三变格法名词那样)都给出了完整的属格形式。第五变格法名词均为阴性, 只有 *diēs* (*day*) 及其复合词 *merīdiēs* (*midday*) 是阳性。

变格仍然遵循通常模式, 去掉属格词尾找到词根, 再加上新的词尾。

	<i>rēs, reī, f. thing</i>	<i>diēs, diēī, m. day</i>	词尾
主格	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
属格	<i>reī</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>-eī, -ēī</i>
与格	<i>reī</i>	<i>diēī</i>	<i>-eī, -ēī</i>
宾格	<i>rem</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>-em</i>
夺格	<i>rē</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>-ē</i>
主格	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
属格	<i>rērum</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>-ērum</i>
与格	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>
宾格	<i>rēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>-ēs</i>
夺格	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>-ēbus</i>

评论

复数属格和复数与格相同(第一变格法也是如此), 单数主格、复数主格和复数宾格(当然还有呼格)相同, 复数与格和复数夺格相同(所有变格法都是如

此)。词序、语境、主语和动词的一致等信息将有助于我们对它们加以辨别。

地点夺格(在何处);夺格用法总结

到目前为止,我们已经学过的夺格用法有:手段夺格、方式夺格、伴随夺格(第十四课)、带有基数词的夺格、时间夺格(第十五课)、施事夺格(第十八课)、地点夺格(从何处)和分离夺格(第二十课)。

事实上,我们已经多次见过地点夺格(在何处),大都由介词 **in**, *in/on* 或 **sub**, *under* 加夺格名词构成,用以描述某人或某物位于何处,或者动作发生的地点:

In magnā casā vīvunt, they live in a large house.

Nāvis sub aquā fuit, the ship was under water.

在这些夺格用法中,有些需要介词,有些不需要,在很多情况下并无严格规定。需要特别注意的是,在方式夺格中,如果名词为形容词所修饰,那么 **cum** 经常省去;如果使用 **cum**, 那么 **cum** 通常放在形容词后面(例如 **id magnā cūrā fēcit** 和 **id magnā cum cūrā fēcit**, 二者的意思均为 *he did it with great care*)。

现在我们回顾一下已经学过的夺格用法:

一、带介词的夺格

夺格加介词:

1. **cum** 表伴随

Cum amīcō id scrīpsit, he wrote it with his friend.

2. **cum** 表方式;与下面“无介词夺格”的第2种情况相比较

Cum cūrā id scrīpsit, he wrote it with care.

Magnā cum cūrā id scrīpsit, he wrote it with great care.

3. **in** 和 **sub** 表在何处

In urbe id scrīpsit, he wrote it in the city.

4. **ab**, **dē**, **ex** 表从何处

Ex urbe id mīsit, he sent it from the city.

5. **ab**, **dē**, **ex** 表分离;与下面“无介词夺格”的第4种情况相比较

Ab urbe eōs prohibuit, he kept them from the city.

6. **ab** 表施事者

Ab amīcō id scrīptum est, it was written by his friend.

7. 某些基数词之后的 **ex** 或 **dē** 表整体(其中一部分已经被指定)

Trēs ex nāvibus discesserunt, *three of the ships departed.*

二、无介词夺格

无介词夺格表示:

1. 手段

Suā manū id scripsit, *he wrote it with his own hand.*

2. 方式(如果有形容词出现)

Magnā cūrā id scripsit, *he wrote it with great care.*

3. 何时 / 期间

Eō tempore or ūnā hōrā id scripsit, *he wrote it at that time or in one hour.*

4. 分离,特别是在动词含有“释放”、“缺乏”、“剥夺”等意思时

Metū eōs liberavit, *he freed them from fear.*

词汇表

dīēs, diēī, m., *day* (diary, dial, dismal, diurnal, journal, adjourn, journey, meridian, sojourn)

fērrum, -ī, n., *iron; sword* (ferric, ferrite, ferro-, farrier)

fidēs, fideī, f., *faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection* (confide, diffident, infidel, perfidy, fealty)

īgnis, ignis, m., *fire* (igneous, ignite, ignition)

módus, -ī, m., *measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way* (model, moderate, modern, modest, modicum, modify, mood)

rēs, réī, f., *thing, matter, business, affair* (real, realistic, realize, reality, real estate)

rēs pūblica, réī pūblīcae, f., *state, commonwealth, republic* (Republican)

spēs, spēī, f., *hope* (despair, desperate; cf. **spērō**, Ch. 25)

aéquus, -a, -um, *level, even; calm; equal, just; favorable* (equable, equanimity, equation, equator, equilateral, equilibrium, equinox, equity, equivalent, equivocal, inequity, iniquity, adequate, coequal)

fēlīx, gen. **fēlīcis**, *lucky, fortunate, happy* (felicitate, felicitation, felicitous, infelicitous, felicity, infelicity, Felix)

incértus, -a, -um (in-certus), *uncertain, unsure, doubtful* (incertitude)

Latīnus, -a, -um, *Latin* (Latinate, Latinist, Latinity, Latinize, Latino)

médius, -a, -um, *middle; used partitively, the middle of: media urbs, the middle of the city* (mediterranean, medium, median, mediate, mean, medieval, meridian, demimonde, immediate, intermediary; cp. **medio-cris**, Ch. 31)

quóndam, adv., *formerly, once* (quondam)

últrā, adv. and prep. + acc., *on the other side of, beyond* (ultra, ultra-

sonic, ultrasound, ultraviolet, outrage, outrageous)

prōtinus, adv., *immediately*

cérnō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *to distinguish, discern, perceive* (discern, discernible, discreet, discrete, discretion; cp. **dēcernō**, Ch. 36)

ērīpiō, -rīpere, -rīpuī, -réptum (ē-rapiō), *to snatch away, take away; rescue*
ínquit, defective verb, *he says or said*, placed after one or more words of a direct quotation but usually translated first

tóllō, tollere, sústulī, sublātum, *to raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy* (extol; cp. **tolerō, ferō**, Ch. 31)

练习与复习

1. Vīcīnī nostrī sē in genua prōtinus iēcērunt et omnēs deōs in mundō laudāvērunt.
2. Gentēs Graeciae ingentibus montibus et parvīs finibus continēbantur.
3. Quis iussit illam rem pūblicam servitūte asperā liberārī?
4. “Iste,” inquit, “sceleribus suīs brevī tempore tollētur.”
5. Contrā aliās manūs malōrum cīvium eaedem rēs iterum parābuntur; rem pūblicam dēfendēmus et istī cito discēdent.
6. Senectūs senēs ā mediīs rēbus saepe prohibet.
7. At rēs gravēs neque vī neque spē geruntur sed cōnsiliō.
8. Sī versūs hōrum duōrum poētārum negligētis, magnā parte Rōmānārum litterārum carēbitis.
9. Eōdem tempore nostrae spēs salūtis commūnis vestrā fidē altae sunt, spīritūs sublātī sunt, et timōrēs relictī sunt.
10. Nova genera scelerum in hāc urbe inveniuntur quod multī etiam nunc bonīs mōribus et sēnsū commūnī carent ac nātūram sinistram habent.
11. Vulgus multa ex fenestrīs casārum ēiciēbat.
12. Great fidelity can now be found in this commonwealth.
13. His new hopes had been destroyed by the common fear of uncertain things.
14. On that day the courage and the faith of the brave Roman men and women were seen by all.
15. With great hope the tyrant ordered those ships to be destroyed.
16. He could not defend himself with his left hand or his right.

古代名言

1. Dum vīta est, spēs est. (Cicero.)
2. Aequum animum in rēbus difficilibus servā. (Horace.)
3. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi plānē est nūlla rēs pūblica. (*Cicero.—**plānē**, adv., *clearly*.)
4. Fuērunt quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virī magnae virtūtis et antīquae fideī. (Cicero.)

5. Hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse volumus. (*Cicero.—**volumus**, *we wish*.)
6. Spēs coniūrātōrum mollibus sententiīs multōrum cīvium alitur. (Cicero.—**mollis**, *-e, soft, mild*.)
7. Rēs pūblica cōnsiliīs meīs eō diē ex igne atque ferrō ērepta est. (Cicero.)
8. Quod bellum ōdērunt, prō pāce cum fidē labōrābant. (Livy.)
9. Dīc mihi bonā fidē: tū eam pecūniam ex eius manū dextrā nōn ēripuistī? (Plautus.)
10. Amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (Ennius.)
11. Homērus audītōrem in mediās rēs rapit. (Horace.)
12. Fēlix est quī potest causās rērum intellegere; et fortunātus ille quī deōs antīquōs dīligit. (Virgil.)
13. Stōicus noster, “Vītium,” inquit, “nōn est in rēbus sed in animō ipsō.” (Seneca.—**Stōicus**, *-ī, a Stoic*.)
14. Et mihi rēs subiungam, nōn mē rēbus. (Horace.—**subiungō**, *-ere, to subject*.)
15. Est modus in rēbus; sunt certī finēs ultrā quōs virtūs invenīrī nōn potest. (Horace.)
16. Hoc, Fortūna, tibi vidētur aequum? (*Martial.)

A VISIT FROM THE YOUNG INTERNS

Languēbam: sed tū comitātus prōtinus ad mē
vēnistī centum, Symmache, discipulīs.
Centum mē tetigēre manūs aquilōne gelātae:
nōn habuī febrem, Symmache, nunc habeō!

(*Martial 5.9; meter: elegiac couplet.—**languēre**, *to be weak, sick*.—**comitātus**, *-a, -um, accompanied (by)*.—**Symmachus**, a Greek name, used here for a medical school professor.—**centum . . . discipulīs**, abl. of agent with **comitātus**; the preposition was often omitted in poetry.—**tetigēre** = **tetigērunt**; for this alternate ending, see Ch. 12.—**aquilō**, *-lōnis, m., the north wind*.—**gelātus**, *-a, -um, chilled*, here modifying **centum . . . manūs**; cp. Eng. gel, gelatin.—**febris**, *febris, f., fever*.)

ON AMBITION AND LITERATURE, BOTH LATIN AND GREEK

Poētae per litterās hominibus magnam perpetuamque fāmam dare possunt; multī virī, igitur, litterās dē suīs rēbus scrībī cupiunt. Trahimur omnēs studiō laudis et multī glōriā dūcuntur, quae aut in litterīs Graecīs aut Latīnīs invenīrī potest. Quī, autem, videt multum frūctum glōriae in versibus Latīnīs sed nōn in Graecīs, nimium errat, quod litterae Graecae leguntur in omnibus ferē gentibus, sed Latīnae in finibus suīs continentur.

(Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 11.26, 10.23.—**ferē**, *adv., almost*.)

词源点滴

与 **diēs** 相关的是形容词 **diurnus**, *daily*, 由此产生了意大利语和法语中的“day”: [意] **giorno**, [法] **jour, journée**; 与 [西] **día** 比较。在晚期拉丁语中有 **diurnālis**, 由此产生了 [意] **giornale**, [法] **journal**, [英] **journal**; 与 [西] **diario** 比较。英语的“dismal”源于 **diēs malus**。

下面一些词与 **fidēs** 有关: *affidavit, defy, affiancé, fiancé*。英语词“faith”源于古法语词 **feit, feid**, 后者又源于拉丁词 **fidem**。

与 **modus** 有关的词还有: *modulate, accommodate, commodious, discommode, incommode, à la mode, modus operandi*。

In the readings

6. *mollify, emollient, mollusk*. 13. 斯多亚派(Stoic)哲学之所以有此称呼,是因为其创始人芝诺(Zeno)习惯于在雅典的某个柱廊(stoa)下讲学。14. *subjunctive*.

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvete! 既然你已经碰到了 **merīdiēs**, 现在你明白了, **a.m.** 和 **p.m.** 即为 **ante merīdiem** 和 **post merīdiem**。医生开的药方要么是 **diēbus alternīs**, *every other day*, 要么是 **diēbus tertīs**, *every third day*, 还可能是 **b.i.d.** 或 **t.i.d.**, 即 **bis in diē** 或 **ter in diē** (如果你想不出来它们指什么, 请复习第十五课!)。你还可能碰到: **diem ex diē**, *day by day*; **diēs fēlix**, *a lucky day*; 法律术语 **diēs jūridicus** 和 **nōn jūridicus**, 即法院开庭或休庭的日子; 还有 **Diēs Īrae**, 这是吟咏最后审判日的中世纪圣歌, 属于安魂弥撒的一部分。想必你已经每天遵照贺拉斯的建议, **carpe diem** 了(这是一个农业隐喻, 因为 **carpō, carpere** 实际上意为“采摘”或“丰收”——所以你的每一天一旦抓住, 就将丰裕富足)。

现在你也知道短语 **amicus certus in rē incertā** 是什么意思了; 一个 **bonā fidē** 的协议只有 *with good faith* 才能达成(这是哪种夺格用法?); 如果你“真正的朋友”是你忠诚的爱犬, 你可以考虑称它为“Fido”。**Carpite omnēs diēs, discipulī discipulaeque, et valēte!**

第二十三课

分词

和英语一样,拉丁语也有一组动词性形容词,即由动词词干构成的形容词,称为“分词”。规则的拉丁语及物动词有四种分词,其中两种是主动态(现在时的和将来时的),两种是被动态(将来时的和完成时的)。其结构如下:

	主动态	被动态
现在时	现在时词干 + -ns (属格 -ntis)	————
完成时	————	分词词干 + -us, -a, -um
将来时	分词词干 + -ūrus, -ūra, -urum ¹	现在时词干 + -ndus, -nda, -ndum

知道每一种分词有什么样的词干和词尾很重要。请注意,现在时主动态分词和将来时被动态分词是由现在时词干构成的,完成时被动态分词和将来时主动态分词则是由所谓的“分词词干”(去掉完成时被动态分词的词尾而得到,完成时被动态分词一般是动词的第四个主要部分:即由 **laudātus, -a, -um** 得到 **laudāt-**)构成的。这些内容可以通过 **agō** 的分词形式来记忆,它的现在时词干与分词词干非常不同,不会引起任何混淆。此外,还可以这样来帮助记忆:现在时(**present**)分词中有 **-nt-**,将来时(**future**)主动态分词中有 **-ūr-**¹,将来时被动态分词(一般称为“gerundive”[动形词])中有 **-nd-**。

¹ 只要我们想到 *future* 源于 **futūrus, -a, -um**(*sum* 的将来时分词,也是 *sum* 唯一的分词),就很容易记住将来时主动态分词的词尾。

agō, agere, ēgi, āctum, to lead

主动态		被动态
现在时	ágēns, agéntis, leading	———
完成时	———	áctus, -a, -um, led, having been led
将来时	āctūrus, -a, -um, about to lead, going to lead	agéndus, -a, -um, (about) to be led, deserving or fit to be led

我们可以通过英语派生词来说明其中三种分词的含义：“agent”（源于 **agēns**），*a person doing something*；“act”（**áctus, -a, -um**），*something done*；“agenda”（**agendus, -a, -um**），*something to be done*。以下是三个例词的分词形式。

	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
现在时	ágēns	———	aúdiēns	———	cápiēns	———
完成时	———	áctus	———	audítus	———	cáptus
将来时	āctūrus	agéndus	audítūrus	audiéndus	captūrus	capiéndus

我们注意到，第四变位法动词和第三变位法 **-iō** 动词的现在时主动态分词（**-iēns, -ientis**）和将来时被动态分词（**-iendus, -a, -um**）中都含有 **-ie-**。还要注意，虽然拉丁语有现在时主动态分词、完成时被动态分词、将来时主动态分词和将来时被动态分词（分别对应于 *praising, having been praised, about to praise* 和 *[about] to be praised*），但却没有现在时被动态分词（*being praised*）和完成时主动态分词（*having praised*）。

分词的变格

四种分词中有三种按照 **magnus, -a, -um** 的模式来变格。只有现在时分词有第三变格法形式，它按照 **potēns** 的模式进行变格（第十六课），只不过单数夺格有时以 **-e** 结尾，有时以 **-ī** 结尾；¹ 单数主格中 **-ns** 之前的元音总是长音，而 **-nt-** 之前（根据以前学过的规则）的元音总是短音。

	阳性和阴性	中性
主格	ágēns	ágēns
属格	agéntis	agéntis
与格	agéntī	agéntī
宾格	agéntem	ágēns
夺格	agéntī, agénte	agéntī, agénte

¹ 如果是用作定语形容词，那么现在时分词的单数夺格词尾就是 **-ī**（*ā patre amanti, by the loving father*）；如果是起动词作用（比如跟宾语，*patre filium amante, with the father loving his son*）或名词作用（*ab amante, by a lover*），那么单数夺格词尾就是 **-e**。

主格	agētēs	agētia
属格	agētium	agētium
与格	agētibus	agētibus
宾格	agētēs	agētia
夺格	agētibus	agētibus

分词作为动词性形容词

“分词”(participle)源于 **participere, to share in (pars + capere)**, 反映分词兼有形容词和动词的特征。作为形容词,分词自然要在性、数、格方面与所修饰词保持一致。有时,它们也像形容词一样,并不修饰名词,而是充当名词本身: **amāns, a lover; sapiēns, a wise man, philosopher; venientēs, those coming.**

作为动词,分词有时态和语态。它们可以带直接宾语或与特殊动词连用的其他结构,也可以被副词或副词短语修饰:

Patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum cucurrērunt, *seeing their father in the house, the boy and girl ran up to him.*

应当注意,就像在英语中那样,拉丁语分词的时态并非绝对,而是相对于主要动词来说的。例如,现在时分词的动作是与主句动作同时发生的,无论主要动词是现在时、过去时还是将来时;由上例可以看出,孩子们是在过去的某个时间看到父亲,然后奔向他。完成时分词和将来时分词也是类似,如下表所示:

1. 现在时分词 = 与动词动作同时发生的动作(同时)
2. 完成时分词 = 在动词动作之前发生的动作(先于)
3. 将来时分词 = 在动词动作之后发生的动作(迟于)

Graecī nautae, videntēs Polyphēmum, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.

The Greek sailors, seeing Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecī nautae, vīsī ā Polyphēmō, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.

The Greek sailors, (having been) seen by Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

Graecī nautae, vīsūrī Polyphēmum, timent, timuērunt, timēbunt.

The Greek sailors, about to see Polyphemus, are afraid, were afraid, will be afraid.

把分词短语翻译成从句

分词短语在拉丁语中要比在英语中多得多。由于英语更喜欢使用带有规则限定动词的从句,所以要想把拉丁语翻译成合乎习惯的英语,就往往需要把分

词短语变成从句。

为此,我们需要考虑:(1) 短语动作与主句动作之间的关系,从而选出恰当的从句连词(尤其是“when”, “since”或“although”);(2) 分词时态的相对性,从而将分词转换成恰当的动词时态。

于是,前面的例子 **patrem in casā videntēs, puella et puer ad eum currērunt** 既可译为 *seeing their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him*, 也可更合乎习惯地译为 *when they saw their father in the house, the girl and boy ran up to him*。类似地, **Graecī nautae, vīsī ā Polyphēmō, timuērunt** 最好译为 *when they had been seen [在时间上先于主要动词] by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid*, 而不是直译为 *having been seen by Polyphemus, the Greek sailors were afraid*。考察下面这些例子:

Māter, filium amāns, auxilium dat, *since she loves her son [lit., loving her son], the mother gives him assistance.*

Pater, filiam vīsūrus, casam parābat, *since he was about to see his daughter, the father was preparing the house.*

Puella, in casam veniēns, gaudēbat, *when she came into the house [lit., coming into the house], the girl was happy.*

词汇表

arx, árcis, f., citadel, stronghold

dux, dúcis, m., leader, guide; commander, general (duke, ducal, ducat, duchess, duchy, doge; cp. dūcō)

équus, -ī, m., horse (equestrian, equine; cp. equa, -ae, mare)

hásta, -ae, f., spear (hastate)

ínsula, -ae, f., island (insular, insularity, insulate, isolate, isolation, peninsula)

lītus, lītoris, n., shore, coast (littoral)

mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier (military, militaristic, militate, militant, militia)

ōrátor, ōrātōris, m., orator, speaker (oratory, oratorio; cp. ōrō, Ch. 36, ōrātiō, Ch. 38)

sacérdōs, sacerdotis, m., priest (sacerdotal; cp. sacer, sacred)

áliquis, áliquid (gen. alicuíus, dat. álicui, etc.; cp. decl. of quis, quid; nom. and acc. neut. pl. are áliqua), indef. pron., someone, somebody, something

quísquis, quídquid (quis repeated; cases other than nom. rare), indef. pron., whoever, whatever

magnánimus, -a, -um, great-hearted, brave, magnanimous (magnanimity)

úmquam, adv., in questions or negative clauses, ever, at any time (cp. numquam)

ēducō (1), *to bring up, educate* (education, educator, educable; do not confuse with **ēducō**, *to lead out*)

gaúdeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *to be glad, rejoice* (gaudeamus; cp. **gaudium, -iī**, *joy*, as in **Latīna est gaudium!**)

osténdō, ostēdere, ostēndī, osténtum, *to exhibit, show, display* (ostentation, ostentatious, ostensible, ostensive; cp. **tendō**, *stretch, extend*)

pétō, pétere, petīvī, petítum, *to seek, aim at, beg, beseech* (appetite, compete, competent, impetuous, petition, petulant, repeat; cp. **perpetuus**)

prémō, prémere, préssī, préssum, *to press; press hard, pursue; -primō* in compounds as seen in **opprimō** below (compress, depress, express, impress, imprint, print, repress, reprimand, suppress)

ópprimō, -primere, -préssī, -préssum, *to suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check* (oppress, oppression, oppressive, oppressor)

vértō, vértēre, vértī, vérsūm, *to turn; change; so ávertō, turn away, avert, revertō, turn back*, etc. (adverse, advertise, avert, averse, convert, controversy, divers, diverse, divorce, invert, obverse, pervert, revert, subvert, subversive, transverse, verse, version, animadvert)

练习与复习

1. Aliquid numquam ante audītum cernō.
2. Illum ōrātōrem in mediō senātū iterum petentem finem bellōrum ac scelerum nōn adiūvistis.
3. Certī frūctūs pācis ab territō vulgō atque senātū cupiēbantur.
4. Quī vir magnanimus aliās gentēs gravī metū servitūtis liberābit?
5. Nēmō fidem neglegēns timōre umquam carēbit.
6. Illa fēmina fortūnāta haec cōnsilia contrā eōs malōs quondam aluit et salūtis commūnis causā semper labōrābat.
7. Illam gentem Latīnam oppressūrī et dīvitiās raptūrī, omnēs virōs magnae probitātis premere ac dēlēre prōtinus coepērunt.
8. Tollēturne fāma huius medicī istīs versibus novīs?
9. At vīta illīus modī aequī aliquid iūcundī atque fēlicis continet.
10. Quō diē ex igne et ferrō atque morte certā ēreptus es?
11. We gave many things to nations lacking hope.
12. Those ten men, (when) called, will come again with great eagerness.
13. Through the window they saw the second old man running out of his neighbor's house and away from the city.
14. He himself was overpowered by uncertain fear because he desired neither truth nor liberty.

古代名言

1. Vīvēs meīs praesidiīs oppressus. (Cicero.—**praesidium, -iī**, *guard*.)
2. Illī autem, tendentēs manūs dextrās, salūtem petēbant. (Livy.—**tendō, -ere**, *to stretch, extend*.)
3. Tantalus sitiēns flūmina ab ōre fugientia tangere dēsīderābat. (Hor-

- ace.—**sitire**, *to be thirsty*.)
4. Signa rērum futūrārum mundō ā dīs ostenduntur. (Cicero.)
 5. Graecia capta asperum victōrem cēpit. (Horace.—**victor**, **-tōris**, here = Rome.)
 6. Atticus Cicerōnī ex patriā fugientī multam pecūniam dedit. (Ne-
pos.—**Atticus**, a friend of Cicero.)
 7. Sī mihi eum ēducandum committēs, studia eius fōrmāre ab īfantiā
incipiam. (Quintilian.—**fōrmāre**.—**īfantiā**, **-ae**.)
 8. Saepe stilum verte, bonum libellum scrīptūrus. (Horace.—**stilum**
vertere, *to invert the stilus* = to use the eraser.)
 9. Cūra ōrātōris dictūrī eōs audītūrōs dēlectat. (Quintilian.)
 10. Mortī Sōcratis semper illacrimō, legēs Platōnem. (Cicero.—**Sōcra**
tēs, **-cratis**.—**illacrimāre**, *to weep over*.—**Platō**, **-tōnis**.)
 11. Memoria vītae bene āctae multōrumque bene factōrum iūcunda
est. (Cicero.)
 12. Quī timēns vīvet, liber nōn erit umquam. (Horace.—**quī**, as often, =
is quī.)
 13. Nōn is est miser quī iussus aliquid facit, sed is quī invītus facit. (Sen-
eca.—**invītus**, **-a**, **-um**, *unwilling*; the adj. here has adverbial force, as
it commonly does in Latin.)
 14. Verbum semel ēmissum volat irrevocābile. (Horace.—**semel**, adv.,
once.—**ē-mittere**.—**volāre**, *to fly*.—**irrevocābilis**, **-e**.)

LAOCOON SPEAKS OUT AGAINST THE TROJAN HORSE

Oppressī bellō longō et ā deīs aversī, ducēs Graecōrum, iam post decem annōs, magnum equum ligneum arte Minervae faciunt. Uterum multīs mīlītibus complent, equum in lītore relinquunt, et ultrā īnsulam proximam nāvīgant. Trōiānī nullās cōpiās aut nāvēs vident; omnis Trōia gaudet; panduntur portae. Dē equō, autem, Trōiānī sunt incertī. Aliī eum in urbem dūcī cupiunt; aliī eum Graecās īnsidiās appellant. Prīmus ibi ante omnēs, dē arce currēns, Lāocoōn, sacerdos Trōiānus, haec verba dīcit: “Ō miserī cīvēs, nōn estis sānī! Quid cōgitātis? Nōnne intellegitis Graecōs et īnsidiās eōrum? Aut inveniētis in istō equō multōs mīlītēs ācrēs, aut equus est machina bellī, facta contrā nōs, ventūra in urbem, vīsūra casās nostrās et populum. Aut aliquid latet. Equō nē crēdite, Trōiānī: quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna gerentēs!” Dīxit, et potentem hastam magnīs vīribus manūs sinistrae in uterum equī iēcit; stetit illa, tremēns.

(Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.13–52; prose adaptation.—**ligneus**, **-a**, **-um**, *wooden, of wood*.—Minerva, goddess of war and protectress of the Greeks.—**uterus**, **-ī**.—**complēre**, *to fill up, make pregnant*.—**proximus**, **-a**, **-um**, *nearby*.—**Trōiānus**, **-a**, **-um**, *Trojan*.—**pandō**, **-ere**, *to open*.—**Lāocoōn**, **-ontis**, m.—**Nōnne** introduces a question anticipating an affirmative answer, *Don't you . . . ?*—**machina**, **-ae**.—**vīsūra**, here *to spy on*.—**latēre**, *to be hidden, be concealed*.—**equō**, dat. with **crēdite** (see Ch. 35).—**nē** = **nōn**.—**Danaōs** = **Graecōs**.—**et** (with **gerentēs**) = **etiam**.—**tremō**, **-ere**, *to tremble, shake, vibrate*.—To be continued. . . .)



Trojan horse with Greek soldiers
Relief from neck of an amphora, Mykonos, 7th century B.C.
Archaeological Museum, Mykonos, Greece

词源点滴

In the readings

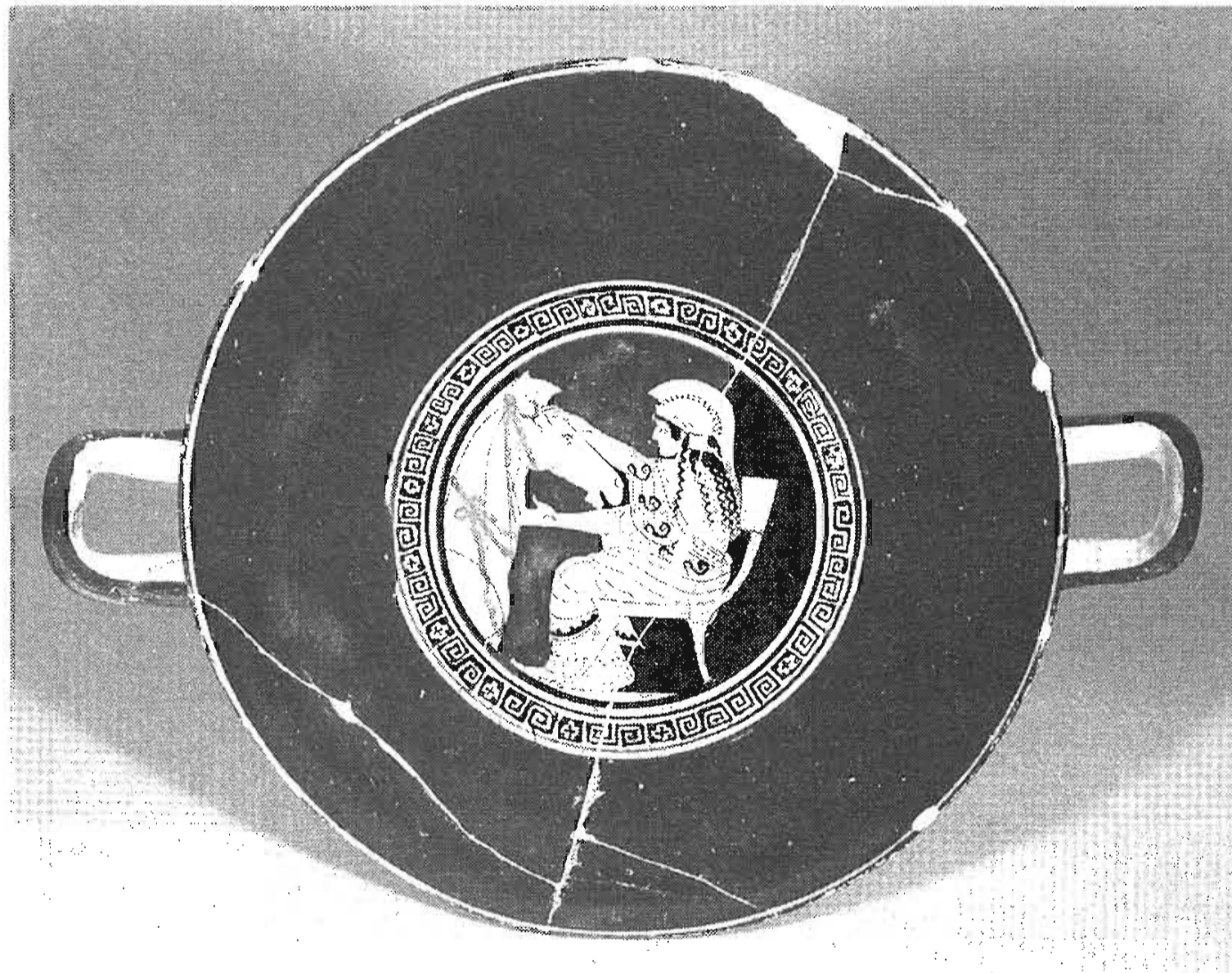
2. tend, tent, tense, attend, contend, distend, extend, extent, extensive, intend, intent, intense, portend, pretend, subtend, superintendent; 与词汇表中的 **ostendō** 比较。3. tantalize, 希腊语派生词。8. stilus, style. 10. lachrymose. 14. volatile, volley. “Laocoon”: uterine.—complete, completion, complement, complementary.—proximity, approximate.—expand, expansive.—machine, machinery, machination.—latent.—tremor, tremulous, tremulant, tremble, tremendous.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvete! 本课词汇使我们想起了古罗马的一些文学作品:西塞罗写过一本题为 **Dē Ōrātōre** 的修辞学专著;普劳图斯最著名的戏剧之一便是 **Miles Glōriōsus**,通常译为 *Braggart Soldier*;还有中世纪的学生歌曲,它的一句著名歌词是(非常适合学习拉丁语的大学生们):**gaudeāmus, igitur, iuvenēs dum sumus, so let us rejoice, while we are young!**

Verte 源于 **vertere**,意为 *turn the page*,**versō** 指一本书的左手页(即刚刚翻页之后看到的那一页);印刷商称右手页为 **rectō**。

在阅读材料中,“特洛伊木马”指任何试图从内部颠覆政府或组织的人、群体或装置。特洛伊传奇以及维吉尔关于埃涅阿斯在迦太基定居的故事给我们留下了一句名言:**dux fēmina factī, a woman (was) leader of the action!** **Gaudēte atque valēte!**



*Athena (Minerva) constructing the Trojan horse
Red-figure Greek kylix, the Sabouroff Painter, 470–460 B.C.
Museo Archeologico, Florence, Italy*

第二十四课

独立夺格;被动迂说法;施事与格

在上一课中我们学习了分词, 罗马人常把分词用于“独立夺格”(ablative absolute)和“被动迂说法”(passive periphrastic)这两种常见结构中。下面我们将分别介绍。

独立夺格

独立夺格是一种分词短语, 一般由夺格形式的名词(或代词)和修饰性的分词所组成;它与句子的其余部分连接比较松散(“absolute”一词正是源于 *absolūtum, loosened from, separated*), 通常用逗号与之隔开, 描述句子动作发生的某些一般情况。

Rōmā vīsā, virī gaudēbant, Rome having been seen, the men rejoiced.

如此句所示, 独立夺格是一个自足的整体, 分词与它所修饰的名词都在同一个短语中, 而且独立夺格短语中的名词在主句中完全没有提及。而在其他类型的分词短语中(比如第二十三课中的那些短语), 分词则修饰与之相连的子句中的名词或代词。试将上例与下面这个包含普通分词短语的例句进行比较:

Rōmam videntēs, virī gaudēbant, seeing Rome, the men rejoiced.

在这个例子中, 分词修饰主句的主语, 所以不能使用独立夺格。

和其他分词短语一样, 独立夺格可以在相当程度上直译, 比如把 *Rōmā vīsā* 译成(*with*) *Rome having been seen*。然而, 正如在上一课中所说, 更好的做法是将短语改写成句子, 把分词转换成恰当时态的动词, 把夺格名词当作它的主语,

并配上最合乎逻辑的连词(通常是“when”,“since”或“although”);于是,根据语言习惯,最好把 **Rōmā vīsā, virī gaudēbant** 翻译成: *when Rome was (had been) seen, the men rejoiced*。比较下面一些例子:

His rēbus audītis, coepit timēre.

These things having been heard, he began to be afraid.

或者更好地译为:

When (since, after, etc., 取决于语境) these things had been heard, he began ...

When (since, after, etc.) he had heard these things, he began ...

Eō imperium tenente, ēventum timeō

<i>With him holding the power,</i>	}	<i>I fear the outcome.</i>
<i>Since he holds the power,</i>		
<i>When he holds the power,</i>		
<i>If he holds the power,</i>		
<i>Although he holds the power,</i>		

在独立夺格中,通常夺格名词/代词在先,分词在后;如果短语中包含有其他成分(比如上面这个例句中分词的直接宾语),则它们通常位于名词与分词之间。

如下列例句所示,甚至两个名词,或者一个名词加一个形容词,就可以起独立夺格的作用。这样,我们便可以理解 **sum** 的现在时分词了(在古典拉丁语中无此形式):

Caesare duce, nihil timēbimus.

Caesar being the commander,

Under Caesar's command.

With Caesar in command.

Since(when, if, etc.)Caesar is the commander,

we shall fear nothing.

Caesar incertō, bellum timēbāmus,

Since Caesar was uncertain (with Caesar uncertain), we were afraid of war.

被动迂说法变位:动形词+ Sum

虽然名字听上去挺可怕,但事实上,被动迂说法(periphrastic)变位只是一种被动态的动词形式,由动形词(即将来时被动态分词)+**sum** 的某种形式而构成。¹

¹ “迂说法”(“periphrasis”, adj. “periphrastic”)一词源自对应于拉丁词 **circumlocutiō**, a roundabout way of speaking 的希腊词,指的是由分词 + 助动词 **sum** 组成的结构(甚至英语中的“did sing”就是表达“sang”的一种迂说法);类似地,整个完成时系统的被动态也是“迂说的”,它由 **sum** + 完成时被动态分词(而不是动形词)构成(注意不要把两者相混淆:被动迂说法总是包含一个以-nd-结尾的动形词)。

作为谓语形容词,动形词应当在性、数、格上与 **sum** 的主语保持一致,例如 **haec fēmina laudanda est, this woman is to be praised.**

动形词往往表达一种必须的、强制性的或恰当的行为,而不单单指将来,在被动迂说法结构中正是如此。因此 **id faciendum est** 的意思并不单单指 *this is about to be done*,而更是指 *this has to be done*; **hic liber cum cūrā legendus erit, this book will have to be (must be) read with care.**

正如拉丁语在此结构中使用了各种时态的助动词 **sum**, 英语也往往用“has to be”, “had to be”, “will have to be”等表达方式;在翻译被动迂说法结构时,还经常要用到“should”, “ought”和“must”等助动词(试与 **dēbeō** 进行比较,我们知道, **dēbeō** 也被用来指强制性的行为)。

施事与格

与被动迂说法连用的不是施事夺格,而是施事与格。对被动迂说法+施事与格的直译一般听起来比较古怪,所以把这样一个句子变成主动结构往往更好。考察下面的例子:

Hic liber mihi cum cūrā legendus erit, this book will have to be read by me with care 或 (更好的译法) *I will have to (ought to, must, should) read this book with care.*

Illa fēmina omnibus laudanda est, that woman should be praised by all 或 *everyone should praise that woman.*

Pāx ducibus nostrīs petenda erat, peace had to be sought by our leaders 或 *our leaders had to seek peace.*

词汇表

Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f., Carthage (a city in North Africa)

fābula, -ae, f., story, tale; play (fable, fabulous, confabulate; cp. **fāma**)

imperātor, imperātōris, m., general, commander-in-chief, emperor (cp. **parō, imperium, imperō, Ch. 35**)

impērium, -iī, n., power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control (imperial, imperialism, imperious, empire)

perfūgium, -iī, n., refuge, shelter (cp. **fugiō**)

sērvus, -ī, m., and sērva, -ae, f., slave (serf, servant, servile, service; cp. **serviō, Ch. 35**)

sōlācium, -iī, n., comfort, relief (solace, consolation, inconsolable)

vūlnus, vūlneris, n., wound (vulnerable, invulnerable)

re- or red-, prefix, again, back (recede, receive, remit, repeat, repel,

revert)

ut, conj. + indic., *as, just as, when*

pósteā, adv., *afterwards* (cp. **post**)

accípiō, -cípere, -cēpī, -céptum, *to take* (to one's self), *receive, accept* (cp. **capiō**)

excípiō, -cípere, -cēpī, -céptum, *to take out, except; take, receive, capture* (exception, exceptionable)

recípiō, -cípere, -cēpī, -céptum, *to take back, regain; admit, receive* (recipe, R_x, receipt, recipient, receptacle, reception)

péllō, péllere, pépulī, púlsum, *to strike, push; drive out, banish* (compel, compulsion, compulsory, dispel, expel, impel, propel, repel, pelt, pulsate, pulse)

expéllō, -péllere, -pulī, -púlsum, *to drive out, expel, banish* (expulsion)

nárrō (1), *to tell, report, narrate* (narration, narrative, narrator)

quaérō, quaérere, quaesívī, quaesítum, *to seek, look for, strive for; ask, inquire, inquire into* (acquire, conquer, exquisite, inquire, inquest, inquisition, perquisite, query, quest, question, request, require)

rídeō, rídere, rísī, rísūm, *to laugh, laugh at* (deride, derisive, ridicule, ridiculous, risibilities; cf. **rīdiculus**, Ch. 30, **subrídēō**, Ch. 35)

练习与复习

1. Igne vīsō, omnēs virī et uxōrēs territae sunt et ultrā urbem ad lītus īnsulae nāvigāvērunt, ubi perfugium inventum est.
2. Populō metū oppressō, iste imperātor nōbīs ex urbe pellendus est.
3. Ōrātor, signō ā sacerdotē datō, eō diē revēnit et nunc tōtus populus Latīnus gaudet.
4. Gēns Rōmāna versūs illīus scrīptōris magnā laude quondam recēpit.
5. Laudēs atque dōna huius modī ab ōrātōribus dēsīderābantur.
6. Imperiō acceptō, dux magnanimus fidem suam reī pūblicaē ostendit.
7. Aliquis eōs quīnque equōs ex igne ēripī posteā iusserat.
8. Cernisne omnia quae tibi scienda sunt?
9. Ille, ab arce urbis reveniēns, ab istīs hominibus premī coepit.
10. Cupiō tangere manum illīus mīlitis quī metū caruit atque gravia scelera contrā rem pūblicam oppressit.
11. Iste dux prōtinus expulsus est, ut imperium excipiēbat.
12. Illae servae, autem, perfugium sōlāciumque ab amīcīs quaerēbant.
13. Cornū audītō, ille mīles, incertus cōsiliī, cōpiās ad mediam īnsulam vertit.
14. When the common danger had been averted, two of our sons and all our daughters came back from Asia.
15. Our hopes must not be destroyed by those three evil men.
16. Since the people of all nations are seeking peace, all leaders must conquer the passion for (= of) power. (Use an ablative absolute and a passive periphrastic.)
17. The leader, having been driven out by both the free men and the

slaves, could not regain his command.

古代名言

1. Carthāgō dēlenda est. (Cato.)
2. Asiā victā, dux Rōmānus fēlix multōs servōs in Italiam mīsit. (Pliny the Elder.)
3. Omnibus ferrō mīlitis perterritīs, quisque sē servāre cupiēbat. (Caesar.)
4. Quidquid dīcendum est, liberē dīcam. (Cicero.—**liberē**, adv. of **liber**.)
5. Haec omnia vulnera bellī tibi nunc sānanda sunt. (Cicero.—**sānāre**, to heal.)
6. Nec tumultum nec hastam mīlitis nec mortem violentam timēbō, Augustō terrās tenente. (Horace.—**tumultus -ūs**, disturbance, civil war.—**violentus, -a, -um**.—**Augustus, -ī**.)
7. Tarquiniō expulsō, nōmen rēgis audīre nōn poterat populus Rōmānus. (Cicero.)
8. Ad ūtilitātem vītae omnia cōnsilia factaque nōbīs regenda sunt. (Tacitus.—**ūtilitās, -tātis**, benefit, advantage.)

DĒ CUPIDITĀTE

Homō stultus, “Ō cīvēs, cīvēs,” inquit, “pecūnia ante omnia quaerenda est; virtūs et probitās post pecūniam.”

Pecūniae autem cupiditās fugienda est. Fugienda etiam est cupiditās glōriae; ēripit enim libertātem. Neque imperia semper petenda sunt neque semper accipienda; etiam dēpōnenda nōn numquam.

(Horace, *Epistulae* 1.1.53, and Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* 1.20.68.—**dēpōnō, -ere**, to put down, resign.)

Caelō receptus propter virtūtem, Herculēs multōs deōs salūtāvit; sed Plūtō veniente, quī Fortūnae est filius, āvertit oculōs. Tum, causā quaesītā, “Ōdī,” inquit, “illum, quod malīs amīcus est atque omnia corrumpit lucrī causā.”

(Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.12.—**Herculēs, -lis**.—**salūtāre**, to greet.—**Plūtus, -ī**, god of wealth.—**Fortūnae**, here personified.—**corrumpō, -ere**, to corrupt.—**lucrum, -ī**, gain, profit.)

THE SATIRIST'S MODUS OPERANDI

Rīdēns saturās meās percurrā, et cūr nōn? Quid vetat mē rīdentem dīcere vērū, ut puerīs ēducandīs saepe dant crūstula magistrī? Quaerō rēs gravēs iūcundō lūdō et, nōminibus fictīs, dē multīs culpīs vitiisque nārrō. Sed quid rīdēs? Mūtātō nōmine, dē tē fābula nārrātur!

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 1.1.23–27, 69–70; prose adaptation.—**per + currō**.—**vetāre**, to forbid.—**puerīs . . . magistrī**, the order of the nouns is varied for effect: indirect obj., direct obj., subject.—**crūstulum, -ī**, cookie, pastry.—**ringō, -ere, fīnxī**,



*Heracles (Hercules) fighting the Nemean lion, one of his 12 labors
Attic black-figure kalpis, Early 5th century B.C.
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria*

fictum, to form, invent, make up.)

词源点滴

In the readings

6. tumultuous.—“Violent”显然来源于 *vīs*。—罗马人最初把三月当作一年中的第一个月，他们把第五个月称为 *Quīntilis* (*quīntus, fifth*), 但后来恺撒 (Julius Caesar) 将它重新命名为 *Iūlius* (七月), 因为恺撒本人出生于七月。后来, 在授予恺撒的继承人屋大维“奥古斯都” (Augustus, the august, “威严者”) 称号时, 罗马元老院又将第六个月的名称 (*Sextilis*) 改成了 *Augustus* (八月)。“*Dē Cupiditāte*”: *Herculean—salute*; 与 *salvĕre, salūs* 比较—*plutocrat*, 源于希腊语—*lucre, lucrative*。—“The Satirist”: *veto*。—*crust*。—*fiction, fictitious, fictive*。

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, amīcae amīcīque! Quid agitis hodiē? 我敢打赌, 你以前并不知道 *R_x* 和“*recipe*”源于同一个词 (参见词汇表中的 *recipiō*), 但是现在, 感谢拉丁语, 你知道了! 正如你已经看到的, 由 *capiō* 产生出了大量派生词; 由 *excipere* 产生出了一些 “exceptionally” (特别) 熟悉的短语: **exceptiō probat regulam, the exception proves the rule**, 还有 **exceptiis excipiendis, with all the necessary exceptions** (字面意思是, *with things excepted that should be excepted*。你能辨识出

动形词吗?)类似地,如何对常用短语 **mūtātīs mūtandīs** 进行意译和直译?(如果你写不出来,请查阅韦伯斯特词典,那里有英语中包含的数百个拉丁语短语、格言、语词和缩写!)

以下是英语中出现的另一些动形词:**agenda** (*things to be done*); **corrigenda** (*things to be corrected*,即 **errāta** [勘误表]);被动迂说法 **dē gustibus nōn disputandum est**,有时简写为 **dē gustibus** (*you can't argue about taste*);以及在数学证明的末尾出现的 **quod erat dēmōnstrandum** (我们以前见到过),简写为**Q.E.D.**

Servus 也是本课出现的新词,由它产生了教皇的称号之一:**servus servōrum deī**(另一个称号是 **pontifex**,这是古罗马的一种祭司职位,它最初可能意为 *bridge-builder*——因为祭司在人神之间进行沟通?);**quaere** 在英语中意为需要更多的信息。**Nunc est satis: valēte atque semper rīdēte!**

第二十五课

不定式;间接陈述

不定式

在前两课中,我们学习了被称为分词的动词性形容词的形式和用法。现在我们讨论一种被称为不定式(如 **amāre**, *to love*)的动词性名词(另外两种动词性名词,即目的动名词[*supine*]和动名词[*gerund*],我们将在第三十八、三十九课中介绍)。大多数及物动词都有六种不定式——现在时、将来时、完成时的主动态和被动态,不过将来时被动态不定式比较罕见;¹不及物动词通常没有被动态。关于现在时的主动态和被动态不定式,我们已经比较熟悉了,它们的形式根据变位法的不同而不同;完成时和将来时的不定式则依照下列模式构成,与动词属于哪种变位法无关:

	主动态	被动态
现在时	-āre, -ēre, -ere, -īre ²	-ārī, -ērī, -ī, -īrī
完成时	完成时词干 + -isse	完成时被动态分词 + esse
将来时	将来时主动态分词 + esse	(以-um 结尾的目的动名词 + īrī) ³

¹ 换句话说,对于过去、现在和将来的每一种基本时间框架,都有主动态和被动态两种不定式;而分词则没有现在时被动态和完成时主动态形式。

² 事实上,现在时主动态不定式的词尾是-re,它被加在现在时词干上;不过为了区分,这里也把词干元音包括了进来。

³ 这里的将来时被动态不定式之所以放在括号里,是因为这种形式并不常见,在本书中没有出现。罗马人习惯于用 **fore ut** + 虚拟式(结果从句)等表达方式作为替代。以-um 结尾的目的动名词的拼写与中性单数主格的完成时被动态分词相同。

Agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, to lead 的不定式

主动态		被动态
现在时	ágere, to lead	ágī, to be led
完成时	ēgisse, to have led	āctus, -a, -um ⁴ esse, to have been led
将来时	āctūrus, -a, -um ⁴ esse, to be about to lead, to be going to lead	āctum írī, to be about to be led, to be going to be led

对上面六种不定式的直译是习惯性的;在实际使用中(特别是在下面将要介绍的间接陈述中),完成时不定式、特别是将来时不定式很少作直译。

以下是其他一些例词的不定式:

主动态

现在时	laudāre	monēre	audīre	cāpere
完成时	laudāvisse	monuisse	audīvisse	cēpisse
将来时	laudātūrus, -a, -um, esse	monitūrus, -a, -um, esse	audītūrus, -a, -um, esse	captūrus, -a, -um, esse

被动态

现在时	laudārī	monērī	audīrī	cāpī
完成时	laudātus, -a, -um, esse	mónitus, -a, -um, esse	audītus, -a, -um, esse	cáptus, -a, -um, esse
将来时	laudátum írī	mónitum írī	audítum írī	cáptum írī

用法

作为动词性名词,不定式能够以多种方式起作用。我们已经看到它可以做主语(**errāre est humānum, to err is human**),做 **possum** 和 **dēbeō** 等动词的补充(**discēdere nunc possunt, they can leave now**——第六课),还可以做宾格主语的直接宾语(**iussit eōs venīre, he ordered them to come**)。不过,不定式最常见的用法之一是所谓的“间接陈述”。

不定式用在带有宾格主语的间接陈述中

间接陈述就是间接地报导某个人的说法、思想、感受等等。下面是一位老师所作的直接陈述:

¹ 这些分词被看作谓形容词,所以要与 **esse** 的主语保持一致。

Julia is a good student.

如果要直接报导或引用老师的这句陈述就是：

“Julia is a good student,” says the teacher.

The teacher said, “Julia is a good student.”

拉丁语也用某些表示言说的动词引出直接陈述，比如第二十二课词汇表中的 **inquit**：

“Iūlia,” magister inquit, “est discipula bona.”

不过，拉丁语和英语往往间接地报导某个人的说法（或思想感受）。在英语中，我们通常把这些间接陈述放在一个由 *that* 引导的从句中：

The teacher says that Julia is a good student.

The teacher said that Julia was a good student.

拉丁语不使用 *that* 那样的引导词，而是用带有宾格主语的不定式短语来代替从句：

Magister dicit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.

Magister dixit Iūliam esse discipulam bonam.

在拉丁语中，这种间接陈述结构一般用在表示“言说”、“精神活动”、“感官知觉”等含义的动词（即表示“说”、“想”、“认知”、“觉察”、“感受”、“看”、“听”等含义的动词；参见词汇表后面的拉丁语动词表）之后。英语中也有类似的结构，即在少数几个动词后面可以跟“宾格+不定式”结构（如“the teacher considers *her to be a good student*”），但在古典拉丁语中只能使用这一种结构，宾格主语总是表达出来，哪怕它与表示“言说”等含义的动词的主语相同（这时主语通常是一个反身代词）：

Iūlia putat sē esse bonam discipulam, *Julia thinks that she (herself) is a good student.*

间接陈述辨识起来并不困难，只要找到表示“言说”、“精神活动”、“感官知觉”等含义的主要动词，后面跟着宾格+不定式短语就可以了。不过，翻译要更困难一些，因为如上面一些例子所示，我们几乎总要用 *that* 把不定式短语变成一个一般性的从句，直译出来的英语（例如 *the teacher says Julia to be a good student* 或 *Julia thinks herself to be a good student*）不合乎语言习惯。在借助 *that* 翻译了宾格主语（把它当作主格来看）之后，必须把不定式变成处于正确时态的规则限定动词。需要注意的是，和分词一样，不定式的时态也是相对的而不是绝对的。

间接陈述中的不定式时态

仔细考察下列句子中的时态。

1. <i>Dīcunt</i> — <i>They say</i>	A. eum iuvāre eam. B. eum iūvisse eam. C. eum iūtūrum esse eam.	<i>that he is helping her.</i> <i>that he helped her.</i> <i>that he will help her.</i>
2. <i>Dīxērunt</i> — <i>They said</i>	A. eum iuvāre eam. B. eum iūvisse eam. C. eum iūtūrum esse eam.	<i>that he was helping her.</i> <i>that he had helped her.</i> <i>that he would help her.</i>
3. <i>Dīcent</i> — <i>They will say</i>	A. eum iuvāre eam. B. eum iūvisse eam. C. eum iūtūrum esse eam.	<i>that he is helping her.</i> <i>that he helped her.</i> <i>that he will help her.</i>

你也许注意到了,不论主要动词处于什么时态(**dīcunt**, **dīxērunt**, **dīcent**),不定式都可以用现在时、完成时或将来时。这表明,不定式的时态不是绝对的而是相对的。

换句话说,不论主要动词处于何种时态:

1. 现在时不定式表示与主要动词同时发生。
2. 完成时不定式表示在主要动词之前发生。
3. 将来时不定式表示在主要动词之后发生。

以下是另一些例子;注意时态的翻译、反身代词的使用、分词词尾与宾格主语的一致,以及被动迂说法(动形词+**esse**,表示强制性的动作)的使用。

Gāius dīcit **sē** iūvisse eam,

*Gaius says that he (Gaius) **helped** her.*

Gāius dīxit **eum** iūvisse eam,

*Gaius **said** that he (e.g., Marcus) **had helped** her.*

Gāius dīcit litterās ā sē scrīptās esse,

*G. **says** that the letter **was written** by him (Gaius).*

Gāius dīcit litterās tibi scrībendās esse,

*G. **says** that the letter **ought to be written** by you (or that you ought to write the letter).*

Discipulī putant sē linguam Latīnam amātūrōs esse,

*the (male) students **think** that they **will love** the Latin language.*

Magīstra scīvit discipulās Latīnam amātūrās esse,

*the (female) teacher **knew** that the (female) students **would love** Latin.*

词汇表

língua, -ae, f., *tongue; language* (linguist, linguistics, bilingual, lingo, linguine: see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 14)

fērōx, gen. **ferōcis**, *fierce, savage* (ferocious, ferocity; cp. **ferus, -ī**, *beast*)

fidēlis, fidēle, *faithful, loyal* (fidelity, infidelity, infidel; cp. **fidēs**)

gēminus, -a, -um, *twin* (geminate, gemination, Gemini)

sápiēns, gen. **sapiēntis**, as adj., *wise, judicious*; as noun, *a wise man, philosopher* (homo sapiens, sapience, insipience, sapid, insipid, verbum sapienti, savant, sage; cp. **sapientia, sapiō**, Ch. 35)

últimus, -a, -um, *farthest, extreme; last, final* (ultimate, ultimum, penultimate, antepenult)

déhinc, adv., *then, next*

hīc, adv., *here*

áit, áiunt, *he says, they say, assert*, commonly used in connection with proverbs and anecdotes (adage)

crédō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum + acc. or (Ch. 35) dat., *to believe, trust* (credence, credentials, credible, incredible, credulity, credulous, creed, credibility, credo, credit, creditable, accreditation, miscreant, grant)

iáceō, iacēre, iácuī, *to lie; lie prostrate; lie dead* (adjacent, adjacency, interjacent, subjacent, gist, joist; do not confuse with **iaciō, iacere**)

négō (1), *to deny, say that . . . not* (negate, negative, abnegate, renegade, renege, denial, runagate)

nésciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum, *not to know, be ignorant* (nice; cp. **sciō**)

nūntiō (1), *to announce, report, relate* (denounce, enunciate, pronounce, renounce, nuncio; cp. **prōnūntiō, nūntius, -ī**, *messenger*)

patefáciō, -fácare, -fēcī, -fáctum, *to make open, open; disclose, expose*

pútō (1), *to reckon, suppose, judge, think, imagine* (compute, count, account, depute, dispute, impute, putative, repute, amputate)

spērō (1), *to hope for, hope, regularly* + fut. inf. in ind. state. (despair, desperado, desperate, desperation, prosper; cp. **spēs**.)

suscípiō, -cípere, -cēpī, -céptum (sub-capiō), *to undertake* (susceptible, susceptibility)

能够引出间接陈述的动词表¹

1. 言语(saying): **dícō, négō, áit, nūntiō, prōnūntiō, nárro, scríbō, dóceō, osténdō, dēmōnstrō, móneō, pétō**
2. 认知(knowing): **sciō, nésciō, intéllegō, memóriā téneō, díscō**
3. 思想(thinking): **cérno, cógitō, crédō, hábeō, pútō, spērō**
4. 感觉感受(perceiving and feeling): **aúdiō, vídeō, séntiō, gaúdeō**

¹ 后面还要介绍的动词有: **respondeō**, *answer*; **cognōscō**, *learn, know*; **arbitror**, *think*; **opīnor**, *think, suppose*; **prōmittō**, *promise*; **dēcernō**, *decide*; **doleō**, *grieve*。

练习与复习

1. "Quisque," inquit, "semper putat suās rēs esse magnās."
2. Postea audivimus servos donorum causā laborāvisse, ut milites fidelēs heri narrāverant.
3. Vicini nostri vim ignis magnā virtūte dehinc avertērunt, quod laudem atque dōna cupivērunt.
4. Hoc signum periculī tōtam gentem nostram tanget, nisi hostem ex urbe excipere ac ab Italiā pellere poterimus.
5. Duce ferocī Carthāginis expulsō, spēs fidēsque virōrum magnanimōrum rem pūblicam continēbunt.
6. Cūr iucundus Horātius culpās hūmānās in saturis semper ostendēbat atque ridēbat?
7. Crēdimus fidem antiquam omnibus gentibus iterum alendam esse.
8. Dux, ad senātum missus, imperium accēpit et imperātor factus est.
9. Rēs pūblica, ut ait, libellis huius modī tollī potest.
10. Aliquī negant hostēs victōs servitūte umquam opprimendōs esse.
11. Crēdunt magistrā sapientem vērītatem patefactūram esse.
12. Quisquis vērītatem recipiet bene educābitur.
13. We thought that your sisters were writing the letter.
14. They will show that the letter was written by the brave slavegirl.
15. He said that the letter had never been written.
16. We hope that the judge's wife will write those two letters tomorrow.

古代名言

1. Id factum esse tum nōn negāvit. (Terence.)
2. Hīs rēbus prōnūntiātis, igitur, eum esse hostem scīvistī. (Cicero.)
3. Eum ab hostibus expectārī nunc sentīs. (Cicero.)
4. Vidī eōs in urbe remānsisse et nōbīscum esse. (Cicero.)
5. Itaque aeternum bellum cum malīs cīvibus ā mē susceptum esse cernō. (Cicero.)
6. Idem crēdō tibi faciendum esse. (Cicero.)
7. Tē enim esse fidēlem mihi sciēbam. (Terence.)
8. Hostibus sē in cīvitātem vertentibus, senātus Cincinnātō nūntiāvit eum factum esse dictātorem. (Cicero.—**Cincinnātus, -ī.—dictātor, -tōris.**)
9. Dīcō tē, Pyrrhe, Rōmānōs posse vincere. (Ennius.—**Pyrrhus, -ī.**)
10. Dīc, hospes, Spartaē tē nōs hīc iacentēs vīdisse, patriae fidēlēs. (Cicero; epigram on the Spartans who died at Thermopylae.—**hospes, -pitis, m., stranger.—Spartae, to Sparta.**)

11. Sōcratēs putābat sē esse cīvem tōtīus mundī. (Cicero.)
12. Illī magistrī negant quemquam virum esse bonum nisi sapientem.
(Cicero.—**quisquam, quidquam, anyone, anything; any.**)
13. Negāvī, autem, mortem timendam esse. (Cicero.)
14. Crēdō deōs immortālēs sparsisse spīritūs in corpora hūmāna. (Cicero.—**spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum, to scatter, sow.**)
15. Adulēscēns spērat sē diū vīctūrum esse; senex potest dīcere sē diū vīxisse. (Cicero.—Do not confuse **vīctūrum**, from **vīvō**, with **victūrum**, from **vincō**.)
16. Āiunt enim multum legendum esse, nōn multa. (*Pliny.)

THE DEATH OF LAOCOON . . . AND TROY

Hīc alius magnus timor (Ō fābula misera!) animōs caecōs nostrōs terret. Lāocoōn, sacerdos Neptūnī fortūnā factus, ācrem taurum ad āram in lītore mactābat. Tum geminī serpentēs potentēs, mare prementēs, ab īnsulā ad lītora currunt. Iamque agrōs tenēbant et, oculīs igne ardentibus, ōra linguīs sībilīs lambēbant.

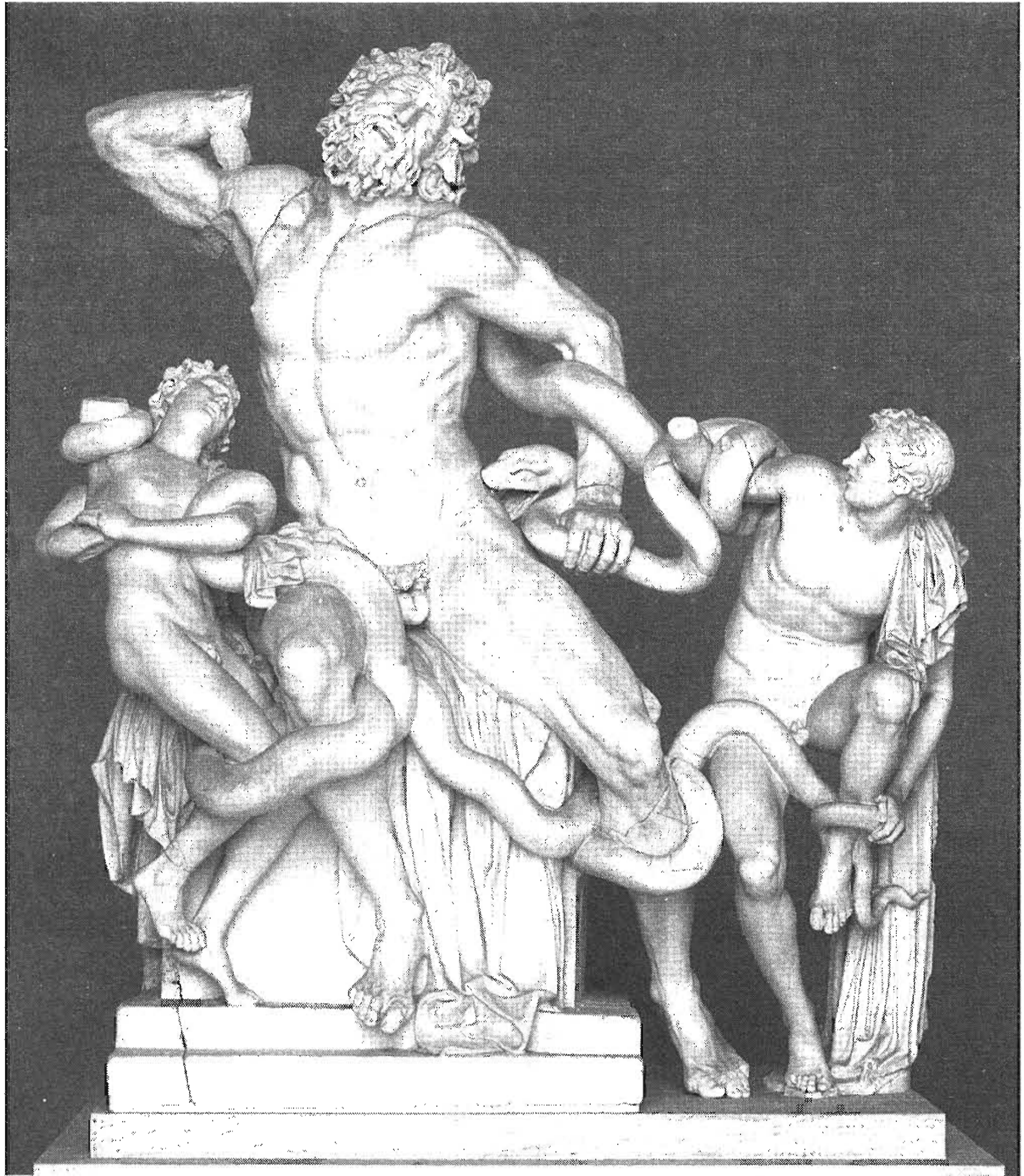
Nōs omnēs fugimus; illī viā certā Lāocoonta filiōsque eius petunt. Prīmum parva corpora duōrum puerōrum capiunt et lacerant necantque dēvōrantque. Tum patrem fortem, ad filiōs miserōs currentem, rapiunt et magnīs spīrīs tenent et superant. Nec sē ā vulneribus dēfendere nec fugere potest, et ipse, ut taurus saucius ad āram, clāmōrēs horrendōs ad caelum tollit. Eōdem tempore serpentēs fugiunt, petuntque perfugium in arce Minervae ācris.

Quod Lāocoōn in equum Minervae hastam iēcerat, nōs putāvimus eum errāvisse et poenās dedisse; vēritātem acerbam nescīvimus. Portās patefacimus et admittimus istum equum in urbem; atque puerī puellaeque—Ō patria, Ō dī magnī, Ō Trōia!—eum tangere gaudent. Et quoque gaudēmus nōs miserī, quibus ille diēs fuit ultimus ac quibus numquam erit ūllum sōlācium. (Virgil, *Aeneid* 2.199–249; prose adaptation.—**Lāocoōn, -ontis, m.**—**Neptūnus**, god of the sea, took the side of the Greeks in the Trojan war.—**taurus, -ī, bull.**—**āra, -ae, altar.**—**mactāre, to sacrifice, sacrificially slaughter.**—**serpēns, -pentis, m.**—**ardēre, to blaze.**—**sībilus, -a, -um, hissing.**—**lambō, -ere, to lick.**—**Lāocoonta, Gk. acc.**—**prīmum, adv. of prīmus.**—**lacerāre, to tear to pieces, mangle.**—**dēvōrāre, to devour.**—**spīra, -ae, coil.**—**saucius, -a, -um, wounded.**—**clāmōr, -mōris, shout, scream.**—**horrendus, -a, -um.**)

词源点滴

In the readings

8. propinquity.—“Cincinnati”, 既指最初由乔治·华盛顿领导的军官们组成的组织, 也指以该组织命名的城市。9. Pyrrhus(比鲁斯), 希腊将军, 曾经两次击败罗马人, 但双方都付出了同样惨重的代价, 因此有“比鲁斯式的胜利”一说。



The Laocöon group

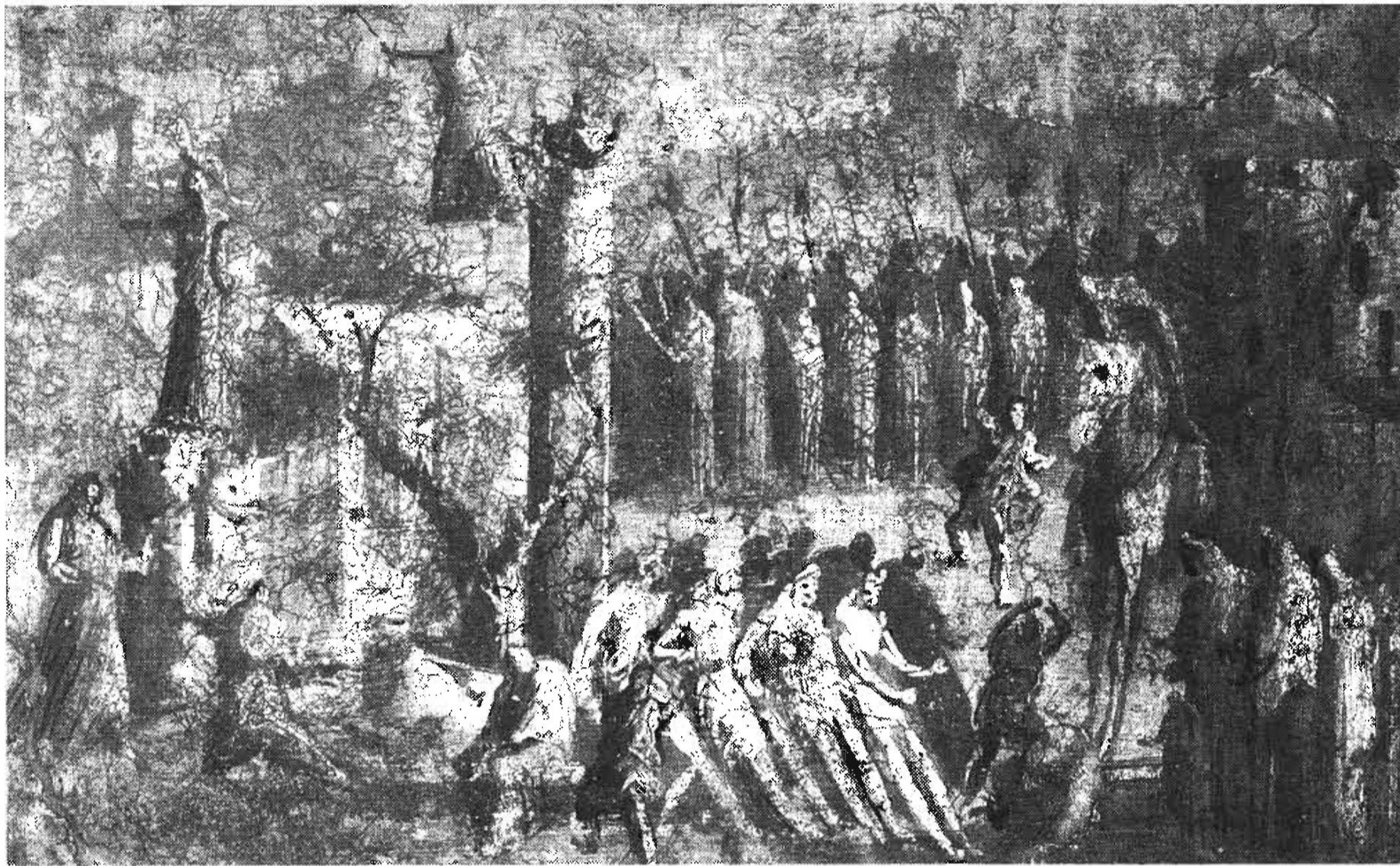
*Roman copy, perhaps after Agesander, Athenodorus, and Polydorus of Rhodes
1st century B.C., Vatican Museums, Vatican State*

14. aspersion, disperse, intersperse, sparse. “Laocöon”: toreador.—serpent, serpentine; “herpes”是同源词.—lambent.—lacerate, laceration.—voracious.—spire, spiral.—clamor, clamorous; 与 **clāmāre, declāmāre, exclāmāre** 比较。—horrendous.

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Quid agitis hodiē, amīcī et amīcae? 由本课的新词 **iacēre** 产生出了短语 **hic iacet, here lies . . .**, 它经常刻在墓碑上(有时写成 **hic jacet**, 弄不好会被误认为是 *a country boy's sportcoat!*)。下面是另一些著名的格言和短语:**dum**

spīrō, spērō, *while I breathe, I hope* (南卡罗莱纳州的座右铭——动词 **spīrāre** 与第二十课中的 **spīritus** 有关,由此产生了“conspire”,“expire”,“inspire”,“perspire”,“respiratory”,“transpire”等等); **crēde Deō**, *trust in God* (关于 **crēdere** + 与格,参见第三十五课);意大利语中的 **lingua franca**,直译为 *Frankish language*,指被用于在不同文化之间进行交流的混合语言。 **Spīrāte, spērāte, rīdēte, atque valēte!**



*Trojan horse fresco from the House of Menander
Pompeii, mid- to late 1st century A.D.
Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples, Italy*

第二十六课

形容词的比较;比较级的变格;比较夺格

形容词的比较

我们前面学到的形容词形式指出了与所修饰名词相关的某种基本特征(某种性质或数量),如 **vir beātus**, *a happy man*。这种形式被称为形容词的“原级”。

和英语一样,在拉丁语中,形容词也可以进行比较,以显示所描述的某人/某物的某一特征具有比他人/他物更高的等级,或者异乎寻常。如果是在两个人/物之间进行比较,就要用到“比较级”:**vir beātior**, *the happier man*。

如果是把某人/某物与两个或两个以上的人/物进行比较,就要用到“最高级”:**vir beātissimus**, *the happiest man*。

比较级和最高级的构成

我们在词汇表中学到的是原级形式。规则形容词的比较级和最高级形式通常是在原级词根的基础上构成的。我们知道,去掉单数属格的词尾就得到了词根。¹

比较级:原级词根 + **-ior**(阳性和阴性),**-ius**(中性);**-iōris**,属格

最高级:原级词根 + **-issimus**, **-issima**, **-issimum**

¹ 在少数情况下,形容词是通过给原级加上 **magis** (*more*)和 **maximē** (*most*)进行比较的。这条规则常用于像 **idōneus**, **-a**, **-um** (*suitable*)这样词尾之前是元音的形容词,比如 **magis idōneus**, **maximē idōneus**。

原级	比较级	最高级
cārus, -a, -um (<i>dear</i>)	cārior, -ius (<i>dearer</i>)	cārissimus, -a, -um (<i>dearest</i>)
lóngus, -a, -um (<i>long</i>)	lóngior, -ius (<i>longer</i>)	longíssimus, -a, -um (<i>longest</i>)
fórtis, -e (<i>brave</i>)	fórtior, -ius (<i>braver</i>)	fortíssimus, -a, -um (<i>bravest</i>)
fēlīx, gen. fēlīcis (<i>happy</i>)	fēlīcior, -ius (<i>happier</i>)	fēlīcíssimus, -a, -um (<i>happiest</i>)
pótēns, gen. poténtis (<i>powerful</i>)	poténtior, -ius (<i>more powerful</i>)	potentíssimus, -a, -um (<i>most powerful</i>)
sápiēns, gen. sapiéntis (<i>wise</i>)	sapiéntior, -ius (<i>wiser</i>)	sapientíssimus, -a, -um (<i>wisest</i>)

比较级的变格

形容词的最高级按照 **magnus, -a, -um** 的模式进行变格。而比较级虽然是第三变格法的二尾形容词,却遵循着辅音变格;也就是说,与其他第三变格法二尾形容词不同,形容词比较级并没有 **i-**词干变格的一些典型特征(比如比较级的单数夺格不以 **-ī** 结尾,复数属格不以 **-ium** 结尾,中性的复数主格/宾格不以 **-ia** 结尾。详见第十六课)。请记住下面这张词形变化表,特别要注意突出显示的词尾。

	单数		复数	
	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性
主格	fórtior	fórtius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
属格	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
与格	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
宾格	fortiōrem	fórtius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
夺格	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

用法和翻译

形容词比较级常用 *more* 或后缀 **-er** 来翻译,最高级常用 *most* 或后缀 **-est** 来翻译,具体用哪种形式要取决于语境和英语习惯,例如:**fēmina sapiētiōr**, *the wiser woman*; **urbs antīquior**, *a more ancient city*; **tempus incertíssimum**, *a most uncertain time*; **lūx clārissima**, *the brightest light*。虽然彼此之间没有直接关联,但为了帮助记忆,我们可以把构成拉丁语比较级的 **-ōr-** 与英语的 *more/-er* 相联系,把构成拉丁语最高级的 **-ss** 与英语的 *most/-est* 相联系。

有时比较级含有 *rather* 的意味,指某种性质比通常情况程度更强,如 **lūx clārior**, *a rather bright light*; 也可以表示 *too* 的意思,指比所想往的情形程度更

高, 如 **vīta eius erat brevior**, *his/her life was too short*。最高级有时用 *very* 来翻译, 特别是在把人/物与寻常的或理想的情况进行比较时, 如 **vīta eius erat brevissima**, *his/her life was very short*。

比较级和最高级与 Quam 连用

如果 **quam** 跟在比较级之后, 那么它就起连词的作用, 相当于英语中的 *than*, 将两个被比较项连接起来; **quam** 之前和之后的格或结构是一样的:

Hī librī sunt clāriōrēs quam illī, *these books are more famous than those*.

Dicit hōs librōs esse clāriōrēs quam illōs, *he says that these books are more famous than those*.

如果 **quam** 位于最高级之前, 那么它就起副词的作用, 指所修饰的人/物的某种性质达到了最大可能程度:

Amīcus meus erat vir quam iūcundissimus, *my friend was the pleasantest man possible* 或 *as pleasant as can be*.

比较夺格

如果比较前项是主格或宾格, 那么 **quam** 往往省去, 比较后项采用夺格形式, 这就是所谓的“比较夺格”(这种新的用法应当加入你的夺格用法表中)。

Cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra lūce, *your plans are clearer than light*.

(比较 **cōnsilia tua sunt clāriōra quam lūx**, 两句话的意思是一样的。)

Quis in Italiā erat clārior Cicerōne? *Who in Italy was more famous than Cicero?*

Vidī paucōs fēliciōres patre tuō, *I have seen few men happier than your father*.

词汇表

cēna, -ae, f., *dinner* (cenacle)

fórum, -ī, n., *marketplace, forum* (forensic)

lēx, **légis**, f., *law, statute*; cp. **iūs**, which emphasizes *right, justice* (legal, legislator, legitimate, loyal, colleague, college, privilege)

límen, **líminis**, n., *threshold* (liminality, subliminal, eliminate, preliminary)

lūx, **lúcis**, f., *light* (lucid, elucidate, translucent, lucubration, illustrate, illuminate)

mēnsa, -ae, f., *table; dining; dish, course*; **mēnsa secúnda**, *dessert* (the constellation Mensa)

nox, **nóctis**, f., *night* (nocturnal, nocturne, equinox, noctiluca, noctuid; cp. **pernoctō**, Ch. 39)

- sómnus, -ī, m.,** *sleep* (somnia, somnambulism, somnambulist, somniferous, somniloquist, somnolent, insomnia, Sominex)
- quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** (pron.) or **quóddam** (adj.), indef. pron. and adj.; as pron., *a certain one or thing, someone, something*; as adj., *a certain, some* (gen. **cuiusdam**, dat. **cuīdam**, etc.)
- pudīcus, -a, -um,** *modest, chaste* (impudent, pudency, pudendum; cp. **pudīcītia, modesty, chastity**)
- supérbus, -a, -um,** *arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud* (superb; cp. **superāre**)
- trīstis, trīste,** *sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe* (cp. **trīstitia, sorrow**)
- túrpis, túrpe,** *ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful* (turpitude)
- urbānus, -a, -um,** *of the city, urban; urbane, elegant* (urbanity, urbanization, suburban, suburbanite; cp. **urbs**)
- prae,** prep. + abl., *in front of, before* (frequent as a prefix, e.g., **praepōnere, to put before, prefer**; sometimes intensifying, e.g., **praeclārus, -a, -um, especially famous, remarkable**; precede, prepare, preposition; cp. **praeter**, Ch. 40)
- quam,** adv. and conj. after comparatives, *than*; with superlatives, *as . . . as possible*: **quam fortissimus, as brave as possible** (cp. **quam, how**, Ch. 16, and do not confuse with the rel. pron. fem. acc. sg.)
- tántum,** adv., *only*
- invītō (1),** *to entertain, invite, summon* (invitation, vie)

练习与复习

1. Ille dux nescīvit sē imperium prōtinus susceptūrum esse.
2. “Quīdam,” inquit, “imperium quondam petēbant et liberōs virōs opprimere cupiēbant.”
3. Eōdem diē decem mīlia hostium ab duce fidēlissimō āversa ac pulsa sunt; multī mīlitēs vulnera recēperant et in agrīs iacēbant.
4. Morte tyrannī ferōcis nūntiātā, quisque sē ad ōrātōrem potentissimum magnā spē vertit.
5. Rīdēns, scrīptor illīus fābulae sapiēns aliquid iūcundius dehinc nārāvit.
6. Hīs rēbus audītīs, adulēscētēs geminī propter pecūniae cupiditātem studium litterārum relinquent.
7. Rēgīna fortissima Carthāginis posteā ostendit fidem semper esse sibi cāriōrem dīvitiīs.
8. Negāvit sē umquam vīdisse servam fidēliōrem quam hanc.
9. Iūcundior modus vītae hominibus nunc quaerendus est.
10. Crēdimus illōs vīgintī liberōs virōs fēmināsque vītā quam iūcundissimam agere.
11. Imperātor centum mīlitēs fortissimōs prae sē herī mīsīt.
12. Lūx in illā casā nōn fuit clārissima, quod familia paucās fenestrās patefēcerat.
13. Amīcōs trīstēs excēpit, ad mēnsam invītāvit, et eīs perfugium ac sō-

lācium hīc dedit.

14. What is sweeter than a very pleasant life?
15. Certain men, however, say that death is sweeter than life.
16. When these three very sure signs had been reported, we sought advice and comfort from the most powerful leader.
17. In that story the author says that all men seek as happy lives as possible.
18. This light is always brighter than the other.

古代名言

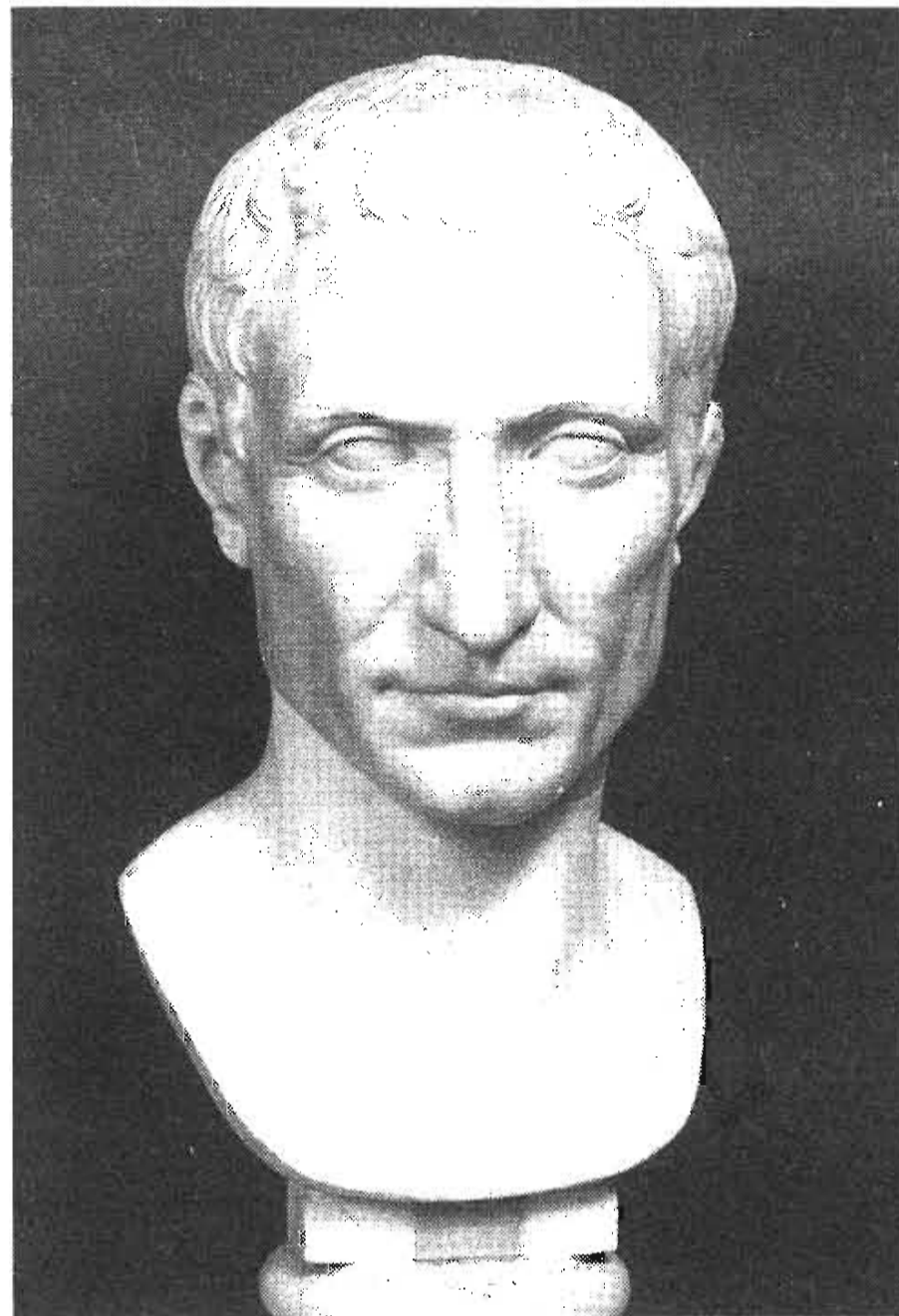
1. Senectūs est loquāciōr. (Cicero.—**loquāx**, gen. **loquācis**, *garrulous*.)
2. Tua cōnsilia omnia nōbis clāriōra sunt quam lūx. (Cicero.)
3. Quaedam remedia graviōra sunt quam ipsa perīcula. (Seneca.)
4. Eō diē virōs fortissimōs atque amantissimōs rei pūblicae ad mē vocāvī. (Cicero.—**amāns rei pūblicae**, i.e., *patriotic*.)
5. Quī imperia libēns accēpit, partem acerbissimam servitūtis vītāt. (Seneca.—**libēns**, gen. **libentis**, *willing*; here, as is often the case, the adj. has adverbial force.)
6. Iūcundissima dōna, ut āiunt, semper sunt ea quae auctor ipse cāra facit. (Ovid.)
7. Beātus sapiēnsque vir forum vītāt et superba līmina potentiōrum cīvium. (Horace.)
8. Quid est turpius quam ab aliquō illūdī? (Cicero.—**illūdō**, **-ere**, *to deceive*.)
9. Quid enim est stultius quam incerta prō certīs habēre, falsa prō vērīs? (*Cicero.—**falsus**, **-a**, **-um**.)
10. Saepe mihi dīcis, cārissime amīce: “Scribe aliquid magnum; dēsidiōsissimus homō es.” (Martial.—**dēsidiōsus**, **-a**, **-um**, *lazy*.)
11. Verba currunt; at manus notārii est vēlōciōr illīs; nōn lingua mea, sed manus eius, labōrem perfēcit. (Martial.—**notārius**, **-iī**, *stenographer*.—**vēlōx**, gen. **vēlōcis**, *swift*.—**perficiō**, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, *to complete*.)
12. Multī putant rēs bellicās graviōrēs esse quam rēs urbānās; sed haec sententia mūtandā est, nam multae rēs urbānae sunt graviōrēs clāriōrēsque quam bellicae. (Cicero.—**bellicus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj. of **bellum**.)
13. Invītātus ad cēnam, manū sinistrā lintea neglegentiōrum sustulistī. Hoc salsum esse putās? Rēs sordidissima est! Itaque mihi lintheum remitte. (Catullus.—**lintheum**, **-ī**, *linen, napkin*.—**neglegēns**, gen. **neglegentis**, *careless*.—**salsus**, **-a**, **-um**, *salty; witty*.—**sordidus**, **-a**, **-um**, *dirty, mean*.)

THE NATIONS OF GAUL

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur.

Hī omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sequana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

(*Caesar, *Bellum Gallicum* 1.1.—The places and peoples mentioned: Gaul, the Belgae, the Aquitani, the Celts or Gauls, and the rivers Garonne, Marne, and Seine.—**dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum**, to divide, separate.—**incolō, -ere**, to inhabit; **Belgae, Aquītānī**, and [eī] **quī** are all subjects of this verb.—**ipsōrum linguā** = linguā suā.—**nostrā**, sc. linguā.—**institūtum, -ī**, custom, institution.—**differō**.)

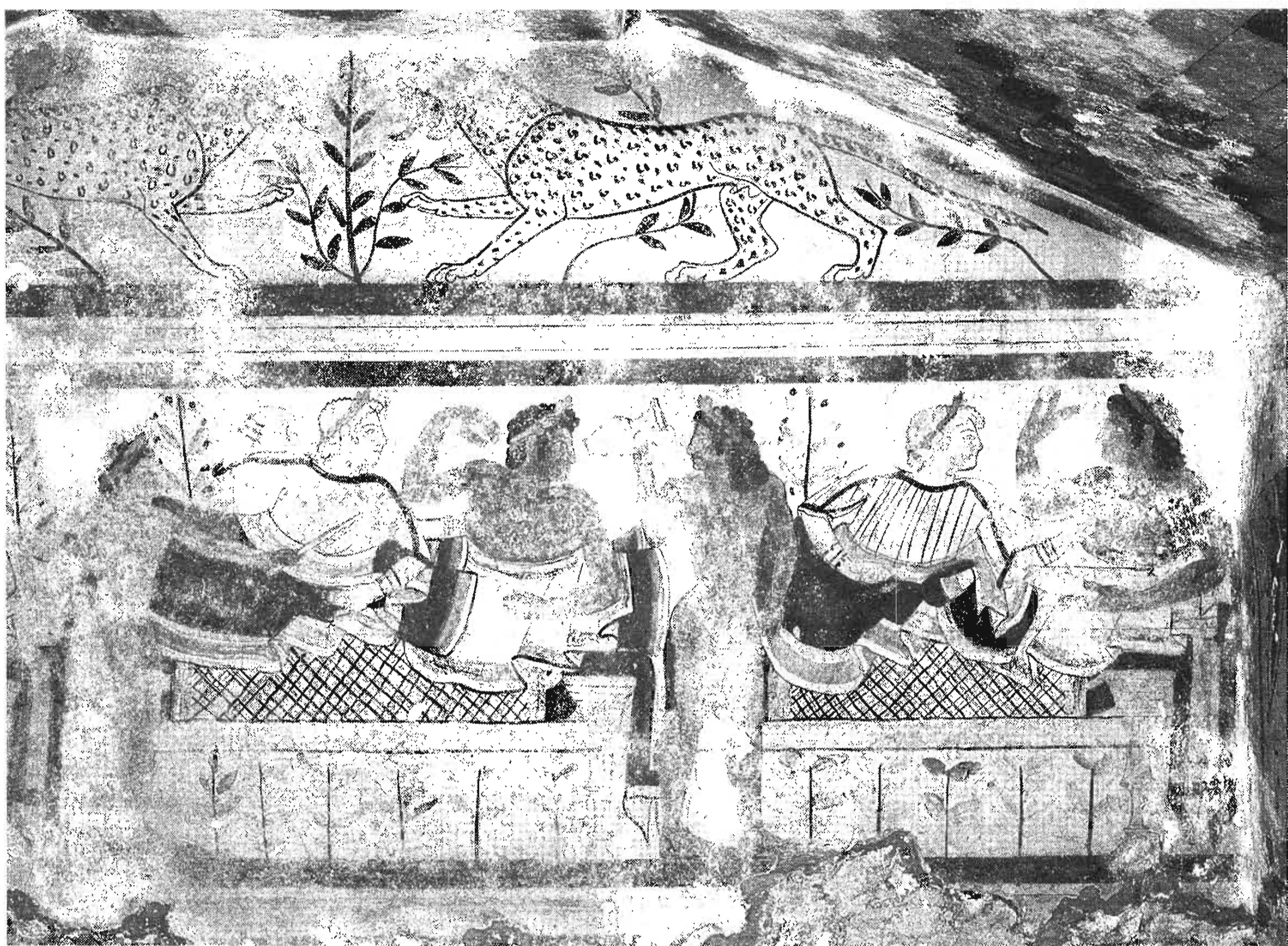


Julius Caesar
entino, Vatican Museums, Vatican State

THE GOOD LIFE

Haec sunt, amīce iūcundissime, quae vītā faciunt beātiorē: rēs nōn facta labōre sed ā patre relicta, ager fēlix, parvum forī et satis ōtiī, mēns aequa, vīrēs et corpus sānum, sapientia, amīcī vērī, sine arte mēnsa, nox nōn ebria sed solūta cūrīs, nōn trīstis torus et tamen pudīcus, somnus facilis. Dēsīderā tantum quod habēs, cupe nihil; nōlī timēre ultimum diem aut spērāre.

(Martial 10.47; prose adaptation.—**rēs**, here *property, wealth*.—**ā patre relicta**, i.e., inherited.—**forī**, gen. of the whole with **parvum**.—**sine arte**, i.e., simple, modest.—**ebrius, -a, -um**, *drunken*.—**solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum**, to loosen, free (from).—**torus, -ī**, *bed*.—**nōlī** is used with the inf. for a negative command, *do not . . .*)



*Funeral banquet, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Leopards, early 5th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy*

词源点滴

在西班牙语中，形容词的比较级一般是在形容词之前加 **más** (*more*): **más caro**, **más alto**。这个 **más** 源于本课首页注释中的 **magis**。西班牙语和意大利语中都保留着拉丁语最高级词尾 **-issimus** 的一些痕迹。不过，有这一词尾的形式却并非正常的最高级形式，而是用来加强语气的，相当于 *very*, *exceedingly*。

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	
cārissimus	carissimo	carísimo	<i>very dear</i>
clārissimus	chiarissimo	clarísimo	<i>very clear</i>
altissimus	altissimo	altísimo	<i>very high</i>

In the readings

1. loquacious, loquacity. 8. illusion, illusive, illusory. 11. notary, note. 13. lint.
—从 **salsus** 经由法语产生出了 “sauce”, “saucer”, “saucy”, “sausage”. “Gaul”: di-
vide, division.—institute.—differ, differential, differentiate. “The Good Life”:

in ebriated.—solve, absolve, absolution, dissolve, resolve, solution, resolution, ablative absolute.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 下面是一些更常见的格言、短语、名言和词源知识,它们都是 **ex vocābulāriō huius capitis**(**vocābulārium** 是中世纪拉丁语,对应于 *vocabulary*,源于 **vocāre**,即“对事物的称呼”[单词]的列表):**auctor ignōtus** 意为 *author unknown*,即“anonymous”;**cēna Dominī** 是 *Lord's Supper*;**dūra lēx sed lēx**, *a harsh law, but the law nevertheless*;**lēx nōn scripta**, *customary law* (与 **lēx scripta** 相对——其字面意思是什么?——你也可以猜出 **lēx locī** 的意思了);然后是奥维德对孤独者的警告,**trīstis eris sī sōlus eris**;还有普劳图斯笔下的一个人物所希望的,**lēx eadem uxōrī et virō; ā mēnsā et torō**, *from table and bed* (**torus**, -ī) 是夫妻分居法令,禁止夫妻继续住在一起。

如果知道名词 **lūx** 以及相关的动词 **lūceō**, **lūcere**, *to shine brightly*,就能理解下面这些词或短语了:**lūx et vērītās** 是耶鲁大学的校训,**lūx et lēx** 是北卡罗莱纳大学教堂山分校的校训,**pellucid** 的解释是完全清晰的 (**per + lūc-**),光可以透过 **translucent** 的材料,**Lux** 香皂将使你光彩照人! **Lūcēte, discipulae discipulique, et valēte!**

第二十七课

具有特殊形式和不规则形式的形容词比较等级

具有特殊形式最高级的形容词

有两组形容词具有特殊形式的最高级,除此之外都是规则的:

1. 有六个以 **-lis** 结尾的形容词是通过给词根加上 **-limus**, **-lima**, **-limum** 而构成最高级的。

原级	比较级	最高级
fácilis, -e (<i>easy</i>)	facílior, -ius (<i>easier</i>)	facíl-limus, -a, -um (<i>easiest</i>)
diffícilis, -e (<i>difficult</i>)	diffícílor, -ius (<i>more difficult</i>)	diffícíllimus, -a, -um (<i>most difficult</i>)
símilis, -e (<i>like</i>)	simílíor, -ius (<i>more l.</i>)	simíllimus, -a, -um (<i>most l.</i>)

Dissimilis (*unlike, dissimilar*), **gracilis** (*slender, thin*)和 **humilis** (*low, humble*)也属于这种类型的形容词;所有其他以 **-lis** 结尾的形容词都有规则的的最高级形式(如 **fidélissimus**, **ūtilissimus** 等等)。

2. 任何以 **-er** 结尾的阳性形容词,无论属于何种变格法,都是通过在词尾 **-er**(而不是词根)后面直接加上 **-rimus** 而构成最高级的;请注意, **-er** 形容词的比较级一般是通过给词根加上 **-ior**, **-ius** 构成的(我们知道, **-e** 有时需保留,有时要去掉)。

原级	比较级	最高级
líber, -bera, -berum (<i>free</i>)	libérior, -ius (<i>freer</i>)	libér-rimus, -a, -um (<i>freest</i>)
púlcher, -chra, -chrum (<i>beautiful</i>)	púlchríor, -ius (<i>more beautiful</i>)	pulchér-rimus, -a, -um (<i>most beautiful</i>)

ācer, ācris, ācre
(*keen*)

ācrior, ācrius
(*keener*)

ācerrimus, -a, -um
(*keenest*)

具有不规则比较等级的形容词

有少数几个形容词用到的机会很多,所以非常重要。它们的比较等级极不规则,只能死记硬背。不过,源于这些不规则形式的英语派生词可以极大地帮助我们记忆(参见本课的词源点滴)。以下是其中最常用的几个形容词。¹

原级	比较级	最高级
bōnus, -a, -um (<i>good</i>)	mélior, -ius (<i>better</i>)	óptimus, -a, -um (<i>best</i>)
mágnus, -a, -um (<i>great</i>)	máior, -ius (<i>greater</i>)	máximus, -a, -um (<i>greatest</i>)
málus, -a, -um (<i>bad</i>)	péior, -ius (<i>worse</i>)	péssimus, -a, -um (<i>worst</i>)
múltus, -a, -um (<i>much</i>)	—, plūs (<i>more</i>)	plúrimum, -a, -um (<i>most</i>)
párvus, -a, -um (<i>small</i>)	mínor, mínus (<i>smaller</i>)	mínimus, -a, -um (<i>smallest</i>)
(prae, prō) ² (<i>in front of, before</i>)	prior, -ius (<i>former</i>)	prímus, -a, -um (<i>first</i>)
súperus, -a, -um (<i>that above</i>)	supérior, -ius (<i>higher</i>)	{ sūmmus, -a, -um (<i>highest, furthest</i>) suprémus, -a, -um (<i>highest, last</i>)

Plūs 的变格

在各种不规则形式中,只有 **plūs** 有变格方面的问题。复数形式的 **plūs** 起形容词的作用(如 **plūrēs amīcī**),但却有着 **i-**词干和辅音词干的混合形式(复数属格以 **-ium** 结尾,中性主格和宾格却以 **-a** 而不是 **-ia** 结尾);单数形式的 **plūs** 并不起形容词的作用,而是起中性名词的作用,它后面经常跟一个整体属格(如 **plūs pecūniae**, *more money*, 字面意思是 *more of money*——参见第十五课)。

¹ 对于本书来说重要性稍逊的几个形容词是:

exterus, -a, -um (*foreign*), **exterior, -ius** (*outer*), **extrēmus, -a, -um** (*outermost*)

īferus, -a, -um (*below*), **īnferior, -ius** (*lower*), **īnfimus, -a, -um** (*lowest*)

(**prope, near**), (**propior, -ius** (*nearer*)), (**proximus, -a, -um** (*nearest*))

² **Prior** 和 **prímus** 并没有相应的形容词原级,因为根据“priority”和“primacy”的定义,这些词都蕴含着与一个或多个个人或事物进行比较;不过,介词 **prae** 和 **prō** 是相关的。

	单数		复数	
	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性
<i>Nom.</i>	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	——	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	——	——	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	——	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

词汇表

dēlectātiō, dēlectātiōnis, f., *delight, pleasure, enjoyment* (delectation, delectable, delicious, diletante; cp. **dēlectō, dēlicia, delight**)

népōs, nepōtis, m., *grandson, descendant* (nephew, nepotism, niece)

sōl, sōlis, m., *sun* (solar, solarium, solstice, parasol)

dīligēns, gen. **dīligētis**, *diligent, careful* (diligence, diligently)

dissīmilis, dissīmile, *unlike, different* (dissimilar, dissimilarity, dissemble)

grācilis, grācile, *slender, thin* (gracile)

hūmilis, hūmile, *lowly, humble* (humility, humiliate, humiliation; cp. **humus**, Ch. 37)

māior, māius, comp. adj., *greater; older*; **maiōrēs, maiōrum**, m. pl., *ancestors* (i.e., *the older ones*; major, majority, etc.—see Etymology below).

prīmus, -a, -um, *first, foremost, chief, principal* (primary, primate, prime, primeval, primer, premier, primitive, prim, primo-geniture, prima facie, primordial, primrose)

quot, indecl. adj., *how many, as many as* (quota, quotation, quote, quotient)

sīmilis, sīmile, + gen. or dat., *similar (to), like, resembling* (similarly, simile, assimilate, dissimilar, dissimilarity, simulate, dissimulate, verisimilitude, assemble, resemble, simultaneous; cp. same)

sūperus, -a, -um, *above, upper*; **sūperī, -ōrum**, m. pl., *the gods* (superior, etc.; cp. **superō** and see Etymology below)

ūtilis, ūtile, *useful, advantageous* (what Latin is to YOU!—utility, from **ūtilitās, -tātis**; utilitarian, utilization, utilize; cp. **ūtor**, Ch. 34)

All the irregular adjectival forms given above in this lesson.

pōnō, pōnere, pōsuī, pōsitum, *to put, place, set* (See Etymology at end of chapter.)

prōbō (1), *to approve, recommend; test* (probe, probate, probation, probative, probable, probably, probability, approbation, proof, prove, approve, approval, disprove, improve, reprove, reprobate; cp. **probitās**)

练习与复习

1. Quisque cupit quam pulcherrima atque ūtilissima dōna dare.
2. Quīdam turpēs habent plūrima sed etiam plūra petunt.
3. Ille ōrātor, ab tyrannō superbissimō expulsus, ducem iūcundiōrem

- et lēgēs aequiōrēs dehinc quaesīvit.
4. Summum imperium optimīs virīs semper petendum est.
 5. Senex nepōtibus trīstibus casam patefēcit et eōs trāns līmen invītāvit.
 6. Ostendit hostēs ultimum signum lūce clārissimā illā nocte dedisse.
 7. Iste tyrannus pessimus negāvit sē virōs līberōs umquam oppressisse.
 8. Fidēlissimus servus plūs cēnae ad mēnsam accipiēbat quam trēs peiōrēs.
 9. Āiunt hunc auctōrem vītā humillimam hīc agere.
 10. Cūr dī superī oculōs ā rēbus hūmānīs eō tempore āvertērunt?
 11. Habēsne pecūniam et rēs tuās prae rē pūblicā?
 12. Sōlem post paucās nūbēs gracillimās in caelō hodiē vidēre possumus.
 13. Some believe that very large cities are worse than very small ones.
 14. In return for the three rather small gifts, the young man gave even more and prettier ones to his very sad mother.
 15. Those very large mountains were higher than these.

古代名言

1. Trahit mē nova vīs: videō meliōra probōque, sed peiōra tantum faciō et nesciō cūr. (Ovid.)
2. Quaedam carmina sunt bona; plūra sunt mala. (Martial.)
3. Optimum est. Nihil melius, nihil pulchrius hōc vīdī. (Terence.)
4. Spērō tē et hunc nātālem et plūrimōs aliōs quam fēlicissimōs āctūrū esse. (Pliny.—**nātālis** [diēs], *birthday*.)
5. Quoniam cōsiliū et ratiō sunt in senibus, maiōrēs nostrī summum conciliū appellāvērunt senātum. (Cicero.—**conciliū**, -iī, *council*.)
6. Plūs operae studiūque in rēbus domesticīs nōbīs nunc pōnendum est etiam quam in rēbus mīlitāribus. (Cicero.—**opera**, -ae, *work, effort*.—**domesticus**, -a, -um.—**mīlitāris**, -e.)
7. Neque enim perīculum in rē pūblicā fuit gravius umquam neque ōtium maius. (Cicero.)
8. Sumus sapientiōrēs illīs, quod nōs nātūram esse optimam ducem scīmus. (Cicero.—**optimam**, f. by attraction to the gender of **nātūram**.)
9. Nātūra minimum petit; nātūrae autem sē sapiēns accommodat. (*Seneca.—**accommodāre**, *to adapt*.)
10. Maximum remedium īrae mora est. (*Seneca.)
11. Quī animum vincit et īram continet, eum cum summīs virīs nōn comparō sed eum esse simillimum deō dīcō. (Cicero.—**comparāre**, *to compare*.)
12. Dionysius, tyrannus urbis pulcherrimae, erat vir summae in vīctū temperantiae et in omnibus rēbus dīligentissimus et ācerrimus. Īdem tamen erat ferōx ac iniūstus. Quā ex rē, sī vērū dīcimus, vidēbātur miserrimus. (Cicero.—Dionysius, ruler of Syracuse in the 4th cen. B.C.—**vīctus**, -ūs, *mode of life*.—**temperantia**, -ae.—**in-iūstus**, -a,

-um, unjust.—**Quā ex rē = Ex illā rē.**)

13. Nisi superōs vertere possum, Acheronta movēbō. (Virgil.—**Acheronta**, Gk. acc., *Acheron*, a river in the underworld, here by metonymy *the land of the dead*.)

ALLEY CAT

Caelī, Lesbia nostra, Lesbia illa,
illa Lesbia, quam Catullus ūnam
plūs quam sē atque suōs amāvit omnēs,
nunc in quadriviīs et angiportīs
5 glūbit magnanimī Remī nepōtēs.

(*Catullus 58; meter: hendecasyllabic.—Caelius, a rival of Catullus for Lesbia's favors.—**quadrivium, -iī, crossroads.**—**angiportum, -ī, alley.**—**glūbō, -ere, to peel (back), strip (off);** used of stripping the bark off trees or the skin off an animal, here in an obscene sense.—**Remus**, brother of Romulus, legendary founders of Rome.)

THANKS A LOT, TULLY!

Dīsertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,
quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,
quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,
grātiās tibi maximās Catullus
5 agit, pessimus omnium poēta,
tantō pessimus omnium poēta
quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus.

debated by scholars.—**dīsertus, -a, -um, eloquent, learned.**—**fuēre = fuērunt**, see p. 77.—**post = postea.**—**tantō . . . quantō, just as much . . . as.**—**tū, sc. es.**)

AN UNCLE'S LOVE FOR HIS NEPHEW AND ADOPTED SON

Adulēscēns est cārior mihi quam ego ipse! Atque hic nōn est filiūs meus sed ex frātre meō. Studia frātris iam diū sunt dissimillima meīs. Ego vītā urbānam ēgī et ōtium petīvī et, id quod quīdam fortūnātius putant, uxōrem numquam habuī. Ille, autem, haec omnia fēcit: nōn in forō sed in agrīs vītā ēgit, parvum pecūniae accēpit, uxōrem pudīcam dūxit, duōs filiōs habuit. Ex illō ego hunc maiōrem adoptāvī mihi, ēdūxī ā parvō puerō, amāvī prō meō. In eō adulēscēnte est dēlectātiō mea; solum id est cārum mihi.

(Terence, *Adelphoe* 39–49.—**dūxit, he married.**—**adoptāre.**—**ēdūxī, I raised.**)

词源点滴

拉丁语形容词的不规则比较等级往往可以通过英语派生词来记忆：

bonus

melior: ameliorate

optimus: optimist, optimum, optimal

magnus

maior: major, majority, mayor

maximus: maximum

malus

peior: pejorative

pessimus: pessimist

multus

plūs: plus, plural, plurality, nonplus

parvus

minor: minor, minority, minus, minute, minuet, minister, minstrel

minimus: minimum, minimize

(prō)

prior: prior, priority

prīmus: prime, primacy, primary, primeval, primitive

superus

superior: superior, superiority

summus: summit, sum, consummate

suprēmus: supreme, supremacy

拉丁词 **plūs** 是法语词 **plus** 和意大利语词 **più** 的母词, 在这些罗曼语中, 它们被置于形容词之前以构成比较级。如果给这些比较级加上定冠词, 它就变成了最高级。

拉丁语	法语	意大利语
longior	plus long	più lungo
longissimus	le plus long	il più lungo
cārior	plus cher	più caro
cārissimus	le plus cher	il più caro

由 **pōnō** 产生出了大量派生词: apposite, apposition, component, composite, compost, compound, deponent, deposit, deposition, depot, exponent, exposition, expound, imposition, impost, impostor, juxtaposition, opponent, opposite, positive, post, postpone, preposition, proposition, propound, repository, supposition, transposition。

不过应当注意, “pose”及其复合词并非像我们想象的那样源于 **pōnō**, 而是源于晚期拉丁词 **pausāre**, 后者又源自希腊词 **pausis**, *a pause* 和 **pauein**, *to stop*。在法语中, 这个 **pausāre** 变成了 **poser**, 它在复合词中取代了 **pōnō**。因此, 尽管看上去很像, 但前面在 **pōnō** 之下给出的那些形式与下列单词并无词源上的关联: compose, depose, expose, impose, oppose, propose, repose, suppose, transpose。

In the readings

4. natal, prenatal, postnatal, Natalie. 5. council (vs. **cōsilium**, *counsel*), conciliate, conciliatory. 6. opera, operetta.—domesticate, etc.; cp. **domus**.—military, cp. **mīles**. 9. accommodate, accommodation. 11. comparative, incomparable. 12. victual, victualer, vittles.—temperance, intemperance.—injustice. “An Uncle’s Love”: adopt, adoption.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvē! Quid agis hodiē? Spīrasne? Spērāsne? Rīdēsne? Valēsne? Sī tū valēs, ego valeō! 这里还有一些 **rēs Latīnae**, 使你有一个 **mēns sāna**: 首先, 有一条古老的拉丁语格言说, **sapiēns nihil affīrmat quod nōn probat**; 类似的还有贺拉斯的一句话 (*Epistulae* 1.1.106), **sapiēns ūnō minor est Iove**; 以及耶稣会的座右铭, **ad maiōrem glōriam Deī**。现在, **quid est tempestās? Pluitne? Estne frīgida? Nimbōsa?** 如果你记得以下谚语, 就没有关系: **sōl lūcet omnibus!** (还记得上一课中的 **lūcēre** 吗?) 长有羽毛的鸟聚集在一起, 根据另一条古老的拉丁语谚语, **similis in simili gaudet**。

下面是一些你刚刚学过的不规则比较级和最高级: **meliōrēs priōrēs**, 意译为 *the better have priority*; **maximā cum laude** 和 **summā cum laude** (它将写在你的下一张证书上, **sī es dīligēns in studiō Latīnae!**); **peior bellō est timor ipse bellī** (注意比较夺格); **ē plūribus ūnum**, *one from several*, 这是美国的国家箴言, 即“合众为一”; **prīmus inter parēs**, *first among equals*; **prīmā faciē**, *at first sight*; 最后是 **summum bonum**, *the highest good*, 它当然可以通过学习拉丁语而获得: **valē!**

第二十八课

虚拟式;现在时虚拟式;祈愿句和目的从句

虚拟式

由第一课我们得知,“语气,式”(mood,源于 **modus**)是表达某种动词动作或存在状态的“方式”。到目前为止,我们已经见过三种拉丁语语气中的两种,即直陈式和命令式。我们知道,命令式(imperative,源于 **imperāre, to command**)强调要求某人做某种还没有发生的动作,直陈式(indicative,源于 **indicāre, to point out**)则“指示”(indicate)实际的动作,即在过去实际已经发生(或确定没有发生)的动作,现在正在发生(或确定没有发生)的动作,或将来确定要发生(或不会发生)的动作。

与表示实际性和事实性的直陈式相反,虚拟式一般(但不是全部)表示可能性的、尝试性的、假说性的、理想中的或不真实的活动。比如英语中的例子:“If the other student were here, he would be taking notes”;在这一条件句中,所想象的活动与实际情况相反,英语用助动词“were”和“would”来表示所描述的动作只是理想情况。英语中用来表示可能性或假说性的动作的助动词还有:“may”,“might”,“should”,“would”,“may have”,“would have”等等。

拉丁语中虚拟式的使用要远远多于英语,特别是在各种从句中。它使用的是动词特殊的虚拟形式,而不是助动词。掌握虚拟式涉及两项任务:首先要学习新的形式,这个任务相对简单一些;其次是学习辨识和翻译各种类型的虚拟从句,如果方法比较系统,这也很容易做到。

虚拟式的时态

虚拟式只有四种时态。本课介绍现在时虚拟式,每一种变位法的构词规则

略有不同;而未完成时虚拟式(第二十九课)、完成时虚拟式、过去完成时虚拟式(第三十课)的构词规则对于四种变位法甚至不规则动词都是一样的。

虚拟句

在本课以及接下来的几课中,我们将介绍一系列虚拟句:祝愿句和目的从句(第二十八课),结果从句(第二十九课),间接问句(第三十课),**cum**从句(第三十一课),附带条件从句(第三十二课),条件从句(第三十三课,三种不同的虚拟类型),间接命令句(第三十六课),特征关系从句(第三十八课),疑虑从句(第四十课)。你应当在笔记本或电脑中为这些句式编目,每种类型都要系统地了解三个方面的内容:(1)定义,(2)如何在拉丁语句子中进行辨识,(3)如何翻译成英语。

现在时虚拟式的变位

1. laúdem	móneam	ágam	aúdiam	cápiam
2. laúdēs	móneās	ágās	aúdiās	cápiās
3. laúdet	móneat	ágat	aúdiat	cápiat
1. laudēmus	moneāmus	agāmus	audiāmus	capiāmus
2. laudētis	moneātis	agātis	audiātis	capiātis
3. laúdent	móneant	ágant	aúdiant	cápiant

注意在第一变位法中,特征词干元音由现在时直陈式的 $-ā-$ 变成了现在时虚拟式的 $-ē-$ 。在其他变位法中, $-ā-$ 总是现在时虚拟式的标记,只是要对实际的词干元音做一些变动(第二变位法中的词干元音要变短,第三变位法中要被替换,第四/第三 $-iō$ 变位法中要变成短音 $-i-$);对于第一、第二、第三、第四/第三 $-iō$ 变位法来说,用“we fear a liar”这个句子可以帮助我们记住,人称词尾之前实际的元音分别是 $-ē-$, $-eā-$, $-ā-$ 和 $-iā-$ 。

如果弄不清动词的变位法(例如 **agat** 和 **amat, amet** 和 **monet**),就可能将虚拟式误当成直陈式,所以词汇一定要记牢。

现在时虚拟式被动态的形式当然与主动态相同,只不过使用的是被动词尾。

laúder, laudēris (and remember the alternate **-re** ending, Ch. 18), laudētur; laudēmur, laudēminī, laudēntur
 mónear, moneāris, moneātur; moneāmur, moneāminī, moneāntur
 ágar, agāris, agātur; agāmur, agāminī, agāntur
 aúdiar, audiāris, audiātur; audiāmur, audiāminī, audiāntur
 cápiar, capiāris, capiātur; capiāmur, capiāminī, capiāntur

翻译

虽然有时可以用 *may* 来翻译现在时虚拟式(比如在目的从句中),但事实

上,对虚拟式时态的翻译因虚拟句的类型而异。我们在介绍具体类型的虚拟句时就会明白。

祈愿虚拟式

正如“虚拟式”(subjunctive,源于 **subiungere, to subjoin, subordinate**)一词所暗示的,虚拟式主要用在从句中。然而,虚拟式也可以用在某些独立句或主句中。“祈愿”¹(jussive,源于 **iubere, to order**)虚拟式就是最重要的虚拟独立句之一,而且也是本书中唯一正式介绍的类型。祈愿句表达一种口气较弱的命令或劝诫,特别是第一或第三人称的单数或复数(命令式一般用于第二人称);**nē**用来指否定性的命令。这类句子很容易辨识,因为句子的主要动词(通常也是唯一的动词)是虚拟式;虽然有时可以用 *may* 和 *should* 来翻译祈愿虚拟式(特别是对于第二人称:**semper spērēs, you should always hope**),但最常见的却是用 *let* 加(宾格的)主语名词或代词(即 *me, us, him, her, it, them*)。

Cōgitem nunc dē hāc rē, et tum nōn errābō, let me now think about this matter, and then I will not make a mistake.

Discipulus discat aut discēdat, let the student either learn or leave.

Doceāmus magnā cum dēlectātiōne linguam Latīnam, let us teach the Latin language with great delight.

Nē id faciāmus, let us not do this.

Audeant illī virī et fēminae esse fortēs, let those men and women dare to be brave.

目的从句

目的从句表达的是主句动作的目的或目标;例如,“we study Latin so that we may learn more about ancient Rome”,或者“we study Latin to improve our English”。由第二个例句可见,英语经常用不定式来表达目的,但这种不定式用法在拉丁语散文中并不常见(虽然在韵文中并非罕见)。拉丁语往往用由 **ut** 引出的虚拟从句来表示目的,或者用由 **nē** 引出的从句来表示否定性的目的;现在时目的从句通常用助动词 *may* 来翻译,但是如果目的从句的主语和主句主语一致,那么往往用不定式来翻译它。考察下面的拉丁语句子和几种可以接受的翻译:

Hoc dicit ut eōs iuuet.

He says this to help them.

in order to help them.

¹ 亦称“希求式”或“弱祈使式”。——译者注

that he may help them.

so that he may help them.

in order that he may help them.

前两种翻译更为口语化,其余三种则更加正式。

Discēdit **nē** id **audiat**.

He leaves in order not to hear this.

so that he may not hear this.

Cum cūrā docet **ut** discipulī bene **discant**.

He teaches with care so (that) his students may learn well.

Hoc facit **nē** capiātur.

He does this in order not to be captured.

Librōs legimus **ut** multa **discāmus**.

We read books (in order) to learn many things.

Bonōs librōs nōbīs dent **nē** malōs **legāmus**.

Let them give us good books so that we may not read bad ones.

辨识目的从句并不困难,只需找到由 **ut** 或 **nē** 引出的从句就可以了。从句的末尾是一个虚拟式动词,回答关于“为什么”或“为了什么目的”的问题。

词汇表

arma, **-ōrum**, n. pl., *arms, weapons* (armor, army, armament, armada, armature, armistice, armadillo, alarm, disarmament, gendarme)

cursus, **-ūs**, m., *running, race; course* (courser, cursor, cursory, cursive, concourse, discourse, recourse, precursor, excursion; cp. **currō**)

lūna, **-ae**, f., *moon* (lunar, lunacy, lunate, lunatic, lunation, interlunar)

occāsiō, **occāsiōnis**, f., *occasion, opportunity* (occasional; cp. **occidō**, Ch. 31)

parēns, **parētis**, m./f., *parent* (parentage, parental, parenting; cp. **pariō**, **parere**, to give birth to)

stēlla, **-ae**, f., *star, planet* (stellar, constellation, interstellar)

vēsper, **vēsperis** or **vēsperī**, m., *evening; evening star* (vesper, vesperal, vespertine)

mórtuus, **-a**, **-um**, *dead* (mortuary; cp. **mors**, **mortālis**, **immortālis**, and, Ch. 34, **morior**)

prīnceps, gen. **prīncipis**, *chief, foremost*; m./f. noun, *leader, emperor* (prince, principal, principality; cp. **prīmus**, **prīncipium**)

ut, conj. + subj., *in order that, so that, that, in order to, so as to, to*; + indic., *as, when*

nē, adv. and conj. with subjunctives of command and purpose, *not; in order that . . . not, that . . . not, in order not to*

cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *to go, withdraw; yield to, grant, submit* (accede, access, accession, antecedent, ancestor, cede, concede, deceased, exceed, intercede, precede, proceed, recede, secede, succeed; cp. **discēdō**)

dēdicō (1), *to dedicate* (dedication, dedicatory, rededication)

égeō, egēre, éguī + abl. or gen., *to need, lack, want* (indigence, indigent; do not confuse with **ēgī**, from **agō**)

épleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *to fill, fill up, complete* (expletive, expletory, deplete, replete; cp. **plēnus, pleō, to fill**)

praéstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, *to excel; exhibit, show, offer, supply, furnish*

táceō, tacēre, tácuī, tácitum, *to be silent, leave unmentioned* (tacit, taciturn, taciturnity, reticence, reticent)

练习与复习

1. Auctor sapiēns et dīligēns turpia vītet et bona probet.
2. Itaque prō patriā etiam maiōra meliōraque nunc faciāmus.
3. Nepōs tuus ā mēnsā discēdat nē ista verba acerba audiat.
4. Nē imperātor superbus crēdat sē esse fēliciōrem quam virum humilimum.
5. Quisque petit quam fēlicissimum et urbānissimum modum vītae.
6. Quīdam dēlectātiōnēs et beneficia aliīs praestant ut beneficia similia recipiant.
7. Multī medicī lūcem sōlis fuisse primum remedium putant.
8. Imperium ducī potentiōrī dabunt ut hostēs ācerrimōs āvertat.
9. Hīs verbīs trīstibus nūntiātīs, pars hostium duōs prīncipēs suōs reliquit.
10. Maiōrēs putābant deōs superōs habēre corpora hūmāna pulcherrima et fortissima.
11. Uxor pudīca eius haec decem ūtilissima tum probāvit.
12. Let him not think that those dissimilar laws are worse than the others (translate with and without **quam**).
13. They will send only twenty men to do this very easy thing in the forum.
14. They said: "Let us call the arrogant emperor a most illustrious man in order not to be expelled from the country."
15. Therefore, let them not order this very wise and very good woman to depart from the dinner.

古代名言

1. Ratiō dūcat, nōn fortūna. (*Livy.)
2. Arma togae cēdant. (Cicero.—**toga, -ae**, the garment of peace and civil, in contrast to military, activity.)
3. Ex urbe nunc discēde nē metū et armīs opprimar. (Cicero.)
4. Nunc ūna rēs mihi prōtinus est faciēda ut maximum ōtium et sōlā-

- cium habeam. (Terence.)
5. Rapiāmus, amīcī, occāsiōnem dē diē. (*Horace.)
 6. Corpus enim somnō et multīs aliīs rēbus eget ut valeat; animus ipse sē alit. (Seneca.)
 7. Quī beneficium dedit, taceat; nārret quī accēpit. (*Seneca.)
 8. Dē mortuīs nihil nisi bonum dīcāmus. (Diogenes Laertius.)
 9. Parēns ipse nec habeat vitia nec toleret. (Quintilian.)
 10. In hāc rē ratiō habenda est ut monitiō acerbitāte careat. (Cicero.—**monitiō, -ōnis, admonition.**—**acerbitās, -tātis, noun of acerbus.**)
 11. Fēminae ad lūdōs semper veniunt ut videant—et ut ipsae videantur. (Ovid.)
 12. Arma virumque canō quī p̄rimus ā lītoribus Trōiae ad Italiam vēnit. (Virgil.—**canō, -ere, to sing about.**)

PLEASE REMOVE MY NAME FROM YOUR MAILING LIST!

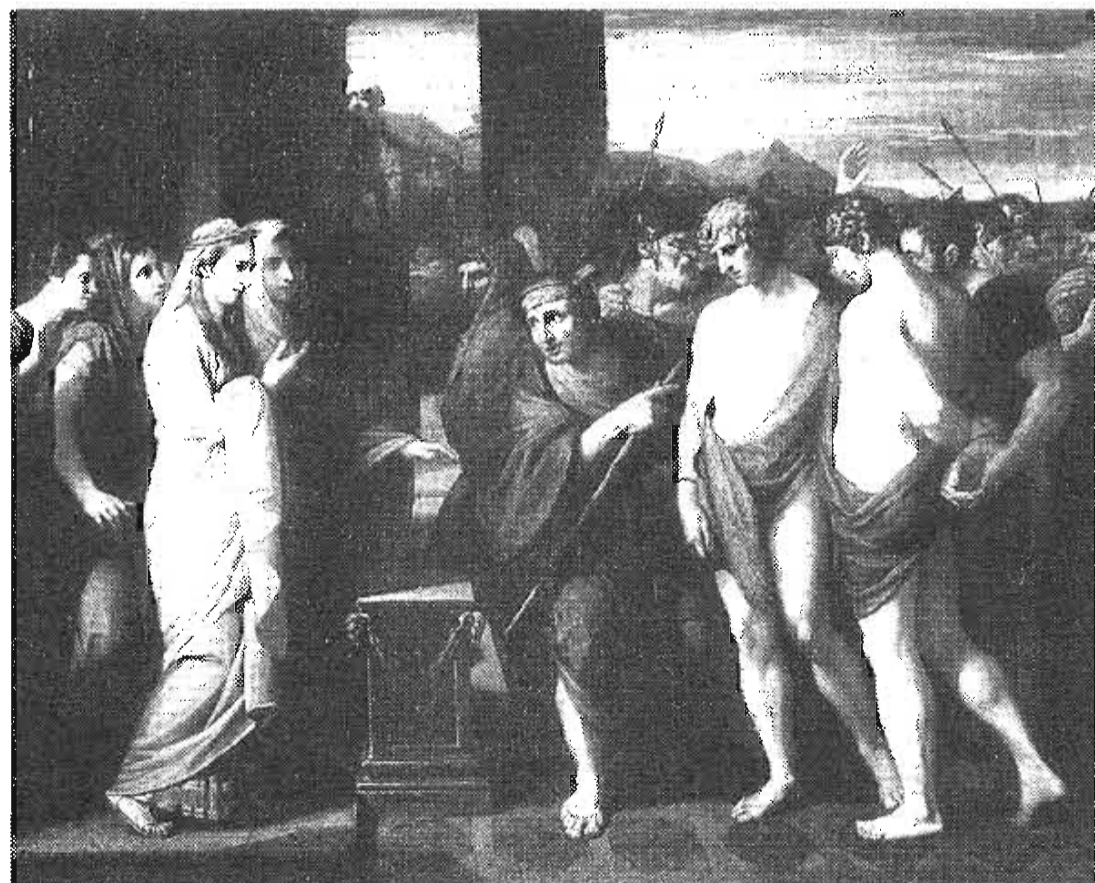
Cūr nōn mitto meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
Nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs.

(*Martial 7.3; meter: elegiac couplet. Roman poets, just like American writers, would often exchange copies of their works with one another; but Pontilianus' poems are not Martial's cup of tea!—**mitto**: final **-ō** was often shortened in Latin verse.—**Pontiliānus, -ī.**—**Nē . . . mittās**, not jussive, but purpose, following the implied statement, "I don't send mine to you. . . .")

TO HAVE FRIENDS ONE MUST BE FRIENDLY

Ut praestem Pyladēn, aliquis mihi praestet Orestēn.
Hoc nōn fit verbīs, Mārce; ut amēris, amā.

(*Martial 6.11.9–10; meter: elegiac couplet. Orestes and Pylades were a classic pair of very devoted friends; Martial cannot play the role of Pylades unless someone proves a real Orestes to him.—**Pyladēn** and **Orestēn** are Greek acc. sg. forms.—**fit, is accomplished.**)



Brought as Victims before Iphigenia
Tate Gallery, London, Great Britain

THE DAYS OF THE WEEK

Diēs dictī sunt ā deīs quōrum nōmina Rōmānī quibusdam stēllīs dēdicāvērunt. Primum enim diem ā Sōle appellāvērunt, quī prīnceps est omnium stēllārum ut īdem diēs est prae omnibus diēbus aliīs. Secundum diem ā Lūnā appellāvērunt, quae ex Sōle lūcem accēpit. Tertium ab stēllā Mārtis, quae vesper appellātur. Quārtum ab stēllā Mercuriī. Quīntum ab stēllā Iovis. Sextum ā Veneris stēllā, quam Lūciferum appellāvērunt, quae inter omnēs stēllās plūrimum lūcis habet. Septimum ab stēllā Sātūrnī, quae dīcitur cursum suum trīgintā annīs explēre. Apud Hebraeos autem diēs prīmus dīcitur ūnus diēs sabbatī, quī in linguā nostrā diēs dominicus est, quem pāgānī Sōlī dēdicāvērunt. Sabbatum autem septimus diēs ā dominicō est, quem pāgānī Sātūrnō dēdicāvērunt.

(Isidore of Seville, *Orīginēs* 5.30, 7th cen.—Mārs, Mārtis.—Mercurius, -ī.—Iuppiter, Iovis.—Venus, Veneris.—Lūciferus, -ī, *Lucifer, light-bringer*.—Sātūrnus, -ī.—trīgintā, 30.—Hebraeus, -ī, *Hebrew*.—sabbatum, -ī, *the Sabbath*; ūnus diēs sabbatī, i.e., *the first day after the Sabbath*.—dominicus, -a, -um, *of the Lord, the Lord's*.—pāgānus, -ī, *rustic, peasant; here, pagan*.)

词源点滴

“Alarm”源于意大利语 **all' arme** (*to arms*), 表示 **ad illa arma**。

下面这些词源于 **cēdō** 的一种加强形式 **cessō**: cease, cessation, incessant。

在拉丁语中, 除第一变位法之外, 所有变位法动词的现在时虚拟式中总有 **-ā-** 出现; 在意大利语和西班牙语中, **-ā-** 也出现在除第一变位法之外的所有变位法动词的现在时虚拟式中。西班牙语甚至在第一变位法动词的现在时虚拟式中还保留了拉丁语的特征元音 **-ē-**。

In the readings

“Days of the Week”: martial.—mercury, mercurial.—Jovian, by Jove! jovial.—Venusian, venereal, venery.—lucifer, lucifera, luciferin, luciferous.—Saturnian, Saturday, saturnine.—Dominic, Dominica, Dominican, dominical; cp. **dominus/ domina**.—paganism, paganize.

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 下面是一些来自本课新词汇的短语: 老师和监护人可以充当 **in locō parentis**; **mortuī nōn mordent**, “死人不会告密”(直译为 *the dead don't bite!*); **occāsiō fūrem facit**, *opportunity makes a thief*; 了解“水门事件”的人能够看出“expletives deleted”¹ 的词源; **ēditio prīnceps** 是指 *first edition*; **tacet** 是一种

¹ 指从书面文件中删除的诅咒语, 该短语是在“水门事件”期间宣读尼克松总统谈话的书面记录时而广为人知的。——译者注

音乐记号,表示让歌手或乐器演奏者不出声;与 *cursus* 相关的是 *curriculum*, *running*, *course*, *course of action*, 于是简历呈现了你的 *curriculum vitae*; 纽约大学(*filiō meō grātiās!*)的校训是 *perstāre et praestāre*, *to persevere and to excel*。

现在我们来看祈愿式。首先,我希望我在怀俄明州的学生都把 *arma togae cēdant* 看成他们州的座右铭;另一条座右铭是维吉尔的 *nē cēde malīs*, *yield not to evils*, 它是命令式而不是祈愿式,其中有新动词 *cēdere*; 古代的军事分析家 *Vegetius* 曾经建议我们, *quī dēsīderat pācem, praeparet bellum*; 我保证所有《星球大战》的影迷们都猜得出 *sit vīs tēcum* 是什么意思!

朋友们,在说再见之前,我还要再讲一句。虽然祈愿式常见于第一和第三人称,但它有时也用于第二人称,作为命令式的替代,这时用 *should* 或 *may* 来翻译;下面这句来自无名氏的谚语就是一个例子,它和前面的 *Pylades* 阅读材料说的是同一个意思: *ut amīcum habeās, sīs amīcus*, *in order to have a friend, you should be a friend*。顺便说一句,我把第一人称复数的祈愿式称为“沙拉虚拟式”(还记得 *VENI, VIDI, VEGI* 吗?),因为它总是包含“let us”¹。你又倒胃口了吧!现在俏皮话也该结束了。Lettuce juss² 说再见: *amīcī amīcaequē meae, semper valeātis!*

¹ let us 和 lettuce(莴苣、生菜)是谐音。——译者注

² 这里 lettuce 对应 let us; juss 影射本课讲的 jussive, 对应 just。——译者注

第二十九课

未完成时虚拟式；
Sum 和 Possum 的现在时和未完成时虚拟式；
结果从句

未完成时虚拟式

在虚拟式的所有时态中,未完成时虚拟式也许是最容易掌握的。它实际上就是现在时主动态不定式+现在时系统的(主动态或被动态)人称词尾,而且是长音-ē-(当然,在词末的-m, -r, -t, -nt 以及词中的-nt-之前的情况除外)。下列词形变化表中给出了例词的某些形式;完整的变位表参见附录 p.445—446。

1. laudāre-m	laudāre-r	ágerer	audīrem	cáperem
2. laudārē-s	laudārē-ris	agerēris	audīrēs	cáperēs
3. laudāre-t	laudārē-tur	agerētur	audīret	cáperet
1. laudārē-mus	laudārē-mur	agerémur	audīrémus	caperémus
2. laudārē-tis	laudārē-minī	agerēminī	audīrētis	caperētis
3. laudāre-nt	laudārē-ntur	ageréntur	audīrent	cáperent

Sum 和 Possum 的现在时和未完成时虚拟式

Sum 和 possum 的现在时虚拟式是不规则的(虽然其变化模式是一致的),必须死记。然而,其未完成时虚拟式却遵循着上面给出的规则:

现在时虚拟式		未完成时虚拟式	
1. sim	póssim	éssem	póssem
2. sīs	póssīs	éssēs	póssēs
3. sit	póssit	éssēt	póssēt
1. símus	possímus	essémus	possémus
2. sítis	possítis	essétis	possétis
3. sint	póssint	éssent	póssent

应当特别注意区分 **possum** 的现在时虚拟式和未完成时虚拟式。

未完成时虚拟式的用法和翻译

未完成时虚拟式可以用于主要动词是过去时的各种类型的从句,包括目的从句和结果从句。所有虚拟式都要根据从句的类型来翻译,但未完成时虚拟式有时会用一些助动词来翻译,比如 *were, would* 以及在目的从句中使用的 *might* (与现在时虚拟式使用的 *may* 比较)。考察下列含目的从句的例句:

Hoc dicit **ut** eōs **iuvet**.

He says this (in order) to help them.

*so that he **may** help them.*

Hoc dixit (dīcēbat) **ut** eōs **iuvāret**.

He said (kept saying) this (in order) to help them.

*so that he **might** help them.*

Hoc facit **nē** urbs **capiātur**.

*He does this so that the city **may** not be captured.*

Hoc fēcit (faciēbat) **nē** urbs **caperētur**.

*He did (was doing) this so that the city **might** not be captured.*

要想掌握虚拟式(注意到目的从句了吗?!),别忘了:(1)了解每种从句类型的定义,(2)懂得如何辨识,(3)知道每种类型应当如何翻译虚拟式动词。在接下来对结果从句的讨论以及后续课程中,切记定义、辨识、翻译这三个方面。

结果从句

结果从句表明主句动作的结果。目的从句回答“为什么要做”的问题,结果从句则回答“结果是什么”的问题。英语中结果从句的例子有:“it is raining so hard *that the streets are flooding*”,“she studied Latin so diligently *that she knew it like a Roman*”。请注意,英语用“that”引导这样的从句,而且用直陈式,一般没有助动词(即没有 *may* 或 *might*)。

拉丁语中的结果从句以 **ut** 开头,含有一个虚拟式动词(通常在句尾)。结果从句辨识起来并不困难,也很容易与目的从句区分开来。这不仅是因为语义和语境有助于我们进行判别,而且也因为结果从句的主句通常包含一个表示程度的副词(**ita, tam, sic, so**)或形容词(**tantus, so much, so great**),示意下面将会引出一个结果从句。此外,如果从句描述一个否定性的结果,那么它将包含 **nōn, nihil, nēmō, numquam, nūllus** 等否定词(而否定性的目的从句则以 **nē** 引导)。

认真分析下面的例句,注意在结果从句中(与目的从句比较),虚拟式动词一般按照直陈式来翻译,不带助动词(*may* 或 *might* 仅在描述可能的或理想的结果而非实际结果时才使用)。

Tanta fēcit **ut** urbem **servāret**, *he did such great things that he saved the city.*
(结果从句)

Haec fēcit **ut** urbem **servāret**, *he did these things that he might save the city.*
(目的从句)

Tam strēnuē labōrat **ut** multa **perficiat**, *he works so energetically that he accomplishes many things.* (结果从句)

Strēnuē labōrat **ut** multa **perficiat**, *he works energetically so that he may accomplish many things.* (目的从句)

Hoc **tantā** benevolentīā dīxit **ut** eōs **nōn offenderet**, *he said this with such great kindness that he did not offend them.* (结果从句)

Hoc **magnā** benevolentīā dīxit **nē** eōs **offenderet**, *he said this with great kindness in order that he might not offend them.* (目的从句)

Saltus erat angustus, **ut** paucī Graecī multōs militēs prohibēre **possent**, *the pass was narrow, so that a few Greeks were able to stop many soldiers.* (结果从句)

我们注意到,最后这句话的主句并不包含像 **ita** 或 **tam** 这样的“信号词”,但是从语境可以看得很清楚,**ut** 从句表示道路狭窄的结果(修建道路显然不是为了阻挡波斯人,只是它过于狭窄,以致波斯人实际上被阻挡了)。

词汇表

fātum, -ī, n., *fate; death* (fatal, fatalism, fatality, fateful, fairy; cp. **fābula**, **fāma**, and **for**, Ch. 40)

ingénium, -ī, n., *nature, innate talent* (ingenuity, genius, genial, congenial; cp. **genus**, **gens**, **gignō**, *to create, give birth to*)

moénia, **moénium**, n. pl., *walls of a city* (munitions, ammunition; cp. **mūniō**, *to fortify*)

nāta, -ae, f., *daughter* (prenatal, postnatal, Natalie; cp. **nātūra**, **nātālis**, *of birth, natal*, **nāscor**, Ch. 34)

ōsculum, -ī, n., *kiss* (osculate, osculation, osculant, oscular, osculatory)

sīdus, **sīderis**, n., *constellation, star* (sidereal, consider, desire)

dīgnus, -a, -um + abl., *worthy, worthy of* (dignify, dignity from **dignitās**, Ch. 38, indignation from **indignātiō**, deign, disdain, dainty)

dūrus, -a, -um, *hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, difficult* (dour, durable, duration, during, duress, endure, obdurate)

tāntus, -a, -um, *so large, so great, of such a size* (tantamount)

dénique, adv., *at last, finally, lastly*

íta, adv. used with adjs., vbs., and advs., *so, thus*

quídem, postpositive adv., *indeed, certainly, at least, even*; **nē . . . quídem**, *not . . . even*

síc, adv. most commonly with verbs, *so, thus (sic)*

tam, adv. with adjs. and advs., *so, to such a degree*; **tam . . . quam**, *so . . . as*; **tamquam**, *as it were, as if, so to speak*

vērō, adv., *in truth, indeed, to be sure, however (very, verily, etc.; cp. vērus, vēritās)*

cóndō, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, *to put together or into, store; found, establish (= con- + dō, dare; condiment, abscond, recondite, sconce)*

conténdō, **-téndere**, **-téndī**, **-téntum**, *to strive, struggle, contend; hasten (contender, contentious; cp. tendō, to stretch, extend)*

mólliō, **mollíre**, **mollívī**, **mollítum**, *to soften; make calm or less hostile (mollescent, mollify, mollusk, emollient; cp. mollis, soft, mild)*

púgnō (1), *to fight (pugnacious, impugn, pugilist, pugilism; cp. oppugnō, Ch. 39)*

respóndeō, **-spondēre**, **-spóndī**, **-spónsum**, *to answer (respond, response, responsive, responsibility, correspond)*

súrgō, **súrgere**, **surréxī**, **surréctum**, *to get up, arise (surge, resurgent, resurrection, insurgent, insurrection, source, resource)*

练习与复习

1. Prīnceps arma meliōra in manibus mīlitum posuit, ut hostēs ter-rērent.
2. Hostēs quidem negāvērunt sē arma dissimilia habēre.
3. Pars mīlitum lūcem diēi vītāvit nē hīc vidērentur.
4. Sōlem prīmam lūcem caelī superī, lūnam prīmam lūcem vesperī, et stēllās oculōs noctis appellābant.
5. Illī adulēscētēs sapientiae dēnique cēdant ut fēlīciōrēs hīs sint.
6. Sapientēs putant beneficia esse potentiōra quam verba acerba et turpia.
7. Quīdam magister verba tam dūra discipulīs dīxit ut discēderent.
8. Respondērunt auctōrem hōrum novem remediōrum esse medicam potentissimam.
9. Nihil vērō tam facile est ut sine labōre id facere possīmus.
10. Prō labōre studiōque patria nostra nōbīs plūrimās occāsiōnēs bonās praestat.
11. Parentēs plūrima ōscula dedērunt nātae gracilī, in quā maximam dēlectātiōnem semper inveniēbant.
12. The words of the philosopher were very difficult, so that those listening were unable to learn them.
13. The two women wished to understand these things so that they might not live base lives.
14. Those four wives were so pleasant that they received very many kindnesses.

15. He said that the writer's third poem was so beautiful that it delighted the minds of thousands of citizens.

古代名言

1. Omnia vincit Amor; et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (Virgil.)
2. Urbem clārissimam condidī; mea moenia vīdī; explēvī cursum quem Fāta dederant. (Virgil.)
3. Ita dūrus erās ut neque amōre neque precibus mollīrī possēs. (Terence.—**prex, precis**, f., *prayer*.)
4. Nēmō quidem tam ferōx est ut nōn mollīrī possit, cultūrā datā. (Horace.—**cultūra, -ae**.)
5. Difficile est saturam nōn scrībere; nam quis est tam patiēns malae urbis ut sē teneat? (Juvenal.—**patiēns**, gen. **patientis**, *tolerant of*.)
6. Fuit quondam in hāc rē pūblicā tanta virtūs ut virī fortēs cīvem perniciōsum ācriōribus poenīs quam acerbissimum hostem reprimerent. (Cicero.—**perniciōsus, -a, -um**, *pernicious*.—**re-primō**, cp. **op-primō**.)
7. Ita praeclāra est recuperātiō libertātis ut nē mors quidem in hāc rē sit fugienda. (Cicero.—**recuperātiō, -ōnis**, *recovery*.)
8. Nē ratiōnēs meōrum periculōrum ūtilitātem rēi pūblīcae vincant. (Cicero.—**ūtilitās, -tātis**, *advantage*; cp. **ūtilis**.)
9. Eō tempore Athēniēnsēs tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut decemplex numerum hostium superārent, et hōs sīc perterruērunt ut in Asiam refugerent. (Nepos.—**Athēniēnsēs, -ium**, *Athenians*.—**decemplex, -icis**, *tenfold*.—**per-terreō**.)
10. Ōrātor exemplum dignum petat ab Dēmōsthene illō, in quō tantum studium tantusque labor fuisse dīcuntur ut impedīmenta nātūrae dīligentiā industriāque superāret. (Cicero.—**exemplum, -ī**, *example*.—**Dēmōsthenēs, -thenis**, a famous Greek orator.—**impedīmentum, -ī**.—**dīligentia, -ae**.—**industria, -ae**.)



Demosthenes
Vatican Museums, Vatican State

11. Praecepta tua sint brevia ut cito mentēs discipulōrum ea discant teneantque memoriā fidēli. (Horace.—**praeceptum, -ī, precept.**)
 12. Nihil tam difficile est ut nōn possit studiō invēstīgārī. (Terence.—**invēstīgāre, to track down, investigate.**)
 13. Bellum autem ita suscipiātur ut nihil nisi pāx quaesīta esse videātur. (Cicero.)
 14. Tanta est vīs probitātis ut eam etiam in hoste dīligāmus. (Cicero.)

HOW MANY KISSES ARE ENOUGH?

Quaeris, Lesbia, quot bāsia tua sint mihi satis? Tam multa bāsia quam magnus numerus Libyssae harēnae aut quam sīdera multa quae, ubi tacet nox, furtīvōs amōrēs hominum vident—tam bāsia multa (nēmō numerum scīre potest) sunt satis Catullō īnsānō!

(Catullus 7; prose adaptation.—**quot . . . sint, how many . . . are** (an indirect question; see Ch. 30)—**Libyssae, Libyan, African.**—**harēna, -ae, sand, here = the grains of sand.**—**furtīvus, -a, -um, stolen, secret.**—**īnsānus, -a, -um.**)

THE NERVOUSNESS OF EVEN A GREAT ORATOR

Ego dehinc ut respondērem surrēxī. Quā sollicitūdine animī surgēbam—dī immortalēs—et quō timōre! Semper quidem magnō cum metū incipiō dīcere. Quotiēscumque dīcō, mihi videor in iūdicium venīre nōn solum ingenī sed etiam virtūtis atque officī. Tum vērō ita sum perturbātus ut omnia timērem. Dēnique mē collēgī et sīc pugnāvī, sīc omnī ratiōne contendī ut nēmō mē neglēxisse illam causam putāret.

(Cicero, *Prō Cluentiō* 51.—**sollicitūdō, -dinis, f., anxiety.**—**quotiēscumque, adv., whenever.**—The genitives **ingenī, virtūtis, and officī** all modify **iūdicium.**—**per-turbāre, to disturb, confuse.**—**colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, to gather, collect, control.**)

YOU'RE ALL JUST WONDERFUL!

Nē laudet dignōs, laudat Callistratus omnēs:
 cui malus est nēmō, quis bonus esse potest?

(*Martial 12.80; meter: elegiac couplet.—**dignōs, i.e., only the deserving.**—**Callistratus, a Greek name, meant to suggest perhaps a former slave.**—**quis . . . potest, supply eī, antecedent of cui, to a man to whom.**)

词源点滴

罗曼语典型的副词词尾 **-mente** 或 **-ment** 源于拉丁词 **mente** (**mēns** 的夺格), 它最初用作方式夺格, 后来成为一种副词后缀。下列例词均植根于我们已经学过的拉丁语形容词。

拉丁词	意大利语副词	西班牙语副词	法语副词
dūrā mente	duramente	duramente	durement
clārā mente	chiaramente	claramente	clairement

sōlā mente	solamente	solamente	seulement
certā mente	certamente	certamente	certainement
dulcī mente	dolcemente	dulcemente	doucement
brevī mente	brevemente	brevemente	brèvement
facilī mente	facilmente	fácilmente	facilement

拉丁词 **sīc** 是意大利语词 **sì**、西班牙语词 **sí** 和法语词 **si** 的母词, 意为 *yes*。

In the readings

3. precatory, precarious, pray, prayer. 5. patient. 10. exemplar, exemplary, exemplify. 12. vestige, vestigial. “Nervousness”: solicitous, solicitude.— perturbation.—collection. “Kisses”: arena.—furtive.—insanity.

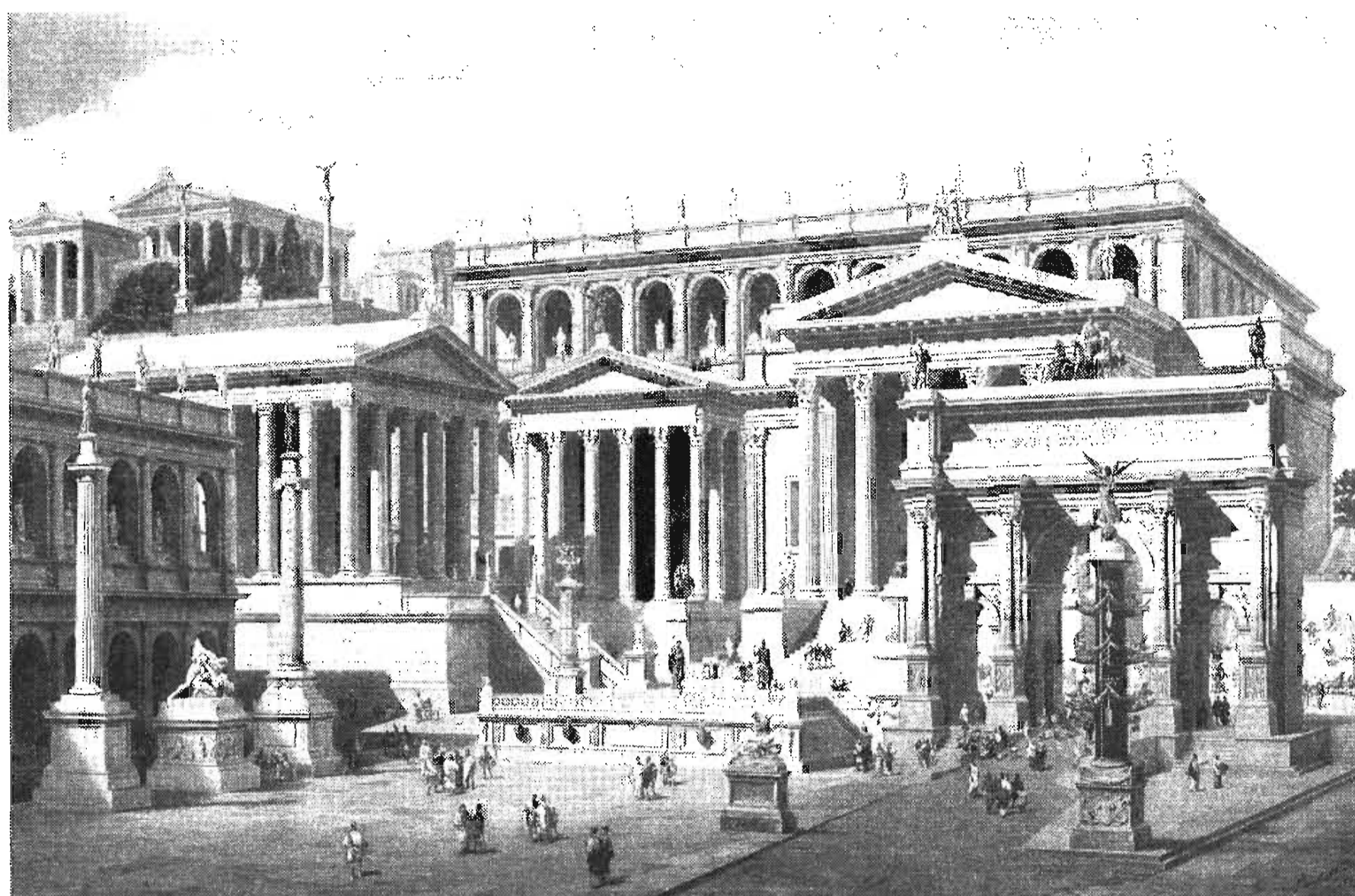
欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvē! 爱看《今晚秀》(*Tonight Show*)的人知道我为什么会把结果从句称为“约翰尼·卡森(Johnny Carson)从句”¹: 在讲述诸多逸闻趣事时, 约翰尼总是以诸如 “I saw this fellow the other night who was *so funny* . . .” 这样的话开始。然后埃德·麦克马洪(Ed McMahon)(或者某位观众)会附和说, “*How funny was he, Johnny?*” 接着, 约翰尼总会以一句结果从句来回答他, “*Why, he was so funny that . . . !*”

Sunt multae dēlectātiōnēs in novō vocābulāriō nostrō: 比如弗吉尼亚州的座右铭, **sīc semper tyrannīs**, *thus always to tyrants* (death, i.e.!). **ingenium**, 实际上意为 *something inborn*, 比如罗马男人的 **genius**(其天生的守护精灵, 与之相对的女性的守护精灵是 **iūnō**, 她后来被放大和神化为女神朱诺[Juno]); **moenia** 与 **mūnīre** 的联系使我们想到, 防御墙是古代人最好的军需品, 有一句古老的谚语说, **praemonitus, praemūnītus**, *forewarned (is) forearmed*; **sīc** 是一种编者注, 意为 *thus (it was written)*, 用来指所引文本中的一处错误或特殊之处。

词汇表中还出现了一个很可爱的词: **ōsculum** 是用来指 *kiss* 的本族语 (**bāsiūm** 则似乎是诗人卡图卢斯从北方引入拉丁语的), 它其实是 **ōs, ōris** (第十四课)的指小词, 所以直译为 *little mouth*(这也许证明, 罗马人在接吻时会“嘬起嘴”!) 顺便指出, 卡图卢斯喜欢发明语词, 其中之一便是 **bāsiātiō**, *kissification* 或 *smooch-making*。(顺便提及, “smooch”并非源于拉丁语, 而是源于日耳曼语, 与“smack”有关, 比如“to smack one’s lips”, 有些人在享用一个吻或抹有“Smucker’s”果酱的切片面包之前也许会这样做!) **Rīdēte et valēte!**

¹ 《今晚秀》是美国深夜播出的一个电视节目, 内容包括名人访谈和音乐。约翰尼·卡森和埃德·麦克马洪都曾主持过这一节目。——译者注



Reconstruction of the Roman Forum, Soprintendenza alle Antichita, Rome, Italy

第三十课

完成时和过去完成时虚拟式;间接问句;时态序列

完成时和过去完成时虚拟式

和现在时系统的直陈式一样,完成时系统的虚拟式也遵循同样的基本构成规则,不论动词属于哪种变位法。完成时的虚拟式主动态是完成时词干+**-erī-**+人称词尾(**-m, -t**和**-nt**之前是短音**-i-**);过去完成时的虚拟式主动态是完成时词干+**-issē-**+人称词尾(**-m, -t**和**-nt**之前是**-e-**)。被动态则是用虚拟式**sim**和**essem**取代相应的直陈式**sum**和**eram**。

Laudō的各种形式见下;其他例词(依照同一模式)的形式见附录。

完成时虚拟式主动态

单数 **laudāv-erim, laudāverīs, laudāverit**
复数 **laudāverīmus, laudāverītis, laudāverint**

请注意,除第一人称单数和某些虚拟式中的长音**-ī-**外,这些形式与将来完成时直陈式的形式相同;至于它们到底是直陈式还是虚拟式,可以根据句子的语境来判断。

过去完成时虚拟式主动态

单数 **laudāv-íssem, laudāvissēs, laudāvisset**
复数 **laudāvissēmus, laudāvissētis, laudāvissent**

请注意,这些形式类似于完成时主动态不定式**laudāvisse**+各种词尾(除了在**-m, -t**和**-nt**之前都是长音**-ē-**;试与未完成时虚拟式比较,后者类似于现在

时主动态不定式+各种词尾)。

完成时虚拟式被动态

单数 laudátus, -a, -um sim, laudátus sīs, laudátus sit

复数 laudátī, -ae, -a sīmus, laudátī sītis, laudátī sint

过去完成时虚拟式被动态

单数 laudátus, -a, -um essem, laudátus essēs, laudátus esset

复数 laudátī, -ae, -a essēmus, laudátī essētis, laudátī essent

翻译和用法

与现在时和未完成时的虚拟式一样,完成时和过去完成时的虚拟式也可以(按照下面将要讨论的时态序列)用在各种从句中,并作各种翻译。正如 *may* 和 *might/would* 有时分别被用来翻译现在时和未完成时虚拟式, *may have* 和 *might have/would have* 有时也分别被用来翻译完成时和过去完成时虚拟式;类似地,它们一般按照直陈式来翻译,不带助动词。最好的方法就是针对每一种从句类型学习相应的翻译规则。

动词变位缩写式

我们已经学习了如何将一个动词完整地变位成它的各种限定形式;下面是 *agō, agere, ēgī, āctum*(比较第二十一课)的第三人称单数的动词变位缩写式:

直陈式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	ágit	áget	agēbat	égit	égerit	égerat
被动态	ágitur	agētur	agēbātur	áctus est	áctus érit	áctus érat

虚拟式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	ágat	——	ágeret	égerit	——	ēgisset
被动态	agátur	——	agerētur	áctus sit	——	áctus ésset

间接问句

间接问句是这样一种从句,它转述某个问题(比如,“they asked what Gaius was doing”以及“they asked, ‘What is Gaius doing?’”),而不是通过直接引语来问;于是,它在概念上类似于间接陈述,后者间接地报导某个肯定陈述,而不是一个问题(参见第二十五课)。不过,间接问句使用的是动词的虚拟式,而非不定式。间

接问句很容易与其他类型的虚拟从句区分开来,因为它由 **quis/quid, quī/quae/quod** (即疑问形容词), **quam, quandō, cūr, ubi, unde, uter, utrum . . . an** (*whether . . . or*), **-ne**(附在句首词之后, = *whether*)等疑问词引起,而且主句动词一般表示言语、心理活动或感官知觉(包括许多引出间接陈述的动词,参见第二十五课)。

对于间接问句中的虚拟式动词,通常按照同一时态的直陈式进行翻译,即不带 *may* 或 *might* 这样的助动词。将以下的前三个例子(直接问句)与后三个例子(包含间接问句)进行比较:

Quid Gāius facit? *What is Gaius doing?*

Quid Gāius fēcit? *What did Gaius do?*

Quid Gāius faciet? *What will Gaius do?*

Rogant quid Gāius faciat. *They ask what Gaius is doing.*

Rogant quid Gāius fēcerit. *They ask what Gaius did.*

Rogant quid Gāius factūrus sit. *They ask what Gaius will do (lit., is about to do).*

最后一句中的 **factūrus sit**有时被称为“将来时主动迂说法”;由于虚拟式没有将来时,所以在某些类型的从句中(包括间接问句),有时也用 **sum** 的某种形式+将来时主动态分词(比较第二十四课中由 **sum**+将来时被动态分词所构成的被动迂说法)来明确表示将来。在最后一句话中,如果主要动词是过去时,那么(根据时态序列规则)这个句子就是 **rogāvērunt quid Gaius factūrus esset, they asked what Gaius would do (was about to do, was going to do)**。

时态序列¹

和英语一样,在拉丁语中,随着说话人或作者从主句进行到从句,也有一种逻辑上的时态序列。拉丁语中的规则很简单:直陈式的“基本时态”(primary tense)后面必须跟着虚拟式的基本时态,直陈式的“历史时态”(historical tense,或称“派生时态”[secondary tense])后面必须跟着虚拟式的历史时态,如下表所示。

直陈式的基本时态,即现在时和将来时,均指尚未完成的动作(即现在正在进行的动作,或者只有将来才会开始的动作),而历史时态则指过去的动作。

组	主要动词	虚拟从句
基本时态	现在时或将来时	{ 现在时(= 同时或之后发生的动作) 完成时(= 之前发生的动作)

¹ 也称“时态的呼应”、“时态的一致”。——译者注

历史时态	过去时诸时态	{ 未完成时(= 同时或之后发生的动作) { 过去完成时(= 之前发生的动作)

位于基本时态主要动词之后的现在时虚拟式指的是动作与主要动词同时发生,或者在主要动词之后发生。完成时虚拟式指的是动作在主要动词之前发生。

类似地,位于历史时态主要动词之后的未完成时虚拟式指的是动作与主要动词同时发生,或者在主要动词之后发生。过去完成时虚拟式指的是动作在主要动词之前发生。¹

这些时态序列规则适用于目的从句、结果从句、间接问句以及后续课程中的类似结构。仔细分析下面每个例句中的时态序列:

Id **facit** (faciet) ut mē iuuet, *he does (will do) it to help me.*

Id **fēcit** (faciēbat) ut mē iuūaret, *he did (kept doing) it to help me.*

Tam dūrus **est** ut eum vītem, *he is so harsh that I avoid him.*

Tam dūrus **fuit** (erat) ut eum vītārem, *he was so harsh that I avoided him.*

Rogant, rogābunt—*They ask, will ask*

quid faciat, *what he is doing.*

quid fēcerit, *what he did.*

quid factūrus sit, *what he will do.*

Rogāvērunt, rogābant—*They asked, kept asking*

quid faceret, *what he was doing.*

quid fēcisset, *what he had done.*

quid factūrus esset, *what he would do.*

词汇表

honor, honoris, m., *honor, esteem; public office* (honorable, honorary, honorific, dishonor, honest)

ceteri, -ae, -a, pl., *the remaining, the rest, the other, all the others; cp.*

alius, *another, other* (etc. = et cetera)

¹ 时态序列规则有两种常见的非常合理的例外:一个历史现在时的主要动词(即用现在时来生动地讲述过去的事件)往往会跟一个历史时态序列的虚拟式;而一个完成时的主要动词,如果关注的是过去的动作对现在的结果,那么也可以跟一个基本时态序列的虚拟式(参见下面“练习与复习”中的句8)。还要注意,由于从逻辑上讲,目的从句和结果从句描述的是在主要动词动作之后(实际地或潜在地)发生的动作,所以它们一般并不包含指示先前动作的完成时或过去完成时动词(尽管在结果从句中,完成时虚拟式有时被用作一种历史时态)。

quántus, -a, -um, *how large, how great, how much* (quantify, quantity, quantitative, quantum; cp. **tantus**); **tántus . . . quántus**, *just as much (many) . . . as*

rídículus, -a, -um, *laughable, ridiculous* (ridicule, etc.; cp. **rídeō, subrídeō**, Ch. 35)

vívus, -a, -um, *alive, living* (vivid, vivify, convivial; cp. **vívō, víta**)

fúrtim, adv., *stealthily, secretly* (furtively, ferret; cp. **fúrtívus, -a, -um**, *secret, furtive*; **fūr, fūris**, m./f., *thief*)

mox, adv., *soon*

prímō, adv., *at first, at the beginning* (cp. **prímus, -a, -um**)

repénte, adv., *suddenly*

únde, adv., *whence, from what or which place, from which, from whom*

útrum . . . an, conj., *whether . . . or*

bíbō, bíbere, bíbī, *to drink* (bib, bibulous, imbibe, wine-bibber, beverage)

cognóscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *to become acquainted with, learn, recognize*; in perfect tenses, *know* (cognizance, cognizant, cognition, connoisseur, incognito, reconnaissance, reconnoiter; cp. **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum**, noble, notice, notify, notion, notorious, and **recognóscō**, Ch. 38)

comprehéndō, -héndere, -héndī, -hénsus, *to grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand* (comprehensive, comprehensible, incomprehensible)

cōnsúmō, -súmere, -súmpsi, -súptum, *to consume, use up* (consumer, consumption, assume, assumption, presume, presumable, presumption, presumptive, presumptuous, resume, resumption; cp. **súmō, to take**)

dúbitō (1), *to doubt, hesitate* (dubious, dubitable, dubitative, doubtful, doubtless, indubitable, undoubtedly)

expónō, -pōnere, -pósuī, -pósitum, *to set forth, explain, expose* (exponent, exposition, expository, expound)

minuō, minúere, minuī, minútum, *to lessen, diminish* (cp. **minor, minus, minimus**; diminish, diminuendo, diminution, diminutive, minuet, minute, minutiae, menu, mince)

rógō (1), *to ask* (interrogate, abrogate, arrogant, derogatory, prerogative, surrogate)

练习与复习

1. Rogāvit ubi illae duae discipulae dignae haec didicissent.
2. Vidēbit quanta fuerit vīs illōrum verbōrum fēlicium.
3. Hās īnsidiās repente exposuit nē rēs pūblica opprimerētur.
4. Hī taceant et trēs cēterī expellantur nē occāsiōnem similem habeant.
5. Ita dūrus erat ut beneficia uxōris comprehendere nōn posset.
6. Cēterī quidem nesciēbant quam ācris esset mēns nātae eōrum.
7. Dēnique prīnceps cognōscet cūr potentior pars mīlitum nōs vītet.
8. Iam cognōvī cūr clāra facta vērō nōn sint facillima.
9. Quīdam auctōrēs appellābant arma optimum remedium malōrum.

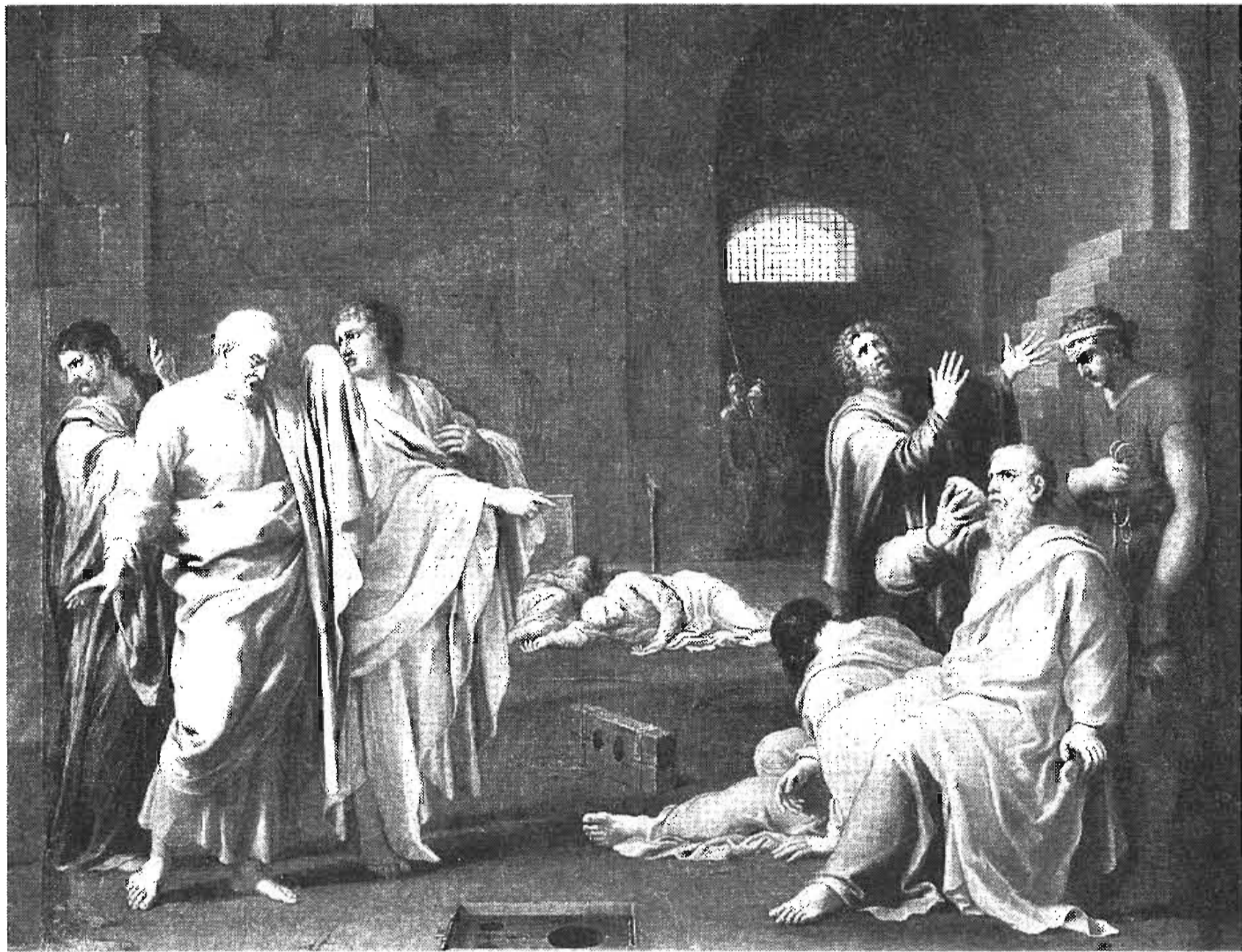
10. Mortuīs haec arma mox dēdicēmus nē honōre egeant.
11. Fātō duce, Rōmulus Remusque Rōmam condidērunt; et, Remō necātō, moenia urbis novae cito surrēxērunt.
12. Tell me in what lands liberty is found.
13. We did not know where the sword had finally been put.
14. He does not understand the first words of the little book which they wrote about the constellations.
15. They asked why you could not learn what the rest had done.
16. Let all men now seek better things than money or supreme power so that their souls may be happier.

古代名言

1. Nunc vidētis quantum scelus contrā rem pūblicam et lēgēs nostrās vōbīs prōnūntiātum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Quam dulcis sit libertās vōbīs prōtinus dīcam. (Phaedrus.)
3. Rogābat dēnique cūr umquam ex urbe cessissent. (Horace.)
4. Nunc sciō quid sit amor. (*Virgil.)
5. Videāmus uter hīc in mediō forō plūs scrībere possit. (Horace.)
6. Multī dubitābant quid optimum esset. (*Cicero.)
7. Incipiam expōnere unde nātūra omnēs rēs creet alatque. (Lucretius.)
8. Dulce est vidēre quibus malīs ipse careās. (Lucretius.)
9. Auctōrem Trōiānī bellī relēgī, quī dīcit quid sit pulchrum, quid turpe, quid ūtile, quid nōn. (Horace.—**Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan.**)
10. Doctōs rogābis quā ratiōne bene agere cursum vītāe possīs, utrum virtūtem doctrīna paret an nātūra ingeniumque dent, quid minuat cūrās, quid tē amīcum tibi faciat. (Horace.—**doctrīna, -ae, teaching.**)
11. Istī autem rogant tantum quid habeās, nōn cūr et unde. (Seneca.)
12. Errat, quī finem vēsānī quaerit amōris: vērus amor nūllum nōvit habēre modum. (*Propertius.—**vēsānus, -a, -um, insane.**)
13. Sed tempus est iam mē discēdere ut cicūtā bibam, et vōs discēdere ut vītā agātis. Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortālēs sciunt; hominem quidem nēminem scīre crēdō. (Cicero.—Socrates' parting words to the jury which had condemned him to death.—**cicūta, -ae, hemlock.**—**nēmō homō, no human being.**)

EVIDENCE AND CONFESSION

Sit dēnique scrīptum in fronte ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat; nam rem pūblicam labōribus cōnsiliīsque meīs ex igne atque ferrō ēreptam esse vidētis. Haec iam expōnam breviter ut scīre possītis quā ratiōne comprehēnsa sint. Semper prōvidī quō modō in tantīs insidiīs salvī esse possēmus. Omnēs diēs cōsūmpsī ut vidērem quid coniūrātī āctūrī essent. Dēnique litterās intercipere potuī quae ad Catilīnam ā Lentulō aliīsque coniūrātīs missae erant. Tum, coniūrātīs comprehēnsīs et senātū convocātō, contendī in senātum, ostendī litterās Lentulō, quaesivī cognōsceretne signum. Dīxit sē



*The Death of Socrates, Charles Alphonse Dufresnoy, 17th century
Galleria Palatina, Palazzo Pitti, Florence, Italy*

cognōscere; sed prīmō dubitāvit et negāvit sē dē hīs rēbus respōnsūrum esse. Mox autem ostendit quanta esset vīs cōscientiae; nam repente mollītus est atque omnem rem nārrāvit. Tum cēterī coniūrātī sīc fūrtim inter sē aspiciēbant ut nōn ab aliīs indicārī sed indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

(Cicero, excerpts from the first and third Catilinarian orations—Cicero finally succeeded in forcing Catiline to leave Rome, but his henchmen remained and Cicero still lacked the tangible evidence he needed to convict them in court; in this passage he shows how he finally obtained not only that evidence but even a confession. See the readings in Chs. 11 and 14, “Cicero Urges Catiline’s Departure” in Ch. 20, and the continuation, “Testimony Against the Conspirators,” in Ch. 36.—**frōns**, **frontis**, f., *brow, face*.—**breviter**, adv. of **brevis**.—**prō-vidēō**, *to fore-see, give attention to*.—**intercipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum.—**cōscientia**, -ae, *conscience*.—**inter sē aspiciō**, -ere, *to glance at each other*.—**indicāre**, *to accuse*.)

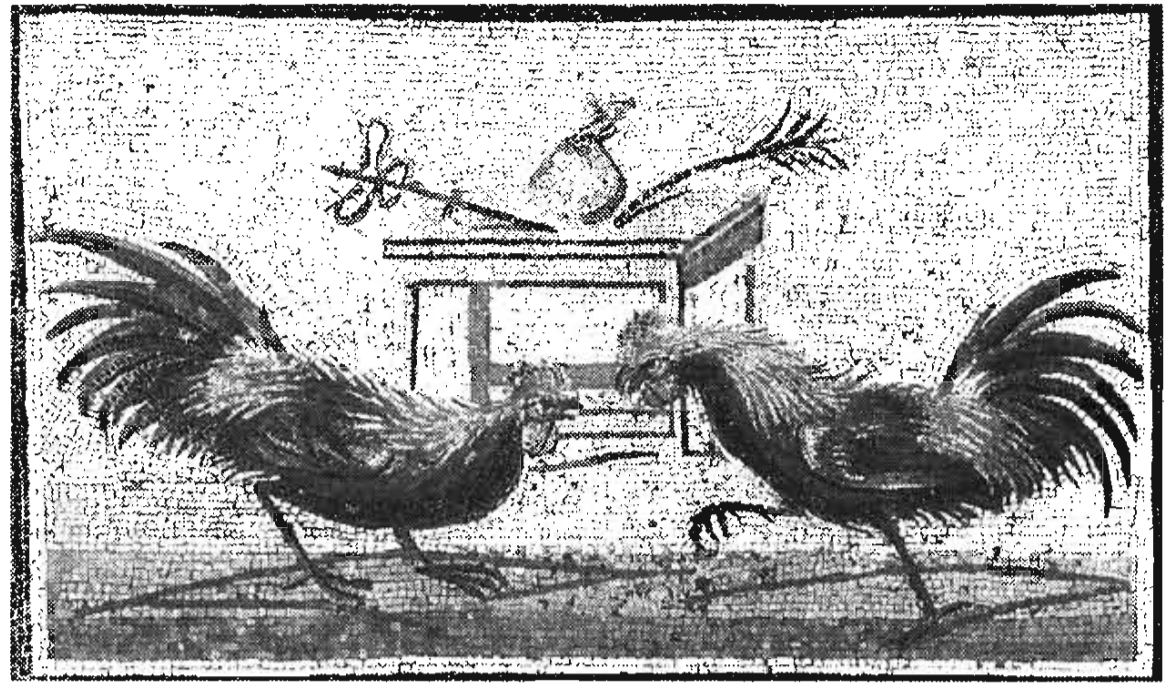
A COVERED DISH DINNER!

Mēnsās, Ōle, bonās pōnis, sed pōnis opertās.

Rīdiculum est: possum sīc ego habēre bonās.

(*Martial 10.54; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Olus**, another of Martial’s “friends.”—**opertus**, -a, -um, *concealed, covered*.—**ego**, i.e., even a poor fellow like me.)

fighting in front of a mensa
Mosaic from Pompeii, detail
ico Nazionale, Naples, Italy



A LEGACY-HUNTER'S WISH

Nīl mihi dās vīvus; dīcis post fāta datūrum:
sī nōn es stultus, scīs, Maro, quid cupiam!

(*Martial 11.67; meter: elegiac couplet.—nīl = nihil.—fāta, poetic pl. for sg. = mortem.—datūrum = tē datūrum esse.—Maro, another of Martial's fictitious [?] addressees.)

NOTE ON A COPY OF CATULLUS' CARMINA

Tantum magna suō dēbet Vērōna Catullō
quantum parva suō Mantua Vergiliō.

(*Martial 14.195; meter: elegiac couplet. Verona and Mantua were the birth-places of Catullus and Virgil respectively; see the Introd.—Note the interlocked word order within each verse and the neatly parallel structure between the two verses.)

词源点滴

“怀疑的”(dubitative, 或“审慎的”[deliberative])虚拟句是另一种独立虚拟句。根据 **dubitō**, 你应当已经了解了这种虚拟句所传达的观念, 例如, **quid faciat?** *what is he to do (I wonder)?*

由 **prehendō**, *seize* 产生的派生词有: *apprehend, apprentice, apprise, imprison, prehensile, prison, prize, reprehend, reprisal, surprise*。

In the readings

“Evidence”: *front, frontal, affront, confront, effrontery, frontier, frontispiece*.—*provide, providence, provision, improvident, improvise, improvisation*.—*interception*.—*conscientious, conscious, inconscionable*.—*aspect*.

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, amīcī! 本课的 **vocābulārium novum** 为你的 **mēnsa Latīna** 带来了

真正的 **cēna verbōrum**；让我们先从主菜开始：英语中的常见短语 **cursus honōrum** 原意是指通向古罗马执政官的一系列官职；一个人通常首先要做 **quaestor** (财务官)，然后做 **praetor** (司法官)，最后才能做 **cōsul** (执政官)。执政官这一职务与我们的总统有些相似，不过期限是一年，而且有两名执政官，彼此都有否决权(我们知道，西塞罗在揭露喀提林的阴谋时，就是公元前 63 年的两名执政官之一)。

现在我们来享用 **mēnsa secunda** (指“餐后甜点”)吧：和 **carpe diem** 一样，**occāsiōnem cognōsce!** 这条古老的谚语也可以使你受益匪浅。还有一条谚语有助于你经受住罪恶的诱惑：**nēmō repente fuit turpissimus**, *no one was ever suddenly most vicious* (尤维纳利斯 2.83: 这位讽刺作家的意思是，即使最坏的罪犯也是一步步走上犯罪道路的)。荣誉学位是 **honōris causā** 而被颁发的；**honōrēs mūtant mōrēs** 在古代是自明之理；由 **cēterī** 不仅产生出了 **et cētera/ etc.**，而且也产生出了 **cētera dēsunt**, *the rest is lacking*，这是一种编辑记号，指某个文本缺失的章节；由 **quantus** 产生出了大量习语，这里仅举一例：**quantum satis**, *as much as suffices* (如果你还没有尽兴，请参见第三十二、三十五课)；在白天即将逝去的时候，你可以喊 **mox nox, in rem, soon ('twill be) night, (let's get down) to business**。 **Valēte!**

第三十一课

Cum 从句; Ferō

Cum 从句

我们已经对 **cum** 用作介词非常熟悉了。事实上, **cum** 还可以用作引导从句的连词, 意为 *when*, *since*, 或 *although*。

Cum 从句中的动词有时是直陈式, 特别是在描述动作的精确时间时。在这些所谓的“**cum** 时间从句”中, **cum** 可以译为 *when* (或 *while*); 有时主句中含有 **tum**, 这时 **cum . . . tum** 可以译为 *not only . . . but also*:

Cum eum vidēbis, eum cognōscēs, *when you (will) see him* [即“在那一瞬”],
you will recognize him.

Cum vincimus, tum pācem spērās, *when (while) we are winning, you are (at the same time) hoping for peace.*

Cum ad illum locum vēnerant, tum amīcōs contulerant, *when they had come to that place, they had brought their friends* 或 *not only had they come to that place, but they had also brought their friends.*

然而, **cum** 从句中的动词往往是虚拟式, 这时, 从句大多是在描述主句动作发生时的一般状况, 而不是精确时间(往往称为“**cum** 状况从句”), 或是解释主句动作的原因 (“**cum** 原因从句”), 或是描述有可能阻碍主句动作的一种情况 (“**cum** 转折从句”)。

Cum hoc fēcisset, ad tē fūgit.

When he had done this, he fled to you. (状况从句)

Cum hoc scīret, potuit eōs iuvāre.

Since he knew this, he was able to help them. (原因从句)

Cum hoc scīret, tamen mīlitēs mīsīt.

Although he knew this, nevertheless he sent the soldiers. (转折从句)

Cum Gāium diligerēmus, nōn poterāmus eum iuvāre.

Although we loved Gaius, we could not help him. (转折从句)

请注意,如果 **cum** 后面跟着一个夺格名词或代词,就应当把它翻译成 *with*; 如果 **cum** 引出一个从句,就把它翻译成 *when, since, although* 等等。辨识四种基本的 **cum** 从句大概不会有什么困难:时间从句的动词为直陈式,三种虚拟从句可以通过分析主句动作与从句动作之间的关系来辨识(还应注意,在转折从句的情况下,主句中往往包含有副词 **tamen**)。而不论是哪种 **cum** 从句,其中的动词通常都应当按照直陈式来翻译,即不带 *may* 或 *might* 等助动词。

不规则的 **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear, carry**

Ferō 是本书接下来几课介绍的一系列不规则动词中的一个(其他几个分别是 **volō, nōlō, mālō, fiō** 和 **eō**); 它们都很常用,所以要熟练掌握。

英语动词“*to bear*”与拉丁词 **ferō, ferre** 同源,它们有同样的基本义 *to carry* 和比喻义 *to endure*。在现在时系统中,**ferō** 仅仅是一个第三变位法动词,它按照 **agō** 那样的方式变位,只是词干元音在少数几个地方(包括不定式 **ferre**)没有出现。几个不规则的形式均为现在时(直陈式、命令式和不定式),在下面都已作了突出显示;而它的未完成时虚拟式,虽然由不规则不定式 **ferre** 构成,但却遵循着现在时不定式+词尾的通常模式。别忘了,和 **dīc, dūc, fac** 一样(第八课),它的单数命令式中不含 **-e**。

虽然 **tulī**(原为 **tetulī**)和 **lātum**(原为 ***tlātum**)都源于另一个与 **tollō** 有关的动词(类似地,英语混合词“*go, went, gone*”也是由两个不同的动词构成的,这种语言现象被称为“异干互补”),但它们的变位却是规则的,所以不会造成什么困难。

现在时直陈式

主动态

1. **férō**
2. **fers** (cp. **ágis**)
3. **fert** (cp. **ágit**)
1. **férimus**
2. **fértis** (cp. **ágitis**)
3. **férunt**

被动态

- féror**
- férris** (**ágeris**)
- fértur** (**ágitur**)
- férimur**
- feríminī**
- ferúntur**

现在时命令式主动态2. **fer** (áge), **férte** (ágite)不定式主动态现在时 **férre** (ágere)完成时 **tulisse**将来时 **lātúrus esse**被动态**ferrī** (ágī)

lātus esse

lātum írī

动词变位缩写式

下面的第三人称单数动词变位缩写式(不规则形式作了突出显示)以及上表都列出了 **ferō** 的一部分变位形式;完整的变位情况参见附录 p.451—452。

直陈式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	fert	féret	ferēbat	túlit	túlerit	túlerat
被动态	fértur	ferētur	ferēbātur	lātus est	lātus érit	lātus érat

虚拟式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	férat	—	férret	túlerit	—	tulisset
被动态	ferátur	—	ferrētur	lātus sit	—	lātus ésset

词汇表

as, ássis, m., *an as* (a small copper coin, roughly equivalent to a penny; ace)

auxílium, -iī, n., *aid, help* (auxiliary; cp. **augeō**, *to increase, augment*)

dígípus, -ī, m., *finger, toe* (digit, digital, digitalis, digitalize, digitate, digitize, prestidigitation; see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 20)

elephántus, -ī, m. and f., *elephant* (elephantiasis, elephantine)

exsílíum, -iī, n., *exile, banishment* (exilic)

invídia, -ae, f., *envy, jealousy, hatred* (invidious, invidiousness, envious; cp. **invidēō** below)

rúmōr, rúmōris, m., *rumor, gossip* (rumormonger)

vínūm, -ī, n., *wine* (vine, vinegar, viniculture, viniferous, vintage, vinyl)

medíocris, medíocre, *ordinary, moderate, mediocre* (mediocrity; cp. **medius**)

cum, conj. + subj., *when, since, although*; conj. + indic., *when*

ápuđ, prep. + acc., *among, in the presence of, at the house of*
sémel, adv., *a single time, once, once and for all, simultaneously*
úsque, adv., *all the way, up (to), even (to), continuously, always*
dóleō, dolére, dóluī, dolitúrūm, *to grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain* (doleful, dolor, dolorous, Dolores, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. **dolor**, Ch. 38)
dórmio, dormire, dormivī, dormitūm, *to sleep* (dormitory, dormer, dormancy, dormant, dormouse)
férō, férre, túlī, látum, *to bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report* (fertile, circumference, confer, defer, differ, infer, offer, prefer, proffer, refer, suffer, transfer; cp. bear)
áđferō, áđferre, áttulī, allátum, *to bring to* (afferent)
cōnferō, cōnferre, cōntulī, collátum, *to bring together, compare; confer, bestow; sē cōnferre, betake oneself, go* (conference, collation)
ófferō, offerre, óbtulī, oblátum, *to offer* (offertory, oblation)
réferō, referre, réttulī, relátum, *to carry back, bring back; repeat, answer, report* (refer, reference, referent, referral, relate, relation, relative)
invideō, -vidére, -vidī, -vísūm, *to be envious; + dat. (see Ch. 35), to look at with envy, envy, be jealous of*
óccidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cásūm, *to fall down; die; set* (occident, occidental, occasion, occasional; cp. **cadō, occāsiō**)

练习与复习

1. Iam vērō cognōvimus istās mentēs dūrās ferrum prō pāce offerre.
2. Nē nātae geminae discant verba tam acerba et tam dūra.
3. Cum hī decem virī ex moenibus semel discessissent, alia occāsiō pācis numquam oblāta est.
4. Tantum auxilium nōbīs referet ut nē ācerrimī quidem mīlitēs aut pugnāre aut hīc remanēre possint.
5. Rogābat cūr cēterae tantam fidem apud nōs praestārent et nōbīs tantam spem adferrent.
6. Cum patria nostra tantā beneficia offerat, tamen quīdam sē in īnsidiās fūrtim cōnferunt et contrā bonōs mox pugnābunt.
7. Dēnique audiāmus quantae sint hae īnsidiae ac quot coniūrātī contrā cīvitātem surgant.
8. Haec scelera repente exposuī nē alia et similia ferrētis.
9. Respondērunt plūrima arma ā mīlitibus ad lītus allāta esse et in nāvibus condita esse.
10. Cum parentēs essent vīvī, fēlicēs erant; mortuī quoque sunt beātī.
11. Nesciō utrum trēs coniūrātī maneant an in exsilium contenderint.
12. Nōs cōnferāmus ad cēnam, meī amīcī, bibāmus multum vīnī, cōnsūmāmus noctem, atque omnēs cūrās nostrās minuāmus!
13. When the soldiers had been arrested, they soon offered us money.
14. Although life brings very difficult things, let us endure them all and dedicate ourselves to philosophy.

15. Since you know what help is being brought by our six friends, these evils can be endured with courage.
16. Although his eyes could not see the light of the sun, nevertheless that humble man used to do very many and very difficult things.

古代名言

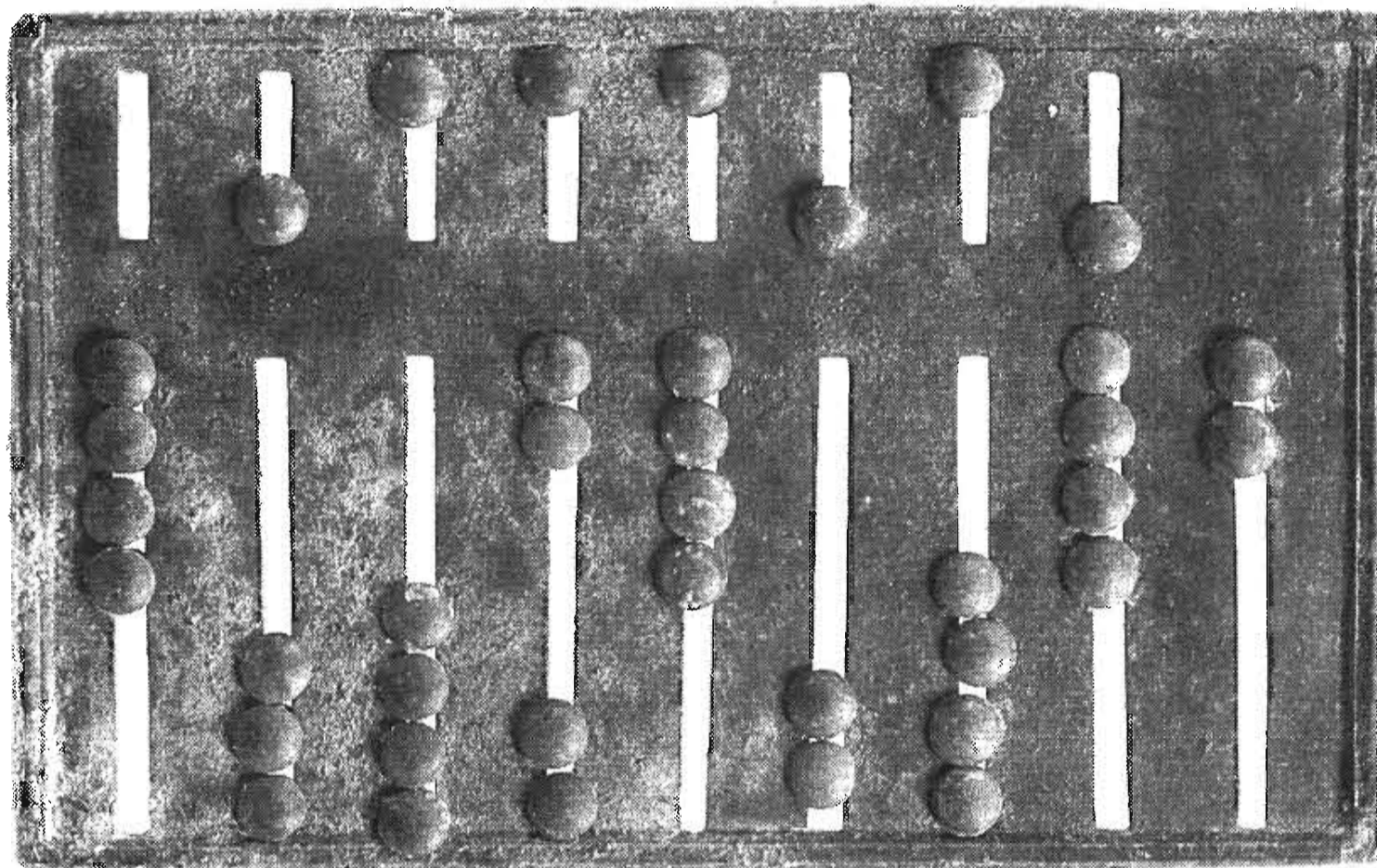
1. Potestne haec lūx esse tibi iūcunda, cum sciās hōs omnēs cōnsilia tua cognōvisse? (Cicero.)
2. Themistoclēs, cum Graeciam servitūte Persicā liberāvisset et propter invidiam in exsilium expulsus esset, ingrātae patriae iniūriam nōn tulit quam ferre dēbuit. (Cicero.—**Persicus, -a, -um.**—**ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful.**—**iniūria, -ae, injury.**)
3. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, cōfer tē in exsilium. (Cicero.—**quae cum = et cum haec.**)
4. Ō nāvis, novī flūctūs bellī tē in mare referent! Ō quid agis? Unde erit ūllum perfugium? (Horace.—**nāvis, ship [of state].**—**flūctus, -ūs, wave, billow.**)
5. Cum rēs pūblica immortalis esse dēbeat, doleō eam salūtis egēre ac in vitā ūnīus mortālis cōsistere. (Cicero.—**cōsistō, -ere + in, to depend on.**)
6. Cum illum hominem esse servum nōvisset, eum comprehendere nōn dubitāvit. (Cicero.)
7. Ille comprehēsus, cum primō impudenter respondēre coepisset, dēnique tamen nihil negāvit. (Cicero.—**impudenter, adv.**)
8. Milō dīcitur per stadium vēnisse cum bovem umerīs ferret. (Cicero.—**Milō, -lōnis, m., a famous Greek athlete.**—**stadium, -iī.**—**bōs, bovis, m./f., ox.**—**umerus, -ī, shoulder.**)
9. Quid vesper et somnus ferant, incertum est. (Livy.)
10. Ferte miserō tantum auxilium quantum potestis. (Terence.)
11. Hoc ūnum sciō: quod fāta ferunt, id ferēmus aequō animō. (Terence.)
12. Lēgum dēnique idcircō omnēs servī sumus, ut liberī esse possīmus. (*Cicero.—**idcircō, adv., for this reason.**)

GIVE ME A THOUSAND KISSES!

- Vivāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus,
 rūmōrēsque senum sevēriōrum
 omnēs ūnius aestimēmus assis!
 Sōlēs occidere et redīre possunt;
 5 nōbīs cum semel occidit brevis lūx,
 nox est perpetua ūna dormienda.
 Dā mī bāsia mīlle, deinde centum;
 dein mīlle altera, dein secunda centum;
 deinde ūsque altera mīlle, deinde centum.
 10 Dein, cum mīlia multa fēcerīmus—

conturbābimus illa, nē sciāmus,
aut nē quis malus invidēre possit,
cum tantum sciat esse bāsiōrum.

(*Catullus 5; an exhortation to love, and to ignore the grumbling of stern old men who envy the young and curse their passion.—**rūmōrēs**, with **omnēs**; adj. and noun were often widely separated in poetry, so it is especially important to take note of the endings.—**sevērus**, -a, -um.—**ūnius . . . assis**, gen. of value, *at one penny*.—**aestimāre**, *to value, estimate*.—**redīre**, *to return*.—**nōbīs**, dat. of reference [Ch. 38], here = **nostra**, with **brevis lūx**.—**mī** = **mihi**.—**dein** = **deinde**.—**conturbāre**, *to throw into confusion, mix up, jumble*; possibly an allusion to disturbing the counters on an abacus.—**nē sciāmus**, sc. **numerum**; if the number is unknown then, in a sense, it is limitless.—**quis**, here *someone*.—**invidēre**, with **malus**, means both *to envy* and *to cast an evil eye upon*, i.e., *to hex*.—**tantum**, with **bāsiōrum**, gen. of the whole, = *so many kisses*.)



Small Roman abacus, Museo Nazionale Romano delle Terme, Rome, Italy

RINGO

Sēnōs Charīnus omnibus digitīs gerit
nec nocte pōnit ānulōs
nec cum lavātur. Causa quae sit quaeritis?
Dactyliothēcam nōn habet!

(*Martial 11.59; meter: iambic trimeter and dimeter.—Charinus, an ostentatious chap who liked to show off his rings.—**sēnī**, -ae, -a, *six each, six apiece*, here with **ānulōs**, *rings* [see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 20]; what effect might the poet be hoping to achieve by so widely separating noun and adj.?—**pōnit** = **dēpōnit**, *put away*.—**lavāre**, *to bathe*.—**Causa . . . quaeritis**: the usual order would be **quaeritisne quae sit causa**.—**dactyliothēca**, -ae, *a ring-box, jewelry chest*.)



Gold ring
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria

FACĒTIAE (WITTICISMS)

Cum Cicerō apud Damasippum cēnāret et ille, mediocrī vīnō in mēnsā positō, dīceret, “Bibe hoc Falernum; hoc est vīnum quadrāgintā annōrum,” Cicerō respondit, “Bene aetātem fert!”

(Macrobius, *Sāturnālia* 2.3.—**Falernum, -ī**, *Falernian wine*, actually a very famous wine, not a “mediocre” one.—**quadrāgintā**, indecl., 40.)

Augustus, cum quīdam rīdiculus eī libellum trepidē adferret, et modo prōferret manum et modo retraheret, “Putās,” inquit, “tē assem elephantō dare?”

(Macrobius, *Sāturnālia* 2.4.—**trepidē**, adv., *in confusion*.—**modo . . . modo**, *now . . . now*.—**re-trahō**.—**elephantō**: one thinks of a child offering a peanut to a circus elephant.)

词源点滴

In the readings

2. ingrate, ingratitude.—injurious. 4. fluctuate. 5. consist, consistent. 7. impudent, impudence. 8. bovine.—humerus, humeral. “Kisses”: severe, severity, asseverate.—estimate, estimation, inestimable. “Ringo”: annulus, annular eclipse, annulate, annulet(拼写中都含有 *nn*,也许是因为与 **annus**, *year* 作了类比,尽管古典拉丁语中的 **ānulus** 实际上是 **ānus**, *ring, circle, anus* 的指小词)。“Facētiaē”: trepidation.—retract, retraction.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Iterum salvēte, doctae doctīque! 学习了那么多知识,你当然配得上这个名号。作为进一步的回报,我们下面看一些珍闻 **ex vocābulārīō novō huius**

capitis, 它们都与那个万恶的喀提林有关: 首先, 在西塞罗对喀提林的指控中有一个著名的 **cum** 时间从句: **cum tacent, clāmant**, *when they are silent, they are shouting*, 即“他们用沉默来谴责你”。可怜的喀提林, 也许他喝得太多了, **ūsq̄ue ad nauseam**, 而且不顾 **in vīnō vēritās** 的警告, 说漏了嘴; 倘若他遵守了贺拉斯的 **aurea mediocritās**, *the golden mean*, 或许还能得到 **auxilium ab altō**, *help from on high*。然而神对他似乎并不眷顾, 所以他的生命很快就走到了终点, **semel et simul**, *once and for all*: **valē, miser Catilīna, et vōs omnēs, amīcī vēritātis honōrisque, valeātis!**

第三十二课

副词的构成与比较等级; Volō, Mālō, Nōlō; 附带条件从句

副词的构成与比较等级

我们已经见过不少拉丁语副词,和英语一样,它们也用来修饰动词、形容词和其他副词。许多副词都有特殊的形式和词尾,所以在词汇表中第一次出现时必须牢记(往往没有英语派生词来帮助记忆):常见的有 **cūr, etiam, ita, tam** 等一些词。

原级

不过,有大量副词是直接由形容词变来的,所以很容易辨识。许多第一、第二变格法形容词的词根加上词尾-ē 就构成了副词原级:

lóng-ē	(far; longus, -a, -um)
líber-ē	(freely; líber, líbera, líberum)
púlchr-ē	(beautifully; pulcher, -chra, -chrum)

由第三变格法形容词变来的副词往往是通过给词根加-iter; 如果词根以-nt-结尾,则只加-er:

fórt-iter	(bravely; fortis, -e)
celér-iter	(quickly; celer, celeris, celere)
ácr-iter	(keenly; ácer, ácris, ácre)
fēlíc-iter	(happily; fēlīx, gen. fēlīcis)
sapiént-er	(wisely; sapiēns, gen. sapientis)

比较级和最高级

和英语一样,许多拉丁语副词都有比较级和最高级形式,其英语翻译对应着比较级和最高级形容词的翻译;例如,原级“quickly”,比较级“more (rather, too) quickly”,最高级“most (very) quickly”等等。除了少数例外,副词的比较级均以-ius 结尾,我们知道,它是形容词比较级的中性形式。

副词的最高级一般源于形容词的最高级。根据前面给出的把第一、第二变格法形容词变成副词的规则,它们通常以-ē 结尾。

副词的比较级和最高级与 Quam 连用

和形容词一样,副词也可与 **quam** 连用:**hic puer celerius cucurrit quam ille, this boy ran more quickly than that one; illa puella quam celerrimē cucurrit, that girl ran as quickly as possible**。在比较级副词之后,通常不用比较夺格(除了在诗歌中)。

不规则副词的比较

如果形容词的比较等级是不规则的(参见第二十七课),那么由它派生的副词的比较等级往往会延续这种不规则性,不过当然,副词词尾依然存在。仔细考察下面的例词;不符合由形容词构成副词的标准规则的那些副词已经作了突出显示(应当能够指出它们如何不符合规则)。请注意,**prīmō** 这种最高级形式,通常意为 *first (in time)*,另一种最高级形式 **primum** 则意为 *first (in a series)*;不过**quam primum** 习惯上翻译成 *as soon as possible*。

原级	比较级	最高级
lóngē (<i>far</i>)	lóngius (<i>farther, too f.</i>)	longíssimē (<i>farthest, very f.</i>)
liberē (<i>freely</i>)	liberius (<i>more f.</i>)	libérrimē (<i>most, very f.</i>)
púlchrē (<i>beautifully</i>)	púlchrius (<i>more b.</i>)	pulchérrimē (<i>most b.</i>)
fórtiter (<i>bravely</i>)	fórtius (<i>more b.</i>)	fortíssimē (<i>most b.</i>)
celériter (<i>quickly</i>)	celérius (<i>more q.</i>)	celérrimē (<i>most q.</i>)
âcritē (<i>keenly</i>)	âcrius (<i>more k.</i>)	âcérrimē (<i>most k.</i>)
fēliciter (<i>happily</i>)	fēlicius (<i>more h.</i>)	fēlicíssimē (<i>most h.</i>)
sapiēnter (<i>wisely</i>)	sapiēntius (<i>more w.</i>)	sapiéntíssimē (<i>most w.</i>)
fácile (<i>easily</i>)	facílius (<i>more e.</i>)	facíllimē (<i>most e.</i>)
béne (<i>well</i>)	mélius (<i>better</i>)	óptimē (<i>best</i>)
mále (<i>badly</i>)	peíus (<i>worse</i>)	péssimē (<i>worst</i>)
múltum (<i>much</i>)	plūs (<i>more, quantity</i>)	plúrimum (<i>most, very much</i>)
magnópere (<i>greatly</i>)	mágis (<i>more, quality</i>)	máximē (<i>most, especially</i>)
párum (<i>little, not very [much]</i>)	mínus (<i>less</i>)	mínimē (<i>least</i>)

(prō)	prīus (before, earlier)	{ prīmō (<i>first, at first</i>) prīmum (<i>in the first place</i>) diūtissimē (<i>very long</i>)
dīū (<i>for a long time</i>)	diūtius (<i>longer</i>)	

不规则的 Volō, velle, voluī, to wish

就像上一课介绍的 **ferō** 一样, **volō** 也是一个极为常用的第三变位法动词。虽然它在大多数情况下都是规则的,但也有几个不规则形式,包括现在时不定式 **velle**。请记住以下几点:

- volō** 没有被动态形式,没有将来时不定式主动态和将来时主动态分词,也没有命令式;
- 完成时系统是完全规则的;
- 只有现在时直陈式(必须牢记)和现在时虚拟式(可与 **sim, sīs, sit** 比较)是不规则的;
- 未完成时虚拟式与 **ferō** 类似;虽然由不规则的不定式 **velle** 构成,但它仍然遵循现在时不定式+人称词尾的通常模式;
- vol-**是现在时系统直陈式的词根,**vel-**是现在时系统虚拟式的词根。

现在时直陈式	现在时虚拟式	未完成时虚拟式	不定式
1. vólō	vélīm	véllem	现在时 velle
2. vīs	vélīs	véllēs	完成时 voluisse
3. vult	vélit	véllet	将来时——
1. vólumus	velímus	vellémus	<u>分词</u>
2. vúltis	velítis	vellétis	现在时 volēns
3. vólunt	vélint	véllent	

动词变位缩写式

以下第三人称单数动词变位缩写式(不规则形式作了突出显示)展示了 **volō** 总的变位情况;关于完整的变位形式,参见附录 p.450—451。

直陈式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	vult	vólet	volébat	vóluit	volúerit	volúerat

虚拟式

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
主动态	vélit	—	véllet	volúerit	—	voluisset

Nōlō 和 Mālō

复合词 **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī** (**nē** + **volō**), *not to wish, to be unwilling* 和 **mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī** (**magis** + **volō**), *to want (something) more* 或 *instead, prefer* 的变位情况与 **volō** 非常类似,但词干中是长元音(**nō-**, **mā-**),还有其他一些非常特殊的形式,特别是在现在时直陈式中。

Nōlō 的现在时直陈式

单数 **nōlō**, **nōn vīs**, **nōn vult** 复数 **nōlumus**, **nōn vultis**, **nōlunt**

Mālō 的现在时直陈式

单数 **mālō**, **māvīs**, **māvult** 复数 **mālumus**, **māvultis**, **mālunt**

下列动词变位缩写式列出了这些动词的一些有代表性的形式,不规则形式依旧作了突出显示,它们的完整变位形式请参见附录 p.450—451。

	现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
直陈式						
主动态	nōn vult	nōlet	nōlēbat	nōluit	nōlúerit	nōlúerat
虚拟式						
主动态	nōlit	—	nōllet	nōlúerit	—	nōluisset
直陈式						
主动态	māvult	mālet	mālēbat	māluit	mālúerit	mālúerat
虚拟式						
主动态	mālit	—	māllet	mālúerit	—	māluisset

Nōlō 和否定性的命令

虽然 **volō** 和 **mālō** 都没有命令式,但 **nōlō** 却有单数和复数的命令式,它们经常与补充不定式连用,表达否定性的命令:

Nōlī manēre, Catilīna, *do not remain, Catiline!*

Nōlite discēdere, amīcī meī, *do not leave, my friends!*

附带条件从句

由 **dummodo**, *provided that, so long as* 等一些表示临时性状况或“附带条件”的词所引导的从句要使用虚拟式;这些从句用 **nē** 作否定词。

Nōn timēbō, dummodo hīc remaneās, *I shall not be afraid, provided that you remain here.*

Erimus fēlicēs, dummodo nē discēdās, *we shall be happy, so long as (provided that) you do not leave.*

请注意, 这些从句中的动词都应按照直陈式来翻译。

词汇表

custōdia, -ae, f., *protection, custody*; pl., *guards* (custodian, custodial)

exércitus, -ūs, m., *army* (exercise)

paupértās, **paupertátis**, f., *poverty, humble circumstances* (cp. **pauper** below)

dīves, gen. **dīvitis** or **dītis**, *rich*, (Dives)

pār, gen. **páris** + dat. (cp. Ch. 35), *equal, like* (par, pair, parity, peer, peerless, disparage, disparity, umpire, nonpareil)

paúper, gen. **paúperis**, *of small means, poor* (poverty, impoverished; cp. **paupertās**)

dúmmodo, conj. + subj., *provided that, so long as*

All adverbs given in the list above, p. 220–21.

mālō, **málle**, **máluī**, *to want (something) more, instead; prefer*

nólō, **nólle**, **nóluī**, *to not . . . wish, be unwilling* (nolo contendere, nol. pros.)

páteō, **patére**, **pátuī**, *to be open, lie open; be accessible; be evident* (patent, pātent, patency)

praébeō, **-bére**, **-buī**, **-bitum**, *to offer, provide*

prómíttō, **-míttere**, **-mísī**, **-míssum**, *to send forth; promise* (promissory)

vólō, **vélle**, **vóluī**, *to wish, want, be willing, will* (volition, voluntary, involuntary, volunteer, volitive, voluptuous, benevolent, malevolent, nolens volens)

练习与复习

1. Prīmō illī trēs rīdiculī nē mediocria quidem perīcula fortiter ferre poterant et ūllum auxilium offerre nōlēbant.
2. Maximē rogāvimus quantum auxilium septem fēminae adferrent et utrum dubitārent an nōs mox adiūtūrae essent.
3. Dēnique armīs collātīs, imperātor prómīsit decem mīlia mīlitum celerrimē discessūra esse, dummodo satis cōpiārum reciperent.
4. Paria beneficia, igitur, in omnēs dignōs cōferre māvultis.
5. Haec mala melius expōnant nē dīvitiās minuant aut honōrēs suōs āmittant.
6. At volumus cognōscere cūr sīc invīderit et cūr verba eius tam dūra fuerint.
7. Cum cēterī hās īnsidiās cognōverint, vult in exsilium fūrtim ac quam celerrimē sē cōferre ut rūmōrēs et invidiam vītet.

8. Multīne discipulī tantum studium ūsque praestant ut hās sententiās facillimē ūnō annō legere possint?
9. Cum dīvitiās amīssisset et ūnum assem nōn habēret, tamen omnēs cīvēs ingenium mōrēsque eius maximē laudābant.
10. Plūra meliōraque lēgibus aequīs quam ferrō certē faciēmus.
11. Oculī tuī sunt pulchriōrēs sīderibus caelī, mea puella; es gracilis et bella, ac ōscula sunt dulciōra vīnō: amēmus sub lūce lūnae!
12. Iste hostis, in Italiam cum multīs elephantīs veniēns, prīmō pugnāre nōluit et plūrimōs diēs in montibus cōnsūpsit.
13. Sī nepōs tē ad cēnam invītābit, mēnsam explēbit et tibi tantum vīnī offeret quantum vīs; nōlī, autem, nimium bibere.
14. Do you wish to live longer and better?
15. He wishes to speak as wisely as possible so that they may yield to him very quickly.
16. When these plans had been learned, we asked why he had been unwilling to prepare the army with the greatest possible care.
17. That man, who used to be very humble, now so keenly wishes to have wealth that he is willing to lose his two best friends.

古代名言

1. Occāsiō nōn facile praebētur sed facile ac repente amittitur. (Publius Syrus.)
2. Nōbīscum vīvere iam diūtius nōn potes; nōlī remanēre; id nōn ferēmus. (Cicero.)
3. Vīs rēctē vīvere? Quis nōn? (*Horace.—**rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right.**)
4. Plūs nōvistī quid faciendum sit. (Terence.)
5. Mihi vērē dīxit quid vellet. (Terence.)
6. Parēs cum paribus facillimē congregantur. (*Cicero.—**congregāre, to gather into a flock.**)
7. Tē magis quam oculōs meōs amō. (Terence.)
8. Hominēs libenter id crēdunt quod volunt. (Caesar.—**libēns, -entis, willing.**)
9. Multa ēveniunt hominibus quae volunt et quae nōlunt. (Plautus.—**ēvenīre, to happen.**)
10. Cōnsiliō melius contendere atque vincere possumus quam irā. (Publius Syrus.)
11. Optimus quisque facere māvult quam dīcere. (Sallust.—**māvult quam = magis vult quam.**)
12. Omnēs sapientēs fēliciter, perfectē, fortunātē vīvunt. (Cicero.—**perfectus, -a, -um, complete.**)
13. Maximē eum laudant quī pecūniā nōn movētur. (Cicero.)
14. Sī vīs scīre quam nihil malī in paupertāte sit, cōnfer pauperem et dīvitem: pauper saepius et fidēlius rīdet. (Seneca.)
15. Magistrī puerīs crūstula dant ut prīma elementa discere velint. (Hor-

ace.—**crūstulum, -ī, cookie.**—**elementum, -ī.**)

16. Sī vīs mē flēre, dolendum est primum ipsī tibi. (*Horace.—**flēre**, to weep.)

THE CHARACTER OF CIMON

Cimōn celeriter ad summōs honōrēs pervēnit. Habēbat enim satis ēloquentiae, summam liberālitātem, magnam scientiam lēgum et reī mīlītāris, quod cum patre ā puerō in exercitibus fuerat. Itaque hic populum urbānum in suā potestāte facillimē tenuit et apud exercitum valuit plūrimum auctōritāte.

Cum ille occidisset, Athēniēnsēs dē eō diū doluērunt; nōn solum in bellō, autem, sed etiam in pāce eum graviter dēsīderāvērunt. Fuit enim vir tantae liberālitātis ut, cum multōs hortōs habēret, numquam in hīs custōdiās pōneret; nam hortōs liberrimē patēre voluit nē populus ab hīs fructibus prohibērētur. Saepe autem, cum aliquem minus bene vestītum vidēret, eī suum amiculum dedit. Multōs locuplētāvit; multōs pauperēs vīvōs iūvit atque mortuōs suō sūmptū extulit. Sīc minimē mīrum est sī, propter mōrēs Cimōnis, vīta eius fuit sēcūra et mors eius fuit omnibus tam acerba quam mors cuiusdam ex familiā.

(Nepos, *Cimōn*; adapted excerpts.—**per-venīre**.—**ēloquentia, -ae.**—**liberālitās, -tātis.**—**mīlītāris, -e.**—**ā puerō**, from his boyhood.—**potestās, -tātis**, power.—**auctōritās, -tātis**, authority; the abl. tells in what respect.—**Athēniēnsēs**, Athenians.—**hortus, -ī**, garden.—**vestītus, -a, -um**, clothed.—**amiculum, -ī**, cloak.—**locuplētāre**, to enrich.—**sūmptus, -ūs**, expense.—**extulit: ef-ferō**, bury.—**mīrus, -a, -um**, surprising.—**sēcūrus, -a, -um**: **sēc-** means without.)

A VACATION . . . FROM YOU!

Quid mihi reddat ager quaeris, Line, Nōmentānus?

Hoc mihi reddit ager: tē, Line, nōn videō!

(*Martial 2.38; meter: elegiac couplet.—**reddō, -ere**, to give back, return (in profit).—**Linus, -ī**, another of Martial's addressees.—**Nōmentānus, -a, -um**, in *Nomentum*, a town of Latium known for its wine industry.)

PLEASE . . . DON'T!

Nīl recitās et vīs, Māmerce, poēta vidērī.

Quidquid vīs estō, dummodo nīl recitēs!

(*Martial 2.88; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl = nihil.**—**Māmercus, -ī.**—**estō**, fut. imper. of **esse**, “Be . . . !”)

词源点滴

In the readings

3. rectitude, rectify, direct, erect, correct; cp. right. 6. congregate, segregate, gregarious, aggregate. 9. event (= out-come), eventual. 12. perfect (= made or done thoroughly). “Cimon”: vest, vestment, invest, divest.—sumptuous, sumptuary.—miraculous, admire. “Vacation”: render, rendering, rendition.

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvete! 现代奥林匹克运动会的座右铭是三个比较级副词: **citius, altius** (源于 **altus, -a, -um, high**), **fortius**。本课新出现的不规则动词, 特别是 **volō** 和 **nōlō** 在拉丁语中极为常用, 在英语中也随处可见。例如, **nōlō** 是 **nōlō contendere, I am unwilling to contest** (the accusation) 的简写, 即法律抗辩; **nol. pros.** 是 **nolle prōsequī, to be unwilling to pursue** (the matter) 的简写, 意为终止诉讼; **nōlēns, volēns, unwilling (or) willing**, 即不管愿不愿意, 就像“willy-nilly” (“will ye, nill ye” 的缩写); “d.v.” 是 **deō volente** 的缩写; **volō, nōn valeō, I am willing but not able**; **nōlī mē tangere** 既指“不要触犯我”, 也对应于英语中的“凤仙花”¹; **quantum vīs, as much as you wish** (程度也许要高于单纯地 **quantum satis** [第三十课]!); **Deus vult** 是第一次十字军东征的口号; **mālō morī quam foedārī**, 意译为“士可杀不可辱”(直译为 *I wish to die rather than to be dishonored*。关于异态动词 **morior**, 参见第三十四课)。曾经有一位博学的人写道(证明了长音符号的重要性), **mālō malō malō mālō, I'd rather be in an apple tree than a bad man in adversity**; 第一个 **mālō** 源于 **mālum, -ī, apple, fruit-tree**, 这让我们想起了贺拉斯对罗马 **cēna** 的刻画, 从开胃小吃到餐后甜点, **ab ovō (ovum, -ī, egg) ūsque ad māla**, 这个短语很像英语中的“from soup to nuts”(从头到尾, 一应俱全), 后来成了一个习语, 表示“自始至终”。

Et cētera ex vocābulārīō novō: cēterīs pārībus, all else being equal; **custōdia** 与 **custōs, custōdis, guard** 和 **custōdīre, to guard** 有关, 所以才有尤维纳利斯的讽刺性的质问: **sed quis custōdiet ipsōs custōdēs**; **exercitus** 与 **exerceō, exercēre, to practice, exercise** 有关, 由名词 **exercitātīō** 产生出了对学习拉丁语的学生非常有益的一个习语: **exercitātīō est optimus magister**。所以, **valēte, discipulī/ae, et exercēte, exercēte, exercēte!**

¹ 凤仙花的英文名字是“Touch-me-not”, 直译为“勿碰我”。——译者注



*Banqueter with egg, Etruscan fresco
Tomb of the Lionesses, late 6th century B.C.
Tarquinia, Italy*

第三十三课

条件从句

条件句

条件句是最常见的句式之一,其他常见句式还有陈述句、问句和感叹句。我们已经在拉丁语阅读中多次见到过条件句,其基本句式由两个子句构成:(1)“前提句”(或“protasis”,希腊词,指 *proposition* 或 *premise*),这是一个从句,通常由 *sī, if* 或 *nisi, if not, unless* 来引导,陈述一种假设性的活动或状况;(2)“结论句”(或“apodosis”,希腊词,指 *outcome* 或 *result*),这是一个主句,通常表达如果前提为真所预期的结果。

条件从句有六种基本类型。其中三种的动词是直陈式,另外三种是虚拟式,原因很简单。虽然任何条件从句所描述的去、现在和将来的活动在某种程度上都是假设性的,但直陈式用于前提句更有可能实现的情况,虚拟式则用于前提句不大可能实现,或者前提句和结论句都与实际事实相反的情况。认真研究下面的总结,弄清楚每一种条件从句的名称是什么,如何进行辨识以及如何准确地翻译。

直陈条件句

1. 现在的简单事实:*Sī id facit, prūdēns est. If he is doing this [and it is quite possible that he is], he is wise.* 两个子句均使用现在时直陈式;动词均按照现在时直陈式来翻译。
2. 过去的简单事实:*Sī id fēcit, prūdēns fuit. If he did this [and quite possibly he did], he was wise.* 两个子句均使用过去时(完成时或未完成时)直陈式;动词均按照过去时直陈式来翻译。

3. 将来的简单事实(有时称为“可能性大的将来”[future more vivid]): *Sī id faciet, prūdēns erit. If he does (will do) this [and quite possibly he will], he will be wise.* 两个子句均使用将来时直陈式; 前提句中的动词按照现在时来翻译(英语中的“if + 现在时”含有将来的意思), 结论句中的动词按照将来时来翻译(偶尔其中一个或两个子句也会使用将来完成时, 它实际上与将来时表示同样的含义。参见“古代名言”句 8 以及“B.Y.O.B.”的第 3 行)。

虚拟条件句

直陈条件句着眼于可能性的事实, 虚拟条件句则着眼于理想中的情况而非事实, 它所描述的要么是不大可能实现或无法生动设想的情况(有时称为“可能性小的将来”[future less vivid]), 要么是与现在正在发生或者过去已经发生的事情相反的情况(两种“与事实相反”的类型)。

1. 与现在事实相反: *Sī id faceret, prūdēns esset. If he were doing this [but in fact he is not], he would be wise [but he is not].* 两个子句均使用未完成时虚拟式; 用助动词 *were* (... *ing*) 和 *would* (*be*) 来翻译。
2. 与过去事实相反: *Sī id fēcisset, prūdēns fuisset. If he had done this [but he did not], he would have been wise [but he was not].* 两个子句均使用过去完成时虚拟式; 用助动词 *had* 和 *would have* 来翻译。
3. 可能性小的将来(有时称为“should-would”句): *Sī id faciat, prūdēns sit. If he should do this [and he may, or he may not], he would be wise.* 两个子句均使用现在时虚拟式; 用助动词 *should* 和 *would* 来翻译。

这六种基本的条件从句偶尔也会有一些变动, 那就是在结论句中使用命令式, 在前提句和结论句中使用带有不同时态和语气的“混合条件”, 使用不同的引导词(如 **dum**) 等等, 但是根据语境, 这些情况都不难处理。

例句

将下列条件从句进行分类。

1. *Sī hoc dīcet, errābit; if he says this, he will be wrong.*
2. *Sī hoc dīcit, errat; if he says this, he is wrong.*
3. *Sī hoc dīxisset, errāvisset; if he had said this, he would have been wrong.*
4. *Sī hoc dīcat, erret; if he should say this, he would be wrong.*
5. *Sī hoc dīxit, errāvit; if he said this, he was wrong.*
6. *Sī hoc dīceret, errāret; if he were saying this, he would be wrong.*
7. *Sī veniat, hoc videat; if he should come, he would see this.*
8. *Sī vēnit, hoc vīdit; if he came, he saw this.*

9. Sī venīret, hoc vidēret; *if he were coming, he would see this.*
 10. Sī veniet, hoc vidēbit; *if he comes, he will see this.*
 11. Sī vēnisset, hoc vīdisset; *if he had come, he would have seen this.*

词汇表

- inítium, -iī, n.**, *beginning, commencement* (initial, initiate, initiation)
ops, ópis, f., *help, aid*; **ópēs, ópum, pl.**, *power, resources, wealth* (opulent, opulence; cp. **cōpia**, from **con-** + **ops**)
philósophus, -ī, m., and **philósophā, -ae, f.**, *philosopher* (philosophy, philosophical)
plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people, populace, plebeians* (plebs, plebe, plebeian, plebiscite)
sāl, sális, m., *salt*; *wit* (salad, salami, salary, salina, saline, salify, salimeter, salinometer, sauce, sausage)
spéculum, -ī, n., *mirror* (speculate, speculation; cp. **spectō**, Ch. 34)
quis, quid, after **sī, nisi, nē, num**, indef. pron., *anyone, anything, someone, something* (cp. **quis? quid? quisque, quisquis**)
cándidus, -a, -um, *shining, bright, white; beautiful* (candescent, candid, candidate, candor, incandescent, candle, chandelier)
mérus, -a, -um, *pure, undiluted* (mere, merely)
suávis, suáve, *sweet* (suave, suaveness, suavity, suasion, dissuade, persuasion; cp. **persuādeō**, Ch. 35)
-ve, conj. suffixed to a word = **aut** before the word (cp. **-que**), *or*
heu, interj., *ah!, alas!* (a sound of grief or pain)
súbitō, adv., *suddenly* (sudden, suddenness)
recūsō (1), *to refuse* (recuse, recusant; cp. **causa**)
trádō, -dere, -didī, -ditum (trāns + dō), *to give over, surrender; hand down, transmit, teach* (tradition, traditional, traitor, treason)

练习与复习

1. Dummodo exercitus opem mox ferat, moenia urbis celeriter cōnservāre poterimus.
2. Cum cōnsilia hostium ab initiō cognōvissēs, prīmō tamen ūllum auxilium offerre aut etiam centum mīlitēs prōmittere nōluistī.
3. Sī dīvitiae et invidia nōs ab amōre et honōre ūsque prohibent, dīvitēsne vērē sumus?
4. Pauper quidem nōn erit pār cēterīs nisi scientiam ingeniumve habēbit; sī haec habeat, autem, multī magnopere invideant.
5. Nisi īnsidiae patērent, ferrum eius maximē timērēmus.
6. Sī quis rogābit quid nunc discās, refer tē artem nōn mediocrem sed ūtilissimam ac difficillimam discere.
7. Lēgēs ita scrībantur ut dīvitēs et plēbs—etiam pauper sine asse—sint parēs.
8. Sī custōdiae dūriōrēs fortiōrēsque ad casam tuam contendissent,

- heu, numquam tanta scelera suscipiē et hī omnēs nōn occidissent.
9. Illa fēmina sapientissima, cum id semel cognōvisset, ad eōs celerrimē sē contulit et omnēs opēs suās praebuit.
 10. Dūrum exsilium tam ācrem mentem ūnō annō mollīre nōn poterit.
 11. Propter omnēs rūmōrēs pessimōs (quī nōn erant vērī), nātae suāvēs eius magnopere dolēbant et dormīre nōn poterant.
 12. If those philosophers should come soon, you would be happier.
 13. If you had not answered very wisely, they would have hesitated to offer us peace.
 14. If anyone does these three things well, he will live better.
 15. If you were willing to read better books, you would most certainly learn more.

古代名言

1. Sī vīs pācem, parā bellum. (Flavius Vegetius.—**parā**, *prepare for*.)
2. Arma sunt parvī pretiī, nisi vērō cōnsilium est in patriā. (Cicero.—**pretium**, **-iī**, *value*.)
3. Salūs omnium ūnā nocte certē āmissa esset, nisi illa sevērītās contrā istōs suscepta esset. (Cicero.—**sevērītās**, **-tātis**.)
4. Sī quid dē mē posse agī putābis, id agēs—sī tū ipse ab istō periculō eris līber. (Cicero.)
5. Sī essem mihi cōnsciūs ūllīus culpaē, aequō animō hoc malum ferrem. (Phaedrus.—**cōnsciūs**, **-a**, **-um**, *conscious*.)
6. Dīcis tē vērē malle fortūnam et mōrēs antīquae plēbis; sed sī quis ad illa subitō tē agat, illum modum vītāe recūsēs. (Horace.)
7. Minus saepe errēs, sī sciās quid nesciās. (Publilius Syrus.)
8. Dīcēs “heu” sī tē in speculō videris. (Horace.)
9. Nīl habet infēlix paupertās dūrius in sē quam quod rīdiculōs hominēs facit. (*Juvenal.—**nīl** = **nihil**.—**quod**, *the fact that*.)

B.Y.O.B., etc., etc.

- Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
 paucīs (sī tibi dī favent) diēbus—
 sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
 cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
 5 et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs;
 haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
 cēnābis bene; nam tuī Catullī
 plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.
 Sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs,
 10 seu quid suāvius ēlegantiusve est:
 nam unguentum dabo, quod meae puellae
 dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;
 quod tū cum olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,
 tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

(*Catullus 13; meter: hendecasyllabic. The poet invites a friend to dinner, but there's a hitch and a BIG surprise.—**favēre** + dat., *to be favorable toward, favor*.—**cachinna**, -ae, *laugh, laughter*.—**venustus**, -a, -um, *charming*.—**sacculus**, -ī, *money-bag, wallet*.—**arānea**, -ae, *spiderweb*.—**contrā**, here adv., *on the other hand, in return*.—**seu**, conj., *or*.—**ēlegāns**, gen. **ēlegantis**.—**unguentum**, -ī, *salve, perfume*.—**dabo**: remember that -ō was often shortened in verse.—**dōnārunt** = **dōnāvērunt**, from **dōnāre**, *to give*.—**Venus**, -neris, f., and **Cupīdō**, -dinis, m.; Venus and Cupid, pl. here to represent all the fostering powers of Love.—**quod** . . . **olfaciēs** = **cum tū id olfaciēs**.—**olfaciō**, -ere, *to smell*.—For formal discussion of the “jussive noun” clause **deōs rogābis . . . ut . . . faciant**, easily translated here, see Ch. 36.—**tōtum** . . . **nāsus**, from **nāsus**, -ī, *nose*, objective complement with **tē**; the wide separation of adj. and noun suggests the cartoon-like enormity of the imagined schnoz!)

THE RICH GET RICHER

Semper pauper eris, sī pauper es, Aemiliāne:
dantur opēs nūllī nunc nisi dīvitibus.

(*Martial 5.81.; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Aemiliānus**, -ī.)

ARISTOTLE, TUTOR OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT

An Philippus, rēx Macedonum, voluisset Alexandrō, filiō suō, prīma elementa litterārum trādī ab Aristotele, summō eius aetātis philosophō, aut hic suscēpisset illud maximum officium, nisi initia studiōrum pertinēre ad summam sapientissimē crēdidisset?

(Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiōnēs Ōrātōriāe* 1.1.23.—**an**, interrog. conj., *or, can it be that*.—**Macedonēs**, -donum, m./f. pl., *Macedonians*.—**Aristotelēs**, -telis.—**pertinēre ad**, *to relate to, affect*.—**summa**, -ae, *highest part, whole*.)

YOUR LOSS, MY GAIN!

Cum Quīntus Fabius Maximus magnō cōnsiliō Tarentum fortissimē recēpisset et Salīnātor (quī in arce fuerat, urbe āmissā) dīxisset, “Meā operā, Quīnte Fabī, Tarentum recēpistī,” Fabius, mē audiente, “Certē,” inquit rīdēns, “nam nisi tū urbem āmīssissēs, numquam eam recēpisse.”

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 4.11.—During the second Punic War, Tarentum revolted from the Romans to Hannibal, though the Romans under Marcus Livius Salinator continued to hold the citadel throughout this period. In 209 B.C. the city was recaptured by Quintus Fabius Maximus.—**Tarentum** -ī, a famous city in southern Italy (which the Romans called Magna Graecia).—**meā operā**, *thanks to me*.)

词源点滴

In the readings

2. price, precious, prize, praise, appraise, appreciate, depreciate. 3. severe,

persevere, perseverance, asseverate. 5. conscious, unconscious, conscience.

“B.Y.O.B.”: favorite, disfavor.—cachinnate, cachinnation.—sack, satchel.—araneid.—elegance, elegantly.—unguent, unguentary.—donate, donation, donor.—olfaction, olfactory, olfactometer, olfactronics.—nasal, nasalize, nasalization; “nose”, “nostril”, and “nozzle” are cognate. “Aristotle”: pertain, pertinent, pertinacity, purtenance, appertain, appurtenance, impertinent, impertinence.—sum, summary, summation.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvete! 下面是一些广为人知的条件从句: **sī nātūra negat, facit indignātiō versum**, *if nature denies* (即“如果我缺少天份”), *indignation creates my verse* (语出讽刺作家尤维纳利斯,他可是两者都不缺!); **sī fortūna iuvat; sī fēcistī, negā!** (一位律师的忠告); **sī Deus nōbiscum, quis contrā nōs** (动词省去了,但意思很清楚); **sī post fāta venit glōria, nōn properō**, *if glory comes (only) after death, I'm in no hurry!* (马提雅尔); **sī sīc omnēs**, 表示一种怅惘,指“要是每件事都像这样就好了”。

Ex vocābulāriō novō quoque: ab initiō 是英语中的常用短语,指“从一开始”;竞选罗马公职的人穿 **toga candida**, *white toga*, 英语中的“candidate”一词便是由此而来。罗马人把未掺水的酒称为 **merum** (那些嗜酒的家伙吸收的正是这种东西); **ope et cōsiliō** 可以将生活管理得很好。“With a grain of salt” (有保留地,半信半疑地)这一短语来自拉丁语 **cum grānō salis; sāl Atticum** 指干巴巴的 *Athenian wit*; “salary”也是源于 **sāl**, 因为罗马士兵薪水的一部分就是一袋盐(我们“挣钱养家”[“bring home the (salty) bacon”, 字面意思是“我们把咸肉带回家”], 罗马人却把盐带回家!)。艺术是 **speculum vītae**。如果你还记得如何由形容词构成副词,你就可以猜出谚语 **suāviter in modō, fortiter in rē** 的意思了,这是拉丁语老师的好榜样;读乐谱时,你可能见过 **subitō** 一词,这是一个音乐记号,意为 *quickly*。

希望本课结束时的这些 **miscellānea** (来自 **miscellāneus, -a, -um, varied, mixed**) 能够给你带来乐趣。一个理由是: **sī finis bonus est, tōtum bonum erit**, 这是一句古老的谚语,也是一个“混合条件从句”,在这里,我把它意译为“结局好,一切好(包括本课在内)! ”: **et vōs omnēs, quoque valeātis!**

第三十四课

异态动词;特殊异态动词加夺格

异态动词

拉丁语中有一些常用的“异态动词”¹,它们有着被动的词尾,含义却是主动的。本课将要学到的新形式不多(只有命令式);最重要的就是记住哪些动词是异态的,从而把它们翻译成主动态。要想做到这一点,就要认真地学习词汇。被动形式/主动含义的规则也有一些例外,这些情况需要特别加以注意。

主要部分与变位

由下面一些例子可以看出,异态动词一般只有三个主要部分,它们是规则动词的前三个主要部分的被动对应物(1. 第一人称单数现在时直陈式;2. 现在时不定式;3. 第一人称单数完成时直陈式)。

现在时直陈式	现在时不定式	完成时直陈式
hórtor, <i>I urge</i>	hortári, <i>to urge</i>	hortátus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I urged</i>
fáteor, <i>I confess</i>	fatéri, <i>to confess</i>	fássus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I confessed</i>
séquor, <i>I follow</i>	séquī, <i>to follow</i>	secútus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I followed</i>
mólior, <i>I work at</i>	mólirī, <i>to work at</i>	mólītus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I worked at</i>
pátior, <i>I suffer</i>	pátī, <i>to suffer</i>	pássus (-a, -um) sum, <i>I suffered</i>

例词 Hortor 和 Sequor 的各种形式

异态动词也是根据与规则动词同样的规则进行被动态变位的;下面只列出了一些有代表性的形式,前面五个例词的完整变位请参见附录 p.447—449。

¹ 亦称“冒被动词”、“异相动词”。——译者注

直陈式**现在时**

1. hortor, *I urge*
2. hortāris (-re), *you urge*
3. hortātur, *he urges*

1. hortāmur, *we urge*
2. hortāminī, *you urge*
3. hortāntur, *they urge*

未完成时

1. hortābar, *I was urging*
2. hortābāris (-re), *you were urging*
etc.

将来时

1. hortābor, *I shall urge*
2. hortāberis (-re), *you will urge*
3. hortābitur, *he will urge*
etc.

完成时

hortātus, -a, -um sum, *I urged*
etc.

过去完成时

hortātus, -a, -um eram, *I had urged*
etc.

将来完成时

hortātus, -a, -um erō,
I shall have urged
etc.

séquor, *I follow*
séqueris (-re), *you follow*
séquitur, *he follows*

séquimur, *we follow*
sequimini, *you follow*
sequuntur, *they follow*

sequēbar, *I was following*
sequēbāris (-re), *you were following*,
etc.

séquar, *I shall follow*
sequēris (-re), *you will follow*
sequētur, *he will follow*
etc.

secūtus, -a, -um sum, *I followed*
etc.

secūtus, -a, -um eram, *I had followed*
etc.

secūtus, -a, -um erō,
I shall have followed
etc.

虚拟式**现在时**

horter, hortēris, hortētur
etc.

未完成时

hortārer, hortārēris, hortārētur
etc.

séquar, sequāris, sequātur
etc.

séquerer, sequerēris, sequerētur
etc.

完成时

hortátus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.

secūtus, -a, -um sim, sīs, etc.

过去完成时

hortátus, -a, -um ésem, etc.

secūtus, -a, -um ésem, etc.

动词变位缩写式

下面是 **fateor, fatēri, fassus sum** 的第三人称单数动词变位缩写式,由它可以看出异态动词变位缩写式的一般情况;请记住,它们对应的所有英语词都是主动态的,即 *he confesses, he will confess*, 等等。

直陈式

现在时	将来时	未完成时	完成时	将来完成时	过去完成时
fatētur	fatēbitur	fatēbātur	fāssus est	fāssus érit	fāssus érat

虚拟式

fateātur	——	fatērētur	fāssus sit	——	fāssus ésset
----------	----	-----------	---------------	----	-----------------

分词和不定式

下面给出了典型异态动词所有的分词和不定式形式,这倒不是因为出现了什么新的形式,而是因为它们并不完全符合异态动词被动形式/主动含义这一基本规则。

分词

现在时	hortāns, <i>urging</i>	séquēns, <i>following</i>
完成时	hortátus, -a, -um, <i>having urged</i>	secūtus, -a, -um, <i>having followed</i>
将来时	hortātūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to urge</i>	secūtūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to follow</i>
动形词	hortāndus, -a, -um, <i>to be urged</i>	sequēndus, -a, -um, <i>to be followed</i>

不定式

现在时	hortārī, <i>to urge</i>	séquī, <i>to follow</i>
完成时	hortátus, -a, -um ésse, <i>to have urged</i>	secūtus, -a, -um ésse, <i>to have followed</i>
将来时	hortātūrus, -a, -um ésse, <i>to be about to urge</i>	secūtūrus, -a, -um ésse, <i>to be about to follow</i>

例外:和规则动词一样,异态动词也有四个分词,但它只有三个不定式,分别对应于三种时态。其中有三个分词和一个不定式属于例外情况,因为它们违反了异态动词被动形式/主动含义这一基本规则:

1. 现在时分词和将来时分词:主动形式,主动含义。
2. 动形词(将来时被动态分词):被动形式,被动含义。
3. 将来时不定式:主动形式,主动含义。

命令式

异态动词的现在时命令式当然是现在时命令式的“被动态”形式。这些形式我们以前没有见过,因为它们只见于异态动词,不过掌握起来并不困难。

1. 第二人称单数命令式的拼写与现在时直陈式的另一种第二人称单数相同,如 **sequere!** (请注意,它也是并不存在的现在时主动态不定式的形式:要特别注意不要把这一特殊的异态动词命令式形式误当成不定式。)

2. 第二人称复数命令式的拼写与现在时直陈式的第二人称复数相同,如 **sequimini!**

考察下面几个例子:

- | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|-----------|----------|----------|
| 2. hortāre, <i>urge!</i> | fatēre, <i>confess!</i> | séquere | mōlire | pātere |
| 2. hortāmini, <i>urge!</i> | fatēmini, <i>confess!</i> | sequimini | mōlīmini | patīmini |

半异态动词

半异态动词是指这样一些动词,它们在现在时系统中是正常的,但在完成时系统中却是异态的,这一点由动词的主要部分就可以看出来。例如:

- | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| aúdeō, <i>I dare</i> | audēre, <i>to dare</i> | aúsus sum, <i>I dared</i> |
| gaúdeō, <i>I rejoice</i> | gaudēre, <i>to rejoice</i> | gāvísus sum, <i>I rejoiced</i> |

特殊异态动词加夺格

有少数异态动词通常与手段夺格连用,其中最常见的是 **ūtor** (及其复合词) (其他几个是 **fruor**, *to enjoy*, **fungor**, *to perform*, **potior**, *to possess* 以及 **vēscor**, *to eat*, 它们在本书中没有介绍,但在日后的阅读中可能会碰到)。事实上, **ūtor**, *to use, enjoy* 是一个反身代词,字面意思是借助某物 *to benefit oneself*。¹

¹ 比较法语词 **se servir de**, “to use”, 原意为 “to serve oneself with”。

Ūtitur stilō,

he is benefiting himself by means of a pencil (直译).

he is using a pencil (意译).

Nōn audent ūtī nāvibus, *they do not dare to use the ships.*

Nōn ausī sunt ūtī nāvibus, *they did not dare to use the ships.*

含有异态动词的句子的更多例子

1. Eum patientem haec mala hortātī sunt,
they encouraged him (as he was) suffering these evils.
2. Eum passūrum haec mala hortātī sunt,
they encouraged him (as he was) about to suffer these evils.
3. Is, haec mala passus, hortandus est,
this man, having suffered these evils, ought to be encouraged.
4. Is haec mala fortiter patiētur,
he will suffer these evils bravely.
5. Eum sequere et haec mōlire,
follow him and work at these things.
6. Eum sequī et haec mōlirī nōn ausus es,
you did not dare to follow him and work at these things.
7. Eum sequeris/sequēris,
you are following/will follow him.
8. Eum hortēmur et sequāmur,
let us encourage and follow him.
9. Cicerō Graecīs litterīs ūtēbātur,
Cicero used to enjoy Greek literature.

词汇表

ánima, -ae, f., *soul, spirit* (anima, animism, animatism, animation, animated, inanimate, etc.; cp. **animal, animus**)

remíssiō, remissiōnis, f., *letting go, release; relaxation* (remiss, remission; from **re + mittō**)

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word* (vocal, vocalic, vocalize, vociferous, vowel; vox angelica, vox humana, vox populi; cp. **vocō**)

advérsus, -a, -um, *opposite, adverse* (adversary, adversative, adversely, adversity; cp. **vertō**)

tális, tále, *such, of such a sort* (cp. **quālis, of what sort, what kind of**)

vae, interj., often + dat., *alas, woe to*

árbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrátus sum, to judge, think (arbiter, arbitress, arbitration, arbitrator, arbitrary, arbitrarily)

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnátus sum, to try, attempt (conation, conative)

créscō, créscere, crévī, crétum, to increase (crescent, crescendo, cresce, concrescence, concrete, decrease, excrescence, increment, accretion, accrue, crew, recruit)

ēgrédior, ēgredī, ēgréssus sum, to go out (aggression, congress, degrade, digress, egress, grade, gradient, gradual, graduate, ingredient, ingress, progress, regress, retrogress, transgress)

fáteor, fatērī, fássus sum, to confess, admit (confess, confession, profess, profession, professor; cp. **fābula, fāma, fātum**, also **for, fārī, fātus sum**, Ch. 40)

hórtor, hortārī, hortátus sum, to encourage, urge (hortatory, exhort, exhortation)

lóquor, lóquī, locútus sum, to say, speak, tell (loquacious, circumlocution, colloquial, elocution, eloquent, obloquy, soliloquy, ventriloquist)

mólior, mólirī, mólítus sum, to work at, build, undertake, plan (demolish, demolition; cp. **mólēs, a large mass, massive structure**)

mórior, mórī, mórtuus sum, fut. act. part. moritúrus, to die (moribund, mortuary; cp. **mors, mortālis, immortalis**)

nāscor, nāscī, nátus sum, to be born; spring forth, arise (agnate, cognate, innate, nascent, natal, nation, nature, naive; cp. **nāta, nātūra**)

pátior, pátī, pássus sum, to suffer, endure; permit (passion, passive, patient, compassion, compatible, incompatibility, impatient, impassioned, impassive, dispassionate)

proficīscor, -ficīscī, -féctus sum, to set out, start (profit and proficient from the related verb **prōficiō, to make headway, gain results**)

rústicor, rústicārī, rústicátus sum, to live in the country (rusticate, rustic, rural, cp. **rústicus, rural, rūs**, Ch. 37)

sédeō, sedēre, sédī, séssum, to sit (sedan, sedate, sedentary, sediment, sessile, session, assess, assiduous, president, siege, subsidy)

séquor, séquī, secútus sum, to follow (consequent, consecutive, sequence, sequel, subsequent; see Etymology below)

spéctō (1), to look at, see (spectate, spectator, spectacle, speculate, aspect, circumspect, inspect, prospect, respect, suspect; cp. **speculum**)

útor, útī, úsus sum + abl., to use; enjoy, experience (abuse, disuse, peruse, usual, usurp, usury, utensil, utilize, utility, utilitarian; cp. **útilis**)

练习与复习

1. Nisi quis plēbī opem celeriter referet auxiliumve prōmissum praebēbit, mīlia virōrum morientur.
2. Cum urbs plēna custōdiārum esset, nōn ausī estis suscipere scelera tam gravia quam voluerātis.
3. Dīc nunc cūr velīs tē ad istam dīvitem et candidam cōnferre. Vērē ac liberē loquere; nōlī recūsāre!

4. Dīvitīis trāditīs, heu, illī philosophī eādem nocte subitō profectī sunt in exsilium, unde numquam ēgredī potuērunt.
5. Nē patiāmur hanc antīquissimam scientiam āmittī.
6. Fateor mē vīnō merō apud mē ūsūrum esse.
7. Ab initiō nōn comprehendistī quantus exercitus nōs sequerētur et quot elephantōs istī mīlitēs sēcum dūcerent.
8. Prīmō respondit sē nōlle sequī ducem mediocris virtūtis sapientiaeve, cum cīvitās in līmine bellī stāret.
9. Ex urbe subitō ēgressus, ferrō suō morī semel cōnātus est.
10. Cum Aristotelēs hortārētur hominēs ad virtūtem, tamen arbitrābatur virtūtem in hominibus nōn nāscī.
11. Māter paterque nunc rūsticantur ut ā labōribus remissiōne suāvī ūtantur.
12. Dā mihi, amābō tē, multum salis et vīnum aquamve, ut cēnā maximē ūtar.
13. They did not permit me to speak with him at that time.
14. We kept thinking (**arbitror**) that he would use the office more wisely.
15. If any one should use this water even once, he would die.
16. If those four soldiers had followed us, we would not have dared to put the weapons on the ships.
17. This dinner will be good, provided that you use salt.

古代名言

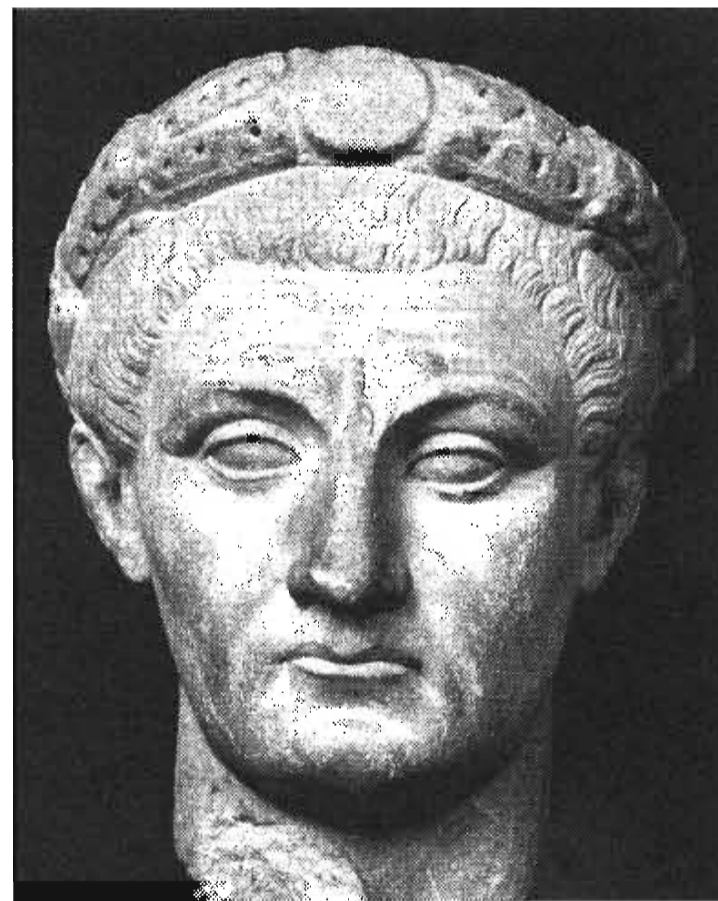
1. Cēdāmus Phoebō et, monitī, meliōra sequāmur. (*Virgil.—Phoebus Apollo was god of prophecy.)
2. Nam nēmō sine vitiīs nāscitur; optimus ille est quī minima habet. (Horace.)
3. Mundus est commūnis urbs deōrum atque hominum; hī enim sōlī, ratiōne ūtentēs, iūre ac lēge vīvunt. (Cicero.)
4. Tardē sed graviter vir sapiēns irāscitur. (*Publilius Syrus.—**tardus, -a, -um, slow, late.**—**irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum, to become angry.**)
5. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, ēgredere ex urbe; patent portae; proficiscere; nōbīscum versārī iam diūtius nōn potes; id nōn feram, nōn patiar. (Cicero.—**Quae cum = Cum haec.**—**versor, versārī, versātus sum, to stay.**)
6. Cūra pecūniam crēscēntem sequitur et dīves male dormit. (Horace.)
7. Sī in Britanniam profectus essēs, nēmō in illā tantā īnsulā iūre perītior fuisset. (Cicero.—**Britannia, -ae, Britain.**—**perītus, -a, -um + abl., skilled in.**)
8. Nisi laus nova nāscitur etiam vetus laus in incertō iacet ac saepe āmittitur. (Publilius Syrus.)—**vetus, gen. veteris, old.**)
9. Spērō autem mē secūtum esse in libellīs meīs tālem temperantiam ut nēmō bonus dē illīs querī possit. (Martial.—**temperantia, -ae.**—**queror, querī, questus sum, to complain.**)
10. Hōrae quidem et diēs et annī discēdunt; nec praeteritum tempus um-

- quam revertitur, nec quid sequatur potest sciri. (Cicero.—**praeteritus, -a, -um, past.**—**revertor, reverti, reversus sum, to return.**)
11. Nōvistī mōrēs mulierum: dum mōliuntur, dum cōnantur, dum in speculum spectant, annus lābitur. (Terence.—**mulier, -eris, woman.**—**lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum, to slip, glide.**)
12. Amīcitiā rēs plūrimās continet; nōn aquā, nōn igne in plūribus locīs ūtimur quam amīcitiā. (Cicero.)
13. Homō stultus! Postquam dīvitiās habēre coepit, mortuus est! (Cicero.—**postquam, conj., after.**)
14. Ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque finem. (*Virgil.—**Ō passī, voc. pl., O you who have . . .**—**hīs = hīs rēbus gravibus.**)

CLAUDIUS' EXCREMENTAL EXPIRATION

Et ille quidem animam ēbulliit, et ex eō dēsiit vīvere vidēri. Exspīrāvit autem dum comoedōs audit, ut sciās mē nōn sine causā illōs timēre. Ultima vōx eius haec inter hominēs audīta est, cum maiōrem sonitum ēmisisset illā parte quā facilius loquēbātur: “Vae mē, putō, concacāvī.” Quod an fēcerit, nesciō—omnia certē concacāvī!

(*Seneca, *Apocolocyntosis* 4; a satirical farce on the emperor Claudius' death and deification.—**ēbulliō, -ire, ēbulliī, to bubble out**, + **animam**, comic for *he died*.—**ex eō**, sc. **tempore**.—**dēsinō, -sinere, -siī, -situm, to cease**.—**exspīrāre, to breathe out, die**.—**comoedus, -ī, comic actor**.—**sonitus, -ūs, sound**.—**ē + mittere**.—**illā parte**, sc. **ex**, i.e., his bottom.—**concacāre, to defecate upon**.—**quod = id**.—**an, whether**, introducing an ind. quest.)



*The emperor Claudius
Louvre, Paris, France*

AND VICE IS NOT NICE!

Mentītur quī tē vitiōsum, Zōile, dīcit:
nōn vitiōsus homō es, Zōile, sed vitium!

(*Martial 11.92; meter: elegiac couplet.—**mentior, mentiri, mentitus sum, to lie**,

deceive.—**vitiōsus**, adj. from **vitium**.—**tē vitiōsum**, sc. **esse**, and remember that the verb **sum**, **esse** is often omitted in both prose and verse when it is readily understood from the context.—**Zōilus**, a Greek name.)

PRETTY IS AS PRETTY DOES

Bella es, nōvimus, et puella, vērū est,
et dīves—quis enim potest negāre?
Sed cum tē nimium, Fabulla, laudās,
nec dīves neque bella nec puella es!

(*Martial 1.64; meter: hendecasyllabic.)

ON LESBIA'S HUSBAND

Ille mī pār esse deō vidētur,
ille, sī fās est, superāre dīvōs,
quī, sedēns adversus, identidem tē
spectat et audit
5 dulce rīdentem, miserō quod omnīs
ēripit sēnsūs mihi: nam simul tē,
Lesbia, aspexī, nihil est super mī,
[Lesbia, vōcis,]
lingua sed torpet, tenuis sub artūs
10 flamma dēmānat, sonitū suōpte
tintinant aurēs, geminā teguntur
lūmina nocte.
Ōtium, Catulle, tibi molestum est;
ōtiō exsultās nimiumque gestīs;
15 ōtium et rēgēs prius et beātās
perdidit urbēs.

(*Catullus 51; meter: Sapphic stanza.—**mī**= **mihi**.—**fās est**, *it is right*.—**dīvōs** = **deōs**.—**identidem**, adv., *again and again*.—**dulce**, adv. of **dulcis**.—**miserō . . . mihi**, dat. of separation; the prose order would be **quod omnīs (= omnēs) sēnsūs mihi miserō ēripit**.—**quod**, *a circumstance which*; the entire preceding clause is the antecedent.—**simul**, adv., *as soon as*.—**aspexī** = **spectāvī**.—**nihil**, with **vōcis**, gen. of the whole, *no voice*; **est super** = **superest**, *remains*.—**Lesbia, vōcis** is an editorial suggestion for a verse missing in the manuscripts.—**torpēre**, *to grow numb*.—**tenuis**, with **flamma**, from **tenuis**, **-e**, *thin, slender*.—**artus, -ūs**, *joint, limb (of the body)*.—**flamma, -ae**, *flame*.—**dēmānāre**, *to flow through*.—**sonitus, -ūs**, *sound*.—**suōpte**, intensive for **suō**.—**tintināre**, *to ring*.—**tegō, -ere**, *to cover*.—**lūmen, -minis**, *light; eye*.—**molestus, -a, -um**, *troublesome*.—**exsultāre**, *to celebrate, exult (in)*, + **ōtiō**.—**gestīre**, *to act without restraint, be elated or triumphant*.—**perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum**, *to destroy*.)

词源点滴

“Sympathy”源于希腊词 **syn** (*with*) + **pathos** (*suffering*)。那么, “sympathy”

精确等价于哪个拉丁根词?

下面是一些与 **sequor** 有关的词: execute, executive, executor, obsequious, prosecute, persecute, pursue, ensue, sue, suit, suite, sect, second。与 **sequor** 有关的除了 **secundus**, 还有 **socius** (*a follower, ally*), 由此产生了 social, society, associate, dissociate。

In the readings

4. irate, irascible, irascibility. 5. **Versārī** 的字面意思是 *to turn (oneself) around*: versatile, converse, conversant, conversation. 8. veteran, inveterate. 9. intemperance.—querulous, quarrel. 10. preterit, preterition, praeteritio.—revert, reverse, reversible, reversion. “Claudius”: ebullient.—expire, expiration, expiratory, expiry.—cp. **sonus, -ī, sound**: sonic, sonar, resonate. “Lesbia”: divine.—aspect.—tenuous, tenuity.—flammable, inflame, inflammatory, inflammation.—tintinnabulation.—luminary, lamination, illuminate.—molest, molestation.—exultant, exultation.—perdition.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, meī discipulī discipulaeque! Quid agitis? (Spērō vōs valēre.) 既然你已经开始阅读越来越多原汁原味的未经改编的拉丁语文学作品(比如本课中选录的马提雅尔、塞内卡、卡图卢斯等人的著作),你也许能够理解下面这句话:“当初我上学的时候,拉丁语还学得嗑嗑吧吧的,不过我已经多少认识到了以经典拉丁语为载体的纯文学之妙。”——保罗·麦卡特尼¹。那么,拉丁语学到什么程度算够呢?——**quantum placeat, as much as gives one pleasure**(但愿能够近乎第三十二课的 **quantum vīs**, 多于第三十课的 **quantum satis!**)。

下面这些拉丁语短语还远未过时:首先是一句不幸的(幸而被夸大了!)古老谚语, **quem dī diligunt, adulēscēns moritur**; 下面这句短语可以提醒我们每个人终有一死, **mementō morī**, 意译为“记住你必定会死”(—**tō** 形式是一种不太常见的将来时命令式, 本书中没有正式介绍, 但在古代的法律和宗教文献中并不罕见); 关于为祖国献出生命, 贺拉斯写道, **dulce et decōrum**(源于 **decōrus, -a, -um, fitting, proper**) **est prō patriā morī**; 另一则黯淡的谚语(但很重要, 因为它包含两个异态动词!) 是天文学家马尼留斯 (Manilius) 的格言, **nascentēs morimur** (*even as we are*) *being born, we (begin to) die*; 接下来是“今朝有酒今朝醉”的塞内卡版本, **bibāmus, moriendum est**, 它包含了被动迂说法; 还有进入竞技场的角斗士对皇帝说的话, **avē, Caesar: moritūrī tē salutāmus, hail,**

¹ 保罗·麦卡特尼 (Paul McCartney), 英国前“甲壳虫”乐队成员。——译者注

Caesar: we (who are) about to die salute you! 对于那些生命得以保全的战败者, 我们可以说 **vae, victis**, *woe to the conquered*, 这是李维讲述公元前 390 年高卢人洗劫罗马的名言。

关于死亡我们已经讲得够多了。**Hic sunt alia miscellanea ex vocabulariō novō: vōx populī; vōx clamantis in dēsertō**, *the voice of one calling out in the wilderness* (源于《马太福音》); **crēscit amor nummī quantum ipsa pecūnia crēvit**, *love of the coin grows as much as one's wealth itself has grown* (Juvenal 14.139); **sedente animō**, *with a calm mind*。以下是其他一些异态动词: 马里兰州的座右铭是 **crēscite et multiplicāmini** (你知道是什么意思吗?); **loquitur** 是一种舞台指示用语; 我们以前曾经见过 **rēs ipsa loquitur**, *the matter speaks for itself* 这一法律习语, 现在你明白其中的动词形式了; **seq.** 是 **sequēns/sequentēs**, *the following* 的缩写, 在脚注中比较常用; **nōn sequitur** 是指不能从前一陈述逻辑地推出 (当然, **sequitur** 是指可以推出!); **sequor nōn inferior**, *I follow (but am) not inferior*。本课是否使你激动不已? 接下来的 (subsequent) 一课会是它的续篇 (sequel) 吗? 如果不是, 结局 (consequences) 会怎样? 欢迎您继续收听……**et valēte!**



*Gladiators in combat, detail of mosaic from Torrenova, 4th century A.D.
Galleria Borghese, Rome, Italy*

第三十五课

形容词加与格;特殊动词加与格;复合动词加与格

与格一般用来指某种动作间接作用或间接提到的人或事物,宾格则是指动作更直接的承受者或承受对象。例如,间接宾语就是主语+动词在“提交”直接宾语时所指向的人或事物:“I am giving the book [直接宾语] to you [间接宾语]”=“I am giving the book, not just to anyone anywhere, but in your direction, i.e., to you.”甚至在被动迂说法结构中,施事与格也是指这样一个人,对于他来说,某种动作是强制性的。语法学家们还区分了其他一些与格用法,但它们大都只是基于这种基本的“指向”观念的变种。

形容词加与格

我们曾经在阅读中碰到过形容词加与格的结构,只不过还没有正式介绍它。简单地说,与格名词可以与许多拉丁语形容词连用(特别是那些指态度、性质或关系的形容词),表示该形容词适用的方向(既可以是字面意义上的,也可以是隐喻意义上的);在英语中,这些形容词后面一般都跟着“to”,“toward”或“for”(比如“friendly to/toward”,“hostile to/toward”,“suitable to/for”,“useful to”,“similar to”,“equal to”等等)。

Mors est similis **somnō**, *death is similar to sleep.*

Sciēbam tē **mihi** fidēlem esse, *I knew that you were loyal to me.*

Nōbīs est vir amīcus, *he is a man friendly toward us.*

Quisque **sibi** cārus est, *each one is dear to himself.*

Ille vidētur pār esse **deō**, *that man seems to be equal to a god.*

特殊动词加与格

特殊动词加与格的结构在概念上与形容词加与格类似。这类动词(下面列出了最重要的一些词)中有许多是及物的,就像接与格的形容词那样,它们也指态度或关系,例如 **nocēre**, *to be injurious to*, **parcō**, *to be lenient toward* 等等。虽然在译成英语时,这些动词就好像是及物的一样,它们所支配的与格名词似乎也变成了直接宾语(比如 **tibi parcit**, *he spares you*; 字面意思是 *he is lenient toward you*),但与格仍然是指该态度或性质在使用时所朝向的人或事物。

虽然加与格的特殊动词大多意为 *favor, help, harm, please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare*,但如果把这当成一条规则来记,那么不仅这个清单非常冗长,而且也会漏掉一些重要的例外情况(比如 **iuvō**, *to help* 和 **iubeō**, *to command, order* 后面跟的就是宾格宾语),所以最好的方法还是理解这个概念,然后记住一些具有这一结构的最常见的拉丁语动词。

在记忆下面这些动词时,请注意我们对每个动词给出的第一个翻译是更为字面的翻译,其中包括了英语词 *to*,以使我们想到它需要跟与格;还要注意,每个动词都表达了一种对于某人或某物的态度,这也暗示它需要跟与格。

crēdō + dat., *entrust to; trust, believe* (**crēdō tibi**, *I believe you*)

ignōscō + dat., *grant pardon to; pardon, forgive* (**ignōscō virīs**, *I forgive the men*)

imperō + dat., *give orders to; command* (**imperō militibus**, *I command the soldiers*)

noceō + dat., *do harm to; harm* (**noceō hostibus**, *I harm the enemy*)

nūbō + dat., *be married to; marry* (**nūbō illi virō**, *I am marrying that man*)

parcō + dat., *be lenient to; spare* (**parcō vōbīs**, *I spare you*)

pāreō + dat., *be obedient to; obey* (**pāreō ducī**, *I obey the leader*)

persuādeō + dat., *make sweet to; persuade* (**persuādeō mihi**, *I persuade myself*)

placeō + dat., *be pleasing to; please* (**placeō patrī**, *I please my father*)

serviō + dat., *be a slave to; serve* (**serviō patriae**, *I serve my country*)

studeō + dat., *direct one's zeal to; study* (**studeō litterīs**, *I study literature*)

Crēde amīcīs, believe (trust) your friends.

Ignōsce mihi, pardon me (forgive me).

Magistra discipulīs parcit, the teacher spares (is lenient toward) her pupils.

Hoc eīs nōn placet, this does not please them.

Nōn possum eī persuādēre, I cannot persuade him.

Variae rēs hominibus nocent, various things harm men.

Cicerō philosophiae studēbat, *Cicero used to study philosophy.*

Philosophiae servīre est libertās, *to serve philosophy is liberty.*

应当注意,在这些动词中,有一些也可以带直接宾语(例如,**crēdō** 加与格表示相信的人,**mātrī crēdit**, *he believes his mother*; 加宾格则表示相信的事物,**id crēdit**, *he believes it*); 而像 **imperō** 和 **persuādeo** 等一些词则以名词从句为宾语,我们在下一课会看到。

复合动词加与格

还有一种类似的与格用法,即与格与一些包含 **ad, ante, con-** (= **cum**), **in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, circum, re-**(表示 *against*) 等前缀的复合动词连用。如果一个复合动词(不论及物还是不及物)与其简单形式的含义相差甚远,则多和与格连用;相反,如果复合动词与简单形式的含义差别不大,则通常不用与格:

Sequor eum, *I follow him.*

Obsequor eī, *I obey him.*

Sum amīcus eius, *I am his friend.*

Adsum amīcō, *I support my friend.*(字面意思是 *I am next to my friend*, 即站在他这边)

Vēnit ad nōs, *he came to us.*

Advēnit ad nōs, *he came to us.*

在很多时候,与格似乎充当了介词前缀的宾语,尽管这个介词本身可能应当跟另一种格;比如前面的 **adsum amīcō** 以及下面几个例子:

Aliīs praestant, *they surpass the others*(字面意思是 *they stand before the others*).

Praeerat exercituī, *he was in charge of the army* (字面意思是 *he was in front of/before the army*).

如果简单动词是及物的,那么复合动词不仅可以用与格作根动词的宾语,也可以用宾格作宾语:

Praeposūi eum exercituī, *I put him in charge of the army* (字面意思是 *I put him [posuī eum] in front of the army [prae- + exercituī]*).

Praeposūi pecūniam amīcitiae, *I preferred money to friendship* (字面意思是 *I put money [posuī pecūniam] before friendship [prae- + amīcitiae]*).

既然特殊动词和复合动词加与格的规则有这么多变化,所以最好的方法是

理解所涉及的概念,在碰到句子中的与格时,能够弄清楚它可能起的作用;和其他格一样,我们应当列一张与格用法表(我们已经学过五种与格用法),列出每一种的定义和有代表性的例子。

词汇表

- aéstās, aestātis, f.**, *summer* (estival, estivate, estivation; cp. **aestus, -ūs**, *heat, aestuāre, to be hot, seethe, boil*)
iānua, -ae, f., *door* (janitor, Janus, January)
péctus, pectoris, n., *breast, heart* (pectoral, expectorate, parapet)
praémium, -iī, n. *reward, prize* (premium)
īrātus, -a, -um, *angry* (irate; cp. **īra, īrāscor, to be angry**)
antepōnō, -pōnere, -pōsuī, -pōsitum, *to put before, prefer*
fóveō, fovére, fōvī, fōtum, *to comfort, nurture, cherish* (foment)
ignóscō, -nóscere, -nóvī, -nótum + dat., *to grant pardon to, forgive*
imperō (1) + dat., *to give orders to, command* (imperative, emperor; cp. **imperātor, imperium**)
mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum, *to marvel at, admire, wonder* (admire, marvel, miracle, mirage, mirror; cp. **mīrābilis, Ch. 38, mīrāculum, a marvel**)
nóceō, nocére, nócuī, nócitum + dat., *to do harm to, harm, injure* (innocent, innocuous, noxious, nuisance, obnoxious; cp. **innocēns, blameless**)
núbō, núbere, núpsī, nūptum, *to cover, veil; + dat. (of a bride) to be married to, marry* (nubile, connubial, nuptials; cp. **nūptiae, marriage**)
párcō, párcere, pepércī, parsūrum + dat., *to be lenient to, spare* (parsimonious, parsimony)
pāreō, pārere, páruī + dat., *to be obedient to, obey* (apparent, appear)
persuádeō, -suádere, -suásī, -suásum + dat., *to succeed in urging, persuade, convince* (assuage, dissuade, suasion, suave; cp. **suāvis**)
pláceō, placére, plácuī, plácitum + dat., *to be pleasing to, please* (complacent, placable, implacable, placate, placid, plea, plead, pleasure, displeasure; cp. **placidus, kindly, agreeable, calm**)
sápiō, sápere, sapívī, to have good taste; have good sense, be wise (sapient, sapid, insipid, sage, savor; cp. **sapiēns, sapientia**)
sérviō, servíre, servívī, servítum + dat., *to be a slave to, serve* (service, disservice, subservise, subservient, servile, servility, deserve, desert = reward, dessert; cp. **servus, servitūs; distinguish from servāre**)
stúdeō, studére, stúduī + dat., *to direct one's zeal to, be eager for, study* (student; cp. **studium, studiōsus, eager, diligent, scholarly**)
subrídeō, -rídere, -rísī, -rísium, *to smile (down) upon* (cp. **rídeō, rídículus**)

练习与复习

1. Minerva, filia Iovis, nāta est plēna scientiae et ingenīi.
2. Custōdiae sī cum duce nostrō līberē loquantur et huic tyrannum

trādere cōnentur, sine perīculō ex moeniīs urbis prōtinus ēgredi possint.

3. Pārēre lēgibus aequīs melius est quam tyrannō servīre.
4. Cum optimē honōribus ūsus esset et sibi cīvitatē semper antepōneret, etiam plēbs eī crēdēbat et nōn invidēbat.
5. Diū passa, māter vestra fēliciter, sedēns apud amīcōs, mortua est.
6. Philosophī cōnsilium spectāvērunt et recūsāvērunt tālem rem suscipere mōlīrīve.
7. Cum dīves sīs atque dīvitiae crēscant, tamen opibus tuīs parcere vīs et nēminī assem offerēs.
8. Ab illā īsulā repente profectus, eādem nocte ad patriam nāve advēnit; tum, quaerēns remissiōnem animae, diū rūsticābātur.
9. Hic mīles, cum imperātōrī vestrō nōn placēret, heu, illa praemia prōmissa amīsīt.
10. Nisi mōrēs parēs scientiae sunt—id nōbīs fatendum est—scientia nōbīs magnopere nocēre potest.
11. Magistra tum rogāvit duōs parvōs puerōs quot digitōs habērent.
12. Māter candida nātae cārissimae subrīdet, quam maximē fovet, et eī plūrima ōscula suāvia dat.
13. Why does he now wish to hurt his two friends?
14. If he does not spare the plebeians, alas, we shall never trust him.
15. Since you are studying Roman literature, you are serving a very difficult but a very great master.
16. If they were truly willing to please us, they would not be using their wealth thus against the state.

古代名言

1. Nēmō liber est quī corporī servit. (Seneca.)
2. Imperium habēre vīs magnum? Imperā tibi! (Publilius Syrus.)
3. Bonīs nocet quisquis pepercit malīs. (*Id.)
4. Cum tū omnia pecūniae postpōnās, mīrāris sī nēmō tibi amōrem praestat? (Horace.—**post-pōnō**.)
5. Frūstrā aut pecūniae aut imperiīs aut opibus aut glōriae student; potius studeant virtūtī et honōrī et scientiae et alicui artī. (Cicero.—**frūstrā**, adv., *in vain*.—**potius**, adv., *rather*.)
6. Virtūtī melius quam Fortūnae crēdāmus; virtūs nōn nōvit calamitātī cēdere. (Publilius Syrus.—**calamitās**, **-tātis**.)
7. Et Deus ait: “Faciāmus hominem ad imāginem nostram et praesit piscibus maris bēstiisque terrae.” (Genesis.—**imāgō**, **-ginis**, f.—**prae-sum**.—**piscis**, **piscis**, m., *fish*.—**bēstia**, **-ae**, *beast*.)
8. Omnēs arbitrātī sunt tē dēbere mihi parcere. (Cicero.)
9. Quid facere vellet, ostendit, et illī servō spē libertātis magnisque praemiīs persuāsīt. (Caesar.)
10. Sī cui librī Cicerōnis placent, ille sciat sē prōfēcisse. (Quintilian.—**prōficiō** = **prō** + **faciō**, *to progress, benefit*.)

11. In urbe nostrā mihi contigit docērī quantum irātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. (Horace.—**contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum**, to touch closely, fall to the lot of.)
12. Alicui rogantī melius quam iubentī pārēmus. (Publilius Syrus.)
13. Vīvite fortiter fortiaque pectora rēbus adversīs oppōnite. (Horace.—**oppōnō = ob + pōnō**, to set against.)
14. Nōn ignāra malī, miserīs succurrere discō. (*Virgil.—**ignārus, -a, -um**, ignorant; **ignāra** is fem. because it agrees with Dido, exiled queen, who speaks these words to shipwrecked Aeneas.—**succurrō = sub + currō**, to help.)
15. Ignōsce saepe alterī, numquam tibi. (Publilius Syrus.)
16. Quandō tē, deum meum, quaerō, vītam beātam quaerō; quaeram tē ut vīvat anima mea. (St. Augustine.)

OID ASKS THE GODS TO INSPIRE HIS WORK

In nova fert animus mūtātās dīcere fōrmās
 corpora: dī, coeptīs—nam vōs mūtāstis et illās—
 adspīrāte meīs prīmāque ab orīgine mundi
 ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen!

(*Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* 1.1–4; meter: dactylic hexameter. Ovid's *Metamorphōsēs* was an epic that recounted hundreds of stories of miraculous transformations, from the creation of the universe right down into his own times; the challenge in translating this brief excerpt, as with much of Latin verse, is to connect the adjectives with the nouns they modify, so watch the endings!—**nova**, with **corpora**.—**fert**, *compels (me)*.—**coeptīs . . . meīs**, dat. with the compound **adspīrāte**, *my beginnings*, i.e., *the inception of my work*.—**mūtāstis = mūtāvistis**; such contractions, with **v** and the following vowel dropped, are common in certain perfect tense forms.—**et = etiam**.—**illās**, sc. **fōrmās**.—**adspīrāte**, to breathe upon, inspire.—**orīgō, -ginis**, f.—Note the interlocked word order of **mea . . . tempora** and **perpetuum . . . carmen**.—**dē + dūcō**.)

SORRY, NOBODY'S HOME!

Nāsīca ad poētā Ennium vēnit. Cum ad iānuam Ennium quaesīvisset et serva respondisset eum in casā nōn esse, sēnsit illam dominī iussū id dīxisse et Ennium vērō esse in casā. Post paucōs diēs, cum Ennius ad Nāsīcam vēnisset et eum ad iānuam quaereret, Nāsīca ipse exclāmāvit sē in casā nōn esse. Tum Ennius “Quid?” inquit, “Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?” Hīc Nāsīca merō cum sale respondit: “Vae, homō es impudēns! Ego, cum tē quaerem, servae tuae crēdidī tē nōn in casā esse; nōnne tū mihi ipsī nunc crēdis?”

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.276.—Publius Cornelius Scipio Nasica was a celebrated jurist.—Quintus Ennius, a famous early Roman poet.—**iussū**, at the command of.—**exclāmāre**, to shout out.—**impudēns**, gen. **impudentis**.)

"I DO." "I DON'T!"

Nūbere vīs Prīscō. Nōn mīror, Paula; sapīstī.
Dūcere tē nōn vult Prīscus: et ille sapit!

(*Martial 9.10; meter: elegiac couplet.—Priscus was an eligible bachelor, and probably a rich one; Paula was apparently not his type!—**sapīstī** = **sapīvistī**; see on **mūtāstis** above.—**dūcere**, i.e., **in mātrimōnium**.—**et** here, as often, = **etiam**.)

MARONILLA HAS A COUGH

Petit Gemellus nūptiās Marōnillae
et cupit et īnstat et precātur et dōnat.
Adeōne pulchra est? Immō, foedius nīl est.
Quid ergō in illā petitur et placet? Tussit!

(*Martial 1.10; meter: choliambic. Gemellus is a legacy-hunter, and Maronilla a rich old hag whose estate he hopes to inherit.—**nūptiāe**, **-ārum**, f. pl., *marriage*.—**īnstāre**, *to press, insist*.—**precor**, **precārī**, **precātus sum**, *to beg, entreat*.—**dōnat** = **dat**.—**adeō** = **tam**.—**immō**, adv., *on the contrary*.—**foedius** = **turpius**.—**nīl** = **nihil**.—**ergō** = **igitur**.—**tussire**, *to cough*.)

SUMMER VACATION

Ludī magister, parce simplicī turbae:
...
aestāte puerī sī valent, satis discut.

(*Martial 10.62.1, 12; meter: choliambic.—**simplex**, gen. **simplicis**, here *youthful*.)

词源点滴***In the readings***

4. postponement. 5. frustrate, frustration. 6. calamitous. 7. imagine, imagery.—*Pisces*, piscatory, piscatology, piscary.—*bestial*, bestiality, bestialize, beast, beastly. 10. proficient, proficiency. 11. contingent, contingency, contiguous, contiguity, contact, contagion, contagious. 13. opponent, opposite, opposition. 14. succor. “Ovid”: aspire, aspiration, aspiratory.—*original*, originate. “Sorry”: exclamation, exclamatory.—*impudence*. “Maronilla”: nuptials; cp. **nūbō**.—*instant*, instance, instantly.—*imprecation*.—*donate*, donation.—*tussive*, pertussis. “Summer”: simple, simpleton, simplex, simplicity, simplistic.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque! 或者根据 **studēre** 的含义,你们现在已经

可以被称为 **studentēs** 了。显然,正是出于对学术的热情,你们才会如此深入地学习拉丁语!那么,**studentēs**,下面就是你们的 **praemium**,希望它能使这顿 **cēna Latīna** 更加可口,这次仍然是 **ex novā grammaticā** (*grammar*) **atque vocābulāriō**:如果你还记得意指“favor … etc.”的动词支配与格,你就可以理解下面这句头韵体箴言:**fortūna favet fortibus; favēte linguīs**,直译为 *be favorable with your tongues*,这是罗马宗教仪式上的一句用语,意为“避免任何不吉之语,保持沉默”;由 **imperō** 不仅产生出了“imperative”,而且也产生了习语 **dīvide**(源于 **dīvidere**, *to separate, divide*) **et imperā**(分而治之);**placet** 指赞成票,**placitum** 指法庭的裁定,“placebo”是指不含药物的安慰剂,旨在迎合病人的情绪(从字面上讲,“medicine”[药物]能够起到什么作用?);秘密会议是 **iānuīs clausīs**(源于 **claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum**, *to close*, 比如“recluse”,“closet”等等)开的,但 **iānuae mentis** 却是学习拉丁语能够帮助你打开的 (**aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum** 即 *to open*, 比如“aperture”)。**Studēte Latīnae, aperīte mentēs, et semper valēte, studentēs!**

第三十六课

间接命令句; Fīō

间接命令句

间接命令句(jussive noun clause)可以看成某种间接命令。就像间接陈述(第二十五课)和间接问句(第三十课)那样,实际的命令(或要求、恳求等等)并不是通过主句中的命令式或祈愿虚拟式(第二十八课)逐字引用,而是通过从句来间接转述,也就是说,不是“he ordered them, ‘Do this!’”,而是“he ordered them to do this.”在拉丁语中,这些从句通常由 **ut** 或 **nē** 来引导,动词用虚拟式(通常是现在时或未完成时),而在英语和英语翻译中,我们往往使用现在时不定式,不带引导词,也不用 *may* 或 *might* 等助动词:

1. Hoc facite, *do this.*(命令式) 直接命令
2. Hoc faciant, *let them do this.*(祈愿虚拟式) 直接命令
3. Imperat vōbīs ut hoc faciātis, *he commands you to do this.*
4. Imperāvit eīs ut hoc facerent, *he commanded them to do this.*
5. Persuādet eīs ut hoc faciant, *he persuades them to do this.*
6. Petīvit ab eīs nē hoc facerent, *he begged (from) them not to do this.*
7. Monuit eōs nē hoc facerent, *he warned them not to do this.*
8. Hortātus est eōs ut hoc facerent, *he urged them to do this.*

这些句子很容易与目的从句相混淆,因为它们在形式上是相同的。不过通过考察上面的例子,我们可以看出它们本质上是命令性的。与充当状语的目的从句(回答“为什么”的问题)不同,间接命令句充当的是主要动词的名词宾语(回答“命令、要求、建议什么”的问题)。下面列出了另一些能够引导间接命令句

的常用动词,也给出了被命令者或被要求者所处的格(与格、宾格等等):

hortor eum ut, *I urge him to . . .*
 imperō eī ut, *I order him to . . .*
 moneō eum ut, *I advise him to . . .*
 ōrō eum ut, *I beg him to . . .*
 persuādeō eī ut, *I persuade him to . . . (或 I persuade him that . . .)*
 petō ab eō ut, *I beg (from) him to . . .*
 quaerō ab eō ut, *I request (from/of) him to . . .*
 rogō eum ut, *I ask him to . . .*

虽然 **volō**, **nōlō** 和 **mālō**(第三十二课)后面一般跟不定式,但它们有时也可以引导从句(如 **mālō ut**, *I prefer that . . .*);**iubeō** 几乎总是跟不定式结构。

不规则的 **Fīō, fierī, factus sum, to occur, happen, be done, be made**

Fīō, fierī 是常见的不规则动词,意为 *to occur, happen*, 罗马人用它来代替 **faciō** 的现在时系统的被动态。因此,尽管它在形式上是主动的,却有着 *to be done, be made* 的被动含义。¹ 反过来,它本身的完成时系统则由 **faciō** 的被动态完成时系统来提供。

这样一来,我们就有了一个合成的动词,其主要部分为 **fīō, fierī, factus sum**, 含义包括 *occur, happen, become, be made, be done* 等等。在翻译的时候,如果看到 **fīō** 的主动态完成时系统,别忘了它有可能表示 *be done, be made* 的被动含义;如果看到被动态完成时系统 **factus est, factus erat, factus sit** 等形式,别忘了它有可能表示 *has become, had occurred* 等主动含义。

这里需要掌握的新的形式已经列在下面。请注意,除了 **fit, fierī** 和未完成时虚拟式,词干元音在任何位置都是长元音 **-ī-**;此外,现在时、将来时和未完成时的直陈式以及现在时虚拟式都遵循 **audiō** 的模式;有了不定式 **fieri**, 未完成时虚拟式也可以按照以前学过的规则推出来。

直陈式			虚拟式	
现在时	未完成时	将来时	现在时	未完成时
1. fīō	fīēbam	fīam	fīam	fīerem

¹ 对于基本动词 **faciō** 是如此(比如用 **fit** 而不是 **facitur** 来表示 *it is done, is made*);但复合动词却因情况而异,比如 **perficitur** 表示 *is completed*, 但用 **calefit** 而不是 **calefacitur** 来表示 *is heated*。

2. fīs	fīēbās	fīēs	fīās	fīerēs
3. fit	fīēbat	fīet	fīat	fīeret
1. fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus	fīāmus	fīerēmus
2. fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis	fīātis	fīerētis
3. fīunt	fīēbant	fīent	fīant	fīerent

不定式

命令式

fīerī

单数 fī 复数 fīte

认真考察以下例句:

Hoc facit (faciet), *he is doing or making this (will do or make)*.

Hoc fit (fiet), *this is done or made (will be done or made)*.

Hoc faciat, *let him do or make this*.

Hoc fiat, *let this be done or made*.

Dīcunt eum hoc facere, *they say that he is doing this*.

Dīcunt hoc fierī, *they say that this is being done*.

Perīculum fit grāvius, *the danger is becoming graver*.

Mox factī sunt fēlīces, *they soon became happy*.

词汇表

cupīdō, cupīdinis, f., *desire, passion* (cupidity, Cupid; cp. **cupiō, cupiditās, cupidus**, Ch. 39)

lēctor, lēctoris, m., and **lēctrix, lēctricis**, f., *reader* (lector; cp. **legō, lectern, lection, lectionary, lecture**)

vīnculum, -ī, n., *bond, chain, fetter* (vinculum; cp. **vinciō, to bind**)

cōtīdiē, adv., *daily, every day* (quot + **diēs**; cotidian)

fortāsse, adv., *perhaps* (cp. **fortūna**)

accēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *to come (to), approach* (accede, access, accessible, accession, accessory; cp. **cēdō, discēdō**)

cārpō, cārpere, cārpsī, cārptum, *to harvest, pluck; seize* (carp at, excerpt, carpet, scarce; **carpe diem**: see **Latīna Est Gaudium**, Ch. 22)

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum (cum + **agō**), *to drive or bring together, force, compel* (cogent, coaction, coactive, coagulate; cp. **cōgitō**)

contémnō, -témnere, -témpsi, -témptum, *to despise, scorn* (contemn, contempt, contemptible, contemptuous)

contúndō, -túndere, -tudī, -túsum, *to beat, crush, bruise, destroy* (contuse, contusion; obtuse, from **obtundō, to beat, make blunt**)

cūrō (1), *to care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care* (cure, curator, procure, proctor, accurate; cp. **cūra**)

dēcérnō, -cérnere, -crévī, -crētum, *to decide, settle, decree* (decretal, decreatory)

éxigō, -ígere, -égī, -āctum (ex + **agō**), *to drive out, force out, exact; drive*

through, complete, perfect (exactitude, exigent, exigency, exigible)
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *to occur, happen; become; be made, be done* (fiat)
obléctō (1), *to please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly* (cp. **dēlectō, dēlectātiō**)
órō (1), *to speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray* (orator, oration, oracle, orison, adore, inexorable, peroration; cp. **ōrātor, ōrātiō**, Ch. 38)
récreō (1), *to restore, revive; refresh, cheer* (recreate, recreation)
requírō, -quíre, -quísívī, -quísítum, *to seek, ask for; miss, need, require* (requirement, requisite, requisition, prerequisite, request)
serénō (1), *to make clear, brighten; cheer up, soothe* (serene, serenity, serenade)

练习与复习

1. Poterāsne etiam centum virīs persuādēre ut viam virtūtis sine praemiīs sequerentur?
2. Haec fēmina vult ex urbe ēgredī et ad illam īnsulam proficīscī ut sine morā illī agricolae nūbat et semper rūsticētur.
3. Petēbant ā nōbīs ut etiam in adversīs rēbus huic ducī pārērēmus et servīrēmus.
4. Haec ab fēminīs facta sunt nē tantam occāsiōnem āmitterent.
5. Rogāmus tē ut honōre et opibus sapientius ūtāris et hōs quīnque amīcōs semper foveās.
6. Nisi quis hoc suscipere audēbit, nōlent nōbīs crēdere et fient īrātī.
7. Rogāvit nōs cūr neque dīvitibus neque pauperibus placēre cōnātī essemus.
8. Arbitrābātur tālem vītam nōn ex dīvitiīs sed ex animō plēnō virtūtis nāscī.
9. Scientiam et ingenium magis quam magnās dīvitiās mīrēmur.
10. Senātus ducī imperāvit nē hostibus victīs noceret sed eīs parceret et remissiōnem poenae daret.
11. Ille ōrātor vulgum īrātissimum vōce potentī serēnāvit atque, ut omnibus subrīsīt, eōs oblectāvit.
12. Ut parva puella per iānuam currēbat, subitō occidit et genua male contudit.
13. Dummodo sīs aequus hīs virīs, fient tibi fidēlēs.
14. That summer they urged that this be done better.
15. Provided that this is done, they will beg us to spare him.
16. That teacher wants to persuade her twenty pupils to study more good literature.
17. Since his hope is becoming very small, let him confess that he commanded (use **imperō**) those two men not to do it.

古代名言

1. Dīxitque Deus: “Fīat lūx.” Et facta est lūx. (*Genesis.)

2. Fatendum est nihil dē nihilō posse fierī. (Lucretius.—**nihilō**, abl. of **nihilum**, -ī, = **nihil**.)
3. Magnae rēs nōn fiunt sine periculō. (Terence.)
4. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, ille suōs hortātus est nē timērent. (Caesar.)
5. Omnia fiēt quae fierī aequum est. (Terence.)
6. “Pater, orō tē ut mihi ignōscās.” “Fiat.” (Terence.)
7. Dum loquimur, fūgerit invida aetās: carpe diem! (*Horace.—**invidus**, -a, -um, *envious*.)
8. Carpāmus dulcia; post enim mortem cinis et fābula fīēs. (Persius.—**cinis**, -neris, m., *ashes*.)
9. Ante senectūtem cūrāvī ut bene vīverem; in senectūte cūrō ut bene moriar. (Seneca.)
10. Solōn dīxit sē senem fierī cotīdiē aliquid addiscentem. (Cicero.—**Solōn**, -lōnis.—**ad-discō**, -ere.)
11. Caret pectus tuum inānī ambitiōne? Caret irā et timōre mortis? Ignōscis amīcīs? Fīs lēnior et melior, accēdente senectūte? (Horace.—**inānis**, -e, *empty, vain*.—**ambitiō**, -ōnis.—**lēnis**, -e, *gentle, kind*.)
12. Hoc dūrum est; sed levius fit patientiā quidquid corrigere est nefās. (Horace.—**patientia**, -ae.—**corrigō**, -ere.—**est nefās**, *it is wrong, contrary to divine law*.)
13. Sapiāmus et cēdāmus! Leve fit onus quod bene fertur. (Ovid.—**onus**, **oneris**, n., *burden*.)
14. Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiā omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis—vae illīs quī nullōs amīcōs habent! (Cicero.)
15. Petō ā vōbīs ut patiāminī mē dē studiīs hūmānitātis ac litterārum loquī. (Cicero.—**hūmānitās**, -tātis, *culture*.)

THE QUALITY OF MARTIAL'S BOOK

Sunt bona, sunt quaedam mediocria, sunt mala plūra
quae legis hīc; aliter nōn fit, Avīte, liber.

(*Martial 1.16; meter, elegiac couplet.—**aliter**, adv., *otherwise*.—**Avītus**, -ī, a friend of the poet.)

I DON'T COOK FOR COOKS!

Lēctor et audītor nostrōs probat, Aule, libellōs,
sed quīdam exāctōs esse poēta negat.
Nōn nimium cūrō, nam cēnae fercula nostrae
mālim convīvīs quam placuisse cocīs!

(*Martial 9.81; meter: elegiac couplet.—**quīdam**, with **poēta**.—sc. **eōs**, = **libellōs**, as subject of the infin. in the indir. statement.—**ferculum**, -ī, *course [of a meal]*.—**mālim**, potential subj., *I would prefer that*.—The prose order would be: **mālim fercula cēnae nostrae placuisse convīvīs quam cocīs**.—**quam**, i.e., **magis quam**.—**convīva**, -ae, m., *dinner-guest*.—**cocus**, -ī, *cook*.)

I LOVE HER . . . I LOVE HER NOT

Ōdī et amō! Quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
Nescio, sed fierī sentiō et excrucior.

(*Catullus 85; meter: elegiac couplet.—**excruciāre**, to crucify, torment.)

OH, I'D LOVE TO READ YOU MY POEMS . . . NOT!

Ut recitem tibi nostra rogās epigrammata. Nōlō—
nōn audīre, Celer, sed recitāre cupis!

(*Martial 1.63; meter: elegiac couplet.—**epigramma**, -matis, n.)

WHO IS TRULY FREE?

Quis igitur vērō liber est? Tantum vir sapiēns, quī sibi imperat, quem neque fortūna adversa neque paupertās neque mors neque vincula terrent, quī potest cupidinibus fortiter respondēre honōrēsque contemnere, cuius virtūs cōtīdiē crēscit, quī in sē ipsō tōtus est.

(Horace, *Sermōnēs* 2.7.83ff; prose adaptation.)

TESTIMONY AGAINST THE CONSPIRATORS

Senātum coēgī. Intrōdūxī Volturcium sine Gallīs. Fidem pūblicam eī dedī. Hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre nūntiāret. Tum ille, cum sē ex magnō timōre recreāvisset, dīxit sē ab Lentulō habēre ad Catilīnam mandāta ut auxiliō servōrum ūterētur et ad urbem quam prīmum cum exercitū accēderet. Intrōductī autem Gallī dīxērunt sibi litterās ad suam gentem ab Lentulō datās esse et hunc imperāvisse ut equitātum in Italiam quam prīmum mitterent. Dēnique, omnibus rēbus expositīs, senātus dēcrēvit ut coniūrātī, quī hās īnsidiās mōlītī essent, in custōdiam trāderentur.

(Cicero; in this adaptation from his third oration against Catiline, Cicero informs the Roman citizenry of the evidence against Catiline and the actions of the senate. See the earlier readings on Catiline in Chs. 11, 14, 20, and 30.—**intrō-dūcō**, -ere.—Volturcius was a conspirator in Catiline's band.—**Gallus**, -ī, a Gaul; Lentulus, the leading conspirator at Rome in Catiline's absence, had been seeking to stir into rebellion against the Roman state the Gallic Allobroges, who had a delegation at Rome.—**scīret**: a subordinate clause that would ordinarily have an indicative verb often has instead a subjunctive when the clause occurs either within an indirect statement or, as here, within another subjunctive clause; in this latter instance the verb is often termed a "subjunctive by attraction."—**mandātum**, -ī, order.—**quam prīmum**, see Ch. 32.—**equitātus**, -ūs, cavalry.)

词源点滴**In the readings**

8. cinerary, incinerator, incinerate. 11. inane, inanity.—ambition; **ambitiō** 字

面意思是候选人造访选民以寻求政治支持。—lenient, leniency, lenity. 12. correct, incorrigible. 13. onerous. 15. humanity, the humanities; cp. **homō, hūmānus**. “I Love Her”: excruciate; cp. **crux, crucial**, 源于 **crux, crucis**, f., *cross*. “I’d Love to Read”: epigrammatic. “Testimony”:—mandate, mandatory, command, countermand, demand, remand.—equitation.

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, studentēs! 下面是一些与 **fiō** 有关的习语: 如果你觉得写演说词要比写诗更容易, 那么你也许会认同这句古老的话, **nāscimur poētae, fīmus ōrātōrēs; fiat** (不是“菲亚特”牌汽车) 是一项骄横的命令, *let it be done!* 叙鲁斯 (本书许多“古代名言”的作者) 说过, **repente dīvēs nēmō factus est bonus** (类似于尤维纳利斯的 **nēmō repente fuit turpissimus**, 第三十课); 还有关于“自愿发生同性恋行为的成年人” (consenting adults) 的法律表述, **volentī nōn fit iniūria**, *injury is not done to a willing person*, 以及 **fiat ut petitur**, *let it be done as requested*, 这一短语指同意一项法律诉状的要求。

Et cētera ex hōc vocābulāriō: accessit (字面意思是 *he/she approached, came close*) 是对在竞赛中获得二等奖或荣誉奖的表彰; **vinculum mātrimōnī** 是 *the bond of matrimony*, **ā vinculō mātrimōnī** 是法律拉丁语, 指解除婚约; **dē minimīs nōn cūrat lēx**, *the law does not concern itself with trivialities* 是另一则常见的法律格言; 由 **ōrāre** 产生出了大量的座右铭和习语, 包括 **ōrāre et spērāre** 和 **ōrā et labōrā**; 除了 **carpe diem**, 还有 **carpent tua pōma nepōtēs**, *your descendants will harvest your fruits*。 **Carpāmus omnēs diēs, lēctōrēs et lēctricēs!**

第三十七课

Eō 的变位;地点和时间的结构

不规则动词 Eō, īre, īī, itum, to go

Eō, īre, īī, itum, to go 是一个不规则的第四变位法动词,它的完整变位形式见下;在拉丁语中,它就像英语中的“go”一样常用,所以它的变位应当牢牢掌握。

直陈式

现在时	未完成时	将来时	完成时	过去完成时	将来完成时
1. éō	ībam	ībō	īī	íeram	íerō
2. īs	ībās	ībis	īstī	íerās	íeris
3. it	ībat	ībit	īit	íerat	íerit
1. ímus	ībāmus	ībimus	īimus	ierāmus	ierimus
2. ítis	ībātis	ībitis	īistis	ierātis	ieritis
3. éunt	ībant	ībunt	ierunt	ierant	ierint

虚拟式

现在时	未完成时	完成时	过去完成时
1. éam	īrem	íerim	īssēm
2. éās	īrēs	íerīs	īssēs
3. éat	īret	íerit	īssēt
1. eāmus	īrēmus	ierīmus	īssēmus
2. eātis	īrētis	ierītis	īssētis
3. éant	īrent	ierint	īssent

命令式单数 *ī* 复数 *īte***分词(普通用法)**现在时 *īēns* (*eūntis, eūntī, etc.*) 将来时 *itūrus, -a, -um***不定式****动名词** *eūndī*现在时 *īre*将来时 *itūrus ēsse*完成时 *īsse***对 Eō 的评论**对于 **eō** 的现在时系统,存在两个主要困难:

(1)源于现在时不定式的正常词干 *ī-*,在 **a, o, u** 之前变成了 **e-**,例如 **eō, eunt, eam**。要特别注意上面的现在时直陈式和现在时虚拟式。现在时分词的所有形式(除了单数主格)和动名词(其用法将在第三十九课中介绍)都有类似的从 *ī-*到 **e-**的变化。

(2)这个第四变位法动词的将来时有第一、第二变位法动词的时态标志和词尾。

完成时系统的形式是规则的,只是 **s** 之前的 **ii-**通常缩约为 *ī-*,例如 **īstī, īsse**。像 **ivī** 这样的带有 **-v-**的形式比较罕见,在本书中并不出现。

这里只给出了主动态形式;不常用的无人称被动态(如 **ītur, ībātur**)以及将来时和完成时被动态分词(**eundum, itum**)在本书中并不出现。像 **adeō, to approach** 这样的及物复合动词一般都有被动词尾(如 **adeor, adībātur** 等等),不过这些形式在本书中也不出现。

地点结构

我们已经学过如何在一般的地点结构中使用恰当的介词和格,之所以在这里重复讲解,一是为了复习,二是与城市、城镇和小岛的名称以及 **domus, humus** 和 **rūs** 所适用的特殊规则进行对比。

1. 正常结构:介词 + 恰当的格

(1) 在何处(place where): **in** 或 **sub** + 夺格*In illā urbe vīsus est, he was seen in that city.**Nihil sub sōle est novum, there is nothing new under the sun.*(2) 到何处(place to which): **in, ad** 或 **sub** + 宾格

In illam urbem ibit, *he will go into that city.*

Sub hastam hostis occidit, *he fell under the enemy's spear.*

(3) 从何处(place from which): **ab, dē** 或 **ex** + 夺格

Ex illā urbe iit, *he went out of that city.*

2. 对于城市、城镇和小岛的名称以及 **domus**, **humus** 和 **rūs** 这三个名词,拉丁语中不使用介词,不过在英语翻译中通常要加上(不过英语中也用“he ran home”来表示“he ran to his home”)。

(1) 在何处:对于那几个特殊名词,拉丁语使用一个特殊的格——“位置格”(locative)。第一、第二变格法名词的单数位置格在形式上与属格相同;除此之外,位置格通常与夺格相同。

Vīsus est Rōmae, Ephesī, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.

He was seen at Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

(2) 到何处:无介词宾格

Ībit Rōmam, Ephesum, Athēnās, et Carthāginem.

He will go to Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

(3) 从何处:无介词夺格

Iit Rōmā, Ephesō, Athēnīs, et Carthāgine.

He went from Rome, Ephesus, Athens, and Carthage.

由后面的词汇表可以看出,**domus**是一个不大规则的阴性名词,它有一些第二变格法词尾,也有一些第四变格法词尾。在地点结构中,最常见的形式如下:

domī (位置格), *at home* Domī vīsus est, *he was seen at home.*

domum (宾格), *home (= to home)* Domum ībit, *he will go home.*

domō (夺格), *from home* Domō iit, *he went from home.*

Humus 是一个阴性的第二变格法名词,它的位置格遵循以下规则:**humī**, *on the ground*。**Rūs** 的位置格是 **rūrī** 或 **rūre**, *in the country*。

时间结构

(1) 对于表示何时/期间的时间夺格(第十五课),我们已经比较熟悉了;虽然在拉丁语中不用介词,但在英语翻译中却要根据不同名词加上 *in*, *within*, *at*, *on* 等介词:

Eōdem diē iit, *he went on the same day.*

Paucīs hōrīs domum ībit, *he will go home in a few hours.*

- (2) 这里要介绍的是表示时间延续(duration of time)的宾格,它不是指某种动作发生在什么时间,也不是指在什么时间之内发生的,而是指该动作持续了多久。这种结构在拉丁语中不需要介词,而在英语翻译中,有时需要用介词 *for*,有时省去。这一结构也经常与 **nātus** 连用,指人的年龄。

Multōs annōs vīxit, *he lived (for) many years.*

Paucās hōrās domī manēbit, *he will stay at home (for) a few hours.*

Quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est, *At the age of 25(直译为 having been born for 25 years), he became commander.*

词汇表

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens* (cp. athenaeum)

dómus, -ūs (-ī), f., *house, home; dómī, at home; dómum, (to) home; dómō, from home* (domain, domicile, domestic, domesticate, dome, major-domo; cp. **dominus, domina**, Ch. 40)

húmus, -ī, f., *ground, earth; soil* (humus, exhume, inhume, inhumation, posthumous; cp. humiliate, humility, from **humilis, -e, on the earth, down-to-earth, humble**)

íter, itínēris, n., *journey; route, road* (itinerant, itinerary; cp. **eō** below)

rūs, rúris, n., *the country, countryside* (rustic, rusticity; cp. **rústicor, rústicus, rural**)

Syrācúsae, -ārum, f. pl., *Syracuse*

ábsēns, gen. **abséntis**, *absent, away* (absence, absentee, absenteeism, in absentia; from **absum, abesse**)

grátus, -a, -um, *pleasing, agreeable; grateful* (grace, gracious, grateful, gratitude, gratify, gratis, gratuitous, gratuity, ingrate, ingratiolate, agree, congratulate; cp. **grātiās agō**)

idóneus, -a, -um, *suitable, fit, appropriate*

immótus, -a, -um, *unmoved; unchanged; unrelenting* (immotile; cp. **moveō**)

fórīs, adv., *out of doors, outside* (foreclose, foreign, forest, forfeit)

éō, íre, īī, ítum, *to go* (ambition, circuit, concomitant, exit, initial, initiate, initiative, obituary, perish, preterit, sedition, transient, transit, transition, transitive, transitory: many of these derive from the several compounds of **eō**, including the seven listed below)

ábeō, -íre, -īī, -ítum, *to go away, depart, leave*

ádeō, -íre, -īī, -ítum, *to go to, approach*

éxeō, -íre, -īī, -ítum, *to go out, exit*

íneō, -íre, -īī, -ítum, *to go in, enter*

óbeō, -íre, -īī, -ítum, *to go up against, meet; die*

péreō, -íre, -īī, -ítum, *to pass away, be destroyed, perish*

rédeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, to go back, return

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fécum, to kill, murder

licet, licēre, licuit, impersonal,¹ it is permitted, one may; commonly with an infinitive as subject and a dative for the person permitted to act, e.g., licet tibi abīre, you may leave, lit., it is permitted for you to leave (license, licentious, illicit, leisure, viz. = vidēlicet, sc. = scīlicet)

peregrīnor, peregrīnārī, peregrīnātus sum, to travel abroad, wander (peregrine, peregrinate, pilgrim, pilgrimage; from per + ager)

requiēscō, -quiēscere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, to rest (requiescat, requiem)

sóleō, solēre, solitus sum, to be accustomed (insolent, obsolete)

练习与复习

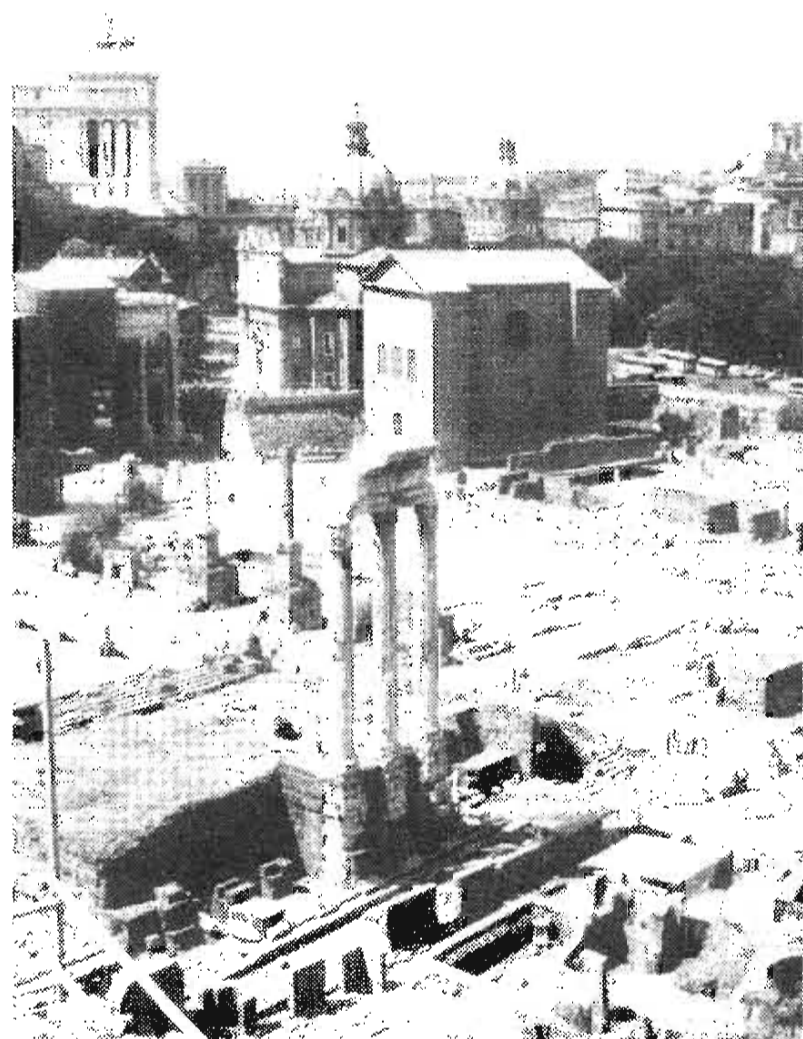
1. Dehinc petet ā frātre meō et sorōre ut occāsiōnem carpant et in urbem quam celerrimē ineant.
2. Nisi domum hāc aestāte redīssēs, in longō itinere Athēnās fortasse peregrīnātī essēmus, et nōs ibi oblectāvissēmus.
3. Nē levēs quidem timōrēs ferre poterātis; rūrī, igitur, nōn in urbe semper vīvēbātis.
4. Haec locūtī, lēctōribus et lēctrīcibus persuādēbunt nē opēs cupidīnēsque praemiīs bonae vītae antepōnant.
5. Multōs annōs eōs cīvitātī servīre coēgit, sed animōs numquam contudit.
6. At nōs, ipsī multa mala passī, cōnātī sumus eīs irātīs persuādēre ut servōs vinculis liberārent et nē cui nocērent.
7. Sī quis vult aliōs iuvāre, cūret ut ad eōs adeat plēnus sapientiae.
8. Philosophī cōtīdiē requirēbant utrum illī discipulī nātūrae pārērent.
9. Contemnāmus omnia perīcula, ea ex pectoribus exigāmus, et fateāmur haec difficillima Rōmae suscipienda esse.
10. Omnēs solent mīrārī ea pulcherrima quae Athēnīs vident.
11. Nisi māvīs morī, exī Syracūsīs, sequere alium ducem, et accēde Athēnās.
12. Fēmina candida ante speculum immōta stetit, sed sē spectāre recūsāvit et animōs recreāre nōn potuit.
13. Paucās hōras duodecim puerī puellaeque humī sedēbant, ut magistra, subrīdēns et eōs serēnāns, plūrimās fābulās nārrābat.
14. Sī sapiēs et tibi imperāre poteris, fīēs grātior iūstiorque, parcēs miserīs ac amīcōs fovēbis.
15. They commanded that this be done in Rome for three days.
16. Unless he goes to Syracuse within five days, his father's fear will become greater.

¹ 无人称动词只有第三人称(和不定式)形式,因为它们的主语不是一个人,而是一个不定式短语、不定式从句或不定代词“it”或“one”,比如 **licet abīre**,直译为 *to leave is permitted*,合乎语言习惯的翻译是 *it is permissible to leave* 或 *one may leave*。

17. He thought that his brother would perhaps not go away from home that summer.
18. Nobody may speak freely in that country, as we all know.

古代名言

1. Mortālia facta perībunt. (*Horace.)
2. Noctēs atque diēs patet ātrī iānuā Dītis. (*Virgil.—āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, gloomy.—Dīs, Dītis, Dis, another name for Pluto, god of the dead.)
3. Annī eunt mōre modōque fluentis aquae. Numquam hōra quae praeteriit potest redīre; ūtāmur aetāte. (Ovid.—praeterīre, to go by, pass.)
4. Heu, obiī! Quid ego ēgī! Fīlius nōn rediit ā cēnā hāc nocte. (Terence.)
5. Frāter meus ōrat nē abeās domō. (Terence.)
6. Dīcit patrem ab urbe abīsse sed frātre[m] esse domī. (Terence.)
7. Tertiā hōrā forīs ībam Sacrā Viā, ut meus mōs est. (Horace.—Sacrā Viā, abl. of means or way by which; the Sacred Way was the main street through the Roman Forum.)



The Roman Forum with remains of the temple of Castor and Pollux in the foreground and beyond it the Sacra Via Rome, Italy

8. Dēnique Dāmoclēs, cum sīc beātus esse nōn posset, ōrāvit Dionysium tyrannum ut abīre ā cēnā liceret. (Cicero.)
9. Eō tempore, Syracūsīs captīs, Mārcellus multa Rōmam mīsīt; Syracūsīs autem multa atque pulcherrima relīquit. (Cicero.)
10. Diēs multōs in eā nāve fuī; ita adversā tempestāte ūsī sumus. (Terence.)
11. Īram populī ferre nōn poterō, sī in exsilium ieris. (Cicero.)
12. Caesare interfectō, Brūtus Rōmā Athēnās fūgit. (Cicero.)
13. Ipse Rōmam redīrem, sī satis cōsiliī dē hāc rē habērem. (Cicero.)

14. Nēmō est tam senex ut nōn putet sē ūnum annum posse vīvere.
(Cicero.)
15. Dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre; nox tibi longa venit,
nec reditūra diēs. (*Propertius.—**sinō**, -ere, *to allow*.—**reditūra**, sc.
est, fut. act. periphrastic for **redībit**; **diēs** is sometimes fem.)

THANKS . . . BUT NO THANKS!

Candidius nihil est tē, Caeciliāne. Notāvī:
sī quandō ex nostrīs disticha pauca legō,
prōtinus aut Mārsī recitās aut scrīpta Catullī.
Hoc mihi dās, tamquam dēteriōra legās,
5 ut collāta magis placeant mea? Crēdimus istud:
mālo tamen recitēs, Caeciliāne, tua!

(*Martial 2.71; meter: elegiac couplet.—**notāre**, *to note, notice*.—with **nostrīs**, sc. **libellīs**.—**disticha** (a Gk. acc. ending), *couplets, verses*.—Domitius Marsus, like Catullus, was a popular Latin poet.—**scrīptum**, -ī, *writing, written works*.—**hoc . . . dās**, i.e., as a favor.—**tamquam** here introduces an imagined comparison, something like a condition, hence the verb is subj.—**dēteriōra**, sc. **scrīpta**, *worse poetry*.—**collāta**, with **mea**, *compared, in comparison*.—**mālo [ut] recitēs**; the conj. is often omitted in a jussive noun clause.)

TRIMALCHIO'S EPITAPH

“Īnscrīptiō quoque vidē dīlīgenter sī haec satis idōnea tibi vidētur: ‘C. Pompeius Trimalchiō Maecēnātiānus hīc requiēscit. Huic sēvirātus absentī dēcrētus est. Cum posset in omnibus decuriīs Rōmae esse, tamen nōluit. Pius, fortis, fidēlis, ex parvō crēvit; sestertium reliquit trecentiēs, nec umquam philosophum audīvit. Valē. Et tū.’” Haec ut dīxit Trimalchiō, flēre coepit ūbertim. Flēbat et Fortūnāta; flēbat et Habinnas; tōta dēnique familia, tamquam in fūnus rogāta, lāmentātiōne triclīnium implēvit.

(*Petronius, *Satyricon* 71–72; the boorish, nouveau-riche host Trimalchio asks his dinner-guests their opinion of his proposed epitaph.—**īnscrīptiō**, -ōnis; the more usual order would be **quoque vidē dīlīgenter sī haec īnscrīptiō**. . . .—**C.** = **Gaius**.—**Maecēnātiānus**: Trimalchio, an ex-slave, takes this name to associate himself with the famous Maecenas, a powerful and wealthy associate of Augustus.—**Huic . . . absentī**, i.e., in absentia from Rome.—**sēvirātus**, -ūs, *the post of sēvir Augustālis*, a member of the six-man commission that supervised the cult of the emperor.—**decūria**, -ae, *club*; these were groups of ten men organized for both business and social purposes.—**pius**, -a, -um, *devoted, dedicated*.—**ex parvō**, i.e., from humble beginnings.—**sestertium . . . trecentiēs**, 30 million sesterces, a VERY hefty sum!—**nec . . . audīvit**, i.e., he “never even went to college!”—**Et tū**, sc. **valē**; epitaphs typically represented such “conversations”: the deceased wishes the passerby “Farewell,” and the passerby, reading the inscription, replies, “And you (likewise farewell).”—**Haec ut** = **Ut haec**.—**flēre**, *to weep*.—**ūbertim**, adv., *profusely*.—**et** = **etiam**.—Fortunata (“Lucky”) and Habinnas were Trimalchio’s wife and a guest.—**fūnus**, -neris, n., *funeral*.—**lamentā-**

tiō, -ōnis.—triclinium, -iī, dining room.—impleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, to fill.)

MĀRCUS QUĪNTŌ FRĀTRĪ S.

Licinius, servus Aesōpī nostrī, Rōmā Athēnās fūgit. Is Athēnīs apud Patrōnem prō liberō virō fuit. Deinde in Asiam abiit. Postea Platō, quīdam quī Athēnīs solet esse multum et quī tum Athēnīs fuerat cum Licinius Athēnās vēnisset, litterīs Aesōpī dē Liciniō acceptīs, hunc Ephesī comprehendit et in custōdiam trādīdit. Petō ā tē, frāter, ut Ephesō exiēns servum Rōmam tēcum redūcās. Aesōpus enim ita irāscitur propter servī scelus ut nihil eī grātius possit esse quam recuperātiō fugitīvī. Valē.

(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Quīntum Frātre*m 1.2.14; Marcus Cicero wrote this letter to his brother Quintus, who was at the time governor of Asia.—S. = salūtem dīcit, says greetings.—Licinius, -ī.—Aesōpus, -ī, the leading tragic actor of Rome.—Patrō, -trōnis.—prō, as a.—Plato, an Epicurean from Sardis.—multum, adv.—Ephesus, -ī, a city in Asia Minor.—re-dūcō.—irāscor, irāscī, irātus sum, to be angry; cp. ira and irātus.—recuperātiō, -ōnis, recovery.—fugitīvus, -ī.)

词源点滴

Videlicet, namely, 源于 **videre licet**, 字面意思是 *it is permitted to see*, 即 *it is plain to see*。在中世纪手稿中, 这个词经常缩写为 **vi-et**, 而 **et** 有一种缩写类似于 **z**, 于是便有了 **viz.** 这一缩写。而更常见的缩写 **sc.** 则源于 **licet** 的另一个复合词 **scilicet**, namely, clearly (源于 **scire licet**, you may understand), 我们用它来指示将要补充某个词或某种思想, 它在文本中并不存在, 但是很容易理解(参见前面“Trimalchio”注释中给出的例子)。

In the readings

7. **Via Lāta** 是罗马的另一条著名街道。通过与 **Sacra Via** 进行类比, **Via Lāta** (lātus, -a, -um, broad) 如何翻译? “Thanks”: note, notation, notary.—script; 源于 **scribō** 的第四个主要部分.—deteriorate, deterioration.—collate, collation. “Trimalchio”: funereal.—lament, lamentable. “**Mārcus**”: irascible.—“Recover” 和 “recuperate” 是同源词, 它们都源于 **recuperāre**, to regain。)

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvete! 下面这些源于 **eō** 的常用词和常用短语肯定会继续 (*going to*) 激起你的兴趣(注意英语口语是如何将“go”用作助动词来表示将来的, 试比较拉丁语在不常见的将来时被动态不定式中对 **irī** 的使用): **exit** 和 **exeunt omnēs** 都是舞台指示; “perish” 就是 “thoroughly gone” (源于 **per+eō**), 即从生命的舞台上最后一次“退场”, 这次离开往往由一块古老墓碑上的 **obiit** 或 **obiit sine prōle** (*he/she died without offspring*, 源于 **prōlēs, prōlis**, f., “proletariate” 一词就来自它) 的

缩写 **O.S.P.** 来标明; **pereant quī ante nōs nostra dīxērunt** 是对先于我们具有一切最好想法的人的诅咒(意思是:我们不愿承认自己仅仅在重复前人的话!); **iter**(字面意思是 *a going*)与 **eō** 和副词 **obiter** 都有关,由后者产生出了 **obiter dictum**,即某种 *said along the way*(或者“in passing”)的东西,**obiter scriptum** 也是类似;喜爱蒙蒂·派森¹的影迷们知道,**Rōmānī, ite domum** 出自电影《布赖恩的一生》(*Life of Brian*);最后是 **aut bibat aut abeat**, *let him either drink or go away*,这是一句古老的罗马祝酒辞,也是我们当地小酒馆的座右铭!

Et cētera: grātus 与 **grātia**, *favor, kindness, gratitude, thanks* 相关,后者见于 **grātiās agere**, *to give thanks*, **Deī grātiā**, *by the grace of God*;与 **grātia** 相关的还有英语词“*gratis*”,表示“出于感谢”(grātis)做的事情,亦即“免费的”。缩写 **R.I.P.** 也可见于墓碑(虽然不是 *Trimalchio* 的墓碑!),代表 **requiēscat in pāce**(还记得祈愿虚拟式吗?);**rūs in urbe** 语出马提雅尔,指能够使人想起乡下的城市公园或乡村景色。好,今天的内容就是这么多啦:**nunc domum eāmus!**

¹ 蒙蒂·派森(Monty Python),20世纪英国著名喜剧团。——译者注

第三十八课

特征关系从句;关系与格;目的动名词

特征关系从句

到目前为止,我们见过的关系从句都是对其先行词(实际的人或事物)作某种事实描述,所以动词是直陈式(第十七课),比如 **hic est discipulus quī Latīnam amat**, *this is the student who loves Latin*。而“特征关系从句”则描述先行词的某种一般性质,这种性质本身可以是泛指、不确定的、疑问性的或否定性的,因此动词是虚拟式,比如 **hic est discipulus quī Latīnam amet**, *this is a student (或 the sort of student) who would love Latin*。

特征关系从句很容易辨识,因为它的动词是虚拟式,而且其先行词往往是泛指的、否定性的等等(典型例子有 **sunt quī**, *there are people who*; **quis est quī**, *who is there who*; **nēmō est quī**, *there is no one who*); 我们有时用助动词 *would* 来翻译虚拟式动词,有时在主句中使用 *the sort of* 或 *the kind of* 这样的短语来说明先行词是不确定的:

Quis est quī huic crēdat, *who is there who trusts this man (of such a sort that he would trust this man)?*

Nēmō erat quī hoc scīret, *there was no one who knew this.*

Sunt quī hoc faciant, *there are some who do this (of such a sort as to do this).*

Is nōn est quī hoc faciat, *he is not a person who does (would do) this.*

Hic est liber quem omnēs legant, *this is the kind of book which all read (a book which all would read).*

Hic est liber quem omnēs legunt, *this is the book which all are reading* (表示一个事实,因此用直陈式)。

有些关系从句因为含有结果从句(比如下面“古代名言”中的句4)、目的从句(参见下面的“Give Me a Figgy Sprig!”)、因果从句或转折从句(即那些本来应由 **ut, cum** 等词引导的从句)的含义,所以动词也用虚拟式。

关系与格或兴趣与格

与格往往用来表示某个陈述所指的人(或事物),或者从他的角度来看是正确的,或者他对此有特殊的兴趣。这种“关系与格或兴趣与格”(试与第三十五课中讨论的与格进行比较)有时可以用“to”或“for”来翻译,不过往往还需要根据语境加入一些更详细的短语(由下面一些例子可以看出);有时关系与格似乎只起到了表示属有的作用(比如下面的第二个例句),但它所要表达的情感却往往更加强烈。

Sī quis metuēns vīvet, liber mihi nōn erit umquam.

If anyone lives in fear, he will not ever be free—as I see it(mihi)或 to my way of thinking.

Caret tibi pectus inānī ambiōne?

Is your breast free from vain ambition—are you sure (tibi)?

Nūllius culpae mihi cōnsciū sum.

In my own heart (mihi), I am conscious of no fault.

Claudia est sapiēns multīs, to many people Claudia is wise.

别忘了把关系与格或兴趣与格加到你的与格用法表中(间接宾语、施事与格、形容词加与格、特殊动词和复合动词加与格)。

目的动名词

“目的动名词”(supine)是一个不完全变化的第四变格法动词性名词,与完成时被动态分词具有同一词干;常用的形式只有单数宾格和单数夺格两种。这里给出的目的动名词例词是:[宾] **laudātum**,[夺] **laudātū; mōnitum, mōnitū; āctum, āctū; audītum, audītū; cāptum, cāptū**。

目的动名词的夺格与某些形容词的中性形式连用,表示某种性质可用于什么方面,例如:**mīrābile dictū**, *amazing to say* (字面意思是 *amazing in respect to saying*); **facile factū**, *easy to do*。目的动名词的宾格(必须与完成时被动态分词区分开)与表示运动的动词连用,表示目的,例如:**ibant Rōmam rogātum pecūniam**, *they were going to Rome to ask for money*; **persuāsum amīcīs vēnērunt**, *they came to persuade their friends* (注意,目的动名词可以带直接宾

语、与格,以及基本动词可以支配的任何结构)。

词汇表

- árbor, árboris**, f., *tree* (arbor, Arbor Day, arboraceous, arboreal, arboretum, arboriculture)
- dígnitās, dignitátis**, f., *merit, prestige, dignity* (indignity; cp. **dignus**, deign, dignify, indignant, indignation)
- dólor, dolóris**, m., *pain, grief* (doleful, dolorous, condole, condolences, indolent, indolence; cp. **doleō**)
- ódium, -iī**, n., *hatred* (odium, odious, annoy, ennui, noisome; cp. **ōdī**)
- ópus, óperis**, n., *a work, task; deed, accomplishment* (opus, opera, operate, operative, inoperative, operand, operose, co-operate, uncooperative, inure, hors d'oeuvre, maneuver, manure)
- ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis**, f., *speech* (oration; cp. **ōrō, ōrātor**)
- pēs, pédis**, m., *lower leg, foot* (pedal, pedate, pedestal, pedestrian, pedicel, pedigree, piedmont, pawn, peon, pioneer, biped, quadruped, impede, impediment, expedite, expedition, expeditious; cp. **impediō** below)
- sátor, satóris**, m., *sower, planter; begetter, father; founder* (cp. **serō**, to plant, sow; serial, series, assert, desert, exert, insert)
- fírminus, -a, -um**, *firm, strong; reliable* (firmament, affirm, affirmation, affirmative, confirm, confirmation, farm, farmer)
- īnfírminus, -a, -um**, *not strong, weak, feeble* (infirm, infirmary, infirmity)
- mīrābilis, mīrābile**, *amazing, wondrous, remarkable* (mirabilia, admirable, marvel; cp. **mīror**, miracle, mirador, mirage, mirror)
- prístinus, -a, -um**, *ancient; former, previous* (pristine)
- sublímis, sublíme**, *elevated, lofty; heroic, noble* (sublimate, sublime, sublimity; not subliminal)
- étsī**, conj. with ind. or subj. according to rules for **sī**, *even if (et -sī), although*
- érgā**, prep. + acc., *toward*
- libénter**, adv., *with pleasure, gladly* (cp. the impersonal verb **libet**, it pleases, is pleasing; cognate with love)
- impédiō, -pedīre, -pedívī, -pedítum**, *to impede, hinder, prevent* (impediment, impedimenta, impedance, impeach; see **Lātina Est Gaudium**)
- métuō, metuere, metuī**, *to fear, dread; be afraid for* + dat. (cp. **metus**, meticulous)
- quéror, quérī, quéstus sum**, *to complain, lament* (querulous; cp. quarrel, from **querēla, -ae, complaint**)
- recognóscō, -nóscere, -nóvī, -nitum**, *to recognize, recollect* (recognition, recognizance, reconnaissance, reconnoitre; cp. **nóscō, cognóscō**)
- suspéndō, -péndere, -péndī, -pénsus**, *to hang up, suspend; interrupt* (suspense, suspension; cp. **pendere**, to hang, pendant, pendulum, expend)
- véndō, véndere, véndidī, vénditum**, *to sell* (vend, vendor)

练习与复习

1. Rēgī persuāsī ut sorōrī frātrīque tuō grātiōra praemia libenter daret.
2. Deinde, ab eā īnsulā nāve profecta, vīsum amīcōs Athēnās iniit.
3. Eum hortātī sumus ut ad Caesarem sine timōre accēdere cōnārētur.
4. Solitī sunt eī crēdere quī philosophiae servīret, virtūtem sequerētur, et cupīdinēs superāret.
5. Sapiēns nōs ōrat nē virīs sentiārum adversārum noceāmus.
6. In illīs terrīs nōn licet litterīs bonīs vērīsque studēre, ut sub tyrannō saepe fit; dēbēs, igitur, exīre et peregrīnārī.
7. Cūrēmus nē cīvītatem eīs trādāmus quī sē patriae antepōnant.
8. Sunt īnfīrmī quī levia opera mīrentur et semper sibi ignōscant.
9. Iste dux, diū absēns, tam stultīs cōnsiliīs cīvītatī ūtēbātur ut mīlia cīvīum adversa patī cōgerentur atque multī bonī perīrent.
10. Haec locūtus, fassus est illōs, quī odium immōtum ergā cīvītatem multōs annōs habēbant, Rōmae interfectōs esse.
11. Initium operis nōs saepe impedit.
12. Sator sublīmis hominum atque animālium omnibus nōbīs animās dedit; cum corpora obeant, animae numquam morientur.
13. Cum rūs rediimus, tum domī invēnimus—mīrābile vīsū!—plūrimōs amīcōs.
14. Cicero, who was the greatest Roman orator, was a consul who would obey the senate.
15. I shall persuade him to become better and to return to Rome, I assure you.
16. We begged them not to trust a man whom a tyrant pleased.
17. Wherefore, let that man who hesitates to defend our country depart to another land.

古代名言

1. Sē omnēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt. (Caesar.—**prō-iaciō**.)
2. Hīc in nostrō numerō sunt quī lēgēs contemnant ac dē exitiō huius urbis cōtīdiē cōgitent. (Cicero.)
3. Quis est cui haec rēs pūblica atque possessiō lībertātis nōn sint cārae et dulcēs? (Id.—**possessiō, -ōnis**.)
4. Quae domus tam stabilis est, quae cīvītās tam fīrma est quae nōn odiīs, invidiā, atque īnsidiīs possit contundī? (Id.—**stabilis, -e**.—**quae . . . contundī**; here the characteristic clause has the force of result.)
5. Quārē, quid est quod tibi iam in hāc urbe placēre possit, in quā nēmō est quī tē nōn metuat? (Id.)
6. Quis enim aut eum dīligere potest quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? (Id.)
7. Tibi sōlī necēs multōrum cīvīum impūnītae ac līberae fuērunt. (Id.—**nex, necis, f., murder**.—**impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished**.)
8. Habētis autem eum cōnsulem quī exigere officium et pārēre vestrīs

dēcrētīs nōn dubitet atque vōs dēfendere possit. (Id.—**dēcrētum, -ī, decree.**)

9. Ille mihi semper deus erit. (Virgil.)
10. Nūllus dolor est quem nōn longinquitās temporis minuat ac molliat. (*Cicero.—**longinquitās, -tātis, length.**)
11. Parāvisse dīvitiās fuit multīs hominibus nōn finis sed mūtātiō malōrum. (Epicurus quoted by Seneca.—**mūtātiō, -ōnis, change.**)
12. Nihil est opere et manū factum quod tempus nōn cōnsūmat. (Cicero.)
13. Vīribus corporis dēficientibus, vigor tamen animī dūrāvit illī ad vītāe finem. (Pliny.—**dēficiō, -ere, to fail.**—**vigor, -gōris.**—**dūrāre, to last.**)
14. Nunc est bibendum; nunc pede līberō pulsanda tellus. (*Horace; from his ode celebrating the death of the Egyptian queen Cleopatra.—sc. **nōbīs** as dat. of agent with both pass. periphrastics.—**pulsāre, to strike, beat;** with **pulsanda, sc. est, should be struck, i.e., danced upon.**—**tellūs, -lūris, f., = terra.**)

NOTE ON A BOOK BY LUCAN

Sunt quīdam quī mē dīcant nōn esse poētā;
sed quī mē vēndit bibliopōla putat.

(*Martial 14.194; meter: elegiac couplet. In this note from a gift copy of Lucan's poetry, the author is himself imagined as speaking.—**bibliopōla, -ae, m., book-dealer,** antecedent of **quī.**)

TWO EXAMPLES OF ROMAN WIT

Oh, Give Me a Figgy Sprig!

Cum quīdam, querēns, dīxisset uxōrem suam dē ficū suspendisse sē, amīcus illīus “Amābō tē,” inquit, “dā mihi ex istā arbore surculōs quōs seram!”

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.278.—**ficus, -ūs, f., fig tree;** nouns for trees are usually feminine.—**surculus, -ī, shoot, sprig.**—**quōs = ut eōs, rel. clause of purpose.**—**serō, -ere, to plant, sow.**)

The Most Pitiful Speech I've Ever Heard!

Cum quīdam ōrātor sē misericordiam ōrātiōne fortasse mōvisse putāret, rogāvit Catulum vidērēturne misericordiam mōvisse. “Ac magnam quidem, mihi,” inquit, “putō enim nēminem esse tam dūrum cui ōrātiō tua nōn vīsa sit digna misericordiā!”

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.278.—**misericordia, -ae, pity;** an important objective for the ancient orator, and one for which he was trained, was to arouse the audience's emotions.—**Catulus, -ī.**—**vidērēturne: the -ne, whether,** signals an ind. quest.—**magnam, sc. misericordiam mōvistī!**—**cui = ut eī, rel. clause of result.**)

TWO LETTERS TO CICERO

Gn. Magnus Prōcōnsul Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātōrī

Sī valēs, bene est. Tuās litterās libenter lēgī; recognōvī enim tuam prīstinam virtūtem etiam in salūte commūnī. Cōsulēs ad eum exercitum vēnērunt quem in Āpūliā habuī. Magnopere tē hortor ut occāsiōnem carpās et tē ad nōs cōferās, ut commūnī cōnsiliō reī publicae miserae opem atque auxilium ferāmus. Moneō ut Rōmā exeās, viā Appiā iter faciās, et quam celerrimē Brundisium veniās.

Caesar Imperātor Salūtem Dīcit Cicerōnī Imperātōrī

Cum Brundisium celerius adeam atque sim in itinere, exercitū iam prae-missō, dēbeō tamen ad tē scrībere et grātiās idōneās tibi agere, etsī hoc fēcī saepe et saepius factūrus videor; ita dignus es. Imprīmīs, quoniam crēdō mē celeriter ad urbem ventūrum esse, ā tē petō ut tē ibi videam ut tuō cōnsiliō, dignitāte, ope ūtī possim. Festīnātiōnī meae brevitatīque litterārum ignōscēs; cētera ex Furniō cognōscēs.

(Cicero, *Epistulae ad Atticum* 8.11 and 9.6; in these letters, two of hundreds that survive from Cicero's correspondence, both Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, "Pompey the Great," and Julius Caesar bid for the statesman's support in the civil war that followed Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon in 49 B.C.—**prōcōsul, -sulis, proconsul, governor** (of a province).—**salūte commūnī**, here *the public welfare*.—Apulia was a district in south Italy.—**viā Appiā**, abl. of route, a common construction; the Via Appia, built in the 4th century B.C., was the highway leading south from Rome and, ultimately, to Brundisium, the port of departure for Greece.—**prae-mittō, -ere**.—**imprīmīs**, adv., *especially*.—**festīnātiō, -ōnis, haste, rush**.—**brevitās, -tātis**.—**Furnius**, the name of an associate.)

ASK ME IF I CARE

Nīl nimium studeō, Caesar, tibi velle placēre,
nec scīre utrum sīs albus an āter homō!

(*Catullus 93; meter: elegiac couplet.—**nīl** = **nōn**.—**albus, -a, -um, white**.—**āter, ātra, ātrum, black**.)

词源点滴

我们知道, **opus** 经常用在音乐作品的标题中, 例如贝多芬的“c 小调第五交响曲, Opus 67”。“歌剧”(opera) 一词经由意大利语源于 **opera, -ae, effort, pains, work**, 它显然与 **opus** 具有同一词根。而 **magnum opus** 则往往用于文学领域。

以下是一些罗曼语派生词:

拉丁语	意大利语	西班牙语	法语
dolor	dolore	dolor	douleur
odium	odio	odio	odieux (odiōsus)
pēs, pedis	pie	pie	pied

In the readings

1. project, projection. 4. stable (adj.), stability, stabilize. 7. internecine; cp. **necāre**.—impunity, punitive. 13. deficient, deficiency, defect, defective, defection. 14. pulse, pulsate, pulsar. “Note”: bibliopole, bibliopole; cp. bibliography, bibliophile (都源于希腊语). “Hang Her”: ficus.—surculose. “Pity”: misericord; cp. **miser**. “Two Letters”: festinate, festination.—brevity; cp. **brevis**. “Ask Me”: alb, alba, Alba Longa, Alban, albedo, albescent, albinism, albino, albugenous, album, albumen, albumin.—atrabilious.

欢乐拉丁语,有用拉丁语!

Salvēte! 你是否注意到了,在每一课的这个部分,我们都喜欢 **ad lib.**? **Ad libitum**, *at one's pleasure*, 与 **libenter** 有关,拉丁语就应当这样讲授和学习: *gladly!* 因此, **libenter carpite diem et hās rēs novās**: 首先,注意 **impediō** 源于 **in + pēs**; 如果你被“impeded”了,那是因为你的“脚”碰到了什么东西(比如“feters”[脚镣],这个词也是来自“foot”这一词根)。于是,也许你应当去看 podiatrist (**pod-**是拉丁语 **ped-**的希腊语同源词),让他来“expedite”你的治疗(**expedire** 本来就是“to de-fetter”,它与 **impedire** 的含义相反;与源于 **implicāre/explicāre** 的“implicate”和“explicate”比较);或者干脆不要步行了,改骑自行车吧。**Odium** 意为 *rivalry* 和 *hatred*; 猜猜看,在 **odium medicum**, **odium scholasticum** 和 **odium theologicum** 中,是谁与谁在竞争? 说起可恨的人,据说罗马皇帝提比略(公元14年—37年)曾经这样谈及他的臣民: **ōderint dum metuant**, *let them hate (me), so long as they fear me!* 缩写 **op. cit.** 源于 **opere citātō**, *in the work cited*; **opera omnia** 是某位作者的 *complete works*。有一项古老的法令说, **vendēns eandem rem duōbus est falsārius** (*fraudulent*), 这样一种诈骗将是 **īnfra dignitātem**, *beneath one's dignity*, 所以要记住 **caveat ēmptor**, *let the buyer beware!* **Iterum tempus fūgit: valeātis, amīcī et amīcae!**

第三十九课

动名词和动形词

动形词

我们对动形词(*gerundive*),或者说将来时被动态分词,¹已经很熟悉了。这是一个由词尾**-ndus, -nda, -ndum**构成的动词性形容词(第二十三课)。除了偶尔起简单形容词的作用(**liber legendus, a book to be read**),动形词常常用于被动迂说法变位(第二十四课:**hic liber legendus est, this book should be read**)。本课将介绍它的另一些用法。

动名词

动名词(*gerund*)是一种在形式上类似于动形词的动词性名词,不过它只有四种形式,即中性单数的属格、与格、宾格和夺格。这些形式与动形词相应的格相同,不过含义是主动的,对应于英语中以“-ing”结尾的动名词(**legendi, of reading**,例如 **magnum amorem legendi habet, he has a great love of reading**)。

动名词的变格

以下是一些拉丁语例词的完整的动名词变格:

属格	laudándī	dūcéndī	sequéndī	audiéndī
	(of praising, leading, following, hearing)			
与格	laudándō	dūcéndō	sequéndō	audiéndō
	(to/for praising, etc.)			

¹ 因此,“动形词”更为准确的译法为“将来被动动形词”。但为简洁起见,而且可以与动名词显得更加“对等”,本书采用“动形词”的译法。——译者注

宾格	laudándum (<i>praising, etc.</i>)	dūcéndum	sequéndum	audiéndum
夺格	laudándō (<i>by praising, etc.</i>)	dūcéndō	sequéndō	audiéndō

既然动名词是一个动词性名词,那么在不同情况下,它就既可以作为动词被修饰,又可以用作名词。然而,由于没有主格形式,动名词不能用作主语,这一功能由拉丁语中的另一种动词性名词——不定式来实现(也就是说,拉丁语可以说 **errāre est humānum**, *to err is human*,但不能说 *erring is human*);类似地,动词的宾格一般用作 **ad** 等介词的宾语,而不能作直接宾语(这一功能也是由不定式来实现的,例如 **iussit eōs venīre**, *he ordered them to come*。参见附录中的“宾语不定式”部分)。下面的句子给出了动名词四种格的典型用法:

studium **vīvendī** cum amīcīs, *fondness of (for) living with friends.*

Operam dat **vīvendō** bene, *he gives attention to living well.*

Athēnās iit ad **vīvendum** bene, *he went to Athens to live well.*

Fēliciōrēs fīmus **vīvendō** bene, *we become happier by living well.*

动名词与动形词的区别

动名词与动形词的区别在于:

(1)动形词是一个动词性形容词(**liber legendus**, *a book to be read*),动名词则是一个动词性名词(**amor legendī**, *love of reading*)。

(2)作为形容词,动形词有全套的阳性、阴性、中性词尾,既有单数也有复数,而且各种格的情况都有;而动名词则只有中性单数,而且只有属格、与格、宾格和夺格,所以一共只有四种形式。

(3)动形词在含义上是被动的,动名词在含义上是主动的。

动名词短语和动形词短语

作为动词性名词,动名词可以带动词所要求的格:

studium legendī librōs, *fondness of reading books.*

Discimus legendō librōs, *we learn by reading books.*

但在实际使用中,如果动名词后面跟着一个宾格名词作直接宾语,那么罗马人更愿意把这个名词的格置于没有该名词时动名词应当处于的那种格,并使用与该名词一致的动形词。无论使用哪种结构,翻译都是一样的,因为英语习惯于使用动名词结构而不是动形词结构。在下列例子中,标 A 的是我们按照英语习惯期待的结果;标 B 的则是罗马人实际上更愿意使用的动形词短语:

- A. studium legendī librōs(可接受)
 B. studium librōrum legendōrum(更愿意使用)
fondness of reading books(不能写成 *fondness of books to be read*, 因为这
 不合乎语言习惯)

- A. Operam dat legendō librōs.
 B. Operam dat librīs legendīs.
He gives attention to reading books.

- A. Discimus legendō librōs.
 B. Discimus librīs legendīs.
We learn by reading books.

- A. Hoc locūtus est dē legendō librōs.
 B. Hoc locūtus est dē librīs legendīs.
He said this about reading books.

用“**ad** + 宾格的将来被动动形词(或动名词)短语”以及“后置的 **causā** + 属格的动形词(或动名词)短语”来表示目的是很常见的:

- A. Vēnit ad legendum librōs.
 B. Vēnit ad librōs legendōs.
He came to read books.
- A. Ōtium petit legendī librōs causā.
 B. Ōtium petit librōrum legendōrum causā.
He seeks leisure for the sake of reading books.

别忘了,在拉丁语中,目的不仅可以通过动形词/动名词短语来表达,而且可以通过 **ut/nē** + 虚拟式,以及表示运动的主要动词之后的目的动名词宾格来表达。例如,**venit ut hōs librōs legat** 和 **venit hōs librōs lēctum** 都表示 *he is coming to read these books*。

词汇表

- aedificium, -iī, n., building, structure** (edification, edifice, edify, aedile)
iniúria, -ae, f., injustice, injury, wrong (injurious; cp. **iūdex, iūdicium, iūs, iūstus**, Ch. 40)
múlier, mulieris, f., woman (muliebrity)
trānsitus, -ūs, m., passing over, transit; transition (cp. **trānseō** below)
véntus, -ī, m., wind (vent, ventilate, ventilation, ventilator)
cúpidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager, fond; + gen., desirous of, eager for (cp. **cupiō, cupiditās, cupīdō**)

liberális, liberále, *of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal; generous* (liberal arts, liberality; cp. **liber, liberō**)
necesse, indecl. adj. used as nom. or acc., *necessary, inevitable* (necessitate, necessitous, unnecessary; cp. **cēdō**)
vétus, gen. **véteris**, *old* (veteran, inveterate, veterinary, veterinarian)
quási, adv. or conj., *as if, as it were* (quasi; = **quam** + **sī**)
ámbulō (1), *to walk* (amble, ambulance, ambulate, ambulatory, perambulate, preamble, somnambulist)
expérior, -perírī, -pértus sum, *to try, test; experience* (experiment, expert, inexpert, inexperience; cp. **perículum**)
libō (1), *to pour a libation of, on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently* (libation)
opórtet, oportére, opórtuit, impers., *it is proper, right, necessary*
oppúgnō (1), *to fight against, attack, assault, assail* (oppugn; cp. **pugnō**)
órnō (1), *to equip, furnish, adorn* (adornment, ornate, ornament, ornamental, ornamentation, suborn, subornation)
pernoctō (1), *to spend or occupy the night* (nocturnal, nocturne; cp. **nox**)
tránseō, -íre, -ī, -itum, *to go across, cross; pass over, ignore* (transit, transition, transitive, intransitive, transitory, trance)

练习与复习

1. Caesar eōs cōtīdiē ōrābat nē fāta adversa metuerent.
2. Etsī hoc fiat, illī mīlitēs urbem oppugnātum fortasse accēdant et multī cīvēs obeant.
3. Sī licēbit, septem diēbus domum ībimus ad nostrōs amīcōs videndōs.
4. Amīcus liberālissimus noster, quōcum pernoctābāmus, dīs vīnum ante cēnam libāvit, et deinde mēnsam ōrnāvit.
5. Cōnsul, vir maximae dignitātis, ōtium cōnsūpsit in operibus sublīmibus scrībendīs.
6. Sunt autem quī dolōrum vītandōrum causā, ut āiunt, semper levia opera faciant, labōrem contemnant, et dē officiīs querantur.
7. In rē pūblicā gerendā istī nōn dubitant praemia grāta sibi requirere, officia suspendere, atque honōrem suum vēndere.
8. Lēctrīx doctissima mox surget ad tria carmina recitanda, quae omnēs audītōrēs oblectābunt atque animōs serēnābunt.
9. Nēmō est cui iniūria placeat, ut nōs omnēs recognōscimus.
10. Nisi vincula patī ac sub pedibus tyrannōrum humī contundī volumus, libertātī semper studeāmus et eam numquam impediāmus.
11. Pauca opera mihi sedendō fiunt, multa agendō et experiendō.
12. Illa mulier mīrābilis frūctūs amōris libenter carpsit et virō grātissimō nūpsit.
13. They are going to Rome to talk about conquering the Greeks.
14. By remaining at Rome he persuaded them to become braver.
15. Who is there who has hope of doing great works without pain?
16. We urged the consul to serve the state and preserve our dignity by attacking these injustices.

古代名言

1. Coniūrātiōnem nāscēntem nōn crēdendō corrōborāvērunt. (*Cicero.—**coniūrātiō**, **-ōnis**, *conspiracy*.—**corrōborāre**, *to strengthen*.)
2. Malī dēsinant īnsidiās reī pūblicae cōsulīque parāre et ignēs ad īnflammandam urbem. (Cicero.—**dēsino**, **-ere**, *to cease*.—**īnflam-māre**, *to set on fire*.)
3. Multī autem propter glōriae cupiditātem sunt cupidī bellōrum gērendōrum. (Cicero.)
4. Veterem iniūriam ferendō invītāmus novam. (Publilius Syrus.)
5. Cūrēmus nē poena maior sit quam culpa; prohibenda autem maximē est ira in pūniendō. (Cicero.—**pūnīre**, *to punish*.)
6. Syrācūsīs captīs, Mārcellus aedificiīs omnibus sīc pepercit—mīrā-bile dictū—quasi ad ea dēfendenda, nōn oppugnanda vēnisset. (Cicero.)
7. Rēgulus laudandus est in cōservandō iūre iūrāndō. (*Cicero.—Regulus, prisoner of the Carthaginians, swore to them that he would return to Carthage after a mission to Rome.—**iūs iūrāndum**, **iūris iūrāndī**, n., *oath*.)
8. In ōrātiōne meā dīcam dē mōribus fīrmīs Sēstiī et dē studiō cōnser-vandae salūtis commūnis. (Cicero.—**Sēstius**, **-ī**.)
9. Trānsitus ad senectūtem nōs āvocat ā rēbus gerendīs et corpus facit īnfīrmus. (Cicero.)
10. Cum recreandae vōcis īnfīrmāe causā necesse esset mihi ambulāre, hās litterās dictāvī forīs ambulāns. (Cicero.—**dictāre**, *to dictate*.)
11. Semper metuendō sapiēns vītāt malum. (Publilius Syrus.)
12. Haec virtūs ex prōvidendō est appellāta prūdentia. (Cicero.—**prōvi-dēre**.—**prūdentia** = **prō-videntia**.)
13. Fāma vīrēs acquīrit eundō. (Virgil.—**acquīrō**, from **ad-quaerō**, *to acquire*.)
14. Hae vicissitudinēs fortūnae, etsī nōbīs iūcundae in experiendō nōn fuērunt, in legendō tamen erunt iūcundae. Recordātiō enim prae-teritī dolōris dēlectātiōnem nōbīs habet. (Cicero.—**vicissitudō**, **-dinis**.—**recordātiō**, **-ōnis**, *recollection*.—**praeteritus**, **-a**, **-um**, *past*.)

PROMISES, PROMISES!

Nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere mälle
 quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.
 Dīcit: sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī,
 in ventō et rapidā scrībere oportet aquā.

(*Catullus 70; meter: elegiac couplet.—**Nūllī** and **mihi** are both dat. with **nūbere**, and **quam** = **magis quam**; the prose order would be **mulier mea dīcit sē nūllī quam mihi nūbere mälle**.—**amantī**, *lover*.—Note the separation of adj. from noun in **cupidō . . . amantī** and **rapidā . . . aquā**, a common feature of Latin verse used here to emphasize the nouns that are delayed; the prose order: **sed quod mulier**

amantī cupidō dicit.—rapidus, -a, -um.)

PAETE, NŌN DOLET

Casta suō gladium cum trāderet Arria Paetō,
 quem dē vīsceribus strīnserat ipsa suīs,
 “Sī qua fidēs, vulnus quod fēcī nōn dolet,” inquit,
 “sed quod tū faciēs, hoc mihi, Paete, dolet.”

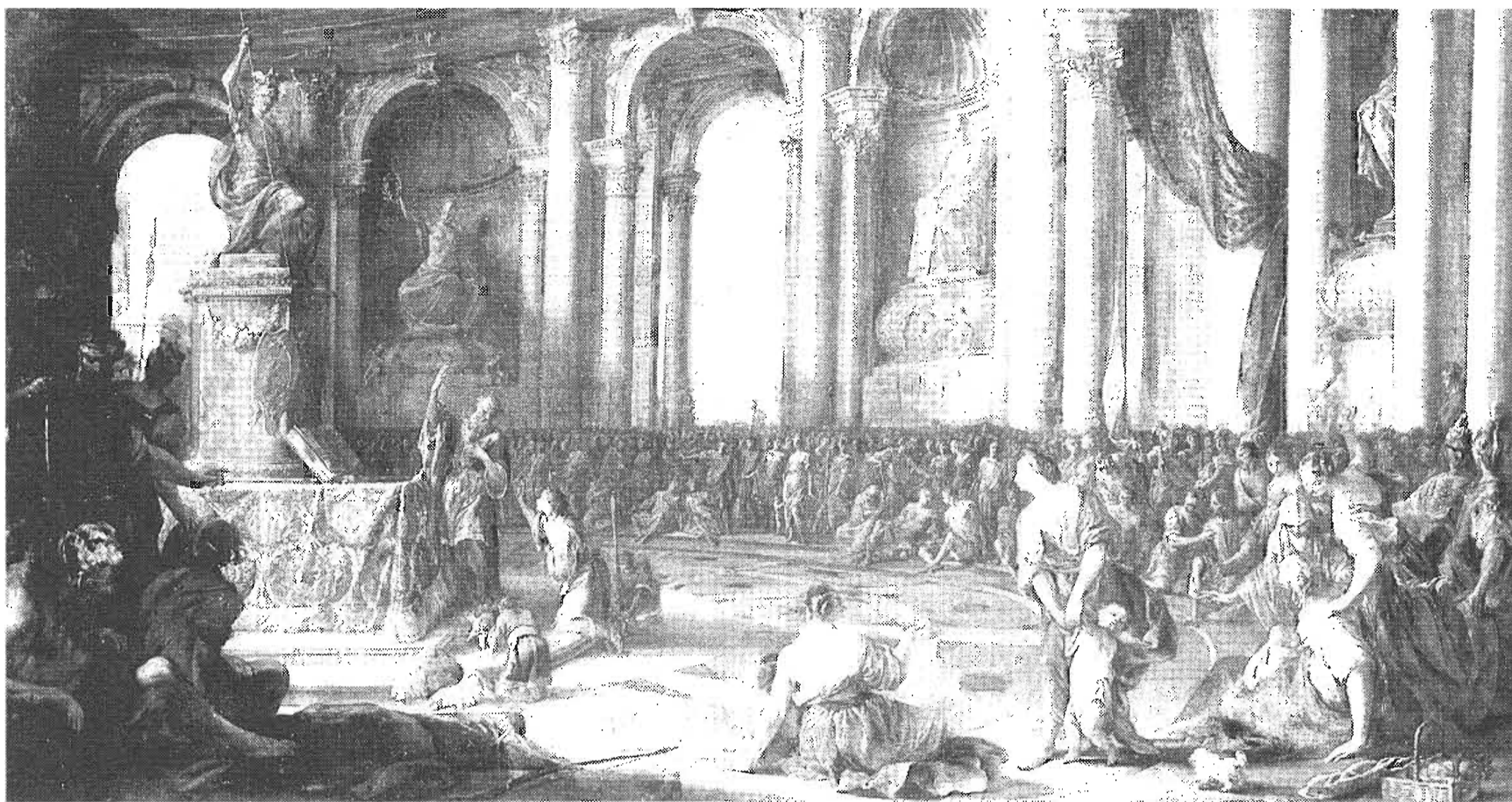
(*Martial 1.13; meter: elegiac couplet.—Caecina Paetus was compelled to commit suicide in 42 A.D., because of the role he had played in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius; his courageous and devoted wife Arria, choosing to die with him, stabbed herself before passing the sword to her husband and assuring him that the pain of the wound itself would be slight. See below, L.I. 39.—The prose order of the first verse would be: **Cum Arria casta Paetō suō gladium trāderet.**—castus, -a, -um, *loyal, chaste.*—gladius, -ī, *sword.*—vīscera, -cerum, n. pl., *vital organs, abdomen.*—stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, *to draw tight, tie; pull, draw out.*—sī qua [=quae, indef.] fidēs, i.e., *if you have any faith in me, if you will trust me.*)

HANNIBAL AND THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal, filius Hamilcaris, Carthāgine nātus est. In adulēscentiā prīstinum odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc fīrmē cōservāvit ut numquam id dēpōneret. Cum patre exiit Carthāgine et in Hispāniam longō itinere prōfectus est; et post multōs annōs, Hamilcare interfectō, exercitus eī imperium trādīdit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Tribus annīs nōn requiēvit, sed omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvit et trēs exercitūs maximōs parāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsīt, alterum cum frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit.

Ad Alpēs adiit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Populōs cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū necāvit; loca patefēcit; et cum multīs elephantīs mīlitibusque in Italiam iniit. In hōc itinere tam gravī morbō oculōrum adfectus est ut postea numquam dextrō oculō bene ūtī posset. Multōs ducēs, tamen, exercitūsque Rōmānōs vīcit, et propter illum imperātōrem mīlia mīlitum Rōmānōrum periērunt.

(Nepos, *Hannibal*, excerpts; see L.A. 8.—Hannibal, general who led the Carthaginians against the Romans in the Second Punic War, 218–02 B.C.—Hamilcar, -caris.—dē + pōnō.—Hispānia, -ae, *Spain.*—Āfrica, -ae.—Alpēs, Alpium, f. pl., *the Alps.*—adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *to affect, afflict, weaken.*)



*The Oath of Hannibal, Johann Heinrich Schoenfeld, 17th century
Germanisches Nationalmuseum, Nuremberg, German*

词源点滴

“Gerund”[动名词]和“gerundive”[动形词]都源于 **gerō** 的词干 **gerund-** (= **gerend-**)。动名词指的是“doing” (action), 动形词指的是 what is “to be done”。

在晚期拉丁语中,动名词的夺格越来越多地等同于现在时分词。由这一用法派生出了意大利语和西班牙语中的现在时分词,它们均以 **-ndo** 结尾,且不发生变化。

拉丁语动名词	意大利语分词	西班牙语分词
dandō	dando	dando
faciendō	facendo	haciendo
dīcendō	dicendo	diciendo
pōnendō	ponendo	poniendo
scrībendō	scrivendo	escribiendo

In the readings

1. conjuration; cp. **coniūrātī**.—corroborate, corroborate; cp. **rōbur, rōboris**, n., *hard wood, oak*. 2. inflammation, inflammatory. 5. punitive, impunity; cp. **poena**. 10. dictator. 14. **re-cord-ātīō** 中含有词干 **cor, cordis, heart**, 这表明在以前,人们认为心不仅是感情之所,而且也是记忆之场,这一信念反应在我们的短语“用心学习”中。与 record, accord, concord, discord, cordial, cordate, courage 比较。英语

词“heart”与拉丁语的 **cord-**同源。“Promises”: rapid, rapids, rapidity; cp. **rapiō**. “Paete”: chaste, chasten, chastity, chastise.—gladiator, gladiatorial, gladiola, gladiolus.—viscera, visceral, eviscerate.—stringency, stringendo, stringent, astringent, strict, constrict, restrict. “Hannibal”: deponent, depose, deposit, deposition.—affect, affection.

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte, discipulī discipulaeque; haec sunt discenda: 老加图(Cato)对演说家的定义是广为人知的, 公元1世纪的教育家昆体良曾经作过引用(*Institutiōēs Ōrātōriae* 12.1.1)。我们现在已经学习了动名词(再加上 **perītus, -a, -um** + 属格 = *experienced in* 这一说明), 我想你现在一定可以轻而易举地翻译它了: **ōrātor est vir bonus dīcendī perītus**。以下是一些包含动名词和动形词的短语: 新墨西哥州的座右铭是 **crēscit eundō**(如果觉得困难, 请复习第三十七课!); **docendō discimus; spectēmur agendō**, *let us be judged by what we do* (直译为 *by our doing*); **modus vīvendī** 和 **modus operandī; onus probandī**, *the burden of proof* (直译为 *of proving*); 当然, 还有下面这些“需要做的事情”(things to be done): **agenda, addenda, corrigenda, referendum**。

Et duo cētera ex vocābulārīō novō: iniūria nōn excūsāt iniūriam, (*one*) *injury does not excuse (another) injury* 是一种古老的法律信条, **expertō crēdite** 依然不失为好的建议。 **Habēte fēlicem modum vīvendī, studentēs, et valēte!**

第四十课

直接问句中的-Ne、Num 和 Nōnne; 疑虑从句;描述属格和描述夺格

直接问句中的-Ne、Num 和 Nōnne

正如我们所看到的,罗马人可以用多种方式直接提出问题,比如用疑问代词(**quis, quid**)或者像 **ubi** 或 **cūr** 这样的疑问词来引出句子,或者通过给句首词(往往是问题所基于的动词或其他词)加后缀**-ne**。但在拉丁语中也可以问“诱导性的问题”:如果说话者期待肯定的回答,就用 **nōnne** 来引出问题(我们已经碰到过这种结构,不过还没有正式讨论);如果期待否定的回答,就用 **num** 作引导词。

Quis venit? *Who is coming?*

Cūr venit? *Why is he coming?*

Venitne? *Is he coming?*

Nōnne venit? *He is coming, isn't he? 或 Isn't he coming?*

Num venit? *He isn't coming, is he?*

Scrīpsistīne illās litterās? *Did you write that letter?*

Nōnne illās litterās scrīpsistī? *You wrote that letter, didn't you? 或 Didn't you write that letter?*

Num illās litterās scrīpsistī? *You didn't write that letter, did you?*

疑虑从句

有一些表示惧怕或忧虑的动词,后面经常跟着由 **nē**(*that*)或 **ut**(*that . . . not*);偶尔用 **nē nōn** 而不是 **ut**)引导的虚拟式名词从句;这些连词所引出的内容

其实恰恰与期望相反, 因为它们所引导的从句原本是独立的命令句(即 **timeō nē abeās**, *I fear that you may go away*, = **Timeō. Nē abeās!**, *I'm afraid—Don't go away!*)。翻译时常用 *will* 或 *may*(在基本时态的序列中), *would* 或 *might*(在派生时态的序列中)等助动词, 如下列例子所示:

Timeō nē id crēdant, *I fear that they will (may) believe this.*

Vereor ut id crēdant, *I am afraid that they will (may) not believe this.*

Timuērunt nē amīcōs amitterent, *they feared that they might (would) lose their friends.*

Metuistī ut mulierēs ex casā exīssent, *you were afraid that the women had not left the house.*

描述属格和描述夺格

有时一个夺格或属格名词加上修饰它的形容词可以用来修饰另一个名词, 这就是(我们曾经在阅读中见到过的)描述夺格和描述属格。它们可以通过指出特点、性质、尺寸来描述一个名词; 在描述物理特性时, 夺格尤其常用。和形容词一样, 这些描述性短语通常跟在所修饰名词之后。

fēmina magnae sapientiae, *a woman of great intellect*

pāx in hominibus bonae voluntātis, *peace among men of good will*

cōnsilium eius modī, *a plan of this kind*

Diligō hominem antīquā virtūte, *I esteem a man of old-fashioned morality.*

mīles firmā manū, *the soldier with the strong hand*

Es mōribus bonīs, *you are a person of good character.*

词汇表

aes, aēris, n., *bronze* (era; cp. **aerārium, -ī**, *treasury*; **aereus, -a, -um**, *made of bronze*)

dōminus, -ī, m., *master (of a household), lord*, and **dōmina, -ae**, f., *mistress, lady* (dominate, dominant, domineer, dominion, domain, domino, domine, don, dungeon, belladonna, madonna, dame, damsel, danger; cp. **domus**)

lācrima, -ae, f., *tear* (lacrimal, lacrimation)

mēta, -ae, f., *turning point, goal; limit, boundary*

monumētum, -ī, n., *monument* (monumental, monumentalize; cp. **moneō**)

nāsus, -ī, m., *nose* (nasal, nasalize, nasogastric; cp. nostril, nozzle)

sāxum, -ī, n., *rock, stone* (saxatile, saxifrage, saxicolous; cp. **secō**, *to cut*, saw, saxon)

vultus, -ūs, m., *countenance, face*

iustus, -a, -um, *just, right* (justice, injustice, unjust, justify, justification, adjust, adjustment, readjust; cp. **iūs, iudex, iniūria**)

tot, indecl. adj., *so many* (cp. **quot; totidem**, indecl. adj., *the same number; totiēns*, adv., *that number of times, so often*)

praeter, prep. + acc., *besides, except; beyond, past* (preterit, preterition, pretermit, preternatural; cp. **prae**)

nōnne, interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer “yes.”

num, interrog. adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer “no”; (2) introduces indirect questions and means *whether*.

omnīnō, adv., *wholly, entirely, altogether* (cp. **omnis**)

postrēmum, adv., *after all, finally; for the last time* (cp. **post**)

quīn, adv., *indeed, in fact*

explicō (1), *unfold; explain; spread out, deploy* (explicate, inexplicable; implicate, implication, from **implicō**, *to enfold, interweave*)

fatīgō (1), *to weary, tire out* (fatigue, indefatigable)

for, fārī, fātus sum, *to speak (prophetically), talk, foretell* (affable, ineffable, infant, infantry, preface; cp. **fābula, fāma, fātum**)

opīnor, opīnārī, opīnātus sum, *to suppose* (opine, opinion)

repériō, reperīre, répperī, repértum, *to find, discover, learn; get* (repertoire, repertory; cp. **parēns** and **pariō**, *to give birth to*)

véreor, verērī, véritus sum, *to show reverence for, respect; be afraid of, fear* (revere, reverend, reverent, reverential, irreverent)

练习与复习

1. Nōnne Rōmulus, sator huius urbis, fuit vir mīrābilis virtūtis et fidei pristinae?
2. At postrēmum vereor, heu, ut ā virīs parvae sapientiae hoc studium vetus intellegī possit.
3. Nōn oportet nōs trānsīre haec liberālia hūmānaque studia, nam praemia eōrum certē sunt maxima.
4. Dignitās illius orātiōnis fuit omnīnō idōnea occāsiōnī.
5. Equī eius, cum fatīgātī essent et ventus esset eīs adversus, ad mētā tamen quam celerrimē currēbant.
6. Vir corpore infirmō id nōn facere poterat.
7. Etsī trēs filiī sunt cupidī magnōrum operum faciendōrum, eīs nōn licet domō abīre.
8. Domina firma acerbē querēbātur plūrimōs servōs fuisse absentēs—vae illīs miserīs!
9. Mīrābile rogātū, num istam mulierem amās, mī amīce?
10. Nōnne timent nē et Rōmae et rūrī magnī tumultūs sint?
11. Num opīnāris tot hominēs iūstōs omnīnō errāre?
12. Recognōvistīne, ut illa aedificia vīsum ambulābās, mulierem sub arbore humī requiēscentem?

13. I am afraid, in my heart, that few things can be accomplished now even by trying.
14. You do not hesitate to say this, do you?
15. They supposed that, after all, he was a man of very little faith.
16. You do recognize how great the danger is, do you not?

古代名言

1. Quattuor causās reperiō cūr senectūs misera videātur. Videāmus quam iūsta quaeque eārum sit. (Cicero.)
2. Verērī videntur ut habeam satis praesidī. (*Cicero.—**praesidium, -iī, guard**).
3. Necesse est enim sit alterum dē duōbus: aut mors sēnsūs omnīnō aufert aut animus in alium locum morte abit. Sī mors somnō similis est sēnsūsque exstinguuntur, dī bonī, quid lucrī est morī! (Cicero.—**necesse est** may be followed by the subjunctive.—**aufert = ab-fert.**—**exstinguō, -ere.**—**lucrum, -ī, gain, profit.**)
4. Aetās semper trānsitum et aliquid novī adfert. (Terence.)
5. Nōnne ūnum exemplum luxuriaē aut cupiditātis multum malī facit? (Seneca.—**luxuria, -ae.**)
6. Mīror tot mīlia virōrum tam puerīliter identidem cupere currentēs equōs vidēre. (Pliny.—**puerīliter, adv., based on puer, childishly.**—**identidem, adv., again and again.**—**currentēs, i.e., in the races.**)
7. Nōnne vidēs etiam guttās, in saxa cadendō, pertundere illa saxa? (Lucretius.—**gutta, -ae, drop [of water].**—**pertundō, -ere, to bore a hole through, erode.**)
8. Metuō nē id cōsilī cēperīmus quod nōn facile explicāre possīmus. (*Cicero.—**cōsilī, gen. of the whole with id.**)
9. Antōnius, ūnus ex inimīcīs et vir minimae clēmētiaē, iussit Cicerōnem interficī et caput eius inter duās manūs in Rōstrīs pōnī. (Livy.—**inimīcus, -ī, from in + amīcus, personal enemy.**—**Rōstra, -ōrum, the Rostra, the speaker's stand in the Roman Forum.**)
10. Omnēs quī habent aliquid nōn solum sapientiaē sed etiam sānitātis volunt hanc rem pūblicam salvam esse. (*Cicero.—**sānitās, -tātis.**)
11. Salvē, nec minimō puella nāsō nec bellō pede nec nigrīs ocellīs nec longīs digitīs nec ore siccō! (*Catullus.—**niger, nigra, nigrum, black, dark.**—**ocellus, diminutive of oculus.**—**siccus, -a, -um, dry.**)
12. Homō sum; nihil hūmānī aliēnum ā mē putō. (Terence.—**aliēnus, -a, -um + ab = foreign to.**)
13. Amīcus animum amīcī ita cum suō miscet quasi facit ūnum ex duōbus. (Cicero.)
14. Sex diēbus fēcit Dominus caelum et terram et mare et omnia quae in eīs sunt, et requiēvit diē septimō. (Exodus.)
15. Mīsit legātum Valerium Procillum, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulescentem. (Caesar.—**legātus, -ī, ambassador.**—Valerius Procillus.—**hūmānitās, -tātis.**)

16. Num negāre audēs? Quid tacēs? Convincam, sī negās; videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam quī tēcum unā fuērunt. Ō dī immortalēs! (*Cicero.—**quid**, here = *why?*—**con** + **vincō**, *to prove wrong, convict*; sc. **tē**.—**unā**, adv., *together, in concert*.)
17. Nunc timeō nē nihil tibi praeter lacrimās queam reddere. (*Cicero—**queam** = **possim**.—**reddō**, **-dere**, *to give back, return*.)

JUPITER PROPHECIES TO VENUS THE FUTURE GLORY OF ROME

Ollī subrīdēns hominum sator atque deōrum
 255 vultū, quō caelum tempestātēsque serēnat,
 ōscula lībāvit nātae, dehinc tālia fātur:
 “Parce metū, Cytherēa; manent immōta tuōrum
 fāta tibi. Cernēs urbem et prōmissa Lavīnī
 moenia sublīmemque ferēs ad sīdera caelī
 260 magnanimum Aenēan; neque mē sententia vertit.
 . . .
 263 Bellum ingēns geret Ītaliā populōsque ferōcīs
 contundet mōrēsque virīs et moenia pōnet.
 . . .
 Rōmulus excipiet gentem et Māvortia condet
 moenia Rōmānōsque suō dē nōmine dīcet.
 Hīs ego nec mētās rērum nec tempora pōnō:
 imperium sine fīne dedī. Quīn aspera Iūnō,
 280 quae mare nunc terrāsque metū caelumque fatīgat,
 cōnsilia in melius referet, mēcumque fovēbit
 Rōmānōs, rērum dominōs gentemque togātam.”

(*Virgil, *Aeneid* 1.254ff; meter: dactylic hexameter.—**Ollī** = **illī**, here Venus, who has come to her father Jupiter to ask whether his intentions have changed toward her son, the Trojan prince Aeneas, or if he is still destined to found a new Trojan nation in Italy.—**vultū**, abl. of means with **subrīdēns**.—**ōscula lībāvit**, i.e., he kissed her in ritual fashion.—**nātae**, ind. obj.—**dehinc**, scanned here as a monosyllable.—**metū**, an alternate form of the dat. **metuī**.—**Cytherēa**, **-ae**, *the Cytherean*, i.e., Venus, so-called for the Aegean island of Cythera, which was sacred to her.—**immōta**, pred. adj., after **manent**.—**tuōrum**, i.e., Aeneas and his Trojan followers.—**Lavīnium**, **-iī**, *Lavinium*, the town Aeneas was destined to found in Latium, near the future city of Rome.—**sublīmem**, in the predicate with **Aenēan** (a Gk. acc. form), *you will carry Aeneas on high*.—**neque . . . vertit**, i.e., *I have not changed my mind*; but what is the literal translation?—**geret . . . pōnet**: Aeneas is subject of all three verbs.—**Ītaliā**, sc. **in**; prepositions usual in prose were commonly omitted in verse.—**ferōcīs** = **ferōcēs**, acc. pl.—Through a device known as *zeugma*, **pōnet** has different senses with its two objects, *institute* with **mōrēs** and *build* with **moenia**.—**Māvortius**, **-a**, **-um**, *of Mars*, so-called because of the legend that Mars was father of Romulus, Rome's first king.—**rērum**, *of their affairs*, i.e., *for their empire*.—**tempora**, *time limits*.—**cōnsilia . . . referet**, i.e., *will change her attitude for the better*; Juno had sided with the Greeks in

the Trojan war and had continued to resist Aeneas' mission.—**togātus, -a, -um, togaed, toga-clad.**)



Virgil between two Muses
Mosaic, early 3rd century A.D.
Musée National du Bardo
Tunis, Tunisia

THE VALUE OF LITERATURE

Sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac liberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae neque temporum sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscēntiam alunt, senectūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōnant, adversīs perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, peregrīnantur, rūsticantur.

(*Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 7.16.—**hanc**, sc. **esse**.—**iūdicāre**, to judge, consider.—**cēterae**, sc. **remissiōnēs**.—take **omnium** with all three descriptive genitives, **temporum, aetātum, and locōrum**.)

A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius.

...

Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam.

(*Horace, *Odes* 3.30.1, 6–7; meter: first Asclepiadean. See L.I. 28.—**perennis, -e**, lasting [throughout the years].—**multa**, here = **magna**.—**Libitīna, -ae**, goddess of funerals; death.)

词源点滴

In the readings

2. presidium, preside, president, presidency. 3. extinguish, extinct.—lucre, lucrative. 6. puerile, puerility. 7. “ggt.”, 医学上表示“drops”的缩写。9. inimical, enemy. 11. denigrate, desiccate. 12. **Aliēnus** 直译为 *belonging to another (alius)*: alien, alienate, alienation, inalienable. 15. legate, legation, delegate.—humanity, humanities, humanitarian; cp. **hūmānus, homō**. 16. convince, convict, conviction. “Jupiter”: 名词 **fātum** 与 **for, fārī, fātus sum** 相关; 朱庇特所预言的是一个人的“fate”。“Value of Literature”: adjudicate. “A Monument”: “perennials” 是 *through the years*, 即年复一年地存活下来的户外植物; 亲爱的朋友们, 拉丁语便是一门 perennial 的语言!

欢乐拉丁语, 有用拉丁语!

Salvēte postrēmum, discipulī et discipulae! 下面是一些 **rēs novae ex hōc capite ultimō: dominus illūminātiō mea, the Lord is my light**, 这是牛津大学的校训; **lacrima Christi** 是一句人所熟知的拉丁语短语, 表示 *the tear of Christ* (也是一种意大利甜酒的名称)。维吉尔的《埃涅阿斯纪》中有一句名言, 主人公埃涅阿斯在北非遭遇海难, 他注视着—幅迦太基壁画, 画中描绘了他的民族和希腊人在特洛伊战争中所受的苦难, 埃涅阿斯说: **hīc etiam . . . sunt lacrimae rērum et mentem mortālia tangunt**。拉丁语原文要比英语直译(你现在可以轻而易举地做到)更有感染力, 不过还是可以作这样一种意译: *even here there are tears for the ways of the world, and man's mortality touches the heart*。

不要如此悲戚(“lacrimose”, 或者另一种拼写“lachrymose”), 我们现在转到一些更让人高兴的事情上。还记得如何由动词构成表示施事者的阳性名词吗?——比如由 **reperiō** 得到 **reperor, discover**。表示施事者的阴性后缀是 **-trīx, -trīcis** (比较英语词“aviator”和“aviatrix”以及我们见过的 **lēctor/lēctrīx**), 于是就有了 **paupertās omnium artium repertrīx** 这句谚语, 它就有点像我们所说的“需要是发明之母”(但其字面意思又是什么呢?)。人们常说, **Vultus est index animī, the face is an indication of the soul**。说到脸, 对某人“stick your nose up in the air”(自高自大)和“look down your nose”(看不起)并不是现代才有的表示傲慢或蔑视他人的习语; 早在尼禄时代, 讽刺作家佩尔西乌斯(Persius)就用一种并非完全恭维的隐喻谈及他的前辈贺拉斯, 说他 *hung the people from his well-blown nose (excussō populum suspendere nāsō)*。顺便说一句, **Nāsō** 是奥古斯都时期的诗人奥维德的“昵称”或 **cognōmen**: 罗马人往往给他们的孩子起有关

身体特征或精神特征的名字, 这些名字被世代留传了下来。(我们的朋友 Marcus Tullius, **mīrābile dictū**, 之所以会与 **Cicerō**, *garbanzo bean* [鹰嘴豆] 这个名字挂上钩, 正是因为他的某位祖先的鼻子上长了一种像鹰嘴豆那样的异物。)

愿你对拉丁语的热爱能够 **aere perennius: rīdēte, gaudēte, carpite omnēs dīēs vestrōs, atque postrēmum, lēctōrēs et lēctricēs dulcēs, valēte!**

古文选编

尽管这些古代作品的节选都经过了改编,以适应初学者的语言能力,但我们力争对它们做尽可能少的改动,以使其语言和思想保持原汁原味。对于诗歌,虽然每一篇都略去了若干节,但这里实际给出的诗句都保持了原貌。至于散文段落,有些地方可能省去了一些词句,语言也可能会作一定程度的简化。

学生们会发现,钻研这些古文本身就很有趣,他们会对自己在目前的学习阶段就能翻译这样成熟的拉丁语有一种成就感。对于那些在四十课的词汇表中没有介绍的词,在前一两次出现时都会给出注释,特别重要的词列在每一段文章注释之后的“Vocabulary”中。其中大多数词也包含在书末的拉英词汇表中,以方便查阅。

1. DISILLUSIONMENT

Miser Catulle, dēsinās¹ ineptīre,²
et quod vidēs perīsse perditum³ dūcās.
Fulsēre⁴ quondam candidī tibī sōlēs,
cum ventitābās⁵ quō⁶ puella dūcēbat,
5 amāta nōbīs quantum amābitur nūlla.
Fulsēre vērē candidī tibī sōlēs.
Nunc iam illa nōn vult; tū quoque, impotēns,⁷ nōlī;

1

METER: choliambic.

¹ dēsinō, -ere, -sī, -situm, cease (dēsinās = *juss. subj.* for dēsine)

² ineptiō (4), play the fool

³ perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, destroy, lose

⁴ fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, shine (fulsēre = fulsērunt)

⁵ ventitō (1), frequentative form of veniō, come often

⁶ quō, adv., whither, where

⁷ im-potēns, gen. -entis, powerless, weak, hopelessly in love

- nec quae fugit sectāre⁸ nec miser vīve,
sed obstinātā⁹ mente perfer,¹⁰ obdūrā.¹¹
- 10 Valē, puella, iam Catullus obdūrat,
nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam¹²;
at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
Scelesta, vae tē! Quae tibī manet vīta!¹³
Quis nunc tē adībit? Cui vidēberis bella?
- 15 Quem nunc amābis? Cuius esse dīcēris?
At tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā. (Catullus 8)

2. HOW DEMOSTHENES OVERCAME HIS HANDICAPS

- Ōrātor imitētur¹ illum cui summa vīs dīcendī concēditur,² Dē-
mosthenem, in quō tantum studium fuisse dīcitur ut impedīmenta³ nātūrae
dīligentiā⁴ industriāque⁵ superāret. Nam cum ita balbus⁶ esset ut illius ipsius
artis⁷ cui studēret prīmam litteram nōn posset dīcere, perfēcit⁸ meditandō⁹
5 ut nēmō plānius¹⁰ loquerētur. Deinde, cum spīritus eius esset angustior,¹¹
spīritū continendō multum perfēcit in dīcendō; et coniectīs¹² in ōs calculīs,¹³
summā vōce versūs multōs ūnō spīritū prōnūntiāre cōnsuēscēbat¹⁴; neque id
faciēbat stāns ūnō in locō sed ambulāns. (Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 1.61.260–61)

3. THE TYRANT CAN TRUST NO ONE

- Multōs annōs tyrannus Syrācūsānōrum¹ fuit Dionysius. Pulcherrimam
urbem servitūte oppressam tenuit. At ā bonīs auctōribus cognōvimus eum
fuisse hominem summae temperantiae² in vīctū³ et in rēbus gerendīs ācrem
et industrium,⁴ eundem tamen malum et iniūstum.⁵ Quārē, omnibus virīs
5 bene vērītātem quaerentibus hunc vidērī miserrimum necesse est, nam
nēmīnī crēdere audēbat. Itaque propter iniūstam cupiditātem dominātūs⁶
quasi in carcerem⁷ ipse sē inclūserat.⁸ Quīn etiam,⁹ nē tōnsōrī¹⁰ collum¹¹

⁸ *sectāre*, imper. of *sector* (1), follow eagerly, pursue;
word order: *sectāre* (eam) *quae fugit*

⁹ *obstinātus*, -a, -um, firm

¹⁰ *per-ferō*, endure

¹¹ *obdūrō* (1), vb. of *adj. dūrus*

¹² *invītus*, -a, -um, unwilling

¹³ see notes on excerpt in Ch. 19.

VOCABULARY: *perdō*, *quō*, *invītus*.

2

¹ *imitor*, -ārī, -ātus sum

² *con-cēdō*

³ *impedīmentum*, -ī

⁴ *dīligentia*, -ae

⁵ *industria*, -ae

⁶ *balbus*, -a, -um, stuttering

⁷ *illius* . . . *artis*, i.e., *rhetoric*

⁸ *per-ficiō*, do thoroughly, bring about, accom-

⁹ *meditor* (1), practice

¹⁰ *plānius*, comp. of *adv. plānē*

¹¹ *angustus*, -a, -um, narrow, short

¹² *con-iciō* (*iaciō*)

¹³ *calculus*, -ī, pebble

¹⁴ *cōnsuēscō*, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accu-

VOCABULARY: *con-cēdō*, *per-ficiō*, *angustus*, *cōnsuēscō*.

3

¹ *Syrācūsānī*, -ōrum, Syracusans

² *temperantia*, -ae

³ *vīctus*, -ūs, mode of life

⁴ *industrius*, -a, -um

⁵ *in-iūstus*, -a, -um

⁶ *dominātus*, -ūs, absolute rule or power

⁷ *carcer*, -eris, *m.*, prison

⁸ *inclūdō*, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut in

⁹ *quīn etiam*, moreover

¹⁰ *tōnsor*, -ōris, *m.*, barber

¹¹ *collum*, -ī, neck

committeret, filiās suās artem tonsōriam docuit.¹² Ita hae virginēs tondē-
bant¹³ barbam¹⁴ et capillum¹⁵ patris. Et tamen ab hīs ipsīs, cum iam essent
10 adultae,¹⁶ ferrum remōvit, eīsque imperāvit ut carbōnibus¹⁷ barbam et capil-
lum sibi adūrerent.¹⁸ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.20.57–58)

4. THE SWORD OF DAMOCLES

Hic tyrannus ipse dēmōstrāvit quam beātus esset. Nam cum quīdam
ex eius assentātōribus,¹ Dāmoclēs,² commemorāret³ cōpiās eius, maiestātem⁴
dominātūs, rērum abundantiam,⁵ negāretque quemquam⁶ umquam beāti-
ōrem fuisse, Dionysius “Vīsne igitur,” inquit, “Ō Dāmocle, ipse hanc vītā
5 dēgustāre⁷ et fortunā meam experīrī?” Cum ille sē cupere dīxisset, homi-
nem in aureō⁸ lectō⁹ collocārī¹⁰ iussit mēnsāsque ōrnāvit argentō¹¹ aurōque.¹²
Tum puerōs bellōs iussit cēnam exquisītissimā¹³ īferre. Fortunātus sibi
Dāmoclēs vidēbātur. Eōdem autem tempore Dionysius gladium suprā¹⁴ ca-
put eius saetā equinā¹⁵ dēmittī¹⁶ iussit. Dāmoclēs, cum gladium vīdisset, ti-
10 mēns ōrāvit tyrannum ut eī abire liceret, quod iam “beātus” nōllet esse.
Satisne Dionysius vidētur dēmōstrāvisse nihil esse eī beātum cui semper
aliquī¹⁷ metus impendeat?¹⁸ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.20.61–62)

5. DERIVATION OF “PHILOSOPHUS” AND SUBJECTS OF PHILOSOPHY

Eī quī studia in contemplātiōne¹ rērum pōnēbant “sapientēs” appellā-
bantur, et id nōmen ūsque ad Pŷthagorae² aetātem mānāvit.³ Hunc aiunt
doctē et cōpiōsē⁴ quaedam cum Leonte⁵ disputāvisse⁶; et Leōn, cum illūs
ingenium et ēloquentiam⁷ admīrātus esset,⁸ quaesīvit ex eō quā arte maximē
5 ūterētur. At ille dīxit sē artem nūllam scīre sed esse philosophum. Tum Leōn,
admīrātus novum nōmen, quaesīvit quī essent philosophī. Pŷthagorās re-
spondit multōs hominēs glōriae aut pecūniae servīre sed paucōs quōsdam
esse quī cētera prō nihilō⁹ habērent sed nātūram rērum cognōscere cuperent;

¹² *doceō* may take two objects.

¹³ *tondeō*, -ēre, *totondī*, *tōnsum*, shear, clip

¹⁴ *barba*, -ae, beard

¹⁵ *capillus*, -ī, hair

¹⁶ *adultus*, -a, -um

¹⁷ *carbō*, -ōnis, *m.*, glowing coal

¹⁸ *adūrō*, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, singe

VOCABULARY: *temperantia*, *iniūstus*, *inclūdō*.

4

¹ *assentātor*, -ōris, *m.*, flatterer, “yes-man”

² *Dāmoclēs*, -is, *m.*

³ *commemorō* (1), mention, recount

⁴ *maiestās*, -tātis, *f.*, greatness

⁵ *abundantia*, -ae

⁶ *quisquam*, *quidquam*, anyone, anything

⁷ *dēgustō* (1), taste, try

⁸ *aureus*, -a, -um, golden

⁹ *lectus*, -ī, couch

¹⁰ *col-locō*, place

¹¹ *argentum*, -ī, silver

¹² *aurum*, -ī, gold

¹³ *exquisītus*, -a, -um: *ex-quaesītus*

¹⁴ *suprā*, *adv. and prep. + acc.*, above

¹⁵ *saetā equinā*, by a horsehair

¹⁶ *dēmittō*, let down

¹⁷ *aliquī*, -qua, -quod, *adj. of aliquis*

¹⁸ *impendeō*, -ēre, hang over, threaten

VOCABULARY: *quisquam*, *collocō*, *aurum*, *suprā*.

5

¹ *contemplātiō*, -ōnis, *f.*

² *Pŷthagorās*, -ae, *m.*

³ *mānō* (1), flow, extend

⁴ *cōpiōsē*, *adv.*, fully

⁵ *Leōn*, -ontis, *m.*, ruler of Phlius

⁶ *disputō* (1), discuss

⁷ *ēloquentia*, -ae

⁸ *admīror* (1), wonder at, admire

⁹ *nihilum*, -ī, = *nihil*

hōs sē appellāre “studiōsōs¹⁰ sapientiae,” id est enim “philosophōs.”¹¹ Sic
10 Pŷthagorās huius nōminis inventor¹² fuit.

Ab antīquā philosophiā ūsque ad Sōcratem¹³ philosophī numerōs et
sīdera tractābant¹⁴ et unde omnia orīrentur¹⁵ et quō¹⁶ discēderent. Sōcratēs
autem prīmus philosophiam dēvocāvit ē caelō et in urbibus hominibusque
collocāvit et coēgit eam dē vītā et mōribus rēbusque bonīs et malīs quaerere.
(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.3.8–9; 5.4.10)

6. CICERO ON THE VALUE AND THE NATURE OF FRIENDSHIP

Ego vōs hortor ut amīcitiam omnibus rēbus hūmānīs antepōnātis. Sen-
tiō equidem,¹ exceptā² sapientiā, nihil melius hominī ā deīs immortālibus
datum esse. Dīvitiās aliī antepōnunt; aliī, salūtem; aliī, potestātem³; aliī,
honōrēs; multī, etiam voluptātēs. Illa autem incerta sunt, posita nōn tam
5 in cōsiliīs nostrīs quam in fortunāe vicissitudinibus.⁴ Quī autem in virtūte
summum bonum pōnunt, bene illī quidem faciunt; sed ex ipsā virtūte amī-
citia nāscitur nec sine virtūte amīcitia esse potest.

Dēnique cēterae rēs, quae petuntur, opportūnae⁵ sunt rēbus singulis⁶:
dīvitiae, ut eīs ūtāris; honōrēs, ut laudēris; salūs, ut dolōre careās et rēbus
10 corporis ūtāris. Amīcitia rēs plūrimās continet; nullō locō exclūdatur⁷; num-
quam intempestīva,⁸ numquam molesta⁹ est. Itaque nōn aquā, nōn igne in
locīs plūribus ūtimur quam amīcitiā; nam amīcitia secundās rēs clāriōrēs
facit et adversās rēs leviōrēs.

Quis est quī velit in omnium rērum abundantīā ita¹⁰ vīvere ut neque dīligat
15 quemquam¹¹ neque ipse ab ūllō dīligātur? Haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta,
in quā nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās,¹² nūlla benevolentia¹³ potest esse; omnia
semper metuuntur, nūllus locus est amīcitiae. Quis enim aut eum dīligat¹⁴
quem metuat aut eum ā quō sē metuī putet? Multī autem sī cecidērunt, ut
saepe fit, tum intellegunt quam inopēs¹⁵ amīcōrum fuerint. Quid vērō stul-
20 tius quam cētera parāre quae parantur pecūniā sed amīcōs nōn parāre, opti-
mam et pulcherrimam quasi supellectilem¹⁶ vītae?

Quisque ipse sē dīligit nōn ut aliam mercēdem¹⁷ ā sē ipse petat sed quod
per sē quisque sibi cārus est. Nisi idem in amīcitiam trānsferētur,¹⁸ vērū

¹⁰ studiōsus, -a, -um, fond of

¹¹ philosophus: Greek philos, fond of, + sophia, wisdom

¹² inventor, -ōris, m., cp. inveniō

¹³ Sōcratēs, -is

¹⁴ tractō (1), handle, investigate, treat

¹⁵ orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise, proceed, originate

¹⁶ quō, adv., where

VOCABULARY: admīror, orior, quō.

6

¹ equidem, adv., indeed

² excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, except

³ potestās, -tātis, f., power

⁴ vicissitudō, -inis, f.

⁵ opportūnus, -a, -um, suitable

⁶ singulus, -a, -um, single, separate

⁷ exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum

⁸ intempestīvus, -a, -um, unseasonable

⁹ molestus, -a, -um, troublesome

¹⁰ abundantia, -ae

¹¹ quemquam, L.A. 4, n. 6

¹² cāritās, -tātis, f., affection

¹³ bene-volentia, -ae, goodwill

¹⁴ dīligat, deliberative subj., would esteem

¹⁵ inops, -opis, bereft of

¹⁶ supellex, -lectilis, f., furniture

¹⁷ mercēs, -ēdis, f., pay, reward

¹⁸ trāns-ferō, transfer, direct

amicus numquam reperiētur. Amīcus enim est is quī est tamquam alter īdem.
 25 Ipse sē dīligit et alterum quaerit cuius animum ita cum suō misceat ut faciat
 ūnum ex duōbus. Quid enim dulcius quam habēre quīcum¹⁹ audeās sīc loquī
 ut tēcum? (Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā*, excerpts from Chs. 5, 6, 15, 21)

7. CICERO ON WAR

Quaedam officia sunt servanda etiam adversus¹ eōs ā quibus iniūriam
 accēpimus. Atque in rē pūblicā maximē cōservanda sunt iūra bellī. Nam
 sunt duo genera dēcertandī²: ūnum per disputātiōnem,³ alterum per vim.
 Illud est proprium⁴ hominis, hoc bēluārum⁵; sed bellum vī gerendum est sī
 5 disputātiōne ūtī nōn licet. Quārē suscipienda quidem bella sunt ut sine in-
 iūriā in pāce vīvāmus; post autem victōriam eī cōservandī sunt quī nōn
 crūdēlēs,⁶ nōn dūrī in bellō fuērunt, ut maiōrēs nostrī Sabīnōs⁷ in cīvitatē
 etiam accēpērunt. At Carthāginem omnīnō sustulērunt; etiam Corinthum
 sustulērunt—quod nōn approbō⁸; sed crēdō eōs hoc fēcisse nē locus ipse ad
 10 bellum faciendum hortārī posset. Meā quidem sententiā,⁹ pāx quae nihil
 īnsidiārum habeat semper quaerenda est. Ac aequitās¹⁰ bellī fētiālī¹¹ iūre po-
 pulī Rōmānī perscripta est.¹² Quārē potest intellegī nūllum bellum esse iūs-
 tum nisi quod aut rēbus repetītīs¹³ gerātur aut ante dēnūtiātum sit.¹⁴

Nūllum bellum dēbet suscipī ā cīvitatē optimā nisi aut prō fidē aut prō
 15 salūte. Illa bella sunt iniūsta quae sine causā sunt suscepta. Nam extrā¹⁵
 ulcīscendī¹⁶ aut prōpulsandōrum¹⁷ hostium causam nūllum bellum cum ae-
 quitāte gerī potest. Noster autem populus sociīs¹⁸ dēfendēdis terrārum¹⁹
 omnium potītus est.²⁰ (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* 1.11.34–36 and *Dē Rē Pūblicā*
 3.23.34–35)

¹⁹ habēre quīcum = habēre eum cum quō
 VOCABULARY: equidem, potestās, trānsferō.

7

¹ adversus, prep. + acc., toward

² dēcertō (1), fight (to a decision)

³ disputātiō, -ōnis, f., discussion

⁴ proprius, -a, -um, characteristic of

⁵ bēlua, -ae, wild beast

⁶ crūdēlis, -e, cruel

⁷ Sabīnī, -ōrum

⁸ approbō (1), approve

⁹ sententiā: abl. here expressing accordance

¹⁰ aequitās, -tātis, f., fairness, justice

¹¹ fētiālis, -e, fetial, referring to a college of priests who
 were concerned with treaties and the ritual of de-
 claring war

¹² per-scribō, write out, place on record

¹³ re-petō, seek again

¹⁴ dēnūtiō (1), declare officially

¹⁵ extrā, prep. + acc., beyond

¹⁶ ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, avenge, punish

¹⁷ prōpulsō (1), repel

¹⁸ socius, -iī, ally

¹⁹ terrārum: depends on potītus est

²⁰ potior, -irī, potītus sum, + gen. (or abl.), get posses-
 sion of

VOCABULARY: dēcertō, proprius, crūdēlis, potior.

8. HANNIBAL; THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal,¹ fīlius Hamilcaris,² Carthāgine nātus est. Odium patris ergā Rōmānōs sīc cōnservāvit ut numquam id dēpōneret.³ Nam post bellum Pūnicum,⁴ cum ex patriā in exsilium expulsus esset, nōn relīquit studium bellī Rōmānīs īnferendī.⁵ Quārē, cum in Syriam⁶ vēnisset, Antiochō⁷ rēgī haec
5 locūtus est ut hunc quoque ad bellum cum Rōmānīs indūcere⁸ posset:

“Mē novem annōs nātō, pater meus Hamilcar, in Hispāniam⁹ imperātor proficiscēns Carthāgine, sacrificium¹⁰ dīs fēcit. Eōdem tempore quaesīvit ā mē vellemne sēcum proficiscī. Cum id libenter audīvissem et ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret mē dūcere, tum ille ‘Faciam,’ inquit, ‘sī mihi fidem
10 quam quaerō dederis.’ Tum mē ad āram¹¹ dūxit et mē iūrāre¹² iussit mē numquam in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs futūrum esse. Id iūs iūrandum¹³ patrī datum ūsque ad hanc aetātem ita cōnservāvī ut nēmō sit quī plūs odiī ergā Rōmānōs habeat.”

Hāc igitur aetāte Hannibal cum patre in Hispāniam profectus est. Post
15 multōs annōs, Hamilcare et Hasdrubale¹⁴ interfectīs, exercitus eī imperium trādīdit. Sīc Hannibal, quīnque et vīgintī annōs nātus, imperātor factus est. Tribus annīs omnēs gentēs Hispāniae superāvit et trēs exercitūs maximōs parāvit. Ex hīs ūnum in Āfricam¹⁵ mīsīt, alterum cum frātre in Hispāniā relīquit, tertium in Italiam sēcum dūxit.

Ad Alpēs¹⁶ vēnit, quās nēmō umquam ante eum cum exercitū trānsierat. Alpicōs¹⁷ cōnantēs prohibēre eum trānsitū occīdit¹⁸; loca patefēcit; itinera mūnīvit¹⁹; effēcit²⁰ ut²¹ elephantus īre posset quā²² anteā²³ ūnus homō vix²⁴ poterat rēpere.²⁵ Sīc in Italiam pervēnit et, Scīpiōne²⁶ superātō, Etrūriam²⁷ petīvit. Hōc in itinere tam gravī morbō²⁸ oculōrum adfectus est²⁹ ut posteā
25 numquam dextrō oculō bene ūterētur.

Multōs ducēs exercitūsque Rōmānōs superāvit; longum est omnia proelia³⁰ ēnumerāre.³¹ Post Cannēensem³² autem pugnam nēmō eī in aciē³³ in

8

¹ Hannibal, -alis, m., illustrious general who led the Carthaginian forces against the Romans in the Second Punic (= Carthaginian) War, 218–202 B.C.

² Hamilcar, -aris, m.

³ dē-pōnō

⁴ Pūnicus, -a, -um

⁵ bellum īn-ferō, make war on

⁶ Syria, -ae

⁷ Antiochus, -ī

⁸ īn-dūcō

⁹ Hispānia, -ae, Spain

¹⁰ sacrificium, -ī

¹¹ āra, -ae, altar

¹² iūrō (1), swear

¹³ iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath

¹⁴ Hasdrubal, -alis, m., next in command after Hamilcar

¹⁵ Āfrica, -ae

¹⁶ Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., the Alps

¹⁷ Alpicī, -ōrum, men of the Alps

¹⁸ occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down

¹⁹ mūnīō (4), fortify, build

²⁰ efficiō, bring it about, cause

²¹ ut . . . posset: noun cl. of result, obj. of effēcit

²² quā, adv., where

²³ anteā, adv., before, formerly

²⁴ vix, adv., scarcely

²⁵ rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum, crawl

²⁶ Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., father of the Scipio mentioned below

²⁷ Etrūria, -ae, district north of Rome, Tuscany

²⁸ morbus, -ī, disease

²⁹ adficiō, afflict

³⁰ proelium, -ī, battle

³¹ ēnumerō (1)

³² Cannēnsis pugna, battle at Cannae, where in 216 B.C. Hannibal cut the Roman army to shreds

³³ aciēs, -ēī, battle line

Italiā restitit.³⁴ Cum autem P. Scīpiō tandem³⁵ in Āfricā invāsisset,³⁶ Hannibal, ad patriam dēfendendam revocātus, Zamae³⁷ victus est. Sīc post tot
30 annōs Rōmānī sē perīculō Pūnicō liberāvērunt. (Nepos, *Hannibal*, excerpts)

9. AUTOBIOGRAPHICAL NOTES BY HORACE

Nūlla fors¹ mihi tē, Maecēnās,² obtulit: optimus Vergilius et post hunc Varius³ dīxērunt quid essem. Ut ad tē vēnī, singultim⁴ pauca locūtus (nam pudor⁵ prohibēbat plūra profārī⁶), ego nōn dīxī mē clārō patre nātum esse sed narrāvī quod eram. Respondēs,⁷ ut tuus mōs est, pauca. Abeō et post
5 nōnum mēsem⁸ mē revocās iubēsque esse in amīcōrum numerō. Hoc magnum esse dūcō, quod⁹ placuī tibi, quī bonōs ā turpibus sēcernis¹⁰ nōn patre clārō sed vītā et pectore pūrō.¹¹

Atquī¹² sī mea nātūra est mendōsa¹³ vitiīs mediocribus ac paucīs sed aliōquī¹⁴ rēcta,¹⁵ sī neque avāritiam neque sordēs¹⁶ quisquam¹⁷ mihi obiciet,¹⁸
10 sī pūrus sum et īnsōns¹⁹ (ut mē laudem!) et vīvō cārus amīcīs, causa fuit pater meus. Hic enim, cum pauper in parvō agrō esset, tamen nōluit mē puerum in lūdum Flāvī²⁰ mittere sed ausus est mē Rōmam ferre ad artēs discendās quās senātōrēs²¹ suōs filiōs docent. Ipse mihi paedagōgus²² incorruptissimus²³ erat. Mē liberum servāvit nōn solum ab omnī factō sed etiam
15 ab turpī opprobriō.²⁴ Quārē laus illī ā mē dēbētur et grātia²⁵ magna.

Sīc Rōmae nūtrītus sum²⁶ atque doctus sum quantum²⁷ irātus Achillēs Graecīs nocuisset. Deinde bonae Athēnae mihi plūs artis adiēcērunt,²⁸ scīlicet²⁹ ut vellem rēctum ā curvō³⁰ distinguere³¹ atque inter silvās³² Acadēmī³³ quaerere vēritātem. Sed dūra tempora mē illō locō grātō ēmōvērunt et ae-

³⁴ resistō, -ere, -stitī, + dat., resist

³⁵ tandem, adv., at last, finally

³⁶ invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, go into, invade

³⁷ Zama, -ae, city south of Carthage in North Africa

VOCABULARY: occidō, efficiō, quā, anteā, vix, proelium, tandem.

9

¹ fors, fortis, f., chance, accident

² Maecēnās, -ātis, m., Augustus' unofficial prime minister and Horace's patron

³ Varius, -iī, an epic poet

⁴ singultim, adv., stammeringly

⁵ pudor, -ōris, m., bashfulness, modesty

⁶ profor (1), speak out

⁷ respondēs, abeō, revocās, iubēs: in vivid narration the pres. tense was often used by the Romans with the force of the perf. This is called the "historical pres."

⁸ mēnsis, -is, m., month

⁹ quod, the fact that

¹⁰ sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, separate

¹¹ pūrus, -a, -um

¹² atquī, conj., and yet

¹³ mendōsus, -a, -um, faulty

¹⁴ aliōquī, adv., otherwise

¹⁵ rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right

¹⁶ sordēs, -ium, f. pl., filth

¹⁷ quisquam, anyone

¹⁸ ob-iciō, cast in one's teeth

¹⁹ īnsōns, gen. -ontis, guiltless

²⁰ Flāvius, -iī, teacher in Horace's small home town of Venusia

²¹ senātor, -ōris, m.

²² paedagōgus, -ī, slave who attended a boy at school

²³ in-corruptus, -a, -um, uncorrupted

²⁴ opprobrium, -iī, reproach

²⁵ grātia, -ae, gratitude

²⁶ nūtriō (4), nourish, bring up

²⁷ quantum, acc. as adv.

²⁸ ad-iciō, add

²⁹ scīlicet (scīre-licet), adv., naturally, of course, clearly, namely

³⁰ curvus, -a, -um, curved, wrong

³¹ distinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, distinguish

³² silva, -ae, wood, forest

³³ Acadēmus, -ī; Plato used to teach in the grove of Academus.

20 stus³⁴ cīvilis³⁵ bellī mē tulit in arma Brūtī.³⁶ Tum post bellum Philippēse³⁷ dīmissus sum³⁸ et audāx³⁹ paupertās mē humilem et pauperem coēgit versūs facere. (Horace, *Saturae* 1.6 and *Epistulae* 2.2; excerpts in prose form)

10. HORACE LONGS FOR THE SIMPLE, PEACEFUL COUNTRY LIFE ON HIS SABINE FARM

Ō rūs, quandō tē aspiciam?¹ Quandō mihi licēbit nunc librīs veterum auctōrum, nunc somnō et ōtiō ūtī sine cūrīs sollicitae² vītae? Ō noctēs cēnaeque deōrum! Sermō³ oritur⁴ nōn dē villīs⁵ et domibus aliēnīs⁶; sed id quaerimus quod magis ad nōs pertinet⁷ et nescīre malum est: utrum dīvitiīs
5 an virtūte hominēs fīant beātī; quid nōs ad amīcitiā trahat, ūsus⁸ an rēctum⁹; et quae sit nātūra bonī¹⁰ et quid sit summum bonum.

Inter haec Cervius¹¹ fābulam narrat. Mūs¹² rūsticus,¹³ impulsus¹⁴ ab urbānō mūre, domō rūsticā ad urbem abiit ut, dūrā vītā relictā, in rēbus iūcundīs cum illō vīveret beātus. Mox, autem, multa perīcula urbāna expertus,
10 rūsticus “Haec vīta,” inquit, “nōn est mihi necessāria.¹⁵ Valē; mihi silva cavusque¹⁶ tūtus¹⁷ ab īnsidiīs placēbit.” (Horace, *Saturae* 2.6, excerpts in prose form)

11. WHY NO LETTERS?

C.¹ Plīnius Fabiō² Suō S.³

Mihi nūllās epistulās⁴ mittis. “Nihil est,” inquis, “quod scrībam.” At hoc ipsum scrībe: nihil esse quod scrībās; vel⁵ illa verba sōla ā quibus maiōrēs nostrī incipere solēbant: “Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō.” Hoc mihi sufficit⁶; est enim maximum. Mē lūdere⁷ putās? Sēriō⁸ petō. Fac ut sciam quid agās.
5 Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 1.11)

³⁴ aestus, -ūs, tide

³⁵ cīvilis, -e; after the assassination of Julius Caesar on the Ides of March, 44 B.C., civil war ensued between the Caesarians, led by Antony and Octavian, and the “Republicans,” led by Brutus and Cassius.

³⁶ Brūtus, -ī

³⁷ Philippēsis, -e, at Philippi, where in 42 B.C. Brutus was defeated

³⁸ dī-mittō, discharge

³⁹ audāx, -ācis, daring, bold

VOCABULARY: sēcernō, quisquam, grātia, silva, audāx.

10

¹ aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look at, see

² sollicitus, -a, -um, troubled, anxious

³ sermō, -ōnis, m., conversation

⁴ orior, L.A. 5 n. 15

⁵ villa, -ae

⁶ aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another

⁷ per-tineō, pertain

⁸ ūsus, -ūs, advantage

⁹ rēctum, -ī, the right

¹⁰ bonum, -ī, the good

¹¹ Cervius, -īī, a rustic friend

¹² mūs, mūrīs, mlf., mouse

¹³ rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, country

¹⁴ im-pellō, urge, persuade

¹⁵ necessārius, -a, -um

¹⁶ cavus, -ī, hole

¹⁷ tūtus, -a, -um, safe

VOCABULARY: aspiciō, orior, tūtus.

11

¹ C. = Gāius

² Fabius, -īī

³ S. = salūtem (dīcit)

⁴ epistula, -ae, letter

⁵ vel, or, an optional alternative; aut means or any option

⁶ sufficiō, suffice, be sufficient

⁷ lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play, jest

⁸ sēriō, adv., seriously

VOCABULARY: vel, sufficiō.

12. WHAT PLINY THINKS OF THE RACES

C. Plinius Calvisiō¹ Suō S.

Hoc omne tempus inter tabellās² ac libellōs iūcundissimā quiēte³ cō-
sūmpsī. “Quemadmodum,⁴” inquis, “in urbe potuisti?” Circēnsēs⁵ erant quō
genere spectāculī⁶ nē levissimē quidem teneor. Nihil novum, nihil varium,⁷
nihil quod semel spectāvisse nōn sufficiat. Quārē mīror tot mīlia virōrum
5 tam puerīliter⁸ identidem⁹ cupere currentēs equōs vidēre. Valē. (Pliny, *Epis-
tulae* 9.6)

13. PLINY ENDOWS A SCHOOL

Nūper cum Cōmī¹ fuī, vēnit ad mē salūtandum² fīlius amīcī cuiusdam.
Huic ego “Studēs?” inquam. Respondit: “Etiam.” “Ubi?” “Mediolānī.³”
“Cūr nōn hīc?” Et pater eius, quī ipse puerum ad mē addūxerat, respondit:
“Quod nūllōs magistrōs hīc habēmus.” Huic aliīsque patribus quī audiēbant
5 ego: “Quārē nūllōs?” inquam. “Nam ubi iūcundius līberī⁴ vestrī discere pos-
sunt quam hīc in urbe vestrā et sub oculīs patrum? Atque ego, quī nōndum⁵
līberōs habeō, prō rē pūblicā nostrā quasi prō parente tertiam partem eius
pecūniae dabō quam cōferre vōbīs placēbit. Nihil enim melius praestāre
līberīs vestrīs, nihil grātius patriae potestis.” (Pliny, *Epistulae* 4.13)

14. LARGE GIFTS—YES, BUT ONLY BAIT

“Mūnera¹ magna tamen mīsīt.” Sed mīsīt in hāmō²;
et piscātōrem³ piscis⁴ amāre potest? (Martial 6.63.5–6)

15. THE LORD’S PRAYER

Et cum ōrātis nōn eritis sīcut¹ hypocritae,² quī amant in synagōgīs³ et in
angulīs⁴ plateārum⁵ stantēs ōrāre ut videantur ab hominibus: āmēn⁶ dīcō
vōbīs, recēpērunt mercēdem⁷ suam. Tū autem cum ōrābis, intrā⁸ in cubicu-

12

¹ Calvisius, -ī² tabella, -ae, writing pad³ quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, quiet⁴ quem-ad-modum, *adv.*, how⁵ Circēnsēs (lūdī), games, races in the Circus Maximus⁶ spectāculum, -ī⁷ varius, -a, -um, different⁸ puerīliter, *adv.*, based on puer⁹ identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly

VOCABULARY: quiēs, quemadmodum, varius.

13

¹ Cōmum, -ī, Como, Pliny’s birthplace in N. Italy² salūtō (1), greet³ Mediolānum, -ī, Milan⁴ līberī, -ōrum, children⁵ nōndum, *adv.*, not yet

VOCABULARY: līberī, nōndum.

14

METER: elegiac couplet.

¹ mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, gift² hāmus, -ī, hook³ piscātor, -ōris, *m.*, fisherman⁴ piscis, -is, *m.*, fish

VOCABULARY: mūnus.

15

¹ sīcut, *adv. and conj.*, just as² hypocrita, -ae, *m.*, hypocrite³ synagōga, -ae, synagogue⁴ angulus, -ī, corner⁵ platea, -ae, street⁶ āmēn, *adv.*, truly, verily⁷ mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, wages, reward⁸ intrō (1), enter

lum⁹ tuum et, clausō¹⁰ ōstiō¹¹ tuō, ōrā Patrem tuum in absconditō¹²; et Pater
 5 tuus quī videt in absconditō reddet¹³ tibi. . . . Sīc ergō¹⁴ vōs ōrābitis: Pater
 noster quī es in caelīs, sānctificetur¹⁵ nōmen tuum; adveniat rēgnum¹⁶ tuum;
 fīat voluntās¹⁷ tua sicut in caelō et¹⁸ in terrā. Pānem¹⁹ nostrum supersubstan-
 tiālem²⁰ dā nōbīs hodiē, et dimitte²¹ nōbīs dēbita²² nostra, sicut et nōs dimit-
 timus dēbitōribus²³ nostrīs; et nē indūcās nōs in temptātiōnem²⁴: sed liberā
 10 nōs ā malō. (*Vulgate, Matthew 6.5–6, 9–13*)

16. CAEDMON'S ANGLO-SAXON VERSES AND THE DIFFICULTIES OF TRANSLATION

Cum Caedmon¹ corpus somnō dedisset, angelus² Dominī eī dormienti
 “Caedmon,” inquit, “cantā³ mihi prīncipium creatūrārum.⁴” Et statim⁵ coe-
 pit cantāre in laudem Deī creatōris⁶ versūs quōs numquam audīverat, quō-
 rum hic est sēnsus: “Nunc laudāre dēbēmus auctōrem rēgni⁷ caelestis,⁸ po-
 5 testātem⁹ creatōris et cōnsilium illius, facta Patris glōriae, quī, omnipotēns¹⁰
 custōs¹¹ hūmānī generis, filiīs hominum caelum et terram creāvit.” Hic est
 sēnsus, nōn autem ōrdō¹² ipse verbōrum quae dormiēns ille cantāvit; neque
 enim possunt carmina, quamvīs¹³ optimē composita,¹⁴ ex aliā in aliam lin-
 guam ad verbum¹⁵ sine dētrīmentō¹⁶ suī decōris¹⁷ ac dignitātis trānsferrī.¹⁸
 (*Bede, Historia Ecclesiastica Gentis Anglōrum 4.24; 8th cen.*)

17. WHO WILL PUT THE BELL ON THE CAT'S NECK?

Mūrēs¹ iniērunt cōnsilium quō modō sē ā cattō² dēfendere possent et
 quaedam sapientior quam cēterae ait: “Ligētur³ campāna⁴ in collō⁵ cattī. Sīc
 poterimus eum eiusque īnsidiās vītāre.” Placuit omnibus hoc cōnsilium, sed

⁹ *cubiculum*, -ī, bedroom, room

¹⁰ *claudō*, -ere, *clausī*, *clausum*, close

¹¹ *ōstium*, -ī, door

¹² *in absconditō*, in (a) secret (place)

¹³ *red-dō*, -dere, -*didī*, -*ditum*, give back, answer, re-
quite

¹⁴ *ergō*, *adv.*, therefore

¹⁵ *sānctificō* (1), treat as holy

¹⁶ *rēgnum*, -ī, kingdom

¹⁷ *voluntās*, -*tātis*, *f.*, will, wish

¹⁸ *et*, also

¹⁹ *pānis*, -*is*, *m.*, bread

²⁰ *supersubstantiālis*, -*e*, necessary to the support of
life

²¹ *dī-mittō*, send away, dismiss

²² *dēbitum*, -ī, that which is owing, debt (*figura-*
tively) = sin

²³ *dēbitor*, -*ōris*, *m.*, one who owes something, one who
has not yet fulfilled his duty

²⁴ *temptātiō*, -*ōnis*, *f.*

VOCABULARY: *sicut*, *claudō*, *reddō*, *ergō*, *rēgnum*,
voluntās.

16

¹ *Caedmon*, *Anglo-Saxon poet of the 7th cen.*

² *angelus*, -ī, angel

³ *cantō* (1), sing

⁴ *creātūra*, -*ae*, creature

⁵ *statim*, *adv.*, immediately

⁶ *creātor*, -*ōris*, *m.*

⁷ *rēgnum*, -ī, kingdom

⁸ *caelestis*, -*e*, *adj. of caelum*

⁹ *potestās*, -*tātis*, *f.*, power

¹⁰ *omni-potēns*

¹¹ *custōs*, -*tōdis*, *m.*, guardian

¹² *ōrdō*, -*inis*, *m.*, order

¹³ *quamvīs*, *adv. and conj.*, although

¹⁴ *com-pōnō*, put together, compose

¹⁵ *ad verbum*, to a word, literally

¹⁶ *dētrīmentum*, -ī, loss

¹⁷ *decor*, -*ōris*, *m.*, beauty

¹⁸ *trāns-ferō*

VOCABULARY: *statim*, *rēgnum*, *potestās*, *custōs*,
ōrdō, *compōnō*.

17

¹ *mūs*, *mūris*, *m.lf.*, mouse

² *cattus*, -ī (*late Lat. for fēles*, -*is*), cat

³ *ligō* (1), bind

⁴ *campāna*, -*ae* (*late Lat. for tintinnābulum*), bell

⁵ *collum*, -ī, neck

5 alia mūs “Quis igitur,” inquit, “est inter nōs tam audāx⁶ ut campānam in collō cattī ligāre audeat?” Respondit ūna mūs: “Certē nōn ego.” Respondit alia: “Certē nōn ego audeō prō tōtō mundō cattō ipsī appropinquāre.”⁷ Et idem cēterae dīxērunt.

Sīc saepe hominēs, cum quendam āmovendum esse arbitrantur et contrā eum insurgere⁸ volunt, inter sē dīcunt: “Quis appōnet sē contrā eum? Quis accūsābit⁹ eum?” Tum omnēs, sibi timentēs, dīcunt: “Nōn ego certē! Nec ego!” Sīc illum vīvere patiuntur. (**Odo de Cerinton**, *Narrātiōnēs*, 12th cen.)

18. THE DEVIL AND A THIRTEENTH-CENTURY SCHOOLBOY

In illā ecclēsiā¹ erat scholāris² parvus. Cum hic diē quādam³ versūs compōnere ex eā māteriā⁴ ā magistrō datā nōn posset et trīstis sedēret, diabolus⁵ in fōrmā hominis vēnit. Cum dīxisset: “Quid est, puer? Cūr sīc trīstis sedēs?” respondit puer: “Magistrum meum timeō quod versūs compōnere nōn possum dē themate⁶ quod ab eō recēpī.” Et ille: “Vīsne mihi servīre sī ego versūs tibi compōnam?” Puer, nōn intellegēs quod⁷ ille esset diabolus, respondit: “Etiam, domine, parātus sum facere quidquid iusseris—dummodo versūs habeam et verbera⁸ vītem.” Tum, versibus statim⁹ dictātis,¹⁰ diabolus abiit. Cum puer autem hōs versūs magistrō suō dedisset, hic, excellentiam¹¹ versuum mīrātus, timuit, dūcēns scientiam in illīs dīvīnam,¹² nōn hūmānam. Et ait: “Dīc mihi, quis tibi hōs versūs dictāvit?” Prīmum puer respondit: “Ego, magister!” Magistrō autem nōn crēdente et verbum interrogātiōnis¹³ saepius repetente, puer omnia tandem¹⁴ cōfessus est.¹⁵ Tum magister “Fīlī,” inquit, “ille versificātor¹⁶ fuit diabolus. Cārissime, semper illum sēductōrem¹⁷ et eius opera cavē.¹⁸” Et puer diabolum eiusque opera relīquit. (**Caesar of Heisterbach**, *Mīrācula* 2.14; 13th cen.)

⁶ audāx, -ācis, daring, bold

⁷ appropinquō (1), + dat., approach

⁸ insurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up

⁹ accūsō (1)

VOCABULARY: audāx, appropinquō.

18

¹ ecclēsia, -ae, church

² scholāris, -is, m., scholar

³ diē quādam: diēs is sometimes f., especially when referring to a specific day.

⁴ māteria, -ae, material

⁵ diabolus, -ī, devil

⁶ thema, -atis, n., theme, subject

⁷ quod, that, introducing an ind. state., common in Medieval Lat.

⁸ verbera, -um, n., blows, a beating

⁹ statim, adv., immediately

¹⁰ dictō (1), dictate

¹¹ excellentia, -ae

¹² dīvīnus, -a, -um; dīvīnam is pred. acc.

¹³ interrogātiō, -ōnis, f.

¹⁴ tandem, adv., at last

¹⁵ cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum

¹⁶ versificātor, -ōris, m., versifier

¹⁷ sēductor, -ōris, m., seducer

¹⁸ caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, beware, avoid

VOCABULARY: statim, tandem, cōnfiteor, caveō.

古代文选

如果你已经看过“古文选编”中的所有段落,并且希望能有一些未经改动的古典拉丁语来一试身手,那么,“古代文选”就是为你准备的。

这些段落都是纯正的拉丁语,除一些省略(用三点标出)之外没有作任何改动。当然,对于这种纯文学材料,不得不给出大量注释,但它们大都集中在词汇而不是其他方面。和“古文选编”一样,在正文词汇表中没有介绍的词在前一两次出现时都会给出注释,其中大多数词也包含在书末的拉英词汇表中,以方便查阅。新的语法现象都作了处理,或是在注释中给出简短说明,或是有附录可作参照。

1. A DEDICATION

Cui dōnō¹ lepidum² novum libellum
āridō³ modo⁴ pūmice⁵ expolītum^{6?}
Cornēlī,⁷ tibi, namque⁸ tū solēbās
meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās,⁹
5 iam tum cum ausus es ūnus Ītalōrum¹⁰
omne aevum¹¹ tribus explicāre¹² chartīs,¹³

1

METER: Phalaecean, or hendecasyllabic.

¹ dōnō (1), (=dō), present, dedicate

² lepidus, -a, -um, pleasant, neat

³ āridus, -a, -um, dry, arid

⁴ modo, adv., just now

⁵ pūmex, -icis, m., pumice stone. *The ends of a volume were smoothed with pumice.*

⁶ expoliō (4), smooth, polish

⁷ Cornelius Nepos, biographer and historian; see

Introd.

⁸ strong form of nam = for (indeed, surely)

⁹ nūgae, -ārum, trifles, nonsense

¹⁰ Ītalī, -ōrum, the Italians; *initial i- long here for meter. This work, now lost, was apparently less annalistic than most histories by Romans.*

¹¹ aevum, -ī, time

¹² explicō (1), unfold, explain

¹³ charta, -ae, leaf of (papyrus) paper; here = volume

doctīs—Iuppiter!—et labōriōsīs.¹⁴
 Quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī¹⁵
 quālecumque,¹⁵ quod, Ō patrōna¹⁶ virgō,
 10 plūs ūnō maneat¹⁷ perenne¹⁸ saeclō.¹⁹
 (Catullus 1)

2. HOW MANY KISSES¹

Quaeris quot mihi bāsiātiōnēs²
 tuae, Lesbia, sint satis superque.³
 Quam magnus numerus Libyssae⁴ harēnae⁵
 laserpīciferis⁶ iacet Cyrēnis,⁷
 . . .
 5 aut quam sīdera multa, cum tacet nox,
 fūrtīvōs⁸ hominum vident amōrēs,
 tam tē⁹ bāsia multa bāsiāre¹⁰
 vēsānō¹¹ satis et super Catullō est.
 (Catullus 7.1–4, 7–10)

3. DEATH OF A PET SPARROW

Lūgēte,¹ Ō Venerēs² Cupīdinēsque³
 et quantum est hominum⁴ venustiōrum⁵!
 Passer⁶ mortuus est meae puellae,
 passer, dēliciae⁷ meae puellae,
 5 quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat.
 Nam mellītus⁸ erat, suamque nōrat⁹
 ipsam¹⁰ tam bene quam puella mātrem;
 nec sēsē¹¹ ā gremiō¹² illius movēbat,

¹⁴ labōriōsus, -a, -um, laborious

¹⁵ libellī, *gen. of whole; lit. whatever kind of book this is of whatsoever sort; i.e., this book such as it is. quālescumque, quālecumque, of whatever sort or kind*

¹⁶ patrōna, -ae, protectress; protectress maiden (virgō) = Muse

¹⁷ let or may it remain

¹⁸ perennis, -e, lasting, perennial

¹⁹ saeculum, *syncopated form of saeculum, -ī, age, century*

2

METER: Phalaecean.

¹ This poem is obviously a companion piece to Catullus 5 (see ch. 31).

² bāsiātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, kiss

³ and to spare, and more

⁴ Libyssa, -a, -um, Libyan

⁵ harēna, -ae, sand (*cp.* arena)

⁶ laserpīcifer, -a, -um, bearing laserpicium, a medicinal plant

⁷ Cyrēnae, -ārum, Cyrene, city of North Africa; short *y* here for meter.

⁸ fūrtīvus, -a, -um, stealthy, furtive (fūr, thief)

⁹ subject of bāsiāre

¹⁰ bāsiō (1), to kiss kisses = to give kisses; bāsiāre is subject of est satis.

¹¹ vēsānus, -a, -um, mad, insane

3

METER: Phalaecean.

¹ lūgēō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum, mourn, grieve

² Venus, -eris, *f.*, Venus; here *pl.* as Cupīdinēs is.

³ Cupīdō, -inis, *m.*, Cupid, often in the *pl.* as is Greek Eros and as we see in art.

⁴ *gen. of whole with quantum:* how much of people there is = all the people there are

⁵ venustus, -a, -um, charming, graceful; venustiōrum = more charming (*than ordinary men*)

⁶ passer, -eris, *m.*, sparrow (*a bird which, incidentally, was sacred to Venus*)

⁷ dēliciae, -ārum, delight, darling, pet

⁸ mellītus, -a, -um, sweet as honey

⁹ contracted form = nōverat (*from nōscō*)

¹⁰ suam . . . ipsam, its very own (mistress)

¹¹ sēsē = sē (*acc.*)

¹² gremium, -ī, lap

sed circumsiliēns¹³ modo hūc¹⁴ modo illūc¹⁵
 10 ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.¹⁶
 Quī¹⁷ nunc it per iter tenebricōsum¹⁸
 illūc unde negant redīre quemquam.¹⁹
 At vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae²⁰
 Orcī,²¹ quae omnia bella dēvorātis;²²
 15 tam bellum mihi²³ passerem abstulistis.²⁴
 Ō factum male! Iō²⁵ miselle²⁶ passer!
 Tuā nunc operā²⁷ meae puellae
 flendō²⁸ turgidulī²⁹ rubent³⁰ ocellī.³¹
 (Catullus 3)

4. FRĀTER AVĒ, ATQUE VALĒ'

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora² vectus³
 adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad īferiās,⁴
 ut tē postrēmō⁵ dōnārem⁶ mūnere⁷ mortis
 et mūtā⁸ nēquīquam⁹ adloquerer¹⁰ cinerem,¹¹
 5 quandoquidem¹² fortūna mihi¹³ tētē¹⁴ abstulit¹⁵ ipsum,
 heu miser indignē¹⁶ frāter adempte¹⁷ mihi.
 Nunc tamen intereā¹⁸ haec,¹⁹ prīscō²⁰ quae mōre parentum
 trādita sunt trīstī mūnere ad īferiās,

¹³ circumsiliō (4), jump around

¹⁴ hūc, *adv.*, hither, to this place

¹⁵ illūc, *adv.*, thither, to that place

¹⁶ pīpiō (1), chirp

¹⁷ quī = *et hic*, *conjunctive use of the rel. at the beginning of a sent.*

¹⁸ tenebricōsus, -a, -um, dark, gloomy

¹⁹ *L.A. 4 n. 6.*

²⁰ tenebrae, -ārum, darkness

²¹ Orcus, -ī, Orcus, the underworld

²² dēvorō (1), devour, consume

²³ *dative of separation*

²⁴ auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, take away

²⁵ iō, *exclamation of pain, oh!, or of joy, hurrah!*

²⁶ misellus, -a, -um, *diminutive of miser*, wretched, poor, unhappy; *a colloquial word*

²⁷ tuā operā, thanks to you: opera, -ae, work, pains, effort

²⁸ fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep

²⁹ turgidulus, -a, -um, (somewhat) swollen

³⁰ rubeō, -ēre, be red

³¹ ocellus, -ī, *diminutive of oculus*

4

METER: elegiac couplet.

¹ *Catullus journeyed to Bithynia on the staff of Memmius, the governor, apparently for two prime reasons. He undoubtedly wanted to get away from*

Rome in order to regain his equilibrium and fortitude after his final break with the notorious Lesbia. The present poem shows that he also deeply desired to carry out the final funeral rites for his dearly beloved brother, who had died in a foreign land far from his loved ones.

² aequor, -oris, *n.*, flat surface, the sea

³ vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry

⁴ īferiae, -ārum, offerings in honor of the dead

⁵ postrēmus, -a, -um, last

⁶ dōnō (1), present you with; *cp. the idiom in L.I. 1 line 1.*

⁷ mūnus, -eris, *n.*, service, gift

⁸ mūtus, -a, -um, mute, silent

⁹ nequīquam, *adv.*, in vain

¹⁰ ad-loquor, address

¹¹ cinis, -eris, *m. but occasionally f. as here*, ashes (*cp. incinerator*)

¹² quandoquidem, *conj.*, since

¹³ *dat. of separation. Final -ī is long here because of meter.*

¹⁴ = tē

¹⁵ *L.I. 3 n. 24*

¹⁶ indignē, *adv.*, undeservedly

¹⁷ adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, take away; adēppte, *voc. agreeing with frāter*

¹⁸ intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile

¹⁹ *n. acc. pl., obj. of accipe*

²⁰ prīscus, -a, -um, ancient

accipe fraternō²¹ multum²² mānantia²³ flētū,²⁴
 10 atque in perpetuum,²⁵ frāter, avē²⁶ atque valē.
 (Catullus 101)

5. VITRIOLIC DENUNCIATION¹ OF THE LEADER OF A CONSPIRACY AGAINST THE ROMAN STATE

Quō ūsque² tandem abūtēre,³ Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? Quam diū etiam
 furor⁴ iste tuus nōs ēlūdet⁵? Quem ad finem sēsē⁶ effrēnāta⁷ iactābit⁸ au-
 dācia⁹? Nihilne¹⁰ tē nocturnum¹¹ praesidium¹² Palātī,¹³ nihil urbis vigiliae,¹⁴
 nihil timor populī, nihil concursus¹⁵ bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissi-
 5 mus¹⁶ habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra¹⁷ vultūque mōvērunt? Patēre
 tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? Cōnstrictam¹⁸ iam omnium hōrum scientiā tenērī
 coniūrātiōnem¹⁹ tuam nōn vidēs? Quid proximā,²⁰ quid superiōre²¹ nocte ēge-
 rīs, ubi fuerīs, quōs convocāverīs,²² quid cōsilī cēperīs, quem nostrum²³ ig-
 nōrāre²⁴ arbitrāris?
 10 Ō tempora²⁵! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōsul videt; hic tamen
 vīvit. Vīvit? Immō²⁶ vērō²⁷ etiam in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōsilī parti-
 ceps,²⁸ notat²⁹ et dēsīgnat³⁰ oculīs ad caedem³¹ ūnum quemque nostrum.
 Nōs, autem, fortēs virī, satis facere rei pūblicae vidēmur sī istūs furōrem ac
 tēla³² vītāmus. Ad mortem tē, Catilīna, dūcī iussū³³ cōsulis iam prīdem³⁴
 15 oportēbat, in tē cōferrī pestem³⁵ quam tū in nōs māchināris³⁶ . . .
 Habēmus senātūs cōsultum³⁷ in tē, Catilīna, vehemēns³⁸ et grave. Nōn

²¹ frāternus, -a, -um, fraternal, of a brother, a brother's

²² multum, adv. with mānantia

²³ mānō (1), flow, drip with; mānantia modifies haec in line 7.

²⁴ flētus, -ūs, weeping, tears

²⁵ in perpetuum, forever

²⁶ avē = salvē

5

¹ For the general situation of this speech see the introductory note to the reading passage in Ch. 30. Since Cicero as yet lacked evidence that would stand in court, this speech is a magnificent example of bluff; but it worked to the extent of forcing Catiline (though not the other leaders of the conspiracy) to leave Rome for his army encamped at Fiesole near Florence.

² ūsque, adv., how far

³ = abūtēris; ab-ūtor + abl., abuse

⁴ furor, -ōris, m., madness

⁵ ēlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, mock, elude

⁶ quem ad finem = ad quem finem; sēsē = sē

⁷ effrēnātus, -a, -um, unbridled; cp. frēnum, bridle, and the frenum of the upper lip

⁸ iactō (1), frequentative form of iaciō, toss about, vaunt

⁹ audācia, -ae, boldness, audacity

¹⁰ nihil = strong nōn; not at all

¹¹ nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. of nox

¹² praesidium, -iī, guard

¹³ Palātium, -ī, the Palatine hill. From the sumptuous dwellings on the Palatine comes our word "palace."

¹⁴ vigilia, -ae, watch; pl., watchmen, sentinels

¹⁵ concursus, -ūs, gathering

¹⁶ mūnītus, -a, -um, fortified

¹⁷ here = expression

¹⁸ cōnstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictum, bind, curb

¹⁹ coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy (a swearing together)

²⁰ proximus, -a, -um, nearest, last (sc. nocte)

²¹ superiōre (sc. nocte) = the night before

²² con-vocō

²³ gen. of nōs (Ch. 11)

²⁴ ignōrō (1), be ignorant, not know

²⁵ The acc. was used in exclamatory expressions.

²⁶ immō, adv., on the contrary; nay more

²⁷ vērō, adv., in fact

²⁸ particeps, -cipis, m., participant

²⁹ notō (1), mark out, note

³⁰ dēsīgnō (1), mark out, designate, choose

³¹ caedēs, -is, f., slaughter

³² tēlum, -ī, weapon

³³ iussū, chiefly in abl., by or at the command of

³⁴ iam prīdem, adv., long ago

³⁵ pestis, -is, f., plague, destruction

³⁶ māchinor (1), contrive (cp. "machine"); in nōs, in + acc. sometimes means against (contrā)

³⁷ cōsultum, -ī, decree

³⁸ vehemēns, gen. -entis, emphatic, vehement

deest³⁹ reī pūblicaē cōnsilium, neque auctōritās⁴⁰ huius ōrdinis⁴¹; nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē,⁴² cōsulēs dēsumus . . . At nōs vīcēsimum⁴³ iam diem patimur hebēscere⁴⁴ aciem⁴⁵ hōrum auctōritātis. Habēmus enim eius modī⁴⁶ senātūs
20 cōnsultum, . . . quō ex⁴⁷ senātūs cōnsultō cōnfestim⁴⁸ tē interfectum esse, Catilīna, convēnit.⁴⁹ Vīvis, et vīvis nōn ad dēpōnendam,⁵⁰ sed ad cōnfirmandam⁵¹ audāciam. Cupiō, patrēs cōnscrīptī,⁵² mē esse clēmētem⁵³; cupiō in tantīs reī pūblicaē periculīs mē nōn dissolūtum⁵⁴ vidērī, sed iam mē ipse inertiae⁵⁵ nēquitiaeque⁵⁶ condemnō.⁵⁷

25 Castra⁵⁸ sunt in Italiā contrā populum Rōmānum in Etrūriae⁵⁹ faucibus⁶⁰ collocāta⁶¹; crēscit in diēs singulōs⁶² hostium numerus; eōrum autem castrōrum imperātōrem ducemque hostium intrā⁶³ moenia atque adeō⁶⁴ in senātū vidēmus, intestīnam⁶⁵ aliquam cotīdiē perniciem⁶⁶ reī pūblicaē mōlientem⁶⁷ . . .

30 Quae⁶⁸ cum ita sint, Catilīna, perge⁶⁹ quō⁷⁰ coepistī. Ēgredere⁷¹ aliquandō⁷² ex urbe; patent portae; proficīscere. Nimium diū tē imperātōrem tua illa Mānliāna⁷³ castra dēsīderant. Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnēs tuōs; sī minus,⁷⁴ quam plūrimōs; pūrgā⁷⁵ urbem. Magnō mē metū līberāveris dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus⁷⁶ intersit.⁷⁷ Nōbīscum versārī⁷⁸ iam diūtius
35 nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn patiar, nōn sinam⁷⁹ . . .

Quamquam⁸⁰ nōn nullī⁸¹ sunt in hōc ōrdine quī aut ea quae imminent⁸² nōn videant, aut ea quae vident dissimulent⁸³; quī⁸⁴ spem Catilīnae mollibus⁸⁵ sententiīs aluērunt coniūrātiōnemque nāscētem nōn crēdendō corrō-

³⁹ *dē + sum*, be wanting, fail + *dat.*

⁴⁰ *auctōritās, -tātis, f.*, authority

⁴¹ *ōrdō, -dinis, m.*, class, order

⁴² *adv.*, openly

⁴³ *vīcēsimus, -a, -um*, twentieth

⁴⁴ *hebēscō, -ere*, grow dull

⁴⁵ *aciēs, -ēī*, sharp edge

⁴⁶ *eius modī*, of this sort; *modifies cōnsultum*

⁴⁷ *here* = in accordance with; *with quō . . . cōnsultō*

⁴⁸ *cōnfestim, adv.*, at once

⁴⁹ *convenit, -īre, -vēnit, impers.*, it is fitting

⁵⁰ *dē + pōnō*, put aside

⁵¹ *cōnfirmō* (1), strengthen

⁵² *patrēs cōnscrīptī*, senators

⁵³ *clēmēns, gen. -entis*, merciful, gentle

⁵⁴ *dissolūtus, -a, -um*, lax

⁵⁵ *inertia, -ae*, inactivity; *example of gen. of thing charged*: "I condemn myself on a charge of inactivity, find myself guilty of inactivity."

⁵⁶ *nēquitia, -ae*, worthlessness; *gen. of charge*

⁵⁷ *condemnō* (1), find guilty, condemn

⁵⁸ *castra, -ōrum*, a camp (*n. pl. form but sg. meaning*)

⁵⁹ *Etrūria, -ae*, Etruria

⁶⁰ *faucēs, -ium, f. pl.*, jaws, narrow pass

⁶¹ *collocō* (1), to position

⁶² *in diēs singulōs*, from day to day

⁶³ *intrā, prep. + acc.*, within

⁶⁴ *adeō, adv.*, so even

⁶⁵ *intestīnus, -a, -um*, internal

⁶⁶ *perniciēs, -ēī*, slaughter, destruction

⁶⁷ *mōlientem modifies ducem and has perniciem as its obj.*

⁶⁸ = *et haec, conjunctive use of the rel. pron.*

⁶⁹ *pergō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum*, proceed, continue

⁷⁰ *quō, adv.*, where. *A few lines before these words Cicero said: cōnfir mastī* (you asserted) *tē ipsum iam esse exitūrum* (from *ex-eō*).

⁷¹ *ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum*, go out, depart. *What is the form of ēgredere?*

⁷² *quandō, adv.*, at some time, at last

⁷³ *Manlius was in charge of Catiline's army at Fiesole.*

⁷⁴ *minus = nōn omnēs*

⁷⁵ *pūrgō* (1), cleanse

⁷⁶ *mūrus, -ī*, wall

⁷⁷ *inter-sum*

⁷⁸ *versor* (1), dwell, remain

⁷⁹ *sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm*, allow

⁸⁰ *quamquam, conj.*, and yet

⁸¹ *nōn nullī*, not none = some, several

⁸² *immineō, -ēre*, overhang, threaten

⁸³ *dissimulō* (1), conceal

⁸⁴ *quī = et hī*

⁸⁵ *mollis, -e*, soft, weak

borāvērunt⁸⁶; quōrum⁸⁷ auctōritātem secūti,⁸⁸ multī nōn solum improbī,⁸⁹
 40 vērūm⁹⁰ etiam imperītī,⁹¹ sī in hunc animadvertissem,⁹² crūdēliter⁹³ et rēgiē⁹⁴
 factum esse⁹⁵ dīcerent. Nunc intellegō, sī iste, quō intendit,⁹⁶ in Mānliāna
 castra pervēnerit,⁹⁷ nēminem tam stultum fore⁹⁸ quī nōn videat coniūrātiō-
 nem esse factam, nēminem tam improbum quī nōn fateātur.

Hōc autem ūnō interfectō, intellegō hanc reī pūblicae pestem paulīspēr⁹⁹
 45 reprimī,¹⁰⁰ nōn in perpetuum¹⁰¹ comprimī¹⁰² posse. Quod sī¹⁰³ sē ēiēcerit,¹⁰⁴
 sēcūmque suōs¹⁰⁵ ēdūxerit, et eōdem¹⁰⁶ cēterōs undique¹⁰⁷ collēctōs¹⁰⁸ nau-
 fragōs¹⁰⁹ adgregārit,¹¹⁰ exstinguētur¹¹¹ atque dēlēbitur nōn modo haec tam
 adulta¹¹² reī pūblicae pestis, vērūm etiam stirps¹¹³ ac sēmen¹¹⁴ malōrum om-
 nium . . . Quod sī¹⁰³ ex tantō latrōciniō¹¹⁵ iste ūnus tollētur, vidēbimur for-
 50 tasse ad¹¹⁶ breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse relevātī,¹¹⁷ perīculum
 autem residēbit¹¹⁸ . . .

Quārē sēcēdant¹¹⁹ improbī; sēcernant¹²⁰ sē ā bonīs; ūnum in locum con-
 gregentur¹²¹; mūrō dēnique (id quod saepe iam dīxī) sēcernantur ā nōbīs;
 dēsinant¹²² īnsidiārī¹²³ domī suae¹²⁴ cōnsulī, circumstāre¹²⁵ tribūnal¹²⁶ prae-
 55 tōris urbānī,¹²⁷ obsidēre¹²⁸ cum gladiīs cūriam,¹²⁹ malleolōs¹³⁰ et facēs¹³¹ ad
 īnflammandam¹³² urbem comparāre¹³³; sit dēnique īnscrip̄tum¹³⁴ in fronte¹³⁵
 ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat. Polliceor¹³⁶ hoc vōbīs, patrēs
 cōnscrīptī,¹³⁷ tantam in nōbīs cōnsulibus fore⁹⁸ dīligentiam,¹³⁷ tantam in vōbīs
 auctōritātem,⁴⁰ tantam in equitibus¹³⁸ Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in omnibus

⁸⁶ **corrōborō** (1), strengthen; *cp. corroborate*

⁸⁷ **quōrum** = et eōrum

⁸⁸ **secūti**, *participle going with multī*

⁸⁹ **improbus**, -a, -um, wicked, depraved

⁹⁰ **vērūm etiam** = sed etiam

⁹¹ **imperītus**, -a, -um, inexperienced

⁹² **animadvertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versum, notice; *with in + acc.* = inflict punishment on. *This is a mixed condition of what general category?*

⁹³ **crūdēliter**, *adv. of crūdēlis*

⁹⁴ **rēgiē**, *adv.*, in the fashion of a king, tyrannically

⁹⁵ *Sc. id as subject.*

⁹⁶ **intendō**, -ere, -tendī, -tēsum, intend; *parenthetical cl.*

⁹⁷ **per-veniō ad** or **in** + *acc.*, arrive at, reach; **pervēnerit** = *perf. subj. for a fut. perf. indic. in a more vivid condition. For the subj. in a subordinate cl. in ind. state., see App.*

⁹⁸ **fore** = futūrus, -a, -um, esse

⁹⁹ **paulīspēr**, *adv.*, for a little while

¹⁰⁰ **re-primō**, press back, check

¹⁰¹ = **semper**

¹⁰² **comprimō**, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, suppress

¹⁰³ **quod sī**, but if

¹⁰⁴ *fut. perf. ind. What kind of condition?*

¹⁰⁵ **suōs** (**virōs**)

¹⁰⁶ **eōdem**, *adv.*, to the same place

¹⁰⁷ **undique**, *adv.*, from all sides

¹⁰⁸ **colligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, gather together

¹⁰⁹ **naufragus**, -ī, (shipwrecked) ruined man

¹¹⁰ **adgregō** (1), gather; **adgregārit** = **adgregāverit**

¹¹¹ **exstinguō**, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, extinguish

¹¹² **adultus**, -a, -um, mature

¹¹³ **stirps**, **stirpis**, *f.*, stem, stock

¹¹⁴ **sēmen**, -inis, *n.*, seed

¹¹⁵ **latrōcinium**, -ī, brigandage; band of brigands

¹¹⁶ *here* = for

¹¹⁷ **relevō** (1), relieve

¹¹⁸ **re-sideō** (= **sedeō**), -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, (sit down), remain

¹¹⁹ **sē-cēdō** (**sē** = apart, away). *Why subj.?*

¹²⁰ **sēcernō**, -ere, -crēvī, -cretum, separate

¹²¹ **congregō** (1), gather together

¹²² **dēsino**, -ere, -sīvī, -situm, cease

¹²³ **īnsidior** (1), plot against + *dat.*

¹²⁴ **domī suae**, *loc. Catiline had tried to have Cicero assassinated.*

¹²⁵ **circum-stō**, -āre, -stetī, stand around, surround

¹²⁶ **tribūnal**, -ālis, *n.*

¹²⁷ **praetor urbānus**, *judicial magistrate who had charge of civil cases between Roman citizens*

¹²⁸ **obsideō**, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, besiege, beset

¹²⁹ **cūria**, -ae, senate house

¹³⁰ **malleolus**, -ī, firebrand

¹³¹ **fax**, **facis**, *f.*, torch

¹³² **īnflamō** (1), set on fire

¹³³ = **parāre**

¹³⁴ **in-scrībō**

¹³⁵ **frōns**, **frontis**, *f.*, forehead

¹³⁶ **polliceor**, -ērī, -licitus sum, promise

¹³⁷ **dīligentia**, -ae

¹³⁸ **eques**, **equitis**, *m.*, horseman, knight. *Here the equitēs are the wealthy business class in Rome.*

60 bonīs cōnsēnsiōnem,¹³⁹ ut Catilīnae profectiōne¹⁴⁰ omnia patefacta, illūstrāta,¹⁴¹ oppressa, vindicāta¹⁴² esse videātis.

Hīsce¹⁴³ ōminibus,¹⁴⁴ Catilīna, cum summā reī pūblicaē salūte,¹⁴⁵ cum tuā peste ac perniciē,¹⁴⁶ cumque eōrum exitiō quī sē tēcum omnī scelere parricīdiōque¹⁴⁷ iūnxērunt, proficīscere ad impium¹⁴⁸ bellum ac nefārium.¹⁴⁹
65 Tū, Iuppiter, quī eīsdem¹⁵⁰ quibus haec urbs auspiciīs ā Rōmulō¹⁵¹ es cōnstitūtus,¹⁵² quem Statōrem¹⁵³ huius urbis atque imperiī vērē nōmināmus,¹⁵⁴ hunc et huius sociōs ā tuīs cēterisque templīs,¹⁵⁵ ā tēctīs¹⁵⁶ urbis ac moenibus, ā vītā fortūnisque cīvium arcēbis¹⁵⁷, et hominēs bonōrum inimīcōs,¹⁵⁸ hostēs patriae, latrōnēs¹⁵⁹ Italiae, scelerum foedere¹⁶⁰ inter sē ac nefāriā societāte¹⁶¹ coniūctōs,¹⁶² aeternīs¹⁶³ suppliciīs¹⁶⁴ vīvōs mortuōsque
70 mactābis.¹⁶⁵

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam Ōrātiō I*, excerpts)

6. THE ARREST AND TRIAL OF THE CONSPIRATORS¹

Rem pūblicam, Quirītēs,² vītāque³ omnium vestrum, bona,⁴ fortūnās, coniugēs⁵ līberōsque⁶ vestrōs, atque hoc domicilium⁷ clārissimī imperiī, fortūnatissimam pulcherrimamque urbem, hodiernō⁸ diē deōrum immortalium summō ergā vōs amōre, labōribus, cōnsiliīs, periculīs meīs, ē flammā⁹ atque
5 ferrō ac paene¹⁰ ex faucibus¹¹ fātī ēreptam et vōbīs cōservātā ac restitū-

¹³⁹ cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement, harmony

¹⁴⁰ profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, departure; *cp.* proficīscor

¹⁴¹ illūstrō (1), bring to light

¹⁴² vindicō (1), avenge, punish

¹⁴³ hīs-ce = hīs + *intensive enclitic -ce*; *abl. case with ōminibus*

¹⁴⁴ ōmen, ōminis, *n.*, omen: with these omens *or* with these words which I have uttered as omens, *abl. of attendant circumstance without cum*.

¹⁴⁵ cum . . . salūte (peste, exitiō) *abl. of attendant circumstance with cum*, here indicating the result: to the safety of state, to your own destruction. . . .

¹⁴⁶ perniciēs, -ēī, disaster, calamity

¹⁴⁷ parricīdium, -iī, murder

¹⁴⁸ impius, -a, -um, wicked, disloyal

¹⁴⁹ nefārius, -a, -um, infamous, nefarious

¹⁵⁰ eīsdem auspiciīs quibus haec urbs (cōnstitūta est); auspicia, -ōrum, auspices

¹⁵¹ Rōmulus, -ī, the founder of Rome

¹⁵² cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, establish

¹⁵³ Stator, -ōris, *m.*, the Stayer (of flight), the Supporter, Jupiter Stator

¹⁵⁴ nōminō (1), name, call (*cp.* nōmen)

¹⁵⁵ templum, -ī, temple

¹⁵⁶ tēctum, -ī, roof, house

¹⁵⁷ arceō, -ēre, -uī, ward off

¹⁵⁸ inimīcus, -ī, personal enemy; inimīcōs, hostēs, *etc.* are in apposition with hominēs.

¹⁵⁹ latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, bandit

¹⁶⁰ foedus, -eris, *n.*, treaty, bond

¹⁶¹ societās, -tātis, *f.*, fellowship, alliance (*cp.* socius)

¹⁶² con (together) + iungō: coniūctōs *modifies latrōnēs, etc.*

¹⁶³ aeternus, -a, -um, eternal

¹⁶⁴ supplicium, -iī, punishment

¹⁶⁵ mactō (1), punish, pursue. *The basic structure of the sent. is this: Tū (quī . . . es cōnstitūtus, quem . . . nōmināmus) hunc et sociōs ā templīs . . . fortūnisque cīvium arcebis; et hominēs (inimīcōs . . . coniūctōs) suppliciīs vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.*

6

¹ Cicero here tells how, shortly after his first speech against Catiline, he secured the written evidence necessary for the trial and conviction of the conspirators.

² fellow-citizens, an old word of uncertain origin

³ The Romans regularly used the *sg.* even when referring to a number of people; we use the *pl.*, "lives."

⁴ *n. pl.*, good things = goods

⁵ coniūnx, -iugis, *f.*, wife (*cp.* coniungō)

⁶ līberī, -ōrum, children

⁷ domicilium, -iī, home (*cp.* domus)

⁸ hodiernus diēs, this day, today (*cp.* hodiē)

⁹ flamma, -ae, flame

¹⁰ paene, *adv.*, almost

¹¹ faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, jaws; a narrow passage

tam¹² vidētis¹³ . . . Quae¹⁴ quoniam in senātū illūstrāta, patefacta, comperta¹⁵ sunt per mē, vōbīs iam expōnam breviter, Quirītēs, ut¹⁶ et¹⁷ quanta¹⁸ et quā ratiōne investīgāta¹⁹ et comprehēnsa sint, vōs, quī ignōrātis et exspectātis, scīre possītis.

10 Prīncipiō, ut²⁰ Catilīna paucīs ante diēbus²¹ ērūpit²² ex urbe, cum sceleris suī sociōs, huiusce²³ nefārii bellī ācerrimōs ducēs, Rōmae relīquisset, semper vigilāvī²⁴ et prōvidī,²⁵ Quirītēs, quem ad modum²⁶ in tantīs et tam absconditīs²⁷ īnsidiīs salvī esse possēmus. Nam tum cum ex urbe Catilīnam ēiciēbam (nōn enim iam vereor huius verbī invidiam, cum illa²⁸ magis²⁹ sit
15 timenda, quod³⁰ vīvus exierit)—sed tum cum³¹ illum exterminārī³² volēbam, aut³³ reliquam³⁴ coniūrātōrum manum simul³⁵ exitūram³⁶ aut eōs quī restitissent³⁷ īnfīrmōs sine illō ac dēbilēs³⁸ fore³⁹ putābam. Atque ego, ut vidī, quōs maximō furōre et scelere esse īnflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nōbīscum esse et Rōmae remānsisse, in eō⁴⁰ omnēs diēs noctēque cōsūmpsī ut quid agerent,
20 quid mōlīrentur, sentīrem ac vidērem . . . Itaque, ut comperī lēgātōs⁴¹ Allobrogum⁴² bellī Trānsalpīnī⁴³ et tumultūs⁴⁴ Gallicī⁴⁵ excitandī⁴⁶ causā, ā P. Lentulō⁴⁷ esse sollicitātōs,⁴⁸ eōsque in Galliam⁴⁹ ad suōs cīvēs eōdemque itinere cum litterīs mandātisque⁵⁰ ad Catilīnam esse missōs, comitemque⁵¹ eīs adiūctum esse⁵² T. Volturcium,⁵³ atque huic esse ad Catilīnam datās
25 litterās, facultātem⁵⁴ mihi oblātam putāvī ut—quod⁵⁵ erat difficillimum

tuī, -stitūtum, restore
e sent. is this: Rem pūblicam (. . .
e deōrum(. . . perīculīs meīs) ē
aucibus fātī) ēreptam (. . . restitū-

the rel.; n. nom. pl.
erī, -pertum, find out
is

et of comprehēnsa sint
k out, investigate
ever since
lays (abl. of degree of difference, see
w days ago; actually some three

ī, -ruptum, burst forth
tensifying suffix
be vigilant
, make provision
how
m, hidden

pere
cl. in apposition with illa (invidia).
(exierit) is used in informal ind.
g what people may say: he went out

petition of tum cum above as Cicero
over again.
nish (ex + terminus, boundary)
(esse) aut . . . fore putābam

³⁴ reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, the rest of

³⁵ simul, adv., at the same time

³⁶ ex-eō; exitūram (esse)

³⁷ restō, -āre, -stīfī, stay behind, remain

³⁸ dēbilis, -e, helpless, weak

³⁹ = futūrōs esse

⁴⁰ in eō ut sentīrem et vidērem quid . . . mōlīrentur: in
this that I might see . . . ; the ut-cl. of purpose is
in apposition with eō.

⁴¹ lēgātus, -ī, ambassador

⁴² Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe
whose ambassadors had come to Rome to make
complaints about certain Roman magistrates.

⁴³ Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, Transalpine

⁴⁴ tumultus, -ūs, m., uprising

⁴⁵ Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic

⁴⁶ excitō (1), excite, arouse

⁴⁷ Publius Lentulus after having been consul in 71 B.C.
was removed from the Senate on grounds of moral
turpitude. He was now one of the leading conspira-
tors and at the same time he was holding the office
of praetor.

⁴⁸ sollicitō (1), stir up

⁴⁹ Gallia, -ae, Gaul

⁵⁰ mandātum, -ī, order, instruction

⁵¹ comes, -itis, m., companion

⁵² ad-iungō

⁵³ Titus Volturcius, an errand-boy for Lentulus

⁵⁴ facultās, -tātis, f., opportunity

⁵⁵ quod, a thing which. The antecedent of quod is the
general idea in the ut-cl.

quodque ego semper optābam⁵⁶ ab dīs immortālibus—tōta rēs nōn solum ā mē sed etiam ā senātū et ā vōbis manifestō⁵⁷ dēprehenderetur.⁵⁸

Itaque hesternō⁵⁹ diē L. Flaccum et C. Pompīnum praetōrēs,⁶⁰ fortissimōs atque amantissimōs⁶¹ reī pūblicae⁶² virōs, ad mē vocāvī, rem exposuī, quid fierī⁶³ placēret ostendī. Illī autem, quī omnia dē rē pūblicā praeclāra⁶⁴ atque ēgregia⁶⁵ sentīrent,⁶⁶ sine recūsātiōne⁶⁷ ac sine ūllā morā negōtium⁶⁸ suscēpērunt et, cum advesperāsceret,⁶⁹ occultē⁷⁰ ad pontem⁷¹ Mulvium pervēnērunt atque ibi in proximīs villīs⁷² ita bipertītō⁷³ fuērunt ut Tiberis⁷⁴ inter eōs et pōns interesset.⁷⁵ Eōdem⁷⁶ autem et ipsī sine cuiusquam suspīciōne⁷⁷ multōs fortēs virōs ēdūxerant, et ego ex praefectūrā⁷⁸ Reātīnā⁷⁹ complūrēs⁸⁰ dēlēctōs⁸¹ adulēscentēs, quōrum operā⁸² ūtor assiduē⁸³ in rē pūblicā, praesidiō⁸⁴ cum gladiīs mīseram. Interim,⁸⁵ tertiā ferē⁸⁶ vigiliā⁸⁷ exāctā, cum iam pontem Mulvium magnō comitātū⁸⁸ lēgātī Allobrogum ingredi⁸⁹ inciperent unāque⁹⁰ Volturcius, fit in eōs impetus⁹¹; ēdūcuntur⁹² et ab illīs gladiī et ā nostrīs.⁹³ Rēs praetōribus erat nōta sōlīs, ignōrābātur ā cēterīs. Tum interventū⁹⁴ Pompīnī atque Flaccī pugna⁹⁵ sēdātur.⁹⁶ Litterae, quaecumque⁹⁷ erant in eō comitātū, integrīs⁹⁸ signīs praetōribus trāduntur; ipsī, comprehēnsī, ad mē, cum iam dīlūcēsceret,⁹⁹ dēdūcuntur. Atque hōrum omnium scelerum improbissimum¹⁰⁰ māchinātōrem,¹⁰¹ Cimbrum Gabīnium,¹⁰² statim¹⁰³ ad mē nihildum¹⁰⁴ suspicantem,¹⁰⁵ vocāvī. Deinde item¹⁰⁶ arcessītus

⁵⁶ **optō** (1), desire

⁵⁷ **manifestō**, *adv.*, clearly

⁵⁸ **dēprehendō** (cp. **comprehendō**), detect, comprehend

⁵⁹ **hesternō diē**, yesterday

⁶⁰ *Though praetors were judicial magistrates, they did possess the imperium by which they could command troops.*

⁶¹ most loving of the state = very patriotic

⁶² *obj. gen.*; see *App.*

⁶³ **fieri**, *subject of placēret* (it was pleasing) *used impersonally*

⁶⁴ **praeclārus**, -a, -um, noble

⁶⁵ **ēgregius**, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished

⁶⁶ *subj. in a characteristic cl.*

⁶⁷ **recūsātiō**, -ōnis, *f.*, refusal

⁶⁸ **negōtium**, -iī, business, matter

⁶⁹ **advesperāscit**, -ere, -perāvit, *impers. inceptive*, it is approaching evening (cp. *vespers*)

⁷⁰ **occultē**, *adv.*, secretly

⁷¹ **pōns**, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge; *the Mulvian bridge across the Tiber near Rome*

⁷² **vīlla**, -ae, country house

⁷³ **bipertītō**, *adv.*, in two divisions

⁷⁴ **Tiberis**, -is, *m.*, the Tiber

⁷⁵ **inter-sum**, be between

⁷⁶ **eōdem**, *adv.*, to the same place

⁷⁷ **suspīciō**, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion

⁷⁸ **praefectūra**, -ae, prefecture, *a city of the Roman allies governed by a Roman prefect*

⁷⁹ **Reātīnus**, -a, -um, of Reate, *a Sabine town about forty miles from Rome.*

⁸⁰ **complūrēs**, -a, *pl. adj.*, very many

⁸¹ **dēligō**, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, select

⁸² **opera**, -ae, help; *why abl.?*

⁸³ **assiduē**, *adv.*, constantly

⁸⁴ **praesidiō**, as a guard, *dat. of purpose (S.S.)*

⁸⁵ **interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile

⁸⁶ **ferē**, *adv.*, about, almost; *usually follows the word it modifies*

⁸⁷ **vigilia**, -ae, watch. *The night was divided into four watches.*

⁸⁸ **comitātus**, -ūs, company, retinue. *The abl. of accompaniment may be used without cum in military expressions.*

⁸⁹ **ingredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, enter on

⁹⁰ and together with (them)

⁹¹ **impetus**, -ūs, attack

⁹² **ēdūcuntur** . . . **gladiī**, swords were drawn

⁹³ **nostrīs** (**virīs**)

⁹⁴ **interventus**, -ūs, intervention

⁹⁵ **pugna**, -ae, fight

⁹⁶ **sēdō** (1), settle, stop (*not to be confused with sedeō*, sit)

⁹⁷ **quīcumque**, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, whoever, whatever

⁹⁸ **integer**, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole

⁹⁹ **dīlūcēscit**, -ere, -lūxit, it grows light, dawn comes

¹⁰⁰ **improbis**, -a, -um, wicked

¹⁰¹ **māchinātor**, -ōris, *m.*, contriver, plotter

¹⁰² **Cimber Gabīnius**

¹⁰³ **statim**, *adv.*, immediately

¹⁰⁴ **nihil-dum**, nothing yet

¹⁰⁵ **suspīcor** (1), suspect

¹⁰⁶ **item**, *adv.*, likewise

est¹⁰⁷ L. Statilius, et post eum C. Cethēgus. Tardissimē¹⁰⁸ autem Lentulus vēnit . . .

Senātum frequentem¹⁰⁹ celeriter, ut vīdistis, coēgī. Atque intereā¹¹⁰ statim admonitū¹¹¹ Allobrogum C. Sulpicium praetōrem, fortem virum, mīsī
50 quī ex aedibus¹¹² Cethēgī, sī quid tēlorum¹¹³ esset, efferret¹¹⁴; ex quibus¹¹⁵ ille maximum sīcārum¹¹⁶ numerum et gladiōrum extulit.¹¹⁷

Intrōdūxī¹¹⁸ Volturcium sine Gallīs; fidem pūblicam¹¹⁹ iussū¹²⁰ senātūs dedī; hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre indicāret.¹²¹ Tum ille dīxit, cum vix¹²² sē ex magnō timōre recreāsset,¹²³ ā P. Lentulō sē habēre ad Catilī-
55 nam mandāta et litterās ut servōrum praesidiō ūterētur,¹²⁴ ut ad urbem quam prīmum¹²⁵ cum exercitū accēderet; id¹²⁶ autem eō cōnsiliō ut,¹²⁷ cum urbem ex¹²⁸ omnibus partibus, quem ad modum¹²⁹ discrīptum distribūtumque erat,¹³⁰ incendissent¹³¹ caedemque¹³² īnfīnītam¹³³ cīvium fēcissent, praestō¹³⁴ esset ille¹³⁵ quī et fugientēs exciperet¹³⁶ et sē cum hīs urbānīs ducibus con-
60 iungeret.¹³⁷

Intrōductī autem Gallī iūs iūrandum¹³⁸ sibi et litterās ab Lentulō, Cethēgō, Statiliō ad suam gentem datās esse dīxērunt atque ita sibi ab hīs et ā L. Cassiō esse praescrip̄tum¹³⁹ ut equitātum¹⁴⁰ in Italiam quam prīmum mitterent¹⁴¹ . . .

65 Ac nē longum sit,¹⁴² Quirītēs, tabellās¹⁴³ prōferrī¹⁴⁴ iussimus quae ā quōque dīcēbantur datae.¹⁴⁵ Prīmum ostendimus Cethēgō signum; cognōvit.

¹⁰⁷ arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, summon

¹⁰⁸ tardē, adv., slowly

¹⁰⁹ frequēns, gen. -entis, crowded, full

¹¹⁰ intereā, adv., meanwhile

¹¹¹ admonitus, -ūs, warning, suggestion

¹¹² aedēs, -ium, f. pl., house

¹¹³ tēlum, -ī, weapon; tēlorum is gen. of whole with quid: anything of weapons = any weapons

¹¹⁴ rel. cl. of purp.: quī = ut is

¹¹⁵ Antecedent is aedibus.

¹¹⁶ sīca, -ae, dagger

¹¹⁷ efferō: ex-ferō

¹¹⁸ intrō-dūcō = Eng. introduce

¹¹⁹ promise of protection in the name of the state

¹²⁰ iussus, -ūs, command

¹²¹ indicō (1), indicate, make known

¹²² vix, adv., hardly

¹²³ The perf. endings in -āvī-, -ēvī-, -ōvī- often contract to -ā-, -ē-, -ō-, respectively. So here rēcreāvīssset has contracted to recreāsset. Perfs. in -īvī- may lose the v but the two resultant vowels rarely contract to ī except before ss and st: audīverat, audierat; audīvisse, audisse; quaesīssent

¹²⁴ jussive noun cl. with mandāta et litterās

¹²⁵ quam prīmum, as soon as possible

¹²⁶ (that he should do) this (id) with this plan (in mind) that . . .

¹²⁷ The rest of the sentence can be outlined thus: ut (cum . . . partibus [quem ad modum . . . distributum erat] incendissent et . . . fēcissent) praestō esset ille (quī et . . . exciperet et . . . coniungeret)

¹²⁸ here in

¹²⁹ quem ad modum, as

¹³⁰ impers. pass. vbs.: as had been marked out and assigned

¹³¹ incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum, set fire to

¹³² caedēs, -is, f., slaughter

¹³³ īnfīnītus, -a, -um, unlimited

¹³⁴ praestō, adv., on hand, ready

¹³⁵ ille = Catiline

¹³⁶ ex-cipiō, pick up, capture

¹³⁷ con + iungō. Why are exciperet and coniungeret in the subj.?

¹³⁸ iūs, iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., oath

¹³⁹ prae-scribō, order, direct; esse praescrip̄tum, impers. pass. (it had been commanded to themselves, sibi) but translate as personal: they had been directed.

¹⁴⁰ equitātus, -ūs, cavalry

¹⁴¹ jussive noun cl. depending on esse praescrip̄tum

¹⁴² to be brief

¹⁴³ tabella, -ae, tablet: very shallow trays, not unlike the modern slate, filled with wax on which writing was done with a sharp-pointed stilus. Two of these closed face to face, tied together with a string, and sealed with wax and the impression of a signet ring, were the equivalent of a modern letter in an envelope.

¹⁴⁴ prō-ferō

¹⁴⁵ datae (esse); datae is nom. f. pl. to agree with quae (tabellae), the subject of dīcēbantur.

Nōs līnum¹⁴⁶ incīdimus¹⁴⁷; lēgimus. Erat scrīptum ipsīus¹⁴⁸ manū Allobrogum senātuī et populō sēsē¹⁴⁹ quae eōrum lēgātīs cōnfīrmāset¹⁵⁰ factūrum esse; ōrāre ut item illī facerent quae sibi eōrum lēgātī recēpissent. Tum Cethēgus
70 (quī paulō¹⁵¹ ante aliquid tamen dē gladiīs ac sicīs, quae apud ipsum erant dēprehēnsa,¹⁵² respondisset dīxissetque¹⁵³ sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum¹⁵⁴ studiōsum¹⁵⁵ fuisse) recitātīs litterīs dēbilitātus¹⁵⁶ atque abiectus¹⁵⁷ cōnscientiā,¹⁵⁸ repente conticuit.¹⁵⁹

Intrōductus est Statilius; cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātae
75 sunt tabellae in eandem ferē sententiam; cōfessus est.

Tum ostendī tabellās Lentulō, et quaesīvī cognōsceretne signum. Adnuit¹⁶⁰ . . . Leguntur eādē ratiōne ad senātum Allobrogum populumque litterae. Sī quid dē hīs rēbus dīcere vellet,¹⁶¹ fēcī potestātem.¹⁶² Atque ille prīmō quidem negāvit. Post¹⁶³ autem aliquantō,¹⁶⁴ tōtō iam indiciō¹⁶⁵
80 expositō atque ēditō,¹⁶⁶ surrēxit; quaesīvit ā Gallīs quid sibi esset cum eīs, quam ob rem¹⁶⁷ domum suam vēnissent, itemque ā Volturciō. Quī cum illī breviter cōstanterque¹⁶⁸ respondissent per quem ad eum quotiēnsque¹⁶⁹ vēnissent, quaesīssentque¹⁷⁰ ab eō nihilne sēcum¹⁷¹ esset dē fātīs Sibyllīnīs¹⁷² locūtus, tum ille subitō, scelere dēmēns,¹⁷³ quanta cōnscientiae vīs esset ostendit. Nam cum id posset infitiārī,¹⁷⁴ repente praeter opīniōnem¹⁷⁵ omnium
85 cōfessus est . . .

Gabīnius deinde intrōductus, cum prīmō impudenter¹⁷⁶ respondēre coepisset, ad extrēmum¹⁷⁷ nihil ex eīs¹⁷⁸ quae Gallī īnsimulābant¹⁷⁹ negāvit.

Ac mihi¹⁸⁰ quidem, Quirītēs, cum¹⁸¹ illa¹⁸² certissima vīsa sunt argūmenta
90 atque indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manūs, dēnique ūnīus cuiusque cōn-

¹⁴⁶ līnum, -ī, string

¹⁴⁷ incīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut

¹⁴⁸ (Cethēgī) ipsīus: *emphatic because letters were often written by an amanuensis, a slave to whom the letter was dictated.*

¹⁴⁹ sēsē = sē (*i.e.*, Cethegus), *subject of factūrum esse and also of ōrāre*

¹⁵⁰ cōnfīrmō (1), assert, declare; *subj. in ind. state. (see S.S.)*

¹⁵¹ a little before (before by a little), *abl. of degree of difference (see S.S.)*

¹⁵² dēprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsūm, seize

¹⁵³ respondisset dīxissetque, *subjs. in rel. cl. of characteristic, which have the force of a concessive cl. (= although)*

¹⁵⁴ ferrāmentum, -ī, weapon

¹⁵⁵ studiōsus, -a, -um, fond of (*i.e.*, he was a collector.)

¹⁵⁶ dēbilitō (1), weaken

¹⁵⁷ abiectus, -a, -um, downcast

¹⁵⁸ cōnscientia, -ae, knowledge, conscience

¹⁵⁹ conticēscō, -ere, -ticuī, become silent

¹⁶⁰ adnuō, -ere, -nuī, nod assent

¹⁶¹ vellet, *subj. because it is a subordinate cl. in an implied ind. state. for Cicero's original words: sī quid . . . dīcere vīs*

¹⁶² potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power, opportunity

¹⁶³ = posteā

¹⁶⁴ aliquantō, *abl. of degree of difference (by somewhat) equivalent to an adv.: somewhat, a little*

¹⁶⁵ indicium, -ī, evidence, information

¹⁶⁶ ē-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give forth, publish

¹⁶⁷ quam ob rem = quārē

¹⁶⁸ constanter, *adv.*, consistently, steadily

¹⁶⁹ quotiēns, *adv.*, how often

¹⁷⁰ contracted form, *n. 122 above*

¹⁷¹ sēcum: *an ind. reflexive referring to the subject of quaesīssent; translate to them.*

¹⁷² fāta Sibyllīna, *a collection of ancient prophecies for which the Romans had very high respect. By these Lentulus had sought to prove to the Allobroges that he was destined to hold the regnum and imperium at Rome.*

¹⁷³ dē-mēns, *gen. -mentis*, out of one's mind

¹⁷⁴ infitior (1), deny

¹⁷⁵ opīniō, -ōnis, *f.*, expectation

¹⁷⁶ impudenter, *adv.*, impudently

¹⁷⁷ ad extrēmum, at the last, finally

¹⁷⁸ eīs = *n. pl.*, those things

¹⁷⁹ īnsimulō (1), charge

¹⁸⁰ depends on vīsa sunt

¹⁸¹ cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also (*cp. nōn solum . . . sed etiam*)

¹⁸² illa argūmenta atque indicia (*i.e.*, tabellae . . . confessiō) certissima vīsa sunt

fessiō,¹⁸³ tum multō¹⁸⁴ certiōra illa, color,¹⁸⁵ oculī, vultūs, taciturnitās.¹⁸⁶ Sīc enim obstupuerant,¹⁸⁷ sīc terram intuēbantur,¹⁸⁸ sīc fūrtim nōn numquam inter sēsē aspiciēbant ut nōn iam ab aliīs indicārī¹⁸⁹ sed indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

95 Indiciīs expositīs atque ēditīs, Quirītēs, senātum cōnsulū¹⁹⁰ dē summā rē pūblicā¹⁹¹ quid fierī placēret. Dictae sunt ā prīncipibus ācerrimae ac fortissimae sententiae, quās senātus sine ūllā varietāte¹⁹² est secūtus . . .

Quibus prō tantīs rēbus, Quirītēs, nūllum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis, nūllum īnsigne¹⁹³ honōris, nūllum monumentum laudis postulō¹⁹⁴ praeterquam¹⁹⁵ huius diēi memoriam sempiternam¹⁹⁶ . . .

Vōs, Quirītēs, quoniam iam est nox, venerātī¹⁹⁷ Iovem illum custōdem huius urbis ac vestrum, in vestra tēcta¹⁹⁸ discēdite; et ea, quamquam¹⁹⁹ iam est perīculum dēpulsum,²⁰⁰ tamen aequē ac²⁰¹ priōre nocte custōdiīs vigiliisque dēfendite. Id nē vōbīs diūtius faciendum sit atque ut in perpetuā pāce esse possītis prōvidēbō. (Cicero, *In Catilinam Ōrātiō III*, excerpts)

DĒ VĪTĀ ET MORTE (7–9)

7. SOCRATES' "EITHER-OR" BELIEF¹

Quae est igitur eius ōrātiō quā² facit eum Platō ūsum apud iūdicēs iam morte multātum³?

“Magna mē,” inquit “spēs tenet iūdicēs, bene mihi ēvenīre⁴ quod mittar⁵ ad mortem. Necesse⁶ est enim sit⁷ alterum dē duōbus, ut aut⁸ sēnsūs omnīnō
5 omnēs mors auferat aut in alium quendam locum ex hīs locīs morte migrētur.⁹ Quam ob rem,¹⁰ sīve¹¹ sēnsus exstinguitur morsque eī somnō similis est quī nōn numquam etiam sine vīsīs¹² somniōrum¹³ plācātissimam¹⁴ quiē-

¹⁸³ cōfessiō, -ōnis, *f.* = Eng.

¹⁸⁴ *lit.* more certain by much. *What kind of abl. is multō?* (see S.S.)

¹⁸⁵ color . . . taciturnitās, *in apposition with illa*, which is *nom. n. pl. color, -ōris, m.*, = Eng.

¹⁸⁶ taciturnitās, -tātis, *f.*, silence (*cp.* taciturn)

¹⁸⁷ obstupēscō, -ere, -stupuī, become stupefied, be thunderstruck

¹⁸⁸ intueor, -ērī, -tuitus sum, look at

¹⁸⁹ indicō (1), accuse (*cp.* indicium, *n.* 165 above)

¹⁹⁰ cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, consult, ask advice of

¹⁹¹ highest interest of the state

¹⁹² varietās, -tātis, *f.*, variation

¹⁹³ īnsigne, -is, *n.*, sign, symbol

¹⁹⁴ postulō (1), request, demand

¹⁹⁵ except

¹⁹⁶ sempiternus, -a, -um, eternal

¹⁹⁷ veneror (1), worship

¹⁹⁸ tēctum, -ī, roof; house

¹⁹⁹ quamquam, *conj.*, although

²⁰⁰ dēpellō, drive off, avert

²⁰¹ equally as = just as

7

¹ As part of his demonstration that death is not an evil, Cicero cites Socrates' views as given in Plato's "Apology," Socrates' defense of his life before the jury that finally condemned him to death.

² quā . . . ūsum, which Plato represents him as using; quā, *abl. with the participle ūsum*

³ multō, (1), punish, sentence

⁴ ē-veniō, turn out; *impers. inf. in ind. state.*

⁵ subordinate *cl. in ind. state.*

⁶ necesse, *indecl. adj.*, (it is) necessary

⁷ Supply *ut before sit*: that there be one of two possibilities, *with the ut . . . migrētur cl. in apposition with duōbus*

⁸ aut . . . aut

⁹ migrō (1), depart, migrate; migrātur *as impers. pass.*, one departs

¹⁰ = quārē

¹¹ = sī

¹² vīsum, -ī, vision

¹³ somnium, -ī, dream

¹⁴ plācātus, -a, -um, peaceful

tem adfert, dī bonī, quid lucrī est ēmorī¹⁵! Aut quam multī diēs reperīrī pos-
sunt quī tālī noctī antepōnantur? Cui sī similis futūra est¹⁶ perpetuitās¹⁷
10 omnis cōnsequentis¹⁸ temporis, quis¹⁹ mē beātor?

“Sin²⁰ vēra²¹ sunt quae dīcuntur, migrātiōnem²² esse mortem in eās ōrās²³
quās quī²⁴ ē vītā excessērunt²⁵ incolunt,²⁶ id multō²⁷ iam beātius est . . . Haec
peregrinātiō²⁸ mediocris vōbīs vidērī potest? Ut vērō colloquī²⁹ cum Orpheō,
Mūsaeō,³⁰ Homērō, Hēsiodō³¹ liceat, quantī³² tandem aestimātis³³? . . . Nec
15 enim cuiquam³⁴ bonō malī³⁵ quicquam ēvenīre potest nec vīvō nec mor-
tuō³⁶ . . .

“Sed tempus est iam hinc³⁷ abīre mē, ut moriar, vōs, ut vītā agātis.
Utrum autem sit melius, dī immortalēs sciunt; hominem quidem scīre ar-
bitror nēminem.”³⁸ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 1.40.97–1.41.99, ex-
cerpts)

8. A MORE POSITIVE VIEW ABOUT IMMORTALITY¹

Artior² quam solēbāt³ somnus (mē) complexus est⁴ . . . (et) Āfricānus sē
ostendit eā fōrmā⁵ quae mihi ex imāginē⁶ eius quam ex ipsō erat nōtor.⁷
Quem ubi agnōvī,⁸ equidem cohorrui⁹, . . . quae sīvī tamen vīveretne ipse et
Paulus¹⁰ pater et aliī quōs nōs exstinctōs¹¹ arbitrārēmur.

5 “Immō vērō,” inquit, “hī vīvunt quī ē corporum vinclīs tamquam ē car-
cere¹² ēvolāvērunt¹³; vestra vērō quae dīcitur vīta mors est. Quīn¹⁴ tū aspicias
ad tē venientem Paulum patrem?”

Quem ut vīdī, equidem vim¹⁵ lacrimārum prōfūdī. Ille autem mē com-

¹⁵ ē-morior, die (off)

¹⁶ futūra est, is going to be

¹⁷ perpetuitās, -tātis, *f.*, perpetuity

¹⁸ cōn-sequor

¹⁹ quis (est)

²⁰ sīn, *conj.*, but if

²¹ (ea) sunt vēra

²² migrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, the noun of migrō, *n.* 9 above

²³ ōra, -ae, shore, region

²⁴ (eī) quī

²⁵ ex-cēdō = discēdō

²⁶ incolō, -ere, -uī, inhabit

²⁷ *abl. of degree of difference (S.S.)*

²⁸ peregrinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, travel abroad

²⁹ col-loquor, talk with, converse (*cp.* colloquial)

³⁰ Orpheus and Musaeus were famous poets and musi-
cians before the time of Homer

³¹ Hesiod, a Greek epic poet chronologically next after
Homer.

³² quantī (pretī), of how much (value), *gen. of indef.*
value. quantī . . . aestimātis, how valuable, pray,
do you estimate this is?

³³ aestimō (1), estimate, value

³⁴ quisquam, quidquam (quicquam), anyone, anything;
cuiquam modified by bonō: to any good man

³⁵ malī (*gen.*) depends on quicquam: anything of evil =
any evil

³⁶ vīvō and mortuō modify cuiquam bonō.

³⁷ hinc, *adv.*, from this place

³⁸ hominem . . . nēminem, no man

8

¹ In these excerpts Scipio Africanus Minor (the
Younger, hero of the Third Punic War in 146 B.C.)
tells how the deceased Scipio Africanus Maior (the
Elder, hero of the Second Punic War who defeated
Hannibal in 202 B.C.) appeared to him in a dream
and discoursed on the nature of life here and here-
after.

² artus, -a, -um, deep (sleep); narrow

³ solēbat (esse)

⁴ complector, -ī, -plexus sum, embrace

⁵ *abl. of description*

⁶ imāgō, -inis, *f.*, image; here = portrait mask of an
ancestor. The imāginēs of a Roman patrician's an-
cestors were displayed in the atrium of the house.

⁷ nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar

⁸ agnōscō (*cp.* cognōscō), recognize

⁹ cohorrēscō, -ere, -horruī, shudder

¹⁰ L. Aemilius Paulus, father of Africanus Minor

¹¹ exstinctōs (esse): exstinguō

¹² carcer, -eris, *n.*, prison

¹³ ē-volō (1), fly away; not to be confused with volō, velle

¹⁴ quīn aspicias: why, don't you see?

¹⁵ vim = cōpiam

plexus⁴ atque oſculāns¹⁶ flēre¹⁷ prohibēbat. Atque ego ut primum¹⁸ flētū¹⁹
 10 repressō²⁰ loquī posse coepī, “Quaesō,²¹” inquam, “pater s̄anctissime²² atque
 optime, quoniam haec est vīta, ut Āfricānum audiō dīcere, quid moror²³ in
 terrīs? Quīn²⁴ hūc²⁵ ad vōs venīre properō²⁶?”

“Nōn est ita,²⁷” inquit ille. “Nisi enim deus is,²⁸ cuius hoc templum²⁹ est
 omne quod cōnspicis,³⁰ istīs tē corporis custōdiīs liberāverit, hūc tibi aditus³¹
 15 patēre nōn potest. Hominēs enim sunt hāc lēge³² generātī,³³ quī tuērentur³⁴
 illum globum³⁵ quem in hōc templō medium vidēs, quae terra dīcitur, iisque³⁶
 animus datus est ex illīs sempiternīs ignibus quae sīdera et stēllās vocātis . . .
 Quārē et tibi, Pūblī,³⁷ et piīs omnibus retinendus³⁸ est animus in custōdiā
 corporis, nec iniussū³⁹ eius ā quō ille⁴⁰ est vōbīs datus ex hominum vītā mi-
 20 grandum est, nē mūnus⁴¹ hūmānum adsignātum⁴² ā deō dēfūgisse⁴³ videā-
 minī . . . Iūstitiam⁴⁴ cole⁴⁵ et pietātem,⁴⁶ quae cum sit magna⁴⁷ in parentibus
 et propinquīs,⁴⁸ tum⁴⁹ in patriā maxima est. Ea vīta via est in caelum et in
 hunc coetum⁵⁰ eōrum quī iam vīxērunt et corpore laxātī⁵¹ illum incolunt
 locum . . . quem vōs, ut ā Graīs accēpistis, orbem lacteum,⁵² nuncupātis.⁵³”

25 Et ille, “Tū vērō . . . sīc habētō⁵⁴ nōn esse tē mortālem, sed corpus hoc⁵⁵;
 nec enim tuīs⁵⁶ es quem fōrma ista dēclārat,⁵⁷ sed mēns cuiusque is est
 quisque, nōn ea figurā⁵⁸ quae digitō dēmōnstrārī potest. Deum tē igitur
 scītō⁵⁹ esse; sīquidem⁶⁰ deus est quī viget,⁶¹ quī sentit, quī meminit,⁶² quī

¹⁶ oſculator (1), kiss

¹⁷ fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep

¹⁸ ut primum, as soon as

¹⁹ flētus, -ūs, noun of fleō, n. 17 above

²⁰ re-primō (premō)

²¹ quaesō, -ere, commonly exclamatory: I beg you!,
 pray tell!, please

²² s̄anctus, -a, -um, holy

²³ moror (1), delay, wait

²⁴ why not?

²⁵ hūc, adv., to this place, here

²⁶ properō (1), hasten

²⁷ = that is not the way

²⁸ order = is deus

²⁹ templum, -ī, sacred area, temple

³⁰ cuius . . . cōnspicis: whose this temple is or to whom
 belongs this temple—everything which you be-
 hold. Apparently, as he says hoc templum, he
 makes a sweeping gesture with his arm to indicate
 the universe and then adds omne quod cōnspicis to
 make this even clearer. cōnspiciō = aspiciō

³¹ aditus, -ūs, approach, entrance

³² abl. of accordant: in accordance with this law, on
 this condition

³³ generō (1), create

³⁴ tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum, watch, protect. Why subj.?

³⁵ globus, -ī, sphere, globe

³⁶ i.e., hominibus

³⁷ Pūblius, praenomen (first name) of Africanus Minor

³⁸ re-tineō, retain, preserve

³⁹ iniussū, abl. as adv., without the command (of); cp.
 iussū

⁴⁰ ille (animus)

⁴¹ mūnus, -eris, n., duty, service

⁴² adsignō (1), assign

⁴³ dē-fugiō, flee from, avoid

⁴⁴ iūstitia, -ae, justice (cp. iūstus)

⁴⁵ colō, -ere, -uī, cultum, cultivate, cherish

⁴⁶ pietās, -tātis, f., loyalty, devotion

⁴⁷ important

⁴⁸ propinquus, -ī, relative

⁴⁹ here = surely

⁵⁰ coetus, -ūs, gathering, company

⁵¹ laxō (1), set free

⁵² orbis (-is) lacteus (-ī), m., the Milky Way (orb), which
 Cicero here says is a term received from the Greeks
 (ut ā Graīs, i.e. Graecīs, accēpistis), who called it
 galaxias kyklos (= lacteus orbis); cp. our word
 galaxy.

⁵³ nuncupō (1) = appellō

⁵⁴ habētō, fut. imper., you shall consider; consider

⁵⁵ sc. esse mortāle

⁵⁶ tuīs, to your (friends), dat. depending on dēclārat

⁵⁷ dēclārō (1) = Eng.

⁵⁸ = fōrma

⁵⁹ scītō, another fut. imper., you shall know; know

⁶⁰ sīquidem, conj., since

⁶¹ vigeō -ēre, -uī be strong, be active

⁶² meminī, meminisse, defective, found only in perf. sys-
 tem, remember

prōvidet, quī tam regit et moderātur⁶³ et movet id corpus cui praepositus
30 est⁶⁴ quam⁶⁵ hunc mundum ille prīnceps deus.”⁶⁶ (Cicero, excerpts from *Som-*
nium Scīpiōnis 2ff. = *Dē Rē Pūblicā* 6.10 ff.)

9. ON CONTEMPT OF DEATH¹

Sed quid² ducēs et prīncipēs nōminem³ cum legiōnēs⁴ scribat Catō⁵
saepe alacrēs⁶ in eum locum profectās⁷ unde reditūrās sē nōn arbitrārentur?
Parī animō Lacedaemoniī⁸ in Thermopylīs⁹ occidērunt, in quōs¹⁰ Simōnidēs:

Dīc, hospes,¹¹ Sparta¹² nōs tē¹³ hīc vīdisse iacentīs,¹⁴
5 dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.¹⁵

Virōs commemorō.¹⁶ Quālis¹⁷ tandem Lacaena? Quae, cum fīlium in
proelium mīsisset et interfectum¹⁸ audīisset, “Idcircō,¹⁹” inquit, “genueram²⁰
ut esset quī²¹ prō patriā mortem nōn dubitāret occumbere.²²”

. . . Admoneor²³ ut aliquid etiam dē humātiōne²⁴ et sepultūrā²⁵ dīcen-
10 dum²⁶ exīstimem²⁷ . . . Sōcratēs, rogātus ā Critōne²⁸ quem ad modum sepe-
līrī²⁹ vellet, “Multam vērō,” inquit, “operam,³⁰ amīcī, frūstrā³¹ cōsūmpsī.
Critōnī enim nostrō nōn persuāsī mē hinc āvolātūrum,³² neque mei³³ quic-
quam relictūrum³⁴ . . . Sed, mihi crēde, (Critō), nēmō mē vestrum,³⁵ cum
hinc excesserō,³⁶ cōnsequētur.³⁷ . . .

15 Dūrior Diogenēs³⁸ Cynicus prōici³⁹ sē iussit inhumātum.⁴⁰ Tum amīcī,
“Volucris⁴¹ et ferīs⁴²?” “Minimē⁴³ vērō,” inquit; “sed bacillum⁴⁴ prop-

⁶³ moderor (1), control

⁶⁴ prae-pōnō, put in charge of

⁶⁵ as

⁶⁶ From the preceding cl. sc. regit, etc. as vbs.

9

¹ If death is such a great evil, how can the following attitudes be explained?

² quid, as adv., why? (= cūr?)

³ nōminō (1), name, mention (cp. nōmen)

⁴ legiō, -ōnis, f., legion

⁵ Catō, -ōnis, m., Cato, the famous censor, who wrote a now-lost history of Rome called the Origines.

⁶ alacer, -cris, -cre, eager, happy. We should use an adv. instead of a predicate adj.: eagerly

⁷ profectās (esse); reditūrās (esse)

⁸ Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, m., Spartans

⁹ Thermopylae, -ārum; 480 B.C.

¹⁰ on whom Simonides (wrote); Simonides a sixth-century Greek poet famous especially for his poems and epigrams in the elegiac couplet.

¹¹ hospes, -itis, m., stranger

¹² Sparta, -ae, f., Sparta, dat. depending on dīc

¹³ tē vīdisse nōs

¹⁴ = iacentēs

¹⁵ ob-sequor + dat., obey

¹⁶ commemorō (1), call to mind mention (cp. memoria)

¹⁷ What kind of person, then, was the Spartan woman? quālis, -e, what kind of

¹⁸ (eum) interfectum (esse)

¹⁹ idcircō, adv., for that reason

²⁰ gignō, -ere, genuī, genitum, beget (cp. generate), bear

²¹ (the kind of person) who

²² occumbō, -ere, -cubūī, -cubitum, meet

²³ ad-moneō = moneō, remind

²⁴ humātiō, -ōnis, f. burial (cp. humus, earth)

²⁵ sepultūra, -ae, funeral (cp. sepulchre)

²⁶ dīcendum (esse)

²⁷ exīstimō (1), think

²⁸ Critō, -ōnis, m., Crito, a friend of Socrates

²⁹ sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, -pultum, bury

³⁰ opera, -ae, effort, pains

³¹ frūstrā, adv., in vain (cp. frustrate)

³² ā-volō (1); avolātūrum (esse), inf. in ind. state. with persuāsī

³³ mei, gen. of ego, depending on quicquam.

³⁴ relictūrum (esse)

³⁵ gen. of vōs

³⁶ ex-cēdō, cp. discēdō

³⁷ cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, overtake, catch

³⁸ Diogenes, the Cynic philosopher, famed for his asceticism and independence

³⁹ prō-iciō (iaciō), throw out

⁴⁰ inhumātus, -a, -um, unburied

⁴¹ volucris, -is, f., bird

⁴² fera, -ae, wild beast; dat. with prōici understood

⁴³ minimē, adv., no, not at all

⁴⁴ bacillum, -ī, staff (cp. bacillus, a New Latin form)

ter⁴⁵ mē, quō abigam,⁴⁶ pōnitōte.⁴⁷” “Quī⁴⁸ poteris?” illī; “nōn enim sentiēs.”
 “Quid igitur mihi ferārum laniātus⁴⁹ oberit⁵⁰ nihil sentientī⁵¹?” (Cicero, *Tus-*
culānae Disputātiōnēs 1.42.101–43.104, excerpts)

10. LITERATURE: ITS VALUE AND DELIGHT¹

Quaerēs ā nōbīs, Grattī, cūr tantō opere² hōc homine dēlectēmur.³ Quia⁴
 suppeditat⁵ nōbīs ubi⁶ et animus ex hōc forēnsī⁷ strepitū⁸ reficiātur⁹ et aurēs
 convīciō¹⁰ dēfessae¹¹ conquiēscant¹² . . . Quārē quis tandem mē repre-
 hendat,¹³ aut quis mihi iūrē¹⁴ suscēseat,¹⁵ sī,¹⁶ quantum¹⁷ cēterīs ad suās rēs
 5 obeundās¹⁸ quantum ad fēstōs¹⁹ diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs,²⁰ quantum ad
 aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem²¹ animī et corporis concēditur²² tem-
 porum, quantum aliī tribuunt²³ tempestīvīs²⁴ convīviīs,²⁵ quantum dēnique
 alveolō,²⁶ quantum pilae,²⁷ tantum²⁸ mihi egomet²⁹ ad haec studia reco-
 lenda³⁰ sūmpserō³¹? Atque hoc ideō³² mihi concēdendum est magis quod ex
 10 hīs studiīs haec quoque crēscit orātiō et facultās,³³ quae, quantacumque³⁴ est
 in mē, numquam amīcōrum perīculīs dēfuit³⁵ . . .

Plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum³⁶

⁴⁵ here = near

⁴⁶ abigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, drive away; sc. volucrēs et ferās. Why subj.?

⁴⁷ fut. imperative = you shall put

⁴⁸ quī, adv., how?

⁴⁹ laniātus, -ūs, lacerating

⁵⁰ obsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be against, hurt. Why does oberit have the dat. mihi?

⁵¹ sentientī modifies mihi and has nihil as its obj.

10

¹ In the course of a speech defending the citizenship of the poet Archias against the charges of a certain Grattius, Cicero pronounced one of the world's finest encomiums on the inestimable value and delight of literature.

² tantō opere, so greatly (cp. magnopere)

³ homine, the poet Archias.

⁴ quia, conj., because

⁵ suppeditō (1), supply

⁶ the means by which

⁷ forēnsis, -e, of the forum. By Cicero's time the Forum was primarily the political and legal center of Rome.

⁸ strepitus, -ūs, din

⁹ re-ficiō, refresh, revive

¹⁰ convīcium, -iī, wrangling

¹¹ dēfessus, -a, -um, exhausted

¹² conquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, find rest

¹³ reprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum, censure; reprehendat, deliberative, or dubitative, subj. The deliberative subj. is used in questions implying doubt, indignation, or impossibility. Quis mē reprehendat: who is to blame me (I wonder)?

¹⁴ iūrē = cum iūre, abl. of manner that has virtually be-

come an adv.: rightly

¹⁵ suscēseō, -ēre, -uī, be incensed, + dat.

¹⁶ sī introduces sūmpserō. The only real difficulty with this complex cl. is the involvement of the quantum cls. Although these cls. should be read and understood in the order in which they stand, the following outline may prove a welcome guide. Quis mē reprehendat . . . sī ego tantum temporum ad haec studia sūmpserō quantum temporum cēterīs ad suās rēs (fēstōs diēs, voluptātēs, etc.) concēditur, quantum temporum aliī tribuunt convīviīs (alveolō pilae)?

¹⁷ quantum (temporum)

¹⁸ ob-eō, attend to

¹⁹ fēstus, -a, -um, festive

²⁰ celebrō (1), celebrate

²¹ requiēs, -ētis, acc. requiētem or requiem, rest

²² concēdō, grant, concede

²³ tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, allot

²⁴ tempestīvus, -a, -um, timely; here = early, beginning in the afternoon so as to be conveniently prolonged.

²⁵ convīvium, -iī, banquet

²⁶ alveolus, -ī, gaming board

²⁷ pila, -ae, ball (cp. pill)

²⁸ tantum (temporum) . . . quantum, as much . . . as

²⁹ ego-met, an emphatic form of ego

³⁰ re-colō, -ere, -uī, -cultum, renew

³¹ sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, take

³² ideō, adv., for this reason, therefore

³³ facultās, -tātis, f., skill. Combine with orātiō and translate: this oratorical skill.

³⁴ quantuscumque, -acumque, -umcumque, however great

³⁵ dē-sum, be lacking

³⁶ exemplum, -ī, example; exemplōrum also goes with plēnī and plēnae.

vetustās³⁷; quae iacērent in tenebrīs³⁸ omnia, nisi litterārum lūmen³⁹ accēderet. Quam multās nōbīs imāginēs⁴⁰—nōn solum ad intuendum,⁴¹
 15 vērūm⁴² etiam ad imitandum⁴³—fortissimōrum virōrum expressās⁴⁴
 scrīptōrēs et Graecī et Latīnī reliquērunt! Quās ego mihi semper in adminis-
 trandā⁴⁵ rē publicā prōpōnēs⁴⁶ animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōne⁴⁷
 hominum excellentium⁴⁸ cōnfōrmābam.⁴⁹

Quaeret quispiam,⁵⁰ “Quid? illī ipsī summī virī quōrum virtūtēs litterīs
 20 prōditae sunt,⁵¹ istāne doctrīnā⁵² quam tū effers⁵³ laudibus ērudītī fuērunt⁵⁴?”
 Difficile est hoc dē omnibus cōnfīrmāre,⁵⁵ sed tamen est certum quid respon-
 deam . . . : saepius ad laudem atque virtūtem nātūram sine doctrīnā quam
 sine nātūrā valuisse⁵⁶ doctrīnam. Atque īdem⁵⁷ ego contendō,⁵⁸ cum ad nātū-
 ram eximiam⁵⁹ et illūstrem⁶⁰ accesserit⁶¹ ratiō quaedam cōnfōrmātiōque⁶²
 25 doctrīnae, tum illud nesciō quid⁶³ praeclārum ac singulāre⁶⁴ solēre exsis-
 tere⁶⁵ . . .

Quod sī nōn hic tantus frūctus ostenderētur, et sī ex hīs studiīs dēlectātiō
 sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animī remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac
 liberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae⁶⁶ neque temporum⁶⁷ sunt neque
 30 aetātum omnium neque locōrum; at haec studia adulēscēntiam alunt, senec-
 tūtem oblectant, rēs secundās ōrnant, adversīs perfugium ac sōlācium
 praebent, dēlectant domī, nōn impediunt forīs, pernoctant nōbīscum, per-
 egrīnantur, rūsticantur. (Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 6.12–7.16, excerpts).

ANECDOTES FROM CICERO (11–15)

11. DEATH OF A PUPPY (EXAMPLE OF AN OMEN)

L. Paulus¹ cōnsul iterum, cum eī² bellum³ ut cum rēge Perse⁴ gereret⁵

³⁷ *vetustās, -tātis, f.*, antiquity

³⁸ *tenebrae, -ārum, darkness*

³⁹ *lūmen, -inis, n.*, light

⁴⁰ *imāgō, -ginis, f.*, portrait, picture

⁴¹ *intueor, gaze on, contemplate*

⁴² *vērūm, conj.*, but

⁴³ *imitor (1), imitate*

⁴⁴ *ex-primō (primō), describe, portray*

⁴⁵ *administrō (1), manage*

⁴⁶ *prō-pōnō, put forward, set before; prōpōnēs has quās as direct obj. and mihi as indirect obj.*

⁴⁷ *cōgitātiō, -ōnis, f.*, thought; *cp. cōgitō*

⁴⁸ *excellēs, gen. -entis, superior, remarkable*

⁴⁹ *cōnfōrmō (1), mold*

⁵⁰ *quispiam, quaequam, quidpiam, someone*

⁵¹ *prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, transmit, reveal*

⁵² *doctrīna, -ae, instruction*

⁵³ *effērō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, lift up, extol*

⁵⁴ *ērudīō (4), educate, train*

⁵⁵ *cōnfīrmō (1), assert*

⁵⁶ *valuisse ad laudem, to be powerful toward praise = to have led to praise; inf. in ind. state.*

⁵⁷ *idem ego, I the same person = I also*

⁵⁸ *maintain*

⁵⁹ *eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary*

⁶⁰ *illūstris, -e, noble, brilliant*

⁶¹ *accēdō here = be added*

⁶² *cōnfōrmātiō, -ōnis, f.*, molding, shaping

⁶³ *nesciō quis, nesciō quid, indef. pron., lit. I know not who/what = some (uncertain) person or thing; the nesciō remains unchanged in this phrase.*

⁶⁴ *singulāris, -e, unique, extraordinary*

⁶⁵ *existō, -ere, -stitī, arise, appear, exist*

⁶⁶ *cēterae (remissiōnēs or dēlectātiōnēs)*

⁶⁷ *gen. of possession used in predicate = predicate gen.; sc. omnium with each gen.: the other delights do not belong to all times . . .*

11

¹ *L. Aemilius Paulus Macedonicus was the father of Scipio Africanus Minor. As consul in 168 B.C. he brought the war with Macedonia to a successful conclusion by the defeat of the Macedonian King, Perseus. This explains why, before setting out against Perseus, he interpreted the chance words Persa periit as a favorable omen. The Romans believed seriously in the importance of omens.*

² *dat. with obtigisset*

³ *obj. of gereret*

⁴ *Perseus, -eī; Perse abl.*

⁵ *ut . . . gereret, noun cl. subject of obtigisset*

obtigisset,⁶ ut eā ipsā diē domum ad vesperum rediit, filiōlam⁷ suam Tertiam,⁸ quae tum erat admodum⁹ parva, osculāns¹⁰ animadvertit¹¹ trīsticulam.¹² “Quid est,¹³” inquit, “mea Tertia? Quid¹⁴ trīstis es?” “Mī pater,” inquit, “Persa¹⁵ periit.” Tum ille artius¹⁶ puellam complexus,¹⁷ “Accipiō,” inquit, “mea filia, omen.¹⁸” Erat autem mortuus catellus¹⁹ eō nōmine. (Cicero, *Dē Divīnātiōne* 1.46.103)

12. TOO CONSCIENTIOUS (AN EXAMPLE OF IRONY)

Est huic fīnitimum¹ dissimulātiōnī² cum honestō³ verbō vitiōsa⁴ rēs appellātur: ut cum Āfricānus cēnsor⁵ tribū⁶ movēbat eum centuriōnem⁷ quī in Paulī pugnā⁸ nōn adfuerat,⁹ cum ille sē custōdiae causā dīceret in castrīs¹⁰ remānsisse quaereretque cūr ab eō notārētur¹¹: “Nōn amō,” inquit, “nimium dīligentēs.” (Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* 2.67.272)

13. QUAM MULTA NŌN DĒSĪDERŌ!

Sōcratēs, in pompā¹ cum magna vīs² aurī³ argentīque⁴ ferrētur, “Quam multa nōn dēsīderō!” inquit.

Xenocratēs,⁵ cum lēgātī ab Alexandrō⁶ quīnquāgintā⁷ eī talenta⁸ attulissent (quae erat pecūnia temporibus illīs, Athēnīs praesertim,⁹ maxima), abduxit lēgātōs ad cēnam in Acadēmīam¹⁰; iīs apposuit¹¹ tantum quod satis esset, nullō apparātū.¹² Cum postrīdiē¹³ rogārent eum cui numerārī¹⁴ iūberet,

⁶ obtingō, -ere, -tigī, touch, fall to one's lot

⁷ fili (a) with the diminutive ending -ola, little daughter

⁸ Tertia, a name meaning third. The Romans often used ordinal numerals as names, though commonly without strict regard to the number of children they had; e.g., Secundus, Quīntus, Sextus, Decimus.

⁹ admodum, adv., very

¹⁰ osculor (1), kiss

¹¹ anim-ad-vertō, turn the mind to, notice, observe

¹² trīsticulus, -a, -um, rather sad, diminutive of tristis

¹³ What is it? What is the matter?

¹⁴ quid = cūr

¹⁵ Persa, the name of her pet

¹⁶ artius, adv., closely

¹⁷ complector, -ī, -plexus sum, embrace

¹⁸ omen, -inis, n., omen, sign; i.e., the omen of his victory over Perseus

¹⁹ catellus, -ī, puppy

12

¹ fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring; akin to: est fīnitinum, it is akin to

² dissimulātiō, -ōnis, f., irony

³ honestus, -a, -um, honorable, fine

⁴ vitiōsus, -a, -um, faulty, bad

⁵ cēnsor, -ōris, m., censor, Roman magistrate among whose duties was the assigning of citizens to their proper rank according to their property and service and the removal of names from the census rolls when citizens proved unworthy of citizenship.

⁶ tribus, -ūs, f., tribe, a political division of the Roman people

⁷ centuriō, -ōnis, m., centurion

⁸ pugna, -ae, battle

⁹ ad-sum, be present

¹⁰ castra, -ōrum, camp

¹¹ notō (1), mark, here with the nota cēnsōria placed opposite a citizen's name to indicate his removal from the citizen list in disgrace.

13

¹ pompa, -ae, parade

² vīs here = quantity (cp. cōpia)

³ aurum, -ī, gold

⁴ argentum, -ī, silver

⁵ Xenocratēs, -is, pupil of Plato and later head of the Academy

⁶ Alexander, -drī

⁷ indecl. adj., fifty

⁸ talentum, -ī, a talent, a large sum of money

⁹ praesertim, adv., especially

¹⁰ Acadēmīa, -ae, the Academy, a gymnasium in a grove just outside of Athens. Here Plato established his school, which might be called the first European university.

¹¹ ap-pōnō, place near, serve

¹² apparātus, -ūs, equipment, splendor

¹³ postrīdiē, adv., on the next day

¹⁴ numerō (1), count, pay out; sc. pecūniam as subject of numerārī

“Quid? Vōs hesternā,¹⁵” inquit, “cēnulā¹⁶ nōn intellēxistis mē pecūniā nōn egēre?” Quōs cum trīstiōrēs vīdisset, trīgintā¹⁷ minās¹⁸ accēpit nē aspernārī¹⁹ rēgis līberalitātem²⁰ vidērētur.

10 At vērō Diogenēs²¹ līberius,²² ut²³ Cynicus, Alexandrō rogantī ut diceret sī quid opus²⁴ esset: “Nunc quidem paululum,²⁵” inquit, “ā sōle.²⁶” Offēcerat²⁷ vidēlicet²⁸ aprīcantī.²⁹ (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.32.91–92)

14. WHAT MAKES A GOOD APPETITE

Dārēus¹ in fugā² cum aquam turbidam³ et cadāveribus⁴ inquinātam⁵ bibisset, negāvit umquam sē bibisse iūcundius. Numquam vidēlicet sitiēns⁶ biberat. Nec ēsuriēns⁷ Ptolemaeus⁸ ēderat,⁹ cui cum peragrantī¹⁰ Aegyptum,¹¹ comitibus¹² nōn cōsecūtīs¹³ cibārius¹⁴ in casā pānis datus esset, nihil
5 vīsum est illō pāne iūcundius. Sōcratem ferunt,¹⁵ cum ūsque ad vesperum contentius¹⁶ ambulāret quaesītumque esset¹⁷ ex eō quārē id faceret, respondisse sē, quō¹⁸ melius cēnāret, obsōnāre¹⁹ ambulandō famem.²⁰

Quid? Vīctum²¹ Lacedaemoniōrum in philitiīs²² nōnne vidēmus? Ubi²³ cum tyrannus cēnāvisset Dionysius, negāvit sē iūre²⁴ illō nigrō quod cēnae²⁵
10 caput erat dēlectātum.²⁶ Tum is quī illa coxerat,²⁷ “Minimē mīrum²⁸; condīmenta²⁹ enim dēfuērunt.³⁰” “Quae tandem?” inquit ille. “Labor in vēnātū,³¹ sūdor,³² cursus ad Eurōtam,³³ famēs, sitis.³⁴ Hīs enim rēbus Lacedaemoniōrum epulae³⁵ condiuntur.³⁶”

¹⁵ hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday

¹⁶ cēnula, -ae, diminutive of cēna

¹⁷ indecl. adj., thirty

¹⁸ mina, -ae, a Greek coin

¹⁹ aspernor (1), spurn, despise

²⁰ līberalitās, -tātis, f., generosity

²¹ L.I. 9 n. 38

²² līberius, adv., freely, boldly

²³ as a Cynic, being a Cynic

²⁴ opus (indecl.) est, is necessary: if he needed anything

²⁵ paululum, adv., a little

²⁶ i.e., you are blocking my sunlight

²⁷ officiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum + dat., be in the way, obstruct

²⁸ vidē-licet, adv. (you may see), clearly, evidently

²⁹ aprīcor (1), sun oneself

14

¹ Darius III, defeated by Alexander the Great in 331 B.C. The spelling Dārīus reflects later Greek pronunciation.

² fuga, -ae, flight

³ turbidus, -a, -um, turbid, roiled

⁴ cadāver, -eris, n., corpse (cp. cadaverous)

⁵ inquinātus, -a, -um, polluted

⁶ sitiō (4), be thirsty

⁷ ēsuriō (4), be hungry

⁸ Which Egyptian king of this name is unknown.

⁹ edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, eat (cp. edible)

¹⁰ per-agrō (1), wander through

¹¹ Aegyptus, -ī, f., Egypt

¹² comes, -itis, m., companion

¹³ cōn-sequor

¹⁴ cibārius . . . pānis, ordinary (coarse) bread; pānis, -is, m.

¹⁵ ferō here = report, say

¹⁶ contentē, strenuously, adv. from contendō, struggle

¹⁷ it had been asked of him, he had been asked

¹⁸ quō, regularly used instead of ut to introduce a purp. containing a compar.

¹⁹ obsōnō (1), buy provisions, here = provide (an appetite)

²⁰ famēs, -is, f., hunger

²¹ vīctus, -ūs, living, mode of living, food

²² philitia, -ōrum, public meals (for Spartan citizens of military age)

²³ ubi = among the Lacedaemonians

²⁴ iūs, iūris, n., soup

²⁵ dat. of purp. (S.S.)

²⁶ dēlectātum (esse)

²⁷ coquō, -ere, coxī, coctum, cook (cp. concoct)

²⁸ mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, surprising

²⁹ condīmentum, -ī, seasoning, condiment

³⁰ dē-sum, be lacking

³¹ vēnātus, -ūs, hunting

³² sūdor, -ōris, m., sweat

³³ at the Eurotas (Eurōtās, -ae, m., river on which Sparta was located)

³⁴ sitis, -is, f., thirst

³⁵ epulae, -ārum, banquet

³⁶ condiō (4), season, spice

Cōnfer sūdantēs,³⁷ ructantēs,³⁸ refertōs³⁹ epulīs tamquam opīmōs
 15 bovēs.⁴⁰ Tum intellegēs quī voluptātem maximē sequantur, eōs minimē cōn-
 sequī⁴¹; iūcunditātemque⁴² vīctūs⁴³ esse in dēsīderiō,⁴⁴ nōn in satietāte.⁴⁵ (Cic-
 ero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* 5.34.97–98 and 100, excerpts)

15. THEMISTOCLES; FAME AND EXPEDIENCY

Themistoclēs fertur¹ Serīphiō² cuidam in iūrgiō³ respondisse, cum ille
 dīxisset nōn eum suā sed patriae glōriā splendōrem⁴ assecūtum⁵: “Nec her-
 cule,⁶” inquit, “sī ego Serīphius essem, nec tū, sī Athēniēnsis⁷ essēs, clārus
 umquam fuissēs.” (Cicero, *Dē Senectūte*, 3.8)

5 Themistoclēs, post victōriam eius bellī quod cum Persīs⁸ fuit, dīxit in
 cōntiōne⁹ sē habēre cōnsilium rei pūblicae salūtāre,¹⁰ sed id scīrī nōn opus
 esse.¹¹ Postulāvit¹² ut aliquem populus daret quīcum¹³ communicāret.¹⁴ Da-
 tus est Aristīdēs. Huic¹⁵ ille (dixit) classem¹⁶ Lacedaemoniōrum, quae sub-
 ducta esset¹⁷ ad Gythēum,¹⁸ clam¹⁹ incendi²⁰ posse, quō factō frangi²¹ Lace-
 10 daemoniōrum opēs necesse esset.²² Quod Aristīdēs cum audīset, in cōntiō-
 nem magnā exspectātiōne²³ vēnit dīxitque perūtile²⁴ esse cōnsilium quod
 Themistoclēs adferret, sed minimē honestum. Itaque Athēniēnsēs, quod
 honestum nōn esset, id nē ūtile quidem putāvērunt, tōtamque eam rem,
 quam nē audierant quidem, auctōre Aristīde²⁵ repudiāvērunt.²⁶ (Cicero, *Dē*
Officiis 3.11.48–49)

16. GET THE TUSCULAN COUNTRY HOUSE READY¹

Tullius² S.D.³ Terentiae⁴ Suae

³⁷ sūdō (1), sweat

³⁸ ructō (1), belch

³⁹ refertus, -a, -um, stuffed, crammed, + *abl.*

⁴⁰ opīmus, -a, -um, fertile, fat; bōs, bovis, *m.*, ox

⁴¹ cōn-sequor, follow up, gain

⁴² iūcunditās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure, charm

⁴³ *n.* 21 above; here = food

⁴⁴ dēsīderium, -iī, desire

⁴⁵ satietās, -tātis, *f.*, abundance, satisfy

15

(For more about Themistocles and Aristides see selections 19 and 20 below.)

¹ is said, is reported

² Serīphius, -iī, inhabitant of Seriphos, a small island in the Aegean Sea.

³ iūrgium, -iī, quarrel

⁴ splendor, -ōris, *m.*, distinction, honor

⁵ as-sequor = ad-sequor, gain, attain

⁶ hercule, a mild oath, by Hercules

⁷ Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian

⁸ Persae, -ārum, *m.*, the Persians

⁹ cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly

¹⁰ salūtāris, -e, salutary, advantageous; modifies cōn-
 silium

¹¹ opus est, it is necessary

¹² postulō (1), demand, request

¹³ quīcum, quī = *old abl. form* + cum, with whom

¹⁴ communicō (1), communicate, share

¹⁵ huic = the last mentioned, Aristides

¹⁶ classis, -is, *f.*, fleet

¹⁷ sub-dūcō, beach; *subj. because subordinate cl. in ind. state. (see S.S.). Because of their shallow draft and small size, ancient ships were more often beached than anchored.*

¹⁸ Gythēum, -iī, the port of Sparta

¹⁹ clam, *adv.*, secretly

²⁰ incendiō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum, set on fire, burn

²¹ frangiō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, crush

²² necesse (*indecl. adj.*) est, it is necessary

²³ exspectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, expectation, *abl. of attendant circumstance*

²⁴ per-ūtilis, -e, very useful, advantageous

²⁵ auctōre Aristīde, *abl. abs.*

²⁶ repudiō (1), reject

16

¹ A homely little letter which serves as an antidote to Cicero's usually lofty concerns.

² (Mārcus) Tullius (Cicerō)

³ salūtem dicit

⁴ Terentia, -ae, wife of Cicero

In Tusculānum⁵ nōs ventūrōs⁶ putāmus aut Nōnīs⁷ aut postrīdiē.⁸ Ibi ut⁹ sint omnia parāta. Plūrēs¹⁰ enim fortasse¹¹ nōbīscum erunt et, ut arbitror, diūtius ibi commorābimur.¹² Lābrum¹³ sī in balneō¹⁴ nōn est, ut¹⁵ sit; item¹⁶ cētera quae sunt ad vīctum et ad valētūdinem¹⁷ necessariā.¹⁸ Valē. Kal. Oct.¹⁹ dē Venusīnō.²⁰ (Cicero, *Epistulae ad Familiārēs* 14.20)

17. LIVY ON THE DEATH OF CICERO¹

M. Cicerō sub adventum² triumvirōrum³ cesserat urbe . . . Prīmō in Tusculānum⁴ fūgit; inde trānsversīs⁵ itineribus in Formiānum,⁶ ut ab Caiētā⁷ nāvem cōnscēnsūrus,⁸ proficīscitur. Unde aliquotiēns⁹ in altum¹⁰ pro-
 5 vectum,¹¹ cum modo ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem¹² nā-
 vis . . . patī nōn posset, taedium¹³ tandem eum et fugae¹⁴ et vītae cēpit,
 regressusque¹⁵ ad superiōrem vīllam . . . “Moriar,” inquit, “in patriā saepe
 servātā.” Satis cōnstat¹⁶ servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmican-
 dum,¹⁷ ipsum dēpōnī lectīcam¹⁸ et quiētōs¹⁹ patī quod sors²⁰ inīqua²¹ cōgeret
 iussisse. Prōminētī²² ex lectīcā praebentīque immōtam cervīcem²³ caput
 10 praecīsum est.²⁴

Manūs quoque, scrīpsisse in Antōnium aliquid exprobrantēs,²⁵ praecīdē-
 runt. Ita relātum caput ad Antōnium, iussūque eius inter duās manūs in
 Rōstrīs positum,²⁶ ubi ille cōsul, ubi saepe cōsulāris,²⁷ ubi eō ipsō annō

⁵ **Tusculānum, -ī**, Tusculan estate (**praedium**) southeast of Rome in Latium

⁶ **ventūrōs (esse)**

⁷ **Nōnae, -ārum**, the Nones were the seventh day in March, May, July, October; the fifth day in other months.

⁸ **postrīdiē, adv.**, the day after

⁹ **(curā) ut**, take care that

¹⁰ **plūrēs**, several people

¹¹ **fortasse, adv.**, perhaps

¹² **com-moror (1)**, remain

¹³ **lābrum, -ī**, a wash basin or a bath

¹⁴ **balneum, -ī**, bathroom

¹⁵ **(cūrā) ut**

¹⁶ **item, adv.**, likewise

¹⁷ **valētūdō, -inis, f.**, health

¹⁸ **necessārius, -a, -um = Eng.**

¹⁹ **Kalendīs Octōbribus**, on the Kalends of October = October 1st

²⁰ *Sent from his estate at Venusia, in Apulia. The year is said to be 47 B.C.*

17

¹ *In 43 B.C.*

² **adventus, -ūs**, arrival

³ **triumvirī, -ōrum**, commission of three men, the second triumvirate composed of Antony, Octavian, and Lepidus

⁴ his Tusculan villa

⁵ **trānsversus, -a, -um**, transverse, crosswise

⁶ **Formiānum, -ī**, estate near Formiae, which was nearly 100 miles south of Rome on the Appian Way near the sea

⁷ **Caiēta, -ae**, a sea-coast town not far from Formiae

⁸ as he was going to board ship (**cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum**, ascend)

⁹ **aliquotiēns, adv.**, several times

¹⁰ **altum, -ī**, the deep, the sea

¹¹ **prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum**, carry forward; **provectum** (having sailed out) goes with **eum** below

¹² **iactātiō, -ōnis, f.**, tossing

¹³ **taedium, -ī**, weariness, disgust

¹⁴ **fuga, -ae**, flight; **fugae** depends on **taedium**

¹⁵ **regredior, -ī, -gressus sum**, go back

¹⁶ **cōnstat**, it is agreed

¹⁷ **dīmīcō (1)**, fight (to the finish)

¹⁸ **lectīca, -ae**, litter

¹⁹ (**eōs**) **quiētōs**, them quiet, *subject of patī; but we say: them quietly.* (**quiētus, -a, -um**)

²⁰ **sors, sortis, f.**, lot

²¹ **inīquus, -a, -um**, unfavorable, unjust (**in-aequus**)

²² **prōmineō, -ēre, -uī**, jut out, step forth: (**eī**) **prōminētī**, for him stepping forth = as he stepped forth, *dat. of ref. or interest*

²³ **cervīx, -vīcis, f.**, neck

²⁴ **praecīdō, -ere, -cīdī, cīsum (prae-caedō, cut)**, cut off—by the soldiers whom Antony had sent to execute Cicero in reprisal for Cicero's "Philippics" denouncing Antony. Such were the horrors of the proscriptions.

²⁵ **exprobrō (1)**, reproach, charge: (**militēs**), **exprobrantēs (manūs) scrīpsisse aliquid, manūs praecīdērunt**

²⁶ **positum, sc. est**

²⁷ **cōsulāris, -is, m.**, ex-consul

adversus²⁸ Antōnium . . . (quanta nūlla umquam hūmāna vōx²⁹!) cum admīrātiōne³⁰ ēloquentiae³¹ audītus fuerat. Vix attollentēs³² prae lacrimīs oculōs, hominēs intuērī³³ trucīdāta³⁴ membra³⁵ eius poterant. Vīxit trēs et sexāgintā³⁶ annōs . . . Vir magnus, ācer, memorābilis³⁷ fuit, et in cuius laudēs persequendās³⁸ Cicerōne laudātōre opus³⁹ fuerit.⁴⁰ (Livy 120.50)

18. MILTIADES AND THE BATTLE OF MARATHON¹

Eīsdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārēus, ex Asiā in Eurōpam² exercitū trāiectō,³ Scythīs⁴ bellum īferre⁵ dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcit in Histrō⁶ flūmine, quā⁷ cōpiās trādūceret.⁸ Eius pontis, dum ipse abesset,⁹ custōdēs¹⁰ relīquit prīncipēs quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide¹¹ dūxerat; quibus singulārum¹² urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sīc enim facillimē putāvit sē¹³ Graecā linguā loquentēs¹⁴ quī Asiā incolerent¹⁵ sub suā retentūrum¹⁶ potestāte, sī amīcīs suīs oppida¹⁷ tuenda¹⁸ trādīdisset.¹⁹ In hōc²⁰ fuit tum numerō Miltiadēs.²¹ Hic, cum crēbrī²² adferrent nūntiū²³ male rem gerere Dārēum premīque ā Scythīs, hortātus est pontis custōdēs nē ā Fortūnā²⁴ datam occāsionem liberandae Graeciae dīmitterent.²⁵

Nam sī cum eīs cōpiīs, quās sēcum trānsportārat,²⁶ interīssset Dārēus,

²⁸ *adversus*, prep. + acc., against

²⁹ *quanta . . . vōx (fuerat)*, how great no voice had been = greater than any voice had been

³⁰ *admīrātiō, -ōnis, f.* = Eng.

³¹ *ēloquentia, -ae, f.; ēloquentiae, obj. gen. (S.S.)*

³² *attollō, -ere*, raise, lift

³³ *intueor, -ērī, -tūtus sum*, look at

³⁴ *trucīdō (1)*, cut to pieces, butcher

³⁵ *membrum, -ī*, member (of the body), limb

³⁶ *indecl. adj.*, sixty

³⁷ *memorābilis, -e*, remarkable, memorable

³⁸ *per-sequor*, follow up, set forth

³⁹ *opus est + abl.* = there is need of (Cicero)

⁴⁰ *fuerit, perf. subj., potential subj.*, there would be need of

18

¹ 490 B.C., the first major battle of the Persian wars and one of the most illustrious victories in the apparently unending conflict between democracies and autocracies (despotisms): the relatively few Athenians, practically alone, against the hordes of the Persian autocracy.

² *Eurōpa, -ae*, Europe

³ *trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus*, transfer

⁴ *Scythae, -ārum, m.*, the Scythians, a nomadic people of southeastern Europe; *Scythīs, dat.* with compound vbs.

⁵ *bellum īn-ferō (-ferre, -tulī, -lātus)*, make war upon, + dat.

⁶ *Hister, -trī*, the Danube

⁷ *quā, rel. adv. instead of rel. pron.*, where, by which, referring to *pontem*

⁸ *trā (= trāns)-dūcō*. Why the subj. in the rel. cl.?

⁹ *ab-sum*, be away, be absent; *abesset, subj. of implied ind. state., the thought in his mind being*: "while I shall be away"

¹⁰ as guards

¹¹ Ionia and Aeolis, Greek sections of Asia Minor

¹² *singulī, -ae, -a (pl.)*, separate, one each

¹³ *sē, acc., subject of retentūrum (esse)*

¹⁴ the Greek-speaking peoples, *obj. of retentūrum*

¹⁵ *incolō, -ere, -uī*, inhabit

¹⁶ *retentūrum (esse); re-tineō*

¹⁷ *oppidum, -ī*, town; *occasionally city*

¹⁸ *tuenda*, (the towns) to be protected = the protection of the towns (*tueor, -ērī, tūtus sum*, look at, protect)

¹⁹ *fut. more vivid condition in ind. state.: eōs retinēbō sī amīcīs oppida trādīderō.*

²⁰ *hōc modifies numerō*. Note carefully that a characteristic of Nepos' style is the fondness for separating modifiers from the words which they modify. Be sure to match up such separated words accurately according to the rules of agreement.

²¹ *Miltiadēs, -is, m.*, Miltiades, Athenian general, hero of Marathon, who many years before the Battle of Marathon had been sent by the Athenians to rule over the Thracian Chersonesus, a peninsula west of the Hellespont.

²² *crēber, -bra, -brum*, numerous

²³ *nūntius, -ī*, messenger

²⁴ *Fortūna* is here regarded as a person (deity). Why is *ā* used?

²⁵ *dī-mittō*, let go, lose

²⁶ *trānsportō (1)*, transport, take across; *trānsportārat = trānsportāverat*

nōn solum Eurōpam fore²⁷ tūtā,²⁸ sed etiam eōs quī Asiam incolerent Graecī genere²⁹ liberōs ā Persārum futūrōs dominātiōne³⁰ et periculō. Id facile effici³¹ posse³²; ponte enim rescissō³³ rēgem vel³⁴ hostium ferrō vel inopiā³⁵ paucīs diēbus interitūrum. Ad hoc cōnsilium cum plērīque³⁶ accēderent, Histiaeus³⁷ Mīlēsius . . . [dīxit] adeō³⁸ sē abhorrere³⁹ ā cēterōrum cōnsiliō ut nihil putet ipsīs ūtilius quam cōfirmārī⁴⁰ rēgnum⁴¹ Persārum. Huius cum sententiam plūrimī essent secūtī, Miltiadēs . . . Chersonēsūm reliquit ac rūsus⁴² Athēnās dēmigrāvit.⁴³ Cuius⁴⁴ ratiō etsī nōn valuit, tamen magnopere est laudanda cum amīcior omnium libertātī quam suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Dārēus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redisset, hortantibus amicīs ut Graeciam redigeret⁴⁵ in suam potestātem, classem quīngentārum⁴⁶ nāvium comparāvit⁴⁷ eīque⁴⁸ Dātīm praefecit⁴⁹ et Artaphernem,⁵⁰ eīsque ducenta⁵¹ (mīlia) peditum,⁵² decem equitum⁵³ mīlia dedit—causam interserēs⁵⁴ sē hostem esse Athēniēnsibus quod eōrum auxiliō Iōnes⁵⁵ Sardīs⁵⁶ expugnās-
sent⁵⁷ suaque⁵⁸ praesidia interfēcissent. Illī praefectī⁵⁹ rēgiī,⁶⁰ classe ad Euboeam⁶¹ appulsā⁶² celeriter Eretriam⁶³ cēpērunt, omnēsque eius gentis cīvēs abreptōs⁶⁴ in Asiam ad rēgem mīsērunt. Inde⁶⁵ ad Atticam⁶⁶ accessērunt ac suās cōpiās in campum⁶⁷ Marathōna⁶⁸ dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō circiter⁶⁹ mīlia passuum⁷⁰ decem.

Hōc tumultū⁷¹ Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō⁷² tamque magnō permōtī⁷³

²⁷ *ind. state. depending on the idea of saying in hortātus est of the preceding sent.; direct form: sī Dārēus interierit, Eurōpa erit tūta. inter-eō, perish*

²⁸ *tūtus, -a, -um*

²⁹ *abl. of specification (S.S.), Greek in race or by race*

³⁰ *dominātiō, -ōnis, f. = Eng.*

³¹ *ef-ficiō, accomplish*

³² *still ind. state.*

³³ *rescindō, -ere, rescidī, rescissum, cut down*

³⁴ *vel . . . vel, either . . . or*

³⁵ *inopia, -ae, need, privation*

³⁶ *plērīque, -ōrumque, most people, very many (plērusque, -aque, -umque, the greater part, very many)*

³⁷ *Histiaeus, -ī, tyrant of Miletus in Asia Minor*

³⁸ *adeō, adv., so, to such a degree*

³⁹ *ab-horreō, -ēre, -uī, shrink from, be averse to*

⁴⁰ *cōfirmō (1), strengthen*

⁴¹ *subject of cōfirmārī*

⁴² *rūsus, adv., again*

⁴³ *dēmigrō (1), depart (cp. migrate)*

⁴⁴ *conjunctive use of rel.*

⁴⁵ *redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, reduce*

⁴⁶ *quīngentī, -ae, -a, 500*

⁴⁷ *comparāvit here = strong form of parāvit*

⁴⁸ *eī (= classī), dat. with compounds*

⁴⁹ *prae-ficio, + dat., put in charge or command of*

⁵⁰ *Dātis, -tidis, acc. Dātīm, Datis, a general; Artaphernēs, -is, Artaphernes, nephew of Darius*

⁵¹ *ducentī, -ae, -a, 200*

⁵² *pedes, -itis, m., foot-soldier*

⁵³ *eques, -itis, m., horseman*

⁵⁴ *interserō, -ere, allege*

⁵⁵ *Iōnes, -um, m., the Ionians, a Greek people inhabiting the central western coast of Asia Minor; -es, Greek ending*

⁵⁶ *Sardēs, -ium, acc. Sardīs, Sardis, capital of the Persian province of Lydia in western Asia Minor*

⁵⁷ *expugnō (1), take by storm*

⁵⁸ *sua, refers to Sardis*

⁵⁹ *praefectus, -ī, commander, deputy*

⁶⁰ *rēgius, -a, -um, royal*

⁶¹ *Euboea, -ae, Euboea, a large island off the eastern shore of central Greece*

⁶² *appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive, bring to land*

⁶³ *Eretria, -ae, Eretria, a city of the western central coast of Euboea*

⁶⁴ *ab-ripiō = ēripiō; abreptōs . . . misērunt, they carried away and sent to*

⁶⁵ *inde, adv., from that place*

⁶⁶ *Attica, -ae, Attica, district in central Greece of which the capital was Athens (somewhat unusually called an oppidum in the next sentence)*

⁶⁷ *campus, -ī, field, plain*

⁶⁸ *Marathōn, -ōnis, acc. -ōna, f., Marathon*

⁶⁹ *circiter, adv., about*

⁷⁰ *passus, -ūs, pace (ca. 5'); mīlia passuum, thousands of paces = miles*

⁷¹ *tumultus, -ūs, disturbance, uprising*

⁷² *propinquus, -a, -um, near, neighboring*

⁷³ *per-moveō, move thoroughly, trouble*

auxilium nūquam⁷⁴ nisi ā Lacedaemoniīs petivērunt Phīdippumque,⁷⁵ cursōrem eius generis quī hēmerodromoe⁷⁶ vocantur, Lacedaemonem⁷⁷ mīsērunt ut nūntiāret quam celerrimō opus esse⁷⁸ auxiliō. Domī autem creant⁷⁹ decem praetōrēs,⁸⁰ quī exercituī praecessent,⁸¹ in eīs Miltiadem; inter quōs magna fuit contentiō⁸² utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent an obviam⁸³ irent hostibus aciēque⁸⁴ dēcernerent. Ūnus⁸⁵ Miltiadēs maximē nītēbātur⁸⁶ ut prīmō tempore castra fierent⁸⁷ . . .

40 Hōc tempore nūlla cīvitas Athēniēnsibus auxiliō⁸⁸ fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs⁸⁹; ea mille mīsīt mīlitum.⁹⁰ Itaque hōrum adventū⁹¹ decem mīlia armātōrum⁹² complēta sunt,⁹³ quae manus mīrābilī⁹⁴ flagrābat⁹⁵ pugnandī cupiditāte; quō⁹⁶ factum est⁹⁷ ut plūs quam collēgae⁹⁸ Miltiadēs valēret.⁹⁹

Eius ergō auctōritāte impulsī¹⁰⁰ Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxērunt locōque¹⁰¹ idōneō castra fēcērunt. Dein¹⁰² posterō¹⁰³ diē sub montis rādīcibus¹⁰⁴ aciē regiōne¹⁰⁵ instrūctā¹⁰⁶ nōn apertissimā¹⁰⁷—namque¹⁰⁸ arborēs multīs locīs erant rārae¹⁰⁹—proelium commīsērunt¹¹⁰ hōc cōnsiliō ut et montium altitūdine¹¹¹ tegerentur¹¹² et arborum tractū¹¹³ equitātus¹¹⁴ hostium impedīrētur, nē multitūdine¹¹⁵ clauderentur.¹¹⁶ Dātis, etsī nōn aequum locum¹¹⁷ vidēbat suīs, tamen frētus¹¹⁸ numerō cōpiārum suārum cōnfligere¹¹⁹ cupiēbat, eōque¹²⁰ magis quod, priusquam¹²¹ Lacedaemoniī subsidiō¹²² venīrent, dīmi-

⁷⁴ nūquam, *adv.*, nowhere

⁷⁵ Phīdippus, -ī, Phidippus, *an Athenian courier (cursor, -ōris, m., runner)*

⁷⁶ hēmerodromus, -ī (-dromoe, *Gk. nom. pl.*), day runner (*Gk. word*), *professional runner. Herodotus says that Phidippus (or Phidippides) covered the 140 miles between Athens and Sparta in two days. Quī agrees with hēmerodromoe rather than generis since a rel. pron. agrees with a pred. noun rather than with the antecedent.*

⁷⁷ Lacedaemōn, -onis, *f.*, Lacedaemonia, Sparta

⁷⁸ opus est + *abl.* (*of means*), there is need of, *an impers. construction in which opus remains indecl.; opus esse, inf. in ind. state. with auxiliō in abl.*

⁷⁹ creant, *historical pres.*

⁸⁰ praetor, -ōris, *m.*, called stratēgoi, generals, *by the Athenians*

⁸¹ prae-sum + *dat.*, be in charge of; *why subj.?*

⁸² contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, controversy

⁸³ obviam (*adv.*) ire + *dat.*, go to meet

⁸⁴ aciēs, -ēī, line of battle

⁸⁵ alone, *i.e.*, of the ten generals

⁸⁶ nītor, -ī, nīxus sum, strive labor

⁸⁷ that a camp should be made = to take the field

⁸⁸ *dat. of purp. (S.S.)*

⁸⁹ Plataeēnsēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the men of Plataea, *a city in Boeotia just over the border from Attica*

⁹⁰ mille here = a noun with *gen. of whole mīlitum. This is regular with mīlia but uncommon with mille.*

⁹¹ adventus, -ūs, approach

⁹² armātī, -ōrum, armed men

⁹³ compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill out, complete

⁹⁴ mīrābilis, -e, wonderful, extraordinary; *modifies cupiditāte*

⁹⁵ flagrō (1), burn, be excited

⁹⁶ because of which = and because of this

⁹⁷ it happened that

⁹⁸ collēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague

⁹⁹ plūs . . . valēret, he had power more than = he had more power or influence than, he prevailed over. *valēret, why subj.?*

¹⁰⁰ impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, impel

¹⁰¹ locō, *place where, no prep. necessary with locō*

¹⁰² dein = deinde

¹⁰³ posterus, -a, -um, next following

¹⁰⁴ rādīx, -īcis, *f.*, root, base

¹⁰⁵ regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, region

¹⁰⁶ instrūō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up (battle line)

¹⁰⁷ interlocked word order: aciē instrūctā (*in*) regiōne nōn apertissimā; apertus, -a, -um, open

¹⁰⁸ namque, *conj.*, more emphatic form of nam

¹⁰⁹ rārus, -a, -um, scattered: there were scattered trees

¹¹⁰ proelium committere, join battle

¹¹¹ altitūdō, -inis, *f.*, height

¹¹² tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect

¹¹³ tractus, -ūs, dragging

¹¹⁴ equitātus, -ūs, cavalry

¹¹⁵ multitūdō, -inis, *f.*, large number

¹¹⁶ claudō, *here* enclose, surround

¹¹⁷ locum (esse) nōn aequum suīs

¹¹⁸ frētus, -a, -um, + *abl.*, relying on

¹¹⁹ cōnfligō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum, fight (*cp. conflict*)

¹²⁰ eō, *adv.*, on that account

¹²¹ priusquam and antequam, before, + *indic. denote an actual fact; + subj. denote anticipation as here:* before they could come

¹²² *dat.*

cāre ūtile arbitrābātur.

Itaque in aciem peditum centum (mīlia), equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit
proeliumque commisit. In quō¹²³ tantō¹²⁴ plūs¹²⁵ virtūte valuērunt Athēni-
55 ēnsēs ut decemplicem¹²⁶ numerum hostium prōffigārint,¹²⁷ adeōque eōs per-
terruērunt ut Persae nōn castra sed nāvēs petierint. Quā pugnā nihil adhūc¹²⁸
existit¹²⁹ nōbilis¹³⁰; nūlla enim umquam tam exigua¹³¹ manus tantās opēs
prōstrāvit.¹³² (Nepos, Miltiadēs 3–5, excerpts)

19. THEMISTOCLES AND THE BATTLE OF SALAMIS¹

Themistoclēs² ad (bellum Corcŷraeum³) gerendum praetor ā populō fac-
tus, nōn solum praesentī⁴ bellō sed etiam reliquō⁵ tempore ferōciōrem red-
didit cīvitātem. Nam cum pecūnia pūblica, quae ex metallīs⁶ redībat, largīti-
ōne⁷ magistrātuum⁸ quotannīs⁹ interīret,¹⁰ ille persuāsit populō ut eā
5 pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur.¹¹ Quā¹² celeriter effectā,
prīmum Corcŷraeōs frēgit,¹³ deinde maritimōs praedōnēs¹⁴ cōnsectandō¹⁵
mare tūtum reddidit. In quō¹⁶ . . . perītissimōs¹⁷ bellī nāvālis¹⁸ fēcit Athēni-
ēnsēs. Id quantae salutī¹⁹ fuerit ūniversae²⁰ Graeciae, bellō cognitum est Per-
sicō.²¹ Nam cum Xerxēs²² et marī et terrā²³ bellum ūniversae īferret Eurō-
10 pae, cum tantīs cōpiīs eam invāsīt²⁴ quantās neque ante nec postea habuit
quisquam. Huius enim classis mīlle et ducentārum nāvium longārum²⁵ fuit,
quam duo mīlia onerāriarum²⁶ sequēbantur. Terrestris²⁷ autem exercitus sep-

¹²³ in quō (proeliō)

¹²⁴ abl. of degree of difference (S.S.)

¹²⁵ they were strong by so much more (strength) in re-
spect to courage = they were so much more pow-
erful in the matter of courage

¹²⁶ decemplex, gen. -plicis, tenfold

¹²⁷ prōffigō (1), overthrow; prōffigārint = -gāverint.
Why subj.?

¹²⁸ ad-hūc, adv., thus far, hitherto

¹²⁹ existō, -ere, -stitī, arise, exist, be

¹³⁰ nōbilis, -e, famous

¹³¹ exiguus, -a, -um, small, scanty. "Never did so many
owe so much to so few."

¹³² prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum, overthrow, throw
down

19

¹ 480 B.C. The Battle of Salamis was the naval counter-
part of Marathon, except that this time Athens had
the help of Sparta.

² Themistoclēs, -is, or -ī, Themistocles, a talented
Athenian politician.

³ Corcŷraeus, -a, -um, Corcyraen; Corcyra, a large is-
land off the northwest coast of Greece. Actually
Nepos is in error about Themistocles' command in
the Corcyraean affair but he is correct about the
tremendous importance of Themistocles' big-navy
policy.

⁴ praesēns, gen. -entis, present

⁵ reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of

⁶ metallum, -ī, a mine, silver mines at Laurium in
Attica south of Athens

⁷ largītiō, -ōnis, f., generosity, liberality

⁸ magistrātus, -ūs, civil office; civil officer, magistrate

⁹ quotannīs, adv., annually

¹⁰ inter-eō, be lost, perish (cp. pereō): interīret, subj. in-
troduced by cum; the subject is pecūnia.

¹¹ aedificō (1), build (cp. edifice)

¹² quā (classe)

¹³ frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, overcome

¹⁴ maritimus (-a, -um = Eng.; cp. mare) praedō (-ōnis,
m., robber) = pirate; obj. of cōnsectandō

¹⁵ cōnsector (1), pursue, hound (cp. cōnsequor)

¹⁶ in (doing) which

¹⁷ perītus, -a, -um, + gen., skilled in; obj. complement

¹⁸ nāvālis, -e; cp. nāvis

¹⁹ quantae salutī, dat. of purp. with a dat. of ref.,
Graeciae (S.S.)

²⁰ ūniversus, -a, -um, entire, whole, as a whole

²¹ Persicus, -a, -um, Persian; the Second Persian War

²² Xerxēs, -is or -ī, m., Xerxes, son of Darius and king
of the Persians, 485–465 B.C.

²³ marī et terrā (or terrā marīque) abl. of place where,
without a prep., regular in this formula

²⁴ invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, move against, invade

²⁵ nāvium longārum, of 1,200 men-of-war; his fleet was
of 1,200 ships = his fleet consisted of . . .

²⁶ onerāria, -ae (nāvis), transport

²⁷ terrestris exercitus, land army

tingenta²⁸ (mīlia) peditum, equitum quadringenta²⁹ mīlia fuērunt.³⁰

Cuius dē adventū³¹ cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta³² et maximē
 15 Athēniēnsēs petī dīcerentur propter pugnam Marathōniam, mīsērunt
 Delphōs³³ cōnsultum³⁴ quidnam³⁵ facerent³⁶ dē rēbus suīs. Dēlībērantibus³⁷
 Pŷthia³⁸ respondit ut moenibus līgneīs³⁹ sē mūnīrent.⁴⁰ Id respōnsum⁴¹ quō⁴²
 valēret cum intellexeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit cōnsilium esse⁴³ Apol-
 linis ut in nāvēs sē suaque⁴⁴ cōnferrent: eum⁴⁵ enim ā deō significārī⁴⁶ mūrum
 20 ligneum. Tālī cōnsiliō probātō, addunt⁴⁷ ad superiōrēs (nāvēs) totidem⁴⁸
 nāvēs trirēmēs,⁴⁹ suaque omnia quae moverī poterant partim⁵⁰ Salamīna,⁵¹
 partim Troezēna⁵² dēportant.⁵³ Arcem⁵⁴ sacerdotibus paucisque maiōribus
 nātū⁵⁵ ad sacra⁵⁶ prōcūranda⁵⁷ trādunt; reliquum⁵ oppidum relinquunt.

Huius⁵⁸ cōnsilium plērisque cīvitatibus⁵⁹ displicēbat⁶⁰ et in terrā dīmi-
 25 cārī⁶¹ magis placēbat. Itaque missī sunt dēlectī⁶² cum Leōnidā,⁶³ Lacedae-
 moniōrum rēge, quī Thermopylās⁶⁴ occupārent⁶⁵ longiusque barbarōs⁶⁶ prō-
 gredī nōn paterentur. Iī vim hostium nōn sustinuērunt,⁶⁷ eōque locō omnēs
 interiērunt.¹⁰

At classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum⁶⁸ nāvium, in quā ducentae⁶⁸
 30 erant Athēniēnsium,⁶⁹ primum apud Artemīsium⁷⁰ inter Euboeam continen-

²⁸ septingentī, -ae, -a, seven hundred

²⁹ quadringentī, -ae, -a, four hundred

³⁰ Though the subject, *exercitus*, is *sg.*, *fuērunt* is *pl.* according to the idea of plurality which precedes it.

³¹ *adventus*, -ūs, approach, arrival

³² *per-ferō*

³³ *acc. of place to which.* At Delphi was the famous oracle of Apollo.

³⁴ *acc. supine of cōnsulō to express purp. = to consult*

³⁵ *quisnam, quidnam*, who or what in the world

³⁶ both *ind. quest. and deliberative subj.*

³⁷ *dēlībērō* (1), deliberate; (*eīs*) *dēlībērantibus*, *dat.*

³⁸ *Pŷthia*, -ae, the Pythian priestess, who gave the response of Apollo

³⁹ *ligneus*, -a, -um, wooden

⁴⁰ *mūniō* (4), fortify, defend

⁴¹ *respōnsum*, -ī, the noun of *respondeō*, subject of *valēret*

⁴² *quō* (*adv.*) *valēret*, *lit.* in what direction this was strong or valid = in what way this applied or what this meant

⁴³ *esse.* The *inf.* shows that this is *ind. state.* with *persuādeō* and not the more common *jussive noun cl.* introduced by *ut*: he persuaded (them) that it was the advice of Apollo that they should betake . . .

⁴⁴ *sua*, their things = their possessions

⁴⁵ *eum mūrum ligneum*, that wooden wall (= the ships)

⁴⁶ *significō* (1), signify, mean; *significārī*, *ind. state*, depending on a *vb.* of saying understood

⁴⁷ *ad-dō*, -dere, -didī, -ditum, add

⁴⁸ *totidem*, *indecl. adj.*, just as many

⁴⁹ *trirēmīs*, -e, having three banks of oars

⁵⁰ *partim*, *adv.*, partly

⁵¹ *Salamīs*, -īnis, *acc.* *Salamīna*, *f.*, Salamis, island on west coast of Attica; *acc. of place to which* (islands as well as cities and towns)

as well as cities and towns)

⁵² *Troezēn*, -ēnis, *acc.* *Troezēna*, *f.*, Troezen, southeastern part of Argolis, across the Saronic Gulf from Athens.

⁵³ *dēportō* (1), carry off

⁵⁴ the acropolis of the city of Athens.

⁵⁵ *maiōrēs nātū*, those greater in respect to birth = old men, elders

⁵⁶ *sacer*, -cra, -crum, sacred; *sacra*, *n. pl.* sacred vessels, or rites

⁵⁷ *prōcūrō* (1), take care of

⁵⁸ *i. e.*, Themistocles'

⁵⁹ *plērisque cīvitatibus*, *i. e.*, the allies of the Athenians; *dat.* with *displicēbat*

⁶⁰ *dis-placeō*

⁶¹ *dīmicārī*, *impers. pass.*, *lit.* that it be fought, but translate that the war be fought. The *inf.* *dīmicārī* is subject of *placēbat*.

⁶² *dēlectus*, -a, -um, chosen, picked; chosen men

⁶³ *Leōnidās*, -ae, *m.*, Leonidas

⁶⁴ *Thermopylae*, -ārum, Thermopylae, a mountain pass near the southern border of Thessaly

⁶⁵ *occupō* (1), seize

⁶⁶ *barbarus*, -a, -um, foreign, uncivilized, barbarian (commonly applied by a kind of ethnocentrism to those not of the Greek and Roman civilization)

⁶⁷ *sustineō*, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, sustain; the subject is *īī* (= *eī*).

⁶⁸ See *App.* under Numerals (cardinals 200 and 300); *ducentae* (nāvēs)

⁶⁹ *predicate gen. of possession*: were of the Athenians = belonged to the Athenians

⁷⁰ *apud Artemīsium*, near Artemisium, promontory at northern tip of Euboea

temque⁷¹ terram cum classiariis⁷² regiis⁷³ conflixit.⁷⁴ Angustias⁷⁵ enim Themistocles quaerebat, ne multitudinem⁷⁶ circumiretur.⁷⁷ Hinc etsi pari proelio⁷⁸ discesserant, tamen eodem loco non sunt ausi manere, quod erat periculum ne,⁷⁹ si pars navium adversariorum⁸⁰ Euboeam superasset,⁸¹ ancipiti⁸² premerentur periculo. Quo⁸³ factum est ut⁸⁴ ab Artemisio discederent et exadversum⁸⁵ Athenas apud Salamina classem suam constituerent.⁸⁶

At Xerxes, Thermopylis expugnatis, protinus accessit astu,⁸⁷ idque, nullis defendentibus, interfectis sacerdotibus quos in arce invenerat, incendio⁸⁸ delavit. Cuius flamma perterritis⁸⁹ classiariis cum manere non auderent et plurimum hortarentur ut domos⁹⁰ suas discederent moenibusque se defenderent, Themistocles unus restitit⁹¹ et universos par esse posse⁹² aiebat,⁹³ dispersos⁹⁴ testabatur⁹⁵ perituros; idque Eurybiadi,⁹⁶ regi Lacedaemoniorum, qui tum summae⁹⁷ imperii praeerat,⁹⁸ fore⁹⁹ adfirmabat.¹⁰⁰

Quem cum minus quam vellet moveret, noctu¹⁰¹ de servis suis¹⁰² quem habuit¹⁰³ fidelissimum ad regem misit ut ei nuntiaret suis verbis¹⁰⁴ adversarios eius¹⁰⁵ in fuga¹⁰⁶ esse; qui¹⁰⁷ si discessissent,¹⁰⁸ maiore cum labore . . . (eum) bellum confecturum, cum singulis¹⁰⁹ consecrari cogeretur; quos si statim aggredieretur,¹¹⁰ brevi (tempore) universos oppressurum . . . Hac re audita barbarus, nihil dolere¹¹¹ subesse¹¹² credens, postridie alienissimum¹¹³ sibi locum, contra¹¹⁴ opportunissimum¹¹⁵ hostibus, adeo angusto mari¹¹⁶ conflixit ut eius multitudinem navium explicari non potuerit¹¹⁷ . . . Victus ergo est magis

⁷¹ **continens terra, continentis terrae**, the mainland

⁷² **classarius, -ii**, a marine (*lit.* a soldier of the fleet)

⁷³ **regius, -a, -um**, royal

⁷⁴ **confligō, -ere, -flicī, -flictum**, to fight

⁷⁵ **angustiae, -arum**, narrow place

⁷⁶ **multitudo, -inis, f.**, large number, multitude

⁷⁷ **circum-eō**, surround

⁷⁸ **pari proelio**, the battle was a draw

⁷⁹ **ne** = lest, *similar to the construction after verbs of fearing*

⁸⁰ **adversarius, -a, -um**, hostile; **adversarius, -ii**, opponent, enemy

⁸¹ *a simple fut. condition in a ne-cl. The original thought was si pars superaverit, . . . prememur; the fut. perf. indic. superaverit becomes plupf. subj. superasset.*

⁸² **anceps, gen. ancipitis**, two-headed, double

⁸³ **quo** = **quare**

⁸⁴ *result cl., subject of factum est:* = the result was that

⁸⁵ **exadversum, prep. + acc.**, opposite

⁸⁶ **constituo, -ere, -stitui, -stitutum**, draw up, establish

⁸⁷ **astu, n. indecl.**, the city (= Athens), *obj. of accessit*

⁸⁸ **incendium, -ii**, burning, fire. *The marks of this fire can still be seen on some of the marble pieces later built into the wall of the Acropolis.*

⁸⁹ **per-terreo**

⁹⁰ *place to which without a prep. as in the sg. domum*

⁹¹ **resisto, -ere, -stiti**, make a stand, resist

⁹² **universos . . . posse**, all together (united) they could be equal (*to the Persians*)

⁹³ *impf. of ait*

⁹⁴ **di-spergo, -ere, -spersi, -persum**, scatter

⁹⁵ **testor (1)**, testify, declare

⁹⁶ **Eurybiades, -is, m.**, Eurybiades; **Eurybiadi** *depends on adfirmabat.*

⁹⁷ **summa, -ae**, highest place

⁹⁸ **summae imperii (gen. of whole) praeerat**, he was in charge of the highest part of the command = he was commander-in-chief

⁹⁹ *Subject of fore (= futurum esse) is id.*

¹⁰⁰ **adfirmo (1)**, assert, declare

¹⁰¹ **noctu, adv.**, at night

¹⁰² **(illum) de servis suis**, that one of his slaves

¹⁰³ considered

¹⁰⁴ in his (Themistocles') own words, *i.e.*, in his own name

¹⁰⁵ **adversarios (= hostes) eius (= regis)**

¹⁰⁶ **fuga, -ae**, flight

¹⁰⁷ **qui = et ei**

¹⁰⁸ **si discessissent . . . (eum) bellum confecturum (esse)**, *another simple fut. condition in ind. state.: si discesserint (fut. perf.), tu bellum conficiēs . . . ; conficio, -ere, -feci, -fectum*, finish, accomplish.

¹⁰⁹ one at a time

¹¹⁰ **aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum**, attack

¹¹¹ **dolus, -i**, deceit, trick. *What kind of gen. is doli?*

¹¹² **sub-sum**, be under, be concealed

¹¹³ **alienus, -a, -um**, foreign, unfavorable

¹¹⁴ **contra, adv.**, on the contrary

¹¹⁵ **opportunus, -a, -um**, advantageous, *referring to loco*

¹¹⁶ *abl. of place where without a prep.*

¹¹⁷ *The perf. subj. is not uncommon in result cl. in historical sequence.*

etiam cōnsiliō Themistoclī quam armīs Graeciae . . . Sic ūnīus virī prū-
dentiā¹¹⁸ Graecia liberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit¹¹⁹ Asia.

Haec (est) altera victōria quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tro-
55 paeō.¹²⁰ Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium maxima post
hominum memoriam classis est dēvicta.¹²¹ (**Nepos, Themistoclēs** 2–4, ex-
cerpts)

20. ARISTIDES THE JUST

Aristīdēs,¹ Lysimachī² fīlius, Athēniēnsis, aequālis³ ferē fuit Themistoclī⁴
atque cum eō dē prīncipātū⁵ contendit . . . In hīs autem cognitum est
quantō⁶ antistāret⁷ ēloquentia innocentiae.⁸ Quamquam enim adeō ex-
cellēbat⁹ Aristīdēs abstinentiā¹⁰ ut ūnus post hominum memoriam . . . cog-
5 nōmine¹¹ “Iūstus” sit appellātus, tamen ā Themistocle collabefactus¹² tes-
tulā¹³ illā¹⁴ exsiliō¹⁵ decem annōrum¹⁶ multātus est.¹⁷

Quī quidem cum intellexeret reprimī¹⁸ concitātam¹⁹ multitūdinem nōn
posse, cēdēnsque animadvertisset quendam scrībentem ut patriā pellerētur,²⁰
quaesisse ab eō²¹ dīcitur quārē id faceret aut quid Aristīdēs commīssisset cūr²²
10 tantā poenā dignus dūcerētur. Cui ille respondit sē ignōrāre²³ Aristīdēn, sed
sibi nōn placēre²⁴ quod tam cupidē labōrāsset ut praeter ceterōs “Iūstus”
appellārētur. Hic decem annōrum lēgitimam²⁵ poenam nōn pertulit. Nam
postquam²⁶ Xerxēs in Graeciam dēscendit,²⁷ sextō ferē annō quam²⁸ erat
expulsus, populī scītō²⁹ in patriam restitūtus est.³⁰

15 Interfuit³¹ autem pugnae nāvālī apud Salamīna quae facta est prius-

¹¹⁸ **prūdentia, -ae**, foresight, discretion

¹¹⁹ **succumbō, -ere, -cubūi**, submit, succumb

¹²⁰ **Marathōniō tropaeō**, trophy or victory at Marathon

¹²¹ **dē-vincō**, conquer completely

20

¹ **Aristīdēs, -is, m.**, Aristides, Athenian statesman and general

² **Lysimachus, -ī**, Lysimachus

³ **aequālis, -is, m.**, an equal in age, a contemporary

⁴ **Themistoclī**, here gen. of possession

⁵ **prīncipātus, -ūs**, first place, leadership

⁶ *abl. of degree of difference (S.S.) depending on the idea of comparison in antistāret*: how much

⁷ **anti-stō, -āre, -stetī**, stand before = excel

⁸ **innocentia, -ae**, harmlessness; integrity. *Why dat.?*

⁹ **excellō, -ere, -uī, -celsum**, excel; **excellēbat**: note that **quamquam** (although) is used with the indic.

¹⁰ **abstinentia, -ae**, self-restraint, especially in matters involving public funds, uprightness; **abstinentiā**, *abl. of specification (S.S.)*.

¹¹ **cognōmen, -minis, n.**, here = epithet, appellative. Of the three regular Roman names (**praenōmen, nōmen, cognōmen**) the **cognōmen** (*cp. cognōscō*) seems to have originated as a kind of nickname.

¹² **collabefiō, -fierī, -factus sum**, be overthrown, be

ruined

¹³ **testula, -ae**, little potsherd; ostracism; **testulā** *abl. of accordance or perhaps means. Look up the interesting history of ostracism, a political safety valve against tyranny.*

¹⁴ **illā**, in the unusual position of following its noun = that famous

¹⁵ **exsiliō**, *abl. of penalty (= a form of abl. of means)*

¹⁶ **decem annōrum**, *gen. of description*

¹⁷ **multō** (1), punish

¹⁸ **re-primō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum**, press back, check

¹⁹ **concitō** (1), arouse, excite

²⁰ *jussive noun cl.*, writing that he should be driven out

²¹ **eō**, *i.e.*, the **quendam** above

²² (what he had committed) that

²³ **ignōrō** (1), not know, be unacquainted with

²⁴ **sibi nōn placēre** (*impers.*), it was not pleasing to him = he was displeased (because . . .)

²⁵ **lēgitimus, -a, -um**, fixed by law, legal

²⁶ **postquam**, *conj. + perf. ind.*, after

²⁷ **dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum**, descend, march on

²⁸ **quam** = **postquam**; **post** sometimes omitted after an ordinal number in the *abl. of time construction*

²⁹ **scītum, -ī**, decree (*cp. plebiscite*)

³⁰ **restituō, -ere, -stitūi, -stitūtum**, restore

³¹ **inter-sum + dat.**, be present at, take part in

quam³² poenā liberārētur. Īdem³³ praetor fuit Athēniēnsium apud Plataeās³⁴ in proeliō quō fūsus³⁵ (est) barbarōrum exercitus Mardoniusque³⁶ interfectus est . . . Huius aequitāte³⁷ factum est,³⁸ cum in commūnī classe esset Graeciae simul cum Pausaniā³⁹ (quō duce⁴⁰ Mardonius erat fugātus⁴¹), ut summa imperiū⁴² maritimī ab Lacedaemoniīs trānsferrētur ad Athēniēnsēs; namque ante id tempus et marī et terrā ducēs erant Lacedaemoniī. Tum autem et intemperantiā⁴³ Pausaniae et iūstitiā factum est Aristīdis ut omnēs ferē cīvitatēs Graeciae ad Athēniēnsium societātem⁴⁴ sē applicārent⁴⁵ et adversus barbarōs hōs ducēs dēligerent⁴⁶ sibi.

20

25 Quōs⁴⁷ quō⁴⁸ facilius repellerent,⁴⁹ sī forte⁵⁰ bellum renovāre⁵¹ cōnārentur, ad classēs aedificandās exercitūque comparandōs⁵² quantum pecūniae quaeque⁵³ cīvitas daret, Aristīdēs dēlēctus est quī cōstitueret,⁵⁴ eiusque arbitriō⁵⁵ quadringēna⁵⁶ et sexāgēna talenta quotannīs Dēlum⁵⁷ sunt conlāta; id enim commūne aerārium⁵⁸ esse voluērunt. Quae omnis pecūnia posterō⁵⁹

30 tempore Athēnās trānslāta est. Hic quā⁶⁰ fuerit⁶¹ abstinentiā, nūllum est certius indicium⁶² quam quod,⁶³ cum tantīs rēbus praefuisset,⁶⁴ in tantā paupertate dēcessit,⁶⁵ ut quī⁶⁶ efferrētur vix reliquerit. Quō⁶⁷ factum est ut fīliae eius pūblicē⁶⁸ alerentur et dē commūnī aerāriō dōtibus⁶⁹ datīs collocārentur.⁷⁰ (**Nepos, Aristīdēs, excerpts**)

³² priusquam + subj.

³³ the same man = he also

³⁴ Plataeae, -ārum, Plataea

³⁵ fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour out, rout

³⁶ Mardonius, -iī, Mardonius, Persian general under Xerxes in command of the "barbarians"

³⁷ aequitās, -tātis, f., equity, fairness; aequitāte, abl. of cause (S.S.)

³⁸ factum est . . . ut summa imperiū trānsferrētur, it happened that the chief command was transferred; ut . . . trānsferrētur, noun cl. of result used as subject of factum est

³⁹ Pausaniās, -ae, m., Pausanias, a Spartan, victor over the Persians at Plataea in 479 B.C. but a person whose selfish ambition was too great to permit his continuing long as commander-in-chief of the united Greek forces

⁴⁰ abl. abs.

⁴¹ fugō (1), put to flight, rout; not to be confused with fugiō

⁴² L.I. 19 n. 97-98

⁴³ intemperantia, -ae, intemperance, arrogance

⁴⁴ societās, -tātis, f., confederacy, alliance

⁴⁵ applicō (1), attach

⁴⁶ dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum = legō

⁴⁷ = barbarōs

⁴⁸ L.I. 14 n. 18

⁴⁹ re-pellō

⁵⁰ forte, adv., by chance

⁵¹ If novus is new, what must the vb. re-novō (1) mean?

⁵² Both gerundive phrases belong in the quantum cl.

⁵³ quaeque cīvitas: quaeque, f. adj. form of quisque

⁵⁴ cōstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtum, establish, decide; quī cōstitueret, rel. cl. of purp., which has as its obj. the quantum . . . daret cl.

⁵⁵ arbitrium, -i, judgment, decision; arbitriō, what kind of abl.?

⁵⁶ quadringēna et sexāgēna (distributive numerals) talenta quotannīs, 460 talents each year

⁵⁷ Dēlos, -i, f., Delos, small island in the center of the Cyclades in the Aegean

⁵⁸ aerārium, -iī, treasury

⁵⁹ posterus, -a, -um, coming after (post), later

⁶⁰ quā abstinentiā, abl. of description, of what integrity he was = how great was his integrity

⁶¹ perf. subj., ind. quest. depending on indicium

⁶² indicium, -iī, indication, proof

⁶³ the fact that

⁶⁴ prae-sum + dat., be in charge of

⁶⁵ dē-cēdō, depart, die

⁶⁶ quī = old form of abl.: with efferētur = by which he might be buried = enough to bury him

⁶⁷ quō, adv., wherefore

⁶⁸ pūblicē, adv., at public expense

⁶⁹ dōs, dōtis, f., dowry

⁷⁰ collocō (1), place, settle in marriage

21. TIMOLEON¹

Diōne² Syrācūsīs interfectō, Dionysius³ rursus Syrācūsārum potītus est.⁴ Cuius adversariī opem ā Corinthiīs⁵ petiērunt ducemque, quō in bellō ūterentur, postulārunt. Hūc Tīmoleōn⁶ missus incredibili⁷ fēlicitāte⁸ Dionysium tōtā Siciliā dēpulit.⁹ Cum (eum) interficere posset, nōluit, tūtōque¹⁰ ut Corinthum¹¹ perveniret effēcit,¹² quod utrōrumque¹³ Dionysiōrum opibus Corinthiī saepe adiūtī fuerant . . . eamque praeclearam victōriam dūcēbat in quā plūs esset clēmentiae quam crūdēlitātis¹⁴ . . .

Quibus rēbus cōfectīs,¹⁵ cum propter diūturnitatem¹⁶ bellī nōn solum regiōnēs¹⁷ sed etiam urbēs dēsertās¹⁸ vidēret, conquīsivit¹⁹ . . . colōnōs.²⁰ Cīvibus veteribus sua²¹ restituit, novīs²² bellō vacuēfactās²³ possessiōnēs²⁴ dīvisit²⁵; urbium moenia disiecta²⁶ fānaque²⁷ dētēcta²⁸ refēcit²⁹; cīvitātibus lēgēs libertātemque reddidit . . . Cum tantīs esset opibus³⁰ ut etiam invītīs³¹ imperāre posset, tantum³² autem amōrem haberet omnium Siculōrum³³ ut nūllō recūsante rēgnum obtinēre³⁴ liceret, māluit sē dīligī quam metuī. Itaque, cum primum³⁵ potuit, imperium dēposuit ac prīvātus³⁶ Syrācūsīs . . . vīxit. Neque vērō id imperitē³⁷ fēcit, nam quod ceterī rēgēs imperiō potuerunt, hic benevolentia³⁸ tenuit . . .

Hic cum aetate iam prōvectus esset,³⁹ sine ūllō morbō lūmina⁴⁰ oculōrum amīsīt. Quam calamitatem⁴¹ ita moderātē⁴² tulit ut . . . (nēmō) eum

21

¹ *Timoleon, who came from a noble family at Corinth, was a great champion of liberty against tyranny. By 334 B.C. he was in Sicily fighting the Carthaginians, expelling tyrants, and establishing democracies.*

² **Diōn, Diōnis, m.**, Dion, relative and friend of the tyrant Dionysius the Elder. With the aid of Plato he tried—but in vain—to give a noble pattern to the life of Dionysius the Younger, who followed his father in tyranny. After finally exiling Dionysius the Younger from Syracuse, he himself ruled tyrannically and was assassinated in 353 B.C.

³ **Dionysius, -iī**, Dionysius the Younger

⁴ **potior** + *gen. or abl.*

⁵ **Corinthiī, -ōrum**, Corinthians

⁶ **Tīmoleōn, -ontis, m.**, Timoleon

⁷ **incredibilis, -e**, incredible

⁸ **fēlicitās, -tātis, f.**, happiness, good fortune

⁹ **dē-pellō**

¹⁰ **tūtō, adv.**, safely

¹¹ **Corinthus, -ī, f.**, Corinth, on the Isthmus of Corinth

¹² *L. A. 8 n. 20–21*

¹³ **uterque, utraque, utrumque**, each; *here* = both

¹⁴ **crūdēlitās, -tātis, f.**, cruelty

¹⁵ *These words refer not only to the expulsion of Dionysius, but also to a great victory over the Carthaginians in Sicily as recounted in the omitted passages.*

¹⁶ **diūturnitās, -tātis, f.**, long duration

¹⁷ **regiō, -ōnis, f.**, region; *here* = country districts

¹⁸ **dēsertus, -a, -um**, deserted

¹⁹ **con-quīrō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsītum (quaerō)**, seek out, gather together

²⁰ **colōnus, -ī**, settler, colonist

²¹ **sua, n. pl.**

²² **novīs (colōnīs)**

²³ **vacuē-faciō**, make empty

²⁴ **possessiō, -ōnis, f.**, possession, property

²⁵ **dīvidō, -ere, dīvisī, dīvisum**, divide, distribute

²⁶ **dis-iciō**, throw apart, scatter

²⁷ **fānum, -ī**, shrine, temple (*cp. profane, fanatic, fan* = devotee)

²⁸ **dē-tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum**, unroof, uncover (*cp. detect*)

²⁹ **re-ficiō**

³⁰ **tantīs . . . opibus: abl. of description**

³¹ **(Siculīs) etiam invītīs**, (the Sicilians) even against their will

³² **tantum . . . liceret: cum**, although, *introduces this cl. as well as the preceding one.*

³³ **Siculī, -ōrum**, the Sicilians

³⁴ **obtimeō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, occupy, hold

³⁵ **cum primum**, as soon as

³⁶ **prīvātus, -ī**, private citizen; as a private citizen, he . . .

³⁷ **imperitē, adv.**, unskillfully, ignorantly

³⁸ **benevolentia, -ae**, good-will, kindness

³⁹ **prō-vehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum**, carry forward

⁴⁰ **lūmen, -minis, n.**, light; sight

⁴¹ **calamitās, -tātis, f.**, misfortune

⁴² **moderātē, adv.**, with moderation

20 querentem audierit⁴³ . . . Nihil umquam neque insolēns⁴⁴ neque glōriōsum⁴⁵
ex ore eius exiit. Quī quidem, cum suās laudēs audīret praedicārī,⁴⁶ num-
quam aliud dīxit quam⁴⁷ sē in eā rē maximē dīs agere grātiās . . . quod, cum
Siciliam recreāre cōstituissent, tum sē potissimum⁴⁸ ducem esse voluissent.
Nihil enim rērum hūmānarum sine deōrum nūmine⁴⁹ gerī putābat . . .

25 Proelia maxima nātālī⁵⁰ suō diē fēcit omnia; quō factum est ut⁵¹ eius
diem nātālem fēstum⁵² habēret ūniversa Sicilia . . .

Cum quīdam Dēmaenetus⁵³ in cōntiōne⁵⁴ populī dē rēbus gestīs⁵⁵ eius
dētrahere⁵⁶ coepisset ac nōnnūlla inveherētur⁵⁷ in Timoleonta, dīxit nunc dē-
mum⁵⁸ sē vōtī esse damnātum⁵⁹; namque hoc ā dīs immortalibus semper
30 precātum⁶⁰ ut tālem libertātem restitueret Syrācūsānīs in quā cuivīs⁶¹ licēret
dē quō vellet impūne⁶² dīcere.⁶³

Hic cum diem suprēmum obīssset, pūblicē⁶⁴ ā Syrācūsānīs in gymnasiō,⁶⁵
quod Tīmoleontēum⁶⁶ appellātur, tōtā celebrante⁶⁷ Siciliā, sepultus est.⁶⁸
(*Nepos, Tīmoleōn* 2–5, excerpts)

22. HORACE'S "CARPE DIEM"

Tū nē quaesierīs¹—scīre nefās²—quem mihi, quem³ tibi
fīnem dī dederint, Leuconoē,⁴ nec Bābylōniōs
temptārīs⁵ numerōs.⁶ Ut melius,⁷ quidquid erit, patī.

. . .
Spem longam⁸ resecēs.⁹ Dum loquimur, fūgerit invida¹⁰

⁴³ *perf. subj. in historical sequence*

⁴⁴ *insolēns, gen. -entis, arrogant, insolent*

⁴⁵ *glōriōsus, -a, -um, here = boastful*

⁴⁶ *praedicō (1), declare, relate*

⁴⁷ *aliud quam, other than*

⁴⁸ *potissimum, adv., especially, above all*

⁴⁹ *nūmen, -minis, n., divine power, command*

⁵⁰ *nātālis diēs, nātālis diē, m., birthday*

⁵¹ *quō . . . ut, L.I. 20 n. 38, 67*

⁵² *fēstus, -a, -um, festive*

⁵³ *Dēmaenetus, -ī, Demaenetus, an enemy of Timoleon*

⁵⁴ *cōntiō, -ōnis, f., assembly*

⁵⁵ *rēs gestae, rērum gestārum (lit. things done), ex-
ploits, deeds*

⁵⁶ *dē-trahō, detract, disparage*

⁵⁷ *nōnnūlla is n. acc. pl.—invehor, -ī, -vectus sum (depo-
nent form of in-vehō), + in + acc., make an attack
on, inveigh against: nōnnūlla inveherētur in, he
made some attacks on*

⁵⁸ *dēmum, adv., at last*

⁵⁹ *damnō (1) + gen., condemn on the charge of; vōtī
damnārī, to be condemned to pay a vow = to
have a vow or prayer granted*

⁶⁰ *precor (1), beseech*

⁶¹ *dat. of quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quid-vīs (quod-vīs), indef.,
anyone at all, anything at all*

⁶² *impūne, adv., with impunity*

⁶³ *dīcere, subject of licēret*

⁶⁴ *pūblicē, adv. of pūblicus*

⁶⁵ *gymnasium, -ī, gymnasium, which in Gk. had a much
broader meaning than it does in Eng.*

⁶⁶ *Tīmoleontēum, the Timoleonteum (gymnasium)*

⁶⁷ *celebrō (1), celebrate*

⁶⁸ *sepeliō, -īre, -pelivī, -pultum, bury*

22

METER: Greater Asclepiad.

¹ *nē quaesierīs (= quaesiverīs): nē + perf. subj. = a
colloquial prohibition (negative command), do
not seek*

² *nefās, n., indecl., wrong, sin; nefās (est), it is wrong*

³ *quem . . . quem, modifies finem*

⁴ *Leuconoē, -es, f., Leuconoë, a Gk. name*

⁵ *temptō (1), try; temptārīs = temptāverīs, another
neg. command*

⁶ *numerōs, calculations employed by astrologers in cast-
ing horoscopes; "Babylonian" because astrology
was associated with the East. With the decay of
belief in the old-time religion in Rome during the
first cen. B.C., astrology and superstitions pros-
pered. Apparently Leuconoë had visited a fortune
teller.*

⁷ *ut melius (est), how (much) better it is*

⁸ *i.e., projected too far into the future*

⁹ *resecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectum, cut off, prune back; re-
secēs, poetic use of the pres. subj. (jussive) for the
pres. imper.*

¹⁰ *invidus, -a, -um, envious*

- 5 aetās. Carpe diem, quam minimum¹¹ crēdula¹² posterō.¹³
(Horace, *Odes* 1.11, excerpts)

23. INTEGER VĪTAE

Integer¹ vītae scelerisque pūrus²
nōn eget Maurīs³ iaculīs⁴ neque arcū⁵
nec venēnātīs⁶ gravidā⁷ sagittīs,⁸
Fusce,⁹ pharetrā.¹⁰

...

- 5 Namque mē silvā lupus¹¹ in Sabīnā¹²
dum meam cantō¹³ Lalagēn¹⁴ et ultrā
terminum¹⁵ cūrīs vagor¹⁶ expeditīs¹⁷
fūgit¹⁸ inermem.¹⁹

...

- Pōne mē pigrīs²⁰ ubi nūlla campīs
10 arbor aestīvā²¹ recreātur aurā,²²
quod²³ latus mundī nebulae²⁴ malusque²⁵
Iuppiter urget²⁶;
pōne sub currū²⁷ nimium propinquī
sōlis in terrā domibus negāta:
15 dulce²⁸ rīdentem Lalagēn amābō
dulce loquentem.

¹¹ *minimum*, *adv.* = *minimē*

¹² *crēdulus*, -a, -um, believing in, trusting + *dat.*;
crēdula, *nom. f. sg. agreeing with the subject of carpe*, *i.e. Leuconoē*

¹³ *posterō* (*diēi*), *dat.*

23

METER: Sapphic stanza.

¹ *integer*, -gra, -grum, untouched, blameless; (*vir*) *integer vītae* (*poetic gen. of specification*), the person blameless in his life

² *pūrus*, -a, -um, pure, free from; *sceleris*, *poetic gen. of separation or specification*

³ *Maurus*, -a, -um, Moorish (= Mauritanian)

⁴ *iaculum*, -ī, missile, javelin (*cp. iaciō*)

⁵ *arcus*, -ūs, bow

⁶ *venēnātus*, -a, -um, poisonous, dipped in poison

⁷ *gravidus*, -a, -um, laden (with); *cp. gravis*

⁸ *sagitta*, -ae, arrow

⁹ *Fuscus*, -ī, *Fuscus*, a literary man and a close, sometimes waggish, friend of Horace

¹⁰ *pharetra*, -ae, quiver

¹¹ *lupus*, -ī, wolf

¹² *Sabīnus*, -a, -um, Sabine; *cp. L. A. 10*

¹³ *cantō* (1), sing about; *dum* + *historical pres. to denote continued action in past time*: while I was singing about

¹⁴ *Lalagē*, -ēs, *acc. Lalagēn* (*Gk. noun*), *f.*, Lalage, name of a girl—a most mellifluous name!

¹⁵ *terminus*, -ī, boundary (*cp. terminus, term, terminate*)

¹⁶ *vagor* (1), wander, ramble (*cp. vagary, vagabond*)

¹⁷ *expediō* (4), disentangle, set free; *cūrīs expeditīs*, *abl. abs.*

¹⁸ Note the interlocked word order of this stanza, which is so characteristic of Lat. poetry: *mē* (*obj. of fūgit*) at the beginning modified by *inermem* at the end; *silvā in Sabīnā*, place where phrase interrupted by *lupus* subject of *fūgit*; all this separated from the main vb. by a double *dum* cl.

¹⁹ *inermis*, -e, unarmed; *cp. integer vītae . . . nōn eget iaculīs*.

²⁰ *piger*, -gra, -grum, lazy, sluggish, torpid (*because frozen*), modifying *campīs* (*campus*, -ī, field) in a place-where phrase without a prep. (*the omission of a prep. is common in poetry*). The order of the thought is: *pōne mē (in) pigrīs campīs ubi . . .*

²¹ *aestīvus*, -a, -um, summer (*cp. aestās*)

²² *aura*, -ae, breeze

²³ = (or put me) in *eō latere mundī quod . . .*; *latus*, -eris, *n.*, side, region

²⁴ *nebula*, -ae, mist, fog

²⁵ *malus* = inclement, because Jupiter is here god of the weather

²⁶ *urgeō*, -ēre, *ursī*, urge, press, oppress

²⁷ *currus*, -ūs, chariot

²⁸ *dulce*, poetic for *dulciter*. These exquisitely mellifluous last lines somewhat onomatopoeically suggest the dulcet timbre of Lalage's voice and laugh.

(Horace, *Odes* 1.22.1–4, 9–12, 17–24)

24. AUREA MEDIOCRITĀS—THE GOLDEN MEAN

Rēctius¹ vīvēs, Licinī,² neque altum³
 semper urgendō⁴ neque, dum procellās⁵
 cautus⁶ horrēscis,⁷ nimium premendō
 lītus⁸ inīquum.⁹
 5 Auream¹⁰ quisquis mediocritātem¹¹
 dīligit, tūtus¹² caret obsolētī¹³
 sordibus¹⁴ tēctī, caret invidendā¹⁵
 sōbrius¹⁶ aulā.¹⁷
 Saepius ventīs agitātur¹⁸ ingēns
 10 pīnus¹⁹ et celsae²⁰ graviōre cāsū²¹
 dēcidunt²² turrēs²³ feriuntque²⁴ summōs
 fulgura²⁵ montēs.
 Spērat²⁶ infestīs,²⁷ metuit secundīs²⁸
 alteram²⁹ sortem³⁰ bene praeparātum³¹
 15 pectus.³² Infōrmēs³³ hiemēs³⁴ redūcit
 Iuppiter³⁵; īdem³⁶
 summovet.³⁷ Nōn, sī male³⁸ nunc, et ōlim³⁹
 sīc erit: quondam⁴⁰ citharā⁴¹ tacentem

24

METER: Sapphic stanza.

¹ rēctius, *adv.*, rightly, well, suitably² Licinī, *voc. of Licinius, a person who seems to have been wanting in the virtue of moderation*³ the deep (sea)⁴ *i.e.*, heading out to the deep⁵ procella, *-ae, storm, gale*⁶ cautus, *-a, -um*, cautious, circumspect; *with dum . . . horrēscis*, while you in your caution . . .⁷ horrēscō, *-ere, horruī*, begin to shudder at, begin to dread⁸ altum and lītus = *extremes*⁹ inīquus, *-a, -um*, unequal; *here* = treacherous circumstances (= in prosperity) he apprehends the opposite fortune.¹⁰ aureus, *-a, -um*, golden¹¹ mediocritās, *-tātis, f.*, moderation, the mean between extremes. *Note that Horace does not say that "mediocrity" is golden! The idea of (aurea) mediocritās was common in Gk. ethical thought, and Aristotle made it a cardinal virtue in his "Ethics."*¹² tūtus caret, *secure (in his philosophy of the "golden mean") he is free from . . .*¹³ obsolētus, *-a, -um*, worn out, dilapidated¹⁴ sordēs, *-ium, f. pl.*, dirt, filth; sordibus, *what kind of abl.?*¹⁵ invidendā, *sure to be envied*¹⁶ sōbrius, *-a, -um*, sober-minded, moderate, in his so-¹⁷ aula, *-ae*, palace¹⁸ agitō (1), agitate, toss¹⁹ pīnus, *-ī, f.*, pine²⁰ celsus, *-a, -um*, high, lofty²¹ cāsus, *-ūs*, fall, destruction²² dēcidō, *-ere, -cidī*, fall down (*cp. cadō*)²³ turris, *-is, f.*, tower²⁴ feriō (4), strike²⁵ fulgur, *-uris, n.*, lightning, thunderbolt²⁶ anticipates, expects²⁷ infestus, *-a, -um*, unsafe, dangerous, adverse; infestīs (rēbus) *dat., lit.*: for his adverse circumstances (= in adversity) he anticipates the other (= the opposite) fortune (sortem)²⁸ secundīs (rēbus) *balances infestīs*: for his favorable²⁹ alter, the other of two; *here* = the opposite³⁰ sors, sortis, *f.*, lot, fortune; sortem, *obj. of spērat and metuit*³¹ prae-parō (1), make ready in advance, prepare: well prepared (*by the philosophy of life which Horace is here enunciating*)³² *subject of spērat and metuit*³³ infōrmis, *-e*, shapeless, hideous, horrid³⁴ hiems, hiemis, *f.*, stormy weather, winter³⁵ Jupiter as god of sky and weather³⁶ īdem, the same god = he also³⁷ sum-moveō, remove, drive away, *sc. hiemēs*³⁸ male (est), it is bad, things are bad³⁹ et ōlim, also in the future⁴⁰ *here* = sometimes⁴¹ cithara, *-ae*, lyre

suscitat⁴² Mūsam,⁴³ neque semper arcum
 20 tendit⁴⁴ Apollō.⁴⁵
 Rēbus angustīs⁴⁶ animōsus⁴⁷ atque
 fortis appārē⁴⁸; sapienter⁴⁹ idem⁵⁰
 contrahēs⁵¹ ventō nimium secundō
 turgida⁵² vēla.⁵³
 (Horace, *Odes* 2.10)

25. LĀBUNTUR ANNĪ

Ēheu!¹ fugācēs,² Postume, Postume,
 lābuntur³ annī; nec pietās⁴ moram
 rūgīs⁵ et īstantī⁶ senectae⁷
 adferet indomitaeque⁸ mortī.
 . . .
 5 Frūstrā⁹ cruentō¹⁰ Mārte¹¹ carēbimus
 frāctīsque¹² raucī¹³ flūctibus¹⁴ Hadriae¹⁵;
 frūstrā⁹ per autumnōs¹⁶ nocentem
 corporibus¹⁷ metuēmus Austrum.¹⁸
 Vīsendus¹⁹ āter²⁰ flūmine languidō²¹
 10 Cōcȳtos²² errāns et Danaī genus²³
 īnfāme²⁴ damnātusque²⁵ longī

⁴² **suscitō** (1), arouse; **suscitat**, *subject is Apollō*

⁴³ **Mūsa**, -ae, a Muse

⁴⁴ **tendō**, -ere, **tetendī**, **tēsum**, stretch

⁴⁵ **Apollō**, -inis, *m.*, Apollo, *god of the sun, prophecy, poetry, and music; also god of archery, pestilence, and medicine. Apollo has two aspects: happy and constructive (Mūsam); unhappy and destructive (arcum).*

⁴⁶ **rēbus angustīs**, *abl. abs.*, when things are narrow (= difficult), *i.e.*, in adversity

⁴⁷ **anim-ōsus**, -a, -um (-ōsus, *suffix* = full of), spirited

⁴⁸ **appārēō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, show one's self; **appārē**, *analyze the form carefully.*

⁴⁹ *here* = if you are wise

⁵⁰ *see n. 36 above*

⁵¹ **con-trahō**, draw in, shorten

⁵² **turgidus**, -a, -um, swollen

⁵³ **vēlum**, -ī, sail

25

METER: Alcaic stanza.

¹ **ēheu**, *cp. heu*. This sigh is emphasized by the repetition of Postumus' name.

² **fugāx**, *gen. -ācis*, fleeting

³ **lābor**, -ī, **lāpsus sum**, slip, glide

⁴ **pietās**, -tātis, *f.*, loyalty, devotion, piety

⁵ **rūga**, -ae, wrinkle (*cp. corrugated*)

⁶ **īnstāns**, *gen. -antis*, pressing, urgent

⁷ **senecta**, -ae = **senectūs**

⁸ **indomitus**, -a, -um, untamable, invincible

⁹ **frūstrā**, *adv.*, in vain. *What is the significance of its emphatic position?*

¹⁰ **cruentus**, -a, -um, bloody

¹¹ **Mārs**, **Mārtis**, *m.*, Mars, *god of war*; **Mārte**, *what abl.?*

¹² **frangō**, -ere, **frēgī**, **frāctum**, break

¹³ **raucus**, -a, -um, hoarse, noisy

¹⁴ **flūctus**, -ūs, wave; **frāctīs flūctibus**, broken waves = breakers

¹⁵ **Hadria**, -ae, *m.*, Adriatic Sea

¹⁶ **autumnus**, -ī, autumn, *unhealthy part of the year because of the Sirocco*

¹⁷ *depends on nocentem*

¹⁸ **auster**, -trī, the south wind, *the Sirocco blowing from the Sahara*

¹⁹ **vīsō**, -ere, **vīsī**, **vīsum**, visit; **vīsendus** (*est*)

²⁰ **āter**, **ātra**, **ātrum**, dark, *modifying Cōcȳtos*

²¹ **languidus**, -a, -um, sluggish, weak

²² **Cōcȳtos**, -ī, *m.*, Cocytus, the river of wailing, *one of the rivers surrounding Hades*; **Cōcȳtos**, *Gk. nom.*

²³ **Danaī genus**, *the offspring of Danaüs, whose 49 daughters murdered their husbands and in Hades were punished by having to pour water eternally into a sieve*

²⁴ **īnfāmis**, -e, infamous

²⁵ **damnō** (1) condemn

Sīsyphus²⁶ Aeolidēs²⁷ labōris.²⁸
 Līquenda²⁹ tellūs³⁰ et domus et placēns
 uxor, neque hārum, quās colis, arborum
 15 tē praeter invīsās³¹ cupressōs³²
 ūlla³³ brevem dominum³⁴ sequētur.
 (Horace, *Odes* 2.14.1–4, 13–24)

26. A SENSE OF BALANCE IN LIFE

Vīvitur¹ parvō bene cui² paternum³
 splendet⁴ in mēnsā tenuī⁵ salīnum,
 nec levēs⁶ somnōs timor aut cupīdō
 sordidus⁷ aufert.⁸
 5 Quid⁹ brevī fortēs¹⁰ iaculāmur¹¹ aevō
 multa? Quid¹² terrās aliō calentēs
 sōle mūtāmus? Patriae quis exsul¹³
 sē quoque fūgit?¹⁴
 Scandit¹⁵ aerātās¹⁶ vitiōsa nāvēs
 10 cūra nec turmās¹⁷ equitum relinquit,
 ōcior¹⁸ cervīs¹⁹ et agente nimbōs²⁰
 ōcior Eurō.²¹
 Laetus²² in praesēns²³ animus quod ultrā est

²⁶ Sīsyphus, -ī, Sisyphus, who was condemned eternally to roll up a hill a stone which rolled down again—an exquisite nightmare

²⁷ Aeolidēs, -ae, m., son of Aeolus

²⁸ After vbs. of accusing, condemning, and acquitting the gen. can be used to express the charge or the penalty involved.

²⁹ līquenda (est), balancing vīsendus in contrast; līquō = relīquō

³⁰ tellūs, -ūris, f., earth, land

³¹ invīsus, -a, -um, hated, hateful

³² cupressus, -ī, f., cypress (tree); invīsās because they were used at funerals and were planted near tombs

³³ neque ūlla hārum arborum, nor any = and none . . .

³⁴ brevem dominum, in apposition with tē; brevem, implying that life is brief

26

METER: Sapphic stanza.

¹ vīvitur parvō bene (ab eō) cui, it is lived on little well by him for whom: vīvitur, impers. pass. = he lives well on little (i.e., not in abject poverty and not in the lap of luxury).

² cui, dat. of ref. but most easily translated by whose

³ paternum salīnum (salīnum, -ī), paternal salt-cellar; the long list of words derived from sāl provides some idea of the importance of salt and the salt-cellar.

⁴ splendeō, -ēre, shine

⁵ tenuis, -e, plain, simple

⁶ levis, -e, here = gentle

⁷ sordidus, -a, -um, sordid (cp. sordēs L.I. 24 n. 14); cupīdō is m. in Horace.

⁸ auferō (ab-ferō)

⁹ = cūr

¹⁰ fortēs (virī) brevī aevō (aevum, -ī, time, life)

¹¹ iaculor (1), aim at

¹² Quid . . . mūtāmus, lit. why do we exchange lands warmed by another sun? The expression is poetic and in part illogical but the sense is clear: why do we exchange our lands for those warmed by another sun? "The pasture is always greener . . ."

¹³ exsul, exsulis, m., exile; with patriae quis, who an exile of (from) his native land

¹⁴ fūgit, perf., has ever fled

¹⁵ scandō, -ere, scandī, scāsum, climb up

¹⁶ aerātus, -a, -um, fitted with bronze, probably referring to the bronze beaks of the men-of-war (longae nāvēs), which were faster than the ordinary ships—though even these cannot outstrip anxiety.

¹⁷ turma, -ae, a troop of cavalry (equitum, L.I. 18 n. 53). A person cannot ride fast enough to escape care.

¹⁸ ōcior, -ius, adj. in compar. degree, swifter, agreeing with cūra

¹⁹ cervus, -ī, stag

²⁰ nimbus, -ī, rain cloud

²¹ Eurus, -ī, wind (from the southeast)

²² laetus, -a, -um, happy, joyful

²³ praesēns, gen. -entis, present; in praesēns (tempus) for the present (cp. the carpe diem philosophy)

ōderit²⁴ cūrāre et amāra²⁵ lentō²⁶
 15 temperet²⁷ rīsū²⁸: nihil est ab omnī
 parte²⁹ beātum.
 (Horace, Odes 2.16.13–28)

27. DIĒS FĒSTUS

Hic diēs¹ vērē mihi fēstus ātrās
 eximet² cūrās: ego nec tumultum
 nec morī per vim metuam tenente
 Caesare³ terrās.
 5 Ī, pete unguentum,⁴ puer,⁵ et corōnās,⁶
 et cadum⁷ Mārsī⁸ memorem⁹ duellī,
 Spartacum¹⁰ sī quā¹¹ potuit vagantem
 fallere¹² testa.¹³
 (Horace, Odes 3.14.13–20)

28. A MONUMENT MORE LASTING THAN BRONZE

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius¹
 rēgālīque² sitū³ p̄ramidum⁴ altius,⁵
 quod nōn imber⁶ edāx,⁷ nōn Aquilō⁸ impotēns⁹
 possit dīruere¹⁰ aut innumerābilis¹¹
 5 annōrum seriēs¹² et fuga temporum.
 Nōn omnis moriar, multaque pars meī
 vītābit Libitīnam¹³ . . .
 (Horace, Odes 3.30.1–7)

²⁴ *ōderit*, perf. subj., jussive, let (the *laetus animus*) refuse to (hate to) be anxious about (*cūrāre*)

²⁵ *amārus*, -a, -um, bitter, disagreeable; *amāra*, n. pl.

²⁶ *lentus*, -a, -um, pliant, tenacious, slow, lingering; here = tolerant, quiet

²⁷ *temperō* (1), control, temper

²⁸ *rīsus*, -ūs, laughter (cp. *rīdeō*)

²⁹ *ab omnī parte*, from every part = in every respect, completely

27

METER: Sapphic stanza.

¹ *Hic diēs*, referring to Augustus' return from the campaign of 27–25 B.C. in Spain

² *eximō*, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, take away

³ Caesar = Augustus. When C. Octavius was adopted by his great-uncle, C. Iulius Caesar, his name became C. Iulius Caesar Octavianus, to which the senate added the title of Augustus in 27 B.C.

⁴ *unguentum*, -ī, ointment, perfume

⁵ *puer* = slave; cp. Fr. *garçon*

⁶ *corōna*, -ae, crown, wreath

⁷ *cadus*, -ī, wine jar

⁸ *Mārsus*, -a, -um, Marsian; *duellum* = old form of *bellum*: *Mārsī duellī*, of the Marsian, or Social, War of 91–88 B.C., by which the *socii* (allies) of Rome

in Italy gained full citizenship; i.e., a 65-year-old wine

⁹ *memor*, gen. -oris, mindful

¹⁰ *Spartacus*, -ī, Spartacus, the gladiator who led the slaves in revolt against Rome, 73–71 B.C.

¹¹ *quā*, adv., anywhere or in any way

¹² *fallō*, -ere, *fefellī*, *falsum*, deceive, escape the notice of

¹³ *testa*, -ae, jug

28

METER: Lesser Asclepiad.

¹ *perennis*, -e, lasting (throughout the year)

² *rēgālis*, -e, royal

³ *situs*, -ūs, site, situation; here = structure

⁴ *p̄ramis*, -idis, f., pyramid

⁵ *altus*, -a, -um, high; *altius* agrees with *monumentum*.

⁶ *imber*, -bris, m., storm

⁷ *edāx*, gen. *edacis*, greedy, destructive

⁸ *aquilō*, -ōnis, m., north wind

⁹ *impotēns*, gen. -ntis, powerless (to injure my monument)

¹⁰ *dīruō*, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, raze, destroy

¹¹ *in-numerābilis*, -e = Eng.

¹² *seriēs*, -ēī, succession

¹³ *Libitīna*, -ae, Libitina, goddess of funerals; death

29. THE OTHER PERSON'S FAULTS AND OUR OWN

Pērās¹ imposuit² Iuppiter nōbīs duās:
 propriīs³ replētam⁴ vitiīs post tergum⁵ dedit,⁶
 aliēnīs⁷ ante pectus⁸ suspendit⁹ gravem.
 Hāc rē vidēre nostra mala nōn possumus;
 5 aliī simul¹⁰ dēlinquunt,¹¹ cēnsōrēs¹² sumus.
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.10)

30. SOUR GRAPES

Famē¹ coācta vulpēs² altā in vīneā³
 ūvam⁴ appetēbat,⁵ summīs saliēns⁶ vīribus.
 Quam⁷ tangere ut nōn potuit, discēdēns ait:
 “Nōndum mātūra⁸ est; nōlō acerbam sūmere.⁹”
 5 Quī facere¹⁰ quae nōn possunt verbīs ēlevant,¹¹
 adscrībere¹² hoc dēbēbunt exemplum sibī.
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 4.3)

31. THE FOX AND THE TRAGIC MASK

Persōnam¹ tragicam² forte³ vulpēs vīderat.
 “Ō quanta speciēs,⁴” inquit, “cerebrum⁵ nōn habet!”
 Hoc illīs dictum est quibus honōrem et glōriam
 Fortūna tribuit,⁶ sēnsū commūnem abstulit.
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 1.7)

32. THE STAG AT THE SPRING

Ad fontem¹ cervus, cum bibisset, restitit,²

29

METER: Iambic trimeter.

Phaedrus: freedman of Augustus, who made extensive use of Aesop's fables.

¹ pēra, -ae, wallet

² im-pōnō, + dat., put on

³ proprius, -a, -um, one's own, here = our own

⁴ replēō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill; (pēram) replētam

⁵ tergum, -ī, back

⁶ dedit, here = put

⁷ aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another; aliēnīs (vitiīs),
abl. with gravem

⁸ sc. nostrum

⁹ (alteram pēram) gravem . . . suspendit

¹⁰ simul = simul ac, as soon as

¹¹ dēlinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, fail, commit a crime

¹² cēnsor, -ōris, m., censor; censurer, severe judge

30

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ famēs, -is, abl. -e, appetite, hunger

² vulpēs, -is, f., fox

³ vīnea, -ae, vineyard

⁴ ūva, -ae, bunch of grapes

⁵ ap-petō (= ad-petō), reach toward, desire (cp. *appetite*); appetēbat, note the force of the *impf.*

⁶ saliō, -īre, -uī, saltum, jump

⁷ quam = ūvam

⁸ mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe

⁹ sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take

¹⁰ *compl. inf. with possunt*

¹¹ ēlevō (1), disparage, weaken

¹² ad-scrībō, assign

31

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ persōna, -ae, mask worn by actors

² tragicus, -a, -um, tragic

³ forte, *adv.*, by chance

⁴ speciēs, -ēī, appearance, form

⁵ cerebrum, -ī, brain

⁶ tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, allot, assign, give

32

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ fōns, fontis, m., spring

² restō, -āre, restitī, remain (standing)

et in liquōre³ vīdit effigiem⁴ suam.
 Ibi dum rāmōsa⁵ mīrāns⁶ laudat cornua,
 crūrumque⁷ nimiam⁸ tenuitātem⁹ vituperat,¹⁰
 5 vēnantum¹¹ subitō vōcibus conterritus,¹²
 per campum fugere coepit, et cursū levī
 canēs¹³ ēlūsit.¹⁴ Silva tum excēpit ferum,¹⁵
 in quā retentīs¹⁶ impedītus cornibus,
 lacerārī¹⁷ coepit morsibus¹⁸ saevīs¹⁹ canum.
 10 Tunc moriēns vōcem hanc ēdidisse²⁰ dīcitur:
 “Ō mē infēlicem²¹! quī nunc dēmum²² intellegō
 ūtilia mihi quam²³ fuerint quae²⁴ dēspexeram,²⁵
 et quae laudāram,²⁶ quantum lūctūs²⁷ habuerint.”
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 1.12)

33. THE FOX GETS THE RAVEN'S CHEESE

Quī sē laudārī gaudet verbīs subdolīs,¹
 ferē dat poenās turpī paenitentiā.²
 Cum dē fenestrā corvus³ raptum cāseum⁴
 comēsse⁵ vellet, celsā residēns⁶ arbore,
 5 hunc vīdit vulpēs; deinde sīc coepit loquī:
 “Ō quī tuārum, corve, pennārum⁷ est nitor⁸!
 Quantum decōris⁹ corpore et vultū geris!¹⁰
 Sī vōcem habērēs, nūlla prior¹¹ āles¹² foret.”¹³
 At ille stultus, dum vult vōcem ostendere,
 10 ēmīsīt¹⁴ ōre cāseum, quem celeriter
 dolōsa¹⁵ vulpēs avidīs¹⁶ rapuit dentibus.¹⁷
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 1.13.1–10)

³ liquor, -ōris, *m.*, liquid
⁴ effigiēs, -ēī, image, likeness
⁵ rāmōsus, -a, -um, branching
⁶ mīror (1), marvel at, wonder
⁷ crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg
⁸ nimius, -a, -um, excessive
⁹ tenuitās, -tātis, *f.*, thinness
¹⁰ vituperō (1), blame, find fault with
¹¹ vēnor (1), hunt; vēnantum, *gen. pl. of pres. part.*
¹² con-territus
¹³ canis, -is, *m. lf.*, dog
¹⁴ ēlūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, evade
¹⁵ ferus, -ī, wild animal
¹⁶ re-tentus, -a, -um, held back, held fast
¹⁷ lacerō (1), tear to pieces (*cp.* lacerate)
¹⁸ morsus, -ūs, bite
¹⁹ saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage
²⁰ ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give out, utter
²¹ mē infēlicem, *acc. of exclamation.*
²² dēmum, *adv.*, at last
²³ ūtilia . . . quam = quam ūtilia
²⁴ (ea, those things) quae
²⁵ dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look down on, despise

²⁶ = laudāveram
²⁷ lūctus, -ūs, grief, sorrow

33

METER: Iambic trimeter.

¹ subdolos, -a, -um, deceitful
² paenitentia, -ae, repentance
³ corvus, -ī, raven
⁴ cāseus, -ī, cheese
⁵ comedō, comedere or comēsse, -edī, -ēsum, eat up
⁶ resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, sit, be sitting
⁷ penna, -ae, feather
⁸ nitor, -ōris, *m.*, brightness, beauty; quī est nitor, what (= how great) is the beauty
⁹ decor, decōris, *m.*, grace, beauty
¹⁰ you bear, *i.e.*, have in your body and face; (in) corpore, *preps. often omitted in poetry*
¹¹ prior, *predicate adj. after foret*, better, finer
¹² āles, ālitis, *f.*, bird
¹³ foret = esset
¹⁴ ē-mittō
¹⁵ dolōsus, -a, -um, crafty, cunning
¹⁶ avidus, -a, -um, greedy, eager
¹⁷ dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth

34. THE ASS AND THE OLD SHEPHERD

In prīcipātū¹ commūtandō² cīvium
 nīl praeter dominī nōmen mūtant pauperēs.
 Id esse vērum parva haec fābella³ indicat.
 Asellum⁴ in prātō⁵ timidus⁶ pāscēbat⁷ senex.
 5 Is, hostium clamōre⁸ subitō⁹ territus,
 suādēbat¹⁰ asinō fugere nē possent capī.
 At ille lentus:¹¹ “Quaesō,¹² num bīnās¹³ mihī
 clītellās¹⁴ impositūrum¹⁵ victōrem¹⁶ putās?”
 Senex negāvit. “Ergō quid rēfert meā¹⁷
 10 cui serviam clītellās dum portem¹⁸ meās?”
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 1.15)

35. THE TWO MULES AND THE ROBBERS

Mūlī¹ gravātī² sarcinīs³ ībant duō.
 Ūnus ferēbat fiscōs⁴ cum pecūniā;
 alter tumentēs⁵ multō saccōs⁶ hordeō.⁷
 Ille onere⁸ dīves, celsā cervīce⁹ ēminēns¹⁰
 5 clārumque collō¹¹ iactāns¹² tintinnābulum¹³;
 comes¹⁴ quiētō¹⁵ sequitur et placidō¹⁶ gradū.¹⁷
 Subitō latrōnēs¹⁸ ex īnsidiīs advolant,¹⁹
 interque caedem ferrō mūlum lancinant²⁰;
 dīripiunt²¹ nummōs,²² neglegunt vīle²³ hordeum.
 10 Spoliātus²⁴ igitur cāsūs²⁵ cum flēret suōs,

34

METER: Iambic trimeter.

- ¹ prīcipātus, -ūs, rule, dominion
² com-mūtō (1), change
³ fābella, -ae, fable
⁴ asellus, -ī, a little ass, *diminutive of asinus*, -ī, an ass
 (verse 6)
⁵ prātum, -ī, meadow
⁶ timidus, -a, -um, timid
⁷ pāscō, -ere, pāvī, pāstum, pasture
⁸ clāmōr, -ōris, *m.*, shouting
⁹ subitus, -a, -um, sudden
¹⁰ suādēō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, urge
¹¹ lentus, -a, -um, slow, motionless, apathetic
¹² quaesō, -ere, beg, beseech, = *quaerō*
¹³ bīnās clītellās, two pairs of panniers (*i.e.*, *instead of the present single pair*); *bīnī*, -ae, -a, *distributive numeral used with a regularly pl. noun*
¹⁴ clītellae, -ārum, a pair of panniers, baskets
¹⁵ im-pōnō = in + pōnō
¹⁶ victor, -ōris = *Eng.*
¹⁷ what difference does it make to me, *highly idiomatic*
¹⁸ portō (1), bear, carry

35

METER: Iambic trimeter.

- ¹ mūlus, -ī, mule

- ² gravō (1), load, burden
³ sarcina, -ae, bundle, pack
⁴ fiscus, -ī, basket
⁵ tumeō, -ēre, swell, be swollen
⁶ saccus, -ī, sack
⁷ hordeum, -ī, barley
⁸ onus, -eris, *n.*, burden, load
⁹ cervīx, -vīcis, *f.*, neck
¹⁰ ēmineō, -ēre, -minuī, stand out, be conspicuous
¹¹ collum, -ī, neck
¹² iactō (1), toss
¹³ tintinnābulum, -ī, bell, *a delightfully onomatopoeic word*
¹⁴ comes, comitis, *m.lf.*, companion
¹⁵ quiētus, -a, -um, quiet
¹⁶ placidus, -a, -um, placid, gentle
¹⁷ gradus, -ūs, step
¹⁸ latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, bandit, robber
¹⁹ advolō (1), fly, hasten
²⁰ lancinō (1), mangle
²¹ dīripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, plunder
²² nummus, -ī, currency, money
²³ vīlis, -e, cheap
²⁴ spoliō (1), rob
²⁵ cāsus, -ūs, accident

“Equidem,” inquit alter, “mē contemptum gaudeō.
 Nam nihil amīsī, nec sum laesus²⁶ vulnere.”
 Hōc argūmentō tūta est hominum tenuitās²⁷;
 magnae perīclō²⁸ sunt opēs obnoxiae.²⁹
 (Phaedrus, *Fābulae* 2.7)

36. DELIGHTS OF THE COUNTRY

C.¹ PLĪNIUS CALPURNIŌ MACRŌ² SUŌ S.¹

Bene est³ mihi quia⁴ tibi est bene. Habēs uxōrem tēcum, habēs fīlium;
 frueris⁵ marī, fontibus, viridibus,⁶ agrō, vīllā amoenissimā.⁷ Neque enim
 dubitō esse amoenissimam,⁸ in quā sē composuerat⁹ homō¹⁰ fēlicior ante-
 quam¹¹ “fēlicissimus” fieret. Ego in Tuscīs¹² et vēnor¹³ et studeō, quae¹⁴ inter-
 dum¹⁵ alternīs,¹⁶ interdum simul¹⁷ faciō; nec tamen adhūc¹⁸ possum prōnūnti-
 āre utrum sit difficilior capere aliquid an scrībere. Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.18)

37. C. PLĪNIUS CANĪNIŌ¹ SUŌ S.

Studēs an² piscāris³ an vēnāris an simul omnia? Possunt enim omnia
 simul fierī ad Lārium⁴ nostrum. Nam lacus⁵ piscem,⁶ ferās⁷ silvae quibus
 lacus cingitur,⁸ studia altissimus iste sēcessus⁹ adfatim¹⁰ suggerunt.¹¹ Sed
 sīve¹² omnia simul sīve aliquid facis, nōn possum dīcere “invideō”; angor¹³
 tamen . . . Numquamne hōs artissimōs laqueōs¹⁴ . . . abrumpam?¹⁵ Num-
 quam, putō. Nam veteribus negōtiīs¹⁶ nova accrēscunt,¹⁷ nec tamen priōra

²⁶ laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum, injure

²⁷ tenuitās, -tātis, f., poverty

²⁸ perīclum, -ī, early Lat. form, used instead of perīculum in classical Lat. poetry whenever it was metrically convenient

²⁹ obnoxius, -a, -um, subject to, exposed to

36

¹ L.A. 11 n. 1 and 3

² Calpurnius Macer

³ it is

⁴ quia, conj., because

⁵ fruor, -ī, frūctus sum + abl., enjoy (cp. frūctus, -ūs)

⁶ viridis, -e, green; viridia, gen. viridium, n. pl. as a noun, green things, greenery

⁷ amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant

⁸ amoenissimam, agreeing with vīllam understood as subject of esse

⁹ sē compōnere, to compose oneself, to rest

¹⁰ the man, apparently referring to a former owner who had been happier (fēlicior) on this estate as an ordinary person (homō) before he could realize his ambition of becoming “most happy” (fēlicissimus), i.e., before he could achieve some very high position which did not give him supreme happiness after all.

¹¹ antequam + subj.

¹² lit. in the Tuscans = on my Tuscan estate

¹³ vēnor (1), hunt

¹⁴ quae, n. pl. referring to vēnor and studeō as antecedents

¹⁵ interdum, adv., sometimes, at times

¹⁶ alternīs, adv., alternately, by turns

¹⁷ simul, adv., at the same time, simultaneously. In another letter (1.6), Pliny tells how he combined hunting and studying in one operation.

¹⁸ adhūc, adv., thus far, till now

37

¹ Pliny and Caninius were fellow townsmen from Comum (Como) at the south end of beautiful Lake Larius (Como) in northern Italy.

² an in questions, or

³ piscor (1), to fish

⁴ Lārius, -ī, Lake Larius (now Lake Como)

⁵ lacus, -ūs, lake

⁶ piscis, -is, m., fish

⁷ fera (sc. bēstia), -ae, wild animal

⁸ cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround, gird

⁹ sēcessus, -ūs, retreat, summer place

¹⁰ adfatim, adv., sufficiently, abundantly

¹¹ sug-gerō, -ere, -gessī, -gestum, furnish, afford, supply

¹² sīve . . . sīve, (sī-ve), if . . . or if, whether . . . or

¹³ angō, -ere, torment

¹⁴ artus, -a, -um, close, narrow; laqueus, -ī, noose, cord

¹⁵ ab-rumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break off, sever. Pliny is tied up in Rome.

¹⁶ negōtium, -ī, business; duty

¹⁷ accrēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, increase; nova (negōtia) accrēscunt (veteribus negōtiīs) new duties increase by . . . or are added to . . .

peraguntur¹⁸; tot nexibus,¹⁹ tot quasi catēnīs²⁰ maius in diēs²¹ occupātiōnum²² agmen²³ extenditur.²⁴ Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 2.8, excerpts)

38. HAPPY MARRIED LIFE

C. PLĪNIUS GEMINŌ SUŌ S.

Grave vulnus Macrinus noster accēpit: amīsīt¹ uxōrem singulāris² exemplī . . . Vixit cum hāc trīgintā novem annīs³ sine iūrgiō,⁴ sine offēnsā.⁵ Quam illa reverentiam⁶ marītō⁷ suō praestitit, cum ipsa summam merērētur!⁸ Quot quantāsque virtūtēs ex dīversīs⁹ aetātibus sūmptās collēgit et mis-
5 cuit! Habet quidem Macrinus grande¹⁰ sōlācium, quod tantum bonum tam diū tenuit; sed hinc¹¹ magis exacerbātur¹² quod amīsīt. Nam fruendīs voluptātibus crēscit carendī dolor. Erō ergō suspēnsus¹³ prō homine amīcissimō dum¹⁴ admittere¹⁵ āvocāmenta¹⁶ et cicātrīcem¹⁷ patī possit, quam nihil aequē ac¹⁸ necessitās¹⁹ ipsa et diēs²⁰ longa et satietās²¹ dolōris inducit.²² Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 8.5, excerpts)

39. FAITHFUL IN SICKNESS AND IN DEATH

C. PLĪNIUS NEPŌTĪ SUŌ S.

(. . . Fannia¹) neptis² Arriae³ illius⁴ quae marītō⁵ et sōlācium mortis et exemplum fuit. Multa referēbat⁶ aviae⁷ suae nōn minōra hōc,⁸ sed obscūriōra,⁹ quae tibi exīstimō tam mīrābilia legentī¹⁰ fore¹¹ quam mihi audientī fuērunt.

¹⁸ per-agō, complete

¹⁹ nexus, -ūs, coils, obligations

²⁰ catēna, -ae, chain

²¹ in diēs, from day to day

²² occupātiō, -ōnis, f., occupation, employment

²³ agmen, -minis, n., line of march, column

²⁴ ex-tendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, extend, increase

38

¹ he lost (not sent away)

² singulāris, -e, extraordinary

³ The abl. is sometimes used instead of the acc. to express the idea of extent of time.

⁴ iūrgium, -iī, quarrel

⁵ offēnsa, -ae, hatred, affront

⁶ reverentia, -ae, respect

⁷ marītus, -ī, husband

⁸ mereor, -ēri, meritus sum, deserve

⁹ dīversus, -a, -um, diverse, different

¹⁰ grandis, -e, great

¹¹ hinc here = from this cause

¹² exacerbō (1), exasperate; embitter

¹³ suspēnsus, -a, -um, in suspense, anxious

¹⁴ dum, conj., until, used with the subj. to imply intention or expectancy

¹⁵ ad-mittō, admit, receive

¹⁶ āvocāmentum, -ī, diversion

¹⁷ cicātrīx, -trīcis, f., scar, which implies healing

¹⁸ aequē ac, equally as, quite so well as

¹⁹ necessitās (-tātis, f.) ipsa, necessity itself, sheer necessity

²⁰ here = time

²¹ satietās, -tātis, f., satiety

²² in-dūcō, bring on, induce

39

¹ Fannia (est)

² neptis, -is, f., granddaughter

³ Arria, -ae, Arria (Maior), brave wife of Caecina Paetus. When, because of his part in a conspiracy against the emperor Claudius, he had to commit suicide in 42 A.D., Arria committed suicide with him, actually setting him an example as indicated at the end of the letter. (Cp. "Paete, Nōn Dolet," ch. 39).

⁴ ille, the famous, when immediately following its noun

⁵ marītō, dat.

⁶ referēbat, subject = Fannia, who related these episodes during a conversation with Pliny on the preceding day.

⁷ avia, -ae, grandmother; aviae, gen. case

⁸ hōc, abl. of comparison, referring to the rel. cl. of the preceding sent.

⁹ obscūrus, -a, -um, obscure, unknown

¹⁰ legentī, to be construed with tibi

¹¹ fore = futūra esse, fut. inf. in ind. state. depending on exīstimō (1), think

5 Aegrōtābat¹² Caecīna Paetus, marītus eius, aegrōtābat et fīlius, uterque mortiferē,¹³ ut vidēbātur. Fīlius dēcessit¹⁴ eximiā¹⁵ pulchritūdine,¹⁶ parī verēcundiā,¹⁷ et parentibus nōn minus ob¹⁸ alia cārus quam quod fīlius erat. Huic illa ita fūnus¹⁹ parāvit . . . ut ignōrāret marītus. Quīn immō,²⁰ quotiēns²¹ cubiculum²² eius intrāret,²³ vīvere fīlium atque etiam commodiōrem²⁴ esse simulābat²⁵; ac persaepe²⁶ interrogantī²⁷ quid ageret puer respondēbat, “Bene quiēvit,²⁸ libenter cibum²⁹ sūmpsit.” Deinde, cum diū cohibitae³⁰ lacrimae vincerent prōrumperentque,³¹ ēgrediēbātur; tunc sē dolōrī dabat. Satiāta, siccīs³² oculīs, compositō vultū redībat, tamquam orbitātem³³ forīs relīquisset.³⁴ Praeclārum quidem illud³⁵ eiusdem: ferrum stringere,³⁶ perfodere³⁷ pectus, extrahere³⁸ pugiōnem,³⁹ porrigere⁴⁰ marītō, addere⁴¹ vōcem immortālem ac paene⁴² dīvinam,⁴³ “Paete, nōn dolet.” . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 3.16, excerpts)

40. A SWEET, BRAVE GIRL

C. PLĪNIUS MARCELLĪNŌ SUŌ S.

Trīstissimus haec tibi scrībō, Fundānī nostrī fīliā minōre defūctā,¹ quā puellā² nihil umquam fēstīvius,³ amābilis,⁴ nec longiōre vītā . . . dignius vidī. Nōndum annōs trēdecim implēverat,⁵ et iam illī⁶ anīlis⁷ prūdentia, mātrōnalis⁸ gravitās⁹ erat, et tamen suāvitās¹⁰ puellāris¹¹ . . . Ut¹² illa patris cer-

¹² aegrōtō (1), be sick

¹³ mortiferē, *adv.* (mors-ferō), fatally

¹⁴ dē-cēdō, go away, die (*cp.* deceased)

¹⁵ eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary

¹⁶ pulchritūdō, -dinis, *f.*, beauty; eximiā pulchritūdine, *abl.* describing fīlius but more easily translated if we supply a word like puer: fīlius dēcessit—(puer) eximiā pulchritūdine, etc.

¹⁷ verēcundia, -ae, modesty

¹⁸ ob, *prep.* + *acc.*, on account of; toward

¹⁹ fūnus, -eris, *n.*, funeral

²⁰ quīn immō, why, on the contrary

²¹ quotiēns, *adv.*, as often as

²² cubiculum, -ī, bedroom

²³ intrō (1), enter; intrāret: in *Silver Lat.* the *impf. subj.* of customary action is often found in place of the *indic.*

²⁴ commodus, -a, -um, suitable, satisfactory; here = better

²⁵ simulō (1) pretend

²⁶ per-saepe, *adv.*, very often

²⁷ interrogō (1), ask, inquire (*cp.* rogō); (marītō) interrogantī

²⁸ quiēscō, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, rest, be quiet

²⁹ cibus, -ī, food

³⁰ cohibeō, -ere, -uī, -itum, hold together, hold back, restrain

³¹ prōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, burst forth

³² siccus, -a, -um, dry; siccīs oculīs *abl. abs.*

³³ orbitās, -tātis, *f.*, bereavement, loss

³⁴ What kind of condition in the tamquam *cl.*?

³⁵ that deed; *sc.* fuit

³⁶ stringō, -ere, -strīnxī, strictus, draw; stringere, *inf.* in apposition with illud

³⁷ perfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, pierce (*lit.* dig through)

³⁸ ex-trahō

³⁹ pugiō, -ōnis, *m.*, dagger

⁴⁰ porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, hold out, extend

⁴¹ ad-dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, add

⁴² paene, *adv.*, almost

⁴³ dīvinus, -a, -um = *Eng.*

40

¹ defungor, -ī, -fūctus sum, finish or complete life, die. The family tomb was discovered near Rome in 1880 and in it a cinerary urn with the inscription: **Dīs mānibus Miniciae Mārcellae, Fundānī fīliae. Vīxit annīs XII, mēnsibus XI, diēbus VII:** To the divine shades of Minicia Marcella . . . (The abbreviations in the inscription have been expanded.)

² puellā, *abl.* of comparison

³ fēstīvus, -a, -um, pleasant, agreeable

⁴ amābilis, -e, lovable, lovely

⁵ impleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill up, complete

⁶ *dat.* of possession (*S.S.*)

⁷ anīlis, -e, of an old woman

⁸ mātrōnalis, -e, of a matron, matronly

⁹ gravitās, -tātis, *f.*, seriousness, dignity

¹⁰ suāvitās, -tātis, *f.*, sweetness

¹¹ puellāris, -e, girlish

¹² how

5 vīcibus¹³ inhaerēbat¹⁴! Ut nōs, amīcōs paternōs,¹⁵ et amanter¹⁶ et modestē¹⁷ complectēbātur!¹⁸ Ut nūtrīcēs,¹⁹ ut paedagōgōs,²⁰ ut praeceptōrēs²¹ prō suō quemque officiō dīligēbat! Quam studiōsē,²² quam intelligenter²³ lēctitābat²⁴! . . .

Quā illa temperantiā,²⁵ quā patientiā, quā etiam cōstantiā²⁶ novissimam valētūdinem²⁷ tulit! Medicīs obsequēbātur;²⁸ sorōrem, patrem adhortābātur²⁹; ipsamque sē dēstitūtā³⁰ corporis vīribus vigōre³¹ animī sustinēbat.³² Dūrāvit³³ hic³⁴ illī ūsque ad extrēmum,³⁵ nec aut spatiō³⁶ valētūdinis aut metū mortis īnfractus est³⁷ . . . Ō trīste plānē³⁸ acerbūque fūnus³⁹ . . . Iam dēstināta erat⁴⁰ ēgregiō⁴¹ iuveni,⁴² iam ēlēctus⁴³ nūptiārum⁴⁴ diēs, iam
15 nōs vocātī. Quod gaudium quō maerōre⁴⁵ mūtātum est!

Nōn possum exprimere⁴⁶ verbīs quantum animō vulnus accēperim cum audīvī Fundānum ipsum praecipientem,⁴⁷ quod⁴⁸ in vestēs,⁴⁹ margarīta,⁵⁰ gemmās⁵¹ fuerat ērogātūrus,⁵² hoc in tūs⁵³ et unguenta et odōrēs⁵⁴ impenderētur⁵⁵ . . . Sī quās ad eum dē dolōre tam iūstō litterās mittēs, mementō⁵⁶
20 adhibēre⁵⁷ sōlācium . . . molle⁵⁸ et hūmānum. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.16, excerpts)

41. PLINY'S CONCERN ABOUT A SICK FREEDMAN

C. PLINIUS VALERIŌ PAULINŌ SUŌ S.

Videō quam molliter¹ tuōs² habeās³; quō simplicius⁴ tibi cōnfitebor quā

¹³ cervīx, -īcis, *f.*, usually *pl.* (cervīcēs) as here, neck

¹⁴ inhaereō, -ēre, -haesī, -haesum, cling

¹⁵ paternus, -a, -um, paternal, of a father

¹⁶ amanter, *adv.* of amāns

¹⁷ modestē, *adv.*, modestly

¹⁸ complector, -ī, -plexus sum, hold in the arms, embrace

¹⁹ nūtrīx, -īcis, *f.*, nurse

²⁰ paedagōgus, -ī, tutor (*slave who escorted children*)

²¹ praeceptor, -ōris, *m.*, teacher (*in a school, not a private tutor*)

²² studiōsē, *adv.* of studiōsus, full of studium

²³ intelligenter, *adv.* of intelligēs

²⁴ lēctitō (1), read (eagerly)

²⁵ temperantia, -ae, self-control

²⁶ cōstantia, -ae, firmness

²⁷ valētūdō, -dinis, *f.*, here = bad health, illness

²⁸ ob + sequor, obey

²⁹ adhortor = hortor

³⁰ dēstituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum, desert, abandon

³¹ vigor, -ōris, *m.*, vigor; vigōre, *abl.* of means with sustinēbat

³² (puella) sustinēbat sē ipsam

³³ dūrō (1), endure

³⁴ hic (vigor animī)

³⁵ extrēmum, -ī = fīnis

³⁶ spatium, -iī, space, duration

³⁷ īnfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -fractum, break

³⁸ plānē, *adv.*, clearly

³⁹ here = mors

⁴⁰ dēstinō (1), bind, engage

⁴¹ ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished

⁴² iuvenis, -is, *m.*, young man

⁴³ ē-ligō = legō

⁴⁴ nūptiae, -ārum, wedding

⁴⁵ maeror, -ōris, *m.*, grief

⁴⁶ ex-primō (= premō), express

⁴⁷ praecipīō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, direct

⁴⁸ The antecedent is hoc in the following line.

⁴⁹ vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, clothes

⁵⁰ margarītum, -ī, pearl

⁵¹ gemma, -ae, jewel

⁵² ērogō (1), pay out, spend; fuerat ērogātūrus (*act. periphrastic*), he had been about to spend, had intended to spend (*on clothes, jewels, etc., for the wedding*)

⁵³ tūs, tūris, *n.*, incense

⁵⁴ odor, -ōris, *m.*, perfume

⁵⁵ impendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsūm, expend; impenderētur, *subj.* in a jussive noun cl.

⁵⁶ meminī, meminisse, *defective vb.*, remember; mementō, *fut. imper.*, remember

⁵⁷ adhibeō, -ere, -hibuī, -hibitum, use, furnish

⁵⁸ mollis, -e, soft, gentle

41

¹ molliter, *adv.* of mollis

² tuōs (servōs et libertōs); so meōs below

³ treat

⁴ simpliciter, *adv.*, frankly, candidly; quō simplicius by which (*degree of difference*) more frankly = the more frankly

indulgentiā⁵ meōs tractem.⁶ Quod sī essem nātūrā asperior et dūrior, frangeret mē tamen infirmitās⁷ libertī⁸ mei Zōsimī,⁹ cui tantō maior hūmānitās¹⁰ exhibenda¹¹ est, quantō nunc illā magis eget. Homō probus,¹² officiōsus,¹³ litterātus¹⁴; et ars quidem eius et quasi inscriptiō¹⁵—cōmoedus . . . Ūtitur et citharā perītē.¹⁶ Īdem tam commodē¹⁷ ōrātiōnēs et historiās¹⁸ et carmina legit ut hoc solum didicisse videātur.

Haec tibi sēdulō¹⁹ exposuī quō magis scīrēs quam multa ūnus mihi et quam iūcunda ministeria²⁰ praestāret. Accēdit longa iam cāritās²¹ hominis, quam ipsa perīcula auxērunt²² . . . Ante aliquot²³ annōs,²⁴ dum intentē instanterque²⁵ prōnūntiat, sanguinem²⁶ reiēcit²⁷; atque ob hoc in Aegyptum²⁸ missus ā mē, post longam peregrinātiōnem²⁹ cōfirmātus³⁰ rediit nūper. Deinde . . . veteris infirmitātis³¹ tussiculā³² admonitus,³³ rūsus sanguinem reddidit.³⁴

Quā ex causā dēstināvī³⁵ eum mittere in praedia³⁶ tua quae Forō Iūliī³⁷ possidēs.³⁸ Audīvī enim tē referentem esse ibi āera³⁹ salūbrem⁴⁰ et lac⁴¹ eius modī cūrātiōnibus⁴² accommodātissimum.⁴³ Rogō ergō scrībās⁴⁴ tuīs⁴⁵ ut illī vīlla, ut domus⁴⁶ pateat . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 5.19, excerpts)

ON BEHALF OF A PENITENT FREEDMAN (42–43)

⁵ *indulgentia*, -ae, kindness

⁶ *tractō* (1), handle, treat

⁷ *infirmitās*, -tātis, f., illness, weakness

⁸ *libertus*, -ī, freedman (a slave who had somehow secured his freedom) in contrast to a *liber vir* (one who was born free). A freedman commonly remained closely attached to his former master.

⁹ *Zōsimus*, -ī, Zosimus, apparently a Greek

¹⁰ *hūmānitās*, -tātis, f., kindness

¹¹ *ex-hibeō*, show, exhibit

¹² *probus*, -a, -um, honorable, fine

¹³ *officiōsus*, -a, -um, obliging, courteous

¹⁴ *litterātus*, -a, -um, well-educated; Greek slaves especially were often well educated.

¹⁵ *inscriptiō*, -ōnis, f., here = label, a placard hung around a slave's neck in the slave market to indicate his special abilities.—*cōmoedus*, -ī, comic actor, often a slave trained to read at dinners scenes from famous comedies. Although this was Zosimus' specialty, we find him in the next two sents. surprisingly versatile and talented.

¹⁶ *perītē*, adv., skillfully

¹⁷ *commodē*, adv., fitly, satisfactorily

¹⁸ *historia*, -ae = Eng.

¹⁹ *sēdulō*, adv., carefully

²⁰ *ministerium*, -ī, service

²¹ *cāritās*, -tātis, f., dearness, affection (cp. *cārus*)

²² *augeō*, -ēre, auxī, auctum, increase

²³ *aliquot*, indecl. adj., several, some

²⁴ *ante* . . . *annōs*, several years ago

²⁵ earnestly and emphatically

²⁶ *sanguis*, -inis, m., blood

²⁷ *re-iciō*, reject, spit out

²⁸ *Aegyptus*, -ī, f., Egypt

²⁹ *peregrinātiō*, -ōnis, f., travel or sojourn abroad

³⁰ *cōfirmō* (1), strengthen

³¹ *infirmitās*, -tātis, f., weakness, sickness

³² *tussicula*, -ae, slight cough

³³ *ad-monitus* = *monitus*

³⁴ *reddidit* = *reiēcit*

³⁵ *dēstinō* (1), intend, resolve

³⁶ *praedium*, -ī, country seat

³⁷ *Forum Iūliū*, *Forī Iūliū*, Forum of Julius, modern Fréjus, a coastal town of southern France; *Forō*, place where

³⁸ *possideō*, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, possess, own

³⁹ *āer*, *āeris*, m., air; *āera* = Gk. acc. sg.

⁴⁰ *salūbris*, -e, healthful; still so regarded

⁴¹ *lac*, *lactis*, n., milk; i.e., for the milk cure

⁴² *cūrātiō*, -ōnis, f., cure

⁴³ *accommodātus*, -a, -um, suited

⁴⁴ (ut) *scrībās*: ut is sometimes omitted in such cls.

⁴⁵ *tuīs*, your servants

⁴⁶ *ut vīlla* (pateat), *ut domus pateat*: i.e., he is to have access to the great house itself as well as to the estate.

42. C. PLINIUS SABĪNIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Lībertus tuus, cui suscēnsēre¹ tē dīxerās, vēnit ad mē . . . Flēvit multum, multum rogāvit, multum etiam tacuit; in summā,² fēcit mihi fidem paenitentiae.³ Vērē crēdō ēmendātum⁴ quia dēlīquisse⁵ sē sentit. Irāsceris, sciō; et irāsceris meritō,⁶ id quoque sciō; sed tunc praecipua⁷ mānsuētūdinis⁸ laus cum irae causa iūstissima est. Amāstī⁹ hominem et, spērō, amābis; interim¹⁰ sufficit¹¹ ut exōrārī¹² tē sinās¹³ . . . Nē torserīs¹⁴ illum, nē torserīs etiam tē; torquēris¹⁵ enim, cum tam lēnis¹⁶ irāsceris. Vereor nē videar nōn rogāre sed cōgere, sī precibus¹⁷ eius meās iūnxerō. Iungam tamen tantō plēnius¹⁸ et effūsus,¹⁹ quantō²⁰ ipsum²¹ ācrius sevēriusque²² corripuī²³ . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 9.21, excerpts)

43. C. PLINIUS SABĪNIĀNŌ SUŌ S.

Bene fēcistī¹ quod lībertum² aliquandō³ tibi cārum redūcentibus⁴ epistulīs⁵ meīs in domum,⁶ in animum recēpistī. Iuvābit hoc tē, mē certē iuvat; primum,⁷ quod tē tam tractābilem⁸ videō ut in irā regī possīs; deinde, quod tantum mihi tribuis⁹ ut vel¹⁰ auctōritātī meae pāreās vel precibus indulgeās.¹¹ Igitur laudō et grātiās agō . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 9.24, excerpts)

44. SELECTION OF A TEACHER

C. PLINIUS MAURICŌ SUŌ S.

Quid ā tē mihi iūcundius potuit iniungī¹ quam ut praeceptōrem frātris tuī līberīs quaererem? Nam beneficiō² tuō in scholam³ redeō et illam dulcis-

42

- ¹ suscēnsēō, -ēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsūm, + *dat.*, be angry with
² summa, -ae, sum
³ paenitentia, -ae, repentance
⁴ ēmendō (1), correct; (eum) ēmendātum (esse)
⁵ dēlinquō, -ere, -līquī, -līctum, fail (in duty), commit a crime
⁶ meritō, *adv.*, rightly (with merit)
⁷ praecipuus, -a, -um, special; *sc. est*
⁸ mānsuētūdō, -inis, *f.*, gentleness, mildness
⁹ contracted form = amāvistī
¹⁰ interim, *adv.*, meanwhile (*cp. intereā*)
¹¹ sufficit, *subject = ut-cl.*
¹² ex-ōrō, *stronger form of* ōrō
¹³ sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, allow, permit
¹⁴ torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortum, twist, torture; nē torserīs, *L.I. 22 n. 1*
¹⁵ torquēris, you are tormented = you torment yourself (*reflexive use of the pass.*)
¹⁶ lēnis, -e, gentle, kind; *agreeing with subject of irāsceris*: you, such a gentle person
¹⁷ prex, precis, *f.*, prayer
¹⁸ plēnē, *adv. of plēnus*
¹⁹ effūsē, *adv.*, profusely, unrestrainedly
²⁰ tantō . . . quantō, the more . . . the more, *abl. of de-*

gree of difference (S.S.)

- ²¹ (lībertum) ipsum
²² sevērē, *adv.*, seriously, severely
²³ cor-ripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, seize, accuse, blame

43

- ¹ you did well because = thank you for
² lībertum, *in thought, the obj. of both redūcentibus and recēpistī*
³ aliquandō, *adv.*, once
⁴ re-dūcō
⁵ epistulīs, *here pl. of a single letter (the preceding one) on the analogy of litterae, -ārum*
⁶ Both prepositional phrases, connected by et understood, depend on recēpistī
⁷ primum, *adv.*, first
⁸ tractābilis, -ē, tractable, compliant
⁹ tribuō, -ere, -buī, -būtum, attribute, ascribe
¹⁰ vel . . . vel, either . . . or
¹¹ indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultum, yield to, gratify

44

- ¹ in-iungō, enjoin, impose
² beneficiō tuō, thanks to you
³ schola, -ae, school

simam aetātem quasi resūmō.⁴ Sedeō inter iuvenēs, ut solēbam, atque etiam
 experior quantum apud illōs auctōritātis⁵ ex studiīs habeam. Nam prox-
 5 imē⁶ frequentī⁷ audītōriō⁸ inter sē cōram⁹ multīs ōrdinis¹⁰ nostrī clārē¹¹
 loquēbantur: intrāvī, conticuērunt¹²; quod¹³ nōn referrem, nisi ad illōrum
 magis laudem quam ad meam pertinēret¹⁴ . . . Cum omnēs quī profiten-
 tur¹⁵ audierō, quid dē quōque sentiam scrībam efficiamque,¹⁶ quantum ta-
 10 men epistolā cōsequī¹⁷ poterō, ut ipse omnēs audisse videāris. Dēbeō enim
 tibi, dēbeō memoriae frātris tuī hanc fidem, hoc studium, praesertim¹⁸ su-
 per¹⁹ tantā rē. Nam quid magis interest vestrā²⁰ quam ut liberī . . . dignī illō
 patre, tē patruō²¹ reperiantur? . . . Valē. (Pliny, *Epistulae* 2.8 excerpts)

45. THE OLD BOY DYED HIS HAIR

Mentīris¹ iuvenem tīctis,² Laetīne,³ capillīs,⁴
 tam subitō corvus quī modo cyncus⁵ erās.
 Nōn omnēs fallis⁶; scit tē Prōserpina⁷ cānum⁸:
 persōnam capitī dētrahet⁹ illa¹⁰ tuō.
 (Martial 3.43)

46. WHAT'S IN A NAME?

Cinnam,¹ Cinname,² tē iubēs vocārī.
 Nōn est hic, rogo, Cinna, barbarismus³?
 Tū sī Fūrius⁴ ante dictus essēs,
 Fūr⁵ istā ratiōne dīcerēris.
 (Martial 6.17)

⁴ re-sūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, resume

⁵ gen. with quantum

⁶ proximē, adv., very recently

⁷ frequēns, gen. -entis, crowded

⁸ audītōrium, -iī, lecture room, school; audītōriō, place where without a prep.

⁹ cōram, prep. + abl., in the presence of

¹⁰ i.e., the senatorial order

¹¹ clārē (adv. of clārus), here = loudly

¹² conticēscō, -ere, -ticuī, become silent

¹³ quod, having as antecedent the whole preceding idea

¹⁴ pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, pertain to

¹⁵ profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, teach, a late meaning of the word

¹⁶ efficiō . . . ut, *L.A.* 8 n. 20–21

¹⁷ cōn-sequor, accomplish

¹⁸ praesertim, adv., especially

¹⁹ super, prep. + abl., about

²⁰ interest vestrā, interests you (highly idiomatic)

²¹ patruus, -iī, (paternal) uncle; tē patruō is in the same construction as illō patre.

45

METER: Elegiac couplet.

¹ mentior, -irī, -ītus sum, lie, declare falsely, here = imitate

² tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīctus, wet, dye

³ Laetīnus, -ī, Laetinus

⁴ capillī, -ōrum, hair

⁵ cyncus, -ī, swan

⁶ nōn omnēs (fallis) seems to imply that the hair dyes were good enough to deceive at least some people.

⁷ Prōserpina, -ae, Proserpina, goddess of the underworld, and so of death

⁸ cānus, -a, -um, gray; tē (esse) cānum

⁹ dē-trahō

¹⁰ illa = Proserpina

46

METER: Hendecasyllabic.

¹ Cinna, -ae, m., Cinna, a famous Roman name

² Cinnamus, -ī, Cinnamus, a slave name meaning "cinnamon." The Romans often gave such names to slaves. Cinnamus, now a freedman, wanted to change his name to a Roman one for obvious reasons.

³ barbarismus, -ī, a barbarism, an impropriety of speech

⁴ Fūrius, -ī, Furius, an old Roman name

⁵ Fūr, from fūr, fūris, m., thief; cp. fūrtīvus

47. FAKE TEARS

Āmissum¹ nōn flet cum sōla est Gellia² patrem;
 sī quis adest, iussae³ prōsiliunt⁴ lacrimae.
 Nōn lūget⁵ quisquis laudārī, Gellia, quaerit;
 ille dolet vērē quī sine teste⁶ dolet.

(Martial 1.33)

48. EVEN THOUGH YOU DO INVITE ME—I'LL COME!

Quod convīvāris¹ sine mē tam saepe, Luperce,²
 invēnī noceam quā ratiōne tibi.
 Īrāscor: licet³ ūsque vocēs mittāsque⁴ rogēsque—
 “Quid faciēs?” inquis. Quid faciam? Veniam!

(Martial 6.51)

49. PRO-CRAS-TINATION

Crās tē vīctūrum,¹ crās dīcis, Postume,² semper.
 Dīc mihi, crās istud,³ Postume, quando venit?
 Quam longē est crās istud? ubi est? aut unde petendum⁴?
 Numquid⁵ apud Parthōs Armeniōsque⁶ latet⁷?
 5 Iam crās istud habet Priamī⁸ vel Nestoris⁹ annōs.
 Crās istud quantī¹⁰ dīc mihi possit emī¹¹?
 Crās vīvēs? Hodiē iam vīvere, Postume, sērum¹² est.
 Ille sapit quisquis, Postume, vīxit herī.

(Martial 5.58)

50. ISSA

Issa¹ est passere² nēquior³ Catullī:

47

METER: Elegiac couplet.

- ¹ āmissum patrem
² Gellia, -ae, Gellia
³ at her bidding; how literally?
⁴ prōsiliō (4), leap forth
⁵ lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum, mourn
⁶ testis, -is, m., witness

48

METER: Elegiac couplet.

- ¹ convīvor (1), to feast
² Lupercus, -ī, Lupercus
³ licet ūsque (ut) vocēs (it is even permitted that you call), you may even invite me, or even though you invite me
⁴ i.e., send a slave as a special messenger

49

METER: Elegiac couplet.

- ¹ vīctūrum, sc. esse
² No doubt Martial intended to have us think of Hor-

ace's Postumus in L.I. 25 above.

- ³ crās istud, that “tomorrow” of yours, subj. of venit
⁴ petendum (est)
⁵ numquid latet, it does not lie hidden, does it?
⁶ among the Parthians and Armenians, i.e., at land's end in the East
⁷ lateō, -ēre, -uī, lie hidden
⁸ Priamus, -ī, Priam, aged king of Troy
⁹ Nestōr, -oris, Nestor, Greek leader famed for his years and wisdom
¹⁰ quantī, gen. of indef. value: at what price, for how much can that tomorrow be bought
¹¹ emō, -ere, emī, emptum, buy
¹² sērus, -a, -um, late; sērum, pred. adj. in n. to agree with hodiē vīvere, which is subject of est

50

METER: Hendecasyllabic.

- ¹ Issa, colloquial and affectionate form for Ipsa and here used as the name of a pet dog
² passer Catullī, see L.I. 3
³ nēquam, indecl. adj.; compar. nēquior, -ius, worthless, good for nothing, mischievous

Issa est pūrior ōsculō columbae;⁴
 Issa est blandior⁵ omnibus puellīs;
 Issa est cārrior Indicīs⁶ lapillīs⁷;
 5 Issa est dēliciae⁸ catella⁹ Pūblī.¹⁰

Hanc tū, sī queritur,¹¹ loquī putābis.
 Sentit trīstitiamque¹² gaudiumque.

...

Hanc nē lūx rapiat suprēma¹³ tōtam,
 pictā¹⁴ Pūblius exprimit¹⁵ tabellā
 10 in quā tam similem vidēbis Issam¹⁶
 ut sit tam similis sibī nec¹⁷ ipsa.
 Issam dēnique pōne cum tabellā:
 aut utramque putābis esse vērā
 aut utramque putābis esse pictā.
 (Martial 1.109)

⁴ columba, -ae, dove

⁵ blandus, -a, -um, flattering, caressing, coaxing

⁶ Indicus, -a, -um, of India

⁷ lapillus, -ī, precious stone, gem

⁸ see L.I. 3

⁹ catella, -ae, little dog

¹⁰ Pūblī = Pūblī, gen. sg. of Pūblius

¹¹ here = whimper

¹² trīstitia, -ae, sadness

¹³ lūx (diēs) suprēma = mors

¹⁴ pingō, -ere, pīnxī, pictum, paint; pictā tabellā, by a painted tablet = in a painting

¹⁵ exprimō, -ere, -pressī, pressum, express, portray

¹⁶ tam similem . . . Issam: an Issa (of the painting) so similar (to the real Issa)

¹⁷ nec here = not even

自测练习¹

这些自测练习旨在针对不同的读者增强本书的效用。

1. **重复是记忆之母 Repetitiō māter memoriae**。在语言学习中,重复的价值是毋庸置疑的。这些练习为正文的内容又增加了不少重复训练的机会。其中的短语和句子有意编写得比较简单,以突出形式和句法的要点。其中出现的单词仅限于正文的词汇表,在做这些自测练习之前,当然应当记住这些词汇。由于只是为了巩固所学的内容,这些句子当然不够有文采。对于有价值的阅读材料,读者可以在“古文选编”和古代阅读段落中找到提示。但是如果希望通过更多的反复练习来建立起语言反射,就可以做做这些自测练习。我们曾经建议,一定要把每一个拉丁词句大声朗读出来,因为这样一种训练可以使我们借助耳朵和眼睛进行学习,从而提供语言实验室状态下所能带来的多种好处。

2. 对于那些参加拉丁语班的学生来说,这些练习和答案有利于复习和自我测验,对备考也有帮助。

3. 对于自学或复习拉丁语的个人来说,这些练习当然也是有价值的,因为可以用它们来检验自己的水平,错误可以通过答案来纠正。利用答案完成这些练习,也可以增强完成本书正文练习的信心。

4. 每一位学生都可以通过把答案中的英语句子翻回到拉丁语,并且根据练习中相应的拉丁语句子来检验自己写作简单拉丁语的能力。

5. 在翻译时,通常只用到词汇表中给出的单词的各种含义中的一种。如果

¹在原书中,“自测练习”和“练习答案”是彼此分开的两个部分。为了方便读者查对,这里将每一课的练习和答案组合在了一起。——译者注

有的翻译显得有些形式化,那是因为用这种方式可以更好地符合拉丁语。当然,这些句子都旨在帮助我们理解拉丁语,而不是训练我们的文学表达。能够在翻译中使用优雅的文学表达是再理想不过的,应当连同本书中的其他练习一起去尝试。

6. 答案放在练习的后面,以方便学生进行自测,所以如果指导教师愿意,练习可以在课堂上做。不用说,检验自己的最保险的方式是先给出回答,再看答案。

7. 最后,我们再次强调,为了达到最佳效果,我们必须大声朗读所有拉丁语词、短语和句子,在做这些练习之前,必须已经通过词汇表认真学过每一课的课文。

第一课练习

- 下列拉丁语人称词尾分别对应于什么英语代词:(1) -t, (2) -mus, (3) -ō, (4) -nt, (5) -s, (6) -tis。
- 说出下列形式的名称并翻译:(1) monēre, (2) vidēre, (3) valēre, (4) dēbēre。
- 说出下列形式的名称并翻译:(1) vocāre, (2) servāre, (3) dare, (4) cōgitāre, (5) laudāre, (6) amāre, (7) errāre。
- 说出下列形式的名称并翻译:(1) vocā, (2) servā, (3) dā, (4) cōgitā, (5) laudā, (6) amā, (7) monē, (8) vidē, (9) valē。
- 说出下列形式的名称并翻译:(1) vocāte, (2) servāte, (3) date, (4) cōgitāte, (5) laudāte, (6) amāte, (7) monēte, (8) vidēte, (9) valēte。
- 翻译下列词:(1) vocat, (2) cōgitāmus, (3) amant, (4) dēbēs, (5) videt, (6) vident, (7) dēbēmus, (8) valēs, (9) errātis, (10) vidēmus, (11) amat, (12) vidētis, (13) errās, (14) dant, (15) servāmus, (16) dat, (17) amant, (18) vidēs。
- Monent mē sī errō. 8. Monet mē sī errant. 9. Monēte mē sī errat. 10. Dēbēs monēre mē. 11. Dēbētis servāre mē. 12. Nōn dēbent laudāre mē. 13. “Quid dat?” “Saepe nihil dat.” 14. Mē saepe vocant et (*and*) moment. 15. Nihil videō. Quid vidēs? 16. Mē laudā sī nōn errō, amābō tē. 17. Sī valētis, valēmus. 18. Sī valet, valeō. 19. Sī mē amat, dēbet mē laudāre. 20. Cōservāte mē. 21. Nōn dēbeō errāre. 22. Quid dēbēmus laudāre? 23. Videt; cōgitat; monet.

答案

- (1) he, she, it; (2) we; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.)。
- 第二变位法动词的现在时主动态不定式。(1) to advise/warn; (2) to see; (3) to be strong; (4) to owe。
- 第一变位法动词的现在时主动态不定式。(1) to call; (2) to save; (3) to give; (4) to think; (5) to praise; (6) to love; (7) to err。
- 第一或第二变位法动词的第二人称单数现在时主动态命令式。(1) call;

- (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.
5. 第一或第二变位法动词的第二人称复数现在时主动态命令式。(1) call; (2) save; (3) give; (4) think; (5) praise; (6) love; (7) advise/warn; (8) see; (9) be strong/good-bye.
6. (1) he/she/it calls, is calling, does call; (2) we think; (3) they love; (4) you (sg.) owe/ought; (5) he sees; (6) they see; (7) we owe/ought; (8) you (sg.) are strong; (9) you (pl.) err/are mistaken; (10) we see; (11) he/she/it loves; (12) you (pl.) see; (13) you (sg.) err; (14) they give; (15) we save; (16) he gives; (17) they love; (18) you (sg.) see.
7. They warn me if I err. 8. He warns me if they err. 9. Warn me if he errs. 10. You (sg.) ought to warn me. 11. You (pl.) ought to save me. 12. They ought not to praise me. 13. "What does he give?" "He often gives nothing." 14. They often call me and advise me. 15. I see nothing. What do you see? 16. Praise me, please, if I do not make a mistake. 17. If you (pl.) are well, we are well. 18. If he is well, I am well. 19. If he (she) loves me, he (she) ought to praise me. 20. Save me. 21. I ought not to err. 22. What ought we to praise? 23. He sees; he ponders; he advises.

第二课练习

- 给出表示定冠词“the”和不定冠词“a”的拉丁词。
- 在拉丁语中,表示下列结构或概念的分别是哪种格:(1) 动词的直接宾语;(2) 属有;(3) 动词主语;(4) 手段;(5) 直接称呼;(6) 动词的间接宾语。
- 下列第一变格法词尾分别指示什么格、数和句法使用:(1) -ās; (2) -a; (3) -am; (4) -ae (pl.)。
- 说出下列词尾所指示的格和数, 如果可能, 请给出与它们相联系的英语介词:(1) -ārum; (2) -ā; (3) -ae; (4) -īs。
- 翻译下列名词, 并说出每个词的词尾各指示什么句法使用:(1) puellam; (2) puella; (3) puellās; (4) puellae (plural form); (5) patriās; (6) patriam; (7) patria; (8) patriae (pl.); (9) pecūniam; (10) pecūnia; (11) poenās; (12) poenam。
- 根据格词尾翻译下列名词:(1) puellae (sg.); (2) puellārum; (3) ō patria; (4) patriae (sg.); (5) pecūniā; (6) pecūniae (sg.); (7) poenīs; (8) poenā; (9) poenārum。
- 根据下列单数主格形式, 写出所要求的拉丁语形式:(1) **multa pecūnia** in the genitive and the accusative singular; (2) **magna fāma** in dat. and abl. sg.; (3) **vīta mea** in gen. sg. and nom. pl.; (4) **fortūna tua** in acc. sg. and pl.; (5) **magna patria** in gen. sg. and pl.; (6) **fortūna mea** in abl. sg. and pl.; (7) **magna poena** in dat. sg. and pl.; (8) **multa philosophia** in dat. and abl. pl.。

8. 根据英语介词所指示的格将下列短语翻译成拉丁语:(1) by much money; (2) of many girls; (3) to/for my country; (4) great life (动词的直接宾语); (5) by your penalties; (6) many countries (动词的主语); (7) to/for many girls; (8) of my life; (9) O fortune; (10) girl's; (11) girls'; (12) girls (直接称呼); (13) the girls (动词的直接宾语); (14) the girls (动词的主语)。
9. Valē, patria mea. 10. Fortūna puellae est magna. 11. Puella fortūnam patriae tuae laudat. 12. Ō puella, patriam tuam servā. 13. Multae puellae pecūniam amant. 14. Puellae nihil datis. 15. Pecūniam puellae videt. 16. Pecūniam puellārum nōn vidēs. 17. Monēre puellās dēbēmus. 18. Laudāre puellam dēbent. 19. Vīta multīs puellīs fortūnam dat. 20. Vītam meam pecūniā tuā cōservās. 21. Fāma est nihil sine fortūnā. 22. Vītam sine pecūniā nōn amātis. 23. Sine fāmā et fortūnā patria nōn valet. 24. Īram puellārum laudāre nōn dēbēs. 25. Vītam sine poenīs amāmus. 26. Sine philosophiā nōn valēmus. 27. Quid est vīta sine philosophiā?

答案

1. 古典拉丁语中没有特定的定冠词或不定冠词。在英语翻译中,必须根据拉丁语的相应含义加上 *the* 或 *a*。比如根据语境,**puella** 可以指 *the girl* 或 *a girl*, **puellae** 可以指 *the girls* 或 *girls*。在孤立的一句话中,*the* 和 *a* 往往可以换用,也可以不用任何冠词。
2. (1) acc. case; (2) gen. case; (3) nom. case; (4) abl.; (5) voc.; (6) dat.
3. (1) acc. pl. as direct object of a verb; (2) nom. sg. as subject of a verb or voc. sg. for direct address; (3) acc. sg. as direct object; (4) nom. pl. subject, or voc. for direct address.
4. (1) gen. pl., of; (2) abl. sg., by/with/from, etc.; (3) gen. sg., of; dat. sg., to/for; nom. pl.; voc. pl.; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with/from, etc.
5. (1) girl, direct obj. of verb; (2) girl, subject or vocative; (3) girls, object; (4) girls, subj. or voc.; (5) countries, obj.; (6) country, obj.; (7) country, subj. or voc.; (8) countries, subj. or voc.; (9) money, obj.; (10) money, subj. or voc.; (11) penalties, obj.; (12) penalty, obj.
6. (1) of the girl, girl's, or to/for the girl; (2) of the girls, girls'; (3) O fatherland; (4) of or to/for the fatherland; (5) by/with, etc., money; (6) of or to/for money; (7) to/for or by/with, etc., penalties; (8) by/with etc., a penalty; (9) of penalties.
7. (1) multae pecūniae, multam pecūniam; (2) magnae fāmae, magnā fāmā; (3) vītae meae, vītae meae; (4) fortūnam tuam, fortūnās tuās; (5) magnae patriae, magnārum patriārum; (6) fortūnā meā, fortūnīs meīs; (7) magnae poenae, magnīs poenīs; (8) multīs philosophiīs, multīs philosophiīs.
8. (1) multā pecūniā; (2) multārum puellārum; (3) meae patriae; (4) magnam vītam; (5) tuīs poenīs; (6) multae patriae; (7) multīs puellīs; (8) meae vītae; (9) Ō fortūna; (10) puellae; (11) puellārum; (12) puellae; (13) puellās; (14) puellae.
9. Farewell (goodbye), my native land. 10. The fortune of the girl (the girl's fortune) is great. 11. The girl is praising the fortune of your (sg.) country. 12. O girl, save

your country. 13. Many girls love money. 14. You (pl.) are giving nothing to the girl, *or* you give nothing to a girl. 15. He sees the money of the girl, *or* the girl's money. 16. You (sg.) do not see the girls' money. 17. We ought to warn the girls. 18. They ought to praise the girl. 19. Life gives (good) fortune to many girls. 20. You (sg.) are saving my life by *or* with your money. 21. Fame is nothing without fortune. 22. You (pl.) do not like life without money. 23. A country is not strong without fame and fortune. 24. You (sg.) ought not to praise the anger of the girls. 25. We like a life without punishments. 26. We are not strong without philosophy. 27. What is life without philosophy?

第三课练习

- 说出下列第二变格法阳性名词的词尾所指示的格和数以及句法使用:
(1) -um; (2) -ī (pl.); (3) -us; (4) -ōs; (5) -e。
- 说出下列词尾所指示的格和数,并给出与之相联系的英语介词:(1) -ō;
(2) -ōrum; (3) -ī (sg.); (4) -īs。
- 翻译下列名词,说出其词尾所指示的句法使用:(1) filiōs; (2) filiī (pl.); (3) fili-um; (4) populum; (5) popule; (6) populus; (7) vir; (8) virōs; (9) virī (pl.); (10) virum; (11) amīce; (12) amīcī (pl.); (13) amīcōs; (14) amīcum。
- 根据格词尾翻译下列词或短语:(1) filiōrum meōrum; (2) filiō meō; (3) populī Rōmānī (sg.); (4) populō Rōmānō; (5) virīs; (6) virī (sg.); (7) virōrum; (8) amīcōrum paucōrum; (9) amīcīs paucīs; (10) amīcō meō; (11) amīcī meī (sg.); (12) multīs puerīs。
- 根据下列单数主格形式,写出相应的拉丁语形式:(1) **populus Rōmānus** in gen. and abl. sg.; (2) **magnus vir** in acc. and abl. pl.; (3) **puer meus** in dat. and abl. pl.; (4) **magnus numerus** in dat. and abl. sg.; (5) **magnus vir** in voc. sg. and pl.; (6) **filius meus** in gen. sg. and pl。
- 根据所要求的格或英语介词所指示的格,将下列短语翻译成拉丁语:(1) of many boys; (2) to/for the Roman people; (3) my sons (object of verb); (4) O my sons; (5) a great number (obj. of verb); (6) by the great number; (7) O great man; (8) to/for many boys; (9) the great man (subj. of verb); (10) of the Roman people。
- Valē, mī amīce. 8. Populus Rōmānus sapientiam filiī tuī laudat. 9. Ō vir magne, populum Rōmānum servā. 10. Numerus populī Rōmānī est magnus. 11. Multī puerī puellās amant. 12. Fīliō meō nihil datis. 13. Virōs in agrō videō. 14. Amīcum filiī meī vidēs. 15. Amīcum filiōrum tuōrum nōn videt. 16. Dēbēmus filiōs meōs monēre. 17. Dēbent filiū tuū laudāre. 18. Vīta paucīs virīs fāmam dat. 19. Mē in numerō amīcōrum tuōrum habēs. 20. Virī magnī paucōs amīcōs saepe habent. 21. Amīcus meus semper cōgitat. 22. Fīlius magnī virī nōn semper est magnus vir. 23. Sapi-

entiam magnōrum virōrum nōn semper vidēmus. 24. Philosophiam, sapientiam magnōrum virōrum, laudāre dēbētis.

答案

- (1) acc. sg., obj.; (2) nom. pl. as subj., voc. pl. for direct address; (3) nom. sg., subj.; (4) acc. pl. obj.; (5) voc. sg., direct address.
- (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.
- (1) sons, obj.; (2) sons, subj. or direct address; (3) son, obj.; (4) people, obj.; (5) people, direct address; (6) people, subj.; (7) man, subj. or direct address; (8) men, obj.; (9) men, subj. or direct address; (10) man, obj.; (11) friend, direct address; (12) friends, subj. or direct address; (13) friends, obj.; (14) friend, obj.
- (1) of my sons; (2) to/for my son, by/with, etc., my son; (3) of the Roman people; (4) to/for the Roman people, by/with, etc., the Roman people; (5) to/for the men, by/with, etc., the men; (6) of the man; (7) of the men; (8) of a few friends; (9) to/for or by/with, etc., a few friends; (10) to/for or by/with, etc., my friend; (11) of my friend; (12) to/for or by/with, etc., many boys.
- (1) populī Rōmānī, populō Rōmānō; (2) magnōs virōs, magnīs virīs; (3) puerīs meīs, puerīs meīs; (4) magnō numerō, magnō numerō; (5) magne vir, magnī virī; (6) filiī meī, filiōrum meōrum.
- (1) multōrum puerōrum; (2) populō Rōmānō; (3) filiōs meōs; (4) Ō filiī meī; (5) magnum numerum; (6) magnō numerō; (7) Ō vir magne; (8) multīs puerīs; (9) vir magnus; (10) populī Rōmānī.
- Good-bye, my friend. 8. The Roman people praise your (sg.) son's wisdom. 9. O great man, save the Roman people. 10. The number of the Roman people is great. 11. Many boys love girls. 12. You (pl.) are giving nothing to my son. 13. I see men in the field. 14. You (sg.) see the friend of my son. 15. He does not see your (sg.) sons' friend. 16. We ought to warn my sons. 17. They ought to praise your (sg.) son. 18. Life gives fame to few men. 19. You (sg.) consider me in the number (circle) of your friends. 20. Great men often have few friends. 21. My friend is always thinking. 22. The son of a great man is not always a great man. 23. We do not always see (understand) the wisdom of great men. 24. You (pl.) ought to praise philosophy, the wisdom of great men.

第四课练习

- 第二变格法的中性和阳性形式仅在三种情况下不同，列举这三种情况并给出相应的中性词尾。
- 说出下列第二变格法中性名词的词尾所指示的格和数以及句法使用：(1) -a; (2) -um。
- 说出下列第二变格法中性词尾的格和数以及与之相联系的英语介词：(1) -ō; (2) -ōrum; (3) -ī; (4) -īs。
- 翻译下列中性名词，说出其词尾所指示的句法使用：(1) bella; (2) bellum; (3) officium; (4) officia; (5) perīcula。
- 根据格词尾翻译下列短语：(1) bellōrum malōrum; (2) bellō malō; (3) bellī malī;

(4) bellis malis; (5) officii magni; (6) officii magnis; (7) periculo parvo.

6. 根据下列单数主格形式, 写出相应的拉丁语形式: (1) **bellum parvum** in nom. and acc. pl.; (2) **otium bonum** in acc. sg. and pl.; (3) **periculum magnum** in gen. sg. and pl.; (4) **officium verum** in acc. and abl. sg.

7. 根据所要求的格或英语介词所指示的格, 将下列短语翻译成拉丁语: (1) O evil war; (2) to/for great duty; (3) by the great danger; (4) good leisure (object of verb); (5) by many wars; (6) of good leisure; (7) by the dangers of many wars; (8) small wars (subject of verb); (9) small wars (obj. of verb); (10) O foolish wars; (11) the small war (subj.).

8. Otium est bonum. 9. Multa bella otium non conservant. 10. Periculum est magnum. 11. In magnō periculō sumus. 12. Et otium pericula saepe habet. 13. Vita non est sine multis periculis. 14. Boni viri otium amant. 15. Stultus vir pericula belli laudat. 16. Otium bello saepe non conservamus. 17. Populus Romanus otium bonum non semper habet. 18. Patriam et otium bellis parvis saepe servant. 19. Multae puellae sunt bellae. 20. Veri amici sunt pauci. 21. Amicus meus est vir magni officii. 22. Officia magistrum sunt multa et magna. 23. Vir parvi otii es. 24. Viri magnae curae estis. 25. Sine mora curam officio dare debemus. 26. Sine oculis vita est nihil.

答案

1. 单数主格, 以 **-um** 结尾; 复数主格和复数宾格, 以 **-a** 结尾。事实上, 这里还应加上呼格; 不过由于除了以 **-us** 结尾的第二变格法阳性, 呼格与主格的形式完全相同, 所以今后将不再提及呼格。

2. (1) nom. pl. as subject; acc. pl. as obj.; (2) nom. sg. as subj.; acc. sg. as obj.

3. (1) dat. sg., to/for; abl. sg., by/with, etc.; (2) gen. pl., of; (3) gen. sg., of; (4) dat. pl., to/for; abl. pl., by/with, etc.

4. (1) wars, subj. or obj.; (2) war, subj. or obj.; (3) duty, subj. or obj.; (4) duties, subj. or obj.; (5) dangers, subj. or obj. Of course any of these forms could also be vocative.

5. (1) of evil wars; (2) to/for evil war, by/with, etc., evil war; (3) of evil war; (4) to/for evil wars, by/with, etc., evil wars; (5) of great duty or service; (6) to/for great duties, by/with, etc., great duties; (7) to/for small danger, by/with, etc., small danger.

6. (1) bella parva, bella parva; (2) otium bonum, otia bona; (3) periculi magni, periculorum magnorum; (4) officium verum, officio vero.

7. (1) O bellum malum; (2) officio magnō; (3) periculō magnō; (4) otium bonum; (5) multis bellis; (6) otii boni; (7) periculis multorum bellorum; (8) bella parva; (9) bella parva; (10) O bella stulta; (11) bellum parvum.

8. Peace (leisure) is good. 9. Many wars do not preserve peace. 10. The danger is great. 11. We are in great danger. 12. And leisure often has dangers. 13. Life is not without many dangers. 14. Good men love peace. 15. The foolish man praises

the dangers of war. 16. Often we do not preserve the peace by war. 17. The Roman people do not always have good peace. 18. They often save the fatherland and peace by small wars. 19. Many girls are pretty. 20. True friends are few. 21. My friend is a man of great service. 22. The duties of a teacher are many and great. 23. You (sg.) are a man of little leisure. 24. You (pl.) are men of great care. 25. We ought to give attention to duty without delay. 26. Life is nothing without eyes.

第五课练习

1. 说出第一、第二变位法将来时和未完成时的人称词尾。
2. 它们与现在时的词尾相同吗? 如果不同,请说出有哪些差别。
3. 说出第一、第二变位法将来时和未完成时的时态标志。
4. 如何翻译下列动词词尾:(1) -bāmus; (2) -bit; (3) -bitis; (4) -bō; (5) -bunt; (6) -bat?
5. 当第一、第二变格法形容词有阳性词尾-er时,如何判断在其他形式中e是否保留?
6. 如何通过 *liberty*, *pulchritude*, *nostrum* 等英语词来帮助记忆拉丁语形容词的变格?
7. 翻译下列形式:(1) manēbant; (2) manēbit; (3) manēbimus; (4) dabam; (5) dabit; (6) dabit; (7) vidēbis; (8) vidēbimus; (9) vocābant; (10) vocābis; (11) habēbis; (12) habēbant。
8. 翻译成拉丁语:(1) we shall give; (2) you (sg.) were remaining; (3) they will see; (4) we shall call; (5) he was calling; (6) you (pl.) will see; (7) I shall see; (8) they were saving; (9) we shall have; (10) we were having; (11) he will have; (12) he has。
9. Magister noster mē laudat et tē crās laudābit. 10. Līberī virī perīcula nostra superābant. 11. Fīliī nostrī puellās pulchrās amant. 12. Amīcus noster in numerō stultōrum nōn remanēbit. 13. Culpās multās habēbāmus et semper habēbimus. 14. Perīcula magna animōs nostrōs nōn superant. 15. Pulchra patria nostra est lībera. 16. Līberī virī estis; patriam pulchram habēbitis. 17. Magistrī līberī officiō cūram dabant. 18. Malōs igitur in patriā nostrā superābimus. 19. Sī īram tuam superābis, tē superābis. 20. Propter nostrōs animōs multī sunt līberī. 21. Tē, Ō patria lībera, semper amābāmus et semper amābimus. 22. Sapientiam pecūniā nōn cōservābitis. 23. Habetne animus tuus satis sapientiae?

答案

1. 将来时:-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt; 未完成时:-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt。
2. 将来时的词尾与现在时相同,但未完成时的第一人称单数词尾是-m而不是-ō。
3. 将来时:-bi-(第一人称单数为-b-;第三人称复数为-bu-); 未完成时:-bā-(-m, -t 和-nt 之前是短音-a-)。

4. (1) we were; (2) he will; (3) you (pl.) will; (4) I shall; (5) they will; (6) he was。
5. 通过记忆形容词的词形来判断:**liber, libera, liberum, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**; 往往也可以通过英语派生词来判断。
6. 它们能够显示出以**-er**结尾的阳性形容词中的**e**在其他形式中是否保留:
liberty, **liber, libera, liberum**; pulchritude, **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**。
7. (1) they were remaining, remained; (2) he will remain; (3) we shall remain; (4) I was giving, I gave; (5) you (pl.) will give; (6) he will give; (7) you (sg.) will see; (8) we shall see; (9) they were calling, called; (10) you (sg.) will call; (11) you (sg.) will have; (12) they were having, had.
8. (1) dabimus; (2) manebās; (3) vidēbunt; (4) vocābimus; (5) vocābat; (6) vidēbitis; (7) vidēbō; (8) servābant; (9) habēbimus; (10) habēbāmus; (11) habēbit; (12) habet.
9. Our teacher praises me and he will praise you tomorrow (sg.). 10. Free men were overcoming our dangers. 11. Our sons love pretty girls. 12. Our friend will not stay in the company (number) of fools. 13. We used to have many faults and always shall have. 14. Great dangers do not overcome our courage. 15. Our beautiful country is free. 16. You (pl.) are free men; you will have a beautiful country. 17. Free teachers were giving attention to duty. 18. Therefore, we shall overcome evil men in our country. 19. If you (sg.) overcome (lit., will overcome) your anger, you will overcome yourself. 20. Because of our courage many men are free. 21. Free fatherland, we always used to love you and we always shall love (you). 22. You (pl.) will not preserve wisdom by means of money. 23. Does your (sg.) soul possess enough wisdom?

第六课练习

- “补充不定式”中“补充”(complementary)一词的拼写与句法规则是否有什么联系?
- 在动词 **sum** 及其复合词中,下列人称词尾的含义分别是什么:(1) -mus; (2) -nt; (3) -s; (4) -t; (5) -ō; (6) -m; (7) -tis?
- 如果说动词 **possum** 由 **pot + sum** 构成,那么在哪些形式中 **t** 变成了 **s**,哪些不变?
- 翻译下列形式:(1) erat; (2) poterat; (3) erit; (4) poterit; (5) sumus; (6) possumus; (7) poterāmus; (8) poterimus; (9) poteram; (10) eram; (11) erō; (12) poterō; (13) erunt; (14) poterunt; (15) poterant; (16) esse; (17) posse。
- 翻译成拉丁语:(1) we are; (2) we were; (3) we shall be; (4) we shall be able; (5) he is able; (6) he will be able; (7) he was able; (8) to be able; (9) they were able; (10) they are able; (11) they will be able; (12) they are; (13) to be; (14) I was able。
- Patria vestra erat libera. 7. Poteram esse tyrannus. 8. Amicus vester erit tyrannus. 9. Ubi tyrannus est, ibi viri nōn possunt esse liberi. 10. In patria nostrā heri nōn poterat remanēre. 11. Tyranni multa vitia semper habē-

bunt. 12. Tyrannōs superāre nōn poterāmus. 13. Tyrannum nostrum superāre dēbēmus. 14. Tyrannus bonōs superāre poterat; sed ibi remanēre nōn poterit. 15. Poteritis perīcula tyrannī vidēre. 16. Vitia tyrannōrum tolerāre nōn possumus. 17. Īnsidiās tyrannī nōn tolerābās. 18. Ōtium in patriā vestrā nōn potest esse perpetuum. 19. Dēbēs virōs liberōs dē tyrannīs monēre. 20. Magister vester librōs pulchrōs semper amābat. 21. Librī bonī vērīque poterant patriam cōservāre. 22. Librīs bonīs patriam vestram cōservāre poteritis. 23. Tyrannī sapientiam bonōrum librōrum superāre nōn poterunt. 24. Malī librōs bonōs nōn possunt tolerāre.

答案

1. 参见第六课的“补充不定式”一节。
2. (1) we; (2) they; (3) you (sg.); (4) he, she, it; (5) I; (6) I; (7) you (pl.)。
3. 参见 p. 35。
4. (1) he, she, it was; (2) he, etc., was able; (3) he will be; (4) he will be able; (5) we are; (6) we are able; (7) we were able; (8) we shall be able; (9) I was able; (10) I was; (11) I shall be; (12) I shall be able; (13) they will be; (14) they will be able; (15) they were able; (16) to be; (17) to be able.
5. (1) sumus; (2) erāmus; (3) erimus; (4) poterimus; (5) potest; (6) poterit; (7) poterat; (8) posse; (9) poterant; (10) possunt; (11) poterunt; (12) sunt; (13) esse; (14) poteram.
6. Your (pl.) country was free. 7. I was able to be a tyrant. 8. Your friend will be a tyrant. 9. Where (there) is a tyrant, there men cannot be free. 10. He could not remain in our country yesterday. 11. Tyrants will always have many faults. 12. We were not able to overcome the tyrants. 13. We ought to overcome our tyrant. 14. The tyrant was able to overcome (the) good men; but he will not be able to remain there. 15. You (pl.) will be able to see the dangers of a tyrant. 16. We cannot tolerate the faults of tyrants. 17. You (sg.) were not tolerating (did not tolerate) the treachery of the tyrant. 18. The peace in your (pl.) country cannot be perpetual. 19. You (sg.) ought to warn free men about tyrants. 20. Your (pl.) teacher always used to like (liked) fine books. 21. Good and true books were able to save the country. 22. You (pl.) will be able to save your country with good books. 23. Tyrants will not be able to overcome the wisdom of good books. 24. Bad men cannot tolerate good books.

第七课练习

1. 第三变格法阴性名词和阳性名词的格词尾与第一、第二变格法相同吗?
2. 第三变格法中性名词是否有与第二变格法中性名词相同的格词尾? 如果有, 请指出。
3. 说出下列第三变格法词尾的性、数、格: (1) -ēs; (2) -a; (3) -em。
4. 说出下列第三变格法词尾的性、数、格: (1) -ibus; (2) -ī; (3) -e; (4) -em; (5) -um; (6) -is; (7) -ēs。
5. 根据下列名词的性, 分别为其配上 **magnus, -a, -um** 的恰当的单数主格形

- 式:(1) tempus; (2) virtūs; (3) labor; (4) cīvitās; (5) mōs; (6) pāx; (7) rēx; (8) corpus; (9) vēritās; (10) amor。
6. 根据格词尾翻译下列短语, 凡有主格、宾格的情况请标示出来:(1) labōre multō; (2) labōrī multō; (3) labōris multī; (4) labōrēs multī; (5) pācis perpetuae; (6) pāce perpetuā; (7) pācī perpetuae; (8) cīvitātum parvārum; (9) cīvitātem parvam; (10) cīvitātēs parvās; (11) cīvitātēs parvae; (12) cīvitāte parvā; (13) temporā mala; (14) tempus malum; (15) temporī malō; (16) temporum malōrum; (17) temporis malī; (18) mōrī tuō; (19) mōre tuō; (20) mōris tuī; (21) mōrēs tuī; (22) mōrēs tuōs; (23) mōrum tuōrum。
7. 根据所要求的格或英语介词所指示的格, 将下列短语翻译成拉丁语:(1) to/for great virtue; (2) great virtue (subject); (3) great virtues (object of verb); (4) of great virtues; (5) with great courage; (6) our time (obj. of verb); (7) our times (subj.); (8) our times (obj.); (9) to/for our times; (10) to/for our time; (11) of our time; (12) of our times; (13) my love (obj.); (14) my loves (obj.); (15) to/for my love; (16) by my love; (17) of my love; (18) of my loves.
8. Meum tempus ōtiō est parvum. 9. Virtūs tua est magna. 10. Pecūnia est nihil sine mōribus bonīs. 11. Virtūtēs hominum multōrum sunt magnae. 12. Mōrēs hominis bonī erunt bonī. 13. Hominī litterās dabunt. 14. Hominēs multōs in cīvitāte magnā vidēre poterāmus. 15. Magnum amōrem pecūniae in multīs hominibus vīdēbāmus. 16. Paucī hominēs virtūtī cūram dant. 17. Cīvitās nostra pācem hominibus multīs dabit. 18. Pāx nōn potest esse perpetua. 19. Sine bonā pāce cīvitātēs temporum nostrōrum nōn valēbunt. 20. Post multa bella tempora sunt mala. 21. In multīs cīvitātibus terrīsque pāx nōn poterat valēre. 22. Sine magnō labōre homō nihil habēbit. 23. Virgō pulchra amīcōs mōrum bonōrum amat. 24. Hominēs magnae virtūtis tyrannōs superāre audēbant. 25. Amor patriae in cīvitāte nostrā valēbat.

答案

1. 不同。
2. 有:复数主格和复数宾格。
3. (1) nom. and acc. pl. of masc. and fem.; (2) nom. and acc. pl. neut.; (3) acc. sg. masc. and fem.
4. (1) dat. and abl. pl.; (2) dat. sg.; (3) abl. sg.; (4) acc. sg. masc. and fem.; (5) gen. pl.; (6) gen. sg.; (7) nom. and acc. pl. masc. and fem.
5. (1) magnum tempus; (2) magna virtūs; (3) magnus labor; (4) magna cīvitās; (5) magnus mōs; (6) magna pāx; (7) magnus rēx; (8) magnum corpus; (9) magna vēritās; (10) magnus amor.
6. (1) by/with much labor; (2) to/for much labor; (3) of much labor; (4) many labors (nom.); (5) of perpetual peace; (6) by/with perpetual peace; (7) to/for perpetual

peace; (8) of small states; (9) a small state (acc.); (10) small states (acc.); (11) small states (nom.); (12) by a small state; (13) bad times (nom. or acc. pl.); (14) bad time (nom. or acc. sg.); (15) to/for a bad time; (16) of bad times; (17) of a bad time; (18) to/for your habit; (19) by your habit; (20) of your habit; (21) your character (nom.); (22) your character (acc.); (23) of your character.

7. (1) *magnae virtūtī*; (2) *magna virtūs*; (3) *magnās virtūtēs*; (4) *magnārum virtūtum*; (5) *magnā virtūte*; (6) *tempus nostrum*; (7) *tempora nostra*; (8) *tempora nostra*; (9) *temporibus nostrīs*; (10) *temporī nostrō*; (11) *temporis nostrī*; (12) *temporum nostrōrum*; (13) *amōrem meum*; (14) *amōrēs meōs*; (15) *amōrī meō*; (16) *amōre meō*; (17) *amōris meī*; (18) *amōrum meōrum*.

8. My time for leisure is small. 9. Your (sg.) courage is great. 10. Money is nothing without good character. 11. The virtues of many human beings are great. 12. The character of a good man will be good. 13. They will give a letter to the man. 14. We were able to see many men in the great state. 15. We used to see (saw, were seeing) a great love of money in many men. 16. Few men give attention to excellence. 17. Our state will give peace to many men. 18. Peace cannot be perpetual. 19. Without good peace the states of our times will not be strong. 20. Times are bad after many wars. 21. In many states and lands peace could not be strong. 22. Without great labor the man will have nothing. 23. The beautiful maiden loves friends of good character. 24. Men of great courage were daring to overcome tyrants. 25. Love of country was strong in our state.

第八课练习

- (1) 在第三变位法中,词干元音 **e** 指示哪种时态?
(2) 你能想出什么方法来帮助记忆这一点吗?
- (1) 在第三变位法中,元音 **i, ō, u** 指示哪种时态?
(2) 这里有什么记忆方法?
- 说出下列第三变位法词尾所指示的人称、数和格:(1) *-imus*; (2) *-ēs*; (3) *-unt*;
(4) *-et*; (5) *-itis*; (6) *-ēmus*; (7) *-ō*; (8) *-ent*; (9) *-it*; (10) *-ētis*; (11) *-is*;
(12) *-am*; (13) *-ēbant*。
- 词尾(1) *-e*; (2) *-ere*; (3) *-ite* 分别指示哪种动词形式?
- 根据动词 **mittō, mittere, send**; **agō, agere, do**; **scrībō, scrībere, write**,依照相应词尾翻译下列形式:(1) *mittēbant*; (2) *mittit*; (3) *mittunt*; (4) *mittam*; (5) *mitte*;
(6) *mittimus*; (7) *mittēbātis*; (8) *mittis*; (9) *mittite*; (10) *mittitis*; (11) *mittet*; (12)
mittēmus; (13) *agit*; (14) *agent*; (15) *agunt*; (16) *agētis*; (17) *agēbāmus*; (18) *agam*;
(19) *agēmus*; (20) *agis*; (21) *agitis*; (22) *scrībet*; (23) *scrībunt*; (24) *scrībam*; (25)
scrībēbam; (26) *scrībītis*; (27) *scrībēmus*; (28) *scrībit*; (29) *scrībīs*; (30) *scrībent*;
(31) *scrībe*。
- 根据动词 **pōnō, pōnere, put**,将下列短语翻译成拉丁语:(1) *they were putting*;
(2) *we shall put*; (3) *put* (imperative sg.); (4) *he puts*; (5) *they will put*; (6) *I shall put*;
(7) *you (sg.) were putting*; (8) *you (pl.) will put*; (9) *put* (imper. pl.); (10) *we*

put; (11) you (pl.) are putting; (12) he will put.

7. Quid agunt? Quid agētis? 8. Hominem ad mē dūcēbant. 9. Dūc hominem ad mē, et hominī grātiās agam. 10. Dum tyrannus cōpiās dūcit, possumus nihil agere. 11. Litterās ad virginem scrībit. 12. Librum magnum scrībēbās. 13. Librōs bonōs scrībēs. 14. Librōs dē pāce scrībēmus. 15. Cōpiamne librōrum bonōrum habētis? 16. Magister multōs puerōs docet. 17. Puerī magistrō grātiās nōn agunt. 18. Paucī cīvitātī nostrae grātiās agēbant. 19. Tyrannus magnās cōpiās ex cīvitāte nostrā dūcet. 20. Magna cōpia pecūniae hominēs ad sapientiam nōn dūcit. 21. Librīne bonī multōs ad ratiōnem dūcent? 22. Dūcimusne saepe hominēs ad ratiōnem? 23. Ratiō hominēs ad bonam vītā dūcere potest. 24. Agitisne bonam vītā? 25. Amīcō bonō grātiās semper agite.

答案

- (1) 将来时; (2) 参见第八课。有一个不错的记忆方法是,表示将来的“future”以-e 结尾:futur/e。在六种将来时形式中,dūcam 中的-a-是唯一的特例。
- (1) 现在时; (2) 参见第八课。
- (1) 1st pers. pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 3d pl. pres.; (4) 3d sg. fut.; (5) 2nd pl. pres.; (6) 1st pl. fut.; (7) 1st sg. pres.; (8) 3d pl. fut.; (9) 3d sg. pres.; (10) 2nd pl. fut.; (11) 2nd sg. pres.; (12) 1st sg. fut.; (13) 3d pl. impf.
- (1) imper. sg.; (2) pres. inf.; (3) imper. pl.
- (1) they were sending; (2) he is sending; (3) they are sending; (4) I shall send; (5) send (sg.); (6) we are sending; (7) you (pl.) were sending; (8) you (sg.) are sending; (9) send (pl.); (10) you (pl.) send; (11) he will send; (12) we shall send; (13) he does; (14) they will do; (15) they are doing; (16) you (pl.) will do; (17) we were doing; (18) I shall do; (19) we shall do; (20) you (sg.) are doing; (21) you (pl.) are doing; (22) he will write; (23) they are writing; (24) I shall write; (25) I was writing; (26) you (pl.) are writing; (27) we shall write; (28) he is writing; (29) you (sg.) are writing; (30) they will write; (31) write!
- (1) pōnēbant; (2) pōnēmus; (3) pōne; (4) pōnit; (5) pōnent; (6) pōnam; (7) pōnēbās; (8) pōnētis; (9) pōnite; (10) pōnimus; (11) pōnitis; (12) pōnet.
- What are they doing? What will you (pl.) do? 8. They were leading the man to me. 9. Lead (sg.) the man to me, and I shall thank the man. 10. While the tyrant leads the troops, we can do nothing. 11. He is writing a letter to the maiden. 12. You (sg.) were writing a great book. 13. You (sg.) will write good books. 14. We shall write books about peace. 15. Do you (pl.) have an abundance of good books? 16. The teacher teaches many boys. 17. The boys do not thank the teacher. 18. Few men were thanking our state. 19. The tyrant will lead great forces out of our state. 20. A great abundance of money does not lead men to wisdom. 21. Will good books lead many men to reason? 22. Do we often lead men to reason? 23. Reason can lead men to a good life. 24. Are you (pl.) leading a good life? 25. Always thank (pl.) a good friend.

第九课练习

- 解释什么是“指示代词”和“指示形容词”。

2. 根据格和数翻译下列词,并给出相应的性:

(1) illī	(10) illīs	(19) huius	(28) ūnā
(2) illa	(11) illō	(20) hunc	(29) tōtī
(3) illīus	(12) illārum	(21) hōs	(30) tōtīus
(4) ille	(13) hōc	(22) huic	(31) tōta
(5) illā	(14) hoc	(23) hōrum	(32) tōtum
(6) illud	(15) haec	(24) hās	(33) nūllīus
(7) illōrum	(16) hae	(25) hīs	(34) nūllī
(8) illae	(17) hāc	(26) ūnīus	(35) nūlla
(9) illōs	(18) hanc	(27) ūnī	(36) nūllōs

3. 如何通过名词来确定修饰它的指示词的形式?

4. 根据所指示的变格形式将下列短语翻译成拉丁语:

(1) this girl (nom.)	(18) of that girl alone
(2) these girls (nom.)	(19) of tyrants alone
(3) these times (acc. pl.)	(20) the whole state (acc.)
(4) to/for this time	(21) of the whole country
(5) to/for this boy	(22) to/for the whole country
(6) of this time	(23) of no reason
(7) of that time	(24) no reason (acc.)
(8) by this book	(25) no girls (nom.)
(9) by that book	(26) to/for no book
(10) that girl (nom.)	(27) no books (acc.)
(11) those times (nom.)	(28) to/for one state
(12) those times (acc.)	(29) to/for one girl
(13) that time (nom.)	(30) of one time
(14) to/for this state alone	(31) of one war
(15) of this state alone	(32) to/for the other book
(16) to/for that boy alone	(33) by another book
(17) to/for that girl alone	

5. Hī tōtam cīvitātem dūcent (dūcunt, dūcēbant). 6. Ille haec in illā terrā vidēbit (videt, vidēbat). 7. In illō librō illa dē hōc homine scrībet (scrībam, scrībēbam). 8. Ūnus vir istās cōpiās in hanc terram dūcit (dūcet). 9. Magister haec alterī puerō dat. 10. Hunc librum dē aliō bellō scrībimus (scrībēmus). 11. Tōta patria huic sōlī grātiās agit (aget, agēbat). 12. Tōtam cūram illī cōnsiliō nunc dant. 13. Amīcus huius hanc cīvitātem illō cōnsiliō cōservābit. 14. Alter amīcus tōtam vītam in aliā terrā aget. 15. Hic vir sōlus mē dē vitiīs huius tyrannī monēre poterat. 16. Nūllās cōpiās in alterā terrā habēbātis. 17. Illī sōlī nūlla perīcula in hōc cōnsiliō vident. 18. Nōn solum mōrēs sed etiam īnsidiās illīus laudāre audēs. 19. Propter īnsidiās enim ūnīus hominis haec cīvitās nōn valēbat.

答案

1. 参见 p. 54。

2. (1) to/for that (m., f., n.); those (nom. m.)
 (2) that (nom. f.); those (nom./acc. n.)
 (3) of that (m., f., n.)
 (4) that (nom. m.)
 (5) by that (f.)
 (6) that (nom./acc. n.)
 (7) of those (m., n.)
 (8) those (nom. f.)
 (9) those (acc. m.)
 (10) to/for by/w./fr. those (m., f., n.)
 (11) by that (m., n.)
 (12) of those (f.)
 (13) by this (m., n.)
 (14) this (nom./acc. n.)
 (15) this (nom. f.); these (nom./acc. n.)
 (16) these (nom. f.)
 (17) by this (f.)
 (18) this (acc. f.)
 (19) of this (m., f., n.)
- (20) this (acc. m.)
 (21) these (acc. m.)
 (22) to this (m., f., n.)
 (23) of these (m., n.)
 (24) these (acc. f.)
 (25) to/for these; by these (m., f., n.)
 (26) of one (m., f., n.)
 (27) to/for one (m., f., n.)
 (28) by one (f.)
 (29) to/for the whole (m., f., n.); whole (nom. pl. m.)
 (30) of the whole (m., f., n.)
 (31) the whole (nom. f.); whole (nom./acc. pl. n.)
 (32) the whole (acc. m.; nom./acc. n.)
 (33) of no (sg. m., f., n.)
 (34) to/for no (sg. m., f., n.); no (nom. pl. m.)
 (35) no (nom. sg. f.; nom./acc. pl. n.)
 (36) no (acc. pl. m.)

3. 参见 p. 54 的正文和例子。

4. (1) haec puella (12) illa tempora (23) nullius ratiōnis
 (2) hae puellae (13) illud tempus (24) nullam ratiōnem
 (3) haec tempora (14) huic civitātī sōlī (25) nullae puellae
 (4) huic temporī (15) huius civitātis sōlīus (26) nullī librō
 (5) huic puerō (16) illī puerō sōlī (27) nullōs librōs
 (6) huius temporis (17) illī puellae sōlī (28) unī civitātī
 (7) illīus temporis (18) illīus puellae sōlīus (29) unī puellae
 (8) hōc librō (19) tyrannōrum sōlōrum (30) unīus temporis
 (9) illō librō (20) tōtam civitātem (31) unīus bellī
 (10) illa puella (21) tōtīus patriae (32) alterī librō
 (11) illa tempora (22) tōtī patriae (33) aliō librō

5. These men will lead (lead, were leading) the whole state. 6. That man will see (sees, was seeing/saw) these things in that land. 7. In that book he will write (I shall write, I was writing) those things about this man. 8. One man is leading (will lead) those forces into this land. 9. The teacher gives these things to the other boy. 10. We are writing (shall write) this book about another war. 11. The whole country thanks (will thank, was thanking) this man alone. 12. They are now giving their entire attention to that plan. 13. This man's friend will save this state by that plan. 14. The other friend will lead (his) entire life in another land. 15. This man alone was able to warn me about the faults of this tyrant. 16. You (pl.) had no forces in the other land. 17. Those men alone see no dangers in this plan. 18. You (sg.) dare to praise not only the character but also the treachery of that man. 19. In fact, on account of the treachery of one man this state was not strong.

第十课练习

1. 说出下列词尾所指示的变位法:(1) -ere; (2) -ēre; (3) -īre; (4) -āre。

2. 说出下列第四变位法和第三变位法的*-iō* 动词词尾所指示的人称、数和时态:

- (1) *-iunt*; (2) *-iēs*; (3) *-īs*; (4) *-iēbāmus*; (5) *-īmus*; (6) *-ī*; (7) *-iētis*; (8) *-īte*;
(9) *-ītis*; (10) *-iō*; (11) *-it*; (12) *-e*; (13) *-iēbās*。

3. 第三变位法的*-iō* 动词在哪三个方面与第四变位法动词不同?

4. 翻译下列形式:

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| (1) <i>veniet</i> | (6) <i>audiētis</i> | (11) <i>venīre</i> | (16) <i>faciunt</i> |
| (2) <i>venit</i> | (7) <i>audītis</i> | (12) <i>facit</i> | (17) <i>facis</i> |
| (3) <i>veniunt</i> | (8) <i>venīte</i> | (13) <i>faciet</i> | (18) <i>faciam</i> |
| (4) <i>venient</i> | (9) <i>veniēs</i> | (14) <i>faciēmus</i> | (19) <i>faciēs</i> |
| (5) <i>audīs</i> | (10) <i>venī</i> | (15) <i>facimus</i> | (20) <i>facere</i> |

5. 根据 *sentīō*, *sentīre*, *feel* 和 *iaciō*, *iacere*, *throw*, 将下列短语翻译成拉丁语:

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) I shall feel | (8) feel (imper. sg.) | (15) throw (imper. sg.) |
| (2) we shall feel | (9) he will feel | (16) you (pl.) are throwing |
| (3) he feels | (10) we feel | (17) we shall throw |
| (4) you (pl.) feel | (11) he is throwing | (18) throw (imper. pl.) |
| (5) they will feel | (12) he will throw | (19) to throw |
| (6) they do feel | (13) I shall throw | (20) you (sg.) are throwing |
| (7) to feel | (14) we are throwing | |

6. *Ex hāc terrā fugiēbāmus.* 7. *Cum fīliā tuā fuge.* 8. *In illum locum fugient.* 9. *Tempus fugit; hōrae fugiunt; senectūs venit.* 10. *Venīte cum amīcīs vestrīs.* 11. *In patriam vestram veniēbant.* 12. *Ō vir magne, in cīvitatē nostram venī.* 13. *Fīliam tuam in illā cīvitatē inveniēs.* 14. *Parvam pecūniam in viīs invenīre possunt.* 15. *Tyrannus viam in hanc cīvitatē invenit.* 16. *Illōs cum amīcīs ibi capiētis.* 17. *Ad tē cum magnīs cōpiīs venīmus.* 18. *Invenietne multam fāmam glōriamque ibi?* 19. *Iste bellum semper faciēbat.* 20. *Istī hominēs pācem nōn facient.* 21. *Multī hominēs illa faciunt sed haec nōn faciunt.* 22. *Officium nostrum facimus et faciēmus.* 23. *Magnam cōpiam librōrum faciam.* 24. *Puerī cum illō virō bonō vīvēbant.* 25. *In librīs virōrum antīquōrum multam philosophiam et sapientiam inveniētis.*

答案

1. (1) 3d; (2) 2nd; (3) 4th; (4) 1st。
2. (1) 3d pl. pres.; (2) 2nd sg. fut.; (3) 2nd sg. pres.; (4) 1st pl. impf.; (5) 1st pl. pres.; (6) imper. sg.; (7) 2nd pl. fut.; (8) imper. pl.; (9) 2nd pl. pres.; (10) 1st sg. pres.; (11) 3d sg. pres.; (12) imper. sg.; (13) 2nd sg. impf.。注意:第 3, 5, 6, 8, 9 只是第四变位法,第 12 只是第三变位法。主要区别是第四变位法的*-ī-*和第三变位法的*-i-*。参见 p. 61。
3. (1) pres. inf.; (2) imper. sg.; (3) short stem vowels in 2nd sg. and 1st and 2nd pl. of pres. ind. and in the imper. pl.。

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 4. (1) he will come | (11) to come |
| (2) he is coming | (12) he makes/does |
| (3) they are coming | (13) he will make/do |
| (4) they will come | (14) we shall make |
| (5) you (sg.) hear | (15) we are making |
| (6) you (pl.) will hear | (16) they make |
| (7) you (pl.) hear | (17) you (sg.) make |
| (8) come (pl.) | (18) I shall make |
| (9) you (sg.) will come | (19) you (sg.) will make |
| (10) come (sg.) | (20) to make |

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|---------------|
| 5. (1) sentiam | (6) sentiunt | (11) iacit | (16) iacitis |
| (2) sentiēmus | (7) sentīre | (12) iaciet | (17) iaciēmus |
| (3) sentit | (8) sentī | (13) iaciam | (18) iacite |
| (4) sentītis | (9) sentiet | (14) iacimus | (19) iacere |
| (5) sentient | (10) sentīmus | (15) iace | (20) iacis |

6. We were fleeing from this land. 7. Flee (sg.) with your daughter. 8. They will flee into that place. 9. Time flees; the hours flee; old age is coming. 10. Come (pl.) with your friends. 11. They were coming into your country. 12. O great man, come into our state. 13. You (sg.) will find your daughter in that state. 14. They can find little money in the streets. 15. The tyrant is finding a way into this state. 16. You (pl.) will capture those men there with (their) friends. 17. We are coming to you with great forces. 18. Will he find much fame and glory there? 19. That man was always making war. 20. Those men (of yours *or* such men) will not make peace. 21. Many men do those things but do not do these things. 22. We are doing and will do our duty. 23. I shall make a great supply of books. 24. The boys were living with that good man. 25. In the books of ancient men you (pl.) will find much philosophy and wisdom.

第十一课练习

- 说出下列形式的单数主格和复数主格:(1) 第三人称代词;(2) 第一人称代词;(3) 第二人称代词。
- 根据格和数翻译下列代词;主格或宾格的情况请标明:
(1) vōbīs; (2) nōbīs; (3) nōs; (4) vōs; (5) tuī; (6) meī; (7) mihi; (8) tibi; (9) tē; (10) mē。
- 根据性、数、格翻译下列第三人称代词:(1) eōs; (2) eās; (3) eōrum; (4) eārum;
(5) eius; (6) eā; (7) ea; (8) eō; (9) eī; (10) eīs; (11) eae; (12) id。
- 翻译成拉丁语:

(1) his	(10) to her	(19) it (neut. acc.)
(2) her (possess.)	(11) by/w./fr. her	(20) you (emphatic nom. pl.)
(3) their (masc.)	(12) by/w.fr. him	(21) you (emphatic nom. sg.)
(4) their (fem.)	(13) to/for you (pl.)	(22) you (acc. pl.)
(5) them (fem.)	(14) to/for you (sg.)	(23) us
(6) them (masc.)	(15) they (masc.)	(24) we
(7) them (neut.)	(16) they (neut.)	(25) to/for us
(8) its	(17) they (fem.)	(26) I (emphatic form)

(9) to him (18) to/for it (27) to/for me

5. Hī tibi id dabunt. 6. Ego vōbīs id dabam. 7. Vōs eīs id dōnum dabit. 8. Eī idem dabō. 9. Nōs eī ea dabimus. 10. Ille mihi id dabit. 11. Vōbīs librōs eius dabimus. 12. Nōbīs librōs eōrum dabis. 13. Pecūniam eōrum tibi dabimus. 14. Pecūniam eius mihi dabunt. 15. Eōs librōs ad eam mittēmus. 16. Librum eius ad tē mittam. 17. Ille autem pecūniam eōrum ad nōs mittēbat. 18. Eās cum eā mittimus. 19. Eum cum eīs mittō. 20. Eōs cum amīcīs eius mittēmus. 21. Tū mē cum amīcō eōrum mittēs. 22. Vōs mēcum ad amīcum eius mittēbant. 23. Nōs tēcum in terram eōrum mittit. 24. Eās nōbīscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittent. 25. Eum vōbīscum ad amīcōs eōrum mittam. 26. Tē cum eō ad mē mittent.

答案

- (1) **is, ea, id** and **eī, eae, ea**; (2) **ego** and **nōs**; (3) **tū** and **vōs**.
- (1) to/for you (pl.); by/w./fr. you; (2) to/for us; by/w./fr. us; (3) we (nom.); us (acc.); (4) you (nom. pl.); you (acc. pl.); (5) of you (sg.); (6) of me; (7) to/for me; (8) to/for you (sg.); (9) you (acc. sg.); by/w./fr. you; (10) me (acc.); by/w./fr. me.
- (1) them (masc.); (2) them (fem.); (3) their (masc., neut.); (4) their (fem.); (5) his, her, its; (6) by/w./fr. her; (7) she (nom.); they (nom. and acc. pl. neut.); (8) by/w./fr. him, it; (9) to/for him, her, it; they (masc. nom.); (10) to/for them (masc., fem., neut.); by/w./fr. them; (11) they (nom. fem.); (12) it (nom. or acc. sg.). N.B. in 请注意,在单数情况下,如果代词的先行词在英语中是中性的,那么 **is, ea, id** 中的任何一个都可以译为 *it*。例如,假定在前面的句子中出现的是 **pāx** 一词,即 **Sine eā nūlla cīvitās valet**,那么阴性拉丁语 **eā** 就变成了英语词 *it*,因为在英语中,*peace* 被认为是中性的。

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|------------|
| 4. (1) eius | (8) eius | (15) eī | (22) vōs |
| (2) eius | (9) eī | (16) ea | (23) nōs |
| (3) eōrum | (10) eī | (17) eae | (24) nōs |
| (4) eārum | (11) eā | (18) eī | (25) nōbīs |
| (5) eās | (12) eō | (19) id | (26) ego |
| (6) eōs | (13) vōbīs | (20) vōs | (27) mihi |
| (7) ea | (14) tibi | (21) tū | |

5. These men will give it to you (sg.). 6. I was giving it to you (pl.). 7. You (pl.) will give this gift to them. 8. I shall give the same thing to him (her, it). 9. We shall give them (= those things) to him (her). 10. That man will give it to me. 11. We shall give you (pl.) his books. 12. You (sg.) will give us their (masc.) books. 13. We shall give their money to you (sg.). 14. They will give his (her) money to me. 15. We shall send these/those books to her. 16. I shall send his (her) book to you (sg.). 17. That man, however, was sending their money to us. 18. We are sending them (fem.) with her. 19. I am sending him with them. 20. We shall send them with his (her) friends. 21. You (sg.) will send me with their friend. 22. They were sending you (pl.) with me to his friend. 23. He is sending us with you (sg.) into their land. 24. They will send them (fem.) with us to their friends. 25. I shall send him with you (pl.) to their friends. 26. They will send you (sg.) with him to me.

第十二课练习

- 按照一般顺序说出拉丁语动词的各个主要部分。
- 说出 **mittō** 的主要部分并翻译。
- 完成时与未完成时的主要区别是什么?
- 能够辨识特定的动词形式来源于哪个动词是必须要做到的。请说出下列动词的第一个主要部分。

(1) mīserunt	(6) āctum	(11) remānserant	(16) dīxērunt
(2) laudāveram	(7) est	(12) scrīpsimus	(17) erat
(3) vincēbāmus	(8) dedimus	(13) fuit	(18) vīxī
(4) dictum	(9) futūrum	(14) fēcīt	(19) faciēbās
(5) fēcistī	(10) ēgimus	(15) fugere	(20) vīsum

- 依照 **-ī = I (perfect) . . . ; -eram = I had . . . ; -erō = I shall have . . .** 的惯例, 根据人称、数和时态翻译下列完成时系统的词尾:

(1) -istis; (2) -it; (3) -ērunt; (4) -istī; (5) -imus; (6) -erat; (7) -erimus; (8) -erāmus; (9) -erās; (10) -erint; (11) -erant; (12) -erit; (13) -erātis。

- 根据人称、数和时态翻译下列形式:

(1) vidēbant	(10) vīxistī	(19) fugit	(28) remānsimus
(2) vīderant	(11) vīxērunt	(20) fūgit	(29) remānserāmus
(3) vīdistī	(12) vincet	(21) fugiunt	(30) vēnit
(4) fēcīt	(13) vīcit	(22) fūgērunt	(31) venit
(5) faciēbat	(14) vīcimus	(23) servāvit	(32) veniēbātis
(6) fēcērāmus	(15) vincimus	(24) servāvērunt	(33) vēnistis
(7) fēcimus	(16) dedistī	(25) servāvistis	(34) vēnērunt
(8) faciēmus	(17) dederātis	(26) servāverat	(35) veniunt
(9) fēcērunt	(18) dedimus	(27) servāverit	(36) vēnerant

- Illī fūgerant (fugient; fugiunt; fugiēbant; fūgērunt).
- Hī remānsērunt (remanent; remanēbunt; remanēbant; remānserant).
- Rēx Asiam vīcerat (vincit; vīcit; vincet).
- Rēgēs Asiam vīcērunt (vincent; vincunt; vīcerant).
- Rēgēs Asiam habuērunt (habent; habēbunt; habuerant).
- Caesar in eandem terram vēnerat (vēnit; venit; veniet).
- Caesar eadem dīxit (dīcit; dīxerat; dīcet).
- Vōs nōbīs pācem dedistis (dabitis; dabātis; dederātis).
- Tū litterās ad eam mīsistī (mittēs; mittis; mīserās).
- Eōs in eādem viā vīdimus (vidēmus; vīderāmus).
- Diū vīxerat (vīxit; vīvet).
- Id bene fēcērās (faciēs; fēcistī; facis).
- Cīvitātem eōrum (eius) servāvī (servābō; servābam; servāveram).
- Eum in eōdem locō invēnērunt (invēnerant; invenient).
- Deus hominibus lībertātem dederat (dedit; dat; dabit).
- Mihi grātiās ēgērunt (agent; agēbant; ēgerant; agunt).
- Vōs fuistis (erātis; estis; eritis; fuerātis) virī līberī.

答案

1. (1) 现在时主动态直陈式;(2) 现在时主动态不定式;(3) 完成时主动态直陈式;
(4) 完成时被动态分词。
2. (1) **mittō**, 现在时主动态直陈式, *I send*;
(2) **mittere**, 现在时主动态不定式, *to send*;
(3) **mīsī**, 完成时主动态直陈式, *I sent*;
(4) **missum**, 完成时被动态分词, *having been sent, sent*。
3. 完成时像是对过去完成了的动作的一个快照;未完成时则像看一段影像那样看过去连续的或正在进行的动作。
4. (1) mittō (6) agō (11) remaneō (16) dīcō
(2) laudō (7) sum (12) scrībō (17) sum
(3) vincō (8) dō (13) sum (18) vīvō
(4) dīcō (9) sum (14) faciō (19) faciō
(5) faciō (10) agō (15) fugiō (20) videō
5. (1) you (pl. perf.) . . . ; (2) he (perf.) . . . ; (3) they (perf.) . . . ; (4) you (sg. perf.) . . . ; (5) we (perf.) . . . ; (6) he had . . . ; (7) we shall have . . . ; (8) we had . . . ; (9) you (sg.) had . . . ; (10) they will have . . . ; (11) they had . . . ; (12) he will have . . . ; (13) you (pl.) had. . . .
6. (1) they saw, were seeing (19) he flees
(2) they had seen (20) he fled
(3) you (sg.) saw (21) they flee
(4) he did (22) they fled
(5) he was doing (23) he saved
(6) we had done (24) they saved
(7) we did (25) you (pl.) saved
(8) we shall do (26) he had saved
(9) they did (27) he will have saved
(10) you (sg.) lived (28) we remained
(11) they lived (29) we had remained
(12) he will conquer (30) he came
(13) he conquered (31) he comes
(14) we conquered (32) you (pl.) were coming
(15) we conquer (33) you (pl.) came
(16) you (sg.) gave (34) they came
(17) you (pl.) had given (35) they come
(18) we gave (36) they had come
7. Those men had fled (will flee; are fleeing; were fleeing; fled). 8. These men remained (remain; will remain; were remaining; had remained). 9. The king had conquered (is conquering; conquered; will conquer) Asia. 10. The kings conquered (will conquer; are conquering; had conquered) Asia. 11. Kings possessed (possess; will possess; had possessed) Asia. 12. Caesar had come (came; is coming; will come) into the same land. 13. Caesar said (says; had said; will say) the same things. 14. *You* (pl.) gave (will give; were giving; had given) us peace. 15. *You* (sg.) sent (will send; are sending; had sent) a letter to her. 16. We saw (see; had seen) them

in the same street. 17. He had lived (lived; will live) a long time. 18. You (sg.) had done (will do; did; are doing) it well. 19. I saved (shall save; was saving; had saved) their (his) state. 20. They found (had found; will find) him in the same place. 21. God had given (gave; gives; will give) liberty to men. 22. They thanked (will thank; were thanking; had thanked; thank) me. 23. *You* (pl.) were (were; are; will be; had been) free men.

第十三课练习

- 反身代词有哪些本质特征？它们与其他代词有何不同？
- 为什么反身代词的变格以属格而不是以主格开始？
- 哪些反身代词的拼写与相应的简单代词相同？
- 根据格和数翻译下列反身形式：(1) *mihi*; (2) *tē*; (3) *nōbīs*; (4) *sibi*; (5) *vōs*; (6) *sē*; (7) *vōbīs*。
- 为什么单数形式的 **suus** 既可以指 *their own*, 也可以指 *his own*? 为什么复数形式既可以指 *his own*, 也可以指 *their own*?
- 为什么不论所依赖的名词是单数还是复数, **eōrum** 总是指 *their*, **eius** 总是指 *his (her, its)*?
- Sē** 和 **ipse** 都可以借助 *himself* 翻译成英语, 它们有何基本区别?
- Caesar eōs servāvit. 9. Caesar eum servābat. 10. Caesar sē servāvit. 11. Rōmānī sē servāvērunt. 12. Rōmānī eōs servāvērunt. 13. Rōmānī eum servāvērunt. 14. Caesar amīcum suum servāvit. 15. Caesar amīcōs suōs servāvit. 16. Caesar amīcum eius servāvit. 17. Caesar amīcōs eius servāvit. 18. Caesar amīcum eōrum servāvit. 19. Caesar amīcōs eōrum servāvit. 20. Rōmānī amīcum suum servāvērunt. 21. Rōmānī amīcōs suōs servāvērunt. 22. Rōmānī amīcum eōrum servāvērunt. 23. Rōmānī amīcōs eōrum servāvērunt. 24. Rōmānī amīcum eius servāvērunt. 25. Rōmānī amīcōs eius servāvērunt. 26. Caesar ipse eum servāvit. 27. Caesar ipse sē servāvit. 28. Caesarem ipsum servāvērunt. 29. Amīcum Caesaris ipsius servābant. 30. Amīcum Rōmānōrum ipsōrum servāvērunt. 31. Amīcus Caesaris ipsius sē servāvit. 32. Amīcī Caesaris ipsius sē servāvērunt. 33. Amīcus Caesaris ipsius eum servāvit. 34. Ipsī amīcī Caesaris eum servāvērunt. 35. Nōs nōn servāvērunt. 36. Nōs servāvimus. 37. Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvimus. 38. Rōmānī ipsī tē nōn servāvērunt. 39. Tū tē servāvistī. 40. Tū Rōmānōs ipsōs servāvistī. 41. Mihi nihil dabat. 42. Mihi nihil dedī. 43. Sibi nihil dedit. 44. Sibi nihil dedērunt. 45. Eīs nihil dedērunt. 46. Eī nihil dedērunt. 47. Mē vīcī. 48. Mē vīcērunt. 49. Īram eōrum vīcērunt. 50. Īram suam vīcērunt. 51. Īram suam vīcit. 52. Fīliōs suōs vīcit. 53. Fīliōs suōs vīcērunt.

答案

- 参见 p. 80 的“反身代词”一节。

2. 参见 p. 80 的“反身代词的变格”一节。
3. 第一和第二人称的代词。
4. (1) to/for myself.
 (2) yourself (sg. acc.); by/w./fr. yourself.
 (3) to/for ourselves; by/w./fr. ourselves.
 (4) to/for himself (herself, itself); to/for themselves.
 (5) yourselves (acc.).
 (6) himself (acc.); by/w./fr. himself; themselves (acc.); by/w./fr. themselves.
 (7) to/for yourselves; by/w./fr. yourselves.
5. 这是因为 **suus**, **-a**, **-um** 是一个形容词, 它必须在数上与所修饰名词保持一致。由于 **suus** 是反身的, 所以根据动词主语的单复数, 它也相应地指 *his own* 或 *their own*。例如下面的第 15 句和第 20 句。
6. **Eōrum** 和 **eius** 是固定的物主代词的属格; 因此, 与 **suus** 不同, 它们不必与所依赖的名词保持一致。例如下面的第 16—19 句。
7. 参见 p. 82 的“强势代词”一节。反身的 **sē** 用于谓语, 指涉主语。**Ipse** 可以用来强调句中任何一个名词或代词。比如下面的第 27, 28, 31 句。
8. Caesar saved them. 9. Caesar was saving him (= another person). 10. Caesar saved himself. 11. The Romans saved themselves. 12. The Romans saved them (= others). 13. The Romans saved him. 14. Caesar saved his own friend. 15. Caesar saved his own friends. 16. Caesar saved his (= another's) friend. 17. Caesar saved his (= another's) friends. 18. Caesar saved their friend. 19. Caesar saved their friends. 20. The Romans saved their (own) friend. 21. The Romans saved their (own) friends. 22. The Romans saved their (= others') friend. 23. The Romans saved their (= others') friends. 24. The Romans saved his friend. 25. The Romans saved his friends. 26. Caesar himself saved him. 27. Caesar himself saved himself. 28. They saved Caesar himself. 29. They were saving the friend of Caesar himself. 30. They saved the friend of the Romans themselves. 31. The friend of Caesar himself saved himself. 32. The friends of Caesar himself saved themselves. 33. The friend of Caesar himself saved him. 34. Caesar's friends themselves saved him. 35. They did not save us. 36. We saved ourselves. 37. We saved the Romans themselves. 38. The Romans themselves did not save you. 39. *You* (sg.) saved yourself. 40. *You* (sg.) saved the Romans themselves. 41. He was giving nothing to me. 42. I gave nothing to myself. 43. He gave nothing to himself. 44. They gave nothing to themselves. 45. They gave nothing to them (= others). 46. They gave nothing to him. 47. I conquered myself. 48. They conquered me. 49. They conquered their (= others') anger. 50. They conquered their own anger. 51. He conquered his own anger. 52. He conquered his own sons. 53. They conquered their own sons.

第十四课练习

1. 特征元音 **i** 出现在 **i-**词干名词的哪一个格词尾中?
2. 以 **-e**, **-al** 和 **-ar** 结尾的中性名词还有哪些 **i-**词干特征?

3. 根据格和数翻译下列形式;主格或宾格的情况请标明。

- | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| (1) arte | (9) corporum | (17) rēgum | (25) virōs |
| (2) artium | (10) partis | (18) rēgī | (26) virī |
| (3) artēs | (11) partibus | (19) nōmina | (27) vīrēs |
| (4) marī | (12) partium | (20) animālia | (28) virīs |
| (5) maribus | (13) urbe | (21) animālī | (29) vīs |
| (6) mare | (14) urbī | (22) animālis | (30) vim |
| (7) maria | (15) urbium | (23) animālium | (31) vīribus |
| (8) corpora | (16) urbēs | (24) vīrium | (32) vī |

4. 在第3题的各种形式中,列出那些*i*-词干形式。

5. 将下列短语翻译成拉丁语:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) by/w./fr. great force | (8) many seas (nom.) |
| (2) great man (acc.) | (9) by/w./fr. a great sea |
| (3) of great strength | (10) a great sea (acc.) |
| (4) to/for great force | (11) great force (acc.) |
| (5) of many citizens | (12) of many men (vir) |
| (6) by/w./fr. a good citizen | (13) by/w./fr. great strength |
| (7) to/for many citizens | (14) great strength (acc.) |

6. 下列夺格形式分别表达什么观念?

- (1) cum rēge; (2) oculīs meīs; (3) cum cūrā; (4) labōre meō.

7. 翻译下列动词形式,说出它们分别源于什么动词:(1) cucurrerunt; (2) currebamus;

- (3) cucurristī; (4) traxeramus; (5) trahet; (6) trahunt; (7) gerēbat; (8) gerit; (9) gerunt;
(10) gerēmus; (11) tenent; (12) tenēbunt; (13) tenuerunt; (14) tenuimus.

8. Multa bella cum Rōmānīs gessit. 9. Cīvitātem magnā cum sapientiā gerēbant. 10. Ipse cīvitātem vī cōpiārum tenuit. 11. Illa animālia multōs hominēs in mare trāxerunt. 12. Hoc magnā cum arte dīxistī. 13. Cum cūrā trāns urbem cucurrimus. 14. Magnā cum parte cīvium ad nōs veniēbat. 15. Iūra cīvium vī vincet. 16. Eum ad mortem trāns terram eius trāxistis. 17. Nōs cum cīvibus multārum urbium iungēmus. 18. Rēgī ipsī hās litterās cum virtūte scrīpsit. 19. Vīs illōrum marium erat magna. 20. Artem Graecōrum oculīs meīs vīdī. 21. Sententiās multās pulchrāsque ex virīs antiquīs trāximus.

22. 说出第8, 9, 10, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 18, 20句中的夺格类型。

答案

1. 复数属格。

2. 单数夺格中的-ī;复数主格和复数宾格中的-ia。

3. (1) by/w./fr. art (17) of the kings
(2) of the arts (18) to/for the king
(3) arts (nom. or acc.) (19) names (nom. or acc.)
(4) to/for the sea; by/w./fr. the sea (20) animals (nom. or acc.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| (5) to/for the seas; by/w./fr. the seas | (21) to/for an animal; by/w./fr. an animal |
| (6) the sea (nom. or acc.) | (22) of an animal |
| (7) the seas (nom. or acc.) | (23) of animals |
| (8) bodies (nom. or acc.) | (24) of strength |
| (9) of bodies | (25) men (acc.) |
| (10) of a part | (26) of the man; men (nom.) |
| (11) to/for parts; by/w./fr. parts | (27) strength (nom. or acc. pl.) |
| (12) of parts | (28) to/for men; by/w./fr. men |
| (13) by/w./fr./the city | (29) force (nom.); of force |
| (14) to/for the city | (30) force (acc.) |
| (15) of cities | (31) to/for strength; by/w./fr. strength |
| (16) cities (nom. or acc.) | (32) to/for force; by/w./fr. force |

4. (2); (4) as abl.; (7); (12); (15); (20); (21) as abl; (23); (24); (30); (32) as abl.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 5. (1) <i>vī magnā</i> | (6) <i>cīve bonō</i> | (11) <i>vim magnam</i> |
| (2) <i>virum magnum</i> | (7) <i>cīvibus multīs</i> | (12) <i>virōrum multōrum</i> |
| (3) <i>vīrium magnārum</i> | (8) <i>maria multa</i> | (13) <i>vīribus magnīs</i> |
| (4) <i>vī magnaē</i> | (9) <i>marī magnō</i> | (14) <i>vīrēs magnās</i> |
| (5) <i>cīvium multōrum</i> | (10) <i>mare magnum</i> | |

6. (1)伴随; (2) 手段; (3) 方式; (4) 手段。

7. (1) they ran (*currō*); (2) we were running (*currō*); (3) you (sg.) ran (*currō*); (4) we had dragged (*trahō*); (5) he will drag (*trahō*); (6) they are dragging (*trahō*); (7) he was managing (*gerō*); (8) he manages (*gerō*); (9) they manage (*gerō*); (10) we shall manage (*gerō*); (11) they hold (*teneō*); (12) they will hold (*teneō*); (13) they held (*teneō*); (14) we held (*teneō*).

8. He waged many wars with the Romans. 9. They were managing the state with great wisdom. 10. He himself held the state by the power of troops. 11. Those animals dragged many men into the sea. 12. You (sg.) said this with great skill. 13. We ran with care (carefully) across the city. 14. He was coming to us with a large part of the citizens. 15. He will conquer the rights of the citizens by force. 16. You (pl.) dragged him to death across his land. 17. We shall join ourselves with the citizens of many cities. 18. He wrote this letter to the king himself with courage (courageously). 19. The violence of those seas was great. 20. I have seen the art of the Greeks with my own eyes. 21. We have drawn many beautiful thoughts from the ancients.

22. 8, 伴随; 9, 方式; 10, 手段; 12, 方式; 13, 方式; 14, 伴随; 15, 手段; 17, 伴随; 18, 方式; 20, 手段。

第十五课练习

- 基数词和序数词的区别是什么?
- 基数词如何变格?
- 序数词如何变格?
- 说出下列词形分别是或可能是什么形式: (1) *duōbus*; (2) *mīlle*; (3) *tria*; (4) *duo*; (5) *quīnque*; (6) *mīlia*; (7) *decem*; (8) *duābus*; (9) *centum*; (10) *trium*; (11) *vīgintī*; (12) *octō*。

5. “整体属格”这一名称缘何而来?

6. 罗马人在基数词后面使用什么结构?

7. 翻译下列短语:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) <i>ūnus cīvis</i> | (9) <i>centum ex cīvibus</i> |
| (2) <i>decem cīvēs</i> | (10) <i>mīlle cīvēs</i> |
| (3) <i>pars cīvium</i> | (11) <i>tria mīlia cīvium</i> |
| (4) <i>trēs cīvēs</i> | (12) <i>quid novī</i> |
| (5) <i>trēs ex sex cīvibus</i> | (13) <i>multum laudis</i> |
| (6) <i>quīnque ex cīvibus</i> | (14) <i>satis pecūniae</i> |
| (7) <i>quīnque cīvēs</i> | (15) <i>nihil aquae</i> |
| (8) <i>centum cīvēs</i> | |

8. 罗马人在把一个表示时间的词写成无介词夺格的形式时, 是想表达什么观念?

9. 考察以下句子中的夺格形式。翻译句子并说出它们分别属于哪种夺格类型。

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| (1) <i>Cum amīcīs veniēbat.</i> | (4) <i>Paucīs hōrīs librum scrīpsit.</i> |
| (2) <i>Ūnā hōrā veniet.</i> | (5) <i>Illō tempore librum scrīpsit.</i> |
| (3) <i>Eōdem tempore vēnit.</i> | (6) <i>Cum cūrā librum scrībēbat.</i> |

10. *Illō tempore sōlō illa tria perīcula timuit; sed mortem semper timēbat.*

11. *Istī duo rēgēs pecūniam inter mīlia cīvium iaciēbant.*

12. *Iste ūnus tyrannus sē semper laudābat.*

13. *Cīvēs illārum quīnque urbium lībertātem exspectābant.*

14. *Urbem duābus hōrīs sapientiā suā cōservāvērunt.*

15. *In urbem cum tribus ex amīcīs meīs veniēbam.*

16. *Bella magna cum virtūte gerēbātis.*

17. *Itaque centum Rōmānī mīlle Graecōs vīcērunt.*

18. *Patrēs fīliōs suōs saepe timēbant—et nunc multum timōris habent.*

19. *Vīdistīne duōs patrēs nostrōs eō tempore?*

20. *Ubi satis lībertātis invēnistis?*

21. *Tribus hōrīs vēnērunt, et idem nōbīs dīcēbat.*

22. *Parvum argūmentī intellegēbam.*

23. *Nūllam partem vītārum nostrārum mūtāvimus.*

24. *Cīvitās nostra lībertātem et iūra cīvium cōservābat.*

25. *Rōmānī mōrēs temporum antīquōrum laudābant.*

26. *Duo patrēs quattuor ex fīliīs mīsērunt.*

27. *Decem virī satis sapientiae et multum virtūtis habuērunt.*

28. *Quid novī, mī amīce?*

答案

1. 参见 p. 95。

2. 参见 p. 95—96。

3. 参见 p. 96。

4. (1) dat./abl. pl. m. and n.; (2) indecl. adj. agreeing with noun in any case; (3) nom./acc. pl. n.; (4) nom. pl. m. and n., acc. pl. n.; (5) any form in pl.; (6) nom./acc. pl. n.; (7) any form in pl.; (8) dat./abl. pl. f.; (9) any form in pl.; (10) gen. pl. any gender; (11) any form in pl.; (12) any form in pl.

5. 之所以有“整体属格”这一名称,是因为某个部分所从出的总体数目或数量通常被置于属格形式。参见 p. 96“整体属格”一节。

6. **Ex** 或 **dē** + 夺格。

- | | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 7. (1) one citizen | (6) 5 of the citizens | (11) 3000 citizens |
| (2) ten citizens | (7) 5 citizens | (12) what (is) new? |
| (3) part of the citizens | (8) 100 citizens | (13) much praise |
| (4) three citizens | (9) 100 of the citizens | (14) enough money |
| (5) 3 of the 6 citizens | (10) 1000 citizens | (15) no water |

8. 何时或期间。

9. (1) He used to come (was coming, kept coming) with his friends. 伴随夺格

(2) He will come in one hour. 夺格表期间

(3) He came at the same time. 夺格表何时

(4) He wrote the book in a few hours. 夺格表期间

(5) At that time he wrote a book. 夺格表何时

(6) He was writing the book with care. 方式夺格

10. At that time alone he feared those three dangers; but he always used to fear (was afraid of) death. 11. Those two kings used to throw money among the thousands of citizens. 12. That one tyrant (of yours) always used to praise himself. 13. The citizens of those five cities kept expecting liberty. 14. They saved the city in two hours by their own wisdom. 15. I used to come into the city with three of my friends. 16. You (pl.) used to wage great wars with courage (= courageously). 17. Therefore a hundred Romans conquered a thousand Greeks. 18. Fathers often used to fear their own sons—and now they have much (of) fear. 19. Did you (sg.) see our two fathers at that time? 20. Where did you (pl.) find enough freedom? 21. They came in three hours, and he kept saying the same thing to us. 22. I understood little of the argument. 23. We have changed no part of our lives. 24. Our state used to preserve the liberty and rights of the citizens. 25. The Romans used to praise the customs of ancient times. 26. The two fathers sent four of their sons. 27. The ten men had enough wisdom and much virtue. 28. What's new, my friend?

第十六课练习

- 如果我们掌握了 **civis** 和 **mare** 的变格,那么除了一个例外形式,很容易对第三变格法形容词 **fortis**, **forte** 进行变格。这个例外形式是什么?
- (1) 第三变格法形容词可以分为三尾、二尾和一尾形容词,其中最常见的是哪种类型?
(2) 一尾、三尾形容词的哪种格与二尾形容词不同?
- 列举第三变格法形容词显示为 **i-**词干形式的三种词尾,并将其归类。
- 在第三变格法形容词的各个词尾中,也许单数夺格是最不容易辨识的。在所有性中,单数夺格的词尾一般是什么?
- 第三变格法形容词可以与第一、第二变格法名词连用吗?

6. 根据格和数翻译下列形式;主格或宾格的情况请标明。

- | | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| (1) dulcī puellae | (8) omnia nōmina | (15) beātō hominī |
| (2) dulcī puellā | (9) omnia maria | (16) omnī marī |
| (3) dulcī mātrem | (10) omnī parte | (17) omnī bonae artī |
| (4) dulcī mātērī | (11) omnium partium | (18) omnī bonā arte |
| (5) beātae mātērī | (12) omnium rēgum | (19) omnis bonae artis |
| (6) beātā mātrem | (13) omnium bellōrum | (20) vī celerī |
| (7) omnia bella | (14) beātō homine | |

7. Aetās longa saepe est difficilis. 8. Aetās difficilis potest esse beāta.
9. Quam brevis erat dulcis vīta eius! 10. Memoria dulcis aetātis mīlia hominum adiuvat. 11. Librum brevem centum hōrīs scrīpsistī. 12. In omnī marī haec duo animālia potentia inveniēbāmus. 13. In omnī terrā multa mīlia virōrum fortium vidēbitis. 14. Celer rūmor (celeris fāma) per omnem terram cucurrit. 15. Illud bellum breve erat difficile. 16. Omnia perīcula sex hōrīs superāvimus. 17. Tyrannus potēns patriam eōrum vī celerī vincet. 18. Brevī tempore omnia iūra cīvium mūtābit. 19. Difficilem artem lībertātis dulcis nōn intellēxērunt, nam parvum sapientiae habuērunt. 20. Hominēs officia difficilia in omnibus terrīs timent.

答案

1. 阳性和阴性的单数夺格: **cīve**, 然而 **fortī**。
2. (1) 二尾形容词。
(2) 阳性和阴性的单数主格: **fortis, fortis; ācer, ācris; potēns, potēns**。
3. **-ī**, 所有性的单数夺格; **-ium**, 所有性的复数属格; **-ia**, 中性的复数主格和复数宾格; 参见 p. 103 脚注 2。
4. **-ī**; 参见 p. 103 脚注 2。
5. 可以。
6. (1) to/for a sweet girl (11) of all parts
(2) by/w./fr. a sweet girl (12) of all kings
(3) by/w./fr. a sweet mother (13) of all wars
(4) to/for a sweet mother (14) by/w./fr. a happy man
(5) to/for a happy mother (15) to/for a happy man
(6) by/w./fr. a happy mother (16) to/for or by/w./fr. every sea
(7) all wars, nom. or acc. pl. (17) to/for every good art
(8) all names, nom. or acc. pl. (18) by/w./fr. every good art
(9) all seas, nom. or acc. pl. (19) of every good art
(10) by/w./fr. every part (20) to/for, by/w./fr. swift force

7. A long life is often difficult. 8. A difficult life can be happy. 9. How brief was his sweet life! 10. The memory of a sweet period of life helps thousands of men. 11. You (sg.) wrote a short book in a hundred hours. 12. In every sea we kept finding these two powerful animals. 13. In every land you (pl.) will see many thousands of brave men. 14. Swift rumor ran through every land. 15. That short war was difficult. 16. We overcame all dangers in six hours. 17. The powerful tyrant will

conquer their country with swift violence. 18. In a short time he will change all the rights of the citizens. 19. They did not understand the difficult art of sweet liberty, for they had little wisdom. 20. Men fear difficult duties in all lands.

第十七课练习

- “先行词”和“关系代词”是如何定义的？
- (1) 是什么决定了拉丁语关系代词的格？
(2) 是什么决定了关系代词的性和数？
- 关系代词应当在哪些方面与先行词保持一致？
- (1) 哪些英语关系代词指人？
(2) 哪些英语关系代词指物？
(3) 既然在拉丁语中，一个关系代词可以服务于两种目的，那么它具有哪两种英语含义？
- 根据格和数翻译下列形式；主格或宾格的情况请标明。

(1) cui	(4) cuius	(7) quā	(10) quās
(2) quōs	(5) quibus	(8) quī	(11) quōrum
(3) quae	(6) quod	(9) quem	(12) quām

6. Cīvem laudāvērunt quem mīserātis. 7. Decem cīvēs laudāvērunt quōs mīserātis. 8. Cīvem laudāvērunt quī patriam servāverat. 9. Centum cīvēs laudāvērunt quī patriam servāverant. 10. Cīvem laudāvērunt cuius fīlius patriam servāverat. 11. Cīvēs laudāvērunt quōrum septem fīliī patriam servāverant. 12. Cīvem laudāvērunt cui patriam commīserant. 13. Multōs ex cīvibus laudāvērunt quibus patriam commīserant. 14. Cīvem laudāvērunt quōcum vēnerant. 15. Cīvēs laudāvērunt quibuscum vēnerant. 16. Cum cīve vēnit cui vītā suā commīserat. 17. Tyrannī iūra cīvium dēlent quōs capiunt. 18. Tyrannus urbem dēlēvit ex quā mīlia cīvium fūgerant. 19. Tyrannus urbem dēlēvit in quam illī novem cīvēs fūgerant. 20. Tyrannus urbēs dēlēvit ex quibus cīvēs fūgerant. 21. Tyrannus urbēs dēlēvit in quās cīvēs fūgerant. 22. Perīculum superāvit quod timuimus. 23. Perīcula superāvit quae timuimus. 24. Puellīs quās laudābat librōs dedit. 25. Vir cuius fīliam amās in urbem veniēbat. 26. Virō cuius fīliam amās vītā suā commisit. 27. Mātrē adiuvābat, quae multum virtūtis habuit. 28. Mātribus quae multōs fīliōs habuērunt rēx pecūniam dabat.

答案

- 参见第十七课, p. 108—109 的“用法和一致”一节。
- (1) 它在其自身子句中的使用；(2) 先行词。
- 在性和数方面。
- (1) who. (2) which. (3) who, which.
- (1) to/for whom or which, masc. sg.

- (2) whom or which, masc. pl.
- (3) who/which, nom. sg. fem.
who/which, nom. pl. fem.
which, nom. or acc. pl. neut.
- (4) of whom/which, whose, sg.
- (5) to/for or by/w./fr. whom/which, pl.
- (6) which, nom. or acc. neut. sg.
- (7) by/w./fr. whom/which, fem. sg.
- (8) who/which, masc. sg. and pl.
- (9) whom/which, masc. sg.
- (10) whom/which, fem. pl.
- (11) of whom/which, whose, masc. pl.
- (12) whom/which, fem. sg.

6. They praised the citizen whom you (pl.) had sent. 7. They praised the ten citizens whom you (pl.) had sent. 8. They praised the citizen who had saved the country. 9. They praised the hundred citizens who had saved the country. 10. They praised the citizen whose son had saved the country. 11. They praised the citizens whose seven sons had saved the country. 12. They praised the citizen to whom they had entrusted the country. 13. They praised many of the citizens to whom they had entrusted the country. 14. They praised the citizen with whom they had come. 15. They praised the citizens with whom they had come. 16. He came with the citizen to whom he had entrusted his own life. 17. Tyrants destroy the rights of the citizens whom they capture. 18. The tyrant destroyed the city from which thousands of citizens had fled. 19. The tyrant destroyed the city into which those nine citizens had fled. 20. The tyrant destroyed the cities from which the citizens had fled. 21. The tyrant destroyed the cities into which the citizens had fled. 22. He overcame the danger which we feared. 23. He overcame the dangers which we feared. 24. He gave books to the girls whom he was praising. 25. The man whose daughter you (sg.) love kept coming into the city. 26. He entrusted his own life to the man whose daughter you (sg.) love. 27. He used to help the mother, who had much courage. 28. The king used to give money to the mothers who had many sons.

第十八课练习

1. 通过解释“被动”(passive)一词的词源,说明什么是“被动态”。
2. 手段夺格与施事夺格在含义和结构上有何不同?
3. (1) 在6个人称词尾中,有哪个字母在其中5个之中出现,从而可以看作被动态的特殊标记?
(2) 这个表示被动态的特征字母是否出现于相应的主动态人称词尾中?
4. 给出能够用来翻译下列被动态词尾的英语代词:(1) -mur; (2) -tur; (3) -r;
(4) -ntur; (5) -ris; (6) -minī。
5. (1) 说出第一、第二变位法被动态未完成时和将来时的时态标志。
(2) 它们与主动态的时态标志相同吗?
6. 如果**-bar**可以译成“I was being . . .”,**-bor**可以译成“I shall be . . .”,请翻

译下列形式:(1) -bimur; (2) -bāminī; (3) -bātur; (4) -beris; (5) -buntur; (6) -bāmur; (7) -bitur; (8) -bāris; (9) -biminī; (10) -bantur。

7. Mē terrent; ab eīs terreor; vī eōrum terreor. 8. Tyrannus hanc urbem dēlēbat. 9. Haec urbs ā tyrannō dēlēbātur; īnsidiīs dēlēbitur. 10. Ab amīcīs movēbātur; cōnsiliīs eōrum movēbātur. 11. Vīribus hominum nōn dēlēmur, sed possumus īnsidiīs dēlēri. 12. Nōn bellō dēlēbiminī, sed amōre ōtīi et cōnsiliīs hominum malōrum. 13. Tū ipse nōn mūtāris, sed nōmen tuum mūtātur. 14. Mīlia hominum amōre pecūniae tenentur. 15. Aliī ab tyrannīs tenēbantur. 16. Paucī amōre vēritātis amīcītaeque tenēbuntur. 17. Puer ab amīcīs cōservābitur. 18. Librī huius generis puerīs ā magistrō dabantur. 19. Libertās populō ab rēge tertiō brevī tempore dabitur. 20. Patria nostra ā cīvibus fortibus etiam nunc servārī potest. 21. Fortunā aliōrum monērī dēbēmus. 22. Cōnsiliīs istīus tyrannī quī trāns mare vīvit terrēmur; sed libertātem amāmus et bellum magnā cum virtūte gerēmus. 23. Ab amīcīs potentibus adiuvābimur. 24. Omnēs virōs nostrōs laudāmus, quī virtūte et vēritāte moventur, nōn amōre suī.

答案

1. 参见 p. 115—116 的“被动态”一节。
2. 参见 p. 116 的“施事夺格”一节。注意“施动者”是人,“手段”则是某种非人的东西。
3. (1) 字母 **r**。
(2) 不出现。
4. (1) we; (2) he; (3) I; (4) they; (5) you (sg.); (6) you (pl.).
5. (1) **-bā-**, 未完成时; **-bi-** (**-bō-**, **-be-**, **-bu-**), 将来时。
(2) 相同, 只有第二人称单数的 **-be-** 属于例外。
6. (1) we shall be . . . ; (2) you (pl.) were being . . . ; (3) he was being . . . ; (4) you (sg.) will be . . . ; (5) they will be . . . ; (6) we were being . . . ; (7) he will be . . . ; (8) you (sg.) were being . . . ; (9) you (pl.) will be . . . ; (10) they were being . . .
7. They terrify me; I am terrified by them; I am terrified by their violence. 8. The tyrant was destroying this city. 9. This city was being destroyed by the tyrant; it will be destroyed by a plot. 10. He used to be aroused (moved) by his friends; he used to be aroused by their plans. 11. We are not being destroyed by the strength of men, but we can be destroyed by a plot. 12. You (pl.) will be destroyed not by war but by love of leisure and by the plans of evil men. 13. You yourself (sg.) are not being changed, but your name is being changed. 14. Thousands of men are possessed by the love of money. 15. Others used to be held by tyrants. 16. A few will be possessed by love of truth and friendship. 17. The boy will be saved by his friends. 18. Books of this sort used to be given to the boys by the teacher. 19. Liberty will be given to the people by the third king in a short time. 20. Our country can even now be saved by brave citizens. 21. We ought to be warned by the fortune of other men (others). 22. We are terrified by the plans of that tyrant who lives across the sea; but we love liberty, and we shall wage war with great courage.

23. We shall be helped by powerful friends. 24. We praise all our men, who are moved by courage and truth, not by love of themselves.

第十九课练习

- (1) 所有动词的完成时被动态直陈式的两个基本构词要素是什么?
(2) 所有动词的过去完成时被动态直陈式的两个基本构词要素是什么?
- (1) 如何在翻译中区别 **vir missus est** 和 **vir mittitur**?
(2) 如何在翻译中区别 **vir missus erat** 和 **vir mittēbātur**?
- 疑问代词的用法是什么?
- 在哪些形式中,疑问代词的拼写与关系代词有显著不同?
- 疑问代词可以通过哪两种句法标准与关系代词相区别,即使拼写相同?
- 翻译下列形式:

(1) movētur	(6) dēlēbantur	(11) tenēbāmur
(2) mōtus est	(7) dēlētī sunt	(12) mūtātus erat
(3) mōtum erat	(8) tenēmur	(13) mūtātus est
(4) movēbātur	(9) tentī sumus	(14) mūtātur
(5) dēlētī erant	(10) tentī erāmus	(15) mūtābātur

- 翻译下列疑问代词形式:(1) cuius?; (2) quem?; (3) quī?; (4) quid?; (5) quōrum?;
(6) cui?; (7) quās?; (8) quis?; (9) quae?

8. Ā quō liber parātus est (parātus erat, parābātur)? 9. Magister ā quō liber parātus est labōre superātur. 10. Cui liber datus est (dabātur, datus erat)? 11. Quī puer servātus est? 12. Puerum quī servātus est ego ipse vīdī. 13. Cuius duo filiī servātī sunt? 14. Senem cuius filiī servātī sunt numquam vīdī. 15. Quis missus est? 16. Ā cīve quī missus erat pāx et lībertās laudātae sunt. 17. Quī missī sunt? 18. Ā decem cīvibus quī missī erant amīcītia laudāta est. 19. Quōs in urbe vīdistī? 20. Ubi sunt trēs novī amīcī quōs in urbe vīdistī? 21. Quae ā tē ibi inventa sunt? 22. Ubi sunt tria corpora quae ā tē ibi inventa sunt? 23. Ā quibus hoc dictum est? 24. Quibus hoc dictum est? 25. Octō hominēs miserī quibus haec dicta sunt ex urbe fūgērunt. 26. Quōrum filiī ab eō laudātī sunt? 27. Patrēs quōrum filiī laudātī sunt eī grātiās agent. 28. Quid vōs terret? 29. Quod perīculum vōs terret? 30. At perīculum quod vōs terret ā cīvibus fortibus victum est.

答案

- (1) 完成时被动态分词加 **sum** 的现在时。
(2) 完成时被动态分词加 **sum** 的未完成时。
- (1) **Vir missus est** = a man was (has been) sent; **vir mittitur** = a man is (is being) sent.
(2) **Vir missus erat** = a man had been sent; **vir mittēbātur** = a man was being

(used to be) sent.

3. 疑问代词引出一个问题。

4. **quis** (nom. sg. m. and f.); **quid** (nom. and acc. sg. n.).

5. 参见 p. 121—122。

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 6. (1) he is (is being) moved | (9) we were held |
| (2) he was (has been) moved | (10) we had been held |
| (3) it had been moved | (11) we were being held |
| (4) he was being moved | (12) he had been changed |
| (5) they had been destroyed | (13) he was (has been) changed |
| (6) they were being destroyed | (14) he is (is being) changed |
| (7) they were destroyed | (15) he was being changed |
| (8) we are held | |

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 7. (1) whose (sg.)? | (6) to whom (sg.)? |
| (2) whom (sg.)? | (7) whom (fem. pl.)? |
| (3) who (pl.)? | (8) who (sg.)? |
| (4) what (nom. and acc. sg.)? | (9) who (fem. pl.); |
| (5) whose (pl.)? | what (neut. nom. and acc. pl.)? |

8. By whom was the book prepared (had been prepared; was being prepared)?
 9. The teacher by whom the book was prepared is overcome with work. 10. To whom was the book given (was being given, had been given)? 11. What boy was saved? 12. I myself saw the boy who was saved. 13. Whose (sg.) two sons were saved? 14. I never saw the old man whose sons were saved. 15. Who (sg.) was sent? 16. Peace and liberty were praised by the citizen who had been sent. 17. Who (pl.) were sent? 18. Friendship was praised by the ten citizens who had been sent. 19. Whom (pl.) did you (sg.) see in the city? 20. Where are the three new friends whom you (sg.) saw in the city? 21. What things were found by you (sg.) there? 22. Where are the three bodies which were found there by you (sg.)? 23. By whom was this (thing) said? 24. To whom was this said? 25. The eight wretched men to whom these things were said fled from the city. 26. Whose sons were praised by him? 27. The fathers whose sons were praised will thank him. 28. What terrifies you? 29. What danger terrifies you? 30. But the danger which terrifies you has been conquered by brave citizens.

第二十课练习

- 说出下列第四变格法阳性和阴性词尾的确切含义:(1) -um; (2) -uum; (3) -ū;
(4) -us; (5) -ūs; (6) -uī。
- 根据格的形式翻译下列名词:

(1) manuī	(6) frūctibus	(11) senātūs (sg.)
(2) manus	(7) frūctum	(12) senātuī
(3) manuum	(8) frūctūs	(13) senātus
(4) manū	(9) frūctuum	(14) senātū
(5) manūs	(10) frūctū	
- (1) 第四变格法主要是什么性?

- (2) 关于这一规则的最常见例外是哪个名词?
4. (1) 解释地点夺格(从何处)与分离夺格的区别。
 (2) 表示“释放”、“缺乏”、“剥夺”等含义的动词通常跟哪种夺格?
 (3) 表示运动的动词通常跟哪种夺格?
5. 比较地点夺格(从何处)与分离夺格的结构差异。
6. Quis ad nōs eō tempore vēnit? 7. Senex magnae fāmae ex patriā suā ad senātum nostrum fūgit. 8. Quid novī ab eō dictum est? 9. Hoc ab illō virō dictum est: “Lībertāte carēmus.” 10. Nōs servitūte et gravī metū liberāte. 11. Cōpiaē nostrae bellum longum contrā ācrēs manūs tyrannī gessērunt. 12. Illae manūs ācrēs quās tyrannus contrā nōs illā ex terrā mīsīt ā nōbīs victae sunt. 13. Post haec cīvēs quī tyrannum timuērunt ex patriā suā in cīvitatē nostram ductī sunt. 14. Eōs sceleribus istīus tyrannī liberāvimus. 15. Nunc omnī metū carent. 16. Fīlī eōrum bonōs librōs in lūdīs nostrīs cum studiō legunt. 17. Itaque mille versūs manibus suīs scrīpsērunt. 18. Hī centum versūs nōbīs grātiās magnās agunt. 19. In hīs versibus senātus populusque Rōmānus laudantur. 20. Nam illī miserī nunc frūctūs pācis et multum lībertātis sine metū habent. 21. Quoniam aliōs adiūvimus, etiam nōs ipsī frūctum magnum habēmus. 22. Virī bonī cōpiā hōrum frūctuum numquam carēbunt. 23. Aetāte nostrā multī hominēs vītā in metū et servitūte agunt. 24. Dēbēmus illōs miserōs metū liberāre. 25. Nam quis potest beātus esse sī aliī hominēs frūctibus pācis lībertātisque carent?
26. 下列夺格分别表达什么观念?(数字指前面的句子序号) tempore (6), patriā (7), eō (8), virō (9), metū (10), nōbīs (12), patriā (13), sceleribus (14), metū (15), studiō (16), manibus (17), cōpiā (22), aetāte (23), metū (24)

答案

1. (1) object, acc. sg.; (2) of, pl.; (3) by/w./fr., sg.; (4) subject, sg.; (5) of (sg.); subject or object (pl.); (6) to/for, sg..
- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 2. (1) to/for a hand (band) | (8) of fruit; fruits (subj./obj.) |
| (2) a hand (subj.) | (9) of fruits |
| (3) of hands | (10) by/w./fr. fruit |
| (4) by/w./fr. a hand | (11) of the senate |
| (5) of a hand; hands (subj./obj.) | (12) to/for the senate |
3. (1) 阳性;(2) **manus**。
4. (1) 地点夺格(从何处)= motion apart; 分离夺格 = distance apart;
 (2) 分离夺格;
 (3) 地点夺格(从何处);
5. 地点夺格(从何处)一般有介词(**ab**, **dē**, **ex**); 关于分离夺格, 参见 p. 128。
6. Who came to us at that time? 7. An old man of great fame fled from his country to our senate. 8. What new was said by him? 9. This (thing) was said by that man:

“We lack liberty.” 10. Free us from slavery and heavy fear. 11. Our forces waged long war against the tyrant’s fierce bands. 12. Those fierce bands which the tyrant sent against us from that land were conquered by us. 13. After this (*lit.* these things) the citizens who feared the tyrant were led from their own country into our state. 14. We freed them from the crimes of that tyrant. 15. Now they lack (are free from) every fear (anxiety). 16. Their sons eagerly (with zeal) read good books in our schools. 17. And so they have written a thousand verses with their own hands. 18. These one hundred verses give great thanks to us. 19. In these verses the senate and the Roman people are praised. 20. For those unfortunate men now have the fruits of peace and much liberty without fear. 21. Since we have helped others, even we ourselves have great enjoyment. 22. Good men will never lack an abundance of these fruits. 23. In our age many human beings pass their life in fear and slavery. 24. We ought to free those unfortunate men from fear. 25. For who can be happy if other human beings lack the enjoyments of peace and liberty?

26. (6) 何时; (7) 从何处; (8) 施事; (9) 施事; (10) 分离; (12) 施事; (13) 从何处; (14) 分离; (15) 分离; (16) 方式; (17) 手段; (22) 分离; (23) 何时; (24) 分离。

第二十一课练习

1. 给出现在时和将来时的被动态人称词尾。
2. 反复朗读例词 **agō**, **audiō** 和 **capiō** 的现在时被动态和将来时被动态形式。
3. 第一、第二、第四变位法的现在时被动态不定式如何与主动态不定式相区别? 将下列主动态不定式变为被动态不定式并翻译: (1) *sentīre*; (2) *movēre*; (3) *servāre*; (4) *scīre*; (5) *tenēre*。
4. 第三变位法的现在时被动态不定式形式有何特别之处? 将下列主动态不定式变为被动态不定式并翻译: (1) *mittere*; (2) *iacere*; (3) *tangere*; (4) *trahere*。
5. 翻译下列形式:

(1) <i>mittar</i>	(7) <i>rapitur</i>	(13) <i>raperis</i>	(19) <i>tangēminī</i>
(2) <i>mitteris</i>	(8) <i>rapiētur</i>	(14) <i>rapiēris</i>	(20) <i>sciēris</i>
(3) <i>mittēris</i>	(9) <i>rapī</i>	(15) <i>tanguntur</i>	(21) <i>scīris</i>
(4) <i>mittī</i>	(10) <i>rapimur</i>	(16) <i>tangentur</i>	(22) <i>sciētur</i>
(5) <i>mittuntur</i>	(11) <i>rapientur</i>	(17) <i>tangī</i>	(23) <i>scītur</i>
(6) <i>mittor</i>	(12) <i>rapiuntur</i>	(18) <i>tangeris</i>	(24) <i>scīrī</i>

6. *Quis mittitur (mittētur, mittēbātur, missus est)?* 7. *A quō hae litterae mittentur (missae sunt, mittuntur)?* 8. *Cuius manū illae litterae scriptae sunt (scribentur)?* 9. *Quid dictum est (dicēbātur, dicētur, dicitur)?* 10. “*Quis rapiētur?*” “*Tū rapiēris.*” 11. “*Quī rapientur?*” “*Vōs rapiēminī.*” 12. *Diū neglegēris/neglegēminī (neglēctus es/neglēctī estis).* 13. *Post multās hōrās liberātī sumus (liberābimur).* 14. *Cīvitātis causā eum rapī iussērunt.* 15. *Lībertātis causā cīvitās nostra ab alterō virō gerī dēbet.* 16. *Animus eius pecūniā tangī nōn poterat.* 17. *Amor patriae in omnī animō sentiēbātur (sentiētur, sentītur, sēnsus est).* 18. *Amōre patriae cum aliīs cīvibus iungimur (iungēbāmur, iungēmur).* 19. *Amīcitia nōn semper intellegitur, sed*

sentitur. 20. Sapientia et vērītās in illīs duōbus hominibus nōn inveniuntur (inveniuntur, inventae sunt). 21. Sapientia etiam multā pecūniā nōn parātur (parābitur, parāta est). 22. Vērītās saepe nōn scītur (sciētur, scīta est), quod studium eius est difficile. 23. Nōn sine magnō labōre vērītās inveniētur (inventā est, potest invenīrī). 24. Aliī studiō pecūniae atque laudis trahuntur; nōs dēbēmus amōre vērītātis sapientiaeque trahī.

答案

1. 参见 p. 114—115。
2. 核对 p. 133—134 的词形变化表,反复朗读直至能够脱口而出。
3. 主动态不定式词尾的 **-e** 在被动态不定式中变成了 **-ī**: (1) **sentīrī**, *to be felt*; (2) **movērī**, *to be moved*; (3) **servārī**, *to be saved*; (4) **scīrī**, *to be known*; (5) **tenērī**, *to be held*。
4. 主动态不定式的整个词尾 **-ere** 变成了 **-ī**: (1) **mittī**, *to be sent*; (2) **iacī**, *to be thrown*; (3) **tangī**, *to be touched*; **trahī**, *to be drawn*。
5. (1) I shall be sent (13) you (sg.) are seized
 (2) you (sg.) are sent (14) you (sg.) will be seized
 (3) you (sg.) will be sent (15) they are touched
 (4) to be sent (16) they will be touched
 (5) they are sent (17) to be touched
 (6) I am sent (18) you (sg.) are touched
 (7) he is seized (19) you (pl.) will be touched
 (8) he will be seized (20) you (sg.) will be known
 (9) to be seized (21) you (sg.) are known
 (10) we are seized (22) he will be known
 (11) they will be seized (23) he is known
 (12) they are seized (24) to be known

6. Who is being sent (will be sent, used to be sent, was sent)? 7. By whom will this letter be sent (was sent, is sent)? 8. By whose hand was that letter written (will be written)? 9. What was said (was being said, will be said, is said)? 10. “Who (sg.) will be seized?” “You (sg.) will be seized.” 11. “Who (pl.) will be seized?” “You (pl.) will be seized.” 12. For a long time you (sg./pl.) will be neglected (were neglected). 13. After many hours we were freed (shall be freed). 14. For the sake of the state they ordered him to be seized. 15. For the sake of liberty our state ought to be managed by the other man. 16. His soul could not be touched by money. 17. In every soul the love of country used to be felt (will be felt, is felt, was felt). 18. We are joined (used to be joined, will be joined) to (*lit.*, with) other citizens by love of country. 19. Friendship is not always understood, but it is felt. 20. Wisdom and truth will not be found (are not found, were not found) in those two men. 21. Wisdom is not obtained (will not be obtained, was not obtained) by even a great deal of (= much) money. 22. Truth often is not known (will not be known, was not known), because the study of it is difficult. 23. Not without great labor will truth be found (was found, can be found). 24. Others are drawn by eagerness for (*lit.*, of) money and fame; we ought to be drawn by love of truth and wisdom.

第二十二课练习

- 如果说 *u* 是第四变格法的特征元音,那么第五变格法的特征元音是什么?
- 第五变格法有哪些格词尾与相应的第三变格法词尾比较相像,从而使之能够被轻易地辨识出来?
- (1) 大多数第五变格法名词都是什么性?
(2) 哪个词是主要例外?
- 根据格和数翻译下列形式;主格或宾格的情况请标明。

(1) <i>speī</i>	(6) <i>fidē</i>	(11) <i>diēbus</i>	(16) <i>reī</i>
(2) <i>spērum</i>	(7) <i>fidem</i>	(12) <i>rem</i>	(17) <i>ignium</i>
(3) <i>spem</i>	(8) <i>fideī</i>	(13) <i>rērum</i>	(18) <i>ignem</i>
(4) <i>spēbus</i>	(9) <i>diērum</i>	(14) <i>rē</i>	(19) <i>ignibus</i>
(5) <i>spēs</i>	(10) <i>diēs</i>	(15) <i>rēbus</i>	(20) <i>ignēs</i>
- 说出下列句中的状语各表达哪一类观念,并翻译整句话。

(1) <i>In urbe remānsit.</i>	(4) <i>Cum eīs vēnit.</i>	(7) <i>Illud igne factum est.</i>
(2) <i>Ūnā hōrā veniet.</i>	(5) <i>Ex urbe vēnit.</i>	(8) <i>Id ab eīs factum est.</i>
(3) <i>Eō tempore vēnit.</i>	(6) <i>Igne carent.</i>	(9) <i>Id cum fidē factum est.</i>
- 根据所学的拉丁语规则,指出要想表达下列状语观念,是应当单用夺格,还是将夺格与介词连用,还是有时用介词、有时不用:(1)施事;(2)伴随;(3)分离;(4)在何处;(5)手段;(6)方式;(7)从何处;(8)何时或期间。
- Eō tempore libertātem illōrum decem cīvium cum fidē cōservāvit.*
- Rem pūblicam magnā cum cūrā gessit.*
- Rēs pūblica magnā cūrā ab eō gesta est.*
- Multae rēs bonae in mediā urbe vīsae sunt.*
- Eō diē multās rēs cum spē parāvērunt.*
- Ignem ex manibus puerī ēripuimus.*
- Quīnque diēbus Cicerō rem pūblicam ē periculō ēripiet.*
- Duās rēs pūblicās metū liberāvistī.*
- Terra hominēs frūctibus bonīs alit.*
- Incertās spēs eōrum virtūte suā aluit.*
- Hāc aetāte spēs nostrae ā hīs tribus tyrannīs tolluntur.*
- Septem ex amīcīs nostrīs ex illā rē pūblicā magnō cum metū vēnērunt.*
- Tōta gēns in fīnēs huius reī pūblīcae magnā cum manū amīcōrum ūnō diē vēnit.*
- Nōn omnēs virī liberī audent sē cum hāc rē pūblicā iungere.*
- Sī illī fidē carent, nūlla spēs est amīcitiae et pācis.*
- Bona fidēs et amor huius reī pūblīcae possunt nōs cōservāre.*
- Tōtam vītā huic reī pūblīcae dedistī.*
- 下列夺格各表达什么观念? (7) *tempore*, *fidē*; (8) *cūrā*; (9) *cūrā*; (10) *urbe*; (11) *diē*, *spē*; (13) *diēbus*, *periculō*; (14) *metū*; (15) *frūctibus*; (16) *virtūte*; (17) *aetāte*, *tyrannīs*; (18) *rē pūblicā*, *metū*; (19) *manū*, *diē*; (21) *fidē*.

答案

- ē*.

2. **-em, -ē; -ēs, -ēbus, -ēs, -ēbus** (以及与格**-eī** 和属格**-ērum**)。

3. (1) 阴性;(2) **Diēs**。

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 4. (1) of hope; to/for hope | (11) to/for or by/w./fr. days |
| (2) of hopes | (12) thing (acc.) |
| (3) hope (acc.) | (13) of things |
| (4) to/for or by/w./fr. hopes | (14) by/w./fr. a thing |
| (5) hope (nom.); hopes (nom., acc.) | (15) to/for or by/w./fr. things |
| (6) by/w./fr. faith | (16) of or to/for a thing |
| (7) faith (acc.) | (17) of fires |
| (8) of or to/for faith | (18) fire (acc.) |
| (9) of days | (19) to/for or by/w./fr. fires |
| (10) day (nom.); days (nom., acc.) | (20) fires (nom., acc.) |

5. (1) 在何处; he remained in the city.

(2) 期间; he will come in one hour.

(3) 何时; he came at that time.

(4) 伴随; he came with them.

(5) 从何处; he came from the city.

(6) 分离; they lack fire.

(7) 手段; that was done by fire.

(8) 施事; it was done by them.

(9) 方式; it was done faithfully (with faith).

6. (1) **ab** + 夺格。

(2) **cum** + 夺格。

(3) 跟表示“释放”、“缺乏”、“剥夺”等含义的动词时单用夺格;跟其他动词时通常用 **ab, dē, ex**。

(4) **in** + 夺格。

(5) 单用夺格。

(6) **cum** + 夺格;如果名词被形容词修饰, **cum** 可以省去。

(7) **ab, dē, ex** + 夺格。

(8) 单用夺格。

7. At that time he faithfully preserved the liberty of those ten citizens. 8. He managed the state with great care (= very carefully). 9. The state was managed by him with great care. 10. Many good things were seen in the middle of the city. 11. On that day they prepared many things hopefully. 12. We snatched the fire from the hands of the boy. 13. In five days Cicero will rescue the republic from danger. 14. You (sg.) freed the two republics from fear. 15. The earth nourishes human beings with good fruits. 16. He nourished their uncertain hopes by his own courage. 17. In this age our hopes are being destroyed by these three tyrants. 18. Seven of our friends came from that state with great fear. 19. The whole clan came into the territory of this state with a large band of friends in one day. 20. Not all free men dare to join themselves with this republic. 21. If those men lack faith,

there is no hope of friendship and peace. 22. Good faith and the love of this republic can save us. 23. You (sg.) have given (your) whole life to this state.

24. (7) 何时; 方式; (8) 方式; (9) 方式; (10) 在何处; (11) 何时; 方式; (13) 期间; 分离; (14) 分离; (15) 手段; (16) 手段; (17) 何时; 施事; (18) 从何处; 方式; (19) 伴随; 期间; (21) 分离。

第二十三课练习

1. 说出下列词尾分别指示什么拉丁语分词, 并给出相应的英语后缀或短语:

(1) -tus; (2) -ns; (3) -sūrus; (4) -ntem; (5) -tūrus; (6) -ndus; (7) -sus; (8) -ntēs; (9) -sī; (10) -tīs。这些形式应当大声朗读出来, 直到对它们形成语言反射。这种反射可以通过下面的练习来检验。

2. 根据时态和语态翻译下列分词。

(1) futūrus	(7) versus	(13) faciendus	(19) datī
(2) pressūrus	(8) versūrus	(14) rapientēs	(20) datūrōs
(3) premēns	(9) dictus	(15) raptūrōs	(21) dantem
(4) pressus	(10) dīcēns	(16) cupīta	(22) mōtus
(5) premendus	(11) dictūrus	(17) cupientēs	(23) moventem
(6) vertēns	(12) factus	(18) dandum	(24) mōtūrī

3. 将下列分词或分词短语翻译成阳性单数主格形式的拉丁语。

(1) (having been) seen	(10) (having been) conquered
(2) seeing	(11) about to conquer
(3) about to see	(12) conquering
(4) to be written	(13) about to join
(5) about to write	(14) joining
(6) (having been) written	(15) (having been) dragged
(7) sending	(16) dragging
(8) (having been) sent	(17) about to throw
(9) about to send	(18) (having been) thrown

4. Captus nihil dīxit. 5. Servitūte liberātus, vītam iūcundam aget. 6. Dōna dantibus grātiās ēgit. 7. Aliquem dōna petentem nōn amō. 8. Homīnī multam pecūniā cupientī pauca dōna sōla dabat. 9. Ad lūdum tuum fīlium meum docendum mīsī. 10. Iste, aliam gentem victūrus, magistrōs librōsque dēlēre cupiēbat. 11. Hīs īnsidiīs territī, vītam miseram vīvēmus. 12. Diū oppressī, sē contrā opprimentem tyrannum vertere coepērunt. 13. Illī quattuor virī miserī, ā tyrannō vīsī, trāns fīnem cucurrērunt. 14. Ōrātor, tyrannum timēns, iūcunda semper dīcēbat. 15. Aliquem nōs timentem timēmus. 16. Hī vincentēs omnia iūra cīvium victōrum tollent. 17. Ille miser fugitūrus cōnsilium trium amīcōrum petēbat. 18. Senex, ab duōbus ex amīcīs monitus, ad nōs fūgit. 19. Ipse, ā sene secundō adiūtus, pecūniā carentibus multās rēs dabat. 20. Quis, hīs periculīs liberātus, deīs grātiās nōn dabit? 21. Iūctī vōbīscum, rem pūblicā cōservābimus. 22. Fidem ha-

bentibus nihil est incertum.

答案

1. (1) 完成时被动态分词 = having been . . . 或英语中的完成时分词

(2) 现在时主动态分词 = -ing

(3) 将来时主动态分词 = about to . . .

(4) 现在时主动态分词 = -ing

(5) 将来时主动态分词 = about to . . .

(6) 将来时被动态分词 = (about) to be . . .

(7) 完成时被动态分词 = having been . . .

(8) 现在时主动态分词 = -ing

(9) 完成时被动态分词 = having been (例如复数主格)

(10) 完成时被动态分词 = having been (复数与格或复数夺格)

2. (1) about to be

(2) about to press

(3) pressing

(4) (having been) pressed

(5) (about) to be pressed

(6) turning

(7) (having been) turned

(8) about to turn

(9) (having been) said

(10) saying

(11) about to say

(12) (having been) done

(13) (about) to be done

(14) seizing

(15) about to seize

(16) (having been) desired

(17) desiring

(18) (about) to be given

(19) (having been) given

(20) about to give

(21) giving

(22) (having been) moved

(23) moving

(24) about to move

3. (1) vīsus

(2) vidēns

(3) vīsūrus

(4) scrībendus

(5) scrīptūrus

(6) scrīptus

(7) mittēns

(8) missus

(9) missūrus

(10) victus

(11) victūrus

(12) vincēns

(13) iūctūrus

(14) iungēns

(15) tractus

(16) trahēns

(17) iactūrus

(18) iactus

4. When captured (*lit.*, having been captured) he said nothing. 5. Freed from slavery he will lead a pleasant life. 6. He thanked those giving the gifts. 7. I do not like someone seeking gifts. 8. To a man desiring much money he used to give only a few gifts. 9. I sent my son to your school to be taught. 10. That man, when about to conquer another people, kept wishing to destroy (their) teachers and books. 11. Terrified by this plot we shall live a wretched life. 12. Long oppressed, they began to turn themselves against the oppressing tyrant. 13. Those four unfortunate men, when seen by the tyrant, ran across the border. 14. The orator, because he feared the tyrant, always used to say pleasing things. 15. We fear someone fearing us. (= who fears us). 16. These men, if they conquer, will take away all the rights of the conquered citizens. 17. That wretched man on the point of fleeing kept seeking the advice of his three friends. 18. The old man, warned by two of his friends, fled to us. 19. Having himself been helped by the second old man, he kept giving many things to those lacking money. 20. Who, when freed from these dangers, will

not thank the gods? 21. Joined with you (pl.), we shall save the republic. 22. To those having faith nothing is uncertain.

第二十四课练习

1. (1) 在拉丁语中,独立夺格一般包含哪两个关键部分?
(2) 独立夺格的名词可以作动词的主语或宾语吗?
2. (1) 解释“独立”(absolute)一词。
(2) 根据第二十四课 p. 153—154 的例子,通常用什么标点符号来指示独立夺格? 这如何与“独立”一词相协调?
3. 独立夺格一般应当直译吗? 为什么?
4. 给出五个可以用来(根据语境的要求)翻译独立夺格的英语从句连词。
5. 罗马人会认为下列句子正确吗? 为什么?(可以借助第二十四课中的例子)
 - (1) Urbe captā, Caesar eam dēlēvit.
 - (2) Caesar, urbem captus, eam dēlēvit.
 - (3) Caesar urbem captam dēlēvit.
 - (4) Urbe captā, Caesar multās gentēs dēlēvit.
6. (1) **-ndus** 分词(动形词)+ **sum** 表达什么观念?
(2) 解释**-ndus, -nda, -ndum** 分词的一致关系。
(3) 哪个拉丁语动词 + 不定式表达类似的观念?
7. (1) 解释下面这句话中 **mihi** 的句法: *Cīvitās mihi cōnservanda est.*
(2) 用表示“by me”的拉丁语补充下面这句话,并说明其结构: *Cīvitās _____ cōnservāta est.*
8. *Hīs duōbus virīs imperium tenentibus, rēs pūblica valēbit.* 9. *Hāc fāmā narrātā, dux urbem sine morā relīquit.* 10. *Omnī cupiditāte pecūniae glōriaeque ex animō expulsā, ille dux sē vīcit.* 11. *Omnis cupiditās rērum malārū nōbīs vincenda est sī bonam vītā agere cupimus.* 12. *Cīvibus patriam amantibus, possumus habēre magnās spēs.* 13. *Omnēs cīvēs istum tyrannum timēbant, quī expellendus erat.* 14. *Tyrannō superātō, cīvēs libertātem et iūra recēpērunt.* 15. *At tyrannō expulsō, alius tyrannus imperium saepe accipit.* 16. *Quis imperium accipiēns adiuvāre cīvitātem sōlam, nōn sē, cupit?* 17. *Multīs gentibus victīs, tōtum mundum tenēre cupīvistī.* 18. *Servitūs omnis generis per tōtum mundum opprimenda est.* 19. *Sī rēs pūblica nostra valet, nihil tibi timendum est.* 20. *Patria nostra cuique adiuvanda est quī nostrum modum vītāe amat.* 21. *Omnia igitur iūra cīvibus magnā cūrā cōnservanda sunt.* 22. *Officiīs ā cīvibus relictīs, rēs pūblica in magnō periculō erit.* 23. *Hīs rēbus gravibus dictīs, orātor ā nōbīs laudātus est.* 24. *Vēritās et virtūs omnibus virīs semper quaerendae sunt.* 25. *Vēritāte et virtūte quaesītīs, rēs pūblica cōnservāta est.*
26. 从上面这些句子中,举出:

- A. 10 个独立夺格的例子。
- B. 7 个 **-ndus sum** 结构(被动迂说法)的例子。
- C. 5 个施事与格的例子。
- D. 2 个施事夺格的例子。

答案

1. (1) 名词(代词)+ 夺格形式的分词。
(2) 不可以。(参见 p. 153)
2. (1) 参见 p. 153.
(2) 通常用逗号将独立夺格与句子的其余部分隔开。这使它在一定程度上与句子的其余部分分离。
3. 不是。由于这种“独立”结构在英语中并不常用,所以直译会导致非常蹩脚的英语。
4. When, since, after, although, if. (参见 p. 154.)
5. (1) 不正确,因为独立夺格名词(**urbe**)被用作宾语(通过其代词 **eam**)。
(2) 不正确,因为 **captus** 意为 *having been captured*, 而不是 *having captured*。
(3) 正确,因为 **urbem captam** (*the captured city*)作 **dēlēvit** 的自然宾语。
(4) 正确,因为 **urbe captā** 是正常的独立夺格,其名词也没有在其他地方充当主语或宾语。
6. (1) 强制或必须。
(2) 它实际上是一个谓形容词,所以它自然与 **sum** 的主语一致。
(3) **Dēbeō** + 不定式,不过 **dēbeō** 更多地表达一种道德上的义务。
7. (1) **Mihi** 是施事与格。
(2) **Ā mē**; 施事夺格。
8. If (since, etc.) these two men hold the power, the republic will be strong. 9. When (since, etc.) this rumor had been reported, the leader left the city without delay. 10. When every desire for (*lit.*, of) money and glory had been banished from his soul, that leader conquered himself. 11. Every desire for evil things ought to be conquered by us (= we ought to conquer . . .) if we wish to lead a good life. 12. If (since, etc.) the citizens love (their) country, we can have great hopes. 13. All citizens kept fearing that tyrant (of yours), who had to be banished. 14. When the tyrant had been overcome, the citizens regained their liberty and rights. 15. But after a tyrant has been expelled, another tyrant often gets the power. 16. Who in taking the power desires to help the state alone, not himself? 17. When many peoples had been conquered, you (sg.) desired to possess the whole world. 18. Slavery of every sort must be checked throughout the whole world. 19. If our republic is strong, nothing is to be feared by you (sg.). 20. Our country ought to be helped by each one who likes our mode of life. 21. All rights, therefore, ought to be preserved by the citizens with great care. 22. When duties have been deserted by the citizens, the state will be in great danger. 23. When these important things had

been said, the orator was praised by us. 24. Truth and virtue ought always to be sought by all men. 25. When (since) truth and virtue had been sought, the republic was saved.

26. A. (8) virīs tenentibus; (9) fāmā narrātā; (10) cupiditāte expulsā; (12) cīvibus amantibus; (14) tyrannō superātō; (15) tyrannō expulsō; (17) gentibus victīs; (22) officiīs relictīs; (23) rēbus dictīs; (25) vērītate . . . quaesītīs.
 B. (11) vincenda est; (13) expellendus erat; (18) opprimenda est; (19) timendum est; (20) adiuvanda est; (21) cōservanda sunt; (24) quaerendae sunt.
 C. (11) nōbīs; (19) tibi; (20) cuique; (21) cīvibus; (24) virīs.
 D. (22) ā cīvibus; (23) ā nōbīs.

第二十五课练习

1. 复习所有四种变位法的现在时主动态和被动态不定式。
2. 如果说**-tūrus(-sūrus)**标志着将来时主动态分词,那么从逻辑上讲,**-tūrus(-sūrus) esse**是什么形式?
3. 如果说**-tus (-sus)**标志着完成时被动态分词,那么从逻辑上讲,**-tus (-sus) esse**是什么形式?
4. 以上不定式的分词部分(**-tūrus, -tūra, -tūrum**以及**-tus, -a, -um**)与什么相一致?
5. 拉丁语词尾**-isse**对应于什么英语短语?反复朗读它,直到你一看到**-isse**,就能够立即反应出不定式所固有的时态和语态。
6. 根据时态和语态翻译下列形式,以检验你的语言反射。

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| (1) mōvisse | (11) sustulisse | (21) quaesītum esse |
| (2) mōtus esse | (12) trāxisse | (22) expulsū esse |
| (3) mōtūrus esse | (13) tetigisse | (23) relictōs esse |
| (4) movērī | (14) amāvisse | (24) data esse |
| (5) dīcī | (15) vīcissee | (25) datūra esse |
| (6) scīrī | (16) vīxisse | (26) versūrum esse |
| (7) servārī | (17) trāctōs esse | (27) pressūrōs esse |
| (8) rapī | (18) vīsam esse | (28) raptūrōs esse |
| (9) mittī | (19) raptum esse | (29) iussūrum esse |
| (10) crēdidisse | (20) missōs esse | (30) tāctūrōs esse |

7. 解释直接陈述与间接陈述之间的区别。
8. 下列哪些动词可以引导间接陈述?其含义分别是什么?

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| (1) mittō | (7) videō | (13) audiō | (19) ostendō |
| (2) nūntiō | (8) nesciō | (14) sentiō | (20) spērō |
| (3) rīdeō | (9) parō | (15) agō | (21) iungō |
| (4) intellegō | (10) crēdō | (16) scrībō | (22) putō |
| (5) accipiō | (11) terreō | (17) audeō | (23) amō |
| (6) cupiō | (12) neglegō | (18) gerō | (24) negō |

9. 大多数引导间接陈述的动词都可以分成哪四类?
10. 在英语中,间接陈述往往以“that”从句出现,尽管有时用不定式加宾格主语来表示 (“I believe that he is brave”; “I believe him to be brave”)。在古典拉丁语中,间接陈述的形式是什么?
11. 罗马人将不定式主语置于哪个格?
12. 在拉丁语的间接陈述中,不定式的时态是否依赖于主要动词的时态?换句话说,现在时不定式是否只能与现在时主要动词连用,完成时不定式是否只能与完成时主要动词连用?……
13. 下列不定式时态分别表示与主要动词有怎样的时间关系:(1) 完成时;(2) 将来时;(3) 现在时。
14. Sciō tē hoc fēcisse (factūrum esse, facere). 15. Scīvī tē hoc fēcisse (factūrum esse, facere). 16. Crēdidimus eōs ventūrōs esse (vēnisse, venīre). 17. Crēdimus eōs ventūrōs esse (vēnisse, venīre). 18. Crās audiet (A) eōs venīre (i.e., crās); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., herī); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (e.g., paucīs diēbus). 19. Hodiē audit (A) eōs venīre (hodiē); (B) eōs vēnisse (herī); (C) eōs ventūrōs esse (mox, soon). 20. Herī audīvit (A) eōs venīre (herī); (B) eōs vēnisse (e.g., prīdiē, the day before yesterday); (C) eōs ventūrōs (paucīs diēbus). 21. Spērant vōs eum vīsūrōs esse. 22. Sciō hoc ā tē factum esse. 23. Nescīvī illa ab eō facta esse. 24. Negāvērunt urbem ab hostibus capī (captam esse). 25. Scītis illōs esse (futūrōs esse, fuisse) semper fidēlēs. 26. Scīvistis illōs esse (futūros esse, fuisse) semper fidēlēs. 27. Putābant tyrannum sibi expellendum esse. 28. Crēdimus pācem omnibus ducibus quaerendam esse. 29. Dīcit pācem ab decem ducibus quaerī (quaesītam esse). 30. Dīxit duōs ducēs pācem quaesītūrōs esse (quaerere, quaesīvisse). 31. Hostēs spērant sē omnēs rēs pūblicās victūros esse. 32. Bene sciō mē multa nescīre; nēmō enim potest omnia scīre.
33. 在上面各句中,只有哪一句不是间接陈述中的不定式?
34. 解释下列词的句法,分别说明其形式和具有该形式的理由:(14) tē; fēcisse; (16) eōs; (17) ventūrōs esse; (21) eum; (22) hoc; (23) eō; (24) hostibus; (25) fidēlēs; (27) sibi; (28) pācem; ducibus; (29) ducibus; (30) pācem; (31) rēs pūblicās。

答案

1. 参见 p. 115, 133—134, 160。
2. 将来时主动态不定式。
3. 完成时被动态不定式。
4. 它们与不定式的主语相一致。参见 p. 161,脚注 1。
5. 由于是完成时主动态不定式的词尾,所以-isse 实际上意为“to have. . .”。

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 6. (1) to have moved | (16) to have lived |
| (2) to have been moved | (17) to have been drawn |
| (3) to be about to move | (18) to have been seen |
| (4) to be moved | (19) to have been seized |
| (5) to be said | (20) to have been sent |
| (6) to be known | (21) to have been sought |
| (7) to be saved | (22) to have been expelled |
| (8) to be seized | (23) to have been left |
| (9) to be sent | (24) to have been given |
| (10) to have believed | (25) to be about to give |
| (11) to have destroyed | (26) to be about to turn |
| (12) to have drawn | (27) to be about to press |
| (13) to have touched | (28) to be about to seize |
| (14) to have loved | (29) to be about to order |
| (15) to have conquered | (30) to be about to touch |

7. 参见 p. 161—162。

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 8. (2) nūntiō, I announce | (14) sentiō, I feel, think |
| (4) intellegō, I understand | (16) scrībō, I write |
| (7) videō, I see | (19) ostendō, I show |
| (8) nesciō, I do not know | (20) spērō, I hope |
| (10) crēdō, I believe | (22) putō, I think |
| (13) audiō, I hear | (24) negō, I say that . . . not, deny |

9. 言语、认知、思想、感觉感受。参见 p. 164。

10. 不定式加宾格主语；不是“that”从句。

11. 宾格。

12. 不是。

13. (1) 完成时不定式 = 在主要动词之前发生；

(2) 将来时不定式 = 在主要动词之后发生；

(3) 现在时不定式 = 与主要动词同时发生。参见 p. 163。

14. I know that you did (will do, are doing) this (thing). 15. I knew that you had done (would do, were doing) this. 16. We believed that they would come (had come, were coming). 17. We believe that they will come (came, are coming). 18. Tomorrow he will hear (A) that they are coming (i.e., tomorrow); (B) that they came (e.g., yesterday) *or* that they have come; (C) that they will come (e.g., in a few days). 19. Today he hears (A) that they are coming (today); (B) that they came (yesterday); (C) that they will come (soon). 20. Yesterday he heard (A) that they were coming (yesterday); (B) that they had come (e.g., the day before yesterday); (C) that they would come (in a few days). 21. They hope that you (pl.) will see him. 22. I know that this was done by you. 23. I did not know that those things had been done by him. 24. They said that the city was not being captured by the enemy (had not been captured). 25. You (pl.) know that those men are (will be, were/have been) always faithful. 26. You (pl.) knew that those men were (would be, had been) always faithful. 27. They kept thinking that the tyrant ought to be driven out by them (by themselves). 28. We believe that peace ought to be sought by all leaders. 29. He says that peace is being sought (was sought) by the ten leaders. 30. He said that the two leaders would seek (were seeking, had sought) peace. 31. The enemy

hope that they will conquer all states. 32. I well know that I do not know many things, for no one can know all things.

33. **Scīre** (第 32 句)是一个依赖于 **potest** 的补充不定式。

34. 词	形式	理由
(14) tē	宾格	不定式(fēcisse)的主语
(14) fēcisse	完成时主动态不定式	间接陈述
(16) eōs	宾格	不定式(ventūrōs esse)的主语
(17) ventūrōs esse	将来时主动态不定式	间接陈述
(21) eum	宾格	不定式(vīsūrōs esse)的宾语
(22) hoc	宾格	不定式(factum esse)的主语
(23) eō	夺格	施事
(24) hostibus	夺格	施事
(25) fidēlēs	宾格	谓语形容词,与 illōs 一致
(27) sibi	与格	施事,跟被动迂说法
(28) pācem	宾格	不定式(quaerendam esse)的主语
(28) ducibus	与格	施事,跟被动迂说法
(29) ducibus	夺格	施事
(30) pācem	宾格	不定式(quaesitūrōs esse)的宾语
(31) rēs publicās	宾格	不定式的宾语

第二十六课练习

- (1) 在形容词的比较等级中,拉丁语**-ior**对应着什么英语词尾?
(2) 它们有什么表面上的相似性可以帮助记忆?
- (1) **-issimus** 对应着什么英语形容词词尾?
(2) 这里有没有什么记忆窍门?
- (1) **-ior** 和**-issimus** 通常加到形容词的哪个部分?
(2) 分别把这些词尾加到下列形容词上:**turpis**, **vēlōx**, gen. **vēlōcis**, *swift*; **prūdēns**, gen. **prūdētis**, *prudent*。
- 如果 **acerbus** 意为 *harsh*, 请给出:(1)比较级 **acerbior** 的三种可能含义;(2)最高级 **acerbissimus** 的两种可能含义。
- 给出 **quam** : (1)与比较级连用(如 *hic erat acerbior quam ille*)的含义;(2)与最高级连用(如 *hic erat quam acerbissimus*)的含义。
- Quam**, *than* 后面跟什么格?
- (1) 大多数第三变格法形容词都有辅音词干或 **i-**词干吗?
(2) 比较级有辅音词干或 **i-**词干吗?
8. **Nūntiāvērunt** *ducem quam fortissimum vēnisse.* 9. **Lūce** *clārissimā ab*

quattuor virīs vīsā, cōpiae fortissimae contrā hostēs missae sunt. 10. Istō homine turpissimō expulsō, senātus cīvibus fideliōribus dōna dedit. 11. Beātiōrēs cīvēs prō cīvibus miseriōribus haec dulcīa faciēbant. 12. Hic auctor est clārior quam ille. 13. Quīdam dīxērunt hunc auctōrem esse clāriōrem quam illum. 14. Librōs sapientiōrum auctōrum legite, sī vītā sapientissimam agere cupitis. 15. Sex auctōrēs quōrum librōs lēgī sunt acerbiōrēs. 16. Quibusdam librīs sapientissimīs lēctīs, illa vitia turpiōra vītāvimus. 17. Hic vir, quī turpia vitia sua superāvit, fortior est quam dux fortissimus. 18. Quis est vir fēlicissimus? Is quī vītā sapientissimam agit fēlicior est quam tyrannus potentissimus. 19. Remedium vitiōrum vestrōrum vidētur difficilīus. 20. Ille dux putāvit patriam esse sibi cāriōrem quam vītā. 21. Manus adulēscentium quam fidēlissimōrum senātuī quae-
renda est.

答案

1. (1) 拉丁语**-ior** 对应着英语中的**-er**。
(2) 它们的发音有一定的相似性,而且都以比较级的标志**-r** 结尾。
2. (1) 拉丁语**-issimus** 对应着英语中的**-est**。
(2) 它们所共有的**s** 暗示**s** 是最高级的标志。
3. (1) 它们通常加到形容词的词根上(参见 p. 169—170)。
(2) *turpior, turpissimus; vēlōcior, vēlōcissimus; prūdentior, prūdentissimus*
4. (1) **Acerbior** = harsher, rather harsh, too harsh.
(2) **Acerbissimus** = harshest, very harsh.
5. (1) **Quam** 与比较级连用 = *than* (this man was harsher than that one).
(2) **Quam** 与最高级连用 = *as . . . as possible, -st possible* (this man was as harsh as possible, the harshest possible).
6. **Quam** 是一个副词或比较连词,其后没有固定的格。在相互比较的两个词中,**quam** 之后的词应与前面的词处于同样的格(参见 p. 171)。
7. (1) 大多数都有**i**-词干。
(2) 比较级有辅音词干(顺便指出,*comparative* 和 *consonant* 的起始发音相同)。
8. They announced that the bravest possible leader had come. 9. After a very clear light had been seen by the four men, the bravest troops were sent against the enemy. 10. When that very base man had been banished, the senate gave gifts to the more faithful citizens. 11. The more fortunate citizens used to do these pleasant things on behalf of the more unfortunate citizens. 12. This author is more famous than that one. 13. Certain men said that this author was more famous than that one. 14. Read the books of wiser authors if you wish to lead the wisest (a very wise) life. 15. The six authors whose books I have read are too (rather) harsh. 16. After certain very wise books had been read, we avoided those baser faults. 17. This man, who has overcome his base faults, is braver than the very brave leader. 18. Who is the happiest man? He who leads the wisest life is happier than the most powerful tyrant. 19. The cure of your vices seems rather (too) difficult. 20. That leader thought that his country was dearer to him than life. 21. A band of the most faithful young men possible ought to be sought by the senate.

第二十七课练习

1. (1)原级阳性以-er 结尾的形容词的比较等级有何特别之处?
(2) 这一点适用于任何变格法的形容词,还是只适用于第一、第二变格法的形容词?
2. (1) **facilis** 的比较等级有何特别之处?
(2) 所有以-lis 结尾的形容词都遵循这一规则吗? 请具体说明。
3. 某些最常见形容词的比较等级是最不规则的。在学习这些不规则形式的过程中,英语可以提供很大帮助。为了说明这一点,请分别写出下列拉丁词的各种形式: *parvus, malus, bonus, (prō), magnus, superus, multus*; 再从下列词中选出能够暗示其比较级和最高级的英语单词: *pessimist, prime, minus, ameliorate, summit, maximum, supreme, optimist, plus, superior, pejorative, prior, major, minimum*。

4. 翻译下列短语:

- | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|
| (1) bellum minus | (13) fidēs minima | (25) plūrēs labōrēs |
| (2) bellum pessimum | (14) mare minus | (26) ducēs optimī |
| (3) bellum maius | (15) in marī minōre | (27) ducēs maiōrēs |
| (4) bella priōra | (16) maria maiōra | (28) ducēs meliōrēs |
| (5) liber simillimus | (17) frūctūs optimī | (29) dōna minima |
| (6) liber difficilior | (18) frūctus peior | (30) dōna plūra |
| (7) puer minimus | (19) hominēs ācerrimī | (31) dōna prīma |
| (8) puer melior | (20) hominēs ācriōrēs | (32) plūs laudis |
| (9) puella pulcherrima | (21) hominēs plūrēs | (33) plūrēs laudēs |
| (10) puella pulchrior | (22) labor difficillimus | (34) cīvēs pessimī |
| (11) puellae plūrimae | (23) labor suprēmus | (35) cīvēs meliōrēs |
| (12) fidēs maior | (24) plūs labōris | (36) cīvēs liberrimī |

5. Facillima saepe nōn sunt optima. 6. Difficilia saepe sunt maxima.
7. Meliōra studia sunt difficiliōra. 8. Pessimī auctōrēs librōs plūrimōs scrībunt. 9. Hī librī peiōrēs sunt quam librī auctōrum meliōrum. 10. Puer minor maius dōnum accēpit. 11. Illa rēs pūblica minima maximās spēs habuit. 12. Plūrēs virī crēdunt hoc bellum esse peius quam prīmum bellum. 13. Dux melior cum cōpiīs maiōribus veniet. 14. Acrēs ducēs ācriōrēs cōpiās ācerrimōrum hostium saepe laudābant. 15. Tyrannō pessimō expulsō, cīvēs ducem meliōrem et sapientiōrem quaesivērunt. 16. Meliōrī ducī maius imperium et plūs pecūniae dedērunt. 17. Cīvēs urbium minōrum nōn sunt meliōrēs quam eī urbium maximārum. 18. Nōs nōn meliōrēs sumus quam plūrimī virī priōrum aetātum. 19. Maiōrēs nostrī Apollinem (Apollō, acc.) deum sōlis appellābant.

答案

1. (1)和(2)——参见 p. 177, 第二组形容词。

2. (1)和(2)——参见 p. 177, 第一组形容词。

原级	比较级	最高级
parvus	minus (minor, minus)	minimum (minimus)
malus	pejorative (peior)	pessimist (pessimus)
bonus	ameliorate (melior)	optimist (optimus)
(prō)	prior (prior)	prime (prīmus)
magnus	major (maior)	maximum (maximus)
superus	superior (superior)	supreme (suprēmus)
multus	plus (plūs)	summit (summus)

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 4. (1) a smaller war | (19) the fiercest (very fier |
| (2) the worst (very bad) war | (20) fiercer men |
| (3) a greater war | (21) more men |
| (4) former wars | (22) most (very) difficult labor |
| (5) a very similar book | (23) the last (supreme) labor |
| (6) a more difficult book | (24) more labor |
| (7) the smallest boy | (25) more labors |
| (8) the better boy | (26) the best leaders |
| (9) a very (most) beautiful girl | (27) greater leaders |
| (10) a more beautiful girl | (28) better leaders |
| (11) very many girls | (29) the smallest gifts |
| (12) greater faith | (30) more gifts |
| (13) very small faith | (31) the first gifts |
| (14) a smaller sea | (32) more praise |
| (15) in a smaller sea | (33) more praises |
| (16) larger seas | (34) the worst citizens |
| (17) the best fruits | (35) better citizens |
| (18) worse fruit | (36) very free citizens |

5. The easiest things often are not the best. 6. The difficult things are often the greatest. 7. The better pursuits are more (rather) difficult. 8. The worst authors write very many books. 9. These books are worse than the books of better authors. 10. The smaller boy received a larger gift. 11. That very small republic had the greatest hopes. 12. More men believe that this war is worse than the first war. 13. A better leader will come with greater forces. 14. Fierce leaders often used to praise the fiercer forces of the fiercest enemy. 15. When the very evil tyrant had been banished, the citizens sought a better and a wiser leader. 16. They gave the better leader greater power and more money. 17. Citizens of the smaller cities are not better than those of the largest cities. 18. We are not better than very many men of former ages. 19. Our ancestors used to call Apollo the god of the sun.

第二十八课练习

1. 虚拟式在拉丁语中通常指事实还是非事实?
2. 虚拟式在拉丁语中比在英语中更常见吗?
3. (1) 在第一变位法中, 什么元音是现在时虚拟式的标志?
(2) 在其他变位法中, 什么元音是现在时虚拟式的标志?
4. 当主句动词是虚拟式时, 这一虚拟式的确切含义是什么?
5. 由 **ut** 或 **nē** 引出的从句中的虚拟式表达什么观念?

7. 古典时期的罗马散文作家是否用不定式来表达目的,就像在英语中那样?
8. 将下列单词中的虚拟式进行归类,说出它的人称和数。直陈式则要根据其人称、数和时态翻译出来。

(1) mittet	(11) audiēmur	(21) liberēminī
(2) mittat	(12) audiāmur	(22) liberābiminī
(3) mittit	(13) audīmur	(23) dēlentur
(4) det	(14) ēripiās	(24) dēleantur
(5) dat	(15) ēripis	(25) vincēris
(6) crēdant	(16) ēripiēs	(26) vincēris
(7) crēdunt	(17) sciuntur	(27) vincāris
(8) crēdent	(18) scientur	(28) dīcimus
(9) movent	(19) sciantur	(29) dīcēmus
(10) moveant	(20) liberāminī	(30) dīcāmus

9. Ille dux veniat. Eum expectāmus. 10. Cīvēs turpēs ex rē publicā discēdant ut in pāce vīvāmus. 11. Sī illī duo amīcōs cupiunt, vēra beneficia faciant. 12. Beneficia aliīs praestat ut amētur. 13. Haec verba fēlicia vōbīs dīcō nē discēdātis. 14. Patriae causā haec difficillima faciāmus. 15. Illīs miserīs plūs pecūniae date nē armīs contrā hostēs careant. 16. Putat eōs id factūrōs esse ut īram meam vītent. 17. Arma parēmus nē libertās nostra tollātur. 18. Armīsne sōlīs libertās nostra ē perīculō ēripiētur? 19. Nē sapientēs librōs difficiliōrēs scrībant. 20. Satis sapientiae enim ā librīs difficiliōribus nōn accipiēmus. 21. Meliōra et maiōra faciat nē vītā miserrimam agat. 22. Haec illī auctōrī clārissimō nārrā ut in librō eius scrībantur. 23. Vēritātem semper quaerāmus, sine quā maximī animī nōn possunt esse fēlicēs.

24. 解释下列词的句法(把这些词分行列出,说明其形式,并给出这种形式的理由): (9) veniat; (10) discēdant, vīvāmus; (11) faciant; (12) praestat, amētur; (13) discēdātis; (14) faciāmus; (15) date, armīs, careant; (16) eōs, factūrōs esse, vītent; (17) parēmus, tollātur; (18) armīs, ēripiētur; (19) scrībant; (20) accipiēmus; (21) faciat, agat; (22) nārrā, scrībantur; (23) quaerāmus。

答案

1. 非事实;比如本课学的祈愿句和目的从句。参见 p. 186。
2. 参见 p. 184。
3. (1) ē; (2) ā(只是在第三、第四变位法中, **dūcam** 和 **audiam** 既是将来时直陈式,也是现在时虚拟式)。
4. 命令,称为“祈愿虚拟式”。
5. 目的。
6. 祈愿虚拟式。
7. 不。(参见 p. 186)

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 8. (1) he will send | (16) you (sg.) will seize |
| (2) subj., 3rd sg. | (17) they are known |
| (3) he is sending | (18) they will be known |
| (4) subj., 3rd sg. | (19) subj., 3rd pl. pass. |
| (5) he gives | (20) you (pl.) are freed |
| (6) subj., 3rd pl. | (21) subj., 2d. pl. pass. |
| (7) they believe | (22) you (pl.) will be freed |
| (8) they will believe | (23) they are destroyed |
| (9) they move | (24) subj., 3rd pl. pass. |
| (10) subj., 3rd pl. | (25) you (sg.) will be conquered |
| (11) we shall be heard | (26) you (sg.) are conquered |
| (12) subj., 1st pl. pass. | (27) subj., 2nd sg. |
| (13) we are heard | (28) we say |
| (14) subj., 2nd sg. | (29) we shall say |
| (15) you (sg.) are seizing | (30) subj., 1st pl. |

9. Let that leader come. We are awaiting him. 10. Let the base citizens depart from (our) republic so that we may live in peace. 11. If those two men desire friends, let them do real kindnesses. 12. He shows kindnesses to others in order to be loved (so that he may be loved). 13. I say these happy words to you so that you may not depart. 14. Let us do these very difficult things for the sake of our country. 15. Give more money to those unfortunate people so that they may not lack arms against the enemy. 16. He thinks that they will do it to avoid my anger. 17. Let us prepare arms so that our liberty may not be taken away. 18. Will our freedom be rescued from danger by arms alone? 19. Let philosophers not write too difficult books. 20. For (= the truth is) we shall not receive enough wisdom from too difficult books. 21. Let him do better and greater things so that he may not lead a most wretched life. 22. Tell these things to that very famous author so that they may be written in his book. 23. Let us always seek the truth, without which the greatest souls cannot be happy.

24. 词	形式	理由
(9) veniat	现在时虚拟式	命令(祈愿)
(10) discēdant	现在时虚拟式	命令
vīvāmus	现在时虚拟式	目的
(11) faciant	现在时虚拟式	命令
(12) praestat	现在时直陈式	陈述事实
amētur	现在时虚拟式	目的
(13) discēdātis	现在时虚拟式	目的
(14) faciāmus	现在时虚拟式	命令
(15) date	命令式	第二人称命令
armīs	夺格	分离
careant	现在时虚拟式	目的
(16) eōs	宾格	不定式的主语
factūrōs esse	将来时主动态不定式	间接陈述
vītent	现在时虚拟式	目的
(17) narēmus	现在时虚拟式	命令

tollātur	现在时虚拟式	目的
(18) armīs	夺格	手段
ēripiētur	将来时直陈式	事实
(19) scribant	现在时虚拟式	命令
(20) accipiēmus	将来时直陈式	事实
(21) faciat	现在时虚拟式	命令
agat	现在时虚拟式	目的
(22) nārrā	命令式	第二人称命令
scribantur	现在时虚拟式	目的
(23) quaerāmus	现在时虚拟式	命令

第二十九课练习

1. 未完成时虚拟式的主动态和被动态结构有何简单规则?
2. 这一规则是否适用于像 **sum** 和 **possum** 这样的不规则动词?
3. 翻译下列词中的直陈式,并对其中的虚拟式进行归类,说出它们的时态、人称和数。

(1) vocāret	(11) dīcat	(21) possīmus
(2) invenīrent	(12) dīcet	(22) essent
(3) vidērēmus	(13) dīcit	(23) accipiās
(4) dīcerem	(14) sint	(24) accipiēs
(5) ēriperēs	(15) posset	(25) acciperēs
(6) servet	(16) possit	(26) expellēminī
(7) servārētis	(17) discēderent	(27) expellerēminī
(8) videat	(18) discēdent	(28) expellāminī
(9) inveniēs	(19) discēdant	(29) movērentur
(10) inveniās	(20) dēmus	(30) moventur

4. 如何在拉丁语中表示结果?
5. 如何区别结果从句与目的从句?
6. 未完成时虚拟式用在何时何处?
7. Optimōs librōs tantā cum cūrā lēgērunt ut multum sapientiae discerent.
8. Bonōs librōs cum cūrā legēbāmus ut sapientiam discerēmus.
9. Optimī librī discipulīs legendī sunt ut vērītātem et mōrēs bonōs discant.
10. Sapientissimī auctōrēs plūrēs librōs scribant ut omnēs gentēs adiuvāre possint.
11. Animī plūrimōrum hominum tam stultī sunt ut discere nōn cupiant.
12. At multae mentēs ita ācrēs sunt ut bene discere possint.
13. Quīdam magistrī discipulōs tantā cum arte docēbant ut ipsī discipulī quidem discere cuperent.
14. Imperium istīus tyrannī tantum erat ut senātus eum expellere nōn posset.
15. Omnēs cīvēs sē patriae dent nē hostēs libertātem tollant.
16. Caesar tam ācer dux erat ut hostēs mīlitēs Rōmānōs nōn vincerent.
17. Dūcimusne aliās gentēs tantā cum sapientiā et virtūte ut libertās cōn-servētur?
18. Tanta beneficia faciēbātis ut omnēs vōs amārent.
19. Tam

dūrus erat ut nēmō eum amāret. 20. Mīlia cīvium ex eā terrā fugiēbant nē ā tyrannō opprimerentur. 21. Lībertātem sīc amāvērunt ut numquam ab hostibus vincerentur.

22. 解释下列词的句法:(7) *discerent*; (8) *discerēmus*; (9) *discant*; (10) *scrībant*, *possint*; (11) *cupiant*; (12) *possint*; (13) *cuperent*; (14) *posset*; (15) *dent*, *tollant*; (16) *vincerent*; (17) *cōnservētur*; (18) *amārent*; (19) *amāret*; (20) *opprimerentur*; (21) *vincerentur*。

答案

1. 现在时主动态不定式 + 人称词尾。参见 p. 192。

2. 适用。

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 3. (1) <i>impf. subj., 3 sg.</i> | (16) <i>pres. subj., 3 sg.</i> |
| (2) <i>impf. subj., 3 pl.</i> | (17) <i>impf. subj., 3 pl.</i> |
| (3) <i>impf. subj., 1 pl.</i> | (18) they will depart |
| (4) <i>impf. subj., 1 sg.</i> | (19) <i>pres. subj., 3 pl.</i> |
| (5) <i>impf. subj., 2 sg.</i> | (20) <i>pres. subj., 1 pl.</i> |
| (6) <i>pres. subj., 3 sg.</i> | (21) <i>pres. subj., 1 pl.</i> |
| (7) <i>impf. subj., 2 pl.</i> | (22) <i>impf. subj., 3 pl.</i> |
| (8) <i>pres. subj., 3 sg.</i> | (23) <i>pres. subj., 2 sg.</i> |
| (9) you (sg.) will find | (24) you will receive |
| (10) <i>pres. subj., 2 sg.</i> | (25) <i>impf. subj., 2 sg.</i> |
| (11) <i>pres. subj., 3 sg.</i> | (26) you (pl.) will be banished |
| (12) he will say | (27) <i>impf. subj., 2 pl.</i> |
| (13) he says | (28) <i>pres. subj., 2 pl.</i> |
| (14) <i>pres. subj., 3 pl.</i> | (29) <i>impf. subj., 3 pl.</i> |
| (15) <i>impf. subj., 3 sg.</i> | (30) they are moved |

4. *Ut* 或 *ut nōn* + 虚拟式。

5. 参见 p. 193。

6. 参见 p. 193。

7. They read the best books with such great care that they learned much wisdom.
 8. We used to read good books with care so that we might learn wisdom. 9. The best books ought to be read by students in order that they may learn the truth and good character. 10. Let the wisest authors write more books so that they may be able to help all peoples. 11. The souls of very many men are so foolish that they do not wish to learn. 12. But many minds are so keen that they can learn well. 13. Some teachers used to teach their pupils so skillfully (with such great skill) that even the pupils themselves wanted to learn. 14. The power of that tyrant was so great that the senate could not drive him out. 15. Let all citizens dedicate (give) themselves to the country so that the enemy may not take away their liberty. 16. Caesar was such a keen leader that the enemy did not conquer the Roman soldiers. 17. Are we leading other peoples with such great wisdom and courage that liberty is being preserved? 18. You (pl.) used to do such great kindnesses that all loved you. 19. He was so harsh that no one loved him. 20. Thousands of citizens kept fleeing from that land in order not to be oppressed by the tyrant. 21. They so loved liberty that they were never conquered by the enemy.

22. 词	形式	理由
(7) <i>discerent</i>	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(8) <i>discerēmus</i>	未完成时虚拟式	目的从句
(9) <i>discant</i>	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
(10) <i>scribant</i>	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
<i>possint</i>	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
(11) <i>cupiant</i>	现在时虚拟式	结果从句
(12) <i>possint</i>	现在时虚拟式	结果从句
(13) <i>cuperent</i>	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(14) <i>posset</i>	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(15) <i>dent</i>	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
<i>tollant</i>	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
(16) <i>vincerent</i>	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(17) <i>cōnservētur</i>	现在时虚拟式	结果从句
(18) <i>amārent</i>	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(19) <i>amāret</i>	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(20) <i>opprimerentur</i>	未完成时虚拟式	目的从句
(21) <i>vincerentur</i>	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句

第三十课练习

- 既然未完成时虚拟式主动态的形式是现在时主动态不定式加人称词尾,那么过去完成时虚拟式主动态的形式是什么?
- 既然过去完成时直陈式被动态的形式是完成时被动态分词 + **eram** (即 **sum** 的未完成时直陈式),那么过去完成时虚拟式被动态有没有什么类似的规则?
- 如果 **positus est** 是完成时直陈式被动态,那么 **positus sit** 最可能是什么?
- 在大多数情况下,完成时虚拟式主动态与什么形式的直陈式主动态最为相似?
- 说出下列虚拟式的时态、语态、人称和数:

(1) <i>ponerētur</i>	(5) <i>posuerint</i>	(9) <i>darent</i>	(13) <i>dedissēs</i>
(2) <i>posuissem</i>	(6) <i>ponerēmus</i>	(10) <i>datī essēmus</i>	(14) <i>darētur</i>
(3) <i>positī sint</i>	(7) <i>posuissētis</i>	(11) <i>det</i>	(15) <i>dederīmus</i>
(4) <i>ponāmur</i>	(8) <i>positus esset</i>	(12) <i>datus sīs</i>	(16) <i>dedissent</i>
- 直陈式的基本时态有哪些?
 - 虚拟式的基本时态有哪些?
 - 直陈式的历史时态有哪些?
 - 虚拟式的历史时态有哪些?
- (1) 相对于基本时态的主要动词,现在时虚拟式指示什么时间?

- (2) 相对于历史时态的主要动词,未完成时虚拟式指示什么时间?
 (3) 相对于基本时态的主要动词,完成时虚拟式指示什么时间?
 (4) 相对于派生时态的主要动词,过去完成时虚拟式指示什么时间?

8. Ubi dux est (fuit)? 9. Rogant ubi dux sit (fuerit). 10. Rogābant ubi dux esset (fuisset). 11. Rogābunt ubi dux sit (fuerit). 12. Nesciō ubi pecūnia posita sit. 13. Scīsne ubi pecūnia ponātur? 14. Scīvērunt ubi pecūnia ponerētur. 15. Nescīvit ubi pecūnia posita esset. 16. Vōbīs dīcēmus cūr mīles hoc fēcerit (faciat). 17. Mihi dīxērunt cūr mīles hoc fēcisset (faceret). 18. Dīc mihi quis vēnerit (veniat). 19. Ōrātor rogāvit cūr cēterī cīvēs haec cōnsilia nōn cognōvissent. 20. Ducī nūntiāvimus cēterōs mīlitēs in illam terram fugere (fūgisse). 21. Ducī nūntiāvimus in quam terram cēterī mīlitēs fugerent (fūgissent). 22. Audīvimus cīvēs tam fidēlēs esse ut rem pūblicam cōservārent. 23. Audīvimus quid cīvēs fēcissent ut rem pūblicam cōservārent. 24. Quaerēbant quōrum in rē pūblicā pāx invenīrī posset. 25. Cognōvimus pācem in patriā eōrum nōn inventam esse. 26. Illī stultī semper rogant quid sit melius quam imperium aut pecūnia. 27. Nōs quidem putāmus pecūniam ipsam nōn esse malam; sed crēdimus vēritātem et lībertātem et amīcitiā esse meliōrēs et maiōrēs. 28. Haec cupimus ut vītā pulchriōrem agāmus; nam pecūnia sōla et imperium possunt hominēs dūrōs facere, ut fēlicēs nōn sint. 29. Dēnique omnia expōnat ut iam comprehendātis quanta scelera contrā rem pūblicam commissa sint.

30. 解释下列词的句法:(15) posita esset; (16) fēcerit; (17) fēcisset; (18) vēnerit; (20) fugere; (21) fugerent; (22) esse, cōservārent; (23) fēcissent, cōservārent; (24) posset; (25) inventam esse; (26) sit; (27) esse; (28) agāmus, sint; (29) expōnat, comprehendātis, commissa sint。

答案

- 完成时主动态不定式(-isse) + 人称词尾;例如 **pōnere-m** 和 **posuisse-m**。
- 完成时被动态分词 + **essem** (**sum** 的未完成时虚拟式);例如 **positus eram** 和 **positus essem**。
- Positus sit** 是完成时虚拟式被动态。
- 将来完成时直陈式。
- (1) impf. pass., 3 sg. (9) impf. act., 3 pl.
 (2) plupf. act., 1 sg. (10) plupf. pass., 1 pl.
 (3) perf. pass., 3 pl. (11) pres. act., 3 sg.
 (4) pres. pass., 1 pl. (12) perf. pass., 2 sg.
 (5) perf. act., 3 pl. (13) plupf. act., 2 sg.
 (6) impf. act., 1 pl. (14) impf. pass., 3 sg.
 (7) plupf. act., 2 pl. (15) perf. act., 1 pl.
 (8) plupf. pass., 3 sg. (16) plupf. act., 3 pl.
- (1) 现在时和将来时。参见 p. 201。

- (2) 现在时和完成时。
 (3) 过去时诸时态。
 (4) 未完成时和过去完成时。
7. (1) 同时或之后。参见 p. 201。
 (2) 同时或之后。
 (3) 之前。
 (4) 之前。

8. Where is (was) the leader? 9. They ask where the leader is (was). 10. They kept asking where the leader was (had been). 11. They will ask where the leader is (was). 12. I do not know where the money was put. 13. Do you (sg.) know where the money is being put? 14. They knew where the money was being put. 15. He did not know where the money had been put. 16. We shall tell you (pl.) why the soldier did (does) this. 17. They told me why the soldier had done (was doing) this. 18. Tell me who came (is coming). 19. The orator asked why the other citizens had not learned these plans. 20. We announced to the leader that the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled) into that land. 21. We announced to the leader into what land the other soldiers were fleeing (had fled). 22. We heard that the citizens were so faithful that they preserved the state. 23. We heard what the citizens had done to preserve the state. 24. They kept inquiring in whose state peace could be found. 25. We learned that peace had not been found in their country. 26. Those foolish men always ask what is better than power or money. 27. We certainly think that money itself is not bad; but we believe that truth and liberty and friendship are better and greater. 28. These things we desire so that we may live a finer life; for money alone and power can make men harsh, so that they are not happy. 29. Finally, let him explain all things so that you (pl.) may now understand what great crimes have been committed against the republic.

30. 词	形式	理由
(15) posita esset	过去完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(16) fēcerit	完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(17) fēcisset	过去完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(18) vēnerit	完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(20) fugere	现在时不定式	间接陈述
(21) fugerent	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(22) esse	现在时不定式	间接陈述
cōservārent	未完成时虚拟式	结果从句
(23) fēcissent	过去完成时虚拟式	间接问句
cōservārent	未完成时虚拟式	目的从句
(24) posset	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(25) inventam esse	完成时不定式	间接陈述
(26) sit	现在时虚拟式	间接问句

(27) esse	现在时不定式	间接陈述
(28) agāmus	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
sint	现在时虚拟式	结果从句
(29) expōnat	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
comprehendātis	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
commissa sint	现在时虚拟式	间接问句

第三十一课练习

- 说出 **cum** + 虚拟式的三种可能含义。
- 当一个 **cum** 从句后面跟着 **tamen** 时, **cum** 一般是什么含义?
- (1) **ferō** 属于什么变位法?
(2) **ferō** 的下列形式有哪些共同的不规则性: *ferre, fers, fert, fertis, ferris, fertur*?
- 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类, 并翻译其余的形式。

(1) ferat	(6) ferunt	(11) fertis	(16) tulisse
(2) fert	(7) ferent	(12) ferēris	(17) lātūrus esse
(3) ferret	(8) ferant	(13) ferris	(18) ferendus
(4) feret	(9) fertur	(14) fer	(19) lātus esse
(5) ferre	(10) ferte	(15) ferrī	(20) tulisset

5. Cum hoc dīxissēmus, illī vīgintī respondērunt sē pācem aequam oblātūrōs esse. 6. Cum sē in aliam terram contulisset, tamen amīcōs novōs invēnit. 7. Cum amīcitiā nōbīs offerant, eīs auxiliū offerēmus. 8. Cum perīculum magnum esset, omnēs cōpiās et arma brevī tempore contulērunt. 9. Quid tū fers? Quid ille fert? Dīc mihi cūr haec dōna offerantur. 10. Cum exposuisset quid peteret, negāvistī tantum auxiliū posse offerrī. 11. Cum dōna iūcunda tulissent, potuī tamen īnsidiās eōrum cognōscere. 12. Cum cōnsilia tua nunc comprehendāmus, īnsidiās tuās nōn ferēmus. 13. Tanta mala nōn ferenda sunt. Cōnfer tē in exsilium. 14. Dēnique hī centum cīvēs reī pūblicaē auxiliū ferant. 15. Putābam eōs vīnum nāvibus lātūrōs esse. 16. Cum mīlitēs nostrī hostēs vicissent, tamen eīs multa beneficia obtulērunt. 17. Cum cognōvisset quanta beneficia cēterī trēs offerrent, ipse aequa beneficia obtulit. 18. Cīvibus miserīs gentium parvārum satis auxiliū dēbēmus offerre. 19. Cum cōsul haec verba dīxisset, senātus respondit pecūniā ad hanc rem collātā esse.

20. 解释下列词的句法: (5) dīxissēmus, oblātūrōs esse; (6) contulisset; (7) offerant; (8) esset; (9) offerantur; (10) exposuisset, peteret; (11) tulissent; (12) comprehendāmus; (13) cōnfer; (14) ferant; (15) nāvibus, lātūrōs esse; (16) vicissent; (17) offerrent; (19) dīxisset。

答案

- When (状况从句, 应与 **cum** 时间从句区分开), since, although.

2. 虽然、尽管。

3. (1) 第三变位法。

(2) 它们都没有起连接作用的元音 **e/i** (该元音可见于 **dūcō** 的相应形式, 参见 p. 210)。

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 4. (1) pres. subj. act., 3 sg. | (11) you (pl.) bear |
| (2) he bears | (12) you (sg.) will be borne |
| (3) impf. subj. act., 3 sg. | (13) you (sg.) are borne |
| (4) he will bear | (14) bear (2 sg.) |
| (5) to bear | (15) to be borne |
| (6) they bear | (16) to have borne |
| (7) they will bear | (17) to be about to bear |
| (8) pres. subj. act., 3 pl. | (18) to be borne (gerundive) |
| (9) he is borne | (19) to have been borne |
| (10) bear (2 pl.) | (20) plupf. subj. act., 3 sg. |

5. When we had said this, those twenty men replied that they would offer a just peace. 6. Although he had gone into another country, nevertheless he found new friends. 7. Since they offer us friendship, we shall offer them aid. 8. Since the danger was great, they brought all their troops and arms together in a short time. 9. What do *you* (sg.) bring? What does he bring? Tell me why these gifts are offered. 10. When he had explained what he was seeking, you (sg.) said that such great aid could not be offered. 11. Although they had brought pleasing gifts, I was able nevertheless to recognize their treachery. 12. Since we now understand your plans, we will not endure your treachery. 13. Such great evils are not to be endured. Go (betake yourself) into exile. 14. Finally, let these hundred citizens bear aid to the republic. 15. I kept thinking that they would bring the wine in ships (*lit.*, by ships). 16. Although our soldiers had conquered the enemy, nevertheless they offered them many kindnesses. 17. When he had learned what great benefits the other three men were offering, he himself offered equal benefits. 18. We ought to offer sufficient aid to the unfortunate citizens of small nations. 19. When the consul had spoken these words, the senate replied that money had been brought together for this purpose.

20. 词	形式	理由
(5) dīxissēmus	过去完成时虚拟式	cum 状况从句
oblātūrōs esse	将来时不定式	间接陈述
(6) contulisset	过去完成时虚拟式	cum 转折从句
(7) offerant	现在时虚拟式	cum 原因从句
(8) esset	未完成时虚拟式	cum 原因从句
(9) offerantur	现在时虚拟式	间接问句
(10) exposuisset	过去完成时虚拟式	cum 状况从句
peteret	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(11) tulissent	过去完成时虚拟式	cum 转折从句
(12) comprehendāmus	现在时虚拟式	cum 原因从句
(13) cōnfer	未完成时第二人称单数	命令句

(14) ferant	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句(命令)
(15) nāvibus	复数夺格	手段
lātūrōs esse	将来时不定式	间接陈述
(16) vīcissent	过去完成时虚拟式	cum 转折从句
(17) offerrent	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(19) dīxisset	过去完成时虚拟式	cum 状况从句

第三十二课练习

- (1) 对于源自第一、第二变格法形容词的副词,其规则的原级词尾是什么?
(2) 对于源自第三变格法形容词的副词,其规则的原级词尾是什么?
- 哪一个英语副词词尾对应于拉丁语副词词尾 **-ē** 或 **-iter**?
- 所有拉丁语副词的原级词尾都是 **-ē** 或 **-iter** 吗?
- (1) 拉丁语副词的比较级词尾是什么?
(2) 它与形容词的什么形式相同?
(3) 英语副词的比较级通常如何构成?
- 拉丁语副词的最高级词根与相应的形容词最高级词根有何关系?
- 以两种方式翻译下列副词:(1) *liberius*; (2) *liberrimē*。
- 翻译下列副词形式。

(1) iūcundē	(6) breviter	(11) minimē	(16) minus
(2) iūcundius	(7) celerrimē	(12) magis	(17) facile
(3) iūcundissimē	(8) peius	(13) diūtius	(18) maximē
(4) melius	(9) fidēlius	(14) male	(19) gravissimē
(5) fidēlissimē	(10) facilius	(15) miserius	(20) celerius

- (1) **volō** 的直陈式词干是什么?
(2) **volō** 的现在时虚拟式和未完成时虚拟式的词干是什么?
- volō** 的现在时虚拟式类似于哪个不规则动词的现在时虚拟式?
- 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类,并翻译其他形式。

(1) volēs	(7) māllemus	(13) voluisse	(19) voluistī
(2) velīs	(8) voluissēs	(14) volunt	(20) vellet
(3) vīs	(9) volam	(15) voluimus	(21) nōlunt
(4) vellēs	(10) volēbant	(16) velle	(22) nōllet
(5) māvult	(11) volet	(17) voluerat	(23) mālīt
(6) velīmus	(12) vultis	(18) voluērunt	(24) nōlet

- Quīdam mālunt crēdere omnēs esse parēs. 12. Quīdam negant mentēs quidem omnium hominum esse parēs. 13. Hī dīvitiās celerrimē invēnērunt; illī diūtissimē erunt pauperēs. 14. Hic plūrimōs honōrēs quam facillimē accipere vult. 15. Nōlīte hanc scientiam āmittere. 16. Cīvēs ipsī rem publicam melius gessērunt quam ille dux. 17. Ibi terra est aequior et plūs patet.

18. Nōs ā scientiā prohibēre nōlent virī liberī; sed tyrannī maximē sīc volunt.
 19. Tyrannus cīvēs suōs ita male opprimēbat ut semper liberī esse vellent.
 20. Plūrima dōna liberrimē offeret ut exercitus istum tyrannum adiuvāre velit.
 21. Cum auxilium offerre minimē vellent, nōluimus eīs beneficia multa praestāre.
 22. Cum hostēs contrā nōs celeriter veniant, volumus nostrōs ad arma quam celerrimē vocāre.
 23. Cum libertātem lēgēsque cōservāre vērē vellent, tamen scelera tyrannī diūtissimē ferenda erant.
 24. Māvult haec sapientius facere nē hanc quidem occasiōnem āmittat.
 25. Nōlī discēdere, mī amīce.

答案

1. (1) **-ē**; (2) **-iter**(例如 liberē, celeriter)。
2. 词尾 **-ly**(例如 freely, quickly)。
3. 不是。例如参见 p. 218。
4. (1) **-ius**(例如 liberius, celerius)。
 (2) 它与形容词中性的单数主格和单数宾格相同。
 (3) 通常由 *more(too, rather)*加副词原级构成(例如 more/too freely, more quickly)。
5. 两者的词根是相同的。
6. (1) **liberius** = more/too/rather freely.
 (2) **liberrimē** = most/very freely.
7. (1) pleasantly (11) very little, least of all
 (2) more/too pleasantly (12) more, rather
 (3) most/very pleasantly (13) longer
 (4) better (14) badly
 (5) very faithfully (15) more wretchedly
 (6) briefly (16) less
 (7) very quickly (17) easily
 (8) worse (18) especially, most of all
 (9) more faithfully (19) very seriously
 (10) more easily (20) more swiftly
8. (1) **vol-**; (2) **vel-**。参见 p. 219。
9. 与 **sum** 类似。参见 p. 219。
10. (1) you (sg.) will wish (13) to have wished
 (2) pres. subj., 2 sg. (14) they wish
 (3) you (sg.) wish (15) we wished
 (4) impf. subj., 2 sg. (16) to wish
 (5) he prefers (17) he had wished
 (6) pres. subj., 1 pl. (18) they wished
 (7) impf. subj., 1 pl. (19) you (sg.) wished
 (8) plupf. subj., 2 sg. (20) impf. subj., 3 sg.
 (9) I shall wish (21) they do not wish
 (10) they kept wishing (22) impf. subj., 3 sg.
 (11) he will wish (23) pres. subj., 3 sg.
 (12) you (pl.) wish (24) he will not wish

11. Certain men prefer to believe that all men are equal. 12. Certain men say that all men's minds at least are not equal. 13. These men obtained wealth very quickly; those will be poor for a very long time. 14. This man wishes to get very many honors as easily as possible. 15. Do not lose this knowledge. 16. The citizens themselves managed the state better than the leader. 17. There the land is more level and is more open. 18. Free men will not wish to keep us from knowledge; but tyrants especially so wish. 19. The tyrant used to oppress his citizens so badly that they always wished to be free. 20. He will offer very many gifts very freely so that the army may be willing to help that tyrant. 21. Since they had very little wish to offer aid, we were unwilling to show them many favors. 22. Since the enemy are coming swiftly against us, we want to call our men to arms as quickly as possible. 23. Although they truly wanted to preserve their liberty and laws, nevertheless the crimes of the tyrant had to be endured very long. 24. He prefers to do these things more wisely so that he may not lose this occasion at least. 25. Do not leave, my friend.

第三十三课练习

1. (1) 在“可能性小的将来”条件从句中,两个子句中的动词是什么形式?
(2) 为什么与将来的简单事实(或“可能性大的将来”)相比,这一结构称为“可能性小的将来”?
2. (1) A,说出两个子句中有未完成时虚拟式的条件从句类型;B,说出两个子句中有过去完成时虚拟式的条件从句类型。
(2) 在这些条件从句中,句子的哪个部分在拉丁语和英语中本质上相同?
3. 拉丁语条件从句的否定词一般是什么?
4. 什么类型的拉丁语条件从句可以用“should...would”来翻译,从而可以称为“should-would 条件从句”?
5. 位于 *sī*, *nisi*, *nē* 和 *num* 之后的 *quis*, *quid* 的含义是什么?
6. *Sī ratiō dūcit, fēlix es.* 7. *Sī ratiō dūcet, fēlix eris.* 8. *Sī ratiō dūcat, fēlix sīs.* 9. *Sī ratiō dūceret, fēlix essēs.* 10. *Sī ratiō dūxisset, fēlix fuissēs.* 11. *Sī pecūniam amās, sapientiā carēs.* 12. *Sī pecūniam amābis, sapientiā carēbis.* 13. *Sī pecūniam amēs, sapientiā carēas.* 14. *Sī pecūniam amārēs, sapientiā carērēs.* 15. *Sī pecūniam amāvissēs, sapientiā caruissēs.* 16. *Sī vēritātem quaerimus, scientiam invenīmus.* 17. *Sī vēritātem quaerēmus, scientiam invenīēmus.* 18. *Sī vēritātem quaerāmus, scientiam invenīāmus.* 19. *Sī vēritātem quaererēmus, scientiam invenīrēmus.* 20. *Sī vēritātem quaesivissēmus, scientiam invēnissēmus.* 21. *Nisi īram vītābitis, duōs amīcōs āmittētis.* 22. *Nisi īram vītāvissētis, quīnque amīcōs āmīssētis.* 23. *Nisi īram vītētis, multōs amīcōs āmittātis.* 24. *Nisi īram vītārētis, multōs amīcōs āmitterētis.* 25. *Nisi īram vītātis, multōs amīcōs āmittitis.* 26. *Nisi īram vītāvistis, multōs amīcōs āmīssitis.* 27. *Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habet, eum laudāmus.* 28. *Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habuisset, eum laudāvissēmus.* 29. *Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habeat, eum laudēmus.* 30. *Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habuit, eum laudāvimus (laudābāmus).* 31. *Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habēret, eum laudārē-*

mus. 32. *Sī quis bonōs mōrēs habēbit, eum laudābimus.* 33. *Sī istī vincent, discēdēmus.* 34. *Sī istī vincant, discēdāmus.* 35. *Sī istī vīcissent, discessis-sēmus.* 36. *Sī librōs bene lēgissēs, melius scrīpsissēs.* 37. *Sī librōs bene legēs, melius scrībēs.* 38. *Sī librōs bene legās, melius scrībās.*

39. 按照顺序说出第 6—10 句和第 21—26 句中的条件从句类型。

答案

1. (1) 现在时虚拟式; (2) 参见 p. 227。

2. (1) A, 与现在事实相反; B, 与过去事实相反。

(2) 条件从句。参见 p. 227。

3. **Nisi.**

4. “可能性小的将来”条件从句。

5. 参见 p. 228 的词汇表。

6. If reason leads, you (sg.) are happy. 7. If reason leads, you will be happy. 8. If reason should lead, you would be happy. 9. If reason were leading, you would be happy. 10. If reason had led, you would have been happy. 11. If you (sg.) love money, you lack wisdom. 12. If you love money, you will lack wisdom. 13. If you should love money, you would lack wisdom. 14. If you were in love with money, you would lack wisdom. 15. If you had loved money, you would have lacked wisdom. 16. If we seek the truth, we find knowledge. 17. If we seek the truth, we shall find knowledge. 18. If we should seek the truth, we would find knowledge. 19. If we were seeking the truth, we would find knowledge. 20. If we had sought the truth, we would have found knowledge. 21. If you do not avoid anger, you will lose your two friends. 22. If you had not avoided anger, you would have lost your five friends. 23. If you should not avoid anger (if you should fail to avoid anger), you would lose many friends. 24. If you were not avoiding anger, you would be losing many friends. 25. If you do not avoid anger, you are losing many friends. 26. If you did not avoid anger, you lost many friends. 27. If anyone has a good character, we praise him. 28. If anyone had had a good character, we would have praised him. 29. If anyone should have a good character, we would praise him. 30. If anyone had a good character, we praised (used to praise) him. 31. If anyone were in possession of a good character, we would praise him. 32. If anyone has a good character, we shall praise him. 33. If those men win, we shall depart. 34. If those men should win, we would depart. 35. If those men had won, we would have departed. 36. If you had read books well, you would have written better. 37. If you read books well, you will write better. 38. If you should read books well, you would write better.

39. (6) simple present

(7) simple fut.

(8) fut. less vivid

(9) pres. contr. to fact

(10) past contr. to fact

(21) simple fut.

(22) past contr. to fact

(23) fut. less vivid

(24) pres. contr. to fact

(25) simple present

(26) simple past

第三十四课练习

- 异态动词主要有哪些特殊之处?
- 按照直陈式的六种时态和虚拟式的四种时态写出下列动词的动词变位表:
 - cōnor** 的第一人称复数;
 - loquor** 的第三人称单数。
- (1) 写出 **patior** 的所有分词,并进行归类和翻译。
(2) 写出 **patior** 的所有不定式,并进行归类和翻译。
- 用 **illud cōnsilium** 的恰当形式填写下列空白,完成英语句子所表达的观念。
 - He will not follow that plan: nōn sequētur _____.
 - He will not use that plan: nōn utētur _____.
 - He will not permit that plan: nōn patiētur _____.
- 解释上题第(2)句中 **illud cōnsilium** 的固有形式。
- 异态动词中出现的主动态形式有哪些?
- 给出(1) **cōnor** 和 (2) **loquor** 的命令式形式,并翻译。
- 翻译下列分词:(1) locūtus; (2) mortuus; (3) cōnātus; (4) passus; (5) secūtus; (6) ēgressus; (7) profectus。
- 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类,并翻译其他形式。

(1) ūtētur	(6) ūsus esset	(11) patī	(16) patitur
(2) ūtātur	(7) ūsūrum esse	(12) passī sunt	(17) patiēmur
(3) ūtitur	(8) patiēris	(13) passum esse	(18) arbitrētur
(4) ūterētur	(9) pateris	(14) patientēs	(19) arbitrārētur
(5) ūsus	(10) patere	(15) patiātur	(20) patiendum est
- Arbitrātur haec mala patiēda esse. 11. Cōnābimur haec mala patī.
- Nisi morī vīs, patere haec mala. 13. Maxima mala passus, homō miser mortuus est. 14. Tyrannus arbitrātus est eōs duōs haec mala diū passūrōs esse. 15. Cum tria bella passī essent, istum tyrannum in exsilium expellere ausī sunt. 16. Sī hunc ducem novum sequēminī, libertāte et ōtiō ūtēminī. 17. Hīs verbīs dictīs, eum sequī ausī sumus. 18. Haec verba locūtī, profectī sumus nē in eō locō miserō morerēmur. 19. Cum vōs cōnsiliō malō ūsōs esse arbitrārētur, tamen vōbīscum liberē locūtus est. 20. Sī quis vīnō eius generis ūtī audeat, celeriter moriātur. 21. Eōdem diē fīlius eius nātus est et mortuus est. 22. Omnibus opibus nostrīs ūtāmur ut patria nostra servētur. 23. Cum in aliam terram proficīscī cōnārētur, ā mīlitibus captus est. 24. Arbitrābar eum ex urbe cum decem amīcīs ēgressūrum esse. 25. Eā nocte profectus, Caesar ad quandam īnsulam clārissimam vēnit. 26. Sī meliōribus librīs ūsī essent, plūra didicissent. 27. Sī multōs amīcōs habēre vīs, nōlī esse superbus.
- 第 12, 16, 20, 26 句分别是哪种类型的条件从句?

29. 解释下列词的句法: (14) *passūrōs esse*; (17) *verbīs*; (18) *locūtī, morerēmur*;
(19) *cōnsiliō, arbitrārētur*; (21) *diē*; (22) *ūtāmur*; (25) *nocte*; (26) *librīs*。

答案

1. 参见 p. 232。

2.	直陈式	
现在时	<i>cōnāmur</i>	<i>loquitur</i>
未完成时	<i>cōnābāmur</i>	<i>loquēbātur</i>
将来时	<i>cōnābimur</i>	<i>loquētur</i>
完成时	<i>cōnātī sumus</i>	<i>locūtus est</i>
过去完成时	<i>cōnātī erāmus</i>	<i>locūtus erat</i>
将来完成时	<i>cōnātī erimus</i>	<i>locūtus erit</i>
	直陈式	
现在时	<i>cōnēmur</i>	<i>loquātur</i>
未完成时	<i>cōnārēmur</i>	<i>loquerētur</i>
完成时	<i>cōnātī sīmus</i>	<i>locūtus sit</i>
过去完成时	<i>cōnātī essēmus</i>	<i>locūtus esset</i>

3. (1) 分词

现在时	<i>patiēns, suffering</i>
完成时	<i>passus, having suffered</i>
将来时	<i>passūrus, about to suffer</i>
动形词	<i>patiendus, to be endured</i>

- (2) 不定式

现在时	<i>patī, to suffer</i>
完成时	<i>passus esse, to have suffered</i>
将来时	<i>passūrus esse, to be about to suffer</i>

4. (1) *illud cōnsilium*; (2) *illō cōnsiliō*; (3) *illud cōnsilium*。

5. 特殊异态动词加(手段)夺格。参见 p. 235—236。

6. 现在时分词; 将来时分词; 将来时不定式; 比如前面问题 3 中的 ***patiēns, passūrus, passūrus esse***。

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 7. (1) <i>cōnor</i> | (2) <i>loquor</i> |
| 2 sg. <i>cōnāre, try</i> | <i>loquere, speak</i> |
| 2 pl. <i>cōnāminī, try</i> | <i>loquimīnī, speak</i> |
| 8. (1) <i>locūtus, having said</i> | (5) <i>secūtus, having followed</i> |
| (2) <i>mortuus, having died</i> | (6) <i>ēgresssus, having gone out</i> |
| (3) <i>cōnātus, having tried</i> | (7) <i>profectus, having set out</i> |
| (4) <i>passus, having suffered</i> | |
| 9. (1) he will use | (11) to endure |
| (2) pres. subj., 3 sg. | (12) they endured |
| (3) he uses | (13) to have endured |
| (4) impf. subj., 3 sg. | (14) enduring |
| (5) having used | (15) pres. subj., 3 sg. |
| (6) plupf. subj., 3 sg. | (16) he endures |
| (7) to be about to use | (17) we shall endure |

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| (8) you (sg.) will endure | (18) pres. subj., 3 sg. |
| (9) you (sg.) are enduring | (19) impf. subj., 3 sg. |
| (10) endure (imper.) | (20) it must be endured |

10. He thinks that these evils ought to be endured. 11. We shall try to endure these evils. 12. If you do not wish to die, endure these evils. 13. Having endured the greatest evils, the poor man died. 14. The tyrant thought that those two men would endure these evils a long time. 15. When they had endured three wars, they dared to force that tyrant into exile. 16. If you follow this new leader, you will enjoy liberty and leisure. 17. When these words had been said, we dared to follow him. 18. Having spoken these words, we set out so that we might not die in that miserable place. 19. Although he thought that you had used a bad plan, nevertheless he spoke with you freely. 20. If anyone should dare to use wine of that sort, he would quickly die. 21. His son was born and died on the same day. 22. Let us use all our resources so that our country may be saved. 23. When he tried to set out into another land, he was captured by soldiers. 24. I kept thinking that he would go out of the city with his ten friends. 25. Having set out that night, Caesar came to a certain very famous island. 26. If they had used better books, they would have learned more. 27. If you wish to have many friends, do not be arrogant.

28. (12) 现在的简单事实; (16) 将来的简单事实; (20) 可能性小的将来; (26) 与过去事实相反。

29. 词	形式	理由
(14) passūrōs esse	将来时不定式	间接陈述
(17) verbīs	夺格	独立夺格
(18) locūtī	完成时分词的复数	与动词主语一致
morerēmur	未完成时虚拟式	目的
(19) cōnsiliō	夺格	特殊异态动词
arbitrārētur	未完成时虚拟式	cum 转折从句
(21) diē	夺格	何时
(22) ūtāmur	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
(25) nocte	夺格	何时
(26) librīs	夺格	特殊异态动词

第三十五课练习

- 英语中有一些显然跟直接宾语的动词,在拉丁语中却跟与格。有没有什么好的规则能够涵盖这些动词?
- 还有一些动词,如果与特定的介词组成复合词,就可以跟与格。
 - 在这个结论背后潜藏着什么概念?
 - 所有复合动词都跟与格吗?
- 将下列动词分行列出,在它后面按照动词所要求的格写下 **eī**, **eum**, **eō** 中的一种形式,然后翻译整个短语。如果需要,可以用代词来表示“他”和“它”。

(1) cognōscunt	(7) patiuntur	(13) superant	(19) persuādent
(2) ignōscunt	(8) invenient	(14) crēdunt	(20) ūtuntur
(3) serviunt	(9) nocent	(15) carent	(21) pellunt
(4) servant	(10) iuvant	(16) student	(22) parcut
(5) parāvī	(11) placent	(17) hortantur	(23) imperant
(6) pārūī	(12) iaciunt	(18) sequuntur	(24) iubent

4. Ducem servāvit. 5. Ducī servīvit. 6. Servī aliīs hominibus serviunt. 7. Virī fortēs aliōs servant. 8. Ille servus filiō meō servīvit et eum servāvit. 9. Sī quis sibi sōlī serviet, rem publicam numquam servābit. 10. Sī quis hunc labōrem suscēpisset, mīlle virōs servāvisset. 11. Deī mihi ignōscēt; vōs, ō cīvēs, tōtī exercituī ignōscite. 12. Sī Deum nōbīs ignōscere volumus, nōs dēbēmus aliīs hominibus ignōscere. 13. Mihi nunc nōn crēdunt, neque umquam duōbus filiīs meīs crēdere volent. 14. Illī amīcī sunt mihi cārisimī. 15. Cum bonā fidē carērēs, tibi crēdere nōn poterant. 16. Huic ducī pārēāmus ut nōbīs parcat et urbem servet. 17. Nisi Caesar cīvibus placēbit, vītae eius nōn parcent. 18. Litterīs Latīnīs studeō, quae mihi placent etiam sī amīcīs meīs persuadēre nōn possum. 19. Vēritātī et sapientiae semper studeāmus et pārēāmus. 20. Optimīs rēbus semper studēte sī vērē esse fēlicēs vultis. 21. Hīs rēbus studentēs, et librīs et vītā ūtāmur. 22. Vir bonus nēminī nocēre vult: omnibus parcat, omnēs iuvat. 23. Praemia mea sunt simillima tuīs.

24. 解释下列词的句法:(5) ducī; (8) eum; (9) sibi; (11) exercituī; (12) hominibus; (13) filiīs; (14) mihi; (15) fidē; (16) ducī, pārēāmus, servet; (17) cīvibus, vītae; (18) litterīs, amīcīs; (21) rēbus, librīs, ūtāmur; (22) omnibus; (23) tuīs.

答案

1. 参见 p. 244。

2. 参见 p. 245。

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 3. (1) eum; they recognize him. | (13) eum; they overcome him. |
| (2) eī; they forgive him. | (14) eī; they trust him. |
| (3) eī; they serve him. | (15) eō; they lack it. |
| (4) eum; they save him. | (16) eī; they study it. |
| (5) eum; I prepared him. | (17) eum; they urge him. |
| (6) eī; I obeyed him. | (18) eum; they follow him. |
| (7) eum; they endure him. | (19) eī; they persuade him. |
| (8) eum; they will find him. | (20) eō; they use it (him). |
| (9) eī; they injure him. | (21) eum; they strike him. |
| (10) eum; they help him. | (22) eī; they spare him. |
| (11) eī; they please him. | (23) eī; they command him. |
| (12) eum; they throw him. | (24) eum; they order him. |

4. He saved the leader. 5. He served the leader. 6. Slaves serve other men. 7. Brave men save others. 8. That slave served my son and saved him. 9. If anyone serves himself alone, he will never save the republic. 10. If someone had undertaken this work, he would have saved a thousand men. 11. The gods will pardon

me; you, O citizens, pardon the whole army. 12. If we want God to forgive us, we ought to forgive other men. 13. They do not trust me now, and they will never be willing to trust my two sons. 14. Those friends are very dear to me. 15. Since you lacked good faith, they could not trust you. 16. Let us obey this leader so that he may spare us and save the city. 17. If Caesar does not please the citizens, they will not spare his life. 18. I am studying Latin literature, which I like (pleases me) even if I cannot persuade my friends. 19. Let us always study and obey truth and wisdom. 20. Always study the best subjects if you wish to be truly happy. 21. As we study these subjects, let us enjoy both books and life. 22. A good man wishes to harm nobody; he spares all, he helps all. 23. My rewards are very similar to yours.

24. 词	形式	理由
(5) ducī	与格	特殊动词
(8) eum	宾格	servāvit 的宾语
(9) sibi	与格	特殊动词
(11) exercituī	与格	特殊动词
(12) hominibus	与格	特殊动词
(13) filiīs	与格	特殊动词
(14) mihi	与格	形容词加与格
(15) fidē	夺格	分离
(16) ducī	与格	特殊动词
pāreāmus	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
servet	现在时虚拟式	目的从句
(17) cīvibus	与格	特殊动词
vītae	与格	特殊动词
(18) litterīs	与格	特殊动词
amicīs	与格	特殊动词
(21) rēbus	与格	特殊动词
librīs	夺格	特殊异态动词
ūtāmur	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句
(22) omnibus	与格	特殊动词
(23) tuīs	与格	形容词加与格

第三十六课练习

1. 我们已经学过罗马人表达间接陈述(第二十五课)和间接问句(第三十课)的方法了。那么,在一个有着命令涵义的动词之后,罗马人如何来表达间接命令?
2. 举出一些能够引出间接命令的常见的拉丁语动词。
3. 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类,并翻译其他形式。

- | | | | |
|------------|-----------------|--------------|----------------|
| (1) fīet | (6) fīunt | (10) fierent | (14) fierem |
| (2) fit | (7) fīēbant | (11) fīmus | (15) fīant |
| (3) fīat | (8) fīēs | (12) fīent | (16) faciendus |
| (4) fieret | (9) factus esse | (13) fīs | (17) fīāmus |
| (5) fierī | | | |

4. Dīxit eōs litterīs Latīnīs studēre. 5. Dīxit cūr litterīs Latīnīs studērent.
 6. Dīxit ut litterīs Latīnīs studērent. 7. Ab eīs quaesīvimus cūr philosophiae
 Graecae studērent. 8. Quaerisne ut nātūrā omnium rērum cognōscāmus?
 9. Tē moneō ut hīs sapientibus parcās. 10. Mīlitēs monuit nē eīs pācem pe-
 tentibus nocērent. 11. Nōbīs imperābit nē hostibus crēdāmus. 12. Tibi im-
 perāvit ut ducī pārērēs. 13. Tē rogō cūr hoc fēcerīs. 14. Tē rogō ut hoc
 faciās. 15. Ā tē petō ut pāx fīat. 16. Ā mē petēbant nē bellum facerem.
 17. Eum ōrāvī nē rēgī turpī pārēret. 18. Vōs ōrāmus ut discipulī ācerrimī
 fīatis. 19. Nōlī esse similis istī tyrannō dūrō. 20. Caesar cūrāvit ut impe-
 rium suum maximum in cīvitāte fieret. 21. Ōrātor nōs hortātus est ut lī-
 berae patriae nostrae cum studiō servīrēmus. 22. Nōbīs persuāsīt ut aequīs
 lēgibus semper ūterēmur. 23. Cōnāmur ducī persuādēre nē artibus et lēgi-
 bus patriae noceat. 24. Tyrannus imperat ut pecūnia fīat; et pecūnia fit.
 At ille stultus nōn sentit hanc pecūniam sine bonā fidē futūram esse nihil.
 25. Plūrēs quidem discipulōs hortēmur ut linguae Latīnae studeant.

26. 解释下列词的句法:(4) studēre; (5) studērent; (6) studērent; (7) studērent;
 (8) cognōscāmus; (9) parcās; (10) eīs, pācem; (11) hostibus; (13) fēcerīs;
 (14) faciās; (16) facerem; (18) fīatis; (22) lēgibus; (23) lēgibus; (24) futūram esse;
 (25) hortēmur。

答案

- 间接命令句 = **ut (nē) + 虚拟式**。参见 p. 251。
- 例如 imperō, dīcō, cūrō, moneō, hortor, persuādeō, petō, quaerō, ōrō, rogō。参见 p. 252。
- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| (1) it will be made/done,
he will become | (9) to have been made/done, become |
| (2) it is made/done, he becomes | (10) impf. subj., 3 pl. |
| (3) pres. subj., 3 sg. | (11) we are made, become |
| (4) impf. subj., 3 sg. | (12) they will be made, become |
| (5) to be made/done, to become | (13) you (sg.) are made, become |
| (6) they are made/done, they become | (14) impf. subj., 1 sg. |
| (7) they were being made/
done, they were becoming | (15) pres. subj., 3 pl. |
| (8) you (sg.) will be made, become | (16) gerundive, to be made/done |
| | (17) pres. subj., 1 pl. |

4. He said that they were studying Latin literature. 5. He told why they were study-
 ing Latin literature. 6. He said that they should study Latin literature (he told them
 to study . . .). 7. We asked them why they were studying Greek philosophy. 8. Do
 you ask that we learn (= ask us to learn) the nature of all things? 9. I warn you to
 spare these wise men. 10. He warned the soldiers not to injure those seeking peace.

11. He will command us not to trust the enemy. 12. He commanded you to obey the leader. 13. I ask you why you did this. 14. I ask you to do this. 15. I beg of you that peace be made. 16. They kept begging me not to make war. 17. I begged him not to obey the disgraceful king. 18. We beg you to become very keen pupils. 19. Do not be like that harsh tyrant. 20. Caesar took care that his power be made greatest in the state. 21. The speaker urged us to serve our free country eagerly. 22. He persuaded us that we should always use just laws. 23. We are trying to persuade the leader not to harm the arts and laws of the country. 24. A tyrant commands that money be made; and money is made. But that fool does not perceive that this money will be nothing without good faith. 25. Let us urge more students certainly to study the Latin language.

26. 词	形式	理由
(4) studēre	现在时不定式	间接陈述
(5) studērent	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(6) studērent	未完成时虚拟式	间接命令句
(7) studērent	未完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(8) cognōscāmus	现在时虚拟式	间接命令句
(9) parcās	现在时虚拟式	间接命令句
(10) eīs	与格	特殊动词.
pācem	宾格	petentibus 的宾语
(11) hostibus	与格	特殊动词
(13) fēcērīs	完成时虚拟式	间接问句
(14) faciās	现在时虚拟式	间接命令句
(16) facerem	未完成时虚拟式	间接命令句
(18) fiātīs	现在时虚拟式	间接命令句
(22) lēgibus	夺格	特殊异态动词
(23) lēgibus	与格	特殊动词.
(24) futūram esse	将来时不定式	间接陈述
(25) hortēmur	现在时虚拟式	祈愿句

第三十七课练习

- (1) 在什么时态和语气中, **īre** 的词干在 **a, o, u** 之前要变成 **e**?
(2) 在其他情况下, **eō** 在直陈式、虚拟式、命令式和不定式中的词干是什么?
- 说出 **eō** 的现在时分词的单数主格和复数主格。
- 写出 **eō** 的主动态第二人称单数和第三人称复数的直陈式和虚拟式动词变位表。
- 对下列词中的虚拟式进行归类, 并翻译其他形式。

(1) iimus	(7) itūrus esse	(13) iī	(19) euntēs
(2) īmus	(8) euntem	(14) ībat	(20) ībō
(3) īrēmus	(9) iērunt	(15) ierant	(21) iit
(4) ībimus	(10) eunt	(16) ierim	(22) ībāmus
(5) īssēmus	(11) eant	(17) īret	(23) īsset
(6) eāmus	(12) ībunt	(18) īsse	(24) eat

5. 说说罗马人一般是如何表达下列地点概念的,并把英语例子翻译成拉丁语:

- (1) 从何处: from (out of) that land.
- (2) 在何处: in that land; on that island.
- (3) 到何处: into (to) that land.

6. 在涉及城市名称的时候,这些地点结构一般是怎样的?

7. 什么是位置格? 说说位置格形式的特征。

8. 说说罗马人一般是如何表达下列时间概念的,并把英语例子翻译成拉丁语:

- (1) 何时: on the same day.
- (2) 延续时间: for many days.
- (3) 期间: in one day.

9. **Licet** 的主要部分有何特殊之处? 试作出说明,并把“*You may go.*”翻译成拉丁语。

10. 根据本课内容翻译下列词或短语。

(1) ūnum diem	(7) paucīs diēbus	(13) domum
(2) ūnō diē	(8) eādē nocte	(14) Athēnīs
(3) illō diē	(9) multōs diēs	(15) domī
(4) Rōmā	(10) in nāvem	(16) Athēnās
(5) Rōmae	(11) in nāve	(17) domō
(6) Rōmam	(12) ex nāve	(18) paucās hōrās

11. Paucīs hōrīs Rōmam ībimus. 12. Nōs ad urbem īmus; illī domum eunt.
 13. Ut saepe fassī sumus, tibi nōn licet Rōmā Athēnās ire. 14. Cūr domō tam celeriter abīstī? 15. Rōmam veniunt ut cum frātre meō Athēnās eant.
 16. Nōlīte abīre Rōmā. 17. Frātre tuō Rōmae interfectō, hortābāmur tē ut Athēnās redīrēs. 18. Sī in fīnēs hostium hōc tempore eat, paucīs hōrīs pe-reat.
 19. Negāvit sē velle in istā terrā multōs diēs remanēre. 20. Dīxistī tē domum Athēnīs ūnā hōrā reditūrum esse. 21. Ā tē petō ut ex nāve ad īsulam brevī tempore redeās.
 22. Eīs diēbus solitī sumus Athēnīs esse. 23. Sī amīcīs eius Rōmae nocuissent, Rōmam brevissimō tempore redīsset.
 24. Cum frāter meus domī remanēret, ego tamen in novās terrās domō abī.
 25. Rōmānī, sī quid malī loquī volebant, saepe dīcēbant: “Abī in malam rem.” 26. Eīs persuādet ut Latīnae studeant.

27. 解释下列词的句法:(11) hōrīs, Rōmam; (12) domum; (13) Rōmā, Athēnās, ire; (14) domō; (15) Rōmam; (17) frātre; (18) tempore, eat, hōrīs; (19) velle, diēs;

(20) domum, Athēnīs, hōrā, reditūrum esse; (21) tempore, redeās; (22) diēbus, Athēnīs; (23) amīcīs, Rōmae, redisset; (24) domī, terrās, domō; (26) studeant.

答案

1. (1) 现在时直陈式和现在时虚拟式。
(2) *ī-*。
2. 单数主格 = *iēns*; 复数主格 = *euntēs*。
3. 在写动词变位表时, 应当遵循第三十四课第 2 题答案中给出的直陈式和虚拟式时态序列。如果做到这一点, 就不需要标出时态了。
Eō 的第二人称单数: 直陈式——*īs, ibās, ibis, istī, ierās, ieris*。
虚拟式——*eās, irēs, ierīs, issēs*。
Eō 的第三人称复数: 直陈式——*eunt, ibant, ibunt, ierunt, ierant, ierint*。
虚拟式——*eant, irent, ierint, issent*。
4. (1) we went (13) I went
(2) we are going (14) he was going
(3) impf. subj., 1 pl. (15) they had gone
(4) we shall go (16) perf. subj., 1 sg.
(5) plupf. subj., 1 pl. (17) impf. subj., 3 sg.
(6) pres. subj., 1 pl. (18) to have gone
(7) to be about to go (19) going (nom./acc. pl.)
(8) going (acc. sg.) (20) I shall go
(9) they went (21) he went
(10) they are going (22) we were going
(11) pres. subj., 3 pl. (23) plupf. subj., 3 sg.
(12) they will go (24) pres. subj., 3 sg.
5. (1) **ab, dē, ex** + 夺格; *ab (ex) eā terrā*。
(2) **in** + 夺格: *in eā terrā; in eā īnsulā*。
(3) **in** 或 **ad** + 宾格: *in (ad) eam terram*。
6. (1) 从何处 = 无介词夺格
(2) 在何处 = 无介词位置格
(3) 到何处 = 无介词宾格
7. 位置格是在用到 **domus** 或城市的名称时表示“在何处”的格。参见 p. 262。
8. (1) 何时 = 无介词夺格: *eōdem diē*。
(2) 延续时间 = 通常是无介词宾格: *multōs diēs*。
(3) 期间 = 无介词夺格: *ūnō diē*。
9. 由于无人称动词没有第一和第二人称的单复数形式, 所以它的第一个和第三个主要部分给出的是第三人称单数。参见 p. 264 词汇表中的 **licet** 和注释 1 中的 **licet tibi īre**。

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 10. (1) (for) one day | (7) in a few days | (13) home (= to home) |
| (2) in one day | (8) on the same night | (14) at/from Athens |
| (3) on that day | (9) (for) many days | (15) at home |
| (4) from Rome | (10) into the ship | (16) to Athens |
| (5) at Rome | (11) in the ship | (17) from home |
| (6) to Rome | (12) out of the ship | (18) (for) a few hours |

11. In a few hours we shall go to Rome. 12. We are going to the city; they are going home. 13. As we have often admitted, you may not (are not permitted to) go from Rome to Athens (*lit.*, to go is not permitted to you). 14. Why did you leave home (go away from home) so quickly? 15. They are coming to Rome in order to go to Athens with my brother. 16. Do not go away from Rome. 17. When your brother had been killed at Rome, we kept urging you to return to Athens. 18. If he should go into the territory of the enemy at this time, he would perish in a few hours. 19. He said that he did not want to stay in that country of yours many days. 20. You said that you would return home from Athens in one hour. 21. I beg of you to return from the ship to the island in a short time. 22. In those days we were accustomed to be at Athens. 23. If they had injured his friends at Rome, he would have returned to Rome in a very short time. 24. Although my brother stayed at home, I nevertheless went away from home into new lands. 25. The Romans, if they wanted to say something bad, often used to say: "Go to the devil." 26. He is persuading them to study Latin.

27. (11) **hōrīs** = 夺格: 期间; **Rōmam** = 宾格: 到何处; (12) **domum** = 宾格: 到何处; (13) **Rōmā** = 夺格: 从何处; **Athēnās** = 宾格: 到何处; **īre** = 现在时不定式: **licet** 的主语; (14) **domō** = 夺格: 从何处; (15) **Rōmam** = 宾格: 到何处; (18) **frātre** = 夺格: 独立夺格; (18) **tempore** = 夺格: 何时; **eat** = 现在时虚拟式: 可能性小的将来; **hōrīs** = 夺格: 期间; (19) **velle** = 现在时不定式: 间接陈述; **diēs** = 宾格: 延续时间; (20) **domum** = 宾格: 到何处; **Athēnīs** = 夺格: 从何处; **hōrā** = 夺格: 期间; **reditūrum esse** = 将来时不定式: 间接陈述; (21) **tempore** = 夺格: 期间; **redeās** = 现在时虚拟式: 间接命令句; (22) **diēbus** = 夺格: 何时; **Athēnīs** = 位置格: 在何处; (23) **amīcīs** = 与格: 特殊动词; **Rōmae** = 位置格: 在何处; **redisset** = 过去完成时虚拟式: 与过去事实相反条件从句; (24) **domī** = 位置格: 在何处; **terrās** = 宾格: 到何处; **domō** = 夺格: 从何处; (26) **studeant** = 现在时虚拟式: 间接命令句。

第三十八课练习

- 直陈式的关系从句关于先行词说了什么?
- 虚拟式的关系从句关于先行词说了什么? 先行词有什么特征?
- 间接宾语的与格和关系与格之间有何根本区别?
- 目的动名词如何构成? 其功能是什么?
- Amīcus meus quī cōnsulem dēfendit ipse erat vir clārissimus.** 6. **At nēmō erat quī istum hominem turpem dēfenderet.** 7. **Quid est quod virī plūs metuant quam tyrannum?** 8. **Quis est quī inter libertātem et imperium tyrannī dubitet?** 9. **Rōmae antiquae erant quī pecūniam plūs quam rem pūblicam**

amārent. 10. Abeat ā patriā iste homō malus quī odium omnium cīvium bonōrum passus est. 11. Catilīna (= Catiline), quī tantās īnsidiās contrā rem pūblicam fēcerat, ex urbe ā Cicerōne expulsus est. 12. Istī ducī in exsilium abeuntī quae vīta potest esse iūcunda? 13. Quis est quī tantum dōlōrem ferre possit? 14. Nisi quis iūcundus bonusque erit, vītam vērē fēlicem mihi nōn vīvet. 15. Cōnsulī nōn crēdent quī opera turpia faciat. 16. Nōlī crēdere eī quī sit acerbus amīcīs. 17. Cicerō erat cōnsul quī rem pūblicam salūtī suae antepōneret. 18. Scīvērunt quārē cōnsulem tam fortem sequī vellēmus. 19. Nihil sciō quod mihi facilius esse possit. 20. Ducem quaerō quem omnēs laudent. 21. Rōmam ībant rogātum lībertātem. 22. Rōmānī, quī decem rēs pūblicās Graecās exercitibus suīs cēperant, ipsī—mīrābile dictū—Graecīs artibus captī sunt! 23. Virīs antīquīs nihil erat quod melius esset quam virtūs et sapientia. 24. Nihil metuendum est quod animō nocēre nōn possit.

25. 分析第 5 句和第 6 句中的关系从句,说明其确切含义有何不同。

26. 解释下列词的句法:(7) metuant; (8) dubitet; (9) Rōmae, amārent; (10) abeat, passus est; (11) fēcerat; (12) ducī, potest; (13) possit; (14) erit, mihi; (15) cōnsulī; (16) amīcīs; (17) salūtī, antepōneret; (18) vellēmus; (19) mihi, possit; (21) rogātum; (22) cēperant, dictū; (23) virīs; (24) animō, possit.

答案

1. 直陈式关系从句说的是关于先行词的事实。
2. 虚拟式关系从句说的是先行词的特征,指这个人或事物属于什么种类,有什么特点。参见 p. 267。
3. 参见 p. 268。
4. 参见 p. 268—269。
5. My friend who defended the consul was himself a very famous man. 6. But there was no one who would defend that base fellow. 7. What is there which men fear more than a tyrant? 8. Who is there who would hesitate between liberty and the command of a tyrant? 9. At ancient Rome there were those who loved money more than the state. 10. Let that evil man depart from his country—he who has endured the hatred of all good citizens. 11. Catiline, who had made such a great plot against the state, was driven from the city by Cicero. 12. What life can be pleasant for that leader as he goes off into exile? 13. Who is there who would be able to bear such pain? 14. If a person is not agreeable and good, he will not live a truly happy life, it seems to me. 15. They will not trust a consul who would do base deeds. 16. Do not trust a man who is harsh to his friends. 17. Cicero was a consul who would place the state before his own safety. 18. They knew why we wanted to follow such a brave consul. 19. I know nothing which could be easier for me. 20. I am seeking a leader whom all men would praise. 21. They were going to Rome to ask for freedom. 22. The Romans, who had captured ten Greek republics with their own armies, were themselves—amazing to say—taken captive by the Greek arts! 23. For the ancient men there was nothing which was better than courage and wisdom. 24. Nothing is to be feared which cannot injure the soul.

25. 第5句中的 **quī . . . dēfendit** 陈述了一个关于 **amīcus** 的事实,而不是描述他的特征。第6句中的虚拟从句说明了想象中的 **nēmō** 可能是什么种类的人。

26. 句法:(7) **metuat** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (8) **dubitet** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (9) **Rōmae** = 位置格: 在何处; **amārent** = 未完成时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (10) **abeat** = 现在时虚拟式: 祈愿句; **passus est** = 完成时直陈式: 事实关系从句; (11) **fēcerat** = 完成时直陈式: 事实关系从句; (12) **ducī** = 与格: 关系与格; **potest** = 现在时直陈式: 直接问句中的主要动词; (13) **possit** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (14) **erit** = 将来时直陈式: 将来的简单事实条件从句; **mihi** = 与格: 关系与格; (15) **cōsulī** = 与格: 特殊动词; (16) **amīcīs** = 与格: 形容词加与格; (17) **salūtī** = 与格: 复合动词; **antepōneret** = 未完成时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (18) **vellēmus** = 未完成时虚拟式: 间接问句; (19) **mihi** = 与格: 关系与格; **possit** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句; (21) **rogātum** = 宾格目的动名词: 目的; (22) **cēperant** = 过去完成时直陈式: 事实关系从句; **dictū** = 夺格目的动名词: 方面; (23) **virīs** = 与格: 关系与格; (24) **animō** = 与格: 特殊动词; **possit** = 现在时虚拟式: 特征关系从句。

第三十九课练习

1. (1) 什么是动名词?
 - (2) 英语动名词的词尾是什么?
 - (3) 拉丁语动名词如何变格?
 - (4) 作为名词,拉丁语动名词的句法是什么?
 - (5) 什么替代了拉丁语动名词的主格?
2. (1) 拉丁语动形词属于什么词类?
 - (2) 有什么窍门可以帮助记忆这一点?
 - (3) 作为形容词,动形词的句法是什么?
 - (4) 动形词如何变格?
 - (5) 在拉丁语用法中(而不是在英语翻译中),如何区分动形词和动名词?
3. (1) 拉丁语动名词如何翻译?
 - (2) 与名词一致的动形词如何翻译?
 - (3) 根据以上规则,将下面两个句子翻译成英语:
 - (A) *Discimus legendō cum cūrā* (动名词).
 - (B) *Discimus librīs legendīs cum cūrā* (动形词).
4. *Experiendō discimus.* 5. *Ad discendum vēnērunt.* 6. *Sē discendō dedit.*
7. *Discendī causā ad lūdum tuum vēnērunt.* 8. *Puer cupidus discendī ad lūdum iit.* 9. *Metus moriendī eum terrēbat.* 10. *Spēs vīvendī post mortem multōs hortātur.* 11. *Cōgitandō eōs superāvit.* 12. *Sē dedit—*

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (1) glōriae quaerendae. | (9) iniūriīs oppugnandīs. |
| (2) bellō gerendō. | (10) librīs scrībendīs. |
| (3) pecūniae faciendae. | (11) librīs legendīs. |
| (4) imperiō accipiendō. | (12) philosophiae discendae. |
| (5) cīvitātibus delendīs. | (13) litterīs Latīnīs discendīs. |
| (6) huic ducī sequendō. | (14) vērītātī intellegendae. |
| (7) patriae servandae. | (15) sapientiae quaerendae. |
| (8) pācī petendae. | (16) hominibus adiuvandīs. |

13. Rōmam vēnit—

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| (1) ad hoc opus suscipiendum. | (5) huius operis suscipiendī causā. |
| (2) ad lūdōs Rōmānōs videndōs. | (6) philosophiae discendae causā. |
| (3) ad aedificia vetera videnda. | (7) novōrum librōrum legendōrum causā. |
| (4) ad pācem petendam. | (8) lūdōs vīsum. |

14. Librum scrīpsit—

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) dē dolōre ferendō. | (5) dē bellō gerendō. |
| (2) dē metū superandō. | (6) dē lībertāte dēfendendā. |
| (3) dē bonā vītā vīvendā. | (7) dē hostibus vincendīs. |
| (4) dē rē pūblicā gerendā. | (8) dē dōnīs dandīs. |

15. Sapientiōrēs fīmus—

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Latīnīs litterīs legendīs. | (4) metū vincendō. |
| (2) philosophiā discendā. | (5) vērītāte sequendā. |
| (3) vītā experiendā. | |

16. Nōs ipsōs adiuvāmus—

- | | |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) bonīs librīs semper legendīs. | (3) auxiliō offerendō. |
| (2) virīs miserīs metū liberandīs. | (4) aliīs adiuvandīs. |

17. Multum tempus cōnsūpsit—

- | | |
|--|--------------------------|
| (1) in cōgitandō (loquendō, currendō). | (4) in exercitū parandō. |
| (2) in hīs operibus faciendīs. | (5) in cōpiīs parandīs. |
| (3) in viā inveniendā. | |

18. Tempus huic librō sōlī scrībendō habuit.

答案

- (1) 参见 p. 274“动名词”一节。
- (2) 参见 p. 274。
- (3) 参见 p. 274—275。
- (4) 它只有四种格的形式,和名词一样使用。参见 p. 275。
- (5) 不定式;参见 p. 275。

2. (1) 参见 p. 274“动形词”一节。
- (2) 动形词(*gerundive*)是形容词(*adjective*)。
- (3) 作为形容词,它修饰名词或代词,并在性、数、格上与该名词或代词保持一致。
- (4) 动形词(例如 **laudandus, -a, -um**)与 **magnus, -a, -um** 具有同样的变格方式。参见 p. 274。
- (5) 由于动名词只有 **-ī, -ō, -um, -ō** 这几个词尾,所以加在词根 **-nd-** 上的任何阴性词尾或复数词尾都必定指示动形词;此外,如果某种 **-nd-** 形式与作为形容词修饰语的名词一致,那么它必定是将来被动动形词。
3. (1) 拉丁语动名词通常用以 *-ing* 结尾的英语动名词加上名词结构或状语修饰语来翻译。
- (2) 在翻译动形词的时候,要把它当成好像是带有宾语和状语修饰语的动名词。换句话说,对动名词和动形词的翻译方式是相同的。
- (3) (A) We learn by reading with care.
(B) We learn by reading books with care.
4. We learn by experiencing. 5. They came to learn (for learning). 6. He gave (devoted) himself to learning. 7. They came to your school to learn (for the sake of learning). 8. The boy went to the school desirous of learning (eager to learn). 9. The fear of dying kept terrifying him. 10. The hope of living after death encourages many people. 11. By thinking (= by using his head) he overcame them.
12. He devoted (gave) himself—(1) to seeking glory. (2) to waging war. (3) to making money. (4) to getting power. (5) to destroying states. (6) to following this leader. (7) to saving his country. (8) to seeking peace. (9) to attacking wrongs. (10) to writing books. (11) to reading books. (12) to learning philosophy. (13) to learning Latin literature. (14) to understanding the truth. (15) to seeking wisdom. (16) to helping human beings.
13. He came to Rome—(1) to undertake this work. (2) to see the Roman games. (3) to see the old buildings. (4) to seek peace. (5) for the sake of undertaking this work (to undertake . . .). (6) for the sake of learning philosophy (to learn . . .). (7) for the sake of reading new books (to read . . .). (8) to see the games.
14. He wrote a book—(1) about enduring pain. (2) about overcoming fear. (3) about living a good life. (4) about managing the state. (5) about waging war. (6) about defending liberty. (7) about conquering the enemy. (8) about giving gifts.
15. We become wiser—(1) by reading Latin literature. (2) by learning philosophy. (3) by experiencing life. (4) by conquering fear. (5) by following truth.
16. We help our very selves—(1) by always reading good books. (2) by freeing unfortunate men from fear. (3) by offering aid. (4) by helping others.
17. He consumed much time—(1) in thinking (speaking, running). (2) in doing these tasks. (3) in finding the way. (4) in preparing an army. (5) in preparing supplies (troops).
18. He had time for writing this book only.

第四十课练习

1. 由 **-ne**, **nōnne** 和 **num** 引出的问句之间有何本质区别?
2. 肯定的疑虑从句由什么词来引导? 否定的由什么词来引导? 为什么它与所期待的结论正相反?
3. 要使一个名词起描述属格或描述夺格的作用, 必须满足什么条件?
4. Magnopere vereor ut imperātor nōbīs satis auxiliī mittat. 5. Fuit fēmina maximā virtūte et fidē atque simillima matrī. 6. Nōlī timēre nē omnēs virī et fēminae magnōrum animōrum Rōmā discēdant. 7. Id quidem est facile dictū sed difficile factū! 8. Parentibus placitum domum vērunt. 9. Nōnne vīs audīre aliquid bonī? 10. Vīsne habēre multum sapientiae? Studē Latīnae! 11. Imperāvit tribus mīlitibus ut pācem petītum Rōmam adīrent. 12. Num dubitās hoc dīcere, mī amīce? 13. Tū mē hortāris ut sim animō magnō et spem salūtis habeam, sed timeō nē sim infirmior. 14. Ego dīvitiās sapientiae antepōnō. Nōn enim arbitror hominēs vītā fēlicem sine cōpiā pecūniae reperīre posse. 15. Plūrimī autem virī dīvitēs multum metūs sentiunt. 16. Pauperēs saepe sunt fēliciōrēs et minus metūs habent. 17. Pecūnia ipsa nōn est mala: sed rēs mentis animīque plūs opis ad fēliciter vīvendū offerunt. 18. Novem ex ducibus nōs hortātī sunt ut plūs auxiliī prae-stārēmus. 19. Quīnque ex custōdiīs interfectīs, pater meus cum duōbus ex fīliīs et cum magnō numerō amīcōrum in illam terram līberam fūgit. 20. Numquam satis ōtīi habēbit; at aliquid ōtīi melius est quam nihil. 21. Nostrīs temporibus omnēs plūs metūs et minus speī habēmus. 22. Magna fidēs et virtūs omnibus virīs reperiendae sunt.

答案

1. 参见 p. 282.。
2. 肯定的疑虑从句由 **nē** 来引导; 否定的疑虑从句由 **ut** 来引导。
3. 该名词必须由形容词来修饰。
4. I greatly fear that the general may not send us enough help. 5. She was a woman of the greatest courage and loyalty and in fact very like her mother. 6. Do not fear that all the men and women of great courage will depart from Rome. 7. This is, indeed, easy to say but difficult to do! 8. They came home to please their parents. 9. You do wish to hear something good, don't you? 10. Do you wish to have much wisdom? Study Latin! 11. He ordered the three soldiers to go to Rome to seek peace. 12. You do not hesitate to say this, do you, my friend? 13. You urge me to be of great courage and to have hope of safety, but I fear that I may be too weak. 14. For my part I place wealth ahead of wisdom. For I do not think that human beings can find a happy life without a great deal of money. 15. However, very many rich men experience much fear. 16. Poor men are often happier and have less fear. 17. Money itself is not bad; but the things of the mind and the soul offer more help for living happily. 18. Nine of the leaders urged us to supply more aid. 19. When five of the guards had been killed, my father fled into that free land with two of his sons and with a large number of friends. 20. Never will he have enough leisure; yet some leisure is better than nothing. 21. In our times we all have too much of fear and too little of hope. 22. Great faith and courage must be found by all men.

附录

词源帮助

两条语音变化规则

前缀

后缀

句法补充

词形总结

词源帮助

两条语音变化规则

“语音的”(Phonetic)一词源于希腊词 **phōnḗ**, *sound, voice, speech* (与 *phonograph, phonology, symphony, telephone* 比较)。因此,语音变化就意味着由于某种原因,原始语音发生了变化。在拉丁语中有许多语音变化规则,对于初学者来说,也许下面两条最为重要。

A. 复合词的中间音节往往根据下列规则发生元音弱化。

1. 在单辅音之前和 **ng** 之前 **ă > ĭ**。

在双辅音之前 **ă > ĭ**。

căpiō, căptum: ac-cĭpiō, ac-cĕptum

făciō, făctum: per-fĭciō, per-fĕctum

făcilis: dif-fĭcilis

cădō, cāsum: oc-cĭdō, oc-cāsum (注意长元音 **ā** 并不发生变化)

tăngō, tăctum: con-tĭngō, con-tăctum

2. 在单辅音之前 **ĕ > ĭ**。

tĕneō : con-tĭneō (但 *contentum*)

prĕmō : com-prĭmō (但 *compressum*)

3. **ae > ĭ**。

quaerō, quaesĭtum: re-quĭrō, re-quĭsĭtum

laedō, laesum: col-**līdō**, col-**līsum**

caedō, caesum: in-**cīdō**, in-**cīsum**; oc-**cīdō**, oc-**cīsum**

aestimō: ex-**īstimō**

4. **au > ū.**

claudō : in-**clūdō**, ex-**clūdō**

causor: ex-**cūsō**

B. 前缀的尾辅音往往同化于基本词的首辅音。

ad-cipiō > **ac-**cipiō **in-**mortālis > **im-**mortālis

dis-facilis > **dif-**facilis **in-**ruō > **ir-**ruō

前缀

下面列出的是一些重要前缀，它们可以帮助我们分析拉丁词和英语派生词。除非特别指明，这些拉丁语前缀都原封不动地进入了英语。顺便提及，大多数拉丁语前缀都被罗马人用作介词；但极少数标有“不可分”的前缀只能作为前缀出现。

ā-, **ab-**, *away, from.*

ā-vocō, *call away* (avocation)

ā-vertō, *turn away* (avert)

ā-mittō, *send away, let go, lose*

ab-sum, *be away* (absent)

ab-eō, *go away*

ab-dūcō, *lead away* (abduct)

ad-(经过同化可以变为 **ac-**, **af-**, **ag-**, **al-**, **an-**, **ap-**, **ar-**, **as-**, **at-**), *to, towards, in addition.*

ad-vocō, *call to, call* (advocate)

ad-dūcō, *lead to* (adduce)

ad-mittō, *send to, admit*

ac-cēdō, *go to, approach* (accede)

ac-cipiō (**ad-cipiō**), *get, accept*

ap-pōnō, *put to* (apposition)

as-sentiō, *feel towards, agree to, assent*

ante-, *before.*

ante-pōnō, *put before, prefer*

ante-cēdō, *go before, precede, excel* (antecedent)

circum-, *around*.

circum-dūcō, *lead around*

circum-veniō, *come around, surround* (circumvent)

circum-stō, *stand around* (circumstance)

com- (**com** = **cum**; 亦为 **con-**, **cor-**, **col-**, **co-**), *with, together*; 加强词义: *com-pletely, very, greatly, deeply, forcibly*.

con-vocō, *call together* (convoke)

con-dūcō, *lead together* (conduct)

com-pōnō, *put together, compose* (component)

com-mittō, *send together, bring together, entrust* (commit)

cōn-sentiō, *feel together, agree* (consent)

cō-gō (**co-agō**), *drive together, force* (cogent)

com-pleō, *fill completely, fill up* (complete)

cōn-servō, *save completely, preserve* (conserve)

con-cēdō, *go completely, go away, yield, grant* (concede)

con-tendō, *stretch greatly, strive, hurry* (contend)

col-laudō, *praise greatly or highly*

cor-rōborō, *strengthen greatly* (corroborate)

contrā-, *against, opposite*. (作为前缀, 在拉丁语中并不常见, 但在英语中却相当普遍, 特别是在 *counter-* 的形式中。)

contrā-dicō, *speak against or opposite, oppose, rely* (contradict)

contrā-veniō (late Latin), *come against, oppose* (contravene)

dē-, *down, away, aside, out, off*; 加强词义: *utterly, completely*.

dē-dūcō, *lead down or away, drawn down* (deduce, deduct)

dē-pōnō, *put aside, lay aside, entrust* (deponent, deposit)

dē-mittō, *send down, throw down, let fall* (demit)

dē-veniō, *come from, arrive at, reach*

dē-vocō, *call away or off*

dē-cēdō, *go away* (decease)

dē-mēns, *out of one's mind, demented*

dē-certō, *fight it out, fight to the finish*

dis- (**dif-**, **dī-**; 不可分), *apart, away, not*.

dis-pōnō, *put apart in different places, arrange* (disposition)

dis-cēdō, *go away, depart*

dī-mittō, *send away in different directions, let go* (dismiss)

dif-ferō, dī-lātus, *bear apart, scatter, put off, differ* (different, dilate)

dis-similis, *not similar, unlike, dissimilar*

dif-ficilis, *not easy, difficult*

ē-, ex- (ef-), *from out, forth; 加强词义: exceedingly, up.*

ē-dūcō, *lead out* (educē)

ex-cēdō, *go out, from, away; go beyond* (exceed)

ē-mittō, *send out, forth* (emit)

ē-vocō, *call out, forth* (evoke)

ex-pōnō, *put out, set forth, explain* (exponent, exposition)

ē-veniō, *come out, forth; turn out, happen* (event)

ef-ficiō, (ex-faciō), *produce, accomplish, perform* (efficient, effect)

ex-pleō, *fill up, complete*

ex-asperō, *roughen exceedingly, irritate* (exasperate)

in- (im-, il-, ir-; 在英语中有时是 en-或 em-), in, into, on, upon, against. (参见下面的 in-)

in-vocō, *call in, call upon* (invoke)

in-dūcō, *lead in or into, introduce, impel* (induce)

im-mittō, *send into, send against, let loose against*

im-pōnō, *put in, lay upon* (impose)

in-veniō, *come upon, find* (invent)

in-clūdō, *shut in, shut* (include, enclose)

in-vādō, *go into, move against* (invade)

ir-ruō, *rush into or upon*

il-lidō (in-laedō), *strike or dash against*

in-genium (**in + gen-**, from **gignō**, *beget, give birth to*), *inborn nature, natural capacity, talent, character* (engine, ingenious)

in- (im-, il-, ir-; 不可分前缀; 与英语中的 un-同源), not, un-.

in-certus, *not certain, uncertain*

in-iustus, *not just, unjust* (cp. injustice)

in-finitus, *not limited, unlimited* (infinite)

in-firmus, *not firm, weak* (infirm)

im-mortālis, *not mortal, deathless* (immortal)

il-litterātus, *unlearned, ignorant* (illiterate)

ir-revocābilis, *not-call-back-able, unalterable* (irrevocable)

inter-, *between, among.*

- inter-veniō**, *come between; interrupt* (intervene)
inter-cēdō, *go between* (intercede)
inter-mittō, *place between, leave off* (intermittent)
inter-pōnō, *put between, bring forward* (interpose)
inter-rēgnum, *period between two reigns* (interregnum)
intrō-, *within, in.* (也用作副词)
intrō-dūcō, *lead in* (introduce)
intrō-mittō, *send in*
intrō-spiciō, *look within* (introspect)
ob- (**oc-**, **of-**, **op-**), *towards, to, opposite, against, over.*
ob-dūcō, *lead toward or against*
ob-veniō, *come opposite, meet*
oc-currō, *run to meet, meet* (occur)
of-ferō, *bear towards, furnish* (offer)
op-pōnō, *put opposite, set against, oppose* (opposition)
per- (**pel-**), *through; 加强词义: thoroughly, very, completely.*
per-dūcō, *lead through or along*
per-veniō, *come through to, arrive at, reach*
per-ferō, *carry through, bear thoroughly, endure*
per-mittō, *let go through, entrust, allow* (permit)
per-ficiō (**-faciō**), *do thoroughly, accomplish, finish* (perfect)
per-facilis, *very easy*
per-paucus, *very small*
pel-lūcidus, *shining through, transparent*
post-, *after.*
post-pōnō, *put after, esteem less, disregard* (postpone)
post-ferō, *put after, esteem less, disregard* (postpone)
post-scribō, *write after, add* (postscript)
prae-, *before, in front, forth; 加强词义: very.* (在英语中也拼写为 *pre-*)
prae-moneō, *warn before, forewarn* (premonition)
prae-cēdō, *go before, excel* (precede)
prae-pōnō, *put before, place in command of, prefer* (preposition)
prae-mittō, *send before or forth, set before* (premise)
prae-scribō, *write before, order* (prescribe, prescription)
prae-ferō, *bear before, set before, prefer*

prae-clārus, *very noble, very famous, excellent*

prō-, *before, in front, forth, out, away, instead of, for.* (在英语中有时写作 *pur-*)

prō-vocō, *call forth or out, challenge, excite* (provoke)

prō-vidēō, *see ahead, foresee, care for* (provide, provision, purvey)

prō-dūcō, *lead before or out, bring forth, prolong* (produce)

prō-cēdō, *go forward, advance* (proceed)

prō-pōnō, *put in front, set forth, declare* (proponent, purpose)

prō-mittō, *send forth, assure* (promise)

prō-cōnsul, *one who served in place of a consul* (proconsul)

re- (**red-**; 不可分), *back again.*

re-vocō, *call back, recall* (revoke)

re-dūcō, *lead back* (reduce)

re-cēdō, *go back, retire* (recede)

re-pōnō, *put back, replace, restore* (repository)

re-mittō, *send back, give up* (remit)

red-dō, *give back, restore, return*

red-eō, *go back, return*

sē- (不可分), *apart, aside, without.*

sē-dūcō, *lead aside, separate* (seduce)

sē-cēdō, *go apart, withdraw, retire* (secede)

sē-pōnō, *put aside, select*

sē-moveō, *move aside, separate*

sē-cūrus, *without care, untroubled, serene* (secure)

sub- (**suc-**, **suf-**, **sug-**, **sup-**, **sur-**, **sus-**), *under, up* (from *beneath*); *rather, somewhat, a little, secretly.*

sub-dūcō, *draw from under, withdraw secretly*

suc-cēdō, *go under, go up, approach, prosper* (succeed)

sup-pōnō, *put under; substitute* (supposition, supposititious)

sub-veniō, *come under, help* (subvene, subvention)

sus-tineō (**-teneō**), *hold up, support, endure* (sustain)

super- (在英语中也写作 *sur-*), *over, above.*

super-pōnō, *place over or upon, set over* (superposition)

super-sedeō, *sit above or upon, be superior to, be above, refrain from, desist* (supersede)

super-sum, *be over and above, be left, survive*

superō, *be above, surpass, conquer* (insuperable)

superbus, *above others, haughty, proud* (superb)

super-vivō, *survive*

super-ficiēs, *surface*

trāns- (**trā-**), *across, over.*

trāns-mittō, *send across, cross over* (transmit)

trā-dūcō, *lead across* (traduce)

trāns-eō, *go across* (transition)

trā-dō, *give over, surrender, hand down* (tradition)

后缀

拉丁语后缀为数众多,以下只列出了其中比较重要的几个,相应的英语后缀也一并列出。

1. 所指为 the *agent*, the *doer*, the *one who* 的后缀 (**-tor** or **-sor**, m.; **-trīx**, f.).

-tor 或 **-sor** (cp. Eng. *-er*)

victor (**vincō**, **victum**, *conquer*), *conqueror, victor*

scrīptor (**scrībō**, **scrīptum**, *write*), *writer*

lēctor, **lētrīx** (**legō**, **lēctum**, *read*), *reader*

ōrātor (**ōrō**, **ōrātum**, [*speak*], *plead*), *speaker, orator*

reperor, **repertrīx** (**reperiō**, **reperitum**, *discover*), *discoverer*

auctor (**augeō**, **auctum**, *increase*), *increaser, author*

liberātor (**liberō**, **liberātum**, *free*), *liberator*

tōnsor (**tondeō**, **tōnsum**, *shave, clip*), *barber*

amātor (**amō**, **amātum**, *love*), *lover*

这些名词与完成时分词有相同的词根。

2. 所指为 *action* 或 *result of action* 的后缀 (**-or**, **-ium**, **-tiō**).

-or (Eng. *-or*)

amor (**amō**, *love*), *love, amour*

timor (**timeō**, *fear*), *fear*

dolor (**doleō**, *suffer pain*), *pain, suffering, grief*

error (**errō**, *go astray, err*), *error*

terror (**terreō**, *frighten, terrify*), *fright, terror*

-ium (Eng. *-y*; **-ium** 之前是 **c** 或 **t** 时是 **-ce**)

studium (**studeō**, *be eager*), *eagerness, study*

colloquium (**colloquor**, *talk with*), *talk, conference, colloquy*

imperium (**imperō**, *command*), *command, power*

odium (**ōdī**, *hate*), *hate*

aedificium (**aedificō**, *build*) *building, edifice*

silentium (**silēns**, *silentis*, *silent*), *silence*

-tiō, -tiōnis, or -siō, -siōnis (Eng. *-tion* or *-sion*)

admonitiō (**admoneō**, **admonitum**, *admonish*) *admonition*

ratio (**reor**, **ratum**, *reckon, think*), *reckoning, plan, reason (ration)*

ōrātiō (**ōrō**, **ōrātum**, [*speak*], *plead*), *oration*

nātiō (**nāscor**, **nātum**, *be born*), *birth, nation*

occāsiō (**occidō**, **occāsum**, *fall down*) *a befalling, occasion, opportunity*

3. 所指为 *quality, state* 或 *condition* 的后缀 (**-ia, -tia, -tās, -tūdō**).

-ia (Eng. *-y*)

miseria (**miser**, *miserable*), *misery*

īnsānia (**īnsānus**, *insane*), *insanity*

victōria (**victor**, *victor*), *victory*

invidia (**invidus**, *envious*), *envy*

iniūria (**iniūrus**, *wrong, unjust*), *injustice, injury*

-tia (Eng. *-ce*)

amīcitia (**amīcus**, *friendly*), *friendship*

sapientia (**sapiēns**, *wise*), *wisdom, sapience*

scientia (**sciēns**, *knowing*), *knowledge, science*

iūstitia (**iūstus**, *just*), *justice*

dīligentia (**dīligēns**, *diligent*), *diligence*

-tās, -tātis (Eng. *-ty*)

lībertās (**liber**, *free*), *freedom, liberty*

vēritās (**vērus**, *true*), *truth, verity*

paupertās (**pauper**, *poor*), *poverty*

cupiditās (**cupidus**, *desirous, greedy*), *greed, cupidity*

gravitās (**gravis**, *heavy, grave*), *weight, seriousness, gravity*

celeritās (**celer**, *swift*), *swiftness, celerity*

-tūdō, -tūdinis (Eng. *-tude*)

multitūdō (**multus**, *much, many*), *multitude*

magnitūdō (**magnus**, *large, great*), *magnitude*

pulchritūdō (**pulcher**, *beautiful*), *beauty, pulchritude*

sōlitūdō (**sōlus**, *alone*), *solitude*

sollicitūdō (**sollicitus**, *agitated, solicitous*), *solicitude*

4. 意为 *full of* 的形容词后缀 (-ōsus).

-ōsus, -ōsa, -ōsum (Eng. *-ous* or *-ose*)

studiōsus (**studium**, *zeal*), *full of zeal, eager (studious)*

imperiōsus (**imperium**, *command*), *full of command, imperious*

periculōsus (**periculum**, *danger*), *full of danger, dangerous*

vitiōsus (**vitium**, *fault, vice*), *faulty, vicious*

verbōsus (**verbum**, *word*), *wordy, verbose*

5. 意为 *able to be, worthy to be*、有时还表示 *able to* 的形容词后缀 (-bilis).

-bilis, -bile (Eng. *-able, -ible, -ble*)

laudābilis (**laudō**, *praise*), *worthy to be praised, laudable*

amābilis (**amō**, *love*), *worthy to be loved, lovable, amiable*

incrēdibilis (**crēdō**, *believe*), *not worthy to be believed, incredible*

mōbilis (**moveō**, *move*), *able to be moved, movable, mobile*

inexpugnābilis (**expugnō**, *conquer*), *unconquerable*

stabilis (**stō**, *stand*), *able to stand, stable*

6. 意为 *pertaining to* 的形容词后缀 (-ālis or -āris, -ānus, -icus).

-ālis, -āle, or -āris, -āre (Eng. *-al* or *-ar*)

mortālis (**mors**, *death*), *pertaining to death, mortal*

vītālis (**vīta**, *life*), *pertaining to life, vital*

fātālis (**fātum**, *fate*), *fatal*

populāris (**populus**, *people*), *popular*

vulgāris (**vulgus**, *the common people*), *common, vulgar*

-ānus, -āna, -ānum (Eng. *-an* or *-ane*)

Rōmānus (**Rōma**, *Rome*), *pertaining to Rome, Roman*

hūmānus (**homō**, *man*), *pertaining to man, human, humane*

urbānus (**urbs**, *city*), *urban, urbane*

mundānus (**mundus**, *world*), *worldly, mundane*

-icus, -ica, -icum (Eng. *-ic*)

domesticus (**domus**, *house*), *pertaining to the house, domestic*

pūblicus (**populus**, *people*), *pertaining to the people, public*

rūsticus (**rūs**, *country*), *rustic*

cīvicus (**cīvis**, *citizen*), *civic*

classicus (**classis, class**), *pertaining to the classes, of the highest class; classic*

句法补充

以下结构是为那些准备继续学习拉丁语的学生准备的。在本书的四十课正文中，我们已经见过其中的一些结构。虽然即使不借助句法归类就可以翻译，但这里最好还是将它们连同其他更困难的条目进行整理，这样做或许有所裨益。

材料属格

材料属格指一事物由以构成的材料。

pōculum aurī, *a goblet of gold*

Numerus **hostium** *crēscit*, *the number of the enemy is increasing.*

Mōns aquae *secūtus est et tempestās trēs nāvēs cīnxit aggere harēnae*, *a mountain of water followed and the storm surrounded three ships with a mound of sand.*

宾语属格

宾语属格依赖于一个有动词含义的名词作这个动词观念的宾语。它有时用 *for* 来翻译。

amor laudis, *love of praise (= amat laudem, he loves praise.)*

cupiditās pecūniae, *greed for money (= cupit pecūniam, he longs for money.)*

metus mortis, *fear of death (= metuit mortem, he fears death.)*

spēs salūtis, *hope for safety (= spērat salūtem, he hopes for safety.)*

Fēmina erat dux factī, *a woman was the leader of the enterprise (= dūxit factum.)*

laudātor temporis āctī, *a praiser of the past (= laudat tempus āctum.)*

目的与格

目的与格可以表示人或事物所服务的目的。关系与格(第三十八课)经常和目的与格连用,这一组合被称为“双与格”结构。

Petitiō mea tibi (关系与格) **summae cūrae** (目的与格) *est*, *my candidacy is (for) the greatest concern to you.*

Ea rēs mihi (关系与格) **summae voluptātī** (目的与格) *erat*, *that matter was for the greatest pleasure to me = gave me the greatest pleasure.*

Illī nōbīs (关系与格) **auxiliō** (目的与格) *vēnērunt*, *they came as an aid to us.*

Hōs librōs **dōnō** (目的与格) mīsit, *he sent these books as a gift.*

Hoc mē iuvat et **mihi** (关系与格) **mellī** (目的与格) est, *this gratifies me and is (as) honey to me.*

Optant locum **tēctō** (目的与格), *they desire a place for a roof (building).*

物主与格

物主与格与 **sum** 连用, 表示属有。

Liber est **mihi**, *a book is to me = I have a book.*

(对比: liber est **meus**, *the book is mine.*)

Illī maior turba clientium est, *that man has a greater throng of retainers.*

Sunt **tibi** animus et mōrēs, *you have a soul and character.*

Haec **eīs** semper erunt, *they will always have these things.*

Prudentia est illī **puellae**, *that girl has prudence.*

Ōvirgō, nōn **tibi** est vultus mortālis, *O maiden, you do not have the face of a mortal.*

Sī umquam **mihi** filius erit . . ., *if I ever have a son. . .*

指定夺格

指定夺格可以用来说明动词或形容词适用于哪个特定方面。

Hī omnēs **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus** inter sē differunt, *these all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws.*

Illī **virtūte** omnibus (与格) praestābant, *those men used to excel all in courage.*

Id genus erat intractābile **bellō**, *that race was unmanageable in war.*

Quis est praestantior aut **nōbilitāte** aut **probitāte** aut **studiō** optimārum artium? *Who is more outstanding in nobility or integrity or the pursuit of the finest arts?*

Ager bene cultus est ūber **ūsū** et ōrnātus **speciē**, *a field well cultivated is rich in usefulness and beautiful in appearance.*

Asia omnibus terrīs (dat.) antecellit **ūbertāte** agrōrum et **varietāte** frūctuum et **multitūdine** eārum quae exportantur, *Asia excels all lands in richness of fields and variety of fruits and large number of those things which are exported.*

原因夺格

原因夺格可以用来指原因或理由。

Miser **timōre** delīrat, *the wretched man is insane with fear.*

Corpora eōrum **metū** dēbilia sunt, *their bodies are weak from fear.*

Aper **dentibus** timētur, *the boar is feared because of his teeth.*

Nihil arduum mortālibus est; caelum ipsum **stultitiā** petimus, *nothing is (too) arduous for mortals; we seek the sky itself in our folly.*

Odiō tyrannī in exsilium fūgit, *because of his hatred of the tyrant he fled into exile.*

Bonī **amōre** virtūtis peccāre odērunt, *good men because of their love of virtue hate to sin.*

差异夺格

差异夺格与比较级和表示比较的副词连用,指示比较中的差别程度。

Tantō melius, *the better by so much = so much the better.*

Senex nōn facit ea quae iuvenis, at **multō** maiōra et meliōra facit, *an old man does not do the things which a young man does, but he does much greater and better things (greater by much).*

Multō ācrius iam vigilābō, *I shall now watch much more keenly.*

Rōmam **paucīs** post **diēbus** vēnistī, *you came to Rome a few days afterwards (afterwards by a few days).*

Aberat ab eā urbe **tribus mīlibus** passuum, *he was three miles from that city (was away by three miles).*

Bonae Athēnae **paulō** plūs artis adiēcērunt, *good Athens added a little more skill (more by a little).*

间接引语中的从句

在间接引语中,从句动词通常用虚拟式,即使它们在直接引语中是直陈式。

- { Lēgit librōs quōs mīserās, *he read the books which you had sent.*
- { Dīxit sē lēgisse librōs quōs **mīssissēs**, *he said that he had read the books which you had sent.*
- { Eī malī quī in urbe manent infirmī erunt sine duce, *those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*
- { Putō eōs malōs quī in urbe **maneant** infirmōs futūrōs esse sine duce, *I think that those evil men who remain in the city will be weak without their leader.*
- { Sī id crēdet, errābit. *If he believes this, he will be wrong.*
- { Dīcō sī id **crēdat** eum errātūrum esse. *I say that if he believes this he will be wrong.*

宾语不定式

补充不定式没有宾格主语(参见第六课),但是在把带有宾格主语的不定式

用作动词宾语时,它被称为宾语不定式。

Volunt venīre, *they wish to come.* (补充不定式)

Iussit eōs venīre, *he ordered them to come.* (宾语不定式)

Nōn possum loquī, *I cannot speak.* (补充不定式)

Nōn patitur mē loquī, *he does not permit me to speak.* (宾语不定式)

Nōn audet īre, *he does not dare to go.* (补充不定式)

Coēgērunt eum īre, *they forced him to go.* (宾语不定式)

词形总结

名词变格

第一变格法		第二变格法			第三变格法	
porta, -ae f., gate	amīcus, -ī m., friend	puer, -ī m., boy	ager, -grī m., field	dōnum, -ī n., gift	rēx, rēgis m., king	corpus, -oris n., body
单数						
主格 port-a	amīc-us ¹	puer	ager	dōn-um	rēx	corpus
属格 port-ae	amīc-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	dōn-ī	rēg-is	corpor-is
与格 port-ae	amīc-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	dōn-ō	rēg-ī	corpor-ī
宾格 port-am	amīc-um	puer-um	agr-um	dōn-um	rēg-em	corpus
夺格 port-ā	amīc-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō	dōn-ō	rēg-e	corpor-e
复数						
主格 port-ae	amīc-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī	dōn-a	rēg-ēs	corpor-a
属格 port-ārum	amīc-ōrum	puer-ōrum	agr-ōrum	dōn-ōrum	rēg-um	corpor-um
与格 port-īs	amīc-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	dōn-īs	rēg-ibus	corpor-ibus
宾格 port-ās	amīc-ōs	puer-ōs	agr-ōs	dōn-a	rēg-ēs	corpor-a
夺格 port-īs	amīc-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs	dōn-īs	rēg-ibus	corpor-ibus
第三变格法(I-词干)		第四变格法		第五变格法		
cīvis, -is m., citizen	urbs, -is f., city	mare, -is n., sea	frūctus, -ūs m., fruit	cornū, -ūs n., horn	diēs, -ēī m., day	
单数						
主格 cīv-is	urb-s	mar-e	frūct-us	corn-ū	di-ēs	
属格 cīv-is	urb-is	mar-is	frūct-ūs	corn-ūs	di-ēī	
与格 cīv-ī	urb-ī	mar-ī	frūct-uī	corn-ū	di-ēī	
宾格 cīv-em	urb-em	mar-e	frūct-um	corn-ū	di-em	
夺格 cīv-e	urb-e	mar-ī	frūct-ū	corn-ū	di-ē	
复数						
主格 cīv-ēs	urb-ēs	mar-ia	frūct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs	
属格 cīv-ium	urb-ium	mar-ium	frūct-uum	corn-uum	di-ērum	
与格 cīv-ibus	urb-ibus	mar-ibus	frūct-ibus	corn-ibus	di-ēbus	
宾格 cīv-ēs	urb-ēs	mar-ia	frūct-ūs	corn-ua	di-ēs	
夺格 cīv-ibus	urb-ibus	mar-ibus	frūct-ibus	corn-ibus	di-ēbus	

Vīs 是不规则的: Sg, N., *vīs*, G. (*vīs*), D. (*vī*), A. *vim*. Ab. *vī*; Pl. N. *vīrēs*, G. *vīrium*, D. *vīribus*, A. *vīrēs*, Ab. *vīribus*.

¹ 像 *amīcus* 这样的名词以及像 *magnus* 这样的阳性形容词的单数呼格以 *-e* 结尾。*filius* 和以 *-ius* 结尾的名称的单数呼格以 *-ī* 结尾 (*fīlī*, *Vergīlī*); 阳性形容词 *meus* 的单数呼格是 *mī*; 以 *-ius* 结尾的阳性形容词的单数呼格以 *-ie* 结尾 (*ēgregius*; *ēgregie*)。在其他情况下, 所有变格法的呼格都与主格形式相同。

形容词变格

第一和第二变格法

	-us, -a, -um			-er, -era, -erum; -er, -ra, -rum		
阳性	阴性 单数	中性	阳性	阴性 单数 ²	中性	
主格	magnus	magna	magnum	līber	lībera	līberum
属格	magnī	magnae	magnī	līberī	līberae	līberī
与格	magnō	magnae	magnō	līberō	līberae	līberō
宾格	magnum	magnam	magnum	līberum	līberam	līberum
夺格	magnō	magnā	magnō	līberō	līberā	līberō
	复数			单数 ²		
主格	magnī	magnae	magna	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
属格	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
与格	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
宾格	magnōs	magnās	magna	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
夺格	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

第三变格法

二尾	三尾		一尾		比较级 ⁵				
fortis, forte <i>brave</i>	ācer, ācris, ācre <i>keen, severe</i>		potēns ³ <i>powerful</i>		fortior, fortius <i>braver</i>				
阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性		
单数									
主格	fortis	forte	ācer	ācris	ācre	potēns	potēns	fortior	fortius
属格	fortis			ācris		potentis		fortiōris	
与格	fortī			ācrī		potentī		fortiōrī	
宾格	fortem	forte	ācrem	ācre	potentem	potēns		fortiōrem	fortius
夺格	fortī		ācrī		potentī			fortiōre	
复数									
主格	fortēs	fortia	ācrēs	ācria	potentēs	potentia		fortiōrēs	fortiōra
属格	fortium		ācrium		potentium			fortiōrum	
与格	fortibus		ācribus		potentibus			fortiōribus	
宾格	fortēs ⁴	fortia	ācres ⁴	ācria	potentēs ⁴	potentia		fortiōrēs	fortiōra
夺格	fortibus		ācribus		potentibus			fortiōribus	

² 复数形式遵循着单数的模式,只是要换成复数词尾。

³ 现在时分词遵循着 **potēns** 的变格方式,只是在句中作分词用时,其单数夺格以 **-e** 结尾。

⁴ 关于 **-īs** (复数宾格),参见第十六课。

⁵ 关于不规则的 **plūs**,参见第二十七课。

代词

指示词

	hic, <i>this</i>			ille, <i>that</i>		
	阳性	阴性	中性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数						
主格	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
属格	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius
与格	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi
宾格	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
夺格	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō
复数						
主格	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
属格	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
与格	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
宾格	hōs	hās	hāc	illōs	illās	illa
夺格	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

关系代词

疑问词⁶

强势代词

	quī, <i>who, which</i>			quis, <i>who?</i>		ipse, <i>himself, etc.</i>		
	阳性	阴性	中性	阳性和阴性	中性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数								
主格	quī	quae	quod	quis	quid	ipse	ipsa	ipsun
属格	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	cuius	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
与格	cui	cui	cui	cui	cui	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
宾格	quem	quam	quod	quem	quid	ipsum	ipsam	ipsun
夺格	quō	quā	quō	quō	quō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
复数								
主格	quī	quae	quae			ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
属格	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	(复数与关系代词同)		ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
与格	quibus	quibus	quibus			ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
宾格	quōs	quās	quae			ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
夺格	quibus	quibus	quibus			ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

⁶ 疑问形容词 *quī? quae? quod?* 意为 *what? which? what kind of?*, 它们与关系代词的变格相同。

代词

指示词

	is, this, that, he, she, it			idem, the same		
	阳性	阴性	中性	阳性	阴性	中性
单数						
主格	is	ea	id	īdem	eadem	idem
属格	eius	eius	eius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
与格	eī	eī	eī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
宾格	eum	eam	id	eundem	eandem	idem
夺格	eō	eā	eō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
复数						
主格	eī, iī	eae	ea	eīdem, īdem	eaedem	eadem
属格	eōrum	eārum	eōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
与格	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīsdem ⁷	eīsdem	eīsdem
宾格	eōs	eās	ea	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
夺格	eīs	eīs	eīs	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

	不规则形容词 ⁸ sōlus, alone, only			人称代词 ⁹		反身代词 ⁹
	阳性	阴性	中性	ego, I	tū, you	suī, himself, herself, itself
单数						
主格	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	ego	tū	——
属格	sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	meī	tuī	suī ¹⁰
与格	sōi	sōi	sōi	mihi	tibi	sibi
宾格	solum	solam	solum	mē	tē	sē ¹¹
夺格	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	mē	tē	sē ¹¹
复数						
主格	sōlī	sōlae	sōla	nōs	vōs	——
属格	sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum	nostrum nostrī	vestrum vestrī	suī
与格	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
宾格	sōlōs	sōlās	sōla	nōs	vōs	sē ¹¹
夺格	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē ¹¹

⁷ 也写作 *isdem*。

⁸ 类似的还有 *ūnus, tōtus, ūllus, nūllus, alius, alter, uter, neuter* (参见第九课)。

⁹ 除单数主格和复数主格以外,第一、第二人称代词的所有形式都可以用作反身代词。

¹⁰ 这些都只是反身形式。第三人称的非反身形式由 *is, ea, id* 提供(参见第十一课和第十三课)。

¹¹ *sēsē* 这一形式也很常见。

形容词的比较

原级	比较级	最高级
规则		
longus, -a, -um (<i>long</i>)	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -e (<i>brave</i>)	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlix, gen. fēlicis, (<i>happy</i>)	fēlicior, -ius	fēlicissimus, -a, -um
sapiēns, gen. sapientis (<i>wise</i>)	sapientior, -ius	sapientissimus, -a, -um
facilis, -e (<i>easy</i>)	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
līber, -era, -erum (<i>free</i>)	līberior, -ius	līberrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, -chra, -chrum (<i>beautiful</i>)	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre (<i>keen</i>)	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
不规则		
bonus, -a, -um (<i>good</i>)	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um (<i>large</i>)	maior, -ius	maximus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um (<i>bad</i>)	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um (<i>much</i>)	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um (<i>small</i>)	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
(prae, prō)	prior, -ius (<i>former</i>)	prīmus, -a, -um
superus, -a, -um (<i>that above</i>)	superior, -ius	summus (suprēmus), -a, -um

副词的比较

原级	比较级	最高级
规则		
longē (<i>far</i>)	longius	longissimē
fortiter (<i>bravely</i>)	fortius	fortissimē
fēliciter (<i>happily</i>)	fēlicius	fēlicissimē
sapienter (<i>wisely</i>)	sapientius	sapientissimē
facile (<i>easily</i>)	facilius	facillimē
līberē (<i>freely</i>)	līberius	līberrimē
pulchrē (<i>beautifully</i>)	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
ācritē (<i>keenly</i>)	ācrius	ācerrimē
不规则		
bene (<i>well</i>)	melius	optimē
magnopere (<i>greatly</i>)	magis	maximē
male (<i>badly</i>)	peius	pessimē
multum (<i>much</i>)	plūs	plūrimum
parum (<i>little</i>)	minus	minimē
(prae, prō)	prius (<i>before</i>)	prīmum; prīmō
diū (<i>a long time</i>)	diūtius	diūtissimē

数词

基数词	序数词	罗马数字
1. ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	I
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus, alter	II
3. trēs, tria	tertius	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	III; IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIII; IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIII; XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsīmus	XVIII
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsīmus	XVIII; XIX
20. vīgintī	vīcēsīmus	XX
21. vīgintī ūnus, ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsīmus prīmus	XXI
30. trīgintā	trīcēsīmus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	XXXX, XL
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	LXXX; XC
100. centum	centēsīmus	C
101. centum ūnus	centēsīmus prīmus	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēsīmus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus	D
600. sescentī	sescentēsīmus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēsīmus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēsīmus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	DCCCC
1000. mīlle	mīllēsīmus	M
2000. duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus	MM

数词的变格

Ūnus 的变格见第九课或前面的 sōlus。

Duo, trēs 和 mīlle 的变格见第十五课。

从 trecentī 到 nōngentī 的变格同 ducentī, -ae, -a。

序数词的变格同 prīmus, -a, -um。

其他形式不变格。

第一到第四变位法

主要部分

1st: laudō	laudāre	laudāvī	laudātum
2nd: moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
3rd: agō	agere	ēgī	āctum
4th: audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītum
3rd (-iō): capiō	capere	cēpī	captum

直陈式主动态

现在时

laudō	moneō	agō	audiō	capiō
laudās	monēs	agis	audīs	capis
laudat	monet	agit	audit	capit
laudāmus	monēmus	agimus	audīmus	capimus
laudātis	monētis	agitis	audītis	capitis
laudant	monent	agunt	audiunt	capiunt

未完成时

laudābam	monēbam	agēbam	audiēbam	capiēbam
laudābās	monēbās	agēbās	audiēbās	capiēbās
laudābat	monēbat	agēbat	audiēbat	capiēbat
laudābāmus	monēbāmus	agēbāmus	audiēbāmus	capiēbāmus
laudābātis	monēbātis	agēbātis	audiēbātis	capiēbātis
laudābant	monēbant	agēbant	audiēbant	capiēbant

将来时

laudābō	monēbō	agam	audiam	capiam
laudābis	monēbis	agēs	audiēs	capiēs
laudābit	monēbit	aget	audiet	capiet
laudābimus	monēbimus	agēmus	audiēmus	capiēmus
laudābitis	monēbitis	agētis	audiētis	capiētis
laudābunt	monēbunt	agent	audient	capient

完成时

laudāvī	monuī	ēgī	audīvī	cēpī
laudāvistī	monuistī	ēgistī	audīvistī	cēpistī
laudāvit	monuit	ēgit	audīvit	cēpit
laudāvīmus	monuīmus	ēgimus	audīvīmus	cēpīmus
laudāvistis	monuistis	ēgistis	audīvistis	cēpistis
laudāvērunt	monuērunt	ēgērunt	audīvērunt	cēpērunt

过去完成时

laudāveram	monueram	ēgeram	audīveram	cēperam
laudāverās	monuerās	ēgerās	audīverās	cēperās
laudāverat	monuerat	ēgerat	audīverat	cēperat
laudāverāmus	monuerāmus	ēgerāmus	audīverāmus	cēperāmus
laudāverātis	monuerātis	ēgerātis	audīverātis	cēperātis
laudāverant	monuerant	ēgerant	audīverant	cēperant

将来完成时

laudāverō	monuerō	ēgerō	audīverō	cēperō
laudāveris	monueris	ēgeris	audīveris	cēperis
laudāverit	monuerit	ēgerit	audīverit	cēperit
laudāverīmus	monuerīmus	ēgerīmus	audīverīmus	cēperīmus
laudāveritis	monueritis	ēgeritis	audīveritis	cēperitis
laudāverint	monuerint	ēgerint	audīverint	cēperint

虚拟式主动态

现在时

laudem	moneam	agam	audiam	capiam
laudēs	moneās	agās	audiās	capiās
laudet	moneat	agat	audiat	capiat
laudēmus	moneāmus	agāmus	audiāmus	capiāmus
laudētis	moneātis	agātis	audiātis	capiātis
laudent	moneant	agant	audiant	capiant

未完成时

laudārem	monērem	agerem	audīrem	caperem
laudārēs	monērēs	agerēs	audīrēs	caperēs
laudāret	monēret	ageret	audīret	caperet
laudārēmus	monērēmus	agerēmus	audīrēmus	caperēmus
laudārētis	monērētis	agerētis	audīrētis	caperētis
laudārent	monērent	agerent	audīrent	caperent

完成时

laudāverim	monuerim	ēgerim	audīverim	cēperim
laudāverīs	monuerīs	ēgerīs	audīverīs	cēperīs
laudāverit	monuerit	ēgerit	audīverit	cēperit
laudāverīmus	monuerīmus	ēgerīmus	audīverīmus	cēperīmus
laudāverītis	monuerītis	ēgerītis	audīverītis	cēperītis
laudāverint	monuerint	ēgerint	audīverint	cēperint

过去完成时

laudāvissē	monuissē	ēgissē	audīvissē	cēpissē
laudāvissēs	monuissēs	ēgissēs	audīvissēs	cēpissēs
laudāvisset	monuisset	ēgisset	audīvisset	cēpisset
laudāvissēmus	monuissēmus	ēgissēmus	audīvissēmus	cēpissēmus
laudāvissētis	monuissētis	ēgissētis	audīvissētis	cēpissētis
laudāvissent	monuissent	ēgissent	audīvissent	cēpissent

现在时命令式主动态

laudā	monē	age	audī	cape
laudāte	monēte	agite	audīte	capite

直陈式被动态

现在时

laudor	moneor	agor	audior	capior
laudāris(-re)	monēris(-re)	ageris(-re)	audīris(-re)	caperis(-re)
laudātur	monētur	agitur	audītur	capitur
laudāmur	monēmur	agimur	audīmur	capimur
laudāminī	monēminī	agiminī	audīminī	capiminī
laudantur	monentur	aguntur	audiuntur	capiuntur

未完成时

laudābar	monēbar	agēbar	audiēbar	capiēbar
laudābāris(-re)	monēbāris(-re)	agēbāris(-re)	audiēbāris(-re)	capiēbāris(-re)
laudābātur	monēbātur	agēbātur	audiēbātur	capiēbātur
laudābāmur	monēbāmur	agēbāmur	audiēbāmur	capiēbāmur
laudābāminī	monēbāminī	agēbāminī	audiēbāminī	capiēbāminī
laudābantur	monēbantur	agēbantur	audiēbantur	capiēbantur

将来时

laudābor	monēbor	agar	audiar	capiar
laudāberis(-re)	monēberis(-re)	agēris(-re)	audiēris(-re)	capiēris(-re)
laudābitur	monēbitur	agētur	audiētur	capiētur
laudābimur	monēbimur	agēmur	audiēmur	capiēmur
laudābiminī	monēbiminī	agēminī	audiēminī	capiēminī
laudābuntur	monēbuntur	agentur	audientur	cipientur

完成时

laudātus ¹² sum	monitus sum	āctus sum	audītus sum	captus sum
laudātus es	monitus es	āctus es	audītus es	captus es
laudātus est	monitus est	āctus est	audītus est	captus est
laudātī sumus	monitī sumus	āctī sumus	audītī sumus	captī sumus
laudātī estis	monitī estis	āctī estis	audītī estis	captī estis
laudātī sunt	monitī sunt	āctī sunt	audītī sunt	captī sunt

过去完成时

laudātus eram	monitus eram	āctus eram	audītus eram	captus eram
laudātus erās	monitus erās	āctus erās	audītus erās	captus erās
laudātus erat	monitus erat	āctus erat	audītus erat	captus erat
laudātī erāmus	monitī erāmus	āctī erāmus	audītī erāmus	captī erāmus
laudātī erātis	monitī erātis	āctī erātis	audītī erātis	captī erātis
laudātī erant	monitī erant	āctī erant	audītī erant	captī erant

将来完成时

laudātus erō	monitus erō	āctus erō	audītus erō	captus erō
laudātus eris	monitus eris	āctus eris	audītus eris	captus eris
laudātus erit	monitus erit	āctus erit	audītus erit	captus erit
laudātī erimus	monitī erimus	āctī erimus	audītī erimus	captī erimus
laudātī eritis	monitī eritis	āctī eritis	audītī eritis	captī eritis
laudātī erunt	monitī erunt	āctī erunt	audītī erunt	captī erunt

虚拟式被动态**现在时**

lauder	monear	agar	audiar	capiar
laudēris(-re)	moneāris(-re)	agāris(-re)	audiāris(-re)	capiāris(-re)
laudētur	moneātur	agātur	audiātur	capiātur
laudēmur	moneāmur	agāmur	audiāmur	capiāmur
laudēminī	moneāminī	agāminī	audiāminī	capiāminī
laudentur	moneantur	agantur	audiantur	capiantur

未完成时

laudārer	monērer	agerer	audīrer	caperer
laudārēris(-re)	monērēris(-re)	agerēris(-re)	audīrēris(-re)	caperēris(-re)
laudārētur	monērētur	agerētur	audīrētur	caperētur
laudārēmur	monērēmur	agerēmur	audīrēmur	caperēmur
laudārēminī	monērēminī	agerēminī	audīrēminī	caperēminī
laudārentur	monērentur	agerentur	audīrentur	caperentur

¹² 分词 **laudātus** (-a, -um), **monitus** (-a, -um) 等等被用作谓形容词, 所以它们的词尾要发生变化, 以同主语保持一致。

完成时

laudātus sim	monitus sim	āctus sim	audītus sim	captus sim
laudātus sīs	monitus sīs	āctus sīs	audītus sīs	captus sīs
laudātus sit	monitus sit	āctus sit	audītus sit	captus sit
laudātī sīmus	monitī sīmus	āctī sīmus	audītī sīmus	captī sīmus
laudātī sītis	monitī sītis	āctī sītis	audītī sītis	captī sītis
laudātī sint	monitī sint	āctī sint	audītī sint	captī sint

过去完成时

laudātus essem	monitus essem	āctus essem	audītus essem	captus essem
laudātus essēs	monitus essēs	āctus essēs	audītus essēs	captus essēs
laudātus esset	monitus esset	āctus esset	audītus esset	captus esset
laudātī essēmus	monitī essēmus	āctī essēmus	audītī essēmus	captī essēmus
laudātī essētis	monitī essētis	āctī essētis	audītī essētis	captī essētis
laudātī essent	monitī essent	āctī essent	audītī essent	captī essent

现在时命令式被动态

在古典拉丁语中,被动形式的命令式主要见于异态动词(形式见第三十四课)。

分词**主动态**

现在时 laudāns	monēns	agēns	audiēns	capiēns
将来时 laudātūrus	monitūrus	āctūrus	audītūrus	captūrus

被动态

完成时 laudātus	monitus	āctus	audītus	captus
将来时 laudandus	monendus	agendus	audiendus	capiendus

不定式**主动态**

现在时 laudāre	monēre	agere	audīre	capere
完成时 laudāvisse	monuisse	ēgisse	audīvisse	cēpisse
将来时 laudātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	āctūrus esse	audītūrus esse	captūrus esse

被动态

现在时 laudārī	monērī	agī	audīrī	capī
完成时 laudātus esse	monitus esse	āctus esse	audītus esse	captus esse
将来时 laudātum īrī	monitum īrī	āctum īrī	audītum īrī	captum īrī

异态动词**主要部分**

第一变位法	hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum (<i>urge</i>)
第二变位法	fateor	fatērī	fassus sum (<i>confess</i>)
第三变位法	sequor	sequī	secūtus sum (<i>follow</i>)
第四变位法	mōlior	mōlīrī	mōlītus sum (<i>work at</i>)
第三变位法 (-iō)	patior	patī	passus sum (<i>suffer</i>)

直陈式

现在时

hortor	fateor	sequor	mōlior	patior
hortāris(-re)	fatēris(-re)	sequeris(-re)	mōliris(-re)	pateris(-re)
hortātur	fatētur	sequitur	mōlītur	patitur
hortāmur	fatēmur	sequimur	mōlīmur	patimur
hortāminī	fatēminī	sequiminī	mōlīminī	patiminī
hortantur	fatentur	sequuntur	mōliuntur	patiuntur

未完成时

hortābar	fatēbar	sequēbar	mōliēbar	patiēbar
hortābāris(-re)	fatēbāris(-re)	sequēbāris(-re)	mōliēbāris(-re)	patiēbāris(-re)
hortābātur	fatēbātur	sequēbātur	mōliēbātur	patiēbātur
hortābāmur	fatēbāmur	sequēbāmur	mōliēbāmur	patiēbāmur
hortābāminī	fatēbāminī	sequēbāminī	mōliēbāminī	patiēbāminī
hortābantur	fatēbantur	sequēbantur	mōliēbantur	patiēbantur

将来时

hortābor	fatēbor	sequar	mōliar	patiar
hortāberis(-re)	fatēberis(-re)	sequēris(-re)	mōliēris(-re)	patiēris(-re)
hortābitur	fatēbitur	sequētur	mōliētur	patiētur
hortābimur	fatēbimur	sequēmur	mōliēmur	patiēmur
hortābiminī	fatēbiminī	sequēminī	mōliēminī	patiēminī
hortābuntur	fatēbuntur	sequentur	mōlientur	patientur

完成时

hortātus sum	fassus sum	secūtus sum	mōlītus sum	passus sum
hortātus es	fassus es	secūtus es	mōlītus es	passus es
hortātus est	fassus est	secūtus est	mōlītus est	passus est
hortātī sumus	fassī sumus	secūtī sumus	mōlītī sumus	passī sumus
hortātī estis	fassī estis	secūtī estis	mōlītī estis	passī estis
hortātī sunt	fassī sunt	secūtī sunt	mōlītī sunt	passī sunt

过去完成时

hortātus eram	fassus eram	secūtus eram	mōlītus eram	passus eram
hortātus erās	fassus erās	secūtus erās	mōlītus erās	passus erās
hortātus erat	fassus erat	secūtus erat	mōlītus erat	passus erat
hortātī erāmus	fassī erāmus	secūtī erāmus	mōlītī erāmus	passī erāmus
hortātī erātis	fassī erātis	secūtī erātis	mōlītī erātis	passī erātis
hortātī erant	fassī erant	secūtī erant	mōlītī erant	passī erant

将来完成时

hortātus erō	fassus erō	secūtus erō	mōlītus erō	passus erō
hortātus eris	fassus eris	secūtus eris	mōlītus eris	passus eris
hortātus erit	fassus erit	secūtus erit	mōlītus erit	passus erit
hortātī erimus	fassī erimus	secūtī erimus	mōlītī erimus	passī erimus
hortātī eritis	fassī eritis	secūtī eritis	mōlītī eritis	passī eritis
hortātī erunt	fassī erunt	secūtī erunt	mōlītī erunt	passī erunt

虚拟式

现在时

horter	fatear	sequar	mōliar	patiar
hortēris(-re)	fateāris(-re)	sequāris(-re)	mōliāris(-re)	patiāris(-re)
hortētur	fateātur	sequātur	mōliātur	patiātur
hortēmur	fateāmur	sequāmur	mōliāmur	patiāmur
hortēminī	fateāminī	sequāminī	mōliāminī	patiāminī
hortentur	fateantur	sequantur	mōliantur	patiantur

未完成时

hortārer	fatērer	sequerer	mōlīrer	paterer
hortārēris(-re)	fatērēris(-re)	sequerēris(-re)	mōlīrēris(-re)	paterēris(-re)
hortārētur	fatērētur	sequerētur	mōlīrētur	paterētur
hortārēmur	fatērēmur	sequerēmur	mōlīrēmur	paterēmur
hortārēminī	fatērēminī	sequerēminī	mōlīrēminī	paterēminī
hortārentur	fatērentur	sequerentur	mōlīrentur	paterentur

完成时

hortātus sim	fassus sim	secūtus sim	mōlītus sim	passus sim
hortātus sīs	fassus sīs	secūtus sīs	mōlītus sīs	passus sīs
hortātus sit	fassus sit	secūtus sit	mōlītus sit	passus sit
hortātī sīmus	fassī sīmus	secūtī sīmus	mōlītī sīmus	passī sīmus
hortātī sītis	fassī sītis	secūtī sītis	mōlītī sītis	passī sītis
hortātī sint	fassī sint	secūtī sint	mōlītī sint	passī sint

过去完成时

hortātus essem	fassus essem	secūtus essem	mōlītus essem	passus essem
hortātus essēs	fassus essēs	secūtus essēs	mōlītus essēs	passus essēs
hortātus esset	fassus esset	secūtus esset	mōlītus esset	passus esset
hortātī essēmus	fassī essēmus	secūtī essēmus	mōlītī essēmus	passī essēmus
hortātī essētis	fassī essētis	secūtī essētis	mōlītī essētis	passī essētis
hortātī essent	fassī essent	secūtī essent	mōlītī essent	passī essent

hortāre
hortāminī

fatēre
fatēminī

现在时命令式

sequere
sequiminī

mōlire
mōlīminī

patere
patiminī

分词

现在时	fatēns	sequēns	mōliēns	patiēns
完成时	fassus	secūtus	mōlītus	passus
将来时	fassūrus	secūtūrus	mōlītūrus	passūrus
将来时被动态(动形词)	fatendus	sequendus	mōliendus	patiendus

不定式

现在时	fatērī	sequī	mōlīrī	patī
完成时	fassus esse	secūtus esse	mōlītus esse	passus esse
将来时	fassūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	mōlītūrus esse	passūrus esse

不规则动词**主要部分**

sum	esse	fuī	futūrum	(be)
possum	posse	potuī		(be able, can)
volō	velle	voluī		(wish, be willing)
nōlō	nōlle	nōluī		(not to wish, be unwilling)
mālō	mālle	māluī		(prefer)
eō	īre	īī	itum	(go)

直陈式¹³

现在时

sum	possum	volō	nōlō	mālō	eō
es	potes	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	īs
est	potest	vult	nōn vult	māvult	it
sumus	possumus	volumus	nolumus	mālumus	īmus
estis	potestis	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	ītis
sunt	possunt	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	eunt

未完成时

eram	poteram	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	ībam
erās	poterās	volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	ībās
erat	poterat	volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	ībat
erāmus	poterāmus	volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	ībāmus
erātis	poterātis	volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	ībātis
erant	poterant	volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	ībant

将来时

erō	poterō	volam	nōlam	mālam	ībō
eris	poteris	volēs	nōlēs	mālēs	ībīs
erit	poterit	volet	nōlet	mālet	ībit
erimus	poterimus	volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus	ībimus
eritis	poteritis	volētis	nōlētis	mālētis	ībitis
erunt	poterunt	volent	nōlent	mālent	ībunt

完成时

fuī	potuī	voluī	nōluī	māluī	īī
fuiſtī	potuiſtī	voluiſtī	nōluistī	māluistī	īſtī
fuit	potuit	voluit	nōluit	māluit	īit
fuiſmus	potuimus	voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus	iimus
fuiſtis	potuistis	voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis	īſtis
fuērunt	potuērunt	voluērunt	nōluērunt	māluērunt	iērunt

过去完成时

fueram	potueram	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	ieram
fuerās	potuerās	voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās	ierās
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

将来完成时

fuero	potuero	voluero	nōluero	māluero	iero
fueris	potueris	volueris	nōlueris	mālueris	ieris
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

虚拟式

现在时

ſim	poſſim	velim	nōlim	mālim	eam
ſīs	poſſīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs	eās
ſit	poſſit	velit	nōlit	mālit	eat
ſīmus	poſſīmus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus	eāmus
ſītis	poſſītis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis	eātis
ſint	poſſint	velint	nōlint	mālint	eant

¹³ 注意,这种列表中的动词都没有被动态(只有 eō 有独特的非人称被动态,不过本书中没有用到)。

未完成时

essem	possem	vellem	nōllem	māllem	īrem
essēs	possēs	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs	īrēs
esset	posset	vellet	nōllet	māllet	īret
essēmus	possēmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus	īrēmus
essētis	possētis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis	īrētis
essent	possent	vellent	nōllent	māllent	īrent

完成时

fuerim	potuerim	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim	ierim
fuerīs	potuerīs	voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs	ierīs
fuerit	potuerit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit	ierit
fuerīmus	potuerīmus	voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus	ierīmus
fuerītis	potuerītis	voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis	ierītis
fuerint	potuerint	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint	ierint

过去完成时

fuissem	potuissem	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem	īsem
fuisēs	potuisēs	voluisēs	nōluisēs	māluisēs	īssēs
fuisset	potuisset	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset	īssēt
fuissemus	potuissemus	voluissemus	nōluissemus	māluissemus	īssēmus
fuissetis	potuissetis	voluissetis	nōluissetis	māluissetis	īssētis
fuisissent	potuisissent	voluisissent	nōluisissent	māluisissent	īssent

现在时命令式

es	_____	_____	nōlī	_____	ī
este	_____	_____	nōlīte	_____	īte

分词

现在时——	potēns	volēns	nōlēns	_____	iēns (<i>gen. euntis</i>)
完成时——	_____	_____	_____	_____	itum
将来时utūrus	_____	_____	_____	_____	itūrus
动形词——	_____	_____	_____	_____	eundus

不定式

现在时 esse	posse	velle	nōlle	mālle	īre
完成时 fuisse	potuisse	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse	īsse
将来时 futūrus esse or fore	_____	_____	_____	_____	itūrus esse

不规则: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear, carry**直陈式**

主动态	现在时		未完成时		将来时	
	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
ferō	feror	feror	ferēbam	ferēbar	feram	ferar
fers	ferris(-re)	ferris(-re)	ferēbās	ferēbāris(-re)	ferēs	ferēris(-re)
fert	fertur	fertur	ferēbat	ferēbātur	feret	ferētur
ferimus	ferimur	ferimur	ferēbāmus	ferēbāmur	ferēmus	ferēmur
fertis	feriminī	feriminī	ferēbātis	ferēbāminī	ferētis	ferēminī
ferunt	feruntur	feruntur	ferēbant	ferēbantur	ferent	ferentur

完成时		过去完成时		将来完成时	
主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
tulī	lātus sum	tuleram	lātus eram	tulerō	lātus erō
tulistī	lātus es	tulerās	lātus erās	tuleris	lātus eris
tulit	lātus est	tulerat	lātus erat	tulerit	lātus erit
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

虚拟式					
现在时		未完成时		完成时	
主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
feram	ferar	ferrem	ferrer	tulerim	lātus sim
ferās	ferāris(-re)	ferrēs	ferrēris(-re)	tulerīs	lātus sīs
ferat	ferātur	ferret	ferrētur	tulerit	lātus sit
ferāmus	ferāmur	ferrēmus	ferrēmur	etc.	etc.
ferātis	ferāminī	ferrētis	ferrēminī		
ferant	ferantur	ferrent	ferrentur		
				过去完成时	
				tulisse	lātus essem
				tulissēs	lātus essēs
				tulisset	lātus esset
				etc.	etc.

现在时命令式		分词		不定式	
主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态	主动态	被动态
fer	——	现在时 ferēns	——	ferre	ferrī
ferte	——	完成时 ——	lātus	tulisse	lātus esse
		将来时 lātūrus	ferendus	lātūrus esse	lātum irrī

不规则: *fīō, fierī, factus sum to happen, become; be made, be done*

直陈式

现在时	未完成时	将来时	完成时	过去完成时	将来完成时
fīō	fīēbam	fīam	factus sum	factus eram	factus erō
fīs	fīēbās	fīēs	factus es	factus erās	factus eris
fīt	fīēbat	fīet	factus est	factus erat	factus erit
fīmus	fīēbāmus	fīēmus	factī sumus	factī erāmus	factī erimus
fītis	fīēbātis	fīētis	factī estis	factī erātis	factī eritis
fīunt	fīēbant	fīent	factī sunt	factī erant	factī erunt

虚拟式

现在时	未完成时	完成时	过去完成时
fīam	fierem	factus sim	factus essem
fīās	fierēs	factus sīs	factus essēs
fīat	fieret	factus sit	factus esset
fīāmus	fierēmus	factī sīmus	factī essēmus
fīātis	fierētis	factī sītis	factī essētis
fīant	fierent	factī sint	factī essent

分词

现在时	不定式
——	fierī
完成时 factus	factus esse
将来时 faciendus	factum irrī
命令式:	fī, fīte

英拉词汇表

动词后带括号的阿拉伯数字(1)表示,这是一个规则的第一变位法动词,主要部分的词尾依次为-āre, -āvī, -ātum。关于前缀和后缀,参见附录中的列表。关于拉丁词更完整的含义,参见拉英词汇表。

A

abandon, relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum

able (be), possum, posse, potuī

about (concerning), dē + *abl.*

absolute ruler, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*

abundance, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

accomplish, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be**

accomplished, fīo, fierī, factus sum

across, trāns + *acc.*

advice, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*

advise, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum

affect, adficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum

afraid (be), metuō, -ere, -uī

after, post + *acc.*

afterwards, postea

after all, postrēmum

again, iterum

against, contrā + *acc.*

age, aetās, -tātis, *f.*

alas, heu, vae

all, omnis, -e

alone, sōlus, -a, -um

also, quoque

although, cum + *subj.*

always, semper

among, inter + *acc.*

ancestors, maiōrēs, maiōrum, *m. pl.*

ancient, antīquus, -a, -um

and, et, -que, ac, atque

anger, īra, -ae, *f.*

angry, īrātus, -a, -um

animal, animal, -mālis, *n.*

announce, nūntiō (1)

another, alius, -a, -ud

answer, respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum

any, ūllus, -a, -um

any (anyone, anything, after sī, nisi, nē, num), quis, quid

argument, argūmentum, -ī, *n.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*

arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

arrest, comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsum

arrogant, superbus, -a, -um

art, ars, artis, *f.*

as, ut + *indic.*

as . . . as possible, quam + *superlative*

Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*

ask, rogō (1)

assure (I assure you, you may be assured), use
personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g., tibi)

at (= time), *abl. of time; (= place), loc. of names of cities*

Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

attack, oppugnō (1)

author, auctor, -tōris, *m.*

avert, āvertō, -ere, -ī, -versum

away from, ab + *abl.*

B

bad, malus, -a, -um

band, manus, -ūs, *f.*

banish, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum

base, turpis, -e

be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrum

beard, barba, -ae, *f.*

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum; bellus, -a, -um

beauty, fōrma, -ae, *f.*

because, quod

become, fiō, fierī, factus sum

before, ante + *acc.*

beg, ōrō (1)

began, coepī, coepisse, coeptum (*pres. system supplied by incipiō*)

begin, incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (*see began above*)

believe, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum

benefit, beneficium, -ī, *n.*

best, optimus, -a, -um

better, melior, -ius

blind, caecus, -a, -um

body, corpus, -poris, *n.*

(be) born, nāscor, -ī, nātus sum

book, liber, -brī, *m.*

both . . . and, et . . . et

boy, puer, puerī, *m.*

brave, fortis, -e

brief, brevis, -e.

bright, clārus, -a, -um

bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum

bring (back), referō, -ferre, -ttulī, -lātum

brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*

bull, bōs, bovis, *m./f.*

but, sed, at

by (= agent), ā or ab + *abl.*;

(= means), *simple abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -saris, *m.*

call, vocō (1); appellō (1)

can, possum, posse, potuī

capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum

care, cūra, -ae, *f.*

certain (definite, sure), certus, -a, -um;

(*indef.*) quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (*pron.*) or quoddam (*adj.*)

certainly, certē

change, mūtō (1)

character, mōrēs, mōrum, *m. pl.*

cheer, recreō (1)

Cicero, Cicerō, -rōnis, *m.*

citizen, cīvis, -is, *m./f.*

citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*

city, urbs, urbis, *f.*

come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum

come back, reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum

comfort, sōlācium, -ī, *n.*

command (*noun*), imperium, -ī, *n.*;

(*vb.*), imperō (1)

common, commūnis, -e

commonwealth, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*

compare, comparō (1)

complain, queror, -ī, questus sum

concerning, dē + *abl.*

confess, fateor, -ērī, fassus sum

conquer, superō (1); vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum

conspirators, coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

constellation, sīdus, -deris, *n.*

consul, cōsul, -sulis, *m.*

country, patria, -ae, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*

courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

create, creō (1)

custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*

crime, scelus, -leris, *n.*

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*

dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum

daughter, filia, -ae, *f. (dat. and abl. pl. filiabus)*

day, diēs, -ēī, *m.*

dear, cārus, -a, -um

death, mors, mortis, *f.*
dedicate, dēdicō (1)
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -ī, -fēnsūm
delay, mora, -ae, *f.*
delight, dēlectō (1)
deny, negō (1)
depart, discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūm; abeō, -īre, -ī, -itum
deprived of (be), careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
descendant, nepōs, -pōtis, *m.*
desire (vb.), cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; dēsīderō (1); (*noun*), voluptās, -tātis, *f.*
despise, contemnō, -ere, -temp̄sī, -temptum
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
destruction, exitium, -ī, *n.*
die, morior, -ī, mortuus sum
difficult, difficilis, -e
dignity, dignitās, -tātis, *f.*
dine, cēnō (1)
dinner, cēna, -ae, *f.*
discover, reperiō, -īre, -pperī, -pertum
disgraceful, turpis, -e
dissimilar, dissimilis, -e
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum; **be done**, fīō, fierī, factus sum
doctor, medica, -ae, *f.*; medicus, -ī, *m.*
drag, trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum
dread (vb.), metuō, -ere, -uī; (*noun*), metus, -ūs, *m.*
drive out, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum

E

eagerness, studium, -iī, *n.*
ear, auris, -is, *f.*
easy, facilis, -e
eight, octō
either, uter, utra, utrum
either . . . or, aut . . . aut
eleven, undecim
emperor, imperātor, -tōris, *m.*
end, fīnis, -is, *m.*
endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum; patior, -ī, passus sum
enemy, hostis, -is, *m.* (*usually pl.*)
enjoy, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.*
enjoyment, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
enough, satis
entire, tōtus, -a, -um

entrust, committō, -erē, -mīsī, -missum
envy, (be) envious, invidēō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum + *dat.*
err, errō (1)
esteem, dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum
even, etiam; **not even**, nē . . . quidem
ever, umquam
every(one), omnis, -e
evil (adj.), malus, -a, -um; (*noun*), malum, -ī, *n.*
exhibit, ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum
expect, exspectō (1)
expel, expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum
eye, oculus, -ī, *m.*

F

face, vultus, -ūs, *m.*
faith, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
faithful, fidēlis, -e
fall, cadō, -ere, cecidī, casūrum
false, falsus, -a, -um
fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*
family, familia, -ae, *f.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
father, pater, -tris, *m.*
fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*; vitium, -iī, *n.*
fear (vb.), timeō, -ēre, -uī; (*noun*), metus, -ūs, *m.*; timor, -mōris, *m.*
feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsūm
feeling, sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*
ferocious, ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis
few, paucī, -ae, -a (*pl.*)
fidelity, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
fierce, ācer, ācris, ācre; ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um
finally, dēnique
find, inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum
first (adj.), prīmus, -a, -um; (*adv.*) prīmum, prīmō
five, quīnque
flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum
foolish, stultus, -a, -um
for (conj.), nam, enim; (= **since, because**), quod, quoniam; (*prep.*), prō + *abl.*; *often simply the dat. case.*
force, vīs, vīs, *f.*
forces (troops), cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
forgive, ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + *dat.*
former, prior, prius
fortunate, fortunātus, -a, -um

fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
forum, forum -ī, *n.*
four, quattuor
free (*vb.*), liberō (1); (*adj.*), liber, -era, -erum
freedom, libertās, -tātis, *f.*
freely, liberē
friend, amīca, -ae, *f.*; amīcus, -ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
friendship, amīcītia, -ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
from (away), ab; (**out**) ex; (**down**) dē: *all + abl.*
fruit, frūctus, -ūs, *m.*
full, plēnus, -a, -um

G

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; imperātor, -tōris, *m.*
gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum
(be) glad, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
go, eō, īre, īī, itum
go astray, errō (1)
go away, abeō, -īre, -īī, -itum
god, deus, -ī, *m.* (*voc. sg. deus, nom. pl. deī or dī, dat. and abl. pl. dīs*)
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl. deābus*)
good, bonus, -a, -um
gratitude, grātia, -ae, *f.*
great, magnus, -a, -um
greedy, avārus, -a, -um
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um; **a Greek**, Graecus, -ī, *m.*
grieve, doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
ground, humus, -ī, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
guard, custōdia, -ae, *f.*

H

hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*
happy, beātus, -a, -um; fēlīx, *gen. fēlīcis*
harm, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*
harsh, dūrus, -a, -um; acerbus, -a, -um
have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
he, is; *often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.*
head, caput, -pitis, *n.*

healthy, sānus, -a, -um
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
heart (in one's), *use personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g., mihi, tibi)*
heavy, gravis, -e
help (*vb.*), adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum;
(noun), auxiliū, -iī, *n.*
her (*possessive*) eius (*not reflexive*); suus, -a, -um
(reflexive)
herself, suī (*reflexive*); ipsa (*intensive*)
hesitate, dubitō (1)
high, altus, -a, -um
higher, altior, -ius; superior, -ius
himself, suī (*reflexive*); ipse (*intensive*)
his, eius (*not reflexive*); suus, -a, -um (*reflexive*)
hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*; **at home**, domī;
(to) home, domum; **from home**, domō
honor, honor, -nōris, *m.*
hope (*noun*), spēs, -eī, *f.*; (*vb.*), spērō (1)
horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, casa, -ae, *f.*
however, autem (*postpositive*)
how great, quantus, -a, -um
how many, quot
human, hūmānus, -a, -um
human being, homō, -minis, *m.*
humane, hūmānus, -a, -um
humble, humilis, -e
hundred, centum
hurt, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*

I

I, ego, meī; *often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*
if, sī; if . . . not, nisi
ill, malum, -ī, *n.*
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um
immortal, immortālis, -e
in, in + *abl.*
infancy, īnfantia, -ae, *f.*
injustice, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
into, in + *acc.*
invite, invitō (1)
iron, ferrum, -ī, *n.*
it, is, ea, id; *often indicated only by personal ending of vb.*

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*
itself, suī (*reflexive*); ipsum (*intensive*)

J

join, iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum
judge, iūdex, -dicis, *m.*
judgment, iūdicium, -iī, *n.*
just, iūstus, -a, -um

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre
keenly, ācriter
kindness, beneficium, -iī, *n.*
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kiss, bāsium, -iī, *n.*
knee, genū, -ūs, *n.*
know, sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum; **not know**, nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
knowledge, scientia, -ae, *f.*

L

labor, labor, -bōris, *m.*
lack, careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum + *abl.*
land, patria, -ae, *f.*; terra, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um
Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um
law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*
learn (*in the academic sense*), discō, -ere, didicī;
 (*get information*), cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum
leave, abeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
left, sinister, -tra, -trum
leisure, ōtium, -iī, *n.*
let (someone do something), *express this with jussive subj.*
letter (epistle), litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
liberty, libertās, -tātis, *f.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
light, lūx, lūcis, *f.*
listen (to), audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
literature, litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
little, parvus, -a, -um; **little book**, libellus, -ī, *m.*
live, vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum; **live one's life**, vītam agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
long (for a long time), diū

lose, āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum
love (*vb.*), amō (1); (*noun*), amor, amōris, *m.*
loyal, fidēlis, -e
luck, fortūna, -ae, *f.*

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, -minis, *m.*;
often expressed by masc. of an adj.
many, multī, -ae, -a
master, magister, -trī, *m.*; dominus, -ī, *m.*
may (*indicating permission to do something*), licet + *dat.* + *inf.*
me. See **I**.
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
mercy, clēmentia, -ae, *f.*
method, modus, -ī, *m.*
middle, medius, -a, -um
mind, mēns, mentis, *f.*
mix, misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtum
mob, vulgus, -ī, *n.* (*sometimes m.*)
modest, pudīcus, -a, -um
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
monument, monumentum, -ī, *n.*
more, plūs, plūris; *comp. of adj. or adv.*
most, plūrimus, -a, -um; *superl. of adj. or adv.*
mother, māter, -tris, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
much, multus, -a, -um
murder, necō (1)
must, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; *or, for passive, use passive periphrastic*
my, meus, -a, -um (*m. voc. sg. mī*)
myself (*reflexive*), meī, mihi, *etc.*;
 (*intensive*) ipse, ipsa

N

name, nōmen, -minis, *n.*
narrate, narrō (1)
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
neglect, neglegō, -ere, -glēxī, -glēctum
neighbor, vīcīna, -ae, *f.*; vīcīnus, -ī, *m.*
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque
never, numquam
nevertheless, tamen
new, novus, -a, -um

night, nox, noctis, *f.*
nine, novem
no, nūllus, -a, -um
nobody, no one, nēmō, *m.f.*; *for decl. see Lat.-Eng. Vocab.*
not, nōn; nē *with jussive, jussive noun, and purpose clauses; ut with fear clauses*
nothing, nihil (*indecl.*), *n.*
now, nunc
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.*
offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum
office, officium, -iī, *n.*
often, saepe
old, antīquus, -a, -um; senex, senis
old man, senex, senis, *m.*
on (= *place*), in + *abl.*; (= *time*), *simple abl.*
on account of, propter + *acc.*
once, semel
one, ūnus, -a, -um
only (*adv.*), tantum; (*adj.*), sōlus, -a, -um
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*; (**in one's opinion**, use *personal pron. in dat. case (dat. of reference, e.g., mihi, tibi)*)
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
or, aut
oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
orator, ōrātor, -tōris, *m.*
order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum; imperō (1) + *dat.*
(in) order to, ut (+ *subj.*); **in order not to**, nē (+ *subj.*)
other, another, alius, alia, aliud;
the other (of two), alter, -era, -erum;
(all) the other, cēterī, -ae, -a
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum; *or, for passive, use passive periphrastic*
our, noster, -tra, -trum
out of, ex + *abl.*
overcome, superō (1)
overpower, opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum
own, his own, suus, -a, -um; **my own**, meus, -a, -um

P

pain, dolor, -lōris, *m.*
part, pars, partis, *f.*
passage, locus, -ī, *m.*
passion, cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*

patience, patientia, -ae, *f.*
pay. *See penalty.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
penalty, poena, -ae, *f.*; **pay the penalty**, poenās dare
people, populus, -ī, *m.*
perceive, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū
perhaps, fortasse
period (of time), aetās, -tātis, *f.*
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum
permit, patior, -ī, passus sum;
it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit (*impers.*)
perpetual, perpetuus, -a, -um
persuade, persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsū + *dat.*
philosopher, sapiēns, -entis, *m.*; philosopha, -ae, *f.*;
 philosophus, -ī, *m.*
philosophy, philosophia, -ae, *f.*
place, locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.*, loca, -ōrum, *n.*
plan, cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + *dat.*; *with a request*, amābō tē
pleasure, voluptās, -tātis, *f.*
plebeians, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
plot, īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
poem, carmen, -minis, *n.*
poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*
(as . . . as) possible (or greatest possible, brightest possible, etc.), quam + *superl. of adj. or adv.*
power (command), imperium, -iī, *n.*
powerful, potēns, *gen. potentis*
praise (*vb.*), laudō (1); (*noun*), laus, laudis, *f.*
prefer, mālō, mālle, mālū
prepare, parō (1)
preserve, cōservō (1)
press, premō, -ere, pressī, pressum
pretty, bellus, -a, -um; pulcher, -chra, -chrum
priest, sacerdos, -dōtis, *m.*
prohibit, prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
promise, prōmitto, -ere, mīsī, -missum
provided that, dummodo + *subj.*
pupil, discipula, -ae, *f.*; discipulus, -ī, *m.*
pursuit, studium, -iī, *n.*
put, pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*
quick, celer, -eris, -ere
quickly, celeriter, cito

R

raise, tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum
rather: *express this with comp. degree of adj. or adv.*
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum
real, vērus, -a, -um
reason, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*
receive, accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
recite, recitō (1)
recognize, recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum
refuse, recūsō (1)
regain, recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum
region, loca, -ōrum, *n.*
remain, remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum
report, nūntiō (1)
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*
rescue, ēripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum
rest, the rest, cēterī, -ae, -a
restrain, teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum
return (go back), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
return (in return for), prō + *abl.*
riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
right (noun), iūs, iūris, *n.*; (*adj.*), dexter, -tra, -trum
road, via, -ae, *f.*
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um
Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*
rose, rosa, -ae, *f.*
rule (noun), regnum, -ī, *n.*; (*vb.*), regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum
rumor, rūmor, -mōris, *m.*
run, currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum

S

sad, tristis, -e
safe, salvus, -a, -um
safety, salūs, -lūtis, *f.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*
sake (for the sake of), *gen. + causā*
salt, sāl, salis, *m.*
same, īdem, eadem, idem
satisfy, satiō (1)
save, servō (1); cōnservō (1)
say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
school, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
sea, mare, -is, *n.*
second, secundus, -a, -um; alter, -era, -erum
see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum

seek, petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītum
seem, videor, -ērī, vīsus sum
seize, rapiō, -ere, -uī, raptum
senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum
serious, gravis, -e
serve, serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum + *dat.*
service, officium, -iī, *n.*
seven, septem
she, ea; *often indicated only by the personal ending of vb.*
ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
short, brevis, -e
show, ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum
shun, vītō (1); fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum
sign, signum, -ī, *n.*
similar, similis, -e
since, quoniam + *indic.*; cum + *subj.*; *abl. abs.*
sister, soror, -rōris, *f.*
six, sex
skill, ars, artis, *f.*
slave, servus, -ī, *m.*; **slavegirl**, serva, -ae, *f.*
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, *f.*
sleep (vb.), dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum; (*noun*), somnus, -ī, *m.*
slender, gracilis, -e
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, ita, sīc (*usually with vbs.*), tam (*usually with adjs. and advs.*); **so great**, tantus, -a, -um
soldier, mīles, -litis, *m.*
some, a certain one (indef.), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; (*more emphatic pron.*), aliquis, aliquid
some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī
son, filiū, -iī, *m.*
soon, mox
sort, genus, -neris, *n.*
soul, animus, -ī, *m.*
sound, sānus, -a, -um; salvus, -a, -um
spare, parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrum + *dat.*
speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum; loquor, -ī, locūtus sum
spirit, spīritus, -ūs, *m.*
stand, stō, stāre, stetī, statum
start, proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum
state, cīvītās, -tātis, *f.*; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
story, fābula, -ae, *f.*
street, via, -ae, *f.*
strength, vīrēs, -ium, *f. pl.*
strong, fortis, -e; **be strong**, valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum
student, discipula, -ae, *f.*; discipulus, -ī, *m.*

study (*noun*), studium, -iī, *n.*; (*vb.*), studeō, -ēre, -uī + *dat.*

suddenly, subitō

summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*

sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*

support, alō, -ere, -uī, altum

suppose, opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum; putō (1)

suppress, opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum

supreme power, imperium, -iī, *n.*

sure, certus, -a, -um

surrender, trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum

sweet, dulcis, -e

swift, celer, -eris, -ere

sword, ferrum, -ī, *n.*; gladius, -iī, *m.*

Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

T

talk, loquor, -ī, -cūtus sum

teach, doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum

teacher, magister, -trī, *m.*; magistra, -ae, *f.*

tear, lacrima, -ae, *f.*

tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum

ten, decem

terrify, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum

territory, finēs, -ium, *m. pl.*

than, quam; *or simple abl.*

thank, grātiās agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum + *dat.*

that (*demonstrative*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id;

that (of yours), iste, ista, istud

that (*subord. conj.*), *not expressed in ind. state.*; *ut* (*purp. and result*); *nē* (*fear*)

that . . . not, *nē* (*purp.*), *ut . . . nōn* (*result*); *ut* (*fear*)

that (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod

their, suus, -a, -um (*reflexive*); eōrum, eārum (*not reflexive*)

them. *See he, she, it.*

then, tum, deinde

there, ibi

therefore, igitur (*postpositive*)

these. *See this, demonstrative.*

they. *See he, she, it; often expressed simply by the personal ending of vb.*

thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; *often merely the neut. of an adj.*

think, putō (1); arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum

third, tertius, -a, -um

this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id

those. *See that, demonstrative.*

thousand, mīlle (*indecl. adj. sg.*), mīlia, -iūm, *n.* (*noun in pl.*)

three, trēs, tria

through, per + *acc.*

throughout, per + *acc.*

throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum

thus, sic

time, tempus, -poris, *n.*; (**period of**) **time**, aetās, -tātis, *f.*

to (*place to which*), ad + *acc.*; (*ind. obj.*), *dat.*; (*purp.*), ut + *subj.*, ad + *gerund or gerundive*

today, hodiē

tolerate, tolerō (1)

tomorrow, crās

too, nimis, nimium; *or use comp. degree of adj. or adv.*

touch, tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum

travel (abroad), peregrīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum

trivial, levis, -e

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

Troy, Trōia, -ae, *f.*

true, vērus, -a, -um

truly, vērē

trust, crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum + *dat.*

truth, vēritās, -tātis, *f.*

try, experior, -īrī, expertus sum

turn, vertō, -ere, -ī, versum

twenty, vīgintī

two, duo, duae, duo

type, genus, -neris, *n.*

tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, *m.*

U

unable (be) nōn possum

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um

under, sub + *abl.* (= *place where*), + *acc.* (= *place to which*)

understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum; comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsūm

unfortunate, miser, -era, -erum

unless, nisi

unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī

urban, urbane, urbānus, -a, -um

urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum

use, ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.*

V

verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*

very, *express this by the superl. degree of adj. or adv.*

vice, vitium, -iī, *n.*

Virgil, Vergilius, -iī, *m.*
virtue, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
walls, moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*
want, volō, velle, voluī
war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
we. See **I**; often expressed simply by the personal ending of *vb.*
wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
weapons, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
well, bene
what (*pron.*), quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod
whatever, quisquis, quidquid
when, *participial phrase*; *abl. abs.*; cum + *subj.*; (*interrogative*), quandō; (*rel.*), ubi
whence, unde, *adv.*
where, ubi
wherefore, quārē
which (*rel. pron. and interrogative adj.*), quī, quae, quod
while, dum
who (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrogative*), quis, quid
whole, tōtus, -a, -um
why, cūr
wicked, malus, -a, -um
wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*

willing (be), volō, velle, voluī
window, fenestra, -ae, *f.*
wine, vīnum, -ī, *n.*
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*
wise, sapiēns, *gen. sapientis*
wisely, sapienter
wish, cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum; volō, velle, voluī
with, cum + *abl.*; *abl. of means (no prep.)*
without, sine + *abl.*
woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; often expressed by *fem. of an adj.*
word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
work, labor, -bōris, *m.*; opus, operis, *n.*
world, mundus, -ī, *m.*
worse, peior, -ius
worst, pessimus, -a, -um
write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum
writer, scrīptor, -tōris, *m.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
yesterday, herī
yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum
you, tū, tuī; often expressed simply by the personal ending of *vb.*
young man, adulēscēns, -centis, *m.*
your (*sg.*), tuus, -a, -um; (*pl.*), vester, -tra, -trum
yourself (*reflexive*), tuī, tibi, *etc.*; (*intensive*), ipse, ipsa
youth, iuvenis, -is, *m.*

拉英词汇表

词条后面的阿拉伯数字指示这个词第一次作为要求掌握的词项出现的课程单元。动词后带括号的阿拉伯数字(1)表示,这是一个规则的第一变位法动词,主要部分的词尾依次为**-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**。关于前缀和后缀,参见附录中的列表。

A

ā or **ab**, *prep.* + *abl.*, from, away from;
by (*agent*). 14

abeō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itum**, go away, depart, leave. 37

absconditus, **-a**, **-um**, hidden, secret

absēns, *gen.* **-sentis**, *adj.*, absent, away. 37

absum, **-esse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrum**, be away, be absent

abundantia, **-ae**, *f.*, abundance

ac. See **atque**.

accēdō, **-ere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, come near,
approach. 36

accipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, take, receive,
accept. 24

accommodō (1), adjust, adapt

accūsātor, **-tōris**, *m.*, accuser

accūsō (1), accuse

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**, sharp, keen, eager, severe,
fierce. 16

acerbitās, **-tātis**, *f.*, harshness

acerbus, **-a**, **-um**, harsh, bitter, grievous. 12

Achillēs, **-is**, *m.*, Achilles, Greek hero, chief
character in the *Iliad*

aciēs, **-ēī**, *f.*, sharp edge, keenness, line of battle

acquīrō, **-ere**, **-quīsivī**, **-quīsītum**, acquire, gain
ācritēr, *adv.*, keenly, fiercely. 32

ad, *prep.* + *acc.*, to, up to, near to. 8

addiscō, **-ere**, **-didicī**, learn in addition

addūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, lead to, induce

adeō, **-īre**, **-iī**, **-itum**, go to, approach. 37

adferō, **-ferre**, **attulī**, **allātum**, bring to. 31

adficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, affect, afflict, weaken

adiciō, **-ere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum**, add

adiuvō, **-āre**, **-iūvī**, **-iūtum**, help, aid, assist;
please. 4

admīror, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, wonder at, admire

admittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, admit, receive,
let in. 17

admoneō = **moneō**

adnuō, **-ere**, **-nuī**, nod assent

adoptō (1), wish for oneself, select, adopt

adsum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, **-futūrum**, be near, be present,
assist

adulātiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, fawning, flattery

adulēscēns, **-centis**, *m. and f.*, young man or
woman. 12

adulēscēntia, **-ae**, *f.*, youth, young manhood;
youthfulness. 5

adultus, **-a**, **-um**, grown up, mature, adult

- adūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum**, set fire to, burn, singe
adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come (to), arrive
adversus, -a, -um, facing, opposite, adverse. 34
adversus, prep. + acc., toward, facing; against
advesperāscit, advesperāscere, advesperāvit,
impers., evening is coming on, it is growing
 dark
aedificium, -ī, n., building, structure. 39
aegrē, adv., with difficulty, hardly, scarcely
aequitās, -tātis, f., justice, fairness, equity
aequus, -a, -um, level, even, calm, equal, just,
 favorable. 22
aes, aeris, n., bronze. 40
aestās, -tātis, f., summer. 35
aestus, -ūs, m., heat, tide
aetās, -tātis, f., period of life, life, age, an age,
 time. 16
aeternus, -a, -um, eternal
Agamemnon, -nonis, m., Agamemnon,
 commander-in-chief of the Greek forces at Troy
ager, agrī, m., field, farm. 3
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive, lead, do, act; *of time*
or life, pass, spend;
grātiās agere + dat., thank. 8
agricola, -ae, m., farmer. 3
agrīcultūra, -ae, f., agriculture
āit, āiunt, he says, they say, assert. 25
Alexander, -drī, m., Alexander the Great,
 renowned Macedonian general and king,
 4th cen., B.C.
aliēnus, -a, -um, belonging to another (*cp. alius*),
 foreign, strange, alien
aliōquī, adv., otherwise
aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, indef. pronominal adj.,
 some
aliquis, aliquid (gen. alicuius; dat. alicui), indef.
pron., someone, somebody, something. 23
aliter, adv., otherwise
alius, alia, aliud, other, another;
alī . . . alī, some . . . others. 9
alō, -ere, aluī, altum, nourish, support, sustain,
 increase; cherish. 13
alter, -era, -erum, the other (of two), second. 9
altus, -a, -um, high, deep
ambitiō, -ōnis, f., a canvassing for votes; ambition;
 flattery
ambulō (1), walk. 39
āmēn, adv. from Hebrew, truly, verily, so be it
amīca, -ae, f., (female) friend. 3
amīcitia, -ae, f., friendship. 10
amiculum, -ī, n., cloak
amīcus, -a, -um, friendly. 11
amīcus, -ī, m., (male) friend. 3
āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, lose, let go. 12
amō (1), love, like; **amābō tē**, please. 1
amor, amōris, m., love. 7
āmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove
an, adv. and conj. introducing the second part of a
double question (see utrum), or; *used alone*, or,
 can it be that
ancilla, -ae, f., maidservant
angelus, -ī, m., angel
angulus, -ī, m., corner
angustus, -a, -um, narrow, limited
anima, -ae, f., soul, spirit. 34
animal, -mālis, n., a living creature, animal. 14
animus, -ī, m., soul, spirit, mind; **animī, -ōrum**,
 high spirits, pride, courage. 5
annus, -ī, m., year. 12
ante, prep. + acc., before (*in place or time*), in
 front of; *adv.*, before, previously. 13
anteā, adv., before, formerly
antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put before, prefer
 + *dat.* 35
antīquus, -a, -um, ancient, old-time. 2
Apollō, -linis, m., Phoebus Apollo, god of sun,
 prophecy, poetry, etc.
apparātus, -ūs, m., equipment, splendor
appellō (1), speak to, address (as), call, name. 14
approbō (1), approve
appropinquō (1) + dat., approach, draw near to
aptus, -a, -um, fit, suitable
apud, prep. + acc., among, in the presence of, at
 the house of. 31
aqua, -ae, f., water. 14
āra, -ae, f., altar
arānea, -ae, f., spider's web
arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, judge, think. 34
arbor, -boris, f., tree. 38
arcus, -ūs, m., bow
argentum, -ī, n., silver, money
argūmentum, -ī, n., proof, evidence, argument. 19
arma, -ōrum, n., arms, weapons. 28
arō (1), plow
ars, artis, f., art, skill. 14
arx, arcis, f., citadel, stronghold. 23
as, assis, m., an as (a small copper coin roughly
 equivalent to a cent). 31
Asia, -ae, f., Asia, commonly the Roman province
 in Asia Minor. 12
asper, -era, -erum, rough, harsh. 21
aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, look at, behold

assentātor, -tōris, m., yes-man, flatterer
astrum, -ī, n., star, constellation
at, conj., but; but, mind you; but, you say; *a more emotional adversative than sed*. 19
āter, ātra, ātrum, dark, gloomy
Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens. 37
Athēniēnsis, -e, Athenian; **Athēniēnsēs, -ium**, the Athenians
atque or ac, conj., and, and also, and even. 21
atquī, conj., and yet, still
auctor, -tōris, m., increaser; author, originator. 19
auctōritās, -tātis, f., authority
audācia, -ae, f., daring, boldness, audacity
audāx, gen. audācis, daring, bold
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare. 7
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear, listen to. 10
audītor, -tōris, m., hearer, listener, member of an audience. 16
auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, bear away, carry off
Augustus, -ī, m., Augustus, the first Roman emperor
aureus, -a, -um, golden
auris, -is, f., ear. 14
aurum, -ī, n., gold
aut, conj., or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or. 17
autem, postpositive conj., however; moreover. 11
auxilium, -iū, n., aid, help. 31
avāritia, -ae, f., greed, avarice
avārus, -a, -um, greedy, avaricious. 3
āvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, carry away
āvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn away, avert. 23
āvocō (1), call away, divert

B

balbus, -a, -um, stammering, stuttering
barba, -ae, f., beard
bāsium, -iū, n., kiss. 4
beātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate, blessed. 10
bellicus, -a, -um, relating to war, military
bellum, -ī, n., war. 4
bellus, -a, -um, pretty, handsome, charming. 4
bene, adv. of bonus, well, satisfactorily, quite. 11 (*comp. melius; superl. optimē*. 32)
beneficium, -iū, n., benefit, kindness, favor. 19
benevolentia, -ae, f., good will, kindness
bēstia, -ae, f., animal, beast
bibō, -ere, bibī, drink. 30
bis, adv., twice

bonus, -a, -um, good, kind. 4 (*comp. melior; superl. optimus*. 27)
bōs, bovis, m./f., bull, ox, cow
brevis, -e, short, small, brief. 16
brevitās, -tātis, f., shortness, brevity
breviter, adv., briefly
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain
Brundisium, -iū, n., important seaport in S. Italy
Brūtus, -ī, m., famous Roman name: L. Junius Brutus, who helped establish the Roman republic; M. Junius Brutus, one of the conspirators against Julius Caesar

C

C., abbreviation for the common name **Gāius**
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrum, fall. 12
caecus, -a, -um, blind. 17
caelestis, -e, heavenly, celestial
caelum, -ī, n., sky, heaven. 5
Caesar, -saris, m., Caesar, especially Gaius Julius Caesar. 12
calamitās, -tātis, f., misfortune, disaster
calculus, -ī, m., pebble
campana, -ae, f., bell (*late Lat.*)
candidus, -a, -um, shining, bright, white; beautiful. 33
canis, -is (gen. pl. canum), m./f., dog
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, to sing about
cantō (1), sing
capillus, -ī, m., hair (*of head or beard*)
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture, seize, get. 10
captō (1), grab, seek to get, hunt for (legacies, etc.)
caput, -pitis, n., head; leader; beginning; life; heading, chapter. 11
carbō, -bōnis, m., coal, charcoal
careō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum + abl. of separation, be without, be deprived of, want, lack, be free from. 20
cāritās, -tātis, f., dearness, affection
carmen, -minis, n., song, poem. 7
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum, harvest, pluck; seize. 36
Carthāgō, -ginis, f., Carthage (city in N. Africa). 24
cārus, -a, -um, dear. 11
casa, -ae, f., house, cottage, hut. 21
cāsus, -ūs, m., accident, chance

catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain

Catīlīna, -ae, *m.*, L. Sergius Catiline, leader of the conspiracy against the Roman state in 63 B.C.

Catullus, -ī, *m.*, Gaius Valerius Catullus, 1st cen. B.C. lyric poet

cattus, -ī, *m.*, cat (*late word for classical fēlēs, -is*)

causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; case, situation; **causā** with a preceding *gen.*, for the sake of, on account of. 21

caveō, -ēre, **cāvī**, **cautum**, beware, avoid

cavus, -ī, *m.*, hole

cēdō, -ere, **cessī**, **cessum**, go, withdraw; yield to, submit, grant. 28

celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick, rapid. 16

celeritās, -tātis, *f.*, speed, swiftness

celeriter, swiftly, quickly

cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner. 26

cēnō (1), dine. 5

centum, *indecl. adj.*, a hundred. 15

cernō, -ere, **crēvī**, **crētum**, distinguish, discern, perceive. 22

certē, *adv.*, certainly

certus, -a, -um, definite, sure, certain, reliable. 19

cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag, deer

cēterī, -ae, -a, the remaining, the rest, the other. 30

Cicerō, -rōnis, *m.*, Marcus Tullius Cicero. 8

cicūta, -ae, *f.*, hemlock (*poison*)

cinis, -neris, *m.*, ashes

circēnsēs, -ium, *m. pl. (sc. lūdī)*, games in the Circus

cito, *adv.*, quickly. 17

cīvilis, -e, civil, civic

cīvis, -is, *m. lf.*, citizen. 14

cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*, state, citizenship. 7

clārus, -a, -um, clear, bright; renowned, famous, illustrious. 18

claudō, -ere, **clausī**, **clausum**, shut, close

clēmētia, -ae, *f.*, mildness, gentleness, mercy. 16

coepī, **coepisse**, **coeptum** (*defective vb.; pres. system supplied by incipiō*), began. 17

coërceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, curb, check, repress

cōgitō (1), think, ponder, consider, plan. 1

cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, become acquainted with, learn, recognize; *in perf. tenses*, know. 30

cōgō, -ere, **coēgī**, **coāctum**, drive or bring together, force, compel. 36

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, gather together, collect
collocō (1), place, put, arrange

collum, -ī, *n.*, neck

colō, -ere, **coluī**, **cultum**, cultivate; cherish

color, -ōris, *m.*, color

commemorō (1), remind, relate, mention

commisceō, -ēre, -uī, -mixtum, intermingle, join

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, entrust, commit. 15

commūnis, -e, common, general, of/for the community. 20

comparō (1), compare

compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put together, compose

comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēsum, grasp, seize, arrest; comprehend, understand. 30

concedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, yield, grant, concede

concilium, -iī, *n.*, council

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, put together or into, store; build, found, establish. 29

cōnferō, -ferre, **contulī**, **collātum**, bring together, compare; **sē cōnferre**, betake oneself, go. 31

cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, have confidence in, believe confidently, be confident

cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, confess

congregō (1), gather together, assemble

coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw, hurl, put with force; put together, conjecture

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy

coniūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, conspirators. 20

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt. 34

cōnscientia, -ae, *f.*, consciousness, knowledge; conscience

cōnsciūs, -a, -um, conscious, aware of

cōnservō (1), preserve, conserve, maintain. 1

cōnsilium, -iī, *n.*, counsel, advice, plan, purpose; judgment, wisdom. 4

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī + in, depend on

cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrum + ex, consist of

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed

cōnsul, -sulis, *m.*, consul. 11

cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultum, look out for, have regard for

cōnsultum, -ī, *n.*, decree

cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, use up, consume. 30

contemnō, -ere, -temptī, -temptum, despise, scorn. 36

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, strive, struggle, contend, hasten. 29

contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold together, keep, enclose, restrain, contain. 21

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, touch closely, befall, fall to one's lot
contrā, prep. + acc., against. 19
contundō, -tundere, -tudī, -tūsum, beat, crush, bruise, destroy. 36
conturbō (1), throw into confusion
convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versum, turn around, cause to turn
convocō (1), call together, convene
cōpia, -ae, f., abundance, supply; **cōpiae, -ārum**, supplies, troops, forces. 8
cōpiōsē, adv., fully, at length, copiously
Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth
cornū, -ūs, n., horn. 20
corōna, -ae, f., crown
corpus, -poris, n., body. 7
corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, make right, correct
corrōborō (1), strengthen
corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, ruin, corrupt
cōtīdiē, adv., daily, every day. 36
crās, adv., tomorrow. 5
creātor, -tōris, m., creator
creātūra, -ae, f., creature (*late Lat.*)
crēber, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent, numerous
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe, trust. 25; + *dat.* 35
creō (1), create. 12
crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, increase. 34
crūdēlis, -e, cruel
crūstulum, -ī, n., pastry, cookie
cubiculum, -ī, n., bedroom, room
culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame. 5
culpō (1), blame, censure. 5
cultūra, -ae, f., cultivation
cum, conj., with subj., when, since, although; *with ind.*, when. 31
cum, prep. + abl., with. 10
cūctātiō, -ōnis, f., delay
cūctātor, -tōris, m., delayer
cūctor (1), delay
cupiditās, -tātis, f., desire, longing, passion; cupidity, avarice. 10
cupidō, -dinis, f., desire, passion. 36
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, eager, fond; + *gen.*, desirous of, eager for. 39
cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupitum, desire, wish, long for. 17
cūr, adv., why. 18
cūra, -ae, f., care, attention, caution, anxiety. 4
cūrō (1), care for, attend to; heal, cure; take care. 36

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run, rush, move quickly. 14
cursus, -ūs, m., running, race; course. 28
curvus, -a, -um, curved, crooked, wrong
custōdia, -ae, f., protection, custody; *pl.*, guards. 32
custōs, -tōdis, m., guardian, guard

D

damnō (1), condemn
Dāmoclēs, -is, m., Damocles, an attendant of Dionysius
dē, prep. + abl., down from, from; concerning, about. 3
dea, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. pl. deabus), goddess. 6
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe, ought, must. 1
dēbilitō (1), weaken
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide, settle, decree. 36
dēcertō (1), fight it out, fight to the finish, contend
decimus, -a, -um, tenth. 15
dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, deceive
decor, -cōris, m., beauty, grace
dēcrētum, -ī, n., decree
dēdicō (1), dedicate. 28
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēsum, ward off, defend, protect. 20
dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail
dēgustō (1), taste
dehinc, adv., then, next. 25
deinde, adv., thereupon, next, then. 18
dēlectātiō, -ōnis, f., delight, pleasure, enjoyment. 27
dēlectō (1), delight, charm, please. 19
dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, destroy, wipe out, erase. 17
dēliberō (1), consider, deliberate
dēmēns, gen. -mentis, adj., out of one's mind, insane, foolish
dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let down, lower
dēmōnstrō (1), point out, show, demonstrate. 8
Dēmōsthenēs, -is, m., Demosthenes, the most famous Greek orator, 4th cen. B.C.
dēnique, adv., at last, finally. 29
dēns, dentis, m., tooth
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, put down, lay aside
dēportō (1), carry off
dēsīderō (1), desire, long for, miss. 17
dēsīdiōsus, -a, -um, lazy
dēsīnō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm, cease, leave off. 34
dēsipiō, -ere, act foolishly

dēstinātus, -a, -um, resolved, resolute, firm
dētrīmentum, -ī, n., loss, detriment
deus, -ī, m. (*voc. sg. deus, nom. pl. deī or dī, dat. and abl. pl. dīs*), god. 6
dēvocō (1), call down or away
dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right-hand. 20
diabolus, -ī, m., devil
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, say, tell, speak; call, name. 10
dictāta, -ōrum, n. pl., things dictated, lessons, precepts
dictātor, -tōris, m., dictator
dictō (1), say repeatedly, dictate
diēs, -ēī, m., day. 22
difficilis, -e, hard, difficult, troublesome. 16
digitus, -ī, m., finger, toe. 31
dignitās, -tātis, f., merit, prestige, dignity. 38
dignus, -a, -um + abl., worthy, worthy of. 29
dīligēns, gen. -gentis, adj., diligent, careful. 27
dīligenter, adv., diligently
dīligentia, -ae, f., diligence
dīligō, -ere, dīlēxī, dīlēctum, esteem, love. 13
dīmīdium, -īī, n., half
dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, dismiss
Dionysius, -īī, m., Dionysius, tyrant of Syracuse
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away, depart. 20
discipula, -ae, f., and **discipulus, -ī, m.**, learner, pupil, disciple. 6
discō, -ere, didicī, learn. 8
disputātiō, -ōnis, f., discussion
disputō (1), discuss
dissimilis, -e, unlike, different. 27
dissimulō (1), conceal
distinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, distinguish
diū, adv., long, for a long time. 12
dīves, gen. dīvitis or dītis, adj., rich. 32
dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine, sacred
dīvitiae, -ārum, f. pl., riches, wealth. 13
dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, offer. 1
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach. 8
doctrīna, -ae, f., teaching, instruction, learning
doctus, -a, -um, taught, learned, skilled. 13
doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, grieve, suffer; hurt, give pain. 31
dolor, -lōris, m., pain, grief. 38
domesticus, -a, -um, domestic; civil
domina, -ae, f., mistress, lady. 40
dominātus, -ūs, m., rule, mastery, tyranny
dominicus, -a, -um, belonging to a master; the Lord's
dominus, -ī, m., master, lord. 40

domus, -ūs (-ī), f., house, home; **domī**, at home; **domum**, (to) home; **domō**, from home. 37
dōnum, -ī, n., gift, present. 4
dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, sleep. 31
dubitō (1), doubt, hesitate. 30
dubium, -īī, n., doubt
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead; consider, regard; prolong. 8
dulcis, -e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable. 16
dum, conj., while, as long as; at the same time that; until. 8
dummodo, conj., with subj., provided that, so long as. 32
duo, duae, duo, two. 15
dūrō (1), harden, last, endure
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, rough, stern, unfeeling, hardy, tough, difficult. 29
dux, ducis, m., leader, guide, commander, general. 23

E

ē. See ex.
ecclesiā, -ae, f., church (*ecclesiastical Lat.*)
ēducō (1), bring up, educate. 23
ēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry out; bury; lift up, exalt
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, perform, bring about, cause
effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrum, flee from, flee away, escape
egeō, -ēre, eguī + abl. or gen., need, lack, want. 28
ego, meī, I. 11
ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, go out, depart. 34
ēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw out, drive out. 15
elementum, -ī, n., element, first principle
elephantus, -ī, m., elephant. 31
ēloquēns, gen. -quentis, adj., eloquent
ēloquentia, -ae, f., eloquence
ēmendō (1), correct, emend
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy
ēmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove
enim, postpositive conj., for, in fact, truly. 9
Ennius, -īī, m., Quintus Ennius, early Roman writer
ēnumerō (1), count up, enumerate
eō, īre, īī (or īvī), itum, go. 37
epigramma, -matis, n., inscription, epigram
epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle
eques, equitis, m., horseman

equidem, *adv.* especially common with 1st pers., indeed, truly, for my part
equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry
equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. 23
ergā, *prep.* + *acc.*, toward. 38
ergō, *adv.*, therefore
ēripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, snatch away, take away, rescue. 22
errō (1), wander; err, go astray, make a mistake, be mistaken. 1
error, -rōris, *m.*, a going astray, error, mistake
et, *conj.*, and; even (= **etiam**); **et . . . et**, both . . . and. 2
etiam, *adv.*, even, also. 11
etsī, *conj.*, even if (**et-sī**), although. 38
ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come out, turn out, happen
ēventus, -ūs, *m.*, outcome, result
ex or **ē**, *prep.* + *abl.*, out of, from within, from; by reason of, on account of; *following cardinal numerals*, of. **Ex** can be used before consonants or vowels; **ē**, before consonants only. 8
excellētia, -ae, *f.*, excellence, merit
excipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, take out, except; take, receive, capture. 24
exclāmō (1), cry out, call out
exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut out, exclude
excruciō (1), torture, torment
excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, excuse
exemplar, -plāris, *n.*, model, pattern, original. 14
exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, model
exeō, -īre, -īī, -itum, go out, exit. 37
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army. 32
exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum (*ex* + *agō*), drive out, force out, extract, drive through, complete, perfect. 36
eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary, excellent
exitium, -īī, *n.*, destruction, ruin. 4
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out, expel, banish. 24
experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, try, test; experience. 39
expleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill, fill up, complete. 28
explicō (1), unfold; explain; spread out, deploy. 40
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set forth, explain, expose. 30
exquīsītus, -a, -um, sought-out, exquisite, excellent
exsilium, -īī, *n.*, exile, banishment. 31
exspectō (1), look for, expect, await. 15
extinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum, extinguish
externus, -a, -um, foreign

extorqueō, -ēre, -torsī, -tortum, twist away, extort
extrā, *prep.* + *acc.*, beyond, outside
extrēmus, -a, -um, outermost, last, extreme

F

Fabius, -īī, *m.*, Roman name; especially Quintus Fabius Maximus Cunctator (the Delayer), celebrated for his delaying tactics (Fabian tactics) against Hannibal
fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, tale; play. 24
facile, *adv.*, easily. 32
facilis, -e, easy; agreeable, affable. 16
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do, accomplish, 10; *passive*: fīō, fierī, factus sum. 36
factum, -ī, *n.*, deed, act, achievement. 13
facultās, -tātis, *f.*, ability, skill, opportunity, means
falsus, -a, -um, false, deceptive
fāma, -ae, *f.*, rumor, report; fame, reputation. 2
familia, -ae, *f.*, household, family. 19
fās (*indecl.*), *n.*, right, sacred duty; **fās est**, it is right, fitting, lawful
fateor, -ērī, fassus sum, confess, admit. 34
fatīgō (1), weary, tire out. 40
fātum, -ī, *n.*, fate; death; *often pl.*, the Fates. 29
faucēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, jaws; narrow passage.
fēliciter, *adv.*, happily. 32
fēlix, *gen.* -licis, *adj.*, lucky, fortunate, happy. 22
fēmina, -ae, *f.*, woman. 3
fenestra, -ae, *f.*, window. 21
ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, generally
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report. 31
ferōx, *gen.* -rōcis, fierce, savage. 25
ferrum, -ī, *n.*, iron, sword. 22
ferus, -a, -um, wild, uncivilized, fierce
festinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, haste
festinō (1), hasten, hurry
fīcus, -ī and -ūs, *f.*, fig tree
fidēlis, -e, faithful, loyal. 25
fidēs, -eī, *f.*, faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity; promise, guarantee, protection. 22
filia, -ae, *f.* (*dat. and abl. pl. filiābus*), daughter. 3
filius, -īī, *m.*, son. 3
fīnis, -is, *m.*, end, limit, boundary; purpose; **fīnēs**, -ium (boundaries) territory. 21
fīō, fierī, factus sum, occur, happen; become, be made, be done. 36
fīrmus, -a, -um, firm, strong; reliable. 38
flamma, -ae, *f.*, flame, fire
fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum, weep

flūctus, -ūs, m., billow, wave
flūmen, -minis, n., river. 18
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow. 18
for, fārī, fātus sum, speak (prophetically), talk, foretell. 40
forīs, adv., out of doors, outside. 37
fōrma, -ae, f., form, shape, beauty. 2
formīca, -ae, f., ant
fōrmō (1), form, shape, fashion
fors, fortis, f., chance, fortune
forsan, adv., perhaps
fortasse, adv., perhaps. 36
fortis, -e, strong, brave. 16
fortiter, adv., bravely. 32
fortūna, -ae, f., fortune, luck. 2
fortūnatē, adv., fortunately
fortūnātus, -a, -um, lucky, fortunate, happy. 13
forum, -ī, n., market place, forum. 26
foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtum, comfort, nurture, support. 35
frāter, -tris, m., brother. 8
frōns, frontis, f., forehead, brow, front
frūctus, -ūs, m., fruit; profit, benefit, enjoyment. 20
frūgālītās, -tātis, f., frugality
frūstrā, adv., in vain
fuga, -ae, f., flight
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum, flee, hurry away; escape; go into exile; avoid, shun. 10
fugitīvus, -ī, m., fugitive, deserter, runaway slave
fugō (1), put to flight, rout
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, flash, shine
furor, -rōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness
fūrtificus, -a, -um, thievish
fūrtim, adv., stealthily, secretly. 30

G

Gāius, -ī, m., Gaius, a common praenomen (first name); usually abbreviated to **C.** in writing
Gallus, -ī, m., a Gaul. The Gauls were a Celtic people who inhabited the district which we know as France.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, be glad, rejoice. 23
gaudium, -ī, n., joy, delight
geminus, -a, -um, twin. 25
gēns, gentis, f., clan, race, nation, people. 21
genū, genūs, n., knee. 20
genus, generis, n., origin; kind, type, sort, class. 18
gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, carry; carry on, manage, conduct, wage, accomplish, perform. 8
gladius, -ī, m., sword

glōria, -ae, f., glory, fame. 5
gracilis, -e, slender, thin. 27
Graecia, -ae, f., Greece. 19
Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; **Graecus, -ī, m.**, a Greek. 6
grātia, -ae, f., gratitude, favor; **grātiās agere + dat.**, to thank. 8
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable; grateful. 37
gravis, -e, heavy, weighty; serious, important; severe, grievous. 19
gravitās, -tātis, f., weight, seriousness, importance, dignity
graviter, adv., heavily, seriously
gustō (1), taste

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. 3
hāmus, -ī, m., hook
Hannibal, -balis, m., Hannibal, celebrated Carthaginian general in the 2nd Punic War, 218–201 B.C.
hasta, -ae, f., spear. 23
haud, adv., not, not at all (*strong negative*)
herī, adv., yesterday. 5
heu, interjection, ah!, alas! (*a sound of grief or pain*). 33
hic, haec, hoc, demonstrative adj. and pron., this, the latter; *at times weakened to he, she, it, they*. 9
hīc, adv., here. 25
hīnc, adv., from this place, hence
hodiē, adv., today. 3
Homērus, -ī, m., Homer, the Greek epic poet
homō, hominis, m., human being, man. 7
honor, -nōris, m., honor, esteem; public office. 30
hōra, -ae, f., hour, time. 10
horrendus, -a, -um, horrible, dreadful
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge, encourage. 34
hortus, -ī, m., garden
hospes, -pitis, m., stranger, guest; host
hostis, -is, m., an enemy (of the state); **hostēs, -ium**, the enemy. 18
hui, interj., *sound of surprise or approbation not unlike our "whee"*
hūmānitās, -tātis, f., kindness, refinement
hūmānus, -a, -um, pertaining to man, human; humane, kind; refined, cultivated. 4
humilis, -e, lowly, humble. 27
humus, -ī, f., ground, earth; soil. 37
hypocrita, -ae, m., hypocrite (*ecclesiastical Lat.*)

I

- iaceō, -ēre, -uī**, lie; lie prostrate; lie dead. 25
iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw, hurl. 15
iaculum, -ī, n., dart, javelin
iam, adv., now, already, soon. 19
iānua, -ae, f., door. 35
ibi, adv., there. 6
īdem, eadem, idem, the same. 11
identidem, adv., repeatedly, again and again
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, appropriate. 37
igitur, postpositive conj., therefore, consequently. 5
ignārus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant
ignis, -is, m., fire. 22
ignōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtum + dat., grant pardon to, forgive, overlook. 35
illacrimō (1) + dat., weep over
ille, illa, illud, demonstrative adj. and pron., that, the former; the famous; *at times weakened to* he, she, it, they. 9
illūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, mock, ridicule
imāgō, -ginis, m., image, likeness
imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, imitate
immineō, -ēre, overhang, threaten
immodicus, -a, -um, beyond measure, moderate, excessive
immortālis, -e, not subject to death, immortal. 19
immōtus, -a, -um, unmoved; unchanged; unrelenting. 37
impedimentum, -ī, n., hindrance, impediment
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, impede, hinder, prevent. 38
impellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, urge on, impel
impendeō, -ēre, hang over, threaten, be imminent
imperātor, -tōris, m., general, commander-in-chief, emperor. 24
imperīōsus, -a, -um, powerful, domineering, imperious
imperium, -iī, n., power to command, supreme power, authority, command, control. 24
imperō (1), give orders to, command + *dat.* + **ut**. 35
impleō, -ēre, implēvī, implētum, fill up, complete
imprīmīs, adv., especially, particularly
imprōvidus, -a, -um, improvident
impudēns, gen. -dentis, adj., shameless, impudent
impudenter, adv., shamelessly, impudently
impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished, unrestrained, safe
in, prep. + abl., in, on, 3; + *acc.*, into, toward, against. 9
inānis, -e, empty, vain
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain, unsure, doubtful
incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin, commence. 17
inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut in, inclose
incorruptus, -a, -um, uncorrupted, genuine, pure
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible
indicō (1), indicate, expose, accuse
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy
indūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in, introduce, induce
industria, -ae, f., industry, diligence
industrius, -a, -um, industrious, diligent
ineō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go in, enter. 37
ineptiō, -īre, play the fool, trifle
inexpugnābilis, -e, impregnable, unconquerable
īnfantia, -ae, f., infancy
īnferī, -ōrum, m. pl., those below, the dead
īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, bring in, bring upon, inflict
īnfīnītus, -a, -um, unlimited, infinite
īnfīrmus, -a, -um, not strong, weak, feeble. 38
īnflammō (1), set on fire, inflame
īnfōrmis, -e, formless, deformed, hideous
īnfortūnātus, -a, -um, unfortunate
ingenium, -iī, n., nature, innate talent. 29
ingēns, gen. -gentis, adj., huge. 16
ingrātus, -a, -um, unpleasant, ungrateful
iniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw on *or* into, put on; inspire
inimīcus, -ī, m., (personal) enemy
inīquus, -a, -um, unequal, unfair, unjust
initium, -iī, n., beginning, commencement. 33
iniūria, -ae, f., injustice, injury, wrong. 39
iniūstus, -a, -um, unjust. 10
inops, gen. -opis, adj., poor, needy
inquam. See inquit.
inquit, defective verb, he says, *placed after one or more words of a direct quotation; other forms:*
inquam, I say, **inquis**, you say. 22
īnsānia, -ae, f., insanity, folly
īnsciēns, gen. -entis, unknowing, unaware
īnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, inscribe, entitle
īnsidiae, -ārum, f. pl., ambush, plot, treachery. 6
īnsōns, gen. -sontis, guiltless, innocent
īnstituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtum, establish, institute
īnsula, -ae, f., island. 23
īnurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, rise up
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, whole, unhurt
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand. 11
intempestīvus, -a, -um, untimely
inter, prep. + acc., between, among. 15

intercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, intercept
interdum, *adv.*, at times, sometimes
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill, murder. 37
interrogātiō, -ōnis, f., interrogation, inquiry
intrō (1), walk into, enter
intrōducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead in, introduce
intus, *adv.*, within
invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, enter on, move against, assail
inveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come upon, find. 10
inventor, -tōris, m., inventor
invēstīgō (1), track out, investigate
invictus, -a, -um, unconquered; unconquerable
invidēō, -ēre, -vidī, -vīsum, be envious; + *dat.*, look at with envy, envy, be jealous of. 31
invidia, -ae, f., envy, jealousy, hatred. 31
invīsus, -a, -um, hated; hateful
invītō (1), entertain; invite, summon. 26
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling, against one's will
iocus, -ī, m., joke, jest
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *intensive pron.*, myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, *etc.*; the very, the actual. 13
īra, -ae, f., ire, anger. 2
īrāscor, -ī, īrātus sum, be angry
īrātus, -a, -um, angered, angry. 35
irritō (1), excite, exasperate, irritate
is, ea, id, *demonstrative pron. and adj.*, this, that; *personal pron.*, he, she, it. 11
iste, ista, istud, *demonstrative pron. and adj.*, that of yours, that; such; *sometimes with contemptuous force.* 9
ita, adv. used with *adjs.*, *vbs.*, and *advs.*, so, thus. 29
Italia, -ae, f., Italy. 15
itaque, adv., and so, therefore. 15
iter, itineris, n., journey; route, road. 37
iterō (1), repeat
iterum, adv., again, a second time. 21
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, bid, order, command. 21
iūcunditās, -tātis, f., pleasure, charm
iūcundus, -a, -um, agreeable, pleasant, gratifying. 16
iūdex, -dicis, m., judge, juror. 19
iūdicium, -iī, n., judgment, decision, opinion; trial. 19
iūdicō (1), judge, consider
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, join. 13
Iuppiter, Iovis, m., Jupiter, Jove
iūrō (1), swear

iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law. 14; **iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n.**, oath
iussū, *defective noun, abl. sg. only, m.*, at the command of
iūstus, -a, -um, just, right. 40
iuvenis, -is (gen. pl. iuvenum), m./f., a youth, young person
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, aid, assist; please. 4

L

lābor, -ī, lāpsus sum, slip, glide
labor, -bōris, m., labor, work, toil. 7
labōrō (1), labor; be in distress. 21
labrum, -ī, n., lip
laccessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, harass, attack
lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 40
lacūnar, -nāris, n., paneled ceiling
laetāns, gen. -tantis, adj., rejoicing
laetus, -a, -um, happy, joyful
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin. 22
laudātor, -tōris, m., praiser
laudō (1), praise. 1
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory, fame. 8
lēctor, -tōris, m., lēctrix, -trīcis, f., reader. 36
lectus, -ī, m., bed
lēgātus, -ī, m., ambassador, deputy
legiō, -ōnis, f., legion
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, pick out, choose; read. 18
lēnis, -e, smooth, gentle, kind
lentē, adv., slowly
Lentulus, -ī, m., P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura, chief conspirator under Catiline, left in charge of the conspiracy when Catiline was forced to flee from Rome
Lesbia, -ae, f., Lesbia, the name which Catullus gave to his sweetheart
levis, -e, light; easy, slight, trivial. 17
lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute. 26
libellus, -ī, m., little book. 17
libenter, adv., with pleasure, gladly. 38
liber, -era, -erum, free. 5
liber, -brī, m., book. 6
liberālis, -e, of, relating to a free person; worthy of a free man, decent, liberal, generous. 39
liberālitās, -tātis, f., generosity, liberality
liberātor, -tōris, m., liberator
liberē, adv., freely. 32
liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., (one's) children
liberō (1), free, liberate. 19
libertās, -tātis, f., liberty, freedom. 8

libō (1), pour a libation of, on; pour ritually; sip; touch gently. 39
licet, licēre, licuit, *impers.* + *dat.* and *inf.*, it is permitted, one may. 37
ligō (1), bind, tie
līmen, -minis, n., threshold. 26
lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language. 25
linteum, -ī, n., linen, napkin
littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet; **litterae, -ārum**, a letter (epistle); literature. 7
lītus, -toris, n., shore, coast. 23
locō (1), place, put
locuplētō (1), enrich
locus, -ī, m., place; passage in literature; *pl.*, **loca, -ōrum, n.**, places, region; **locī, -ōrum, m.**, passages in literature. 9
longē, adv., far. 32
longinquitās, -tātis, f., distance, remoteness
longus, -a, -um, long. 16
loquāx, gen. -quācis, adj., talkative, loquacious
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, say, speak, tell, talk. 34
lucrum, -ī, n., gain, profit
lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play
lūdus, -ī, m., game, sport; school. 18
lūna, -ae, f., moon. 28
lupus, -ī, m., wolf
lūx, lūcis, f., light. 26
luxuria, -ae, f., luxury, extravagance

M

Maecēnās, -ātis, m., Maecenas, unofficial “prime minister” of Augustus, and patron and friend of Horace
magis, adv., more, rather
magister, -trī, m., master, schoolmaster, teacher. 4
magistra, -ae, f., mistress, schoolmistress. 4
magnanimus, -a, -um, great-hearted, brave, magnanimous. 23
magnopere, adv., greatly, exceedingly (*comp.* **magis**; *superl.* **maximē**). 32
magnus, -a, -um, large, great; important. 2 (*comp.* **maior**; *superl.* **maximus**. 27); **maiōrēs, -um, m. pl.**, ancestors. 27
maiestās, -tātis, f., greatness, dignity, majesty
maior. See magnus.
maiōrēs, -um, m. pl., ancestors. 27
male, adv., badly, ill, wrongly (*comp.* **peius**; *superl.* **pessimē**). 32
mālō, mālle, mālūī, to want (something) more, instead; prefer. 32

malum, -ī, n., evil, misfortune, hurt, injury. 30
malus, -a, -um, bad, wicked, evil. 4 (*comp.* **peior**; *superl.* **pessimus**. 27)
mandātum, -ī, n., order, command, instruction
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, remain, stay, abide, continue. 5
manus, -ūs, f., hand; handwriting; band. 20
Mārcellus, -ī, m., Marcellus, Roman general who captured Syracuse in 212 B.C.
Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus, a common Roman first name, usually abbreviated to **M.** in writing
mare, -is, n., sea. 14
marītus, -ī, m., husband
māter, -tris, f., mother. 12
māteria, -ae, f., material, matter
mātrimōnium, -īī, n., marriage
maximus. See magnus.
medicus, -ī, m., medica, -ae, f., doctor, physician. 12
mediocris, -e, ordinary, moderate, mediocre. 31
meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, reflect upon, practice
medius, -a, -um, middle; *used partitively*, the middle of. 22
mel, mellis, n., honey
melior. See bonus.
meminī, meminisse, defective, remember
memor, gen. -moris, adj., mindful
memoria, -ae, f., memory, recollection. 15
mendōsus, -a, -um, full of faults, faulty
mēns, mentis, f., mind, thought, intention. 16
mēnsa, -ae, f., table; dining; dish, course; **mēnsa secunda**, dessert. 26
mēnsis, -is, m., month
merces, -cēdis, f., pay, reward, recompense
merīdiānus, -a, -um, of midday, noon; southern
merus, -a, -um, pure, undiluted. 33
mēta, -ae, f., turning point, goal, limit, boundary. 40
metuō, -ere, metuī, fear, dread; be afraid for + *dat.* 38
metus, -ūs, m., fear, dread, anxiety. 20
meus, -a, -um (m. voc. mī), my. 2
mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier. 23
mīlitāris, -e, military
mīlle, indecl. adj. in sg., thousand; **mīlia, -ium, n., pl. noun**, thousands. 15
minimus. See parvus.
minor. See parvus.
minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, lessen, diminish. 30
mīrābilis, -e, amazing, wondrous, remarkable. 38

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, marvel at, admire, wonder. 35
mīrus, -a, -um, wonderful, surprising, extraordinary
miscēō, -ēre, miscuī, mixtum, mix, stir up, disturb. 18
miser, -era, -erum, wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 15
miserē, adv., wretchedly
miserīcordia, -ae, f., pity, mercy
mītēscō, -ere, become *or* grow mild
mītis, -e, mild, gentle; ripe
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, send, let go. 11
modo, adv., now, just now, only; **modo . . . modo**, at one time . . . at another
modus, -ī, m., measure, bound, limit; manner, method, mode, way. 22
moenia, -ium, n. pl., walls of a city. 29
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, disagreeable, annoying
mōlior, -īrī, mōlītus sum, work at, build, undertake, plan. 34
mōlliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, soften; make calm *or* less hostile. 29
mollis, -e, soft, mild, weak
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, remind, warn, advise, 1; **moneō eum ut + subj.** 36
monitiō, -ōnis, f., admonition, warning
mōns, montis, m., mountain. 20
mōnstrum, -ī, n., portent; monster
monumentum, -ī, n., monument. 40
mora, -ae, f., delay. 4
morbus, -ī, m., disease, sickness. 9
mōrior, -ī, mortuus sum, die. 34
mors, mortis, f., death. 14
mortālis, -e, mortal. 18
mortuus, -a, -um, dead. 28
mōs, mōris, m., habit, custom, manner; **mōrēs, mōrum**, habits, morals, character. 7
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move; arouse, affect. 18
mox, adv., soon. 30
mulier, -eris, f., woman. 39
multō (1), punish, fine
multum, adv., much
(comp. plūs; superl. plūrimum). 32
multus, -a, -um, much, many, 2
(comp. plūs; superl. plūrimus. 27)
mundus, -ī, m., world, universe. 21
mūnīmentum, -ī, n., fortification, protection
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify, defend; build (a road)

mūnus, -neris, n., service, office, function, duty; gift
mūs, mūris, m. lf., mouse
Mūsa, -ae, f., a Muse (one of the goddesses of poetry, music, etc.)
mūtātiō, -ōnis, f., change
mūtō (1), change, alter; exchange. 14

N

nam, conj., for. 13
nārrō (1), tell, narrate, report. 24
nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, be born, spring forth, arise. 34
nāsus, -ī, m., nose. 40
nāta, -ae, f., daughter. 29
nātālis, -is (sc. diēs), m., birthday
nātiō, -ōnis, f., nation, people
nātūra, -ae, f., nature. 10
nauta, -ae, m., sailor. 2
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., voyage, navigation
nāvigō (1), sail, navigate. 17
nāvis, -is, f., ship. 21
nē, conj. with subj., that . . . not, in order that . . . not, in order not to, 28, 36; that, 40; *adv. in nē* . . . **quidem**, not . . . even. 29
-ne, enclitic added to the emphatic word at the beginning of a question the answer to which may be either "yes" or "no." It can be used in both direct and indirect questions. 5
nec. See neque.
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary
nesse, indecl. adj., necessary, inevitable. 39
necō (1), murder, kill. 7
nefās (indecl.), n., wrong, sin
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, neglect, disregard. 17
negō (1), deny, say that . . . not. 25
nēmō, (nullūs), nēminī, nēminem, (nūllō, -ā), m. lf., no one, nobody. 11
nepōs, -pōtis, m., grandson, descendant. 27
neque or nec, conj., and not, nor;
neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor. 11
nesciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, not to know, be ignorant. 25
neuter, -tra, -trum, not either, neither. 9
nēve, and not, nor (*used to continue ut or nē + subj.*)
niger, -gra, -grum, black
nihil (indecl.), n., nothing. 1, 4
nihilum, -ī, n., nothing
nimis or nimium, adv., too, too much, excessively. 9
nisi, if . . . not, unless, except. 19
niveus, -a, -um, snowy, white

noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitum + *dat.*, do harm to, harm, injure. 35
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, not . . . wish, be unwilling. 32
nōmen, nōminis, n., name. 7
nōn, adv., not. 1
nōndum, adv., not yet
nōnne, interrog. adv. which introduces questions expecting the answer "yes." 40
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some, several
nōnnumquam, sometimes
nōnus, -a, -um, ninth
nōs. See *ego*.
nōscō. See *cognōscō*.
noster, -tra, -trum, our, ours. 5
notārius, -iī, m., writer of shorthand, stenographer
novem, indecl. adj., nine. 15
novus, -a, -um, new, strange. 7
nox, noctis, f., night. 26
nūbēs, -is, f., cloud. 14
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, cover, veil; + *dat.* (*of a bride*) be married to, marry. 35
nūllus, -a, -um, not any, no, none. 9
num, interrogative adv.: (1) introduces direct questions which expect the answer "no"; (2) introduces indirect questions and means whether. 40
numerus, -ī, m., number. 3
numquam, adv., never. 8
nunc, adv., now, at present. 6
nūntiō (1), announce, report, relate. 25
nūntius, -iī, m., messenger, message
nūper, adv., recently. 12
nūtriō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, nourish, rear

O

Ō, interjection, O!, oh! 2
obdūrō (1), be hard, persist, endure
obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go up against, meet; die. 37
obicīō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, offer; cite (*as grounds for condemnation*)
oblectō (1), please, amuse, delight; pass time pleasantly. 36
obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, overwhelm, destroy
obsequium, -iī, n., compliance
obstinātus, -a, -um, firm, resolved
occāsiō, -ōnis, f., occasion, opportunity. 28
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum (cadō, fall), fall down; die; set (*of the sun*). 31
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum (caedō, cut), cut down; kill, slay
occultē, adv., secretly

occupō (1), seize
oculus, -ī, m., eye. 4
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrum (defective vb.), hate. 20
odium, -ī, n., hatred. 38
Oedipūs, -podis, m., Oedipus, Greek mythical figure said to have murdered his father and married his mother
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, offer. 31
officium, -iī, n., duty, service. 4
ōlim, adv., at that time, once, formerly; in the future. 13
omittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, let go, omit
omnīnō, adv., wholly, entirely, altogether. 40
omnipotēns, gen. -tentis, adj., all-powerful, omnipotent
omnis, -e, every, all. 16
onerō (1), burden, load
onus, oneris, n., burden, load
opera, -ae, f., work, pains, help
opīnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suppose. 40
oportet, -ēre, oportuit (impers.), it is necessary, proper, right. 39
oppōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, set against, oppose
opportūnē, adv., opportunely
opportūnus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, advantageous, opportune
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check. 23
opprobrium, -iī, n., reproach, taunt, disgrace
oppugnō (1), fight against, attack, assault, assail. 39
ops, opis, f., help, aid; **opēs, opum**, power, resources, wealth. 33
optimus. See *bonus*.
optō (1), wish for, desire
opus, operis, n., a work, task; deed, accomplishment. 38
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., speech. 38
ōrātor, -tōris, m., orator, speaker. 23
orbis, -is, m., circle, orb; **orbis terrārum**, the world, the earth
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., rank, class, order
orior, -īrī, ortus sum, arise, begin, proceed, originate
ōrnō (1), equip, furnish, adorn. 39
ōrō (1), speak, plead; beg, beseech, entreat, pray. 36
ōs, ōris, n., mouth, face. 14
ōsculum, -ī, n., kiss. 29
ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum, exhibit, show, display. 23
ōstium, -iī, n., entrance, door

ōtium, -iī, n., leisure, peace. 4

ovis, -is, f., sheep

P

paedagōgus, -ī, m., slave who attended children
(*particularly at school*)

pāgānus, -ī, m., a countryman, peasant; pagan

palam, adv., openly, plainly

palma, -ae, f., palm

pānis, -is, m., bread

pār, gen. paris, adj., equal, like. 32

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrum + dat., be lenient
to, spare. 35

parēns, -rentis, m. / f., parent. 28

pāreō, -ēre, -uī + dat., be obedient to, obey. 35

pariēs, -ietis, m., wall

pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, beget, produce

parmula, -ae, f., little shield

parō (1), prepare, provide; get, obtain. 19

pars, partis, f., part, share; direction. 14

parum, adv., little, too little, not very (much)

(*comp. minus; superl. minimē*). 32

parvus, -a, -um, small, little, 4 (*comp. minor; superl. minimus*). 27)

passer, -seris, m., sparrow

patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, make open, open;
disclose, expose. 25

pateō, -ēre, -uī, be open, lie open; be accessible; be
evident. 32

pater, -tris, m., father. 12

patiēns, gen. -entis, adj., patient; + *gen.*, capable
of enduring

patientia, -ae, f., suffering; patience, endurance. 12

patior, -ī, passus sum, suffer, endure; permit.
34

patria, -ae, f., fatherland, native land, (one's)
country. 2

patrōnus, -ī, m., patron, protector

paucī, -ae, -a, usually pl., few, a few. 3

pauper, gen. -peris, adj., of small means, poor. 32

paupertās, -tātis, f., poverty, humble
circumstances. 32

pāx, pācis, f., peace. 7

peccō (1), sin, do wrong

pectus, -toris, n., breast, heart. 35

pecūnia, -ae, f., money. 2

peior. See malus.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, strike, push; drive out,
banish. 24

per, prep. + acc., through; *with reflex. pron.*, by. 13

percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, gain, learn, perceive

perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum, destroy, ruin, lose

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, pass away, be destroyed,

perish. 37

peregrīnor, peregrīnārī, peregrīnātus sum, travel
abroad, wander. 37

perfectus, -a, -um, complete, perfect

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear, endure, suffer

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, do thoroughly,

accomplish, bring about

perfugium, -iī, n., refuge, shelter. 24

periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous

periculum, -ī, n., danger, risk. 4

perimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, destroy

perītus, -a, -um, skilled, expert

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, permit, allow

perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive, pernicious

pernoctō (1), spend *or* occupy the night. 39

perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual, lasting,

uninterrupted, continuous. 6

perscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, write out, place
on record

persequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, follow up, pursue, take
vengeance on

Persicus, -a, -um, Persian

persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, succeed in
urging, persuade, convince

perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten thoroughly,
terrify

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, pertain to, relate to,
concern

perturbō (1), throw into confusion, trouble,
disturb, perturb

pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum + ad, come through
to, arrive at, reach

pēs, pedis, m., lower leg, foot. 38

pessimus. See malus.

pestis, -is, f., plague, pestilence, curse, destruction

petō, -ere, petīvī, petītum, seek, aim at, beg,

beseech, 23; **petō ab eō ut + subj.** 36

philosophia, -ae, f., philosophy, love of wisdom. 2

philosophus, -ī, m., philosopha, -ae, f., philosopher.
33

piger, -gra, -grum, lazy, slow, dull

pīpiō (1), chirp, pipe

piscātor, -tōris, m., fisherman

piscis, -is, m., fish

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum + dat., be pleasing to,
please. 35

plācō (1), placate, appease

- plānē**, *adv.*, plainly, clearly
platea, **-ae**, *f.*, broad way, street
Platō, **-tōnis**, *m.*, Plato, the renowned Greek philosopher
plēbs, **plēbis**, *f.*, the common people, populace, plebeians. 33
plēnus, **-a**, **-um**, full, abundant, generous. 6
plūrimus. *See multus.*
plūs. *See multus.*
poēma, **-matis**, *n.*, poem
poena, **-ae**, *f.*, penalty, punishment; **poenās dare**, pay the penalty. 2
poēta, **-ae**, *m.*, poet. 2
pōmum, **-ī**, *n.*, fruit, apple
pōnō, **-ere**, **posuī**, **positum**, put, place, set. 27
pōns, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge
populus, **-ī**, *m.*, the people, a people, nation. 3
porta, **-ae**, *f.*, gate, entrance. 2
possessio, **-ōnis**, *f.*, possession, property
possum, **posse**, **potuī**, be able, can, have power. 6
post, *prep.* + *acc.*, after, behind. 7
postea, *adv.*, afterwards. 24
postpōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, put after, consider secondary
postquam, *conj.*, after
postrēmum, *adv.*, after all, finally; for the last time. 40
potēns, *gen.* **-tentis**, *pres. part. of possum as adj.*, able, powerful, mighty, strong. 16
potestās, **-tātis**, *f.*, power, ability, opportunity
potior, **-īrī**, **potītus sum** + *gen.* or *abl.*, get possession of, possess, hold
potius, *adv.*, rather, preferably
prae, *prep.* + *abl.*, in front of, before. 26
praebeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, offer, provide. 32
praeceptum, **-ī**, *n.*, precept
praeclārus, **-a**, **-um**, noble, distinguished, famous, remarkable
praeferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, bear before, display; place before, prefer
praeficiō, **-ere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, put in charge of
praemittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, send ahead or forward
praemium, **-ī**, *n.*, reward, prize. 35
praesidium, **-ī**, *n.*, guard, detachment, protection
praestō, **-āre**, **-stītī**, **-stitum**, excel (+ *dat.*); exhibit, show, offer, supply. 28
praesum, **-esse**, **-fuī**, be at the head of, be in charge of
praeter, *prep.* + *acc.*, besides, except; beyond, past. 40
praetereō, **-īre**, **-ī**, **-itum**, go by, pass, omit
praeteritus, **-a**, **-um**, *perf. part. of praetereō as adj.*, past
premō, **-ere**, **pressī**, **pressum**, press; press hard, pursue. 23
pretium, **-ī**, *n.*, price, value, reward
prex, **precis**, *f.*, prayer
prīmō, *adv.*, at first, first, at the beginning. 30
primum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; **quam primum**, as soon as possible
prīmus. *See prior.* 27
prīnceps, *gen.* **-cipis**, chief; *m./f. noun*, leader, prince, emperor. 28
prīncipium, **-ī**, *n.*, beginning. 12
prior, **prius**, *comp. adj.*, former, prior; **prīmus**, **-a**, **-um**, first, foremost, chief, principal. 27
prīstinus, **-a**, **-um**, ancient, former, previous. 38
prius, *adv.*, before, previously
prīvātus, **-ī**, *m.*, private citizen
prīvō (1), deprive
prō, *prep.* + *abl.*, in front of, before, on behalf of, in return for, instead of, for, as. 12
probitās, **-tātis**, *f.*, uprightness, honesty, probity. 18
probō (1), approve; recommend; test. 27
prōcōsul, **-sulis**, *m.*, proconsul, governor of a province
prōditor, **-tōris**, *m.*, betrayer, traitor
proelium, **-ī**, *n.*, battle
prōferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, bring forward, produce, make known, extend
proficīscor, **-ī**, **-fectus sum**, set out, start. 34
profor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, speak out
prōfundō, **-ere**, **-fūdī**, **-fūsum**, pour forth
prohibeō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit. 20
prōiciō, **-ere**, **-īēcī**, **-iectum**, throw forward or out
prōmittō, **-mittere**, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, send forth, promise. 32
prōnūntiō (1), proclaim, announce; declaim; pronounce. 20
prōpōnō, **-ere**, **-posuī**, **-positum**, put forward, propose
proprius, **-a**, **-um**, one's own, peculiar, proper, personal, characteristic
propter, *prep.* + *acc.*, on account of, because of. 5
prōtinus, *adv.*, immediately. 22
prōvideō, **-ēre**, **-vīdī**, **-vīsum**, foresee, provide, make provision
proximus, **-a**, **-um** (*superl. of propior*), nearest, next
prūdēns, *gen.* **-dentis**, *adj.*, wise, prudent
prūdentē, *adv.*, wisely, discreetly

prudentia, -ae, *f.*, foresight, wisdom, discretion
pūblicus, -a, -um, of the people, public;
rēs pūblica, **reī pūblicaē**, *f.*, the state
puḍicus, -a, -um, modest, chaste. 26
puḍor, -dōris, *m.*, modesty, bashfulness
puella, -ae, *f.*, girl. 2
puer, **puerī**, *m.*, boy; *pl.* boys, children. 3
pueriliter, *adv.*, childishly, foolishly
pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle
pugnō (1), fight. 29
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, handsome;
 fine. 5
pulchrē, *adv.*, beautifully, finely. 32
pulchritūdō, -dinis, *f.*, beauty
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, punish
pūrgō (1), cleanse
pūrus, -a, -um, pure, free from
putō (1), reckon, suppose, judge, think,
 imagine. 25
Pūthagorās, -ae, *m.*, Pythagoras, Greek
 philosopher and mathematician of 6th cen. B.C.

Q

quā, *adv.*, by which route, where
quadrāgintā, *indecl. adj.*, forty
quaerō, -ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, seek, look for,
 strive for; ask, inquire, inquire into. 24
quam, *adv.*, how, 16; *conj.*, than, 26; as . . . as
 possible (*with superl.*), 26
quamvīs, *adv. and conj.*, however much, however;
 although
quandō, *interrogative and rel. adv. and conj.*, when;
sī quandō, if ever. 5
quantus, -a, -um, how large, how great, how
 much. 30
quārē, *adv.*, because of which thing, therefore,
 wherefore, why. 6
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth. 15
quasi, *adv. or conj.*, as if, as it were. 39
quattuor, *indecl. adj.*, four. 15
-que, *enclitic conj.*, and. *It is appended to the
 second of two words to be joined.* 6
quemadmodum, *adv.*, in what manner, how
queror, -ī, **questus sum**, complain, lament. 38
quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what,
 that. 17
quī? quae? quod?, *interrog. adj.*, what? which? what
 kind of? 19
quia, *conj.*, since, because
quid, what, why. *See quis.*

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (*pron.*) or **quoddam**
 (*adj.*), *indef. pron. and adj.*: as *pron.*, a certain
 one or thing, someone, something; as *adj.*, a
 certain. 26
quidem, *postpositive adv.*, indeed, certainly, at
 least, even; **nē . . . quidem**, not even. 29
quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, quiet, rest, peace
quīn, *adv.*, indeed, in fact. 40
quīn etiam, *adv.*, why even, in fact, moreover
Quīntus, -ī, *m.*, Quintus, a Roman praenomen,
 abbreviated to **Q.** in writing
quis? quid?, *interrogative pron.*, who? what? which?
 19
quis, **quid**, *indef. pron.*, after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**,
 anyone, anything, someone, something. 33
quisquam, **quidquam** (or **quicquam**), *indef. pron.
 and adj.*, anyone, anything
quisque, **quidque**, *indef. pron.*, each one, each
 person, each thing. 13
quisquis, **quidquid**, *indef. pron.*, whoever,
 whatever. 23
quō, *adv.*, to which or what place, whither, where
quod, *conj.*, because. 11
quōmodo, *adv.*, in what way, how
quondam, *adv.*, formerly, once. 22
quoniam, *conj.*, since, inasmuch as. 10
quoque, *adv.*, also, too. 17
quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many, as many. 27
quotiēscumque, *adv.*, however often, whenever

R

rapiō, -ere, **rapuī**, **raptum**, seize, snatch, carry
 away. 21
rārus, -a, -um, rare
ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account; reason,
 judgment, consideration; system, manner,
 method. 8
recēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, go back, retire, recede
recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back, regain;
 admit, receive. 24
recitō (1), read aloud, recite. 17
recognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, recognize,
 recollect. 38
recordātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, recollection
recreō (1), restore, revive; refresh, cheer. 36
rēctus, -a, -um, straight, right; **rēctum**, -ī, *n.*, the
 right, virtue
recuperātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, recovery
recuperō (1), regain
recūsō (1), refuse. 33

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give back, return
redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return. 37
redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back
referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry back, bring
 back; repeat, answer, report. 31
rēgīna, -ae, f., queen. 7
rēgius, -a, -um, royal
rēgnum, -ī, n., rule, authority, kingdom
regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, rule, guide, direct. 16
relegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, read again, reread
relevō (1), relieve, alleviate, diminish
relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictum, leave behind, leave,
 abandon. 21
remaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, remain, stay
 behind, abide, continue. 5
remedium, -ī, n., cure, remedy. 4
remissiō, -ōnis, f., letting go, release; relaxation. 34
removeō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, remove
repente, adv., suddenly. 30
reperiō, -īre, -pperī, -pertum, find, discover, learn;
 get. 40
repetitiō, -ōnis, f., repetition
repetō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, seek again, repeat
rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum, creep, crawl
repugnō (1) + dat., fight against, be incompatible
 with
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum, rest. 37
requirō, -ere, -quisivī, -sītum, seek, ask for; miss,
 need, require. 36
rēs, reī, f., thing, matter, business, affair; **rēs
 pūblica, reī pūblīcae**, state, commonwealth. 22
resistō, -ere, -stitī, -stītum, make a stand, resist, oppose
respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer. 29
restituō, -ere, -stituī, -stītūtum, restore
retrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -tractum, drag or draw back
reveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, come back, return
revertor, -ī, -vertī (perf. is act.), -versum, return
revocō (1), call back, recall
rēx, rēgis, m., king. 7
rhētoricus, -a, -um, of rhetoric, rhetorical
rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, laugh, laugh at. 24
rīdiculus, -a, -um, laughable, ridiculous. 30
rogō (1), ask, ask for. 30; **rogō eum ut + subj.**, 36
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome. 14
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman. 3
rosa, -ae, f., rose. 2
rōstrum, -ī, n., beak of a ship; **Rōstra, -ōrum**, the
 Rostra, speaker's platform
rota, -ae, f., wheel
rotundus, -a, -um, wheel-shaped, round

rūmor, -mōris, m., rumor, gossip. 31
ruō, -ere, ruī, rutum, rush, fall, be ruined
rūs, rūris, n., the country, countryside. 37
rūsticor, -ārī, -ātus sum, live in the country. 34
rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic, rural

S

sabbatum, -ī, n., the Sabbath
sacculus, -ī, n., little bag, purse
sacrificium, -iī, n., sacrifice
sacerdōs, sacerdotis, m., priest. 23
sacrilegus, -a, -um, sacrilegious, impious
saepe, adv., often. 1
saeta equīna, -ae -ae, f., horse-hair
sagitta, -ae, f., arrow
sāl, salis, m., salt; wit. 33
salsus, -a, -um, salty, witty
salūbris, -e, healthy, salubrious
salūs, salūtis, f., health, safety; greeting. 21
salūtō (1), greet
salveō, -ēre, be well, be in good health. 1
salvus, -a, -um, safe, sound. 6
sānctificō (1), sanctify, treat as holy
sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, holy
sānitās, -tātis, f., health, soundness of mind, sanity
sānō (1), heal
sānus, -a, -um, sound, healthy, sane. 5
sapiēns, gen. -entis, adj., wise, judicious; *as a noun,*
m., a wise man, philosopher. 25
sapienter, adv., wisely, sensibly. 32
sapientia, -ae, f., wisdom. 3
sapiō, -ere, sapivī, -itum, have good taste; have good
 sense, be wise. 35
satiō (1), satisfy, sate. 3
satis, indecl. noun, adj., and adv., enough,
 sufficient(ly). 5
sator, -tōris, m., sower, planter; begetter, father. 38
satura, -ae, f., satire. 16
saxum, -ī, n., rock, stone. 40
scabiēs, -ēī, f., the itch, mange
scelerātus, -a, -um, criminal, wicked, accursed
scelestus, -a, -um, wicked, accursed, infamous
scelus, -leris, n., evil deed, crime, sin, wickedness.
 19
schola, -ae, f., school
scientia, -ae, f., knowledge, science, skill. 18
sciō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, know. 21
scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, write, compose. 8
scriptor, -tōris, m., writer, author. 8
sēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, separate

- secundus, -a, -um**, second; favorable. 6
sēcūrus, -a, -um, free from care, untroubled, safe
sed, conj., but. 2
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit. 34
sēductor, -tōris, m. (ecclesiastical Lat.), seducer
semel, adv., a single time, once, once and for all,
 simultaneously. 31
semper, adv., always. 3
senātor, -tōris, m., senator
senātus, -ūs, m., senate. 20
senectūs, -tūtis, f., old age. 10
senex, senis, adj. and n., old, aged; old man. 16
sēnsus, -ūs, m., feeling, sense. 20
sententia, -ae, f., feeling, thought, opinion, vote;
 sentence. 2
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsūm, feel, perceive, think,
 experience. 11
septem, indecl. adj., seven. 15
sepulchrum, -ī, n., grave, tomb
sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, follow. 34
serēnō (1), make clear, brighten; cheer up,
 soothe. 36
sēriō, adv., seriously
sērius, -a, -um, serious, grave
sermō, -mōnis, m., conversation, talk
serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, sow
serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum + dat., be a slave to,
 serve. 35
servitūs, -tūtis, f., servitude, slavery. 20
servō (1), preserve, keep, save, guard. 1
servus, -ī, m., and serva, -ae, f., slave. 24
sevērītās, -tātis, f., severity, sternness, strictness
sī, conj., if. 1
sīc, adv. (most commonly with verbs), so, thus. 29
sīcut, adv. and conj., as, just as, as it were
sīdus, -deris, n., constellation, star. 29
signum, -ī, n., sign, signal, indication; seal. 13
silentium, -iī, n., silence
silva, -ae, f., forest, wood
similis, -e, similar to, like, resembling. 27
simplex, gen. -plicis, adj., simple, unaffected
simulātiō, -ōnis, f., pretense
sine, prep. + abl., without. 2
singulī, -ae, -a, pl., one each, single, separate
singultim, adv., stammeringly
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left-hand; harmful, ill-
 omened. 20
sitiō, -īre, -īvī, be thirsty
socius, -iī, m., companion, ally
Sōcratēs, -is, m., Socrates
sōl, sōlis, m., sun. 27
sōlācium, -iī, n., comfort, relief. 24
soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed. 37
sōlitūdō, -dinis, f., solitude, loneliness
sollicitō (1), stir up, arouse, incite
sollicitūdō, -dinis, f., anxiety, concern, solicitude
sollicitus, -a, -um, troubled, anxious, disturbed
Solōn, -lōnis, m., Solon, Athenian sage and
 statesman of the 7th-6th cen. B.C.
sōlum, adv., only, merely; **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**,
 not only . . . but also. 9
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, the only. 9
somnus, -ī, m., sleep. 26
Sophoclēs, -is, m., Sophocles, one of the three
 greatest writers of Greek tragedy
sopor, -pōris, m., deep sleep
sordēs, -diūm, f. pl., filth; meanness, stinginess
soror, -rōris, f., sister. 8
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsūm, scatter, spread, strew
spectāculum, -ī, n., spectacle, show
spectō (1), look at, see. 34
speculum, -ī, n., mirror. 33
spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, scorn, despise, spurn
spērō (1), hope for, hope. 25
spēs, -eī, f., hope. 22
spīritus, -ūs, m., breath, breathing; spirit, soul. 20
stabilis, -e, stable, steadfast
stadium, -iī, n., stadium
statim, adv., immediately, at once
statua, -ae, f., statue
stēlla, -ae, f., star, planet. 28
stilus, -ī, m., stilus (*for writing*)
stō, stāre, stefī, statum, stand, stand still *or*
 firm. 13
studeō, -ēre, -uī + dat., direct one's zeal to, be
 eager for, study. 35
studiōsus, -a, -um, full of zeal, eager, fond of
studium, -iī, n., eagerness, zeal, pursuit, study. 9
stultus, -a, -um, foolish; **stultus, -ī, m.**, a fool. 4
suāvis, -e, sweet. 33
sub, prep. + abl. with verbs of rest, + acc. with
verbs of motion, under, up under, close to. 7
subitō, adv., suddenly. 33
subitus, -a, -um, sudden
subiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum, subject, subdue
sublīmis, sublīme, elevated, lofty; heroic, noble. 38
subrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsūm, smile (down)
 upon. 35
succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, run up under, help
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, be sufficient, suffice

suī (sibi, sē, sē), *reflex. pron. of 3rd pers.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves. 13
sum, esse, fuī, futūrum, be, exist. 4; **est, sunt** *may mean* there is, there are. 1
summa, -ae, f., highest part, sum, whole
summus, -a, -um. *See superus.*
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, take up, assume
sūmptus, -ūs, m., expense, cost
supellex, -lectilis, f., furniture, apparatus
superbus, -a, -um, arrogant, overbearing, haughty, proud. 26
superior. *See superus.*
superō (1), be above, have the upper hand, surpass, overcome, conquer. 5
superus, -a, -um, above, upper; **superī, -ōrum, m.**, the gods (*comp. superior, -ius*, higher; *superl. suprēmus, -a, -um*, last, *or summus, -a, -um*, highest). 27
supplicium, -iī, n., punishment
suprā, adv. and prep. + acc., above
suprēmus. *See superus.*
surculus, -ī, m., shoot, sprout
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, get up, arise. 29
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake. 25
suspendō, -ere, -pendī, -pēnsūm, hang up, suspend; interrupt. 38
sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, hold up, sustain, endure
suus, -a, -um, *reflexive possessive adj. of 3rd pers.*, his own, her own, its own, their own. 13
synagōga, -ae, f., synagogue
Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl., Syracuse. 37

T

tabella, -ae, f., writing tablet; **tabellae, -ārum**, letter, document
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, be silent, leave unmentioned. 28
tālis, -e, such, of such a sort. 34
tam, adv. used with adjs. and advs., so, to such a degree; **tam . . . quam**, so . . . as. 29
tamen, adv., nevertheless, still. 8
tamquam, adv., as it were, as if, so to speak. 29
tandem, adv., at last, finally
tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch. 21
tantum, adv., only. 26
tantus, -a, -um, so large, so great, of such size. 29
tardus, -a, -um, slow, tardy
tēctum, -ī, n., roof, house

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, hide, protect
temeritās, -tātis, f., rashness, temerity
temperantia, -ae, f., moderation, temperance, self-control
tempestās, -tātis, f., period of time, season; weather, storm. 15
templum, -ī, n., sacred area, temple
temptātiō, -ōnis, f., trial, temptation
tempus, -poris, n., time; occasion, opportunity. 7
tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum or tēnsūm, stretch, extend; go
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentum, hold, keep, possess, restrain. 14
terō, -ere, trīvī, trītum, rub, wear out
terra, -ae, f., earth, ground, land, country. 7
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten, terrify. 1
tertius, -a, -um, third. 15
thema, -matis, n., theme
Themistoclēs, -is, m., Themistocles, celebrated Athenian statesman and military leader who advocated a powerful navy at the time of the Persian Wars
timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear, be afraid of, be afraid. 15
timor, -mōris, m., fear. 10
titulus, -ī, m., label, title; placard
toga, -ae, f., toga, the garb of peace
tolerō (1), bear, endure, tolerate. 6
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise, lift up; take away, remove, destroy. 22
tondeō, -ēre, totondī, tōnsum, shear, clip
tōnsor, -sōris, m., barber
tōnsōrius, -a, -um, of *or* pertaining to a barber, barber's
tot, indecl. adj., that number of, so many. 40
tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire. 9
tractō (1), drag about; handle, treat, discuss
trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, give over, surrender, hand down, transmit, teach. 33
tragoedia, -ae, f., tragedy
trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, draw, drag; derive, acquire. 8
trāns, prep. + acc., across. 14
trānseō, -īre, -īī, -itum, go across, cross; pass over, ignore. 39
trānsferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bear across, transfer, convey
trānsitus, -ūs, m., passing over, transit; transition. 39
trēdecim, indecl. adj., thirteen. 15
tremō, -ere, tremuī, tremble
trepidē, adv., with trepidation, in confusion

trēs, tria, three. 15
 trīgintā, *indecl. adj.*, thirty
 trīstis, -e, sad, sorrowful; joyless, grim, severe. 26
 triumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumphal procession, triumph
 Trōia, -ae, *f.*, Troy. 23
 Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan
 tū, tuī, you. 11
 Tullius, -ī, *m.*, Cicero's family name
 tum, *adv.*, then, at that time; thereupon, in the
 next place. 5
 tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, uprising, disturbance
 tumulus, -ī, *m.*, mound, tomb
 tunc, *adv.*, then, at that time
 turba, -ae, *f.*, uproar, disturbance; mob, crowd,
 multitude. 14
 turpis, -e, ugly; shameful, base, disgraceful. 26
 tūtus, -a, -um, protected, safe, secure
 tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*sg.*). 2
 tyrannus, -ī, *m.*, absolute ruler, tyrant. 6

U

ubi, *rel. adv. and conj.*, where; when; *interrogative*,
 where? 6
 ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, avenge, punish for wrong
 done
 ūllus, -a, -um, any. 9
 ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, extreme; last, final. 25
 ultrā, *adv. and prep.* + *acc.*, on the other side of,
 beyond. 22
 umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade; ghost
 umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder, upper arm
 umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time. 23
 unde, *adv.*, whence, from what *or* which place;
 from which, from whom. 30
 ūnus, -a, -um, one, single, alone. 9
 urbānus, -a, -um, of the city, urban, urbane,
 elegant. 26
 urbs, urbis, *f.*, city. 14
 ūsque, *adv.*, all the way, up (to), even (to),
 continuously, always. 31
 ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, experience, skill, advantage
 ut, *conj.*; *A. with subj.*, introducing (1) *purpose*, in
 order that, that, to (28); (2) *result*, so that, that
 (29); (3) *jussive noun clauses*, to, that (36); (4)
fear clauses, that . . . not (40); *B. with indic.*, just
 as, as, when. 24
 uter, utra, utrum, either, which (of two). 9
 ūtilis, -e, useful, advantageous. 27
 ūtilitās, -tātis, *f.*, usefulness, advantage
 ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum + *abl.*, use; enjoy, experience. 34

utrum . . . an, *conj.*, whether . . . or. 30
 uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. 7

V

vacō (1), be free from, be unoccupied
 vacuus, -a, -um, empty, devoid (of), free (from)
 vae, *interjection*, alas, woe to. 34
 valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrum, be strong, have power; be
 well, fare well; valē (valēte), good-bye. 1
 valētūdō, -dinis, *f.*, health, good health, bad
 health
 varius, -a, -um, various, varied, different
 -ve, *conj.*, or 33
 vehemēns, *gen.* -mentis, *adj.*, violent, vehement,
 emphatic, vigorous
 vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, carry, convey
 vel, *conj.*, or (*an optional alternative*)
 vėlōx, *gen.* -lōcis, *adj.*, swift
 vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēnditum, sell. 38
 venia, -ae, *f.*, kindness, favor, pardon
 veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come. 10
 ventitō (1), come often
 ventus, -ī, *m.*, wind. 39
 Venus, -neris, *f.*, Venus, goddess of grace, charm,
 and love
 verbera, -rum, *n. pl.*, blows, a beating
 verbum, -ī, *n.*, word. 5
 vēre, *adv.*, truly, really, actually, rightly
 vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, show reverence for,
 respect; be afraid of, fear. 40
 Vergilius, -ī, *m.*, Virgil, the Roman epic poet
 vēritās, -tātis, *f.*, truth. 10
 vērō, *adv.*, in truth, indeed, to be sure, however. 29
 versus, -ūs, *m.*, line, verse. 20
 vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn, change. 23
 vērus, -a, -um, true, real, proper. 4
 vesper, -peris *or* -perī, *m.*, evening; evening star. 28
 vespillō, -lōnis, *m.*, undertaker
 vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*pl.*). 6
 vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, clothe
 vetus, *gen.* -teris, *adj.*, old. 34
 via, -ae, *f.*, road, street, way. 10
 vīcīnus, -ī, *m.*, vīcīna, -ae, *f.*, neighbor. 21
 vicissitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, change, vicissitude
 victor, -tōris, *m.*, victor
 victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory. 8
 vīctus, -ūs, *m.*, living, mode of life
 videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, see, observe;
 understand, 1; videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, be seen,
 seem, appear. 18

vigilō (1), be awake, watch, be vigilant
vigor, -gōris, *m.*, vigor, liveliness
vīlla, -ae, *f.*, villa, country house
vincō, -ere, **vīcī**, **vīctum**, conquer, overcome. 8
vinculum, -ī, *n.*, bond, chain. 36
vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine. 31
vir, **virī**, *m.*, man, hero. 3
virgō, -ginis, *f.*, maiden, virgin. 7
virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage; excellence, virtue, character, worth. 7
vīs, **vīs**, *f.*, force, power, violence; **vīrēs**, **vīrium**, strength. 14
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life, mode of life. 2
vitiōsus, -a, -um, full of vice, vicious. 34
vitium, -iī, *n.*, fault, vice, crime. 6
vītō (1), avoid, shun. 14
vīvō, -ere, **vīxī**, **vīctum**, live. 10
vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living. 30

vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, with difficulty
vocō (1), call, summon. 1
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, wish, want, be willing, will. 32
volō (1), fly
voluntārius, -a, -um, voluntary
voluntās, -tātis, *f.*, will, wish
voluptās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure. 10
vōs. See **tū**.
vōx, **vōcis**, *f.*, voice, word. 34
vulgus, -ī, *n.* (*sometimes m.*), the common people, mob, rabble. 21
vulnus, -neris, *n.*, wound. 24
vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, face, 40.

X

Xenophōn, -phontis, *m.*, Xenophon, Greek general and author

缩写

作者和所引著作

Aug., St. Augustine (Confessions)

Caes., Caesar

B.C., Bellum Civile

B.G., Bellum Gallicum

Catull., Catullus (Poems)

Cic., Cicero

Am., De Amicitia

Arch., Oratio pro Archia

Att., Epistulae ad Atticum

Cat., Orationes in Catilinam

De Or., De Oratore

Div., De Divinatione

Fam., Epistulae ad Familiares

Fin., De Finibus

Inv., De Inventione Rhetorica

Leg., De Legibus

Marcell, Oratio pro Marcello

Off., De Officiis

Or., Orator

Phil., Orationes Philippicae in M. Antonium

Pis., Oratio in Pisonem

Planc., Oratio pro Plancio

Q. Fr., Epistulae ad Q. Fratrem

Rep., De Re Publica

Sen., De Senectute

Sex. Rosc., Oratio pro Sex. Roscio

Sull., Oratio pro Sulla

Tusc., Tusculanae Disputationes

Verr., Actio in Verrem

Enn., Ennius (Poems)

Hor., Horace

A.P., Ars Poetica (Ep. 2.3)

Ep., Epistulae

Epod., Epodes

Od., Odes (Carmina)

Sat., Satires (Sermones)

Juv., Juvenal (Satires)

Liv., Livy (Ab Urbe Condita)

Lucr., Lucretius (De Natura Rerum)

Mart., Martial (Epigrams)

Macr., Macrobius (Saturnalia)

Nep., Nepos

Att., Atticus

Cim., Cimon

Milt., Miltiades

Ov., Ovid

A.A., Ars Amatoria	Cons. Polyb., Ad Polybium de Consolatione
Am., Amores	Ep., Epistulae
Her., Heroides	Suet., Suetonius
Met., Metamorphoses	Aug., Augustus Caesar
Pers., Persius (Satires)	Caes., Julius Caesar
Petron., Petronius (Satyricon)	Tac., Tacitus
Phaedr., Phaedrus (Fables)	Ann., Annales
Plaut., Plautus	Dial., Dialogus de Oratoribus
Aul., Aulularia	Ter., Terence
Mil., Miles Gloriosus	Ad., Adelphi
Most., Mostellaria	And., Andria
Stich., Stichus	Heaut., Heauton Timoroumenos
Plin., Pliny the Elder	Hec., Hecyra
H.N., Historia Naturalis	Phorm., Phormio
Plin., Pliny the Younger	Veg., Vegetius Renatus
Ep., Epistulae	Mil., De Re Militari
Prop., Propertius (Elegies)	Vell., Velleius Paterculus (Histories)
Publil. Syr., Publilius Syrus (Sententiae)	Virg., Virgil
Quint., Quintilian	Aen., Aeneid
Inst., Institutiones Oratoriae	Ecl., Eclogues
Sall., Sallust	Geor., Georgics
Cat., Catilina	Vulg., Vulgate
Sen., Seneca the Elder	Eccles., Ecclesiastes
Contr., Controversiae	Exod., Exodus
Sen., Seneca the Younger	Gen., Genesis
Brev. Vit., De Brevitate Vitae	
Clem., De Clementia	

其他缩写

abl.	ablative case	conj.	conjunction
abs.	absolute	contr. to fact	contrary to fact
acc.	accusative case	cp.	compare (Lat. <i>comparā</i>)
act.	active voice	dat.	dative case
A.D.	after Christ (Lat. <i>annō dominī</i> , lit., <i>in the year of the Lord</i>)	decl.	declension
adj.	adjective	dep.	deponent
adv.	adverb	e.g.	for example (Lat. <i>exemplī grātiā</i>)
App.	Appendix	Eng.	English
B.C.	before Christ	etc.	and others (Lat. <i>et cētera</i>)
ca.	about (Lat. <i>circā</i>)	f./F./fem.	feminine gender
cen(s).	century(ies)	ff.	and the following (lines, pages)
Ch(s).	Chapter(s)	Fr.	French
cl(s).	clause(s)	fr.	from
comp.	comparative (degree)	fut.	future tense
compl.	complementary	fut. perf.	future perfect tense
		gen.	genitive case

Ger.	German	pass.	passive voice
Gk.	Greek	perf.	perfect (present perfect) tense
ibid.	in the same place (Lat. <i>ibidem</i>)	pers.	person
id.	the same (Lat. <i>idem</i>)	pl.	plural
i.e.	that is (Lat. <i>id est</i>)	plupf.	pluperfect (past perfect) tense
imper.	imperative mood	P.R.	Practice and Review (sentences)
impers.	impersonal	prep.	preposition
impf.	imperfect tense	pres.	present tense
ind. quest.	indirect question	pron.	pronoun
ind. state.	indirect statement	purp.	purpose
indecl.	indeclinable	ref.	reference
indef.	indefinite	rel.	relative
indic.	indicative mood	Russ.	Russian
inf.	infinitive	sc.	supply, namely (Lat. <i>scilicet</i>)
interj.	interjection	sent.	sentence
Introd.	Introduction	sg.	singular
irreg.	irregular	Sp.	Spanish
It.	Italian	spec.	special
L.A.	<i>Locī Antīquī</i>	S.A.	<i>Sententiae Antīquae</i>
Lat.	Latin	S.S.	Supplementary Syntax (p. 442–45)
L.I.	<i>Locī Immūtātī</i>	subj.	subjunctive mood
lit.	literally	superl.	superlative
loc.	locative case	s.v.	under the word (Lat. <i>sub verbō</i>)
m./M./masc.	masculine gender	vb(s).	verb(s)
mid.	middle	voc.	vocative case
n./N./neut.	note <i>or</i> neuter gender	Vocab.	Vocabulary
no(s).	number(s)	vs.	as opposed to, in comparison with (Lat. <i>versus</i>)
nom.	nominative case	w.	with
obj.	object <i>or</i> objective		
p.	page(s)		
part.	participle		

古代名言出处

1. (1) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (2) Plaut., Most. 1.3.30.
(3) Suet., Aug. 25 (4) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11.
(5) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2. (6) Cic., Sest. 67.141.
(7) Cic., Cat. 4.3. (8) Virg., Aen. 3.121 and
4.173 and 184. (9) Ter., Heaut. 190 et pas-
sim. (10) Cic., Fam. 2.16.4. (11) Hor., Sat.
1.9.78. (12) Hor., Sat. 1.10.81–83.
(13) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (14) Cic., Inv. 1.1.1.
(15) Publil. Syr. 321.
2. (1) Plaut., Stich. 5.2.2. (2) Virg., Aen. 3.121.
(3) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937. (4) Cic., Marcell. 4.12.
(5) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
24. (7) Sen., Ep. 8.1. (8) Sen., Ep. 17.5.
(9) Cic., Fin. 3.1.2. (10) Sen., Ep. 8.5.
(11) Sen., Ep. 18.14, De Ira 1.1.2; cp. Ch. 16
S.A.8. (12) Sen., Ep. 18.15. (13) Sen., Ep.
115.16. (14) Hor., Od. 3.11.45. (15) Cic.,
Pis. 10.22.
3. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.1. (2) Hor., Sat. 2.6.41.
(3) Phaedr., Fab. I. Prologus 4. (4) Cic.,
Tusc. 5.3.9. (5) Hor., Sat. 2.7.84 and 88.
(6) Nep., Cim. 4. (7) Hor., Ep. 1.2.56.
(8) Sen., Ep. 94.43. (9) Publil. Syr., 56.
(10) Publil. Syr. 697. (11) Sen., Clem. 1.2.2.
4. (1) Cic., Am. 15.54. (2) Ter., Heaut. 2.3.295–
296. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.9.961. (4) Hor., Sat.
1.4.114. (5) Proverbial; cp. Cic., Phil. 12.2.5.
(6) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28. (7) Sen., De Ira II
18ff. and III init.; cp. Ter., Phor. 1.4.185.
(8) Virg., Ecl. 5.61. (9) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25.
(10) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701–702. (11) Catull. 5.7.
(12) Vulg., Eccles. 1.15. (13) Cic., Am.
21.79. (14) Pers., Sat. 6.27. (15) Cic., Cat.
1.4.9.
5. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.31.
(3) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (4) Ov., Her. 3.85.
(5) Cic., Fam. 14.3.1 (6) Ter., Ad. 5.8.937.
(7) Ter., Ad. 5.9.992–993. (8) Cic., Att. 2.2.
(9) Sen., Cons. Polyb. 9.6. (10) Ter., Ad.
5.8.937. (11) Sen., Ep. 17.5. (12) Virg., Ecl.
5.78. (13) Hor., Ep. 2.3.445–446 (Ars Po-
etica).
6. (1) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.57. (2) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.61.
(3) Cic., Cat. 3.1.3. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.
(5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Liv. 21.1.2.
(7) Cic., Arch. 3.5. (8) Sen., Ep. 73.16.
(9) Publil. Syr. 302. (10) Publil. Syr. 282.
7. (1) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (2) Vulg., Eccles. 1.10.
(3) Hor., Od. 3.1.2–4. (4) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
23. (5) Hor., Ep. 1.16.52. (6) Mart.
12.6.11–12. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.6.15–16.
(8) Cic.; cp. graffiti. (9) Sen., Ep. 82.2.
(10) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (11) Hor., Sat.
1.9.59–60. (12) Cic., Cat. 3.12.29.
(13) Vulg., Luke 2.14.
8. (1) Ter., Ad. 5.4.863. (2) Ter., Heaut. 3.1.432.
(3) Laberius; see Macr. 2.7. (4) Cic., Cat.
3.1.3. (5) Publil. Syr. 507; also Macr. 2.7.
(6) Sen., Ep. 8.3. (7) Catull. 49. (8) Liv.
26.50.1. (9) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.98. (10) Cic.,
Arch. 11.26. (11) Cic., Marcell. 5.15.
(12) Hor., Ep. 2.2.65–66. (13) Hor., Ep.
1.2.1–2. (14) Sen., Ep. 106.12. (15) Sen.,
Ep. 7.8. (16) Liv. 22.39.21.
9. (1) Ter., Phor. 4.5.727. (2) Ter., Phor. 4.3.670.
(3) Ter., Heaut. 4.3.709. (4) Cic., Am.
27.102. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.3.539. (6) Cic.,
Cat. 1.13.31. (7) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (8) Mart.
10.72.4. (9) Liv. 22.39.10.
10. (1) Cic., Off. 1.20.68. (2) Ter., Ad. 4.3.593.
(3) Ter., Ad. 3.2.340. (4) Mart. 6.70.15.
(5) Cic., Clu. 18.51. (6) Lucr. 6.93–95.
(7) Pers. 5.153. (8) Hor., Epod. 13.3–4.
(9) Cic., Sen. 19.67. (10) Virg., Georg. 3.284.
(11) Virg., Aen. 3.395. (12) Publil. Syr. 764.
(13) Cic., Am. 24.89.
11. (1) Hor., Sat. 2.5.33. (2) Ter., Ad. 1.1.49.
(3) Plin., Ep. 1.11.1. (4) Plin., Ep. 5.18.1.
(5) Ter., Hec. 1.2.197. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.8.20.
(7) Cic., Marcell. 11.33. (8) Cic., Fam.
1.5.b.2. (9) Liv. 120. (10) Hor., Ep. 2.2.58.
(11) Mart. 12.47. (12) Cic., Am. 21.80.
12. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.1 and 27. (2) Suet., Caes. 37.
(3) Ter., Hec. 3.5.461. (4) Cic., Sen. 19.68.
(5) Sen., Brev. Vit.; see Duff, Silver Age p.
216. (6) Ter., Phor. 2.1.302. (7) Cic., Sen.
7.22. (8) Cic., Off. 1.24.84. (9) Tac., Ann.
1.1.1. (10) Laber. in Macr. 2.7.
13. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.21. (2) Cic., Sull. 24.67.
(3) Cic. Cat. 3.10. (4) Cic., Am. 21.80.
(5) Publil. Syr. 206. (6) Sen., Ep. 7.8.
(7) Sen., Ep. 80.3. (8) Phaedr. 4.21.1.
14. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.10. (2) Lucr. 5.822–823.
(3) Virg., Ecl. 2.33. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.33–

34. (5) Ter., Phor. 3.2.506. (6) Hor., Od. 3.1.13. (7) Enn. in Cic., Rep. 3.3.6. (8) Sall., Cat. 3.4. (9) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7. (10) Hor., Ep. 2.3.268–269. (11) Cic., Sen. 6.17. (12) Hor., Ep. 1.11.27.
15. (1) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421–422. (2) Cic., Fam. 16.9.2. (3) Cic., Arch. 3.5. (4) Tac., Ann. 12.32. (5) Cic., Cat. 3.2.3. (6) Cic., Verr. 2.5.62. (7) Catull. 3.5 and 10. (8) Ter., Ad. 5.4 *passim*. (9) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.58.
16. (1) Phaedr., 3.7.1. (2) Virg., Geor. 1.145. (3) Ter., Phor. 1.4.203. (4) Cic., Or. 59.200. (5) Virg., Aen. 3.657–658. (6) Virg., Aen. 4.569–570. (7) Mart. 7.85.3–4. (8) Hor., Ep. 1.2.62; *cp.* Ch. 2 S.A. 11. (9) Servius on Aen. 1.683. (10) Hor., Od. 2.16.27–28. (11) Phaedr., Fab. 1. Prologus 3–4. (12) Cic., Leg. 1.22.58. (13) Sen., Clem. 1.19.6. (14) Sen. Brev. Vit. (15) Cic., Sen. 19.70. (16) Vell. 2.66.3 (*cp.* Duff., Silver Age p. 91).
17. (1) Ter., Phor. 2.1.287–288. (2) Cic., N.D. 3.34.83. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (4) Publil. Syr. 321. (5) Hor., Ep. 1.2.40–41. (6) Publil. Syr. 353. (7) Publil. Syr. 232. (8) Cic., Am. 15.54. (9) Publil. Syr. 86. (10) Cic., Am. 25.92. (11) Cic., Am. 27.102. (12) Sen., Ep. 7.1 and 8.
18. (1) Virg., Aen. 5.231. (2) Tac., Ann. 15.59. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.3.6. (4) Publil. Syr. 393. (5) Ov., Met. 4.428. (6) Plin., Ep. 9.6.1. (7) Cic., Fam. 9.20.3. (8) Lucr. 3.830–831. (9) Publil. Syr. 37. (10) Cic., Marcell. 2.7. (11) Enn. (See Duff, Golden Age p. 148.) (12) Hor., Sat. 1.2.11. (13) Juv. 1.74.
19. (1) Lucr. 1.112. (2) Cic., Cat. 3.5.13. (3) Cic., Sest. 67.141. (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132. (5) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9. (6) Cic., Planc. 33.80. (7) Cic., Am. 15.55.
20. (1) Mart. 13.94.1. (2) Cic., Fin. 5.29.87. (3) Cic., Am. 12.42. (4) Cic., De Or. 1.61.261. (5) Hor., Od. 1.38.1. (6) Hor., Sat. 1.3.66. (7) Cic., Sen. 5.15. (8) Sen., Clem. 1.6.2–3. (9) Cic., Off. 1.2.4. (10) Quint., Inst. 8.3.41. (11) Hor., Od. 1.22.1–2. (12) Cic., Fam. 16.9.3. (13) Cic., Cat. 3.5.10.
21. (1) Publil. Syr. 507. (2) Mart. 1.86.1–2. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.11.27. (4) Hor., Epod. 16.1–2. (5) Cic., Am. 6.22. (6) Cic., Sen. 19.69. (7) Cic., N.D. 2.62.154. (8) Cic., Sen. 17.59. (9) Phaedr., App. 27. (10) Vulg., Job 28.12. (11) Liv., 22.39.19.
22. (1) Cic., Att. 9.10.3. (2) Hor., Od. 2.3.1–2. (3) Cic., Rep. 3.31. (4) Cic., Cat. 1.1.3. (5) Cic., Marcell. 10.32. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (7) Cic., Cat. 3.1.1. (8) Liv. 32.33.10. (9) Plaut., Aul. 4.10.772. (10) Cic., Am. 17.64. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.3.148–149. (12) Virg., Georg. 2.490 and 493. (13) Sen., Ep. 17.12. (14) Hor., Ep. 1.1.19. (15) Hor., Sat. 1.1.106–107. (16) Mart. 10.76.1
23. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.2.6. (2) Liv. 44.42.4. (3) Hor., Sat. 1.1.68–69. (4) Cic., N.D. 2.4.12. (5) Hor., Ep. 2.1.156. (6) Nep., Att. 4. (7) Quint., Inst. Praef. 5. (8) Hor., Sat. 1.10.72. (9) Quint., Inst. 11.3.157. (10) Cic., N.D. 3.33.82. (11) Cic., Sen. 3.9. (12) Hor., Ep. 1.16.66. (13) Sen., Ep. 61.3. (14) Hor., Ep. 1.18.71.
24. (1) *Cp.* Plutarch, Cato ad fin. (2) Plin., H.N. 33.148. (3) Caes., B.C. 2.43. (4) Cic., Sex. Rosc. 1.3. (5) Cic., Marcell. 8.24. (6) Hor., Od. 3.14.14–16. (7) Cic., Rep. 2.30. (8) Tac., Dial. 5.
25. (1) Ter., Heaut. Prolog. 18. (2) Cic., 1.11.27. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.11.27. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.2.4. (5) Cic., Cat. 4.10.22. (6) Cic., Off. 1.1.1. (7) Ter., Phor. 4.1.581–582. (8) Cic., Sen. 16.56. (9) Enn. in Cic., Div. 2.56.116. (10) Cic., Tusc. 1.42.101. (11) Cic., Tusc. 5.37.108. (12) Cic., quoted in Dumesnil's Lat. Synonyms s.v. *abnuere*. (13) Cic., Tusc., 5.40.118. (14) Cic., Sen. 21.77. (15) Cic., Sen. 19.68. (16) Plin., Ep. 7.9.15.
26. (1) Cic., Sen. 16.55. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.3.6. (3) Sen., Contr. 6.7.2; Publil. Syr. 253. (4) Cic., Cat. 3.1.5. (5) Sen., Ep. 61.3. (6) Ov., Her. 17.71–72. (7) Hor., Epod. 2.1, 7, 8. (8) Cic., Am. 26.99. (9) Cic., Sen. 19.68. (10) Mart. 1.107.1–2. (11) Mart. 14.208. (12) Cic., Off. 1.22.74. (13) Catull. 12.
27. (1) Ov., Met. 7.21–22. (2) Mart. 1.16.1. (3) Ter., Ad. 5.5.884, 5.7.922. (4) Plin., Ep. 10.88. (5) Cic., Sen. 6.19. (6) Cic., Off. 1.22.78. (7) Cic., Off. 1.22.77. (8) Cic., Sen. 2.5. (9) Sen., Ep. 17.9. (10) See Ch. 4 S.A.7. (11) Cic., Marcell. 3.8. (12) Cic., Tusc. 5.20.57–5.21.62. (13) Virg., Aen. 7.312.
28. (1) Liv. 22.39.21. (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.77. (3) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18. (4) Ter., Phor. 5.5.831. (5) Hor., Epod. 13.3–4. (6) Sen., Ep. 80.3. (7) Sen. (8) Diog. Laert.: a Latin translation from his Greek. (9) Quint., Inst. 2.2.5. (10) Cic., Am. 24.89. (11) Ov., A.A. 1.97. (12) Virg., Aen. 1.1–2.
29. (1) Virg., Ecl. 10.69. (2) Virg., Aen. 4.653, 655 (3) Ter., Phor. 3.2.497–498. (4) Hor., Ep. 1.1.40. (5) Juv. 1.30. (6) Cic., Cat. 1.1.3.

- (7) Cic., Phil. 10.10.20. (8) Cic., Phil. 4.5.9.
 (9) Nep., Milt. 5. (10) Cic., De Or. 1.61.260.
 (11) Hor., A.P. (Ep. 2.3) 335–336. (12) Ter.,
 Heaut. 4.2.675. (13) Cic., Off. 1.23.80.
 (14) Cic., Am. 9.29.
30. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.3.6. (2) Phaedr. 3.7.1. (3) Hor.,
 Sat. 1.5.67–68. (4) Virg., Ecl. 8.43.
 (5) Hor., Sat. 1.4.16. (6) Cic., Marcell.
 10.30. (7) Lucr. 1.55–56. (8) Lucr. 2.4.
 (9) Hor., Ep. 1.2.1–4. (10) Hor., Ep. 1.18.96–
 97, 100–101. (11) Sen., Ep. 115.14.
 (12) Prop. 2.15.29–30. (13) Cic., Tusc.
 1.41.99.
31. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.6.15. (2) Cic., Am. 12.42.
 (3) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10 and 1.9.23. (4) Hor.,
 Od. 1.14.1–2. (5) Cic., Marcell. 7.22.
 (6) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.2.4.14. (7) Cic., Cat. 3.5.12.
 (8) Cic., Sen. 10.33. (9) Liv. 45.8. (10) Ter.,
 Ad. 2.1.155. (11) Ter., Phor. 1.2.137–138.
 12. Cic., Cluent. 53.146.
32. (1) Publil. Syr. 512. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.5.10.
 (3) Hor., Ep. 1.6.29. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.9.996.
 (5) Ter., Heaut. 4.1.622. (6) Cic., Sen. 3.7.
 (7) Ter., Ad. 4.5.701. (8) Caes., B.G. 3.18.
 (9) Plaut., Trin. 2.2.361. (10) Publil. Syr.
 129. (11) Sall., Cat. 8. (12) Cic., Fin.
 3.7.26. (13) See Ch. 18 S.A. 11. (14) Sen.,
 Ep. 80.6. (15) Hor., Sat. 1.1.25–26.
 16. Hor., Ep. 2.3.102–103 (Ars Poetica).
33. (1) Veg., Mil. Prolog. 3. (2) Cic., Off. 1.22.76.
 (3) Cic., Sull. 31.87. (4) Cic., Q. Fr. 1.3.5.
 (5) Phaedr. App. 18. (6) Hor., Sat. 2.7.22–
 24. (7) Publil. Syr. 412. (8) Hor., Od.
 4.10.6. (9) Juv. 3.152–153.
34. (1) Virg., Aen. 3.188. (2) Hor., Sat. 1.3.68–69.
 (3) Cic., N.D. 2.62.154. (4) Cp. Sen., De Ira
 2.9.1 and Cic., Tusc. 3.9.19. (5) Cic., Cat.
 1.5.10. (6) Hor., Od. 3.16.7. (7) Cic., Fam.
 7.10.1. (8) Publil. Syr. 350. (9) Mart. Bk. I
 Praef. 1–2. (10) Cic., Sen. 19.69. (11) Ter.,
 Heaut. 1.2.239–240. (12) Cic., Am. 6.22.
 (13) Cic., De Or. 2.67.274. (14) Virg., Aen.
 1.199.
35. (1) Sen., cp. Ep. 8.7; and Hor., Sat. 2.7.83 ff. and
 Ep. 1.16.66. (2) Publil. Syr. 290. (3) Publil.
 Syr. 99. (4) Hor., Sat. 1.1.86–87. (5) Cic.,
 Fin. 1.18.60, 4.24.65; De Or. 1.3.10 et pas-
 sim. (6) Publil. Syr. 767 and 493. (7) Vulg.,
 Gen. 1.26. (8) Cic., Rep. 2.24.59. (9) Caes.,
 B.G. 4.23 and 5.45. (10) Quint., Inst.
 10.1.112. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.41–42.
 (12) Publil. Syr. 687. (13) Hor., Sat. 2.2.135–
 136. (14) Virg., Aen. 1.630. (15) Publil.
 Syr. 288.
36. (1) Vulg., Gen. 1.3. (2) Lucr. 1.205. (3) Ter.,
 Heaut. 2.3.314. (4) Caes., B.C. 2.43.
 (5) Ter., Ad. 3.4.505. (6) Ter., Heaut.
 5.5.1049 and 1067. (7) Hor., Od. 1.11.7–8.
 (8) Pers. 5.151–152. (9) Sen., Ep. 61.2.
 (10) Cic., Sen. 8.26. (11) Hor., Ep. 2.2.206–
 211. (12) Hor., Od. 1.24.19–20. (13) Ov.,
 Am. 1.2.10. (14) Cic., Am. 5.7. (15) Cic.,
 Arch. 2.3.
37. (1) Hor., Ep. 2.3.68. (2) Virg., Aen. 6.127.
 (3) Ov., A.A. 3.62–65. (4) Ter., Hec. 1.2.132;
 Ad. 1.1.26. (5) Ter., Ad. 5.5.882. (6) Ter.,
 Ad. 4.1.517, 4.2.556. (7) Hor., Sat. 1.9.1.
 (8) Cic., Tusc. 5.21.62. (9) Cic., Verr.
 2.4.54.120. (10) Ter., Hec. 3.4.421 and 423.
 (11) Cic., Cat. 1.9.23. (12) Nep., Att. 8; Cic.,
 Phil. 2.12.28, Tusc. 5.37.109 (names
 changed). (13) Cic., Att. 12.50. (14) Cic.,
 Sen. 7.24. (15) Prop., 2.15.23–24.
38. (1) Caes., B.G. 1.31. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.4.9.
 (3) Cat., 4.7.16. (4) Cic., Am. 7.23.
 (5) Cic., Cat. 1.6.13. (6) Cic., Am. 15.53.
 (7) Cic., Cat. 1.7.18. (8) Cic., Cat. 4.11.24.
 (9) Virg., Ecl. 1.7. (10) Cic., Fam. 4.5.6.
 (11) Sen., Ep. 17.11. (12) Cic., Marcell. 4.11.
 (13) Plin., Ep. 5.16.4–5. (14) Hor., Od.
 1.37.1–2.
39. (1) Cic., Cat. 1.12.30. (2) Cic., Cat. 1.13.32.
 (3) Cic., Off. 1.22.74. (4) Publil. Syr. 762.
 (5) Cic., Off. 1.25.89. (6) Cic., Verr. 2.4.54.
 (7) Cic., Off. 3.32.113. (8) Cic., Sest. 2.5
 (9) Cic., Sen. 5.15. (10) Cic., Att. 2.23.1.
 (11) Publil. Syr. 704. (12) Cic., Leg. 1.23.60.
 (13) Virg., Aen. 4.175. (14) Cic., Fam.
 5.12.4.
40. (1) Cic., Cat. 4.7.14. (2) Hor., Od. 3.30.6–7.
 (3) Cic., Tusc. 1.41.97. (4) Ter., Ad. 5.4.856.
 (5) Sen., Ep. 7.7. (6) Plin., Ep. 9.6.2.
 (7) Lucr. 4.1286–87. (8) Cic., Fam. 14.12.
 (9) Liv.: see Loci Immutati #17. (10) Cic.,
 Marcell. 10.32. (11) Catull. 43.1–3.
 (12) Ter., Heaut. 1.1.77. (13) Cic., Am.
 21.81. (14) Vulg., Exod. 20.11. (15) Caes.,
 B.G. 1.47. (16) Cic., Cat. 1.4.8. (17) Cic.,
 Planc. 42.101.

汉英术语对照表 *

(按汉语拼音顺序排列)

i-词干名词 i-stem noun	代词 pronoun
半异态动词 semideponent	单数 single
伴随夺格 ablative of accompaniment	地点夺格(从何处) ablative of place from which
被动(语)态 passive voice	地点夺格(在何处) ablative of place where
比较(等级) comparison	地点结构 place construction
比较夺格 ablative of comparison	第二变格(法) second declension
比较级 comparative degree	第二变位(法) second conjugation
变格(法) declension	第三变格(法) third declension
变位(法) conjugation	第三变位(法) third conjugation
宾格 accusative (case); objective (case)	第四变格(法) fourth declension
宾语 object	第四变位(法) fourth conjugation
宾语不定式 objective infinitive	第五变格(法) fifth declension
宾语属格 objective genitive	第一变格(法) first declension
补充不定式 complementary infinitive	第一变位(法) first conjugation
不定冠词 indefinite article	定冠词 definite article
不定式 infinitive	动词 verb
不规则动词 irregular verb	动词变位缩写式 synopsis
不及物动词 intransitive verb	动词性名词 verbal noun
材料属格 genitive of material	动词性形容词 verbal adjective
差异夺格 ablative of degree of difference	动名词 gerund
词干 stem	动形词(将来时被动态分词) gerundive (future passive participle)
词根 base, root	独立夺格 ablative absolute
词汇(表) vocabulary	独立句 independent clause
词类 parts of speech	短语(习语、惯用语) phrase
词尾 ending	夺格 ablative (case)
词形变化表 paradigm	反身代词 possessive pronoun
词源(学) etymology	反身物主代词 reflexive possessive
从句 subordinate clause	

* 本对照表为译者整理添加。——编者注

- 方式夺格 ablative of manner
 分词 participles
 分词短语 participial phrase
 分离夺格 ablative of separation
 辅音 consonant
 附带条件从句 proviso clause
 复合词 compound
 复合动词 compound verb
 复数 plural
 副词 adverb
 感叹词 interjection
 格 case
 关系代词 relative pronoun
 关系与格(兴趣与格) dative of reference (dative of interest)
 冠词 article
 过去完成时 pluperfect tense (past perfect)
 后置词 postpositive word
 后缀 suffix
 呼格 vocative (case)
 基本时态 primary tense
 基数词 cardinal numeral
 及物动词 transitive verb
 间接宾语 indirect object
 间接陈述 indirect statement
 间接命令句 jussive noun clause
 间接问句 indirect question
 间接引语 indirect quotation
 将来时 future tense
 将来时被动态不定式 future passive infinitive
 将来时被动态分词(动形词) future passive participle (gerundive)
 将来时不定式 future infinitive
 将来时不定式主动态 future active infinitive
 将来时主动态分词 future active participle
 将来完成时 future perfect
 结果从句 result clause
 介词 preposition
 句法 syntax
 可能性大的将来 future more vivid
 可能性小的将来 future less vivid
 历史时态 historical tense
 连词 conjunction
 流音 liquid
 罗曼语(罗曼诸语言) Romance languages
 描述夺格 ablative of description
 描述属格 genitive of description
 名词 substantive; noun
 命令句 imperative sentence
 命令式 imperative
 目的从句 purpose clause
 目的动名词 supine
 派生词 derivative
 派生时态 secondary tense
 派生语 derivative language
 祈愿句 jussive clause
 祈愿式 jussive
 祈愿虚拟式 jussive subjunctive
 前缀 prefix
 强势代词 intensive pronoun
 屈折变化 inflection
 屈折形式 inflected form
 屈折语 inflected language
 人称 person
 人称词尾 personal ending
 人称代词 personal pronoun
 塞音 stop
 施事(者) agent
 施事夺格 ablative of (personal) agent
 施事与格 dative of agent

时间夺格 (何时/期间) ablative of time when or within which	物主与格 dative of possession
时间结构 time construction	现在时 present tense
时态 tense	现在时不定式 present infinitive
时态序列 sequence of tenses	现在时不定式被动态 present passive infinitive
式(语气)Mood	现在时不定式主动态 present active infinitive
手段夺格 (工具夺格)ablative of means or instrument	现在时分词 present participle
数 number	现在时系统 present system
数词 numeral	现在时主动态分词 present active participle
双元音 diphthong	现在完成时 present perfect
属格 genitive (case)	限定动词 finite verb
属有 possession	限定形式 finite forms
缩约 contraction	项 item
所有格 possessive case	形容词 adjective
特殊动词 special verb	形式 form
特征关系从句 relative clause of characteristic condition(从)句 conditional sentences; condition	性 gender
同化 assimilation	修饰语 modifier
同位语 apposition	虚拟句 subjunctive clause
同源词 cognate (word)	虚拟式 subjunctive
同源语 cognate language	虚拟条件句 subjunctive condition
完成时 perfect tense	序数词 ordinal
完成时被动态分词 perfect passive participle	阳性 masculine
完成时不定式 perfect infinitive	一致 agreement
完成时不定式被动态 perfect passive infinitive	疑虑从句 fear clause
完成时不定式主动态 perfect active infinitive	疑问代词 interrogative pronoun
完成时系统 perfect system	疑问形容词 interrogative adjective
未完成时 imperfect tense	异干互补 suppletion
位置格 locative case	异态动词 deponent verb
谓语 predicate	阴性 feminine
谓语形容词 predicate adjective	音节 syllable
谓语性名词 predicate substantive	音节划分 syllabification
无人称动词 impersonal verb	音量 quantity
物主代词 possessive pronoun	迂说法 periphrasis
	与格 dative (case)
	语境 context
	语音变化 phonetic change

元音 vowel

原级 positive degree

原因夺格 ablative of cause

整体属格（部分属格）genitive of the whole
(partitive genitive)

直陈式 indicative

直陈条件句 indicative condition

直接宾语 direct object

直接陈述 direct statement

直接问句 direct question

直接引语 direct discourse

指定夺格 ablative of specification

指示词 demonstrative

指小词 diminutive

中性 neuter

重音 accent

主动(语)态 active voice

主动迂说法 active periphrastic

主格 nominative (case)

主句 main clause

主要部分 principal part

主要动词 main verb

主语 subject

主重音 stress accent

助动词 auxiliary

转折从句 adversative clause

状语 adverbial (modifier)

子句(从句)clause

字母表 alphabet

最高级 superlative degree

译后记

对于任何一个认真研究西方文化的人来说，拉丁语的重要性是不言而喻的。在所有古典语言中，希腊语和拉丁语对西方的语言、文学、历史、宗教、哲学、科学产生了最为深远的影响，现存的拉丁语文献浩如烟海。语言是文化的载体，要想真正深入理解一种文化，就必须学习它的语言。这就好比要想深入研究中国的历史和文化，就不能没有扎实的古汉语功底。

拉丁语起源于意大利台伯河下游附近的拉丁姆(Latium)地区，是两千年前古罗马人的方言之一，后逐渐取代其他方言而成为罗马帝国的通用语言。罗马帝国崩溃后，拉丁语成为罗马天主教会的官方语言，从而从一种方言变成了一种世界性的语言。中世纪的知识分子用拉丁语保存和传承着文明的火种，虽然语言本身发生了不小的变化，¹但在这一时期，几乎所有的书籍都是用拉丁语写成的，通俗拉丁语《圣经》是当时世界上最通行的译本，拉丁语成为最接近世界性的语言，欧洲各国的本土语言反而难登大雅之堂。尽管在中世纪以后，拉丁语已不在欧洲通用，但它却成为法语、意大利语、西班牙语、葡萄牙语、罗马尼亚语等现代罗曼语的母语，这些语言中的大量词汇都来自拉丁语。可以说，所有这些民族实际上都在说一种现代形式的拉丁语。英语中也有超过一半的词汇直接或间接来源于拉丁语。从这个意义上讲，拉丁语的确是一门活着的死语言(living dead language)。²如果首先学了拉丁语，再学欧洲其他语言就会容易得多。到了近代，哥白尼、培根、开普勒、笛卡尔、斯宾诺莎、牛顿等近代哲学家和科学家的主要著作都是用拉丁语写成的。直到20世纪初，拉丁语还是每一个欧美儿童必修的基础课程。今天，虽然除一些宗教仪式等少数场合外，拉丁语已经不再作为日常语言使用，但拉丁语语法还是制定世界通用的科学名词的依据，从而广泛

¹ 关于拉丁语的演变，参见本书导言部分。

² 世界著名语言学家、《剑桥语言百科全书》(The Cambridge Encyclopaedia of Language)等书的作者克里斯托尔(David Crystal)教授认为，说希腊语和拉丁语都是“死语言”是不恰当的，它们都是“活着的死语言”。

应用于生物、医学、药学、法学、农学等领域。

对西方文化的研究者而言,学习拉丁语当然主要是为了阅读现存的大量拉丁语文献。考虑到拉丁语在历史上的演变,学习拉丁语的最好方法还是学习两千年前罗马文学所使用的古典拉丁语。因为这是拉丁语的鼎盛时期,学好了它,后来的拉丁语就很容易掌握了。拉丁语朴实无华,简洁有力,精确清晰,为其他语言所不及,但语法比较烦琐,掌握起来并不容易。国内已经出版过的拉丁语教材可谓少之又少。目前市面上较为多见的是各种医药拉丁文和植物拉丁文教材,但其内容过于专业和实用,并不能使读者真正系统地掌握拉丁语。国内比较有影响的系统拉丁语教材首推商务印书馆 1983 年出版的肖原先生的《拉丁语基础》,类似的拉丁语教材还有商务印书馆 1959 年出版的谢大任编著的《拉丁语语法》,农业出版社 1984 年出版的朱奇武著的《基础拉丁语》,上海外语教育出版社 1989 年出版的谢大任、张廷琚编著的《拉丁语自学读本》等等。它们对中国的拉丁语教育事业起了巨大的推动作用,功不可没。然而,这些著作对语法的讲解过于简洁,术语翻译不太符合当代人的习惯;更重要的是,这些书早已绝版,市面上极难见到,使得想学习拉丁语的人求学无门,以致渐渐地许多人竟不知道拉丁语到底是何种语言。

由于专业的原因,译者在学习期间经常会接触到拉丁语,于是学习拉丁语就成为十分迫切的事情。幸运的是,我在北大哲学系求学期间有机会学习了拉丁语,使我打下了一定的基础,但课堂上使用的是一本德语教材,读起来毕竟不像汉语和英语那样轻松,而且内容有些简略,如果没有讲解,学起来还是比较困难。这让我深切体会到一本好的拉丁语教材的重要性和必要性。

在学习过程中,我接触到了学习古典拉丁语的人都知道的《韦洛克拉丁语教程》,立即被其系统的组织编排、清晰的语法讲解以及所选取的古典作家原汁原味的作品所吸引。难怪《韦洛克拉丁语教程》堪称目前英语世界最经典的古典拉丁语教材,已经风行了半个世纪,如今已是第六版。我想,既然国内迟迟看不到用中文编写的系统拉丁语教材,为何不翻译出版国外的同类经典著作呢?况且西方人写教材一向有更为周到的考虑,讲解更加透彻,用与拉丁文关系密切的西文讲授拉丁语也必定更为直观和清楚。于是我便萌生了翻译这本教材的念头。

也许有人会问,既然用西文讲授拉丁语更加清楚,何必还要翻译呢?影印出版岂不更原汁原味?这么说不无道理,但翻译自有其独特的价值和意义,这主要是出于以下几点考虑:

首先,对于中国读者来说,学习拉丁语这样一门精密而古老的西方语言需要莫大的毅力和耐心。面对这样一部对读者的英语水平有较高要求的专业教材,中文的协助和引导不可或缺。如果书中满是不甚熟悉的术语,那么势必很容

易让读者失去信心,半途而废,拉丁语学习的普及更是无从谈起。

其次,翻译这本经典的拉丁语教材有助于规范术语译名,促进语言交流。在以往出过的拉丁语教材中,各种术语的译法比较混乱,有时同一本书中同一个术语竟会有好几个译法,比如“deponent”的译法有“异态动词”、“异相动词”、“冒被动词”,“genitive”的译法有“属格”、“所有格”、“生格”,“gerundive”的译法有“动形词”、“形动词”、“将来被动形动词”等等。在许多情况下,各种译法都有道理,很难做出取舍。译者综合多方意见,给出了一种自认为比较合适的译法,并且必要时在脚注中提到了已有的其他译法。随着我国了解拉丁语的人越来越多,对这些重要术语的译名进行规范既是必需,也是文化自信的表现。既然梵文、巴利文的佛经都已融入汉语,相信拉丁文术语亦能为汉语所驾驭。

最后,考虑到英文和拉丁语在语法和字形上的紧密关系,许多单词和语法用英文讲解的确更为直观清楚,因此译者只把讲解语法的主干内容译成中文,许多例句、图表和段落原封未动,而且在必要的地方加注了原文,以尽可能地避免因翻译而导致的误解。

当然,这也就要求译者在翻译过程中必须加倍尽职尽责,尤其是对这样一部教材,更需要小心谨慎,不能有丝毫马虎。在翻译过程中,我查阅了国内已经出版的所有拉丁文教材和各种工具书词典,了解了重要术语已有的各种译法,以期把译名定得尽可能确当。译者学识有限,独立翻译这本经典教材,其中的困难和压力可想而知。至于翻译质量如何,使用起来是否顺畅,则当由读者来评判。

感谢吴兴元先生欣然将这本“畅销书”纳入出版计划;感谢霍振舟先生为本书题写书名;中国人民大学的雷立柏先生对本书的出版予以热情支持,并欣然作序;网友小蜜蜂 ismhs_bee 和 Varro 回答了译者在翻译过程中碰到的不少问题,尤其是 ismhs_bee,对译者的支持和帮助甚多;特别要感谢好友杨维宇和罗道然阅读了全部译文,提出了许多很好的意见和建议。

最后,还有几点需要交代一下:

(1)每一课的“练习与复习”、“古代名言”和各种阅读材料原书并未给出英文翻译,而参考译文对许多读者来说也许是相当重要的。好在网友 Benissimus 已经给出了他的参考译文,即“Benissimus' Wheelock's Answers”,而且可以免费下载,网址是 http://www.textkit.com/learn/ID/162/author_id/76。但由于篇幅和版权的原因,中译本无法把这些译文附上,而且其中的有些地方并不十分准确,这一点需请读者自行判断。

(2)《韦洛克拉丁语教程》虽然看起来内容很多,但其实有近一半的内容是原始阅读材料,真正讲语法的部分还是非常简练,作为初学者读起来还是要花一番精力的。好在北卡罗莱纳的格罗特(Dale A. Grote)教授编写了一本《韦洛

克拉丁语教程》学习指南》(*Comprehensive Study Guide for Wheelock's Latin*),从读者的实际考虑出发,更详细地解释了《韦洛克拉丁语教程》讨论的种种语法现象,解答了读者在阅读它时可能遇到的问题,对我们学习这本书很有帮助。找不到原书的读者可以参见它的网络版 <http://humanum.arts.cuhk.edu.hk/Lexis/Wheelock-Latin>,包含了对《韦洛克拉丁语教程》前三十五课内容的讲解,作者免费提供使用;还可参见爱好拉丁语的热心网友“乾城梦幻”对本学习指南的粗略翻译。当然,他的术语译名与本书所采用的有一些出入,读者可自行参考。

(3) www.wheelockslatin.com 是《韦洛克拉丁语教程》的官方网站,里面有关于这本书的各种资料信息、辅助读物、相关网站和论坛,还有每一课的发音示例。需要指出的是,拉丁语的发音随时间和地域的不同而有所不同,目前并无定准,本书所介绍的以及网站音频文件上的拉丁语发音是比较特别的,据说比较符合古罗马人的发音,相关背景请参见此网站。此外还有不少很好的古典语言网站可以参考,常见的有 <http://www.textkit.com> 等等。

(4)关于拉丁语词典,的确是个问题。国内已出版的比较重要的词典有:商务印书馆 1988 年出版的谢大任主编的《拉丁语汉语词典》,主要由《拉俄词典》编译而成;贵州人民出版社 1986 年出版的彭泰尧主编的《拉汉词典》;光启出版社 1983 年出版的吴金瑞神父编写的《拉丁汉文辞典》等等。但这些书现已很难买到。在国内偶尔也能买到一些优秀的原版拉丁语词典,比如 *The Bantam New College Latin and English Dictionary*, *Collins Latin Dictionary & Grammar* 等等。另外,网络上也有一些很好用的软件和词典可供使用。译者热切希望国内的出版社能够尽快组织编写、重印或引进一些好的拉丁语词典,以飨广大热爱拉丁语、热爱古典文学的中国读者。

随着我国对外交流的不断深入,归国人员日益增多,日语、法语、德语、韩语等许多小语种渐渐都成了大语种,许多更冷僻的语言也有不少专业人才。然而,像拉丁语和希腊语这样重要的古典语言却远远没有受到应有的重视,这实在是一件令人扼腕的事情。目前国内懂拉丁语的人还不多,懂希腊语的就更少了。作为对塑造西方文化起了最大作用的两门语言,在中国遭遇这种状况是很不正常的。在一个国家,古典语言是否受到足够的重视,是其综合实力的重要标志。在德国等发达国家,每一个文科博士生都必须修一门古典语言才能毕业,这充分体现了他们对世界各国文化传统的重视和传承。随着我国综合国力的增强,拉丁语、希腊语、梵语等古典语言越来越受人重视,必定是大势所趋。毕竟,要想真正深入地了解西方,仅仅学习处于文明最外层的科学技术是远远不够的,还必须从它的文化、哲学、宗教等路径切入,追溯其历史,探求其根源,这时古典语言就成了必不可少的工具。好在目前北京大学、北京师范大学、中国人民大学、北

京外国语大学、复旦大学、浙江大学、中山大学等国内著名高校均已开设相关的课程(不少拉丁语课程正是以《韦洛克拉丁语教程》作为教材),愿意学习这些语言的人也越来越多,这表明情况正在逐渐得到改善。希望本书的出版能够助我国的古典拉丁语教学一臂之力,更希望国内能够渐渐形成重视古典语言的氛围,多出好的著作,这的确是纯正的学术所不可或缺的。

最后,译者诚恳地希望读者多提宝贵意见,以使本书修订时能够有所改进。

译者

2008年9月4日

出版后记

被视为至美至纯的拉丁语,尽管一度被认为是死语言而为人们所忽视或摒弃,但现在据各种迹象显示,它又回来了。以美国为例,拉丁语曾经是很多公立和教区学校的必修课目,然而在 20 世纪 60 年代的青少年反叛文化大潮中被弃之不理。但在过去这几年来,拉丁语被视为一门秘密的影响流行文化的语言而受到重视;参加全国拉丁语考试的人数,已经从 1998 年的 101,000 人和 2003 年的 124,000 人,稳步增长到了 2007 年的 134,000 人。据美国外语教学委员会预测,拉丁语极有可能将德语挤出全美最受学生欢迎的外语三甲之列(排名前两位的分别是西班牙语和法语)。越来越多的高中已经认识到拉丁语的好处。拉丁语能为更高的 SAT 分数提供单词和语法上的基础,同时也可以向知名高校展示一种他们所感兴趣的批判思维,并培养一种真正的学术热情。

而哈利·波特系列的风靡则使拉丁语前所未有地吸引了孩子们的注意。在 J.K.罗琳女士的家乡英国,近一两年来也同样出现了拉丁语的复兴。英国提供拉丁语课程的学校在过去八年里增长了三倍。

同样的事情也发生在德国。学习拉丁语的学生人数在以 5% 的年均增长率不断增长;现在,几乎每一位文科高中三年级的学生都在学拉丁语。在 2008 年 9 月 26 日“欧洲语言日”这一天,德国柏林的 Kiss FM 电台甚至打算在当天上午改用拉丁语播报。

回到中国,我们发现,越来越多的人出于各种原因而爱上拉丁语。越来越多的高校也开始开设拉丁语课程。北京大学、复旦大学、北京师范大学、中国人民大学、中国政法大学等名校的拉丁语选修课常常人满为患。来自全国各地的热爱拉丁语的年轻人济济一堂,共同分享语言的美妙,感受历史的传承,这实在算得上是中国高等教育的一件幸事。

拉丁语的复兴,一方面催生出更多新鲜、有趣的拉丁语教材,另一方面也让一些经典教材于大浪淘沙中更添魅力。眼下的这部《韦洛克拉丁语教程》便是这样一部作品。作为一部适用于初学者的拉丁语教材,《韦洛克拉丁语教程》在西方世界的经典地位毋庸置疑。本书自 1956 年初版以来,一直是诸多大学古典学专业的必选教材,也是最受拉丁语爱好者欢迎的自学教程。在问世半个多世纪以后,本书终于迎来了它的首个中译本,对中国广大读者来说实在是一件好事。

感谢我们的朋友张卜天向我们推荐了这部杰出的经典读物。本书的顺利出版还有赖于多位学者同仁的支持与帮助。在选题论证过程中,我们得到了北京大学英语系沈弘教授(现已转任浙江大学)、北京大学历史系彭小瑜教授有效的建议和指导;在本书的编校和审阅过程中,我们又得到了中国人民大学文学院雷立柏教授和复旦大学历史系张巍教授的热情支持,特此向这几位先生表示感谢。而本书的封面设计则要多谢我们的好朋友、现在美国科罗拉多州任教的汉学家 Lewis Eden,他的美妙想法使本书得到了这个优雅封面。另外需要说明的是,本次中译本得到了国内外很多读者学人的关心,篇幅所限,我们无法一一鸣谢,只能在此感谢所有拉丁语爱好者对本书的期待和支持。

本书从翻译到出版历时三年,其间我们的译者对译文反复斟酌,其精益求精的追问精神令人感佩。编校制作人员也是不敢懈怠,在有限的条件下用最大的努力来减少差错。需要说明的是,因本书涉及大量拉丁、英以及法、意、西等语汇,因此我们在编排过程中凡遇此种性质的内文,一律采用从原书英文 PDF 文件中剪切图片复制的形式,以在最大程度上与原书保持一致。尽管如此,本书一定还有一些不尽完美的地方,这一点请读者谅解,并将发现的问题反馈给我们,以便在重印时及时更正。“大学堂”编辑部是一个年轻的出版团队,《韦洛克拉丁语教程》是我们对高端学术题材的首次尝试,这部作品本身的学术地位令我们在整个编辑出版过程满怀热情而又诚惶诚恐,怀着这种心情,我们与中译本一起等待着读者的检验。

无论出于何种目的学习拉丁语,都会深深爱上这门语言,这是被古往今来无数人的经验所验证的。读者在学习的过程中所学到的绝对不止是几个能帮助你在某些场合 show off 的字句,甚至不止是阅读拉丁语文献的能力,你获得的更重要的东西,或许是与先人穿越时空的智力交流,以及和一种臻于至美至纯的事物的亲密接触,这种事物在我们生活的世界上可能已经不多见了。

欢迎采用本书做教材的老师与我们联系,以便得到我们为您提供的教学资料和相关服务。

世界图书出版公司北京公司

服务热线:teacher@hinabook.com 139-1140-1220

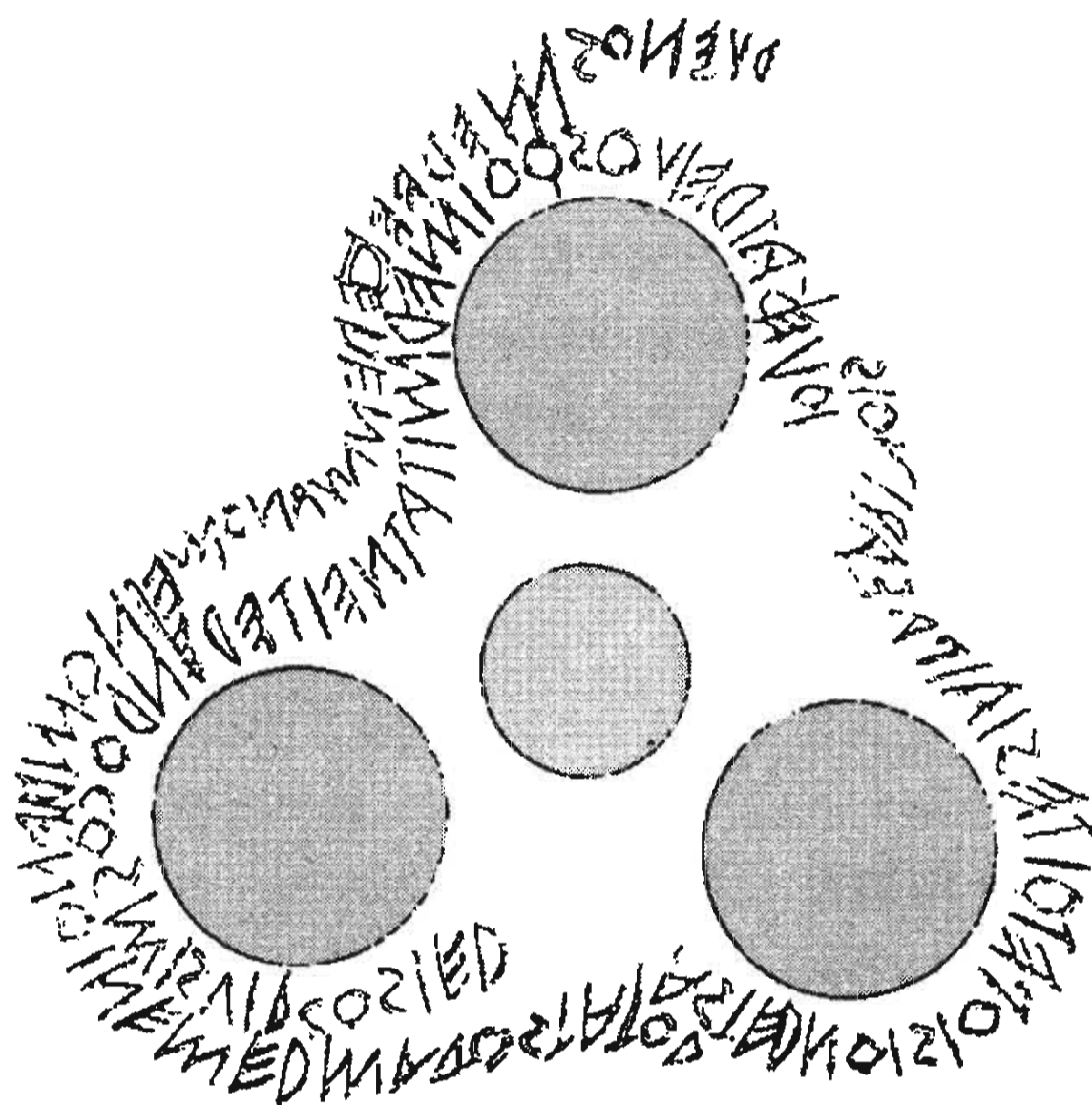
服务信箱:onebook@263.net 133-6631-2326

世图北京公司“大学堂”编辑部

2009年4月

封面图注

出现在正封上的是作为酒神(Dionysos)的安提诺乌斯(Antinous)像,大理石雕,公元2世纪,现存梵蒂冈博物馆(Vaticano Museo)Museo Pio-Clementino 展馆内圆厅(Sala Rotonda),Inv 256。



封底上的则是“好运刻辞(Duenos)”三联陶瓶,公元前6世纪,1880年由 Heinrich Dressel 在罗马附近的 Quirinal 山上发现,现存德国柏林国立美术馆(Staatliche Museen zu Berlin)。好运刻辞三联陶瓶上的铭文是已知的最早的拉丁文。铭文一共有三句,都是从右往左写,而且单词之间没有空格,加上有几个字母湮漫不清,使得这三句古老的铭文非常难以译解。

铭文第一行:IOUESATDEIUOSQOIMEDMITATNEITEDENDOCOSMISUIRCOSIED

第二行:ASTEDNOISIOPETOITTESIAIPACARIUOIS

第三行:DUENOSMEDFEEDEN MANOMEINOMDUENOINEMEDMALOSTATOD

所谓好运刻辞的 Duenos 一词就出现在铭文第三行起首,Duenos 是古拉丁文,其对应的古典拉丁文单词是 bonus,它的意思是“好(对应于英文中的 good)”。铭文的大意是:我向神的名字起誓,请相信我的承诺:假如女孩子不喜欢你,那么请向她献上这馥郁琼浆,美好的事情就会发生在你和我的身上。

By Lewis Eden

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

韦洛克拉丁语教程:插图修订第6版/(美)韦洛克著;张卜天译.-北京:世界图书出版公司北京公司,2009.2
(大学堂)

书名原文:Wheelock's Latin, 6th edition revised

ISBN 978-7-5062-9310-5/G·323

I. 韦… II. ①韦… ②张… III. 拉丁语-教材 IV. H771

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2008)第189311号

WHEELOCK'S LATIN (Sixth Edition Revised by Frederic M. Wheelock)

Copyright©2005 by Frederic M. Wheelock, Martha Wheelock, and Deborah Wheelock Taylor. Revision text copyright ©2005 by Richard A. LaFleur. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. For information, address HarperCollins Publishers, 10 East 53rd Street, New York, NY 10022.

Simplified Chinese Transl copyright©2009 by Beijing World Publishing Corp.

Published by arrangement with Collins, an imprint of HarperCollins Publishers.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

北京市版权局著作权合同登记号 图字 01-2007-2814

韦洛克拉丁语教程(插图修订第6版)

著者:(美)弗雷德里克·韦洛克
丛书名:大学堂

译者:张卜天
丛书策划:吴兴元

审阅者:雷立柏
责任编辑:杨宁

出版:世界图书出版公司北京公司
发行:世界图书出版公司北京公司(北京朝内大街137号 邮编100010)
销售:各地新华书店
印刷:北京盛兰兄弟印刷装订有限公司

开本:787×1092毫米 1/16
印张:35 插页4
字数:540千
版次:2009年6月第1版
印次:2009年6月第1次印刷 印数:1—1500册

教师服务:139-1140-1220 teacher@hinabook.com

读者咨询:onebook@263.net

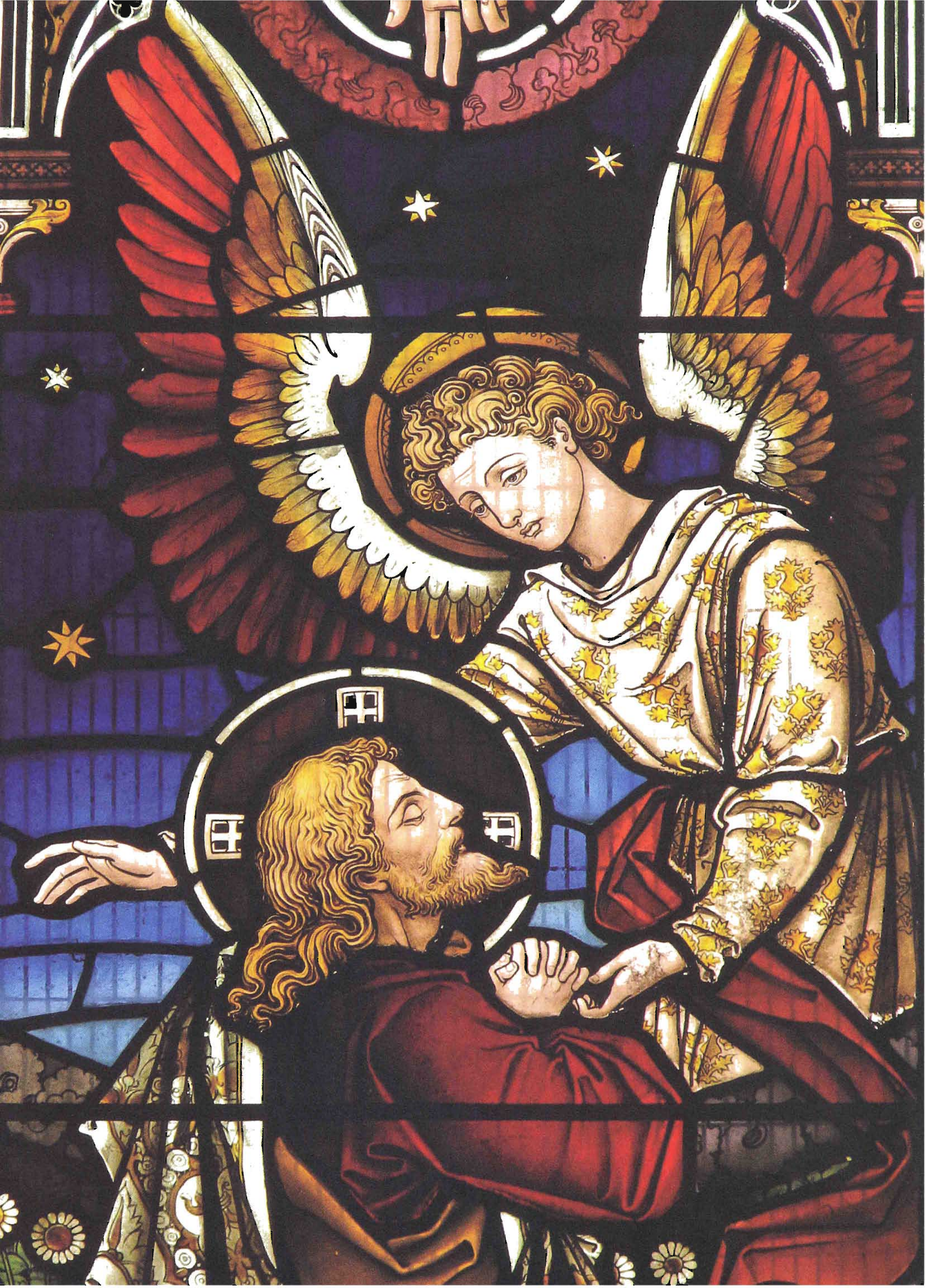
营销咨询:133-6657-3072 010-8161-6534

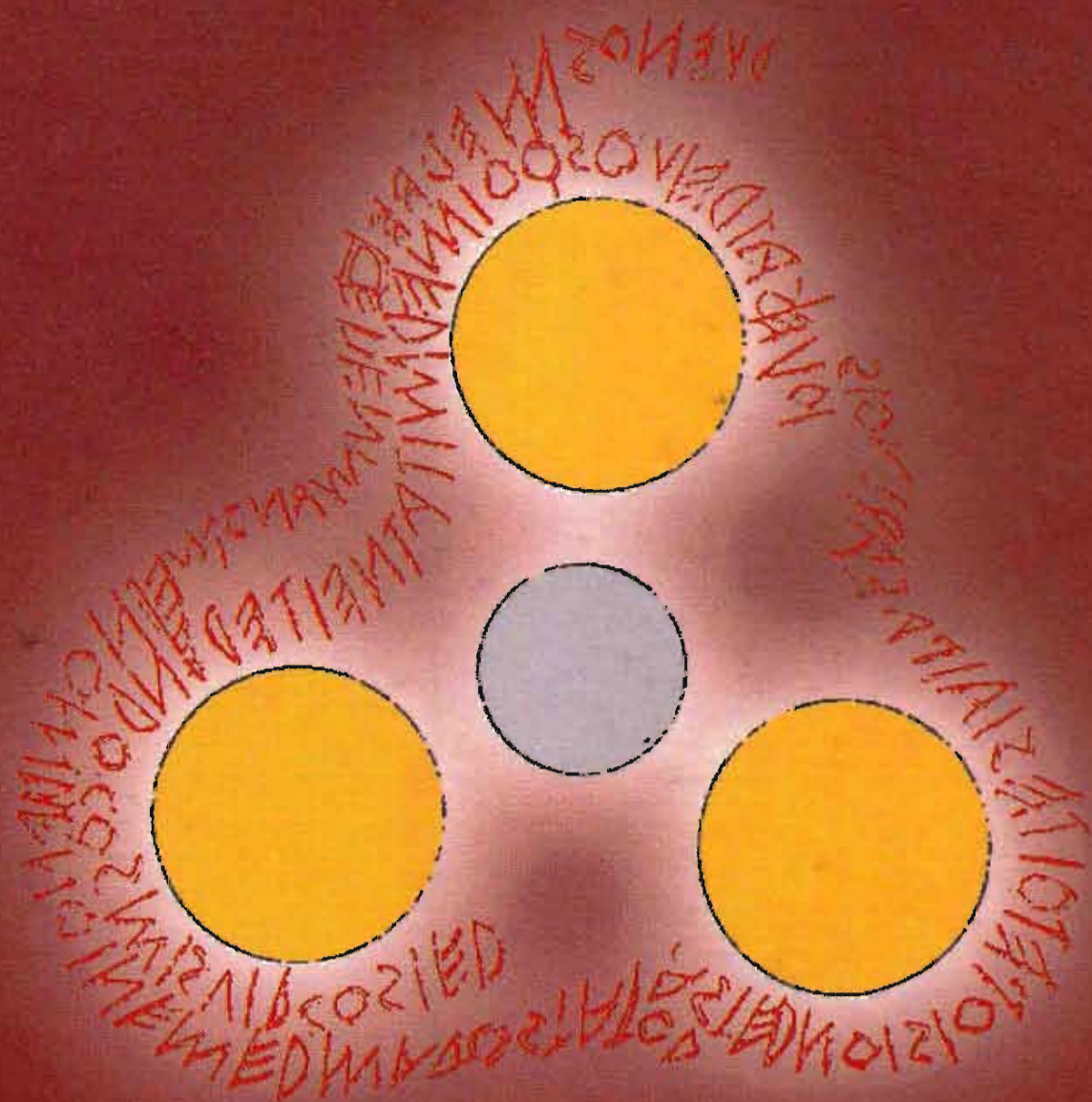
编辑咨询:133-6631-2326

ISBN 978-7-5062-9310-5/G·323

定价:99.00元

版权所有 翻印必究





学习拉丁语,人必称“韦洛克”

在 F. M. 韦洛克任拉丁语教授的 45 年中,他以幽默而谦逊的方式,从语言和文学两方面培养了学生们对拉丁语的热爱。他对教学工作怀有深深的眷恋,因为他对自己所教授的东西充满热忱。他非常尊重自己的学生,总是以高标准去要求他们。他希望学生们能够像他本人一样热爱和学习拉丁语,把它当作世代相传的火炬,照亮我们今天的路途。

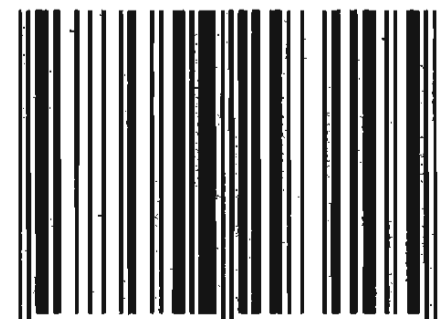
——玛莎·韦洛克和黛博拉·韦洛克·泰勒

听说韦洛克(Wheelock)的著名拉丁语教程将要在 中国出版,我感到非常兴奋与欣慰。2002 年以来,我在北京教授拉丁语和古希腊语,但始终没有找到令我满意的拉丁语语法教材、文选和拉汉词典。《韦洛克拉丁语教程》终于能满足这个迫切需要。对学习西方哲学、文学、法律、历史或宗教的大学生和学者来说,这部教科书的出版是一件重大的事,因为拉丁语是一切西方知识的“大门”,而韦洛克也算是自学拉丁语的最好资料之一……我很高兴可以推荐它,希望它成为很多大学生的读物。

——雷立柏,奥地利古典学家,中国人民大学文学院教授

陈列建议:语言学、大学通识教材、人文社科

ISBN 978-7-5062-9310-5



9 787506 293105 >

ISBN 978-7-5062-9310-5/G · 323

定价: 99.00 元

后浪出版咨询(北京)有限公司
POST WAVE PUBLISHING CONSULTING (BEIJING) LTD. CO
www.hinabook.com

哲学人生
www.zxrs.net

● 欢迎采用本书作教材的老师
与编辑部联系索要教学配件。